



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



*The divine armory of  
Holy Scripture*

Kenelm Vaughan



Library of



Princeton University.

Presented by

Rev. A. Young, M.D.

Class of 1848.







UNIVERSITY LIBRARY,  
DEC 15 1897  
PRINCETON, N. J.

THE DIVINE ARMORY  
OF  
HOLY SCRIPTURE

**Imprimatur.**

**✠ MICHAEL AUGUSTINE,**

*Archbishop of New York*

**Feast of St. Andrew, 1898.**







The Father hath sent His Son to be The Saviour of the World  
1 John 4 14







# THE DIVINE ARMORY

OF

## HOLY SCRIPTURE

BY

REV. KENELM VAUGHAN

---

Thy neck is as the Tower of David which is built with bulwarks; a thousand bucklers hang upon it, all the armor of valiant men.

—CANT. IV., 4.

---

*THE AMERICAN EDITION REVISED*

PUBLISHED BY

THE CATHOLIC BOOK EXCHANGE

120 W. 60TH STREET, NEW YORK

1894

COPYRIGHT, 1893, BY  
THE MISSIONARY SOCIETY OF ST. PAUL THE APOSTLE  
IN THE STATE OF NEW YORK

YTI23VIMU

YXAGBL

.L.N. NOT30M94

TROW DIRECTORY  
PRINTING AND BOOKBINDING COMPANY  
NEW YORK

**MOST HUMBL Y AND LOVINGLY**

**DEDICATED TO**

**Gim**

**WHO SAITH:**

**IF ANY MAN LOVE ME, HE WILL KEEP MY WORD,  
AND MY FATHER WILL LOVE HIM,  
AND WE WILL COME TO HIM,  
AND WILL MAKE OUR ABODE WITH HIM.  
HE THAT LOVETH ME NOT, KEEPETH NOT MY WORDS.  
AND THE WORD WHICH YOU HAVE HEARD  
IS NOT MINE ;  
BUT THE FATHER'S WHO SENT ME.  
THESE THINGS HAVE I SPOKEN TO YOU,  
ABIDING WITH YOU.  
BUT THE PARACLETE, THE HOLY GHOST,  
WHOM THE FATHER WILL SEND IN MY NAME,  
HE WILL TEACH YOU ALL THINGS,  
AND BRING ALL THINGS TO YOUR MIND,  
WHATSOEVER I SHALL HAVE SAID TO YOU. — *John 14. 23-26.***

5813  
929  
(RECAP)  
106712



# LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

Genesis . . . .	<i>Ge</i>	Micheas . . . .	<i>Mi</i>
Exodus . . . .	<i>Ex</i>	Nahum . . . .	<i>Na</i>
Leviticus . . . .	<i>Le</i>	Habacuc . . . .	<i>Ha</i>
Numbers . . . .	<i>Nu</i>	Sophonias . . . .	<i>So</i>
Deuteronomy . . . .	<i>Dt</i>	Aggeus . . . .	<i>Ag</i>
Josue . . . .	<i>Js</i>	Zacharias . . . .	<i>Za</i>
Judges . . . .	<i>Jg</i>	Malachias . . . .	<i>Ma</i>
Ruth . . . .	<i>Ru</i>	1 Machabees . . . .	1 <i>M</i>
1 Kings . . . .	1 <i>K</i>	2 " . . . .	2 <i>M</i>
2 " . . . .	2 <i>K</i>		
3 " . . . .	3 <i>K</i>	Matthew . . . .	<i>Mt</i>
4 " . . . .	4 <i>K</i>	Mark . . . .	<i>Mk</i>
1 Paralipomenon . . . .	1 <i>P</i>	Luke . . . .	<i>Lu</i>
2 " . . . .	2 <i>P</i>	John . . . .	<i>Jn</i>
1 Esdras . . . .	1 <i>E</i>	Acts . . . .	<i>Ac</i>
2 " . . . .	2 <i>E</i>	Romans . . . .	<i>Ro</i>
Tobias . . . .	<i>To</i>	1 Corinthians . . . .	1 <i>C</i>
Judith . . . .	<i>Jd</i>	2 " . . . .	2 <i>C</i>
Esther . . . .	<i>Es</i>	Galatians . . . .	<i>Ga</i>
Job . . . .	<i>Jb</i>	Ephesians . . . .	<i>Ep</i>
Psalms . . . .	<i>Ps</i>	Philippians . . . .	<i>Ph</i>
Proverbs . . . .	<i>Pv</i>	Colossians . . . .	<i>Cl</i>
Ecclesiastes . . . .	<i>Ecl</i>	1 Thessalonians . . . .	1 <i>T</i>
Canticle of Canticles . . . .	<i>Ca</i>	2 " . . . .	2 <i>T</i>
Wisdom . . . .	<i>W</i>	1 Timothy . . . .	1 <i>Ti</i>
Ecclesiasticus . . . .	<i>Eci</i>	2 " . . . .	2 <i>Ti</i>
Isaias . . . .	<i>Is</i>	Titus . . . .	<i>Tt</i>
Jeremias . . . .	<i>Je</i>	Philemon . . . .	<i>Ph</i>
Lamentations . . . .	<i>La</i>	Hebrews . . . .	<i>He</i>
Baruch . . . .	<i>Ba</i>	James . . . .	<i>Ja</i>
Ezechiel . . . .	<i>Ez</i>	1 Peter . . . .	1 <i>Pt</i>
Daniel . . . .	<i>Da</i>	2 " . . . .	2 <i>Pt</i>
Osee . . . .	<i>Os</i>	1 John . . . .	1 <i>J</i>
Joel . . . .	<i>Jl</i>	2 " . . . .	2 <i>J</i>
Amos . . . .	<i>Am</i>	3 " . . . .	3 <i>J</i>
Abdias . . . .	<i>Ab</i>	Jude . . . .	<i>Ju</i>
Jonas . . . .	<i>Jo</i>	Apocalypse . . . .	<i>Ap</i>

## P R E F A C E.

---

With heartiest pleasure I recommend to the clergy and laity of the United States the book which a most estimable and devoted priest of England has compiled and edited under the title "The Divine Armory of Holy Scripture." This book is the result of very many years spent in the earnest study, devout meditation, serious and deep reading of the Holy Bible. The author during the time has been engaged upon what was not so much a task to be accomplished, as on what was a labor of love. It is therefore more apt to partake of characteristics and features that demand sincerest appreciation.

There is not the slightest doubt but that an intimate acquaintance with the exact import of the words of Holy Writ and their application to various subjects that receive our attention, is the best means of fostering and developing a healthy spirit of piety. Father Vaughan, by his diligent labor in classifying the Sacred Text, has contributed to render the study of the Scriptures at the same time easy, delightful, and profitable to the reader. And I am sure that incalculable advantage will accrue to both clergy and people from the use of his book.

Though larger, more developed, and complete, it is based on the *Theologia Scripturæ Divinæ*, issued some two centuries ago.

I am reminded of a little work in the same tenor which was brought to my notice about two years ago, written in French by Father J. B. St. Jure, S.J., and entitled "Christ, Our Teacher." I was so much impressed by its merit and usefulness that I had it translated, as there was not to my knowledge anything like it in the English language. But I now welcome the Divine Armory as superior in scope and extent, and better able to accomplish the good I anticipated from the smaller book.

I venture to predict for Father Vaughan's book the honest appreciation of all lovers of the Sacred Text; and in their name I congratulate him upon the happy and successful termination of this life-work of his, and I thank him in advance for all the spiritual gifts and graces of which, through him, we shall be made participators.

J. CARDINAL GIBBONS,

*Archbishop of Baltimore.*

Cardinal's Residence, Baltimore, Md.

November 17, 1898.

## INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

---

The compilation of this SCRIPTURE TEXT-BOOK was suggested by a small volume which first appeared two hundred years ago, entitled *Theologia Scripturæ Divinæ, Auctore Henrico Marcellio, S.J.*; and upon the idea and plan of that work it is to some extent based. But it has been so greatly amplified that it may be regarded as in reality a new work, modified in plan, and containing six times more matter than the original.

In putting together this Scripture Text-Book, use has been freely made of the Roman Ritual, of the *Paradisus Animæ*, and, with due authority, of several modern compilations of Scripture texts. A grateful acknowledgment is especially due to the distinguished disciple and student of St. Thomas, the Rev. Dr. Gildea, for the Introductions to the five Books and their several Parts, which, with only two or three exceptions, are the work of his pen. These Introductions contain in a brief form the essence of theological teaching; and though treating often of abstruse and difficult subjects, they are written in so clear and easy a style as to be intelligible to any ordinary mind. An acknowledgment is also due for much assistance rendered by the Rev. Henry M. Bayley, B.A. Cantab., in drawing up the Calendar of Scripture Saints: a Calendar which will serve to bring the reader into a closer union of mind and heart with those great Saints whose lives are recorded or referred to in Holy Writ.

That this Scripture Text-Book may help to show forth more clearly the Divine Scriptural character of the teaching and liturgy of the Holy Church, and that it may increase in those who use it a knowledge and love of the Sacred Book from which it is compiled, is the earnest hope and prayer of the compiler,

KENELM VAUGHAN.

Feast of St. Jeremias the Prophet,  
May 13, 1893.

# ANALYTICAL CONTENTS.

## Book I.

### INTRODUCTION.

ON GOD, ONE IN NATURE AND THREE IN PERSONS, AUTHOR OF ALL THINGS; AND ON THE PRINCIPAL WORKS OF HIS HANDS IN GENERAL AND IN PARTICULAR, *p.* 1.

#### PART I.

##### GOD AND HIS DIVINE ATTRIBUTES.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Names of God, 2  | 23. His Omnipotence, 15  |
| 2. His Essence and Existence, 2   | 24. His Justice, 16  |
| 3. His Simplicity and Incorporeality, 2   | 25. His Mercy, 19  |
| 4. His Unity, 3   | 26. Why He has mercy upon us, 20   |
| 5. God, Truth and Life, 3   | 27. His Mercy, together with His Justice, 21   |
| 6. His Goodness, 3  | 28. The sin of presuming on His Mercy, 21  |
| 7. His Perfection, which contains in an eminent degree the perfections of all created things, 4                         | 29. His Love for all—even sinners, 21  |
| 8. His Infinity, 4  | 30. God loves sinners, not as sinners, but because ransomed by Christ's Precious Blood. For this reason He pardons sin, 23 |
| 9. His Immensity, 5   | 31. Our Lord wills all men to be saved, 23   |
| 10. His Immutability, 6   | 32. The Providence of God towards all, 24  |
| 11. His Eternity, 7   | 33. The sin of denying His Providence, 25  |
| 12. His Incomprehensibility, 7  | 34. Election, Predestination, and Vocation in general, 28  |
| 13. His Unutterableness, 8  | 35. Election to glory, which precedes Predestination, the work of God's pure bounty and mercy, 28                          |
| 14. God known by the things that are made, 8  | 36. God rewards men according to merit, 27   |
| 15. The Beatific Vision, 9  | 37. His special love towards the just, 27  |
| 16. His Knowledge, whereby He knows Himself, all things created, to be created, and creatable, 9                        | 38. The certainty of Predestination, 28  |
| 17. His Omniscience denied by the wicked that they may sin more freely. His All-seeing Eye keeps the godly from sin, 11 | 39. The Book of Life, 29   |
| 18. His Will irresistible, 13   | 40. Causes and effects of positive reprobation, 29   |
| 19. Punishment willed by God, 13  | 41. Causes and effects of negative reprobation, 30   |
| 20. Sin not willed by God, 13   | 42. The number of the saved, though great, small in comparison with the lost, 30   |
| 21. God freely wills all good external to Himself, 14   |  |
| 22. His Will antecedent and consequent, conditional and absolute, the former sometimes changed, the latter never, 14    |  |

#### PART II.

### INTRODUCTION.

##### THE MOST BLESSED TRINITY, 31.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. The Trinity of Persons in Unity of Nature, 31 | 3. The Son, true God, consubstantial with the Eternal Father, 33 |
| 2. The Father, true God, 33                      | 4. The Holy Ghost, true God, consub-                             |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>stantial with the Father and Son,<br/>35</p> <p>5. The Holy Ghost proceeding from the</p> | <p>Father and Son, 35</p> <p>6. The Equality, Mission, and Work of<br/>the Three Persons, 36</p> |
|--|--|

PART III.  
INTRODUCTION.

GOD AS THE EFFICIENT CAUSE OF ALL THINGS; AND ON HIS PRINCIPAL WORKS, CON-  
SIDERED IN GENERAL AND IN PARTICULAR, 37.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. God as Creator, 37</p> <p>2. His works perfect, wrought with the<br/>highest wisdom, 39</p> <p>3. God as Ruler and Preserver of all<br/>things, 39</p> <p>4. God as Co-operator and Helper, 40</p> <p>5. God as Saviour and Redeemer, 40</p> <p>6. Creation, nature, and office of Angels,<br/>40</p> <p>7. The Angelic Hierarchy, 42</p> <p>8. Angels obey God, protect men, and<br/>drive away evil spirits, 42</p> <p>9. Invocation of Angels and honour paid<br/>to them lawful, 43</p> <p>10. Sin and punishment of the bad<br/>angels, 44</p> <p>11. Pride, envy, and deceit of the bad<br/>angels, 45</p> <p>12. Power of the bad angels directed<br/>against the Church and the faithful,<br/>45</p> <p>13. Conversion of unbelievers hindered</p> | <p>by the bad angels; their appearance<br/>as angels of light; power to inflict<br/>evil unless by God's permission, 13</p> <p>14. Miracles worked by them, many led<br/>away by them and their agents;<br/>God's instruments for chastising<br/>the wicked, 47</p> <p>15. The creation of man; his material<br/>nature, 43</p> <p>16. The weakness and mortality of his<br/>body, 49</p> <p>17. The immortality and dignity of his<br/>soul, 49</p> <p>18. Man's condition before and after the<br/>Fall, 50</p> <p>19. On the condition of labour, payment<br/>and wages, 50</p> <p>20. Idleness and its consequences, 54</p> <p>21. Man's miseries in body and soul, 55</p> <p>22. Man's ignorance, 55</p> <p>23. His want of courage to do good, 57</p> <p>24. His littleness in God's sight, 57</p> |
|--|--|

PART IV.  
INTRODUCTION.

THE MESSIAH, OR CHRIST, THE REDEEMER OF THE HUMAN RACE.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. The Messiah promised to the world,<br/>58</p> <p>2. Christ's Incarnation foretold and<br/>longed for by the Prophets, 59</p> <p>3. His coming in passible flesh, 59</p> <p>4. The First-begotten, the Head and<br/>Prince of all creatures, 60</p> <p>5. Christ a most powerful and mighty<br/>King, even as man, 60</p> <p>6. Christ the Saviour of the world, 61</p> <p>7. His charity, grace, knowledge, and<br/>beauty, 62</p> <p>8. His voluntary poverty, 63</p> <p>9. Christ as High-Priest and Mediator<br/>between God and man, 63</p> <p>10. Christ's love of suffering and perfect<br/>obedience, 64</p> <p>11. His victory and triumph on the Cross,<br/>65</p> <p>12. Christ's merit and Divine Expiation,<br/>65</p> | <p>13. Christ's redemption of sinners by His<br/>Blood; He freely washes away sin,<br/>66</p> <p>14. Christ appointed by God, Judge of<br/>the living and the dead, 66</p> <p>15. No one will be able to resist the ir-<br/>revocable judgment of Christ, 67</p> <p>16. Our Lord's names and titles, 68</p> <p>17. Allusions to our Lord, 85</p> <p>18. Characteristics of our Lord, 86</p> <p>19. Our Lord typified in the life of S.<br/>Jeremias the Prophet. Prophecies<br/>and conformities, 89</p> <p>1. The Incarnation of our Lord.<br/>His early life, 69</p> <p>2. Jesus the Good Shepherd.<br/>His calling the Apostles. His<br/>preaching life, 91</p> <p>3. His Presence in the Temple.<br/>The Blessed Sacrament, 93</p> <p>4. His everlasting love for us, 86</p> |
|--|--|

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 5. The necessity of prayer, 98                                  | 27. Miracles of the Old Testament, 120         |
| 6. The necessity of penance, 98                                 | 1. Wrought in Divine Mercy, 120                |
| 7. Divers teachings, 100  | 2. Wrought in Divine Vengeance, 121            |
| 8. False teachers. Divine judgments, 101                        | 3. Other miracles, 122                         |
| 9. Our Lord the Man of Sorrows. His Passion and Death, 105      | 28. Visions and symbols of the Apocalypse, 122 |
| 10. The Resurrection of our Lord and His glory in Heaven, 110   | 29. Our Lord's seven last words, 125           |
| 20. Our Lord's Resurrection, 109                                | 30. The seven Bloodsheddings of our Lord, 126  |
| 21. Our Lord's Ascension, 110                                   | 31. The Stations of the Cross, 126             |
| 22. The visible coming of our Lord at the end of the world, 112 | 32. Devotion to the Sacred Humanity, 127       |
| 23. The worship of our Lord, 113                                | 33. Lessons read in Holy Week, 129             |
| 24. The Parables of our Lord, 114                               | 1. Holy Thursday, 129                          |
| 25. Parables, Visions, etc., in the Old Testament, 116          | 2. Good Friday, 130                            |
| 26. The Miracles of our Lord, Visions, 118                      | 3. Holy Saturday, 131                          |
|   | 34. Ejaculations in His praise and love, 132   |

## PART V.

## INTRODUCTION.

ON MARY THE VIRGIN-MOTHER OF JESUS; ST. JOSEPH, HIS FOSTER-FATHER;  
AND ST. JOHN THE BAPTIST, HIS PRECURSOR, 133.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. The noble lineage of the Blessed Virgin. Her parents. Her Immaculate Conception. Her Nativity. Her Virginity. Her espousals with St. Joseph. Prophecies, 134   | her Son. Her wonderment at His teaching, 139  |
| 2. The Angel Gabriel announces to her the Incarnation. Her visit to her cousin St. Elizabeth. Her song of praise: the "Magnificat," 135<br>Her journey to Bethlehem. The birth of her Divine Son. The visit of the Angels and the shepherds, 137. | 6. Her power with her Son at Cana of Galilee. Her going with Him to Capernaum. Her visit to Him when preaching in Galilee. Her praises proclaimed, 140  |
| 4. Presentation of her Son in the Temple. Simeon's prophecy. Her sorrow foretold. Her sacrifice of purification. Her journey to Nazareth, 138   | 7. She stands by the Cross. Jesus commends her to St. John, who takes her to his home. Her sorrows. Her prayer with the Disciples in the Upper Chamber at Pentecost. Her glory in Heaven, 141                 |
| 5. (Her return to Bethlehem.) The visit of the wise men. Her flight from Herod by night into Egypt. Her return out of Egypt to Nazareth. Her journey to Jerusalem for the Pasch. Loss and finding of  | 8. Her characteristics and virtues—viz. her faith, hope, and charity, Her conformity to God's Will. Her love of her neighbour. Her gift of prayer. Her purity, her obedience, her fortitude and humility, 142 |
|   | 9. Prophetic types and figures of the Blessed Virgin, 143   |
|   | 10. The seven sorrows of the Blessed Virgin, 144  |
|   | 11. The Rosary of the Blessed Virgin, 145   |

## INTRODUCTION.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. LIFE OF ST. JOSEPH, PATRON OF THE UNIVERSAL CHURCH, 148.  |  |
| 1. Royal pedigree of St. Joseph. Husband of Mary. Father of Jesus. His trial. His vision of an Angel. Consoled by His angelic message, 149 | 2. His journey to Bethlehem for enrolment. The birth of his Son Jesus. The shepherds' visit. His presentation of Jesus in the Temple. His wonderment at Simeon's prophecy. |

- His return to Nazareth. His hidden life, 149
3. As head of the Holy Family, he is warned by an Angel to fly into Egypt away from Herod. Sorrows of exile. An Angel bids him return into the land of Israel. His journey to Nazareth. His going up to Jerusalem for the Pasch. The loss of Jesus. His sorrow. His unwearied search. His joy in finding Him in the Temple, 150
  4. His employment. His characteristics. His virtues. Sacred texts accommodated to Him by the Church. His Glory, 150
2. JOSEPH, SON OF JACOB, TYPE OF ST. JOSEPH, 152.
1. Joseph beloved by God and man. His future greatness foretold in visions, 152
  2. His going into Egypt. God prospers him in all things. His royal honours and privileges. His personal appearance. His marriage, 152
  3. Head of the royal household. Keeper and dispenser of the bread of life, 153
  4. Joseph's tender love of his brethren. He reveals himself to them. He fills them with blessings. Their love and devotion towards him, 153
  5. The blessings of Heaven fall upon the head of Jacob, 156
  6. Other types of St. Joseph, 156
3. ST. JOHN THE BAPTIST, PRECURSOR OF OUR LORD, 157.
1. St. John the Baptist announced by the Prophets. His parents both just. An Angel foretells to St. Zachary his conception, birth, name, sanctity, and office. Sanctified before birth. Had use of reason yet unborn. His leap of joy in the womb at Christ's Presence, 157
  2. Birth in the hill-country of Judea; fruit of prayer. His parents' joy. His circumcision. His mother names him John by revelation. His father's cure. His canticle. John's hidden and austere life of penance in the desert. His raiment, fasts, abstinence from wine. Called Elias by Jesus. None greater born of woman. Personal character, 158
  3. His public ministry. A voice crying in the wilderness. Preaches penance and good works. Reproves the Pharisees. His popularity. Taken for the Messiah. Teaches his disciples to pray, 160
  4. His testimony of Christ. Andrew his disciple follows Jesus. John baptises by Divine command (1) in the Jordan, (2) at Bethania, and (3) at Ennon. Predicts the baptism of the Holy Ghost, of which his is but a type. Declines in humility to baptise Christ, but does so under obedience, 163
  5. John favoured by Herod. He rebukes Herod for incest, whereupon Herod casts him into prison. During his year's imprisonment he sends two disciples to Jesus. Herod's banquet. His rash oath. John beheaded with the sword. His head served up on a dish to Salome. His burial. Hearing of Christ's miracles, Herod imagines that he had risen from the dead. His diadem of glory, 165
- The sacerdotal prayer of our Lord to His Eternal Father, 167
1. For Himself,
  2. For His disciples,
  3. For His Church.

## Book II.

### INTRODUCTION.

OUR LAST END, AND THE MEANS OF ITS ATTAINMENT, 169.

#### PART I.

FINAL END AND BEATITUDE OF MAN.

1. God, the Final End of all things, 170
2. Not creatures, but God alone the object of Eternal Bliss, 170
3. Formal beatitude in the intellect, 171
4. Joy of the blessed in the will, 171
5. Qualities of a glorified body, 172



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 6. Kingly dignity of the blessed, 173                       | 15. Eternal Life the reward of labour and not bestowed without grace, 178   |
| 7. Power, honour, and glory of the blessed, 173             | 16. Eternal Life not to be obtained on earth, only to be won by combat, 178 |
| 8. Splendour and beauty of our Heavenly Country, 174        | 17. Eternal Life only to be won when life's combat is happily over, 179     |
| 9. Magnitude and multitude of celestial goods, 174          | 18. Eternal Life is promised to those who fight and win lawfully, 179       |
| 10. Variety of reward for variety of labour, 175            | 19. Cowards, unbelievers, and wicked men forfeit Eternal Life, 180          |
| 11. Enjoyment without weariness of Eternal Life, 175        | 20. Yearning after our Heavenly Country, 181                                |
| 12. Purity of Heavenly joy without admixture of sorrow, 176 | 21. Ejaculations of the soul ardently desiring the glory of Heaven, 182     |
| 13. Safety without anxiety, 177                             |   |
| 14. Sure way of obtaining Eternal Life, 177                 |   |

## PART II.

## INTRODUCTION.

## FREE-WILL, AND GOOD AND BAD HUMAN ACTIONS, 183.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Use of free-will in pursuit after good or evil, virtue or vice, 183                 | 9. Purity of intention and heart acceptable to God, 190                           |
| 2. Incentives to the practice of good works, 184                                       | 10. An evil intention displeasing to God, destroying the merit of good works, 191 |
| 3. Precepts as to good works, 185  | 11. Acts of hypocrisy manifold, 192   |
| 4. Purity of heart and piety to be united to exterior goodness, 187                    | 12. Manifold effects of hypocrisy, 193  |
| 5. Of those who neglect duties, and yet make a boast of religion, 188                  | 13. Hypocrisy sooner or later detected, 194                                       |
| 6. Opportunities for doing good must be promptly seized and occasions watched for, 189 | 14. Hypocrites hated by God, 194  |
| 7. Fruits of good and evil deeds, 189  | 15. Hypocrisy forbidden, purity and sincerity of heart commended, 194             |
| 8. All right actions to be done with a view to the glory of God, 190                   | 16. Human actions, whether good or bad, do not intrinsically affect God, 195      |
|  | 17. God can make use of one man instead of another, 196                           |

## PART III.

## INTRODUCTION.

## EXTERNAL AND INTERNAL LAW, 196.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. God, the Supreme Law-giver, 197   | science for good or evil, 204   |
| 2. Compendium and end of the law, 198  | 10. Power of the passions of the soul for good or evil, 204                             |
| 3. The law of God sweet and easy, instructing the hearer, perfecting the doer of the same, 198 | 11. Aspirations of one who desires and resolves to keep God's law, 205                  |
| 4. Fruits of faithful observance of the law, 199   | 12. Aspirations of one seeking light and grace to understand and to keep God's law, 205 |
| 5. Exhortation to hear and to meditate upon God's law, and to bear it ever in mind, 199        | 13. Aspirations of one who desires to keep the Divine law perfectly, 206                |
| 6. Rewards promised to the doer of the law, 200  | 14. Aspirations of one who looks upon God's law as easy and sweet, 207                  |
| 7. Neglect of the law, bringing ruin and eternal punishment, 201                               | 15. Aspirations of one who keeps God's law in the face of death, 207                    |
| 8. Force of habit for good or evil, 203  | 16. Ejaculations of one humbly offering his good works to God, 207                      |
| 9. Strength of the interior law or con-  |   |

# PART IV. INTRODUCTION.

## ACTUAL AND HABITUAL GRACE, 208.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Preventing and helping grace, 203  | predisposing cause of sanctifying grace, 215   |
| 2. Sufficient and efficacious grace, 209  |  |
| 3. Helps of grace given sufficiently to adults, 209   | 14. All do not with equal zeal correspond to actual and habitual grace, neither is grace equal in all, 216                                   |
| 4. No sinner, however great, is in this life destitute of necessary means of Salvation, 210                 | 15. No man by the ordinary law of God knows with the certainty of faith whether he be in a state of grace, 216                               |
| 5. Sufficient grace given to all, but not in equal measure, 210   | 16. Men may have a moral certainty that they are sons and friends of God, 217  |
| 6. Necessity of grace for making acts of Faith, Hope, and Charity, and other supernatural virtues, 211      | 17. Grace confers a quasi-Divine existence which is the supernatural life of the soul, and produces in the soul other wonderful effects, 217 |
| 7. Co-operating grace enabling man to keep the precepts of the Divine law and to shun sin, 212              | 18. Grace not merely covers but blot's out sin, 219  |
| 8. Man not able to avoid venial sin by the natural law alone, 212   | 19. Grace does not destroy nature, but heals and restores it, when sick with sin, to perfect health, 219                                     |
| 9. Actual grace necessary to persevere in the friendship of God, and in the keeping of His commandments 213 | 20. Grace the pledge of glory, the principle and cause of merit, 220   |
| 10. The just man with the help of God can persevere in grace unto death, 213                                | 21. Inclination to use and carefully to hold fast to grace, 220  |
| 11. God the efficient cause of grace, 214   | 22. Exhortations to increase in grace, 221   |
| 12. Christ the meritorious cause of grace, God the final cause of grace, 214                                | 23. Ejaculations of the soul yearning for God's grace, and knowing its necessity and fruit, 222  |
| 13. Acts of Faith, Hope, and Charity, the   |  |

# PART V. INTRODUCTION.

## VIRTUE, VICE, AND SIN IN GENERAL, 223.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Praise of virtue and its fruits, 224                          | 15. Sin deprives of merit our words and undertakings, 233  |
| 2. Exhortation to aim at virtue, 224                             | 16. Sin brings with it both temporal and eternal punishment, 234   |
| 3. Perfection of virtue, 225                                     | 17. Sin robs the soul of supernatural gifts, subjecting it to the power of the devil and to everlasting death, 235 |
| 4. Counsels of perfection, 225                                   | 18. Sin causes blindness and ignorance in the understanding, 236   |
| 5. The fear of the Lord the first step to wisdom and virtue, 226 | 19. Sin turns away the will from the Supreme Good, hardening it in evil, 238                                       |
| 6. Effects of the fear of the Lord, 227                          | 20. Sin begets fear and perplexity, 239  |
| 7. Fruits of the fear of the Lord, 228                           | 21. Sin brings with it shame and shamelessness, 240  |
| 8. Even the just man must take heed lest he fall, 228            | 22. Sadness and despair the end of sin, 240  |
| 9. Cries of the soul yearning after the fear of the Lord, 229    | 23. Sin robs body and soul of strength, 241  |
| 10. The malignancy of vice, and means for its destruction, 229   |  |
| 12. Exhortations to root up vice and to conquer passions, 230    |  |
| 12. Sin is the turning from God to creatures, 231                |  |
| The uncleanness of sin, 231                                      |  |
| Disastrous to body and soul, 232                                 |  |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 24. Sin shortens life and hastens death, 241  | misuse of His blessings, 246   |
| 25. Sin destroys reputation, honour, and fame, 242  | 30. God exhorts sinners to abandon sin, 247  |
| 26. Sin ruins prosperity, 243   | 31. God promises mercy and grace to penitents, 248   |
| 27. Sin destroys offspring and posterity, 245   | 32. Exhortations to thorough conversion, 249   |
| 28. God hates not only the wicked man and his wickedness, but his offerings and sacrifices, 245 | 33. Words of the sinner who purposes to return to God and to acknowledge his sin within himself, 251 |
| 29. God reproaches the sinner for the   | 34. Cries of the sinner grieving over his sins, 251  |

## Book III.

### INTRODUCTION.

#### THE THEOLOGICAL AND CARDINAL VIRTUES AND THEIR CONTRARY VICES, 253.

##### PART I.

###### DIVINE FAITH AND THE CONTRARY VICES, 254.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Orthodox faith rests not on human conviction, 255                         | 11. Ejaculatory prayers to excite and increase faith in the soul, 261     |
| 2. Orthodox faith rests solely on Divine authority, 255                      | 12. Unbelief, 261   |
| 3. Revelation universal and particular, mediate and immediate, 255           | 13. Obstacles and helps to faith, 263                                     |
| 4. God as the First Truth, 256   | 14. Examples of unbelief, 263   |
| 5. The nature, stability, and certitude of faith, 256                        | 15. Apostasy from the faith, 264  |
| 6. The unity, necessity, and utility of faith, 257                           | 16. Heretics typically described, 265                                     |
| 7. Faith as living and as dead, 257  | 17. Heresies generated by a vicious life and justly permitted by God, 266 |
| 8. Exhortations to live a life worthy of faith and to persevere therein, 258 | 18. Ignorance, pride, and obstinacy of heretics, 266                      |
| 9. Faith to be professed both inwardly and outwardly, 259                    | 19. Heretics to be shunned and punished, 267                              |
| 10. Examples of heroic faith, 260  | 20. Existence of heretics from Apostolic times even to our own, 268       |
|  | 21. Ejaculatory prayers against heresy and heretics, 269                  |

##### PART II.

### INTRODUCTION.

#### THEOLOGICAL HOPE AND ITS CONTRARY VICES, 270.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Hope and its kinds, 271  | 6. Warnings against self-confidence, and against relying on man rather than God, 275 |
| 2. Fruits of hope in God, 271   | 7. Examples of hope and confidence in God, 276                                       |
| 3. Exhortations to fix our hope in God, 272                               | 8. Ejaculations of a hoping soul, 276  |
| 4. Steadfast hope of the just, vain self-reliance of the wicked, 273      | 9. The bitter fruits of despair; the saving effects of the fear of the Lord, 277     |
| 5. Loss and punishments of those who trust in man rather than in God, 274 |  |

### PART III. INTRODUCTION.

#### CHARITY AND ITS OPPOSITE VICES, 278.

1. The perfection and excellence of charity in general, 279
2. The value, splendour, and beauty of charity, 280
3. The keeping of God's commandments, the proof of our love for Him, 280
4. Fruits and rewards of charity, 280
5. Precepts of charity; punishment of sinning against charity, 281
6. Charity towards our neighbour, 281
7. Duty of practising charity, 2:2
8. Why and how our neighbour should be loved, 285
9. Love of our neighbour impossible without the love of God, 285
10. Examples of charity towards God and Christ our Lord, 285
11. Examples of charity towards our neighbour, 286
12. Ejaculatory prayers to excite in our hearts the love of God and of our neighbour, 288
13. Acts and effects of love, of which spiritual joy is one of the first, 289
14. Incitements to aspire after this true joy, 290
15. The joy of the wicked vain and false, 290
16. The consolation of true joy flowing from God, 291
17. Our consolation in God, 291
18. Promise of all true comfort and joy, 292
19. True joy given to those who fear and love God, 292
20. Fruits of Divine consolation, 292
21. Human consolation vain and unstable, 293
22. Ejaculatory prayers of the soul desirous of Heavenly consolation, 293
23. Peace and the Author of peace, 294
24. What kind of peace necessary; its fruits, 295
25. Exhortations to seek peace, 295
26. Cries of the soul after this peace, 296
27. Loveliness, utility, and sweetness of concord, 297
28. Peace frequently and earnestly commended by the Apostles, 297
29. Notable examples of concord, 298
30. Beauty, effects, and rewards of mercy, 298
31. Works of mercy, 299
32. Punishments of those who show not mercy, 300
33. Almsgiving recommended, 300
34. To whom alms should be given, and how, 300
35. When alms should be given, and how often, 301
36. Fruits of almsgiving, 301
37. Special blessings of almsgiving in soul and body, 302
38. Alms cancel sin and remit the penalty of sin, 302
39. Alms bring riches and honours to the giver, 303
40. Exhortations to almsgiving, 303
41. The sin and punishment of selfishness, 304
42. Examples of almsgiving, 304
43. Brotherly correction and reproof to be practised both privately and publicly, 305
44. By whom reproof is to be given, to whom, and in what way, 306
45. Exhortations to brotherly correction, 306
46. Faulty modes of correction, 307
47. Fruits of correction, 308
48. Repr. of to be borne with resignation, 308
49. Advantages of fraternal correction, and the evil of rejecting it, 308
50. Brotherly admonition illustrated, 309
51. Vices opposed to charity, in the first place hatred of God and of our neighbour, 310
52. Evils, punishments, and examples of spiritual sloth, 311
53. Causes and effects of envy, 311
54. Exhortations to shun envy, 312
55. Examples of envy, 312
56. Causes, consequences, and examples of discord, 313
57. What leads to strife, and the injuries and punishments which result therefrom, 313
58. Strife forbidden, 314
59. Causes, effects, and punishments of quarrels, 314
60. Sin the cause of war, 314
61. War a means of bringing men to their senses, 317
62. Soldiers to be encouraged to fight in a just war, 317
63. Prayers for victory in war, 319
64. The blessings of peace, 320

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 66. Malice, and punishment of the sin of scandal, 321        | body, 327  |
| 66. The care with which scandal giving is to be avoided, 321 | 74. Blessings of wisdom in the understanding and the will, 327 |
| 67. Warnings against giving and taking scandal, 323          | 75. Wisdom bestows joy, peace, and stability of mind, 328      |
| 68. Pharisean scandal not to be heeded, 323                  | 76. Wisdom brings honour and glory, 328                        |
| 69. The gift of wisdom, * 323                                | 77. Wisdom gives prosperity, 329                               |
| 70. God the Author of wisdom, 324                            | 78. Misery of him who despises wisdom, 329                     |
| 71. Qualities and conditions of wisdom, 325                  | 79. Bliss of him who seeks wisdom, 330                         |
| 72. How to acquire wisdom, 325                               | 80. The wise and foolish man contrasted, 330                   |
| 73. Blessings of wisdom in the soul and                      | 81. Exhortations of wisdom, 331                                |
|  | 82. Cries of the soul seeking wisdom, 332                      |

## PART IV.

## INTRODUCTION.

## PRUDENCE AND ITS CONTRARY VICES, 333.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. True prudence commended, 334  | 8. Counsel to be sought, and from whom, 337   |
| 2. Fruits and effects of true prudence, 334  | 9. To seek counsel from many useless and hurtful, 337                                       |
| 3. Human prudence uncertain and deceitful, 334   | 10. The counsel of the wicked shall perish, 338   |
| 4. Prudence of the wicked condemned, 335   | 11. The Word of God will abide for ever, 339  |
| 5. Examples of prudence, 335   | 12. God and His priests the Counsellors of men; punishment for despising their counsel, 339 |
| 6. Ejaculatory prayers for prudence, 336   | 13. Fruits of imprudence and folly, 340   |
| 7. Office of prudence to consult, to judge, and to execute rightly. Causes and effects of counsel, 336 |   |

## PART V.

## INTRODUCTION.

## JUSTICE AND THE CONTRARY VICES, 341.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Praises and effects of justice in general and in particular, 342             | 10. Rewards and works of the just judge, 349  |
| 2. Contrasts between the just and unjust, 343                                   | 11. Advice to judges, 349   |
| 3. All sins of injustice forbidden by God, 344                                  | 12. Example of good and evil judges, 350  |
| 4. Injustice judged and punished by God, 344                                    | 13. Ejaculations of the soul imploring the Divine Judgment, 350   |
| 5. Injustice in judges and magistrates especially visited by God's justice, 345 | 14. Undue partiality for one more than for another, 351   |
| 6. Unjust conduct in judgments and in taking bribes, 346                        | 15. Murder, homicide, mutilation, and suicide, 351  |
| 7. Punishment of unjust judges, 346   | 16. Adultery and other sins of impurity, unjust violations of the body; gravity of these sins; exhortations to shun them, 352 |
| 8. Virtues necessary for a judge, 347   | 17. Adultery punished both in body and soul, 353  |
| 9. Judicial acts to be carefully carried out, 348                               | 18. Adulterers punished in reputation,  |

\* Which, according to St. Thomas, answers to charity (22 q. 4-6).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| honour, and posterity, 354  | 30. The detractor to be punished and repulsed, 361                 |
| 19. Accidental injustice; theft and robbery forbidden, 354                                    | 31. God forbids calumny and false testimony, 362                   |
| 20. Punishments of theft, 355   | 32. Mischief and punishment of calumny, 362                        |
| 21. Offerings of stolen goods displeasing to God, 356   | 33. Effects and punishment of false testimony, 363                 |
| 22. Examples of theft punished and prevented, 357   | 34. Examples of the punishment of calumny and perjury, 363         |
| 23. The great impiety of deceit and fraud, 357  | 35. Ejaculations of the soul against calumny, 364                  |
| 24. Deceit visited upon the head of the deceiver, 358   | 36. Effects and injury of evil-speaking to the evil, 364           |
| 25. The deceitful man injurious to himself and his friends; hateful alike to God and man, 359 | 37. Effects and injury of evil-speaking to the person injured, 364 |
| 26. Unjust injury of reputation and honour; what the detractor may be compared to, 359        | 38. Railing forbidden by God, 365                                  |
| 27. Effects and harm of detraction, and its punishments, 359                                  | 39. God punishes the scorner, 365                                  |
| 28. Detraction forbidden in general and in particular, 360                                    | 40. Ejaculations for averting scornful abuse, 366                  |
| 29. Detractors to be prayed for, 361  | 41. Effects, injury, and punishment of tale-bearing, 367           |
|   | 42. Tale-bearing forbidden by God, 367                             |

## PART VI.

## INTRODUCTION.

## RELIGION AND OTHER VIRTUES CONNECTED WITH JUSTICE WHICH BIND LEGALLY, 368.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Man's duties to God, 368  | 15. Ejaculations of the supplicant imploring to be heard, 377  |
| 2. Prayer commended by God; preparation of the soul for prayer, 369  | 16. Meditation and contemplation of the law, the glory, and the wonderful works of God, 378              |
| 3. He who prays to be in the grace of God, 370   | 17. Peace of mind and purity of heart necessary for meditation and contemplation, 380                    |
| 4. Confidence in God necessary in prayer, 370  | 18. Effects and fruits of the contemplation of Divine things, 380  |
| 5. Prayer to be humble, attentive, and persevering, 371  | 19. Place and circumstances suitable for meditation and prayer, 381                                      |
| 6. Objects of prayer; for whom we should pray, 371   | 20. Examples of meditation, 382  |
| 7. Prayer to be offered for all, especially for kings, magistrates, and for the Household of Faith, 372                  | 21. An oath lawful under the proper conditions; all rash oaths forbidden, 382                            |
| 8. Prayer to be offered always, especially in the morning, in times of sadness and of adversity, and at fixed hours, 372 | 22. Perjury forbidden and punished, 383  |
| 9. Inducements to prayer, 373  | 23. Vows made to God by no means to be retracted, 384  |
| 10. Petition the principal part of prayer, 373   | 24. The necessity of keeping vows made to God, 385   |
| 11. Impediments and helps to prayer of petition, 374   | 25. Tithes and other offerings, 385  |
| 12. Fruits of prayer as regards the internal and external goods of the soul and body, 374                                | 26. Observance of feast days. Greater indulgence allowed on those days, within bounds of moderation, 386 |
| 13. Ejaculatory prayers for pardon of sin, 376   | 27. God to be glorified and praised with all our strength: man cannot go far enough, 388                 |
| 14. Ejaculations for times of adversity, 377   | 28. Man to be praised for virtue only after death, 389   |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 29. Divination, auguries, soothsaying<br>forb'dden by God, 389              | 41. De-generacy of these latter days, 398   |
| 30. Effects, evils, and punishments of<br>sins opposed to religion, 3-9     | 42. Warnings against apostacy from<br>religion, exhortation to repentance,<br>399             |
| 31. Evils of blasphemy, its prohibition<br>and punishments, 390             | 43. Praises of evangelical poverty, 400   |
| 32. Parents to be honoured, obeyed;<br>their virtues to be imitated, 391    | 44. The poor in spirit highly commended.<br>Punishment of breaking the vow<br>of poverty, 400 |
| 33. Practical piety towards parents; pun-<br>ishment of its neglect, 392    | 45. Praises of chastity, evangelical chas-<br>tity above all, 401                             |
| 34. Duties of parents to children, 393                                      | 46. Praises, rewards, and counsels of vir-<br>ginity, 402                                     |
| 35. Love of God to be preferred to love of<br>parents or children, 394      | 47. Obedience and deference to be shown<br>to God, prelates, and superiors, 403               |
| 36. We should choose our state of life<br>seriously, and live up to it, 395 | 48. Perfection, promptitude, and fruits<br>of obedience, 404                                  |
| 37. Praises of religion and of those who<br>practise it, 395                | 49. Gravity and punishment of disobe-<br>dience; rewards of obedience, 405                    |
| 38. Blessings of a Divine calling, 396                                      | 50. Notable examples of obedience from<br>the Old Testament, 406                              |
| 39. Offices and duties of a religious life<br>to be highly esteemed, 397    | 51. Notable examples of obedience from<br>the New Testament, 407                              |
| 40. Men should live worthily of their<br>vocation, 397                      |   |

## PART VII.

## OTHER VIRTUES CONNECTED WITH JUSTICE MORALLY BINDING, 408.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Fruits of liberality, 408   | 17. Affability and kindness, 422  |
| 2. Instances of liberality, 409  | 18. The right use of the tongue, 422  |
| 3. Avarice: how great and how common<br>a sin, 410   | 19. Advice to those who speak, 423  |
| 4. From avarice comes eternal damna-<br>tion; the curse of nations; sorrow<br>and trouble, 412 | 20. Of speaking with prudence, mild-<br>ness, moderation, and at the right<br>time and place, 423 |
| 5. Avarice darkens the mind and cor-<br>rupts the heart, 413                                   | 21. Fruits of the right use of the tongue,<br>424   |
| 6. The avaricious man: ever longing but<br>never satisfied, 413                                | 22. Unbridled speech marks the foolish<br>man, 425  |
| 7. The covetous man wrongs himself in<br>body and soul, and ruins his own<br>life, 414         | 23. Indiscreet use of the tongue, 425   |
| 8. The praises of the man who is gene-<br>rous and contented, 414                              | 24. Abuse of liberty of speech, 426   |
| 9. Examples of the punishment of<br>avarice, 415   | 25. Contrasts between the words of the<br>wise and the foolish man, 427                           |
| 10. Examples, consequences, and pun-<br>ishments of avarice and luxury,<br>416                 | 26. Examples of wise speech, 427  |
| 11. Gratitude and thanksgiving com-<br>mended, 416   | 27. Ejaculatory prayers for wisdom in<br>speech, 428  |
| 12. Notable instances of gratitude, 417  | 28. Truth and fidelity. The heinousness<br>of a lie, 428  |
| 13. Ejaculatory acts of thanksgiving for<br>general and particular favours, 418                | 29. The evil consequences of a lie, 428   |
| 14. Effects of ingratitude, 419  | 30. Truth to be spoken; all lying for-<br>bidden, 429   |
| 15. Forgetfulness of God's benefits con-<br>demned, 419  | 31. Sinners cannot escape the avenging<br>justice of God, 429                                     |
| 16. Examples of ingratitude, 421   | 32. God long-suffering, slow to chastise,<br>punishing, but not without mercy,<br>430             |
|  | 33. God's justice visits the guilty and<br>the innocent, but for different pur-<br>poses, 430     |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>34. Sinners are punished in and through their sins, 431</p> <p>35. Vengeance on sinners and correction of the just; the ends of Divine punishment, 432</p> <p>36. Utility and necessity of vindictive</p> | <p>justice from a human point of view; penalty of neglecting it; punishment to be duly administered, 432</p> <p>37. Examples of the punishment of men by means of their sins, 433</p> |
|--|---|

## PART VIII. INTRODUCTION.

### TEMPERANCE AND THE VIRTUES CONNECTED WITH IT, AND THE CONTRARY VICES, 436.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Nature content with a little; temperance commended, 436</p> <p>2. Rewards and other fruits of temperance, 436</p> <p>3. Intemperance harmful to the soul, 436</p> <p>5. Intemperance injurious to the body, and cause of evil fortune, 437</p> <p>6. Warnings against drunkenness and gluttony, 438</p> <p>6. Fruits of intemperance, 439</p> <p>7. Advice to diners-out, 439</p> <p>8. Examples of intemperance, 440</p> <p>9. Advantages and examples of fasting, 441</p> <p>10. Tests for total abstainers, 442</p> <p>11. Benefits and examples of continence and chastity, 444</p> <p>12. Incontinence and every kind of lust forbidden, 444</p> <p>13. Even the good are tempted to lust; only the unwary and unwise overcome by its temptation, 445</p> <p>14. Lust hurtful to both body and soul, 445</p> <p>15. Lust perverts both the understanding and the will, 446</p> <p>16. Lust robs man of health, wealth, and life, 447</p> <p>17. Lust destroys reputation and honour, 447</p> <p>18. The temporal and eternal punishments of the sins of lust, 447</p> <p>19. True and false shame, 448</p> <p>20. Acts of humility, 449</p> <p>21. The effects of humility, 450</p> <p>22. Humility the path to glory, 451</p> <p>23. Humility the science of the saints, 451</p> <p>24. Exhortations to humility, 451</p> <p>25. Examples of humility; prayers for the same, 452</p> | <p>26. Pride hateful both to God and man, 453</p> <p>27. Man must not pride himself in the gifts of grace or of Nature; man himself but dust and ashes, 453</p> <p>28. Pride injurious both to soul and body, 454</p> <p>29. Effects of pride in the understanding and will, 455</p> <p>30. Effects of pride as to reputation, honour, and dignity, 456</p> <p>31. Effects of pride on prosperity and offspring, 457</p> <p>32. Examples of the punishment of pride, 458</p> <p>33. Prayers of the soul asking deliverance from pride, 459</p> <p>34. Causes and punishments of ambition and arrogance, 459</p> <p>35. Effects of boasting and presumption, 460</p> <p>36. Meekness enjoined and praised; its fruits most excellent, 461</p> <p>37. Examples of meekness, 461</p> <p>38. Hatred and grievousness of anger, 462</p> <p>39. Effects of anger in body and soul, and on our neighbour, 463</p> <p>40. Wrongful anger forbidden, 464</p> <p>41. A mild answer turneth away wrath. On silence and submission, 464</p> <p>42. Examples of right and wrong kind of anger. Prayers for averting the Divine anger, 464</p> <p>43. Examples of zeal for the honour of God, 465</p> <p>44. Examples of indiscreet zeal; lukewarmness, 467</p> <p>45. Prayers for the gift of zeal and for the power of exercising it, 467</p> <p>46. Praise and fruits of modesty; the evils and punishments of immodesty in dress, 468</p> |
|--|---|



## PART IX. INTRODUCTION.

### FORTITUDE AND THE VIRTUES CONNECTED WITH IT, AND THE CONTRARY VICES, 469.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fortitude illustrated by examples, 470</li> <li>2. Constancy of the martyrs, 471</li> <li>3. Words of the seven Machabean brothers to Antiochus; their mother's words of encouragement, 472</li> <li>4. Fortitude and charity; roots of patience which spring up under adversity, 473</li> <li>5. To suffer for Christ a great happiness, 474</li> <li>6. Eternal life, joy of soul, health of body, wealth and honour, the rewards of patience, 475</li> <li>7. Exhortations to patience, 475</li> <li>8. Notable examples and rewards of patience, 477</li> <li>9. Aspirations of the soul sighing for patience, 477</li> <li>10. Penalties of impatience; murmuring, 478</li> <li>11. Constancy and perseverance necessary for salvation, 479</li> <li>12. Exhortations to perseverance, 480</li> <li>13. Censures on those who do not persevere, 481</li> <li>14. The cries of a soul craving for perseverance; examples, 481</li> <li>15. Inconstancy of sinners, 482</li> <li>16. Inconstancy found even in the Angels, 482</li> <li>17. Inconstancy a consequence of sin, forbidden and punished by God, 482</li> <li>18. Examples of inconstancy, 482</li> <li>19. Tribulation sent by God, and the consequence of sin, 483</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>20. Not all tribulation sent on account of sin, 484</li> <li>21. Tribulation sent by God for the trial and purification of men, 484</li> <li>22. Of those who do not profit by tribulation, 485</li> <li>23. Tribulation common to the good and the bad; makes those who bear it patiently friends of God, 485</li> <li>24. Joy and sorrow ordained for God's glory, 488</li> <li>25. Tribulation promised by God as a great blessing; coveted by the just, 487</li> <li>26. Tribulation of this life is light in comparison with the glory to come, 487</li> <li>27. Fruits of tribulation steadfastly borne, 488</li> <li>28. Tribulation arouses the soul to seek after God, 489</li> <li>29. The lament of God over souls that will not be converted by tribulation, 489</li> <li>30. Rewards of patiently enduring tribulation; penalties of chafing under them, 489</li> <li>31. Tribulation to be welcomed joyfully and esteemed as gain, 490</li> <li>32. He who helps the suffering has reason for confidence in God, 490</li> <li>33. Examples of endurance under suffering, 491</li> <li>34. Cries of a soul flying to God in the day of tribulation, 492</li> <li>35. Prayers addressed by our Lord as man to the Eternal Father, 492</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

## Book IV.

### INTRODUCTION.

#### ON THE WORD OF GOD, 495.

##### PART I.

#### ON THE WORD OF GOD.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Word of God in general, 496</li> <li>2. The unwritten Word of God, 496</li> <li>3. The written Word of God; its origin; where reserved, 4-7</li> <li>4. The Books of Holy Scripture, 499</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Holy Scripture Divinely inspired, 501</li> <li>6. The Church the Divine Interpreter of Holy Scripture, 503</li> <li>7. The Holy Scripture the text-book of</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>Priests. To be read to the people. Its reading and meditation encouraged, 504</p> <p>8. Holy Scripture to be studied with humility, faith, love, and prayer. Certain texts hard to be understood, 507</p> <p>9. Excellence, advantages, and fruits of</p> | <p>Holy Scripture, 509</p> <p>Names and emblems of Holy Scripture, 511</p> <p>10. Denial, alteration, misinterpretation, of Holy Scripture. Penalties, 512</p> <p>11. The soul's entreaties for light to understand and obey the Holy Scriptures, 515</p> |
|--|---|

## PART II. INTRODUCTION.

### ON THE CHURCH, 518.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Christ the Builder, the Invisible Head of the Church, and the Invisible Rock on which the Church is built, 517</li> <li>2. Christ builds His Church upon the foundation of the (1) Apostles and (2) Prophets, 518</li> <li>3. The twelve Apostles foreshadowed, 520</li> <li>4. Christ's commands to His twelve Apostles. He gives them wonderful powers, 522</li> <li>5. Christ (1) appoints seventy-two disciples. (2) His instructions to them, 524</li> <li>6. The Scripture life of St. Peter, Prince of the Apostles, and the visible Rock on which Christ built His Church, 525               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Simon, a fisherman of Bethsaida. Philip brings him to Jesus, Who announces that He will change his name to Peter, 525</li> <li>2. Peter transfers his dwelling to Capharnaum. Jesus preaches from Peter's boat. At Jesus' word Peter catches a miraculous draught of fishes. He falls down at the feet of Jesus. His call. He leaves all things to follow Jesus, 525</li> <li>3. Jesus visits Peter at Capharnaum, where He cures Peter's mother-in-law of a fever, 526</li> <li>4. Jesus' discourse to Peter and the rest. Jesus changes his name to Peter. Makes him the Rock of His Church, the bearer of the keys. Other texts, pointing to the doctrine of Papal Infallibility. Peter speaks in the name of all, 526</li> <li>5. Peter weeps for the dead. Witnesses the raising of Jairus'</li> </ol> </li> </ol> | <p>daughter. Walks upon the waters. Sighs. His prayer. His further confessions of Jesus. Of the Blessed Sacrament, 526</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Jesus rebukes Peter for dissuading Him from suffering. Eye-witness of the Transfiguration. Refers to it in his Epistle. Finds the tribute-money in the fish's mouth, 530</li> <li>7. Peter questions our Lord about forgiveness. Parables. Leaves all things. Christ's promise of temporal and eternal reward. Shows Jesus the withered fig-tree. Inquires about His second coming. Christ's discourses on the subject, 531</li> <li>8. Sent by Jesus to prepare a guest-chamber wherein to institute the Blessed Sacrament. Jesus washes his feet, notwithstanding his humble protest. Inquires who is Christ's betrayer. His self-confidence. Jesus foretells his fall, 533</li> <li>9. Accompanies Jesus in the Garden of Gethsemani. Cuts off the ear of Malchus. Christ's words to him. Follows Christ afar to the house of Caiaphas. His denial. His speedy and perfect repentance. "He wept bitterly," 535</li> <li>10. Peter the first to enter the Holy Sepulchre. The risen Christ sends him a message. The first Apostle to whom Christ appears. Peter's transport of joy at seeing Jesus on the shore. Casts himself into the sea after Him. Peter's second miraculous draught of fishes.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

- Jesus invites him to dine with Him on the shore, 538
11. His three declarations of love of Jesus, whereupon he is commissioned to feed and shepherd His sheep and His lambs, i.e., the whole flock. His curiosity about John checked, and his martyrdom on the cross foretold by Jesus, 539
  12. His retirement and prayer "in the upper room," waiting for the Holy Ghost. Peter as Head of the Church proposes the election of a new Apostle in Judas' place, 540
  13. His first pastoral discourse. Converts 3,000. Cures the cripple. His second pastoral discourse. Converts 5,000. In envy is seized, imprisoned, brought before the Sanhedrim. His intrepid defence. His discharge, 541
  14. Reproves Ananias and Saphira for avarice. They fall dead at his feet. His shadow cures the sick and demoniacs. He is thrown into a common prison. Released by an Angel. His brave defence. Gamaliel's intervention. Peter is scourged and dismissed, 545
  15. He confirms converts in Samaria. Denounces Simon Magus. Returns to Jerusalem, where he receives a fortnight's visit from St. Paul. Is named the Apostle of the Circumcision. Goes to Lydda. Cures there Eneas. Raises Tabitha to life at Jaffa, 547
  16. His midday prayer. His ecstasy of mind. His vision of clean and unclean beasts. Goes to Cesarea, warned by an Angel to baptise Cornelius. His discourse on the occasion. He defends the reception of Gentiles into the Church, 549
  17. Cast by Herod into prison: prayed for by the Church: released by an Angel. Peter's discourse at the General Council of Jerusalem. A decree passed that Gentile converts were not to be held to Jewish ceremonies. Some called themselves by his name, 552
  18. Revisits Antioch, his first See.
- He is corrected by St. Paul. His humility under it. He praises St. Paul: testifies to the inspiration of his writings. His warnings against private interpretation of Holy Scripture, 553
7. The Church the Mystical Body of Christ, 554
  8. The Holy Spirit in relation to the Church, 556
    1. Announced by the Prophets, 556
    2. Promised by our Lord, 557
    3. Descends upon the Church to abide with her unconditionally for ever, 558
  9. Rome the New Jerusalem of the New Law, 559
    1. Names of the Holy City, 559
    2. Chosen and beloved by God, 560
    3. The abode of the High Priest, 560
    4. Beloved by God's people, 560
    5. Beloved even by the heathen, 561
  10. The doctrine of Papal Infallibility, 562
  11. Ecclesiastical Hierarchy, 563
  12. The Pastors of the Church derive their mission from God, 564
  13. Legislative power, 566
 

Names and types of the Priests of the Church, 566
  14. The Church One, 567
  15. The Church Holy, 567
  16. The Church Catholic, 569
  17. The Church Apostolic, 571
  18. The Church Infallible, 572
  19. The Church Impregnable, 573
  20. Names and characteristics of the Church. Her glories and privileges, 573
  21. St. Michael the Archangel, Guardian General of the Church, 614
  22. Gabriel the Angel of the Incarnate Word, 616
  23. St. Raphael the guide of those who have lost their way, 617
    1. St. Raphael appears to young Tobias as a beautiful young man: assumes the name of Azarias: guides young Tobias on his journey to Media, 617
    2. The Angel bids Tobias to catch a monstrous fish: and to take out its heart, gall, and liver for medicines, 618
    3. The Angel and Tobias lodge with Raguel. The Angel bids Tobias to marry Sara: teaches

- how to drive the wicked spirit away : discourses on marriage, 619
4. The Angel and Tobias are entertained by Raguel. The Angel's reassuring words to Raguel: he chains up Asmodeus the devil in Upper Egypt, 619
  5. The Angel goes to Gabelus: recovers the money: and brings him to the wedding, 620
  6. The Angel conducts Tobias back to Ninive: bids him to adore God, and to give Him thanks for his safe return home: gives sight to the blind Tobias, 621
  7. Tobias offers half of all he has to St. Raphael for his pains. St. Raphael makes himself known: his parting words of advice. Vanishes out of sight, 621
- The Prayer of Tobias, 623
- Litany of the Holy Angels, 624
  24. Duties of the faithful towards their Pastors, 626
  25. Honour, invocation, and intercession of the Saints; communion with them, 627
  26. Holy images; relics; miracles worked by means of them, 631
  27. Calendar of the Scripture Saints, 632
  - Litany of all the Saints, 636
  28. False mission of sectarian teachers, 639
  29. A picture of the moral state of the world in these latter days, 641
  30. Persecution of Antichrist, 642
  31. Final triumph of the Church, 645
  32. The Church suffering in Purgatory, 647
  33. The Church triumphant in Heaven, 649
  34. A prayer for the Church of God, 650
  35. Prayers for the conversion of our country, 651

### PART III. INTRODUCTION.

#### THE SACRAMENTS OF THE CHURCH, 654.

1. Sacraments in general, 655
- Types of the Holy Sacraments, 658
2. The Sacrament of Baptism, 658
3. Circumcision a type of Baptism, 659
4. The baptism of St. John, 662
5. The spiritual significance of Baptism, 663
6. Names and types of Baptism, 666
7. The ceremonies of Baptism, 666
  1. The breathing, 666
  2. The sign of the Cross, 667
8. The salt, 667
4. Exorcisms, 667
5. Holy oil of chrism, 667
6. The white garment, 668
7. The lighted torch, 668
8. Names and titles of the baptised, 669
9. Psalm: said in the Baptism of adults, 669
10. Sacrament of Confirmation. Dispositions for receiving it, 671

### INTRODUCTION.

#### THE HOLY EUCHARIST, 672.

- An Act of Expiation, 675
1. The Sacrament of the Holy Eucharist instituted by our Blessed Lord, 676
  2. The Blessed Sacrament foreshadowed and declared by the Prophets, 678
  3. The Blessed Sacrament promised by our Lord; His sacred teaching concerning It, 680
  4. The Holy Eucharist celebrated by the Apostles, 682
  5. Unleavened bread used for Consecration, 683
  6. Christ whole under either species, 683
  7. Benefits of the Blessed Sacrament, 684
  8. Names and titles of the Blessed Sacrament as the Food of the soul, 685
  9. Supreme worship due to our Lord God in the Blessed Sacrament, 687
  - Examples of worship, 687
  10. Divine praise due to our Lord God in the Blessed Sacrament, 687
  11. Invitation to bring honour and glory to our Lord God in the Most Holy Sacrament, 693
  12. Vocal and instrumental music in public worship, 696
  13. The Sacrifice of Christ upon the Cross, 699
- Two remarkable figures of the Sacri-

- sice of our Lord, 700
14. The perpetuity of the Sacrifice of the Cross in the Sacrifice of the Mass declared in prophecy, 701
  15. The Sacrifice of Holy Mass (1) promised and instituted by Christ, (2) and vindicated by the Apostles; (3) the Ritual of the Mass, 702
  16. Names and titles of our Lord as the Divine Victim of Expiation, 703
  17. Prayers before Mass, 704
  18. Scripture of Holy Mass, 707
  19. Prayers after Mass, 712
  20. The Temple and the Holy Things, 713
  21. The Reservation of the Blessed Sacrament, 713
  22. The Tabernacle the Dwelling-Place of Christ, 714
  23. The Lamp of the Sanctuary, 716
  24. The vestments of the Priest show forth the Passion and Death of our Lord, 717
  25. Accessory rites and ceremonies, 717
    1. Incense, 717
    2. Sprinkling of persons and blessing of things, 717
    3. Reading of Holy Scripture in church, 718
    4. Holy water, 718
    5. The Sanctuary bell, 718
  26. Benediction of the Blessed Sacrament, 719
  27. Perpetual adoration of the Blessed Sacrament, 719
  28. Nocturnal adoration, 720
  29. "The Forty Hours" prayer and adoration. Texts for meditation for each hour, 721
  30. The Eucharistic sufferings of our Lord, 728
  31. Prostrate prayer and adoration, 731
  32. Processions of the Blessed Sacrament, 731
  33. Other types and names of our Lord in the Blessed Sacrament, 732
  34. Sacramental, 734

## THE DENIAL AND ITS CONSEQUENCES.

## THE RECONCILIATION.

## THE REBUILDING OF JERUSALEM, THE CITY OF PEACE.

1. The denial of our Lord in the Blessed Sacrament, 737
2. The sins that led to His denial, 739
3. The consequent profanation and destruction of His Sanctuaries, 740
4. The simulation of the true Priesthood. The magnitude and consequence of this sin, 743
5. Simulation of the Priesthood foretold by our Lord. His Divine warnings, 746
6. Divine warnings against three classes of false prophets, 746
7. The lying spirit in the false priesthood, 747
8. The history of Michas, 747
9. False christs. Their coming foretold by our Lord. His warnings against them, 748
10. The false christs in the Temples of Christ. Divine honours and rites paid to them, 749
11. Those who disobey the Divine voice of the Church are easily seduced by the false christs, 750
12. The origin of the false christs, drawn by inference from the Book of Wisdom, 751
13. The false christs contrasted with the true Christ, 752
14. Friendly admonitions to the worshippers of the false christs, 752
15. Names and types of the false christs, 754
16. God will not treat as innocent those who are guilty, 756
17. Visitation by fire, 757
18. Under the parable of a boiling pot is foretold the visitation by fire, 760
19. The devastation by fire portrayed by figure, 761
20. Visitation by fire foretold in the Apocalypse, 761
21. Desolation of spirit, 763
22. A vivid picture of the spiritual calamities of our times, 766
23. A prayer in desolation, 767
24. A lamentation because the Lamp of the Sanctuary has gone out, 768
25. Those who mourn over the desolation of the Sanctuary, 769
26. Examples of mourners, 772
27. The seeking for Him Whom they had lost. The invitation Home. The reconciliation, 773
28. The penitential confessions and supplications, 775
29. The rebuilding of Jerusalem, the City of Peace, 775
30. Glorious promises made to the returners Home, 779
31. The emblem of the reunion of the scattered children of God into the City of Peace, 780

## INTRODUCTION.

## ON PENANCE, 781.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. The virtue of penance; its necessity; preached by the Prophets; by our Lord and His Apostles, 784 | 14. Honour due to the physician, and why. The apothecary, 796  |
| 2. Acknowledgment of sin necessary for its forgiveness, 788  | 15. The sickness of Ezechias, 796  |
| 3. The love of God to penitents, 787   | 16. Examples of those who were sick, 793   |
| 4. Public penance practised in calamitous times to appease God's anger, 788                          | 17. The Seven Penitential Psalms, 798  |
| 5. The repentance of Ninive, 789   | 18. Devotions for the visitation of the sick, 803  |
| 6. The Sacrament of Penance instituted by our Blessed Lord, 790                                      | 19. Devotions for the recommendation of a departing soul, 807  |
| 7. Sorrow for sin, 791   | 20. Sacrament of Holy Order. Its Divine institution, 814   |
| 8. Humble confession of sin, 792   | 21. Celibacy of the Priests, 814   |
| 9. Confession of sin under the Old Law, 793  | 22. Exhortation to Priests, 815  |
| 10. Satisfaction for sin after its guilt has been pardoned, 793                                      | 23. Priests must be ready to suffer, 817   |
| 11. Vicarious suffering, 794   | 1. From within, 817  |
| 12. The Sacrament of Extreme Unction, 794  | 2. From without, 818   |
| 13. Sickness, its causes and benefits, 799   | 24. The Sacrament of Matrimony: a contract that cannot be broken. Divorce forbidden. Exhortation to the married, 818 |
|  | 25. The marriage of Adam and Eve, 820  |

## Book V.

## ON SIN, JUSTIFICATION, MERIT, DEATH, JUDGMENT, HELL, AND HEAVEN.

## PART I.

## INTRODUCTION.

## ON SIN, 821.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Original sin, 822                                   | 8. Examples of various kinds of sins, 827 |
| 2. Mortal sin, 823                                     | 9. Objects of the sin of idolatry, 828    |
| 3. Venial sin, 824                                     | 10. Names and emblems of sin, 828         |
| 4. God not the Author of sin, 824                      | 11. Hatred of sin, 830                    |
| 5. Sins arise from ignorance, passion, and malice, 825 | 12. Prosperity of the wicked, 830         |
| 6. Habitual sin, 826                                   | 13. Divine threatenings, 832              |
| 7. Catalogue of sins, 828                              | 14. Names and types of the wicked, 835    |
|  | 15. A prayer for grace to flee sin, 836   |

## PART II.

## INTRODUCTION.

## ON JUSTIFICATION, 836.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. The forgiveness and blotting out of sin, 838    | 5. Sanctification by penance and other good works, 840 |
| 2. True justification, 838                         | 6. On wholesome fear, 841                              |
| 3. Interior sanctification, 839                    | 7. The firm confidence of the just, 843                |
| 4. Sanctification by faith, hope, and charity, 839 | 8. The vain presumption of the wicked, 844             |

## PART III.

## INTRODUCTION.

## ON MERIT, 845.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. The integrity and perfection of good works, 847  | His commandments, 852   |
| 2. Actions to be done not merely from natural but also from supernatural motives, and without admixture of sin, 847 | 8. The liberty of the sons of God clashes not with filial subjection; no sin without free act of the will, 853          |
| 3. The glory of Heaven the reward of good works, 848  | 9. God's commandments are possible in practice; charity, the fulfilment of the law, is not lost by slight failings, 853 |
| 4. Increasing grace and prosperity follow on good works, 848  | 10. On prayer, 854  |
| 5. To love God is to obey God, and to keep His commandments, 849  | 11. Fasting and abstinence, 856   |
| 6. The Ten Commandments, 850  | 12. On vows, 857  |
| 7. God strictly requires the keeping of   | 13. Vocation to the Priesthood and to the religious state, 858  |
|   | 14. On almsgiving, 860  |

## ON THE FOUR LAST THINGS.

## PART IV.

## INTRODUCTION.

## ON DEATH, AND THE RESURRECTION, 861.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Meditations on death.                                | 7. Blessedness of those who die in the Lord, 869         |
| 1. All must die; death the ordering of God, 861         | 2. Examples of saintly deaths, 870                       |
| 2. An appointed time to die; preparation for death, 863 | 3. Doctrine of the general Resurrection of the dead, 870 |
| 3. Brevity of life, 864                                 | 4. Belief in the Resurrection under the Old Law, 871     |
| 4. Frailty and uncertainty of life, 865                 | 5. St. Paul's discourse on the Resurrection, 873         |
| 5. Death of sinners, 868                                | 6. An allusion to the general Resurrection, 875          |
| 6. Death not to be feared; desired by the good, 868     |  |

## PART V.

## INTRODUCTION.

## ON JUDGMENT, 876.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. The doctrine of the Last Judgment, 877                                    | White Throne, 880  |
| 2. The Last Judgment as described by our Lord, the Judge; His sentences. 878 | 4. Christ, our Judge; all power given Him to do judgment, 881          |
| 3. The Judgment Seat; the Great  | 5. The Judgment Day; it will come suddenly; the Place of Judgment, 882 |

## PART VI. INTRODUCTION.

### ON HELL, 883.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Hell the abode of the wicked ; figures of Hell punishment, 885</li> <li>2. Unhappiness in Hell, 887               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Pain of loss, 887</li> <li>2. Pain of sense, 887</li> <li>3. Imprisonment and chains, 887</li> <li>4. Arrows and sword, 888</li> <li>5. Darkness, 888</li> <li>6. Smoke, 888</li> <li>7. Stench, 888</li> <li>8. Hunger and thirst, 889</li> <li>9. Food and drink, 889</li> <li>10. Occupation, 889</li> </ol> </li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>11. Derision and disgrace, 890</li> <li>12. Self reproach, 890</li> <li>13. Grief and sadness, 890</li> <li>14. Fruitless remorse, 891</li> <li>15. Despair, 891</li> <li>16. Second death, 892</li> <li>17. The eternity of Hell's torments, 892</li> <li>3. Those who are reserved unto Hell's torments, 892</li> <li>4. The inhabitants of Hell ; their coming visit to earth, 893</li> <li>5. A warning voice from the depths of Hell, 894</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

## PART VII. INTRODUCTION.

### ON HEAVEN, 895.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Heaven, the Abode of the good, described as seen in nine visions, 897               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. St. John's, 897</li> <li>2. St. John's, 898</li> <li>3. St. John's, 899</li> <li>4. St. John's, 900</li> <li>5. St. Stephen's, 901</li> <li>6. St. Paul's, 901</li> <li>7. St. Jacob's, 901</li> <li>8. St. Isaias's, 902</li> <li>9. St. Daniel's, 902</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Three glimpses of Heaven, 903               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Transfiguration of Christ, 903</li> <li>2. The glory of God shown to St. Ezechiel, 904</li> <li>3. The glory of God shown to Solomon, 904</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The Garden of Eden, a type of the Heavenly Paradise, 905</li> <li>4. Supreme happiness in Heaven, 905               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Perennial life, 905</li> <li>2. Perennial health, 905</li> <li>3. No more sorrow, 906</li> </ol> </li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. No more night, 906</li> <li>5. Divine comfort, 906</li> <li>6. Safety for ever, 906</li> <li>7. Stability for ever, 907</li> <li>1. The Beatific Vision, 907</li> <li>2. Fellowship with Christ, 907</li> <li>3. Perfect sanctity, 907</li> <li>4. Eternal Life, 908</li> <li>5. Eternal Peace, 908</li> <li>6. Eternal Joy, 908</li> <li>7. Eternal Rest, 909</li> <li>1. Company of the Blessed, 909</li> <li>2. Perfect knowledge, 909</li> <li>3. Divine food, 909</li> <li>4. Brightness, 910</li> <li>5. Glory and honour, 910</li> <li>6. The voice of harpers, 910</li> <li>7. Fulness of delight, 911</li> <li>5. How Heaven is to be won, 911</li> <li>6. Names and types of Hell and Heaven, 912</li> <li>7. The New Jerusalem, 914</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

## INDEX—915.



# THE SCRIPTURE TEXT-BOOK.

---

## BOOK I.

---

ON GOD,  
ONE IN NATURE AND THREE IN PERSONS,  
AUTHOR OF ALL THINGS;  
AND  
ON THE PRINCIPAL WORKS OF HIS HANDS.

---

Sacred Scripture treats of :

(1) The Divine Essence and Existence, and the Divine Attributes, negative and affirmative, which belong to God as One in Essence.

(2) The Ever Blessed Trinity: namely, God as Three in Persons.

(3) Created things, and in particular of Angels and of men.

(4) Jesus Christ, the Divine Expiator of the sins of the world; the God-Man, "Who is the Image of the Invisible God, the First-born of every creature; for in Him were all things created, and He is before all, and by Him all things consist, that in all things He may hold the primacy."—*Col. i. 15.*

(5) The Holy Virgin Mary, His Blessed Mother, and Queen of Angels and of Saints.

B

## PART I.

### GOD AND HIS DIVINE ATTRIBUTES.

#### 1.—NAMES OF GOD.

<i>Ex</i> 3, 14-15	God said to Moses: I AM WHO AM. He said: Thus shalt thou say to the children of Israel: HE WHO IS hath sent me to you.—And God said again to Moses: Thus shalt thou say to the children of Israel: The Lord God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, hath sent me to you: This is My name for ever, and this is My memorial unto all generations.	My name ADONAI I did not show them. Almighty is His name. Adore not any strange God: the Lord His name is jealous, He is a jealous God. Our Redeemer, the Lord of hosts is His name, the Holy One of Israel. They shall know that My name is the Lord. The Lord is His name. He is not ashamed to be called their God.	<i>Ex</i> 6, 4 <i>Ex</i> 15, 3 <i>Ex</i> 34, 14 <i>Is</i> 47, 4 <i>Je</i> 16, 21 <i>Am</i> 5, 8 <i>He</i> 11, 16.
--------------------	---	--	---

#### 2.—HIS ESSENCE AND EXISTENCE.

<i>Ex</i> 3, 14	I AM WHO AM. He said: Thus shalt thou say to the children of Israel: HE WHO IS hath sent me to you.	He is before all time. Before Abraham was made, I am. He that cometh to God must believe that He is. The fool said in his heart: There is no God.	<i>Eci</i> 1, 1 <i>Jn</i> 8, 58 <i>He</i> 11, 6 <i>Ps</i> 52, 1
<i>Je</i> 7, 11	I, I am He.		
<i>Jb</i> 9, 24	If it be not He, who is it, then?		
<i>Ps</i> 92, 2	Thou art from everlasting.		

#### 3.—HIS SIMPLICITY AND INCORPOREALITY.

<i>Jn</i> 4, 24	God is a spirit.	ing of art, and device of man	
<i>1 J</i> 1, 5	God is light, and in Him there is no darkness.	Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools.	<i>Ro</i> 1, 22
<i>Is</i> 40, 18	To whom, then, have you likened God? or what image will you make of Him?	They changed the glory of the incorruptible God into the likeness of the image of a corruptible man, and of birds, and of four-footed beasts, and of creeping things.	<i>Ro</i> 1, 23
<i>Ac</i> 17, 29	We must not suppose the Divinity to be like unto gold, or silver, or stone, the grav-		

4.—HIS UNITY.

<i>Dt 6, 4</i>	Our God is one Lord.	I am the Lord, and there is none else: there is no God besides Me.	<i>Is 45, 5</i>
<i>Dt 32, 39</i>	See ye that I alone am, and there is no other God besides Me. I will kill, and I will make to live; I will strike, and I will heal: and there is none that can deliver out of My hand.	I will not give My glory to another, nor My praise to graven things.	<i>Is 42, 8</i>
<i>W 14, 21</i>	They gave the incommunicable names to stones and wood.	I am the Lord thy God from the land of Egypt: and thou shalt know no God but Me, and there is no saviour besides Me.	<i>Os 13, 4</i>
<i>Is 43, 10</i>	Before Me there was no God formed, and after Me there shall be none.	Who is God but the Lord? There is no other God but Thou.	<i>Ps 17, 32</i> <i>W 12, 13</i>
<i>Is 44, 6</i>	I am the first, and I am the last, and besides Me there is no God.	One Lord, one Faith, one Baptism.	<i>Ep 4, 5</i>
		One God, and Father of all.	<i>Ep 4, 6</i>

5.—GOD, TRUTH AND LIFE.

<i>Je 10, 10</i>	But the Lord is the true God.	Daniel, for He is the Living God.	
<i>Dt 32, 4</i>	God is faithful, and without any iniquity.	We hope in the Living God.	<i>1 Ti 4, 10</i>
<i>Nu 23, 19</i>	God is not as man, that He should lie; nor as the son of man, that He should be changed. Hath He said, then, and will He not do? hath He spoken, and will He not fulfil?	It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the Living God.	<i>He 10, 31</i>
		In Him was life.	<i>Jn 1, 3</i>
		I am the Way, the Truth, and the Life.	<i>Jn 14, 6</i>
		All Thy ways are truth.	<i>P 118, 151</i>
<i>Da 6, 26</i>	Let all fear the God of	Just and true are Thy ways, O King of Ages.	<i>Ap 15, 3</i>

6.—HIS GOODNESS.

<i>Lu 18, 19</i>	None is good but God alone.	and help the counsel of the wicked?	
<i>Ps 73, 1</i>	How good is God to Israel, to them that are of a right heart!	Doth God pervert judgment, or doth the Almighty overthrow that which is just?	<i>Jb 8, 3</i>
<i>Ps 118, 68</i>	Thou art good.	Say not: It is through God that she (Wisdom) is not with me: for do not thou the things that He hateth. Say not: He hath caused me to err: for He hath no need of wicked men. The Lord hateth all abomination of error, and	<i>Eci 15, 11</i>
<i>La 3, 25</i>	The Lord is good to those who hope in Him, to souls who seek Him.		
<i>Jb 10, 3</i>	Doth it seem good to Thee that Thou shouldst calumniate me, and oppress me, the work of Thy own hands,		

- they that fear Him shall not love it.
- Ja* 1, 13 Let no man, when he is tempted, say that he is tempted by God. For God is not a tempter of evils, and He tempteth no man.
- Ha* 1, 13 Thy eyes are too pure to behold evil, and Thou canst not look on iniquity. Why lookest Thou upon them that do unjust things, and holdest Thy peace when the wicked devoureth the man that is more just than himself? Who can search out His ways? or who can say to Him: Thou hast wrought iniquity? One is good, God. *Jb* 36, 23 *Mt* 19, 17

**7.—HIS PERFECTION, WHICH CONTAINS IN AN EMINENT DEGREE THE PERFECTIONS OF ALL CREATED THINGS.**

- Ps* 144, 3 Great is the Lord, and greatly to be praised.
- Ps* 34, 10 All my bones shall say: Lord, who is like to Thee?
- Ba* 3, 36 This is our God, and there shall no other be accounted of in comparison of Him.
- Ap* 15, 4 Who shall not fear Thee, O Lord, and magnify Thy Name? For Thou only art holy: for all nations shall come, and shall adore in Thy sight, because Thy judgments are manifest.
- 1 K* 2, 2 There is none holy as the Lord is: for there is no other beside Thee, and there is none strong like our God.
- 2 M* 1, 24 O Lord God, Creator of all things, dreadful and strong, just and merciful, Who alone art the good King, Who alone art gracious, Who alone art just, and almighty, and eternal, Who deliverest Israel from all evil, Who didst choose the fathers, and didst sanctify them. Who is the blessed and only mighty, Who only hath immortality. I will show thee all good. *Ex* 33, 19 He that planted the ear, *Eci* 24, 25 shall He not hear? or He that formed the eye, doth He not consider?—In Me is all grace of the way and of the truth, in Me is all hope of life and of virtue.
- Shall not I, that make others to bring forth children, Myself bring forth? saith the Lord. Shall I, that give generation to others, be barren? saith the Lord thy God.
- In Him was life. *Jn* 1, 3 Be ye therefore perfect, as your Heavenly Father is perfect. *Mt* 5, 48

**8.—HIS INFINITY.**

- Ba* 3, 25 Behold, God is high in His strength, and none is like Him among the lawgivers.
- Ps* 144, 3 Of His greatness there is no end.
- Jb* 36, 22 It is great, and hath no end; it is high and immense. Behold, the Gentiles are as a drop of a bucket, and are counted as the smallest grain of a balance: behold, the islands are as a little dust.—And Libanus shall not be enough to burn, nor the

beasts thereof sufficient for a burnt-offering.—All nations are before Him as if they had no being at all, and are counted to Him as nothing and vanity.

W 11, 23 The whole world before

Thee is as the least grain of the balance, and as a drop of the morning dew, that falleth down upon the earth.

I shall be satisfied when Thy glory shall appear. Ps 16, 15

### 9.—HIS IMMENSITY.

Am 9, 1-4 There shall be no flight for them, and he that shall flee of them shall not be delivered.—Though they go down even to hell, thence shall My hand bring them out: and though they climb up to heaven, thence will I bring them down.—And though they be hid in the top of Carmel, I will search and take them away from thence: and though they hide themselves from My eyes in the depth of the sea, there will I command the serpent, and he shall bite them;—And if they go into captivity before their enemies, there will I command the sword, and it shall kill them. And I will set my eyes upon them for evil, and not for good.

Je 23, 23 Am I, think ye, a God at hand, saith the Lord, and not a God afar off?—Shall a man be hid in secret places, and I not see him? saith the Lord. Do not I fill heaven and earth? saith the Lord.

Ps 138, 7-13 Whither shall I go from Thy Spirit? or whither shall I flee from Thy Face?—If I ascend into heaven, Thou art there: if I descend into hell, Thou art present.—If I take my wings early in the morning, and dwell in the uttermost parts of the sea:—Even there also shall Thy hand

lead me, and Thy right hand shall hold me.—And I said: Perhaps darkness shall cover me: and night shall be my light in my pleasures.—But darkness shall not be dark to Thee, and night shall be light as the day: the darkness thereof, and the light thereof, are alike to Thee.—For Thou hast possessed my reins: Thou hast protected me from my mother's womb.

Heaven is My throne, and the earth My footstool: what is this house that you will build to Me? and what is this place of My rest? Is 66, 1

He is not far from every one of us; for in Him we live and move and be. Ac 17, 28

The Spirit of the Lord hath filled the whole world; and that which containeth all things hath knowledge of the voice. W 1, 7

All the earth is full of His glory. Is 6, 3

Peradventure thou wilt comprehend the steps of God, and will find out the Almighty perfectly?—He is higher than heaven, and what wilt thou do? He is deeper than hell, and how wilt thou know?—The measure of Him is longer than the earth, and broader than the sea. Jb 11, 7

Dost not thou think that God is higher than heaven? Jb 22, 12

- and is elevated above the height of the stars? *Ge 17, 1*  
*3 K 8, 27* If heaven and the heavens perfect.  
 of heavens cannot contain I set the Lord always in *Ps 15, 8*  
 Thee, how much less this my sight: for He is at my  
 house which I have built? right hand, that I be not  
 moved.

## 10.—HIS IMMUTABILITY.

- Ps 101, 26* In the beginning, O Lord, generations, unto a thousand  
 Thou foundedst the earth; generations.  
 and the heavens are the He that hath received His *Jn 3, 33*  
 works of Thy hands:—They testimony hath set to his seal  
 shall perish, but Thou remainest; and all of them that God is true. For He  
 shall grow old like a garment: and as a vesture Thou Whom God hath sent speak-  
 shalt change them, and they eth the words of God.  
 shall be changed.—But Thou The triumpher in Israel *1 K 15, 29*  
 art always the self-same, will not spare, and will not  
 and Thy years shall not be moved to repentance: for  
 fail. He is not a man that He  
 should repent.  
*Je 1, 11* Whatseest thou, Jeremias? God is true, and every *Ro 3, 4*  
 And I said: I see a rod watch- man a liar.  
 ing.—And the Lord said to If we deny Him, He will *2 Ti 2, 12*  
 me: Thou hast seen well; for also deny us: if we believe  
 I will watch over My Word not, He continueth faithful:  
 to perform it. He cannot deny Himself.  
*Mt 24, 35* Heaven and earth shall He is faithful, Who hath *1 T 5, 24*  
 pass, but My words shall not called you, Who will also do  
 pass. it.  
*He 6, 17* Wherein God, meaning God is faithful, Who will *2 T 3, 3*  
 more abundantly to show to strengthen and keep you  
 the heirs of the promise the from evil.  
 immutability of His counsel, Every best gift, and every *Ja 1, 17*  
 interposed an oath:—That perfect gift, is from above,  
 by two immutable things, in coming down from the Father  
 which it is impossible for of lights, with Whom there  
 God to lie, we may have the is no change, nor shadow of  
 strongest comfort, who have alteration.  
 fled for refuge to hold fast God is not as a man that *Nu 23, 19*  
 the hope set before us. He should lie, nor as the son  
 of man that He should be  
 changed. Hath He said then,  
*Dt 7, 9* Thou shalt know that the and will He not do? hath He  
 Lord thy God, He is a strong spoken, and will He not  
 and faithful God, keeping fulfil?  
 His covenant and mercy to I am the Lord, and I change *Ma 3, 6*  
 them that love Him, and to them that keep His com-  
 not.

11.—HIS ETERNITY.

- Is 40, 28 Knowest thou not, or hast thou not heard? The Lord is the Everlasting God, Who hath created the ends of the earth: He shall not faint nor labour, neither is there any searching out of His wisdom.
- Ps 89, 2 Before the mountains were made, or the earth and the world was formed; from eternity and to eternity Thou art God.
- Ps 101, 25 Thy years are unto generation and generation.
- The Lord shall reign for ever and for ever. *Ex 15, 11*
- The number of His years is inestimable. *Jb 36, 26*
- Thus saith the High and the Eminent that inhabiteth eternity. *Is 57, 16*
- The mercy of the Lord is from eternity. *Ps 102, 17*
- His power is an everlasting power. *Da 7, 14*
- I was set up from eternity. *Pv 8, 23*
- Thy Word, O Lord, is for ever. *P 118, 142*

12.—HIS INCOMPREHENSIBILITY.

- W 9, 13 Who among men is he who can know the counsel of God? or who can think what the will of God is?
- W 9, 16 And hardly do we guess aright at things that are upon the earth: and with labour do we find the things that are before us. But the things that are in heaven, who shall search out?—And who shall know Thy thought, except Thou give wisdom, and send Thy Holy Spirit from above?
- Jb 36, 23-26 Who can search out His ways? or who can say to Him: Thou hast wrought iniquity?—Remember that thou knowest not His work, concerning which men have sung.—All men see Him, every one beholdeth afar off.—Behold, God is great, exceeding our knowledge; the number of His years is inestimable.
- Jb 11, 7 Peradventure thou wilt comprehend the steps of God, and wilt find out the Almighty perfectly?
- Eci 42, 23 O, how desirable are all His works! and what we can know is but as a spark.
- Who first hath perfect knowledge of her, and a weaker shall not search her out.—For her thoughts are more vast than the sea, and her counsels more deep than the great ocean. *Eci 24, 38-39*
- As thou knowest not what is the way of the spirit, nor how the bones are joined together in the womb of her who is with child; so thou knowest not the works of God, Who is the Maker of all. *Eci 11, 5*
- Lo, these things are said in part of His ways: and seeing we have heard scarce a little drop of His word, who shall be able to behold the thunder of His greatness? *Jb 26, 14*
- Who hath numbered the sand of the sea, and the drops of rain, and the days of the world? Who hath measured the height of heaven, and the breadth of the earth, and the depth of the abyss?—Who hath searched out the wisdom of God that goeth before

all things?—To whom hath the discipline of Wisdom been revealed and made manifest? and who hath understood the multiplicity of her steps?—There is One most high Creator, almighty, and a powerful King, and greatly to be feared, Who sitteth upon His Throne, and is the God of dominion.—He created her in the Holy Ghost, and saw her, and numbered her, and measured her.

Who only hath immortality, and inhabiteth light inaccessible, Whom no man hath seen, nor can see, to Whom be honour and empire everlasting. Amen. 1 Ti 6, 16

Ro 11, 33

O the depth of the riches of the wisdom and of the knowledge of God! How incomprehensible are His judgments, and how unsearchable His ways!—For who hath known the mind of the Lord? or who hath been His counsellor?

Je 32, 19

Great in counsel, and in-

We know in part, and we prophesy in part.—But when that which is perfect is come, that which is in part shall be done away.—When I was a child, I spoke as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child. But when I became a man, I put away the things of a child. 1 Co 13, 9

### 13.—HIS UNUTTERABLENESS.

W 17, 1

Thy judgments, O Lord, are great, and Thy words cannot be expressed: therefore undisciplined souls have erred.

Ecc 18, 2

Who is able to declare His works?—For who shall search out His glorious acts?—And who shall show forth the power of His Majesty? or who shall be able to declare His mercy?—Nothing may be taken away, nor added, neither is it possible to find out the glorious works of

God:—When a man hath done, then he shall begin; and when he leaveth off, he shall be at a loss.

Cold cometh out of the north, and to God praise with fear.—We cannot find Him worthily: He is great in strength, and in judgment, and in justice, and He is ineffable.—Therefore men shall fear Him, and all that seem to themselves to be wise shall not dare to behold Him. Jb 37, 22-24

### 14.—GOD KNOWN BY THE THINGS THAT ARE MADE.

Ro 1, 19

That which is known of God is manifest in them. For God hath manifested it unto them.—For the invisible things of Him, from the creation of the world, are clearly

seen, being understood by the things that are made: His Eternal Power also and Divinity: so that they are inexcusable.

By these good things that W 13, 1



are seen they could not understand Him that is, neither by attending to the works have acknowledged who was the workman. — But have imagined either the fire, or the wind, or the swift air, or the circle of the stars, or the great water, or the sun and moon, to be the gods that rule the world.—With whose beauty, if they being delighted, took them to be gods: let them know how much the Lord of them is more beautiful than they; for the first Author of beauty made all those things.—Or if they admired their power and their effects, let them under-

stand by them that He that made them is mightier than they:—For by the greatness of the beauty, and of the creature, the Creator of them may be seen, so as to be known thereby.

If they were able to know so much, as to make a judgment of the world, how did they not more easily find out the Lord thereof? W13, 9

To know Thee is perfect justice; and to know Thy justice, and Thy power, is the root of immortality. W15, 3

The sensual man perceiveth not these things that are of the Spirit of God. 1 C2, 14

### 15.—THE BEATIFIC VISION.

*Mt* 5, 8 Blessed are the clean of heart, for they shall see God. We know that when He shall appear we shall be like 1 J3, 2

*Mt* 18, 10 Their angels in heaven always see the face of My Father Who is in heaven. to Him: because we shall see Him as He is.

*Jn* 14, 21 He that loveth Me shall be loved of My Father: and I will love him, and will manifest Myself to him. His servants shall serve Him, and they shall see His face: and His name shall be on their foreheads. Ap22, 4

*1 C* 13, 12 We see now through a glass in a dark manner; but then face to face. Now I know in part; but then I shall know even as I am known. This is Eternal Life: that they may know Thee, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, Whom Thou hast sent. Jn17, 3

### 16.—HIS KNOWLEDGE, WHEREBY HE KNOWS HIMSELF, THINGS CREATED, TO BE CREATED AND CREATABLE.

*Es* 14, 14 O Lord, Who hast the knowledge of all things! spirit of a man that is in him? So the things also that

*Is* 21, 22 Shall any one teach God knowledge, Who judgeth those that are high? are of God no man knoweth, but the Spirit of God.

*Ps* 138, 6 Thy knowledge has become wonderful to me: it is high, and I cannot reach it. The spirit searcheth all things; yea, the deep things of God. 1 C2, 10

*1 C* 2, 11 What man knoweth the things of a man, but the The eyes of the Lord behold all the earth. If thou say: I have not 1 P16, 1  
Ps24, 12

- strength enough, He that seeth into the heart, He understandeth, and nothing deceiveth the Keeper of thy soul, and He shall render to a man according to his works.
- He 4, 13* Neither is there any creature invisible in His sight: but all things are naked and open to His eyes, to Whom our speech is
- 1 J 3, 20* God is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things.
- Ps 33, 16* The eyes of the Lord are upon the just, and His ears unto their prayers.
- Ps 7, 10* The searcher of hearts and reins is God.
- Je 17, 9-10* The heart of man is perverse above all things, and unsearchable. Who can know it—I am the Lord Who search the heart and prove the reins; Who give to every one according to his way, and according to the fruit of his devices.
- Je 45, 11* Thus saith the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, his Maker: Ask Me of things to come concerning My children, and concerning the work of My hands give ye charge to Me.
- Je 1, 5* Before I formed thee in the bowels of thy mother, I knew thee; and before thou camest forth out of the womb, I sanctified thee, and made thee a prophet unto the nations.
- Da 13, 42* O Eternal God, Who knowest hidden things, Who knowest all things before they come to pass.
- W 8, 8* If a man desire much knowledge, she knoweth things past, and judgeth of things to come: she knoweth the subtleties of speeches, and the solutions of arguments: she knoweth signs and wonders before they be done, and the events of times and ages.
- I know that the King of Egypt will not let you go, but by a mighty hand. *Ex 3, 19*
- I know their thoughts, and what they are about to do this day, before that I bring them into the land which I have promised them. *De 31, 21*
- My bone is not hidden from Thee, which Thou hast made in secret: and my substance in the lower parts of the earth.—Thy eyes did see my imperfect being, and in Thy Book all shall be written: days shall be formed, and no one in them. *Ps 138, 15-16*
- He beholdeth the ends of the world, and looketh on all things that are under heaven. *Jb 28, 24*
- He hath searched out the deep, and the heart of man, and considered their crafty devices.—For the Lord knoweth all knowledge, and hath beheld the signs of the world: He declareth the things that are past, and the things that are to come, and revealeth the traces of hidden things.—No thought escapeth Him, and no word can hide itself from Him. *Eci 42, 18-20*
- The wisdom of God is great, and He is strong in power, seeing all men without ceasing.—The eyes of the Lord are towards them that fear Him, and He knoweth all the work of man. *Eci 15, 19-20*
- Their ways are always before Him, they are not hidden from His eyes.—Over every nation He set a ruler.—And Israel was made the manifest

portion of God.—And all their works are as the sun in the sight of God: and His eyes are continually upon their ways.—Their covenants were not hid by their iniquity, and all their iniquities are in the sight of God.

- Eci* 39, 24 The works of all flesh are before Him, and there is nothing hid from His eyes.—He seeth from eternity to eternity, and there is nothing wonderful before Him.
- Jb* 34, 21 His eyes are upon the ways of man, and He considereth all their steps.—There is no darkness, and there is no shadow of death, when they may be hid who work iniquity.
- P* 146, 4 Who telleth the number of the stars, and calleth them all by their names.—Great is our Lord, and great is His power; and of His wisdom there is no number.
- Jb* 40, 13-14, 27-28 Who hath forwarded the spirit of the Lord? or who hath been His counsellor and hath taught Him?—With whom hath He consulted, and who hath instructed Him, and taught Him the path of justice, and taught Him knowledge, and showed Him the way of understanding?—Why sayest thou, O Jacob, and speakest, O Israel: My way is hid from the Lord, and my judgment is passed over from my God?—Knowest thou not, or hast thou not heard? The Lord is the Everlasting God, Who hath created the ends of the earth: He shall not faint nor labour, neither is there any searching out of His wisdom.
- Behold it is written before Me: I will not be silent, but I will render and repay into their bosom.
- My eyes are upon all their ways: they are not hid from My Face, and their iniquity hath not been hid from My Eyes.
- I know Ephraim, and Israel is not hid from Me; for now Ephraim has committed fornication, Israel is defiled.
- The Lord beholdeth the ways of man, and considereth all his steps.
- The eyes of the Lord in every place behold the good and the evil.
- Hell and destruction are before the Lord: how much more the hearts of the children of men!
- All the ways of a man are open to His Eyes: the Lord is the weigher of spirits.
- Behold, my Witness is in heaven, and He that knoweth my conscience is on High.—My friends are full of words; my eye poureth out tears to God.
- Is* 65, 6
- Jb* 16, 17
- Os* 5, 3
- P* 5, 21
- P* 15, 3
- P* 15, 11
- P* 16, 2
- Jb* 16, 20-21

17.—HIS OMNISCIENCE DENIED BY THE WICKED THAT THEY MAY SIN MORE FREELY. HIS ALL-SEEING EYE KEEPS THE GODLY FROM SIN.

- Jb* 22, 13-14 Thou sayest: What doth God know? and He judgeth as it were through a mist.—The clouds are His covert, and He doth not consider our things, and He walketh about the poles of heaven.—Dost thou desire to keep the path of

ages, which wicked men have trodden?

*Eci* 16, 16-20 Say not: I shall be hidden from God, and who shall remember me from on high?—In such a multitude I shall not be known: for what is my soul in such an immense creation?—Behold, the heaven, and the heavens of heavens, the deep, and all the earth, and the things that are in them, shall be moved in His sight,—The mountains also, and the hills, and the foundations of the earth: when God shall look at them, they shall be shaken with trembling.—And in all these things the heart is senseless: and every heart is understood by Him.

*Eci* 23, 25-29 Every man that passeth beyond his own bed, despising his own soul, and saying: Who seeth me?—Darkness compasseth me about, and the walls cover me, and no man seeth me: whom do I fear? the Most High will not remember my sins.—And he understandeth not that His eye seeth all things, for such a man's fear driveth from him the fear of God, and the eyes of men fearing him;—And he knoweth not that the Eyes of the Lord are far brighter than the sun, beholding round about all the ways of men, and the bottom of the deep, and looking into the hearts of men, into the most hidden parts.—For all things were known to the Lord God before they were created; so also after they were perfected He beholdeth all things.

Woe to you that are deep of heart to hide your counsel from the Lord; and their works are in the dark, and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us?—This thought of yours is perverse: as if the clay should think against the potter, and the work should say to the maker thereof: Thou madest me not: or the thing framed should say to him that fashioned it: Thou understandest not.

I made a covenant with my eyes, that I would not so much as think upon a virgin.—For what part should God from above have in me, and what inheritance the Almighty from on high?—Doth He not consider my ways, and number all my steps?

Blessed is the man that shall continue in Wisdom, and that shall meditate in His justice, and in his mind shall think of the all-Seeing Eye of God.

Lord, Thou hast proved me, and hast known me: Thou hast known my sitting down and my rising up. Thy knowledge is become wonderful to me: it is high, and I cannot reach to it.—Whither shall I go from Thy Spirit? or whither shall I flee from Thy Face?—If I ascend into heaven, Thou art there: if I descend into hell, Thou art present.—If I take my wings early in the morning, and dwell in the uttermost parts of the sea:—Even there also shall Thy hand lead me, and Thy right hand shall hold me.

18.—HIS WILL IRRESISTIBLE.

- |                   |  |  |                 |
|-------------------|--|--|-----------------|
| <i>Ge</i> 50, 19  | Fear not: can we resist the will of God?                           | made: He commanded, and they were created.   |                 |
| <i>Ro</i> 9, 19   | Who resisteth His will?  | By faith we understand   | <i>He</i> 11, 3 |
| <i>Ge</i> 1, 3    | God said: Be light made, and light was made.                       | that the world was framed by the Word of God, that from invisible things visible things might be made. |                 |
| <i>Ps</i> 113, 11 | Our God is in heaven: He hath done all things whatsoever He would. | Thy power is at hand when Thou wilt.   | <i>W</i> 12, 18 |
| <i>Ps</i> 148, 6  | He spoke, and they were  |  |                 |

19.—PUNISHMENT WILLED BY GOD.

- |                   |  |   |                    |
|-------------------|--|---|--------------------|
| <i>Dt</i> 32, 24  | I will heap evils upon them, and will spend My arrows among them.  | Who is he that hath commanded a thing to be done, when the Lord commandeth it not?—Shall not both evil and good proceed out of the mouth of the Highest?—Why hath a living man murmured, man suffering for his sins?—Let us search our ways, and seek and return to the Lord. | <i>La</i> 3, 37-40 |
| <i>Eci</i> 11, 14 | Good things and evil, life and death, poverty and riches, are from God.                                    |   |                    |
| <i>Is</i> 43, 7   | I form the light and create darkness, I make peace and create evil: I, the Lord, that do all these things. |   |                    |
| <i>Am</i> 3, 6    | Shall there be evil in a city, which the Lord hath not done?   |   |                    |

20.—SIN NOT WILLED BY GOD.

- |                  |   |   |                 |
|------------------|---|---|-----------------|
| <i>Dt</i> 32, 4  | God is faithful and without any iniquity, He is just and right.   | ther shall the wicked dwell near Thee; nor shall the unjust abide before Thy Eyes.—Thou hatest all the workers of iniquity: Thou wilt destroy all that speak a lie. |                 |
| <i>Ro</i> 3, 5-6 | Is God unjust, who executeth wrath? God forbid; otherwise, how shall God judge this world?                    | Thou hast loved justice and hated iniquity: therefore God, Thy God, hath anointed Thee with the oil of gladness above Thy fellows.                                  | <i>Ps</i> 44, 8 |
| <i>Ex</i> 23, 7  | Thou shalt fly lying. The innocent and just person thou shalt not put to death, because I abhor the wicked.   | The way of the wicked is an abomination to the Lord: he that followeth justice is beloved by Him.   | <i>Pv</i> 15, 9 |
| <i>Jd</i> 5, 21  | As long as they sinned not in the sight of their God, it was well with them: for their God hateth iniquity.   | To God the wicked and his wickedness are hateful alike.   | <i>W</i> 14, 9  |
| <i>Ps</i> 5, 5-7 | In the morning I will stand before Thee, and will see: because Thou art not a God that wildest iniquity.—Nei- |   |                 |

## 21.—GOD FREELY WILLS ALL GOOD EXTERNAL TO HIMSELF.

- Eci* 39, 7-8 He will open his mouth according to the purpose of Him, Who worketh all things in prayer, and will make supplication for his sins.—For according to the purpose of His will.
- Ep* 1, 11 In whom we also are called The mercies of the Lord *La* 3, 22 that we are not consumed, because His commiserations by lot, being predestinated have not failed.

## 22.—HIS WILL ANTECEDENT AND CONSEQUENT, CONDITIONAL AND ABSOLUTE : THE FORMER SOMETIMES CHANGED, THE LATTER NEVER.

- Je* 18, 8-10 If that nation against which I have spoken shall repent of their evil, I also will repent of the evil that I have thought to do to them.—And I will suddenly speak of a nation and of a kingdom, to build up and plant it.—If it shall do evil in My sight, that it obey not My voice, I will repent of the good that I have spoken to do unto it. *Is* 14, 24, 26-27 The Lord of hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely, as I have thought, so shall it be: and as I have purposed, so shall it fall out.—This is the counsel that I have purposed upon all the earth, and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all nations.—For the Lord of Hosts hath decreed, and who can disannul it? And His hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it away?
- Jo* 3, 9-10 Who can tell if God will turn and forgive, and will turn away from His fierce anger, and we shall not perish?—And God saw their works, that they were turned from their evil way: and God had mercy with regard to the evil which He had said He would do to them, and He did it not. *Is* 43, 13 From the beginning I am the same, and there is none that can deliver out of My hand: I will work, and who shall turn it away?
- 3 K* 21, 29 Hast thou not seen Achab humbled before Me? Therefore because he has humbled himself for My sake, I will not bring him the evil in his days, but in his son's days will I bring the evil upon his house. *Is* 46, 10 My counsel shall stand, and all My will shall be done. *Ac* 5, 38-39 Refrain from these men, and let them alone: for if this counsel or this work be of men, it will come to naught.—But if it be of God, you cannot overthrow it; lest perhaps you be found even to fight against God. And they consented to him.

*Ps* 32, 10-11 The Lord bringeth to naught the counsels of nations; and He rejecteth the devices of people, and casteth away the counsels of princes. —But the counsel of the Lord standeth for ever: the thoughts of His heart to all generations.

23.—HIS OMNIPOTENCE.

*Ge* 17, 1 I am the Almighty God: walk before Me, and be perfect. the things that are in them, shall be moved in His sight;—The mountains also, and the hills, and the foundations of the earth: when God shall look at them, they shall be shaken with trembling.

*Ec* 13, 9 O Lord Almighty King, for all things are in Thy power, and there is none that can resist Thy will. The works of God are done in judgment from the beginning, and from the making of them He distinguished their parts, and their beginnings in their generations.—He beautified their works for ever; they have neither hungered nor laboured, and they have not ceased from their works.—Nor shall any of them straiten his neighbour at any time.

*Ec* 33, 22-23 At His word the waters stood as a heap, and at the words of His mouth the receptacles of waters:—For at His commandment favour is shown, and there is no diminishing of His salvation. He that liveth for ever created all things together. God only shall be justified, and He remaineth an invincible King for ever.

*Ps* 21, 30-31 There is no wisdom, there is no prudence, there is no counsel against the Lord.—The horse is prepared for the day of battle, but the Lord giveth safety. He is alone, and no man can turn away His thought; and whatever His soul hath desired, that hath He done.

*Ec* 11, 5-6 Many tyrants have sat on the throne, and he whom no man would think on hath worn the crown.—Many mighty men have been brought down greatly, and the glorious have been delivered into the hand of others. Great power always belonged to Thee alone; and who shall resist the strength of Thy arm?—For the whole world before Thee is as the least grain of the balance, and as a drop of the morning dew that falleth down upon the earth.

*Jd* 16, 16-17 O Adonai Lord, great art Thou, and glorious in Thy Power, and no one can overcome Thee.—Let all Thy creatures serve Thee: because Thou hast spoken, and they were made: Thou didst send forth Thy Spirit, and they were created, and there is no one that can resist Thy Voice. Thy Power is at hand when Thou wilt.

*Ec* 16, 18-19 Behold, the heaven, and the heavens of heavens, the deep, and all the earth, and It is Thou, O Lord, that hast power of life and death,

and ledest down to the gates of death, and bringest back again. But it is impossible to escape Thy hand.

*W* 12, 12 Who shall say to Thee: What hast Thou done? or who shall withstand Thy judgment? or who shall come before Thee to be a revenger of wicked men? or who shall accuse Thee, if the nations perish which Thou hast made?

*Jb* 9, 13 God, Whose wrath no man can resist, and under Whom they stoop that bear up the world.

*Jb* 11, 10 If He shall overturn all things, or shall press them together, who shall contradict Him?

*Jb* 12, 17 He bringeth counsellors to a foolish end, and judges to insensibility.—He looseth the belt of kings, and girdeth their loins with a cord.

*Is* 40, 22-23, 26 It is He that sitteth upon the globe of the earth, and the inhabitants thereof are as locusts: He that stretcheth out the heavens as nothing, and spreadeth them out as a tent to dwell in.—He that bringeth the searchers of secrets to nothing, that hath made the judges of the earth

as vanity.—Lift up your eyes on high, and see Who hath created these things: Who bringeth out their host by number, and calleth them all by their names: by the greatness of His might, and strength, and power, not one of them was missing.

I am the Lord that make *Is* 44, 24-28

all things, that alone stretch out the heavens, that establish the earth, and there is none with Me.—That make void the tokens of diviners, and make the soothsayers mad. That turn the wise backward, and that make their knowledge foolish.—That raise up the word of My servant, and perform the counsel of My messengers, who say to Jerusalem: Thou shalt be inhabited; and to the cities of Juda: You shall be built, and I will raise up the wastes thereof.—Who say to the deep: Be thou desolate, and I will dry up thy rivers.—Who say to Cyrus: Thou art My shepherd, and thou shalt perform all My pleasure. Who say to Jerusalem: Thou shalt be built; and to the Temple: Thy foundations shall be laid.

## 24.—HIS JUSTICE.

*1 K* 22, 23 The Lord will reward every one according to His justice and His faithfulness.

*Je* 17, 10 I am the Lord Who search the heart and prove the reins: Who give to every one according to his way, and according to the fruit of his devices.

*Jb* 35, 13 The Almighty will look into the causes of every one.

The wickedness of sinners shall be brought to naught, and Thou shalt direct the just: the searcher of hearts and reins is God. *Ps* 7, 10

God is faithful and without iniquity, He is just and right. *Dt* 32, 4

Who keepeth truth for ever: Who executeth judgment for them that suffer wrong. *Ps* 145, 7



- Jb* 4, 8-9 I have seen those who work iniquity, and sow sorrows, and reap them,—Perishing by the blast of God, and consumed by the spirit of His wrath.
- Jb* 22, 7, 10 Thou hast not given water to the weary, thou hast withdrawn bread from the hungry.—Therefore art thou surrounded with snares, and sudden fear troubleth thee.
- Ps* 31, 10 Many are the scourges of the sinner, but mercy shall encompass him that hopeth in the Lord.
- Ps* 33, 17 The countenance of the Lord is against them that do evil things, to cut off the remembrance of them from the earth.
- Ps* 118, 75 I know, O Lord, that Thy judgments are equity: and in Thy truth Thou hast humbled me.
- Ecl* 3, 17 God shall judge both the just and the wicked, and then shall be the time of everything.
- Eci* 11, 28 For it is easy before God in the day of death to reward every one according to his ways.
- Ps* 10, 8 The Lord is just, and hath loved justice: His Countenance hath beheld righteousness.
- Ps* 118, 137 Thou art just, O Lord, and Thy judgment is right.
- Ps* 118, 142 Thy justice is justice for ever.
- Ro* 2, 6-8 He will render to every man according to his works:—To them indeed who, according to patience in good work, seek glory and honour and incorruption, Eternal Life;—But to them that are contentious and who obey not the truth, but give credit to iniquity, wrath and indignation.
- We must all be manifested before the judgment-seat of Christ, that every one may receive the proper things of the body, according as he hath done, whether it be good or evil.
- I have finished my course, I have kept the faith. As to the rest, there is laid up for me a crown of justice, which the Lord, the Just Judge, will render to me in that day; and not only to me, but to them also that love His coming.
- Ye men of understanding, hear me: far from God be wickedness, and iniquity from the Almighty.—For He will render to a man his work, and according to the ways of every one He will reward them.—For in very deed God will not condemn without cause, neither will the Almighty pervert judgment.
- If thou do well, shalt thou not receive? but if ill, shall not sin be forthwith present at the door?
- Give, and it shall be given to you: good measure and pressed down and shaken together and running over shall they give into your bosom. For with the same measure that you shall mete withal, it shall be measured to you again.
- In the good day enjoy good things, and beware beforehand of the evil day: for God hath made both the one and the other, that man may not find against Him any just complaint.
- All things that are done,

2 C 5, 10

2 T 4, 8

*Jb* 34, 10-12

*Ge* 4, 7

*Lu* 6, 38

*Eci* 7, 12

*Ecl* 12, 14

C

God will bring into judgment for every error, whether it be good or evil.

*Eci* 15, 18 Before man is life and death, good and evil: that which he shall choose shall be given him.

*Eci* 35, 16, 23-25 The Lord will not accept any person against a poor man, and He will hear the prayer of him that is wronged.—And He will repay vengeance to the Gentiles, till He have taken away the multitude of the proud, and broken the sceptres of the unjust.—Till He have rendered to men according to their deeds, and according to the works of Adam, and according to his presumption.—Till He have judged the cause of His people, and He shall delight the just with His mercy.

*Ecl* 8, 11-12 Because sentence is not speedily pronounced against the evil, the children of men commit evils without any fear.—But though a sinner do evil a hundred times, and by patience be borne withal, I know from thence that it shall be well with them that fear God, who dread His face.

*Lu* 12, 47-48 That servant who knew the will of his lord, and prepared not himself, and did not according to his will, shall be beaten with many stripes.—But he that knew not and did things worthy of stripes shall be beaten with few stripes.

*Ro*, 2, 2, 4-5, 12-13 For we know that the judgment of God is according to truth against them that do such things.—Or despisest thou the riches of His goodness, and patience, and long-

suffering? knowest thou not that the benignity of God leadeth thee to penance?—But according to thy hardness and impenitent heart, thou treasurest up to thyself wrath against the day of wrath, and revelation of the just judgment of God.—For whosoever have sinned without the law shall perish without the law: and whosoever have sinned in the law shall be judged by the law.—For not the hearers of the law are just before God: but the doers of the law shall be justified.

What things a man shall sow, those also shall he reap. For he that soweth in his flesh, of the flesh also shall reap corruption. But he that soweth in the Spirit, of the Spirit shall reap life everlasting.

That which bringeth forth thorns and briars is reprobate, and very near unto a curse, whose end is to be burnt.

See then the goodness and the severity of God: towards them indeed that are fallen, the severity; but towards thee, the goodness of God, if thou abide in goodness, otherwise thou also shalt be cut off.—O the depth of the riches of the wisdom and of the knowledge of God! How incomprehensible are His judgments, and how unsearchable His ways!

The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly out of temptation, but to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be tormented.

*Gal* 6, 8

*Heb* 6, 8

*Ro* 11, 22, 33

2 *Pet* 2, 9

- Ap* 13, 10 He that shall lead into captivity shall go into captivity: he that shall kill by the sword must be killed by the sword.
- Ap* 22, 14, 12 Blessed are they that wash their robes in the Blood of the Lamb: that they may have a right to the tree of life, and may enter in by the gates into the city.— Behold, I come quickly, and My reward is with Me, to render to every man according to his works.
- Ac* 10, 34-35 In very deed I perceive that God is not a respecter of persons. — But in every nation, he that feareth Him, and worketh justice, is acceptable to Him.
- He accepteth not the persons of princes: nor hath regarded the tyrant when he contended against the poor man, for all are the work of His hands.
- God will not except any man's person, neither will He stand in awe of any man's greatness: for He made the little and the great, and He hath equally care of all.
- Flee then from the face of the sword, for the sword is the revenger of iniquities: and know ye that there is a judgment.

(For the *Vindictive Justice* of God, see section 31.)

## 25.—HIS MERCY.

- Ex* 20, 6 I am the Lord thy God, showing mercy unto thousands to them that love Me and keep My commandments.
- Ex* 34, 6 O the Lord, the Lord God, merciful and gracious, patient and of much compassion, and true!
- Ps* 32, 5 The earth is full of the mercy of the Lord.
- Ps* 71, 12 He shall deliver the poor from the mighty, and the needy that had no helper.
- Eci* 2, 23 According to His greatness, so also is His mercy with Him.
- Ps* 62, 4 Thy mercy is better than lives.
- Ps* 144, 9 The Lord is sweet to all, and His tender mercies are over all His works.
- 2 Pt* 3, 9 The Lord delayeth not His promise, as some imagine; but dealeth patiently for your sake, not willing that any should perish, but that all should return to penance.
- He endured with much patience vessels of wrath fitted for destruction.
- Showing mercy unto thousands to them that love Me and keep My commandments.
- I am holy, saith the Lord, and I will not be angry for ever.
- Shall I not spare Nineve, that great city, in which there are more than a hundred and twenty thousand persons that know not how to distinguish between their right hand and their left, and many beasts?
- When Thou art angry, Thou wilt remember mercy.
- The Lord is patient and full of mercy.
- Mercy shall encompass him that hopeth in the Lord.
- The Lord is compassionate and merciful, long-suffering and plenteous in

- mercy.—For according to the height of the heaven above the earth, He hath strengthened His mercy towards them that fear Him.—The mercy of the Lord is from eternity and unto eternity upon them that fear Him.
- Ps* 108, 8 Let the mercies of the Lord give glory to Him, and His wonderful works to the children of men.
- Eci* 18, 12-13 The compassion of man is towards his neighbour; but the mercy of God is upon all flesh.—He hath mercy, and teacheth, and correcteth, as a shepherd doth his flock.
- Is* 30, 18 The Lord waiteth that He may have mercy on you: and therefore shall He be exalted sparing you.
- For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee.—In a moment of indignation have I hid My face a little while from thee; but with everlasting kindness have I had mercy on thee, said the Lord thy Redeemer.
- His mercy is from generation unto generations, to them that fear Him.
- He will have all men to be saved, and to come to the knowledge of the truth.
- It is not the will of your Father, Who is in Heaven, that one of these little ones should perish.
- Return to Me, saith the Lord, and I will receive thee.
- Is* 54, 7-9  
*Lu* 1, 50  
*1 Ti* 2, 4  
*Mt* 18, 14  
*Je* 3, 1

## 26.—WHY HE HATH MERCY UPON US.

- Ps* 102, 13-15 As a father hath compassion on his children, so hath the Lord compassion on them that fear Him.—For He knoweth our frame. He remembereth that we are dust.—Man's days are as grass: as the flower of the field so shall he flourish.
- Ez* 36, 22 Thus saith the Lord God: It is not for your sake that I will do this, O House of Israel, but for My Holy Name's sake, which you have profaned among the nations whither you went.
- Ez* 36, 32 It is not for your sakes that I will do this, saith the Lord God, be it known to you: be confounded, and ashamed at your own ways, O House of Israel.
- Eci* 17, 28-31 How great is the mercy of the Lord, and His forgive-
- ness to them that turn to Him!—For all things cannot be in men, because the son of man is not immortal, and they are delighted with the vanity of evil.—What is brighter than the sun? yet it shall be eclipsed. Or what is more wicked than that which flesh and blood hath invented? and this shall be reprov'd.—He beholdeth the power of the height of heaven: and all men are earth and ashes.
- What is man, and what is his grace? and what is his good, or what is his evil?—The number of the days of man at the most are a hundred years: as a drop of water of the sea are they esteemed; and as a pebble of the sand, so are a few
- Eci* 18, 7-11

years compared to eternity. —Therefore God is patient in them, and poureth forth His mercy upon them.—He hath seen the presumption of their heart that it is wicked, and hath known their end that it is evil.—Therefore hath He filled up His mercy in their favour, and hath shown them the way of justice.

27.—HIS MERCY, TOGETHER WITH HIS JUSTICE.

- Ps* 100, 1 Mercy and judgment I will sing to Thee, O Lord. ing shall have place, and in the morning gladness.
- Ps* 24, 10 All the ways of the Lord are mercy and truth. The Lord shall stand up as in the mountain of divisions; He shall be angry as in the valley which is in Gabaon; that He may do His work, His strange work; that He may perform His work, His work is strange to Him. *Is* 28, 21
- Eci* 16, 12 Mercy and wrath are with Him. He is mighty to forgive and to pour out indignation. According as His mercy is, so His correction judgeth a man according to his works.—The sinner shall not escape in his rapines, and the patience of Him that showeth mercy shall not be put off. The Lord will not cast off for ever.—For if He hath cast off, He will also have mercy, according to the multitude of His mercies.—For He hath not willingly afflicted nor cast off the children of men. *La* 3, 31
- Ha* 3, 2 When Thou art angry, Thou wilt remember mercy.
- Ja* 2, 13 Mercy exalteth itself above judgment. Ah! I will comfort Myself over My adversaries; and I will be revenged of My enemies. *Is* 1, 24
- Ps* 29, 6-7 Wrath is in His indignation, and life in His goodwill.—In the evening weep-

28.—THE SIN OF PRESUMING ON HIS MERCY.

- Eci* 5, 4, 6-7 Say not: I have sinned, and what harm hath befallen me? for the Most High is a patient rewarder.—And say not: The mercy of the Lord is great, He will have mercy on the multitude of my sins. —For mercy and wrath quickly come from Him, and His wrath looketh upon sinners. Because sentence is not speedily pronounced against the evil, the children of men commit evils without any fear. *Ecl* 8, 11

(See *Despair* and *Presumption*.)

29.—HIS LOVE FOR ALL—EVEN SINNERS.

- W* 11, 24-25 Thou hast mercy on all, because Thou canst do all things, and overlookest the sins of men, for the sake of repentance.—For Thou lovest all things that are, and hatest none of the things which Thou hast made: for Thou

- didst not appoint or make anything, hating it.
- Ps* 26, 10 My father and my mother have left me; but the Lord hath taken me up.
- Ex* 15, 13 In Thy mercy Thou hast been a leader to the people which Thou hast redeemed; and in Thy strength Thou hast carried them to Thy holy habitation.
- Dt* 1, 31 In the wilderness (as thou hast seen) the Lord thy God hath carried thee, as a man is wont to carry his little son, all the way you have come, until you came to this place.
- Is* 63, 9 In His love and in His mercy He redeemed them, and He carried them and lifted them up all the days of old.
- So* 3, 17 The Lord thy God in the midst of thee is mighty, He will save: He will rejoice over thee with gladness, He will be silent in His love, He will be joyful over thee in praise.
- W* 11, 27 Thou sparest all, because they are Thine, O Lord, Who lovest souls.
- W* 12, 1-2 O how good and sweet is Thy Spirit, O Lord, in all things!—And therefore Thou chastiseth them that err, by little and little; and admonishest them, and speakest to them concerning the things wherein they offend; that leaving their wickedness, they may believe in Thee, O Lord.
- W* 12, 16 Because Thou art Lord of all, Thou makest Thyself gracious to all.
- 1 J* 3, 1 Behold what manner of charity the Father has bestowed upon us, that we should be called and should be the sons of God.
- By this hath the charity of God appeared towards us, because God hath sent His Only Begotten Son into the world, that we may live by Him.—In this is charity, not as though we had loved God, but because He hath first loved us, and sent His Son to be a propitiation for our sins.—In this is the charity of God perfected with us, that we may have confidence in the day of judgment; because as He is, we also are in this world.
- God so loved the world as to give His Only Begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him may not perish, but may have life everlasting.
- Give praise, O ye heavens, and rejoice, O earth; ye mountains, give praise with jubilation: because the Lord hath comforted His people, and will have mercy on His poor ones.
- As one whom the mother caresseth, so will I comfort you, and you shall be comforted in Jerusalem.
- I will not leave thee, neither will I forsake thee.
- I, I Myself will comfort you.
- Can a woman forget her infant, so as not to have pity on the son of her womb? and if she should forget, yet will not I forget thee.
- Even to your old age I am the same, and to your gray hairs I will carry you: I have made you, and I will bear, I will carry, and I will save.
- Behold, I have graven thee in My hands.
- Jn* 3, 16
- Is* 49, 13
- Is* 66, 13
- He* 13, 5
- Is* 51, 12
- Is* 49, 15
- Is* 46, 4
- Is* 49, 16

- Ex* 34, 15- I will feed My sheep: and  
 16 I will cause them to lie down, saith the Lord God.—I will seek that which was lost, and that which was driven away I will bring again: and I will bind up that which was broken, and I will strengthen that which was weak, and that which was fat and strong I will preserve: and I will feed them in judgment.
- Os* 11, 4 I will draw them with the cords of Adam, with the bands of love.
- Os* 13, 14 I will deliver them out of the hand of death, I will redeem them from death. O death, I will be thy death; O hell, I will be thy bite.
- Za* 2, 8 He that toucheth you toucheth the apple of My eye.
- Jn* 3, 16-17 God so loved the world as to give His Only Begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him may not perish, but may have life everlasting.—For God sent not His Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world may be saved by Him.
- As the Father hath loved Me, I also have loved you. Abide in My love. *Jn* 15, 9
- The Father Himself loveth you, because you have loved Me, and have believed that I came out from God. *Jn* 16, 27
- God commendeth His charity towards us: because when as yet we were sinners, according to the time,—Christ died for us. *Ro* 5, 8-9
- He that spared not even His own Son, but delivered Him up for us all, how hath He not also, with Him, given us all things? *Ro* 8, 32
- Jn* 3, 16-17 God so loved the world as to give His Only Begotten

**30.—GOD LOVES SINNERS, NOT AS SINNERS, BUT BECAUSE RANSOMED BY CHRIST'S PRECIOUS BLOOD. FOR THIS REASON HE PARDONS SIN.**

- Je* 31, 3 I have loved thee with an everlasting love; therefore have I drawn thee, taking pity on thee.
- Os* 14, 5 I will heal their breaches, I will love them freely; for My wrath is turned away from them.
- Is* 43, 25 I am, I am He that blot out thy iniquities for My own sake, and I will not remember thy sins.
- For My Name's sake I will remove My wrath far off: and for My praise I will bridle thee, lest thou shouldst perish. *Is* 48, 9
- Even so there shall be joy in Heaven upon one sinner that doth penance, more than upon ninety-nine just who need not penance. *Lu* 15, 7

**31.—OUR LORD WILLS ALL MEN TO BE SAVED.**

- 1 Ti* 2, 4 He will have all men to be saved, and to come to the knowledge of the truth.
- Jn* 6, 39- This is the will of the Father Who sent Me: that of all that He hath given Me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again in the last day.—And this is the will of My Father that sent

Me: that every one who seeth the Son, and believeth in Him, may have life everlasting, and I will raise him up in the last day.

*Pv* 1, 20-22 Wisdom preacheth abroad, she uttereth her voice in the streets: At the head of multitudes she crieth out, in the entrance of the gates of the city she uttereth her words, saying: — O children, how long will you love childishness, and fools covet those

things which are hurtful to themselves, and the unwise hate knowledge?

To Him Who is able to do *Ep* 3, 20-21 all things more abundantly than we desire or understand, according to the power that worketh in us;—To Him be glory in the Church and in Christ Jesus, unto all generations, world without end. Amen.

God was in Christ, reconciling the world to Himself. *2 C* 5, 19

(See word *Christ*.)

### 32.—THE PROVIDENCE OF GOD TOWARDS ALL.

*W* 6, 8 He made the little and the great, and He hath equally care of all.

*Jb* 34, 21 His eyes are upon the ways of men, and He considereth all their steps.

*Ps* 30, 16 My lots are in Thy hands.

*1 K* 2, 7 The Lord maketh poor and maketh rich; He humbleth and He exalteth.

*Ps* 35, 7 Men and beasts Thou wilt preserve, O Lord.

*Ps* 148, 6-9 Who covereth the heaven with clouds, and prepareth rain for the earth: Who maketh grass to grow on the mountains, and herbs for the service of men.—Who giveth to beasts their food: and to the young ravens that call upon Him.

*Ps* 103, 27-29 All expect of Thee that Thou give them food in season.—What Thou givest to them they shall gather up: when Thou openest Thy hand, they shall all be filled with good.—But if Thou turnest away Thy face, they shall be troubled: Thou shalt take away their breath, and

they shall fail, and shall return to their dust.

Every man that eateth and drinketh, and seeth good of his labour, this is the gift of God. *Ecl* 3, 13

Good things and evil, life and death, poverty and riches, are from God. *Ecc* 11, 14

The steps of man are guided by the Lord. *Pv* 20, 24

The Lord loveth judgment, and will not forsake His saints: they shall be preserved for ever. *Ps* 36, 28

When I sent you without purse and scrip and shoes, did you want anything?—But they said: Nothing. *Lu* 22, 35-36

Be not solicitous, therefore, saying: What shall we eat, or what shall we drink, or wherewith shall we be clothed?—For after all these things do the heathens seek. For your Father knoweth that you have need of all these things. *Mt* 6, 31-32

It is He Who giveth to all life, and breath, and all things:—And hath made of *Ac* 17, 25-27



one all mankind, to dwell upon the whole face of the earth, determining appointed times and the limits of their habitation.—That they should seek God.

Are not two sparrows sold *Mt* 10, 29 for a farthing? and not one of them shall fall on the ground without your Father.

Behold the birds of the air, for they neither sow, nor do they reap, nor gather into barns: and your Heavenly Father feedeth them. Are not you of much more value than they? *Mt* 6, 28

*Ro* 8, 28 We know that to them that love God, all things work together unto good, to such as according to His purpose are called to be saints.

*W* 8, 1 She [Wisdom] reacheth from end to end mightily, and ordereth all things sweetly.

Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow: they labour not, neither do they spin.—And if the grass of the field, which is to-day, and to-morrow is cast into the oven, God doth so clothe: how much more you, O ye of little faith! *Mt* 6, 28-30

*Ps* 148, 8 Fire, hail, snow, ice, stormy winds, fulfil His Word.

There is no other God but Thou Who hast care of all.

*Ps* 35, 6 O Lord, Thy mercy is in heaven, and Thy truth reacheth even to the clouds.

Thy Providence, O Father, governeth it. *W* 12, 13

*Jb* 9, 7 He commandeth the sun, and it riseth not: and shutteth up the stars as it were under a seal.

*Ps* 148, 6 He hath made a decree, and it shall not pass away.

### 33.—THE SIN OF DENYING HIS PROVIDENCE.

*So* 1, 12 I will visit upon the men that are settled on their lees: that say in their hearts: The Lord will not do good, nor will He do evil.

proud people happy, for they that work wickedness are built up, and they have tempted God and are preserved.

*Ma* 2, 17 You have wearied the Lord with your words, and you said: Wherein have we wearied Him? In that you say: Every one that doth evil is good in the sight of the Lord, and such please Him: or surely where is the God of judgment?

Give not thy mouth to cause thy flesh to sin; and say not before the Angel: There is no providence: lest God be angry at thy words, and destroy all the works of thy hands. *Ecl* 5, 5

*Ma* 3, 14-15 You have said: He labour-eth in vain that serveth God, and what profit is it that we have kept His ordinances, and that we have walked sorrowful before the Lord of Hosts?—Wherefore now we call the

Surely thou seest, O son of man, what the ancients of the House of Israel do in the dark, every one in private in his chamber; for they say: The Lord seeth us not, the Lord hath forsaken the earth.—Therefore I also will deal with them in My wrath: *Ez* 8, 12-13

My Eye shall not spare them, neither will I show mercy: and when they shall cry to My ears with a loud voice, I will not hear them.

*Ex* 9, 9-10 The iniquity of the House of Israel, and of Juda, is exceeding great, and the land is filled with blood, and the city is filled with perverseness; for they have said: The Lord hath forsaken the earth, and the Lord seeth not.—There-  
fore neither shall My eye spare, nor will I have pity: I will requite their way upon their head.  
Wherefore hath the wicked *Ps* 9, 13-14 provoked God? for he hath said in his heart: He will not require it.—Thou seest it, for Thou considereth labour and sorrow, that Thou mayest deliver them into Thy hands.

### 34.—ELECTION, PREDESTINATION, AND VOCATION IN GENERAL.

*Ep* 1, 4 He chose us in Him before the foundation of the world. Whom He foreknew, He also predestinated to be made conformable to the image of His Son. *Ro* 8, 29  
*Ep* 1, 5 He hath predestinated us unto the adoption of children of God. Whom He predestinated, them He also called. And whom He called, them He also justified. And whom He justified, them He also glorified. *Ro* 8, 30  
*1 C* 2, 7 We speak the wisdom of God which God ordained before the world.  
*Mt* 25, 34 Come, ye blessed of My Father, possess you the Kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world. Many are called, but few chosen. *Mt* 20, 16

### 35.—ELECTION TO GLORY, WHICH PRECEDES PREDESTINATION, THE WORK OF GOD'S PURE BOUNTY AND MERCY.

*Ac* 13, 48 As many as were ordained to life everlasting, believed. Unless those days had been shortened, no flesh should be saved; but for the sake of the elect those days shall be shortened. *Mt* 24, 22  
*Lu* 12, 32 Fear not, little flock, for it hath pleased your Father to give you a Kingdom. False prophets shall show great signs and wonders, in-  
*W* 4, 11 He was taken away, lest wickedness should alter his understanding. somuch as to deceive (if possible) even the elect. *Mt* 24, 24  
*W* 4, 14 For his soul pleased God. So then it is not of him that willeth, nor of him that runneth, but of God that showeth mercy. *Ro* 9, 16  
*Ro* 8, 28 We know that to them that love God all things work together unto good, to such as according to His purpose are called to be saints. If by grace, it is not now by *Ro* 11, 6

- works; otherwise grace is no more grace.
- J 15, 16 You have not chosen Me, but I have chosen you; that you should go, and should bring forth fruit.
- Ro 6, 23 The wages of sin is death. But the grace of God, life everlasting.
- Ro 9, 11-13 When the children were not yet born, nor had done any good or evil (that the purpose of God according to election might stand),—Not of works, but of Him that calleth, it was said to her: The elder shall serve the younger.—As it is written: Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated.
- Hath not the potter power over the clay, of the same lump, to make one vessel unto honour, and another unto dishonour?
- Who distinguisheth thee? or what hast thou that thou hast not received? And if thou hast received, why dost thou glory, as if thou hadst not received it?

### 36.—GOD REWARDS MEN ACCORDING TO MERIT.

- Mt 25, 34-35 Come, ye blessed of My Father, possess you the Kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world:—For I was hungry, and you gave Me to eat, &c.
- 1 C 2, 9 Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither hath it entered into the heart of man, what things God hath prepared for them that love Him.
- Cl 3, 23-24 Whatsoever you do, do it from the heart as to the Lord, and not to men;—Knowing that you shall receive of the Lord the reward of inheritance.
- We are the sons of God,—and if sons, heirs also: heirs indeed of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; yet so if we suffer with Him, that we may be also glorified with Him.
- I have fought a good fight. As to the rest, there is laid up for me a crown of justice, which the Lord the just Judge will render to me in that day.

(See *Merit, Free-will, Grace.*)

### 37.—HIS SPECIAL LOVE TOWARDS THE JUST.

- Is 27, 2-5 In that day there shall be singing to the Vineyard of pure wine.—I am the Lord that keep it: I will suddenly give it drink: lest any hurt come to it, I keep it night and day.—There is no indignation in Me: who shall make Me a thorn and a brier in battle? shall I march against it, shall I set it on fire together?—Or rather shall it take hold of My strength, shall it make peace with Me, shall it make peace with Me?
- He shall feed His Flock like a shepherd: He shall gather together the lambs with His arm and shall take them up in His Bosom, and He Himself shall carry them that are with young.
- Hearken unto Me, O House of Jacob, all the remnant of the House of Israel, who are

- carried by My bowels, are borne up by My womb.—Even to your old age I am the same, and to your gray hairs I will carry you: I have made you, and I will bear; I will carry and will save.
- Jr 31, 20* Surely Ephraim is an honourable son to Me, surely he is a tender child: for since I spoke of him I will still remember him. Therefore are My bowels troubled for him: pitying I will pity him, saith the Lord.
- Po 2, 7-8* He will keep the salvation of the righteous, and protect them that walk in simplicity;—Keeping the paths of justice, and guarding the ways of saints.
- Za 2, 5* I will be to it, saith the Lord, a wall of fire round about; and I will be in glory in the midst thereof.
- Eci 34, 13-15* Sometimes I have been in danger of death for these things, and I have been delivered by the grace of God.—The spirit of those that fear God is sought after, and by His regard shall be blessed.—For their hope is on Him that saveth them, and the eyes of God are upon them that love Him.
- If there be no offence of this people in the sight of their God, we cannot resist them, because their God will defend them, and we shall be a reproach to the whole earth.
- Whosoever they went in without bow and arrow, and without shield and sword, their God fought for them and overcame.—And there was no one that triumphed over this people but when they departed from the worship of the Lord their God.
- How good is God to Israel to them that are of a right heart!
- The eyes of the Lord are upon the just, and His ears unto their prayers.—But the countenance of the Lord is against them that do evil things, to cut off the remembrance of them from the earth.
- God will not cast away the simple, nor reach out His hand to the evil doer,—Until thy mouth be filled with laughter, and thy lips with rejoicing.—They that hate Thee shall be clothed with confusion, and the dwelling of the wicked shall not stand.
- Jd 5, 25*
- Po 17*
- Po 72, 1*
- Po 33, 16-17*
- Jb 8, 20-22*
- Ro 8, 35, 37-39*

(See *Justice*.)

## 38.—THE CERTAINTY OF PREDESTINATION.

- Jn 10, 27* My sheep hear My Voice: and I know them, and they follow Me.
- 2 Ti 2, 19* The sure foundation of God standeth firm, having this seal: the Lord knoweth who are His.
- Ro 9, 23* That He might show the riches of His glory on the vessels of mercy, which He hath prepared unto glory.
- Who then shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall tribulation? or distress? or famine? or nakedness? or danger? or persecution? or the sword?—But in all these things we overcome because
- Ro 8, 35, 37-39*

of Him Who hath loved us.—nor any other creature shall  
For I am sure that neither be able to separate us from  
death, nor life, nor Angels, the love of God, which is in  
nor principalities, nor powers, Christ Jesus our Lord.

(See *Confidence of the Just, Presumption of the Wicked.*)

### 39.—THE BOOK OF LIFE.

- Lu* 10, 20 Rejoice in this, that your names are written in Heaven. Book all shall be written.  
*Je* 17, 13 They that depart from Thee shall be written in the earth. Either forgive them this trespass, or if Thou do not, strike me out of the Book that Thou hast written.—He that hath sinned against Me, him will I strike out of My Book.  
*Ps* 68, 29 Let them [the wicked] be blotted out of the Book of the Living, and with the just let them not be written. I wished myself to be an anathema from Christ, for my brethren.  
*Ps* 138, 16 Thy Eyes did see my imperfect being, and in Thy

### 40.—CAUSES AND EFFECTS OF POSITIVE REPROBATION.

- W* 1, 13 God made not death, fore God shall send them the neither hath He pleasure in operation of error.  
the destruction of the living. You stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, *Ac* 7, 51  
*Ex* 18, 32 I desire not the death of him that dieth, saith the Lord God: return ye and live. you always resist the Holy Ghost.  
*Os* 13, 9 Destruction is thine own, O Israel: thy help is only in Me. I called, and you refused. How often would I have gathered thy children, as the hen doth gather her chickens under her wings, and *Ps* 1, 24  
*Ro* 1, 25-26, 28 They changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature rather than the Creator.—For this cause God delivered them up to shameful affections.—As they liked not to have God in their knowledge, God delivered them up to a reprobate sense. Depart from Me, ye cursed, *Mt* 23, 37  
2 *Ti* 2, 10 Because they received not the love of the Truth, that they might be saved, there-

#### 41.—CAUSES AND EFFECTS OF NEGATIVE REPROBATION.

- Ro* 5, 12 By one man sin entered into this world, and by sin, death.
- Ro* 5, 19 By the disobedience of one man many were made sinners.
- Ro* 9, 11-13 When the children were not yet born, nor had done any good or evil (that the purpose of God according to election might stand),—Not of works, but of Him that calleth, it was said to her: The elder shall serve the younger.—As it is written: Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated.\*
- He hath mercy on whom *Ro* 9, 18 He will; and whom He will He hardeneth.
- Hath not the potter power *Ro* 9, 21 over the clay, of the same lump, to make one vessel unto honour, and another unto dishonour?
- God in times past suffered *Ac* 14, 15 all nations to walk in their own ways.
- The branches were broken *Ro* 11, 20 off because of unbelief.

#### 42.—THE NUMBER OF THE SAVED, THOUGH GREAT, SMALL IN COMPARISON WITH THE LOST.

- Mt* 20, 16 Many are called, but few chosen.
- Mt* 7, 13 Wide is the gate and broad is the way that leadeth to destruction, and many there are who go in thereat.
- Mt* 7, 14 How narrow is the gate and strait is the way that leadeth to Life; and few there are that find it!
- Lu* 13, 24 Strive to enter by the narrow gate: for many, I say to you, shall seek to enter, and shall not be able.
- 1 C* 9, 24 Know you not that they that run in the race, all run indeed, but one receiveth the prize?
- 1 C* 9, 25 Every one that striveth for the mastery refraineth himself from all things: and they indeed that they may receive a corruptible crown, but we an incorruptible one.
- The fruit thereof, that shall be left upon it, shall be as one cluster of grapes and as the shaking of the olive-tree: two or three berries in the top of a bough, or four or five upon the top of the tree, saith the Lord, the God of Israel.
- In that day the Lord of *Is* 23, 5 Hosts shall be a crown of glory and a garland of joy to the residue of His people.
- The soul of my lord shall *1 K* 25, 23 be kept as in the bundle of the living with the Lord thy God.
- O Lord, divide them from *Ps* 16, 14 the few of the earth.
- He that buildeth His ascension in Heaven, and hath founded His bundle upon the earth, the Lord is His Name *Am* 9, 6

\* God does not hate Esau as man, but Esau as a sinner.—*S. Aug.* God does not impart mercy to those who do not merit to receive mercy.

- Lu* 12, 32 Fear not, little flock, for it hath pleased your Father to give you a Kingdom.
- Ap* 21, 13 The Holy City had on the east three gates; and on the north, three gates; and on the south, three gates; and on the west, three gates.
- Lu* 13, 29 There shall come from the east and the west and the north and the south, and shall sit down in the Kingdom of God.
- Ap* 7, 9 I saw a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and tribes, and peoples, and tongues; standing before the Throne, and in sight of the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands.
- You are come to Mount Sion, and to the City of the Living God, the Heavenly Jerusalem, and to the company of many thousands of Angels.
- Thousands of thousands ministered to Him, and ten thousand times a hundred thousand stood before Him.
- Is there any numbering of His soldiers? and upon whom shall not His light arise?
- Thither did the tribes go up, the tribes of the Lord; the testimony of Israel, to praise the Name of the Lord.
- He* 12, 22
- Da* 7, 10
- Jb* 25, 3
- Ps* 121, 4

## PART II.

## THE MOST BLESSED TRINITY.

SABELLIUS denied the distinction of the Three Divine Persons. Arius denied their Unity in Nature. Macedonius denied the Divinity of the Holy Spirit. The sections of the present Part will contain texts of Holy Scripture which vindicate the Catholic doctrine on the oldest and most august of Mysteries.

## 1.—ON THE TRINITY OF PERSONS IN THE UNITY OF NATURE.

- Ge* 1, 26 God said: Let Us make man to our image and likeness.
- Ge* 3, 22 God said: Behold, Adam has become as one of Us.
- The Lord said: Come Ye, let Us go down, and there confound their tongue.
- The Lord appeared to Abraham in the vale of Mam-
- Ge* 11, 7
- Ge* 18, 1-3

- bre as he was sitting at the door of his tent, in the very heat of the day.—And when he had lifted up his eyes, there appeared to him Three Men standing near him; and as soon as he saw Them he ran to meet Them from the door of his tent, and adored down to the ground.—And he said: Lord, if I have found favour in Thy sight, pass not away from Thy servant.
- Ge* 19, 24 The Lord rained upon Sodom and Gomorrha brimstone and fire from the Lord out of heaven.
- Ps* 32, 6 By the Word of the Lord the heavens were established; and all the power of them by the Spirit of His mouth.
- Ps* 66, 8 May God, our God, bless us, may God bless us; and all the ends of the earth fear Him.
- Is* 6, 3 They cried one to another, and said: Holy, Holy, Holy, the Lord God of Hosts: all the earth is full of His glory.
- Os* 1, 7 The Lord said: I will save them by the Lord their God.
- Za* 3, 2 The Lord said to Satan: The Lord rebuke thee, O Satan: and the Lord (that chose Jerusalem) rebuke thee.
- Ma* 3, 16 The heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove, and coming upon Him. And behold a Voice from heaven, saying: This is My Beloved Son, in Whom I am well pleased.
- Mt* 23, 19 Going therefore, teach ye all nations: baptising them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.
- The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Most High shall overshadow thee. And therefore the Holy which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.
- I will ask the Father, and He shall give you another Paraclete, that He may abide with you for ever, the Spirit of Truth.—But the Paraclete, the Holy Ghost, Whom the Father will send in My Name, He will teach you all things.
- When the Paraclete cometh, Whom I will send you from the Father, the Spirit of Truth, Who proceedeth from the Father, He will give testimony of Me.
- Jesus being exalted therefore by the right hand of God, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, He hath poured forth this which you see and hear.
- The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the charity of God, and the communication of the Holy Ghost be with you all.
- Because you are sons, God hath sent the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying: Abba, Father.
- By the Son we have access both in one Spirit to the Father.
- I bow my knees to the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, of whom all paternity in heaven and earth is named, that He would grant you, according to the riches of glory, to be strengthened by His Spirit with might unto the inward man.
- To the elect, according to
- Lu* 1, 35
- J* 14, 16, 26
- Jn* 15, 26
- Ac* 2, 33
- 2 C* 13, 13
- Ga* 4, 6
- Ep* 2, 13
- Ep* 3, 14
- 1 Pt* 1, 2



- the foreknowledge of God the Father, unto the sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the Blood of Jesus Christ, grace unto you and peace be multiplied.
- 1 J 4, 13 In this we know that we abide in Him and He in us: because He hath given us of His Spirit, and we have seen and do testify that the Father hath sent His Son to be the Saviour of the world.
- 1 J 5, 6 It is the Spirit which testifieth that Christ is the Truth. For there are Three Who give testimony in Heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost. And these Three are One.
- Praying in the Holy Ghost, keep yourselves in the love of God, waiting for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ.
- They cried one to another and said: Holy, Holy, Holy, the Lord God of Hosts: all the earth is full of His glory.
- They rested not day and night, saying: Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty, Who was, and Who is, and Who is to come.
- Jn 20  
Is 6, 3  
Ap 4, 8

## 2.—THE FATHER, TRUE GOD.

- Jn 20, 17 I ascend to My Father and to your Father, to My God and your God.
- Jn 17, 3 This is Eternal Life: that they may know Thee, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom Thou hast sent.
- Jn 1, 1 The Word was with God.
- Je 31, 9 I will bring them back in mercy, for I am a Father to Israel.
- Je 3, 4 From this time call to Me: Thou art my Father.
- Is 63, 16 Thou, O Lord, art our Father, from everlasting is
- Thy Name.
- O Lord, Thou art our Father, and we are clay.
- Our Father Who art in Heaven.
- Is not He thy Father that had possessed thee, and made thee, and created thee?
- You have received the Spirit of adoption of sons, whereby we cry: Abba (Father).
- Blessed art Thou, O Lord, the God of Israel, our Father from Eternity to Eternity.
- Is 64, 8  
Mt 6, 9  
Dt 32, 6  
Ro 8, 15  
1 P 29, 16

(See *Unity of God*, Part I., sect. 4.)

## 3.—THE SON, TRUE GOD, CONSUBSTANTIAL WITH THE ETERNAL FATHER.

- P 2, 7 The Lord hath said to Me: Thou art My Son, this day have I begotten Thee.
- P 109, 1-3 The Lord said to My Lord: Sit Thou at My right hand until I make Thy enemies Thy footstool. — With Thee is the principality in the day of Thy strength, in the brightness of the saints:
- from the womb before the day-star I begot Thee.
- Behold, a Virgin shall conceive, and bear a Son, and His Name shall be called Emmanuel.
- A Child is born to us, and a Son is given to us, and the government is upon His shoulder: and His Name
- Is 7, 14  
Is 9, 6

D

shall be called Wonderful, hold a Voice from Heaven, Counsellor, God the Mighty, saying: This is My Beloved the Father of the world to come, the Prince of peace. pleased.

- Is* 35, 4      God Himself will come and will save you; then shall the eyes of the blind be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped; then shall the lame man leap as a hart, and the tongue of the dumb shall be free.      Peter said: Thou art Christ, the Son of the living God. *Mt* 16, 16
- Is* 45, 14-15      Thus saith the Lord: The labour of Egypt, and the merchandise of Ethiopia and of Sabaim, men of stature shall come over to Thee, and shall be Thine: they shall walk after Thee, they shall go bound with manacles: and they shall worship Thee and shall make supplication to Thee: only in Thee is God, and there is no God besides Thee. — Verily Thou art a Hidden God, the God of Israel, the Saviour.      In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.—The same was in the beginning with God.—All things were made by Him, and without Him was made nothing that was made. God so loved the world as to give His Only Begotten Son; that whosoever believeth in Him may not perish, but may have life everlasting. *Jn* 1, 1-3
- Je* 23, 5      Behold the days come, saith the Lord, and I will raise up to David a Just Branch; this is the name that they shall call Him: The Lord, our Just One.      The Jews sought to kill Jesus, because He did not only break the Sabbath, but also said God was His Father, making Himself equal to God. *Jn* 3, 16
- Ra* 3, 36-38      This is our God, and there shall no other be accounted of in comparison of Him.—He found out all the way of knowledge, and gave it to Jacob His servant, and to Israel His beloved.—Afterwards He was seen upon earth, and conversed with men.      Before Abraham was made, I am. *Jn* 8, 58
- Mt* 3, 16      Jesus being baptised, forthwith came out of the water: and lo, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove, and coming upon Him. And be-      I and the Father are One. You believe in God; believe also in Me. All things whatsoever the Father hath are Mine. Thomas said to Jesus: My Lord and my God. The Holy Ghost hath placed you Bishops, to rule the Church of God, which He hath purchased with His Own Blood. Of whom is Christ according to the flesh, who is over all things, God Blessed for ever. Neither did I receive the Gospel of man, nor did I learn it; but by the revelation of Jesus Christ. Christ Jesus being in the form of God, thought it not *Jn* 10, 30  
*Jn* 14, 1  
*Jn* 16, 15  
*Jn* 20, 28  
*Ac* 20, 28  
*Ro* 9, 5  
*Ga* 1, 12  
*Ph* 2, 6

robbery to be equal with God.

*Ct* 1, 16-17 In Him were all things created in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones, or dominations, or principalities, or powers; all things were created by Him and in Him:—And He is before all, and by Him all things consist.

*He* 1, 3, 5 Who being the Brightness of His Glory and the Figure of His Substance:—For to which of the Angels hath He said at any time: Thou art My Son, to-day have I begotten Thee?

*1 Jn* 3, 16 In this we have known

the charity of God, because He hath laid down His Life for us.

There are Three Who give *1 Jn* 5, 7-20 testimony in Heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost. And these Three are One.—And we may be in His True Son. This is the true God and Life Eternal.

Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord *Ap* 4, 8, 11 God Almighty, Who was, and Who is, and Who is to come.—Thou art worthy, O Lord our God, to receive glory, and honour, and power.

The Lamb shall overcome *Ap* 17, 14 them, because He is Lord of lords and King of kings.

#### 4.—THE HOLY GHOST, TRUE GOD, CONSUBSTANTIAL WITH THE FATHER AND SON.

*2 K* 23, 2 The Spirit of the Lord hath spoken by me, and His Word by my tongue: the God of Israel said to me, the Strong One of Israel spoke, the Ruler of men.

*Mt* 28, 19 Going therefore, teach ye all nations: baptising them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.

*Ac* 5, 3-4 Peter said: Ananias, why hath Satan tempted thy heart, that thou shouldst lie to the Holy Ghost?—Thou hast not lied to men, but to God.

*1 C* 3, 16 Know you not that you are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?—But if any

man violate the temple of God, him shall God destroy. For the temple of God is holy: which you are.

Know you not that your *1 C* 6, 19-20 members are the temple of the Holy Ghost, Who is in you?—Glorify and bear God in your body.

The holy men of God *2 Pt* 1, 21 spoke, inspired by the Holy Ghost.

At sundry times and in divers manners God spoke by the prophets. *He* 1, 1

Take heed to yourselves, *Ac* 20, 28 and to the whole flock, where in the Holy Ghost hath placed you Bishops, to rule the Church of God.

#### 5.—THE HOLY GHOST, PROCEEDING FROM THE FATHER AND SON.

*Jn* 15, 26 When the Paraclete cometh, Whom I will send you from the Father, Who pro-

ceedeth from the Father, He will give testimony of Me.

He (the Holy Spirit) shall *Jn* 16, 14

glorify Me; because He shall receive of Mine, and shall show it to you.

*Jn* 20, 22 He (Jesus) breathed on them, and said to them: Receive ye the Holy Ghost.

*Ro* 8, 9 You are not in the flesh,

but in the spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of His.

All things whatsoever the Father hath are Mine. *Jn* 16, 15

#### 6.—THE EQUALITY, MISSION, AND WORK OF THE THREE PERSONS.

*Jn* 5, 19 What things soever the Father doth, these the Son also doth in like manner.

*Ga* 4, 4 When the fulness of the time was come, God sent His Son.

*1 C* 3, 16 Know you not that you are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?

*Jn* 7, 16 My doctrine is not Mine, but His that sent Me.

*Mt* 10, 19-20 When they shall deliver you up, take no thought how or what to speak, for it shall be given you in that hour what to speak:—For it is not you that speak, but the Spirit of your Father that speaketh in you.

*Ro* 8, 16 The Spirit Himself giveth testimony to our spirit, that we are the sons of God.

*1 J* 2, 27 Let the unction which you have received from Him abide in you. And you have no need that any man teach you, but as His unction teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie. And as it hath taught you, abide in Him.

*Ez* 11, 19-20 I will give them one heart, and will put a new spirit in their bowels: and I will take

away the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them a heart of flesh:—That they may walk in My commandments, and keep My judgments and do them: and that they may be My people, and I may be their God.

It shall come to pass after *Jl* 2, 28-29 this that I will pour out My Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, and your young men shall see visions.—Moreover, upon My servants and handmaids in those days I will pour forth My Spirit.

There are diversities of 1 *C* 12, 4 graces, but the same Spirit.

The fruit of the Spirit is *Ga* 5, 22-23 charity, joy, peace, patience, benignity, goodness, longanimity, — Mildness, faith, modesty, continency, chastity.

The Spirit of the Lord *Is* 11, 2-3 shall rest upon Him: the Spirit of wisdom and of understanding, the Spirit of counsel and of fortitude, the Spirit of knowledge and of godliness.—And He shall be filled with the Spirit of the fear of the Lord.

## PART III.

GOD AS THE EFFICIENT CAUSE OF ALL THINGS;  
AND ON HIS PRINCIPAL WORKS.

GOD, Who, from eternity, had reposed in the contemplation of His Infinite Perfection, decided, not from exigence, but for the communication of His fulness, to produce creatures in time. "Such is His Goodness," says Peter the Lombard,\* "that He wished to make others share in that Beatitude by which He is eternally happy, and which He saw could be communicated without being diminished." "In the production of creatures," says S. Thomas,† "nothing moves God save His Goodness alone, which He wished to communicate to other things by making them like to Himself." God's creatures are (1) Purely spiritual; Angels. (2) Partly spiritual, partly corporeal; men. (3) Purely corporeal.

\* Sentent., lib. 2. dist. 1. † Cont. Gent., lib. 2. c. 46.

## 1. — GOD AS CREATOR.

<i>Ge</i> 1, 1	In the beginning God created heaven and earth.	seas and all that are therein: and Thou givest life to all these things, and the host of heaven adoreth Thee.	
<i>Ge</i> 1, 3	Be light made.	Holy, Holy, Holy, the Lord God of Hosts: all the earth is full of His glory.	<i>Is</i> 6, 3
<i>Ge</i> 1, 31	God saw all the things that He had made, and they were very good.	His glory covered the heavens, and the earth is full of His praise.	<i>Ha</i> 3, 3
<i>P</i> 99, 3	He made us, and not we ourselves.	The works of God are perfect, and all His ways are judgments.	<i>Dt</i> 32, 4
<i>Is</i> 44, 24	I am the Lord, that make all things, that alone stretch out the heavens, that establish the earth, and there is none with Me.	He stretched out the north over the empty space, and hanged the earth upon nothing.	<i>Jb</i> 26, 7
<i>2 Es</i> 9, 6	Thou Thyself, O Lord, alone, Thou hast made heaven, and the heaven of heavens, and all the host thereof: the earth and all things that are in it: the	The heavens show forth the glory of God, and the	<i>P</i> 18, 2-4

firmament declareth the work of His hands.—Day to day uttereth speech, and night to night showeth knowledge.—There are no speeches nor languages where their voices are not heard.

*Ps* 101, 26-28 In the beginning, O Lord, Thou foundest the earth: and the heavens are the works of Thy hands.—They shall perish, but Thou remainest: and all of them shall grow old like a garment: and as a vesture Thou shalt change them, and they shall be changed.—But Thou art always the self-same, and Thy years shall not fail.

*Ps* 91, 5 Thou hast given me, O Lord, a delight in Thy doings: and in the works of Thy hands I shall rejoice.

*Ps* 144, 10-11 Let all Thy works, O Lord, praise Thee; and let Thy saints bless Thee.—They shall speak of the glory of Thy Kingdom, and shall tell of Thy Power.

*Eci* 17, 7 He set His eye upon their hearts to show the greatness of His works.

*Je* 10, 12-13 He that maketh the earth by His power, that prepareth the world by His Wisdom, and stretcheth out the heavens by His knowledge.—At His voice He giveth a multitude of waters in the heaven, and lifteth up the clouds from the ends of the earth: He maketh lightnings for rain, and bringeth forth the wind out of His treasures.

*Dt* 33, 28 By His magnificence the clouds run hither and thither.

*Eci* 18, 1-5 He that liveth for ever created all things together. God only shall be justified,

and He remaineth an Invincible King for ever.—Who is able to declare His works?—For who shall search out His glorious acts?—And who shall show forth the power of His Majesty? or who shall be able to declare His mercy?—Nothing may be taken away, nor added, neither is it possible to find out the glorious works of God.

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.—The same was in the beginning with God.—All things were made by Him, and without Him was made nothing that was made. *Ja* 1, 1-3

Great and wonderful are Thy works, O Lord God Almighty: just and true are Thy ways, O King of ages. *Ap* 15, 3

He hath made all things good in their time. *Eci* 3, 11

All things were made by Him, and without Him was made nothing that was made. *Ja* 1, 3

Lord, Thou art He that didst make heaven and earth, the sea, and all things that are in them. *Ac* 4, 24

Of Him, and by Him, and in Him are all things. *Ro* 11, 36

Thy hands have made me and fashioned me wholly round about, and dost Thou thus cast me down headlong on a sudden?—Remember, I beseech Thee, that Thou hast made me as the clay, and Thou wilt bring me into dust again. *Jb* 10, 8-9

I am the Lord thy God, Who trouble the sea, and the waves thereof swell: the Lord of Hosts is My Name. *Is* 51, 15

I will behold Thy heavens, the works of Thy fingers: the *Ps* 8, 4

	moon and the stars which Thou hast founded.	My Father worketh until now, and I work.	<i>Jn</i> 5, 17
<i>Ps</i> 146, 8-9	Sing to our God upon the harp, Who maketh grass to grow on the mountains, and herbs for the service of men;—Who giveth to beasts their food, and to the young ravens that call upon Him.	Every best gift, and every perfect gift, is from above, coming down from the Father of Lights, with Whom there is no change nor shadow of alteration.	<i>Ja</i> 1, 17

## 2.—HIS WORKS PERFECT, WROUGHT WITH THE HIGHEST WISDOM.

<i>Ecl</i> 3, 14	I have learned that all the works which God hath made continue for ever: we cannot add anything, nor take away from those things which God hath made that He may be feared.	and the clouds grow thick with dew. How great are Thy works, O Lord! Thou hast made all things in wisdom; the earth is filled with Thy riches.	<i>Ps</i> 103, 24
<i>Ecl</i> 12, 5	Nothing may be taken away nor added, neither is it possible to find out the glorious works of God.	All wisdom is from the Lord God, and hath been always with Him, and is before all time.—Wisdom hath been created before all things, and the understanding of prudence from everlasting.—He created her in the Holy Ghost, and saw her, and numbered her, and measured her.	<i>Ecl</i> 1, 1, 4, 9
<i>W</i> 11, 21	Thou hast ordered all things in measure, and number, and weight.		
<i>Ps</i> 3, 19-20	The Lord by wisdom hath founded the earth, hath established the heavens by prudence.—By His wisdom the depths have broken out,		

## 3.—GOD AS RULER AND PRESERVER OF ALL THINGS.

<i>Job</i> 6, 9	He may let loose His hand, and cut me off.	Unless the Lord keep the city, he watcheth in vain that keepeth it.	<i>Ps</i> 126, 2
<i>W</i> 1, 7	That which containeth all things hath knowledge of the Voice.	As one keeping a furnace in the works of heat, the sun three times as much burneth the mountains, breathing out fiery vapours, and shining with his beams, he blindeth the eyes.	<i>Ecl</i> 43, 4
<i>W</i> 11, 28	How could anything endure, if Thou wouldst not? or be preserved, if not called by Thee?		
<i>Ac</i> 17, 28	In Him we live and move and are.	By Thy ordinance the day goeth on; for all things serve Thee.	<i>Ps</i> 118, 91
<i>Cti</i> 1, 17	By Him all things consist.		
<i>He</i> 1, 3	Upholding all things by the Word of His Power.		

## 4.—GOD AS CO-OPERATOR AND HELPER.

- 2 C 12, 9 My grace is sufficient for thee: for power is made perfect in infirmity. Gladly therefore will I glory in my infirmities, that the power of Christ may dwell in me.—For when I am weak, then am I powerful.
- 2 C 4, 16 Though an outward man is corrupted, yet the inward man is renewed day by day.
- Ph 4, 13 I can do all things in Him Who strengtheneth me.
- 2 T 3, 3 God is faithful, Who will strengthen and keep us from evil.
- 2 P 16, 9 The eyes of the Lord behold all the earth, and give strength to those who with a perfect heart trust in Him.
- Po 10, 29 The strength of the upright is the way of the Lord.
- Na 1, 7 The Lord is good and giveth strength in the day of
- trouble, and knoweth them that hope in Him.
- Fear not, for I am with thee: turn not aside, for I am thy God: I have strengthened thee and have helped thee, and the right hand of My Just One hath upheld thee.
- Not that we are sufficient to think anything of ourselves as of ourselves; but our sufficiency is from God.
- Without Me you can do nothing.
- It is God Who worketh in you both to will and to accomplish.
- Our God is our Refuge in strength; a Helper in troubles.
- God is our Helper for ever.
- The Lord strengtheneth the just.
- Is 41, 10
- 2 C 3, 5
- Jn 15, 5
- Ph 2, 13
- Ps 45, 1
- Ps 61, 9
- Ps 36, 17

## 5.—GOD AS SAVIOUR AND REDEEMER.

- Ps 53, 3 Save me, O God, by Thy Name.
- Ps 61, 3 He is my God and my Saviour.
- Is 12, 2 Behold, God is my Saviour.
- Is 35, 4 God Himself will come and will save you.
- Je 3, 23 Truly in the Lord our God is our Salvation.
- Is 45, 8 Drop down dew, ye heavens, from above, and let the clouds rain the Just: let the earth be opened, and bud forth a Saviour: and let Justice spring up together: I, the Lord, have created Him.
- Behold, I have given Thee to be the Light of the Gentiles, that Thou mayst be My Salvation even to the farthest part of the earth.
- Unto you that fear My Name the Sun of Justice shall arise, and health in His wings.
- This is the Way, walk ye in it: and go not aside, neither to the right hand nor to the left.
- Being consummated, He became the cause of eternal salvation to all that obey Him.
- Is 49, 6
- Ma 4, 2
- Is 30, 21
- He 5, 9

## 6.—CREATION, NATURE, AND OFFICE OF ANGELS.

- Cl 1, 16 In Him were all things created in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible,
- whether thrones or dominations.
- Thou wast the seal of re-
- Ex 28, 12



- semblance, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.
- 4 K 19, 35 It came to pass that night that an Angel of the Lord came, and slew in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred and eighty-five thousand.
- Ge 16, 7-10 The Angel of the Lord having found Agar, said to her: Agar, handmaid of Sarai, whence comest thou? and whither goest thou? And she answered: I flee from the face of Sarai, my mistress.—And the Angel of the Lord said to her: Return to thy mistress, and humble thyself under her hand:—I will multiply thy seed exceedingly, and it shall not be numbered for multitude.
- Nu 22, 31 The Lord opened the eyes of Balaam, and he saw the Angel standing in the way with a drawn sword; and he worshipped him, falling flat on the ground.
- Jo 5, 13-15 When Josue was in the field of the city of Jericho, he saw a man standing over against him, holding a drawn sword; and he went to him and said: Art thou one of ours, or of our adversaries?—And he answered: No; but I am Prince of the Host of the Lord, and now I am come.—Josue fell on his face to the ground; and worshipping said: What saith my Lord to His servant?
- Ps 102, 20 Bless the Lord, all ye His Angels: you that are mighty in strength, and execute His Word, hearkening to the voice of His orders.
- Ps 103, 4 O Lord my God, Who makest Thy Angels spirits, and Thy ministers a burning fire.
- Praise ye Him, all His Angels: praise ye Him, all His Hosts.
- Thousands of thousands ministered to Him, and ten thousand times a hundred thousand stood before Him.
- I am the Angel Raphael, one of the seven who stand before the Lord.—When I was with you, I was there by the will of God.—I seemed indeed to eat and to drink with you: but I use an invisible meat and drink, which cannot be seen by men.—It is time therefore that I return to Him that sent me.—And when he had said these things he was taken from their sight, and they could see him no more.
- In the sixth month, the Angel Gabriel was sent to a Virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph.
- Behold, an Angel of the Lord stood by them [shepherds], and the brightness of God shone round about them.—And the Angel said to them: Behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy,—for this day is born to you a Saviour.—And suddenly there was with the Angel a multitude of the heavenly army, praising God, and saying:—Glory to God in the highest: and on earth peace to men of goodwill.
- To which of the Angels said He at any time: Sit on My right hand, until I make thy enemies thy footstool?—Are they not all ministering Spirits, sent to minister for them who shall receive the inheritance of salvation?
- You are come to the com-

Ps 148, 2

Da 7, 10

To 12, 15-21

Lu 1, 26

Lu 2, 9-10, 13-14

He 1, 13-14

He 12, 22

- pany of many thousands of living creatures and the Angels.
- 1 Pt 3, 22 Christ being gone into Heaven, the Angels and powers and virtues being made subject to Him.
- Ap 5, 11-12 I beheld, and I heard the voice of many Angels round about the Throne, and the power and divinity and wisdom and strength and honour and glory and benediction.

## 7.—THE ANGELIC HIERARCHY.

- Ge 3, 24 God placed before the Paradise of pleasure Cherubims, and a flaming sword, turning every way, to keep the way of the Tree of Life.
- Is 6, 1 I saw the Lord sitting upon a Throne high and elevated: and His train filled the Temple.—Upon it stood the Seraphims: the one had six wings, and the other had six wings: with two they covered His face, and with two they covered His feet, and with two they flew.—And they cried one to another, and said: Holy, Holy, Holy, the Lord God of Hosts.
- Du 10, 13 Michael, one of the chief Princes, came to help me.
- Ep 1, 20-21 God the Father, raising Christ up from the dead, and setting Him on His right hand in the Heavenly Places, —Above all principality, and power, and virtue, and dominion, and every name that is named not only in this world, but also in that which is to come.
- In Him were all things created in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones, or dominations, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by Him and in Him.
- Being gone into heaven, the Angels and powers and virtues are made subject to Him.
- When Michael the Archangel, disputing with the devil, contended about the body of Moses, he durst not bring against him the judgment of reviling, but said: The Lord command thee.
- Cl 1, 16
- 1 Pt 3, 22
- Ju 9

## 8.—ANGELS OBEY GOD, PROTECT MEN, AND DRIVE AWAY EVIL SPIRITS.

- Ps 102, 21 Bless the Lord, all ye His Hosts: you ministers of His that do His will.
- Za 9, 8 I will encompass My House with them that serve Me in war, going and returning, and the oppressor shall no more pass through them.
- Ex 23, 23 My Angel shall go before thee, and shall bring thee into the Amorrite.
- The Angel of the Lord shall encamp round about them that fear Him, and shall deliver them.
- The Angel of His presence saved them.
- My God hath sent His An-
- Ps 33, 8
- Ps 63, 9
- Da 6, 22

- gel and hath shut up the mouths of the lions, and they have not hurt me.
- Ac* 27, 23 An Angel of God, Whose I am and Whom I serve, stood by me this night.
- Lu* 16, 22 It came to pass that the beggar died, and was carried by the Angels into Abraham's bosom.
- Ps* 90, 11-12 He hath given His Angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways.—In their hands they shall bear thee up, lest thou dash thy foot against a stone.
- Mt* 18, 10 See that you despise not one of these little ones: for I say to you, that their Angels in Heaven always see the Face of My Father Who is in Heaven.
- Ba* 6, 6 My Angel is with you.
- Ac* 12, 15 It is his Angel.
- He* 1, 14 Are they not all ministering spirits, sent to minister for them who shall receive the inheritance of salvation?
- Ap* 12, 7-9 There was a great battle in Heaven: Michael and his Angels fought with the dragon; and the dragon fought, and his angels:—And they prevailed not, neither was their place found any more in Heaven.—And that great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, who is called the devil and Satan, who seduceth the whole world: and he was cast unto the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.
- Behold I will send My Angel, who shall go before thee, and keep thee in thy journey, and bring thee into the place that I have prepared.—Take notice of him, and hear his voice, and do not think him one to be contemned: for he will not forgive when thou hast sinned, and My Name is in him.—But if thou wilt hear his voice, and do all that I speak, I will be an enemy to thy enemies, and will afflict them that afflict thee.
- Ex* 23, 20-22

### 9.—INVOCATION OF ANGELS AND HONOUR PAID TO THEM LAWFUL.

- Ge* 32, 24 Behold a man wrestled with Jacob till morning, and said to him: Let me go, for it is break of day. He answered: I will not let thee go, except thou bless me.
- Ge* 48, 16 The Angel that delivereth me from all evils, bless these boys: and let my name be called upon them.
- Nu* 22, 31 The Lord opened the eyes of Balaam, and he saw the Angel standing in the way with a drawn sword; and he worshipped him, falling flat on the ground
- When Josue was in the field of the city of Jericho, he lifted up his eyes, and saw a man standing over against him, holding a drawn sword; and he went to him, and said: Art thou one of ours, or of our adversaries?—And he answered: No; but I am Prince of the Host of the Lord, and now I am come.—Josue fell on his face to the ground; and worshipping said: What saith my Lord to His servant?—Loose, saith He, thy shoes from off thy
- Jo* 5, 13-16

feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy. And Josue did as was commanded him.

1 P 21, 15- The Angel of the Lord  
16 stood by the threshing-floor of Ornan the Jebusite.— David, lifting up his eyes, saw the Angel of the Lord standing between heaven and earth, with a drawn sword in his hand, turned against Jerusalem: and both he and the ancients clothed in hair-cloth fell down flat on the ground.

Jb 5, 1 Call now if there be any that will answer thee, and turn to some of the saints.

Os 12, 3-4 In the womb Jacob supplanted his brother, and by his strength he had success with an Angel;—And he prevailed over the Angel, and was strengthened: he wept, and made supplication to him: he found him in Beth-el, and there he spoke with us.

Za 1, 11- The Angel of the Lord answered and said: O Lord of Hosts, how long wilt Thou not have mercy on Jerusalem, and on the cities of Juda,

with which Thou hast been angry? This is now the seventieth year.—And the Lord answered the Angel that spoke in me, good words, comfortable words.

The holy Angel of the Lord be with you in your journey, and bring you through safe. To 10, 11

The Angels said to Tobias: When thou didst pray with tears, I offered thy prayer to the Lord. To 12, 12

There shall be joy before the Angels of God upon one sinner doing penance. Lu 15, 10

I saw seven Angels standing in the Presence of God; and there were given to them seven trumpets. — And another Angel came, and stood before the Altar, having a golden censer: and there was given to him much incense, that he should offer of the prayers of all saints upon the Golden Altar, which is before the Throne of God.— And the smoke of the incense of the prayers of the saints ascended up before God from the hand of the Angel. Ap 8, 2-4

## 10.—SIN AND PUNISHMENT OF THE BAD ANGELS.

Jb 40, 14 He [Behemoth] is the beginning of the ways of God.

Ez 28, 13 Thou wast in the pleasures of the Paradise of God: every precious stone was thy covering.

Ap 12, 4 His tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven.

2 Pt 2, 4 God spared not the angels that sinned: but delivered them, drawn down by infernal ropes to the lower hell.

unto torments, to be reserved unto judgment.

The angels who kept not their principality, but forsook their own habitation, He hath reserved under darkness in everlasting chains unto the judgment of the great day. Ju 6

I saw Satan like lightning falling from Heaven. Lu 10, 18

How art thou fallen from Heaven, O Lucifer, who Is 14, 12

didst rise in the morning! how art thou fallen to the earth, that didst wound the nations!

- Jb 4, 18* Behold, they that serve Him are not steadfast, and in His Angels He found wickedness. The devil, who seduced *Ap 20, 9* them, was cast into the pool of fire and brimstone.

### 11.—PRIDE, ENVY, AND DECEIT OF THE BAD ANGELS.

- Mt 4, 9* The devil said to Him: All these will I give Thee, if falling down Thou wilt adore me. The devil led Him [Christ] *Lu 4, 5-7* into a high mountain, and showed Him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time;—And he said to Him: To Thee will I give all this power, and the glory of them: for to me they are delivered, and to whom I will, I give them. — If Thou therefore wilt adore before me, all shall be Thine.
- Jb 41, 25* He beholdeth every high thing, he is king over all the children of pride.
- W 2, 24* By the envy of the devil death came into the world: and they follow him that are of his side.
- Mk 5, 12* The spirits besought Him, saying: Send us into the swine, that we may enter into them. Doth Job fear God in *Jb 1, 9-12* vain?—Hast not Thou made a fence for him and his house, and all his substance round about, blessed the works of his hands, and his possession hath increased on the earth? —But stretch forth Thy hand a little, and touch all that he hath, and see if he blesseth Thee not to Thy Face.—Then the Lord said to Satan: Behold, all that he hath is in thy hand: only put not forth thy hand upon his person.
- Mt 12, 43* When an unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places seeking rest, and findeth none.
- Jb 40, 16* He sleepeth under the shadow, in the covert of the reed, and in moist places.
- Jn 8, 44* He was a murderer from the beginning, and he stood not in the Truth, because Truth is not in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own, for he is a liar, and the father thereof.
- 3 K 22, 22* I will go forth, and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And the Lord said: Thou shalt deceive him, and shalt prevail; go forth, and do so. No, you shall not die the death:—For God doth know that in what day soever you shall eat thereof, your eyes shall be opened: and you shall be as gods, knowing good and evil. *Ge 3, 45*

### 12.—POWER OF THE BAD ANGELS DIRECTED AGAINST THE CHURCH AND THE FAITHFUL.

- Ap 12, 4* The dragon stood before the woman who was ready to be delivered, that, when she should be delivered, he might devour her Son. Wo to the earth, and to the sea, because the devil is come down unto you, having great *Ap 12, 12-13*

- wrath, knowing that he hath but a short time !—And when the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth, he persecuted the woman who brought forth the man-child.
- Ap* 12, 15 The serpent cast out of his mouth, after the woman, water as it were a river, that he might cause her to be carried away by the river.
- 2 *Ti* 2, 26 They may recover themselves from the snares of the devil, by whom they are held captive at his will.
- Ap* 12, 17 The dragon was angry against the woman, and went to make war with the rest of her seed, who keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ.
- 1 *Pt* 5, 8 Your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, goeth about seeking whom he may devour.
- Jn* 13, 2 The devil put into the heart of Judas Iscariot to betray Jesus.
- Ap* 2, 10 Behold, the devil will cast some of you into prison, that you may be tried : and you shall have tribulation ten days.
- 1 *T* 2, 18 We would have come unto you, I Paul indeed, both once and again ; but Satan hath hindered us.
- Ac* 5, 3 Why hath Satan tempted thy heart, that thou shouldst lie to the Holy Ghost, and by fraud keep part of the price of the land ?
- Lu* 8, 12 The devil cometh, and taketh the Word out of their heart, lest believing they should be saved.
- Mt* 8, 28 When He was come on the other side of the water, into the country of the Gerasens, there met Him two that were possessed with devils, coming out of the sepulchres, exceeding fierce, so that none could pass by that way.
- The Lord showed me Jesus the High Priest standing before the Angel of the Lord : and Satan stood on His right hand, to be His adversary.
- I have gone round about the earth, and walked through it.
- Satan went forth from the Presence of the Lord, and struck Job with a very grievous ulcer from the sole of the foot even to the top of his head : and he took a potsherd and scraped the corrupt matter, sitting on a dunghill.
- Satan rose up against Israel, and moved David to number Israel.
- Behold, Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.
- You when you were dead in your offences and sins,—Wherein in time past you walked according to the course of this world, of the spirit that now worketh on the children of unbelief, were by nature children of wrath.
- The serpent said to the woman : Why hath God commanded you that you should not eat of every tree of Paradise ?
- When the thousand years shall be finished, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison, and shall go forth, and seduce the nations.
- Satan rose up against Israel : and moved David to number Israel.
- Za* 3, 1
- Jb* 1, 7
- Jb* 2, 7
- 1 *P* 21, 1
- Lu* 22, 31
- Ep* 2, 1-2
- Ge* 3, 1
- Ap* 20, 7
- 1 *P* 21, 1

**13.—CONVERSION OF UNBELIEVERS HINDERED BY THE BAD ANGELS; THEIR APPEARANCE AS ANGELS OF LIGHT; POWERLESS TO INFLICT EVIL UNLESS BY GOD'S PERMISSION.**

- 2 C 4, 3-4** If our Gospel be also hid, it is hid to them that are lost;—In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of unbelievers, that the light of the Gospel of the glory of Christ, Who is the Image of God, should not shine unto them. **The Lord said to Satan: The Lord rebuke thee, O Satan, and the Lord that chose Jerusalem rebuke thee: is not this a brand plucked out of the fire? See thou hurt not the wine and the oil. Save his life.** **Za 3, 2** **Ap 6, 6** **Jb 2, 6** **Jb 1, 12**
- 2 C 11, 14** Satan himself transformeth himself into an angel of light. **The Lord said to Satan: Behold, all that he hath is in thy hand: only put not forth thy hand upon his person. And Satan went forth from the Presence of the Lord.** **Jb 1, 11**
- Mt 4, 6** If Thou be the Son of God, cast Thyself down; for it is written: That He hath given His Angels charge over Thee, and in their hands shall they bear Thee up, lest perhaps Thou dash Thy foot against a stone. **Satan said: Stretch forth Thy hand a little, and touch all that he hath, and see if he blesseth Thee not to Thy Face.**
- Ap 6, 5** Behold, a black horse, and he that sat on him had a pair of scales in his hand. **There was there a herd of many swine feeding on the mountain; and they besought Him that He would suffer them to enter into them. And He suffered them.** **Lu 8, 32**
- Jb 41, 24** There is no power upon earth that can be compared with him who was made to fear no one. **They besought Him that He would not command them to go into the abyss.** **Lu 8, 31**
- Jb 2, 3** Thou hast moved Me against him, that I should afflict him without cause.

**14.—MIRACLES WORKED BY THEM, MANY LED AWAY BY THEM AND THEIR AGENTS; GOD'S INSTRUMENTS FOR CHASTISING THE WICKED.**

- 2 T 2, 9-11** That wicked one shall be revealed whose coming is be saved. Therefore God according to the working of Satan, in all power, and signs, of error, to believe lying,—and lying wonders,—And in That all may be judged who have not believed the Truth, them that perish: because but have consented to iniquity. they received not the love of

- Mt* 24, 24 There shall arise false Christs and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders, insomuch as to deceive (if possible) even the elect.
- Ap* 13, 2 The dragon gave him his own strength and great power.
- Ex* 8, 18 The magicians with their enchantments practised in like manner to bring forth sciniphs, as well on men as on beasts.
- Eci* 39, 33-34 There are spirits that are created for vengeance, and in their fury they lay on grievous torments;—In the time of destruction they shall pour out their force, and they shall appease the wrath of Him that made them.
- To* 6, 14 I hear that she hath been given to seven husbands, and they all died: moreover, I have heard that a devil killed them.
- Ps* 77, 49 He sent upon them the wrath of His indignation: indignation and wrath and trouble, which He sent by evil angels.

15.—THE CREATION OF MAN; HIS MATERIAL NATURE.

- Ge* 2, 7 The Lord God formed man of the slime of the earth. the flower is fallen, because the Spirit of the Lord hath blown upon it.—Indeed, the
- Ge* 18, 27 Seeing I have once begun, I will speak to my Lord, whereas I am dust and ashes. people is grass: the grass is withered and the flower is fallen; but the Word of our
- Jb* 10, 8-9 Thy hands have made me, and fashioned me wholly round about; and dost Thou thus cast me down headlong on a sudden?—Remember, I beseech Thee, that Thou hast made me as the clay, and Thou wilt bring me into dust again. Lord endureth for ever.
- Ps* 77, 39 He remembered that they are flesh: a wind that goeth and returneth not. Hast Thou not milked me as milk, and curdled me like cheese?—Thou hast clothed me with skin and flesh: Thou hast put me together with bones and sinews.
- Is* 45, 9 Wo to him that gainsayeth his Maker, a sherd of the earthen pots! Shall the clay say to him that fashioneth it: What art thou making, and thy work is without hands? We know, if our earthly house of this habitation be dissolved, that we have a building of God, a house not made with hands, eternal in Heaven.
- Is* 40, 6-8 The voice of one saying: Cry. And I said: What shall I cry? All flesh is grass, and all the glory thereof as the flower of the field. —The grass is withered, and We have this treasure in earthen vessels.
- Ps* 102, 14-15 He knoweth our frame, He remembereth that we are dust;—Man's days are as grass, as the flower of the field so shall he flourish.



Ps 13, 25    Against a leaf, that is car-    Thou showest Thy power, and  
ried away with the wind,    Thou pursuest a dry straw.

## 16.—THE WEAKNESS AND MORTALITY OF HIS BODY.

<i>Jb</i> 14, 2	He cometh forth like a flower, and is destroyed, and fleeth as a shadow, and never continueth in the same state.	so the ungodly shall from malediction to destruction.	
<i>Ps</i> 89, 6	In the morning man shall grow up like grass, in the morning he shall flourish and pass away; in the evening he shall fall, grow dry, and wither.	In His Angels He found wickedness:— How much more shall they that dwell in houses of clay, who have an earthly foundation, be consumed as with the moth!	<i>Jb</i> 4, 18-19
<i>W</i> 7, 6	All men have one entrance into life, and the like going out.	All flesh shall perish together, and man shall return into ashes.	<i>Jb</i> 34, 15
<i>Eci</i> 17, 29	All things cannot be in men, because the son of man is not immortal, and they are delighted with the vanity of evil.	In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread till thou return to the earth, out of which thou wast taken: for dust thou art, and into dust thou shalt return.	<i>Ge</i> 3, 19
<i>Eci</i> 17, 1	God created man of the earth, and made him after His own image. And He turned him into it again, and clothed him with strength according to Himself.	The spirit shall pass in him, and he shall not be: and he shall know his place no more.	<i>Ps</i> 102, 16
<i>Eci</i> 41, 13	All things that are of the earth shall return into the	Thou hast considered the steps of my feet, who art to be consumed as rottenness, and as a garment that is moth-eaten.	<i>Jb</i> 13, 28

## 17.—THE IMMORTALITY AND DIGNITY OF HIS SOUL.

W3, 1-4      The souls of the just are in the hand of God, and the torment of death shall not touch them.—In the sight of the unwise they seemed to die, and their departure was taken for misery,—And their going away from us for utter destruction : but they are in peace.—And though in the sight of men they suffered torments, their hope is full of immortality.

                                 Fear ye not them that kill the body, and are not able to kill the soul ; but rather fear Him that can destroy both soul and body into hell.

                                 Let Us make man to Our image and likeness.

                                 These things they thought, and were deceived ; for their own malice blinded them.—And they knew not the secrets of God, nor hoped for the wages of justice, nor es-

                                 Mt 10, 2

                                 Ge 1, 26

                                 W2, 21-22

teemed the honour of holy souls. and suffer the loss of his own soul? Or what exchange

*Mt 16, 26* What doth it profit a man shall a man give for his if he gain the whole world, soul?

### 18.—MAN'S CONDITION BEFORE AND AFTER THE FALL.

- W1, 13-16* God made not death, I know that Thou wilt *Jb 30, 23*  
neither hath He pleasure in deliver me to death, where a  
the destruction of the living: house is appointed for every  
—For He created all things one that liveth.  
that they might be: and He We all die, and like waters *2 K 14, 14*  
made the nations of the that return no more we fall  
earth for health: and there down into the earth: neither  
is no poison of destruction in will God have a soul to  
them, nor kingdom of hell perish, but recalleth, meaning  
upon the earth.—For justice that he that is cast off should  
is perpetual and immortal.— not altogether perish.  
But the wicked with works It is appointed unto men *He 9, 27*  
and words have called it to once to die, and after this  
them, and esteeming it a the judgment.  
friend have fallen away, and There is no man that liveth *Ecl 9, 4*  
have made a covenant with always, or that hopeth for  
it, because they are worthy this: a living dog is better  
to be of the part thereof. than a dead lion.  
*W2, 23* God created man incor- Who is the man that shall *Pa 88, 49*  
ruptible, and to the image of live, and not see death? that  
His own likeness He made shall deliver his soul from  
him. the hand of hell?  
*W2, 24-25* By the envy of the devil Thou hast appointed his *Jb 14, 5*  
death came into the world:— bounds, which cannot be  
And they follow him that passed.  
are of his side. A mountain falling cometh *Jb 14, 18-19*  
*Ecl 8, 8* It is not in man's power to to naught, and a rock is re-  
stop the spirit, neither has he moved out of its place.—  
power in the day of death, Waters wear away the stones,  
neither is he suffered to rest and with inundation the  
when war is at hand, neither ground by little and little is  
shall wickedness save the washed away: so in like man-  
wicked. ner Thou shalt destroy man.

### 19.—ON THE CONDITION OF LABOUR, PAYMENT, AND WAGES

- Ge 2, 15* The Lord God took man, In the sweat of thy face *Ge 3, 19, 23*  
and put him into the Para- shalt thou eat bread till thou  
dise of pleasure, to dress it return to the earth, out of  
and to keep it. which thou wast taken.—And

- the Lord God sent him out of the Paradise of pleasure to till the earth from which he was taken.
- 1 P 22, 16 Arise, then, and be doing, and the Lord will be with thee.
- Pv 6, 11 If thou be diligent, thy harvest shall come as a fountain, and want shall flee far from thee.
- Pv 10, 4 The hand of the industrious getteth riches.
- Pv 13, 4 The soul of them that work shall be made fat.
- Pv 14, 23 In much work there shall be abundance; but where there are many words there is oftentimes want.
- He 6, 12 Be not slothful.
- Ep 4, 28 He that stole let him steal no more; but rather let him labour, working with his hand that which is good, that he may have to give to him who is in need.
- Ecl 9, 10 Whatsoever thy hand is able to do, do it earnestly.
- Eci 7, 16 Hate not laborious works, nor husbandry ordained by the Most High.
- 4c 20, 35 I have showed you all things, how that so labouring you ought to support the weak.
- Ro 12, 17 Provide things good, not only in the sight of God, but also in the sight of men.
- 1 T 4, 11 We entreat you that you use your endeavour to be quiet, that you do your own business, and work with your own hands, as we commanded you; and that you walk honestly towards them that are without; and that you want nothing of any man's.
- 1 C 4, 12 We labour, working with our own hands.
- 2 T 3, 8-12 Neither did we eat any man's bread for nothing, but in labour and in toil we worked night and day, lest we should be chargeable to any of you.—Not as if we had not power; but that we might give ourselves a pattern to you to imitate us.—For also, when we were with you, we declared this to you: that if any man will not work, neither let him eat.—For we have heard that there are some among you who walk disorderly, working not at all, but curiously meddling.—Now we charge them that are such, and beseech them by the Lord Jesus Christ, that working with silence they would eat their own bread.
- His servants shall serve Ap 22, 3 Him.
- Thou shalt not refuse the hire of the needy and the poor, whether he be thy brother, or a stranger that dwelleth with thee in the land, and is within thy gates:—But thou shalt pay him the price of his labour, lest he cry against thee to the Lord, and it be reputed to thee for a sin.
- If any man hath done any work for thee, immediately pay him his hire, and let not the wages of thy hired servant stay with thee at all.
- He that oppresseth the poor upbraideth his Maker; but he that hath pity on the poor honoureth Him.
- He that oppresseth the poor, to increase his own riches, shall himself give to one that is richer, and shall be in need.—Do no violence to the poor because he is poor, and
- Ap 22, 3  
Dt 24, 14-15  
To 4, 15  
Pv 14, 31  
Pv 22, 16, 22-23

do not oppress the needy in the gate:—Because the Lord will judge his cause, and will afflict them that have afflicted his soul.

*Eci 4, 8* Bow down thy ear cheerfully to the poor, and pay what thou owest, and answer him peaceable words with mildness.

*Eci 34, 24-27* He that offereth sacrifice of the goods of the poor is as one that sacrificeth the son in the presence of his father.—The bread of the needy is the life of the poor: he that defraudeth them thereof is a man of blood.—He that taketh away the bread gotten by sweat is like him that killeth his neighbour.—He that sheddeth blood, and he that defraudeth the labourer of his hire, are brothers.

*Eci 35, 16* The Lord will not accept any person against a poor man, and He will hear the prayer of him that is wronged.

*Ja 5, 1-4* Go to now, ye rich men, weep and howl in your miseries which shall come upon you.—Your riches are corrupted, and your garments are moth-eaten.—Your gold and silver is cankered: and the rust of them shall be for a testimony against you, and shall eat your flesh like fire. You have stored up to yourselves wrath against the last days.—Behold the hire of the labourers, who have reaped down your fields, which by fraud has been kept back by you, crieth: and the cry of them hath entered into the ears of the Lord of sabaoth.

*Ge 3, 17* To Adam He said: Be-

cause thou hast hearkened to the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree, whereof I commanded thee that thou shouldst not eat, cursed is the earth in thy work; with labour and toil shalt thou eat thereof all the days of thy life.

Six days shalt thou labour, *Ex 20, 9* and shalt do all thy works.

Anna his wife went daily to weaving work, and she brought home what she could get for their living by the labour of her hands. *Tb 2, 19*

Thou shalt eat the labour of thy hands: blessed art thou, and it shall be well with thee. *Po 127, 2*

Go to the ant, O sluggard, and consider her ways, and learn wisdom;—Which, although she hath no guide, nor master, nor captain,—Provideth her meat for herself in the summer, and gathereth her food in the harvest. *Po 6, 6-8*

Where there are no oxen the crib is empty; but where there is much corn, there the strength of the ox is manifest. *Po 14, 4*

Solomon praises the valiant woman, saying: She hath sought wool and flax, and hath wrought by the counsel of her hands.—And she hath risen in the night, and given a prey to her household, and victuals to her maidens.—She hath looked well to the paths of her house, she hath not eaten her bread idle. *Po 31, 13 15, 27*

Sleep is sweet to a labouring man, whether he eat little or much; but the fulness of the rich will not suffer him to sleep. *Eci 5, 11*

Better is the poor man's fare under a roof of boards

- than sumptuous cheer abroad in another man's house.
- Mt* 20, 8 The lord of the vineyard paid the hire of the labourers.
- Mk* 6, 48 Christ, seeing His disciples labouring in rowing, came to them on the sea.
- Mt* 21, 3, 6 Simon Peter said to them [Nathanael and the sons of Zebedee]: I go a fishing. They say to him: We also come with thee. And they went forth and entered into the ship. They caught nothing. — Christ manifested Himself to His disciples while they were labouring.
- Ac* 18, 2 Paul came to Corinth, and, finding a certain Jew named Aquila, with Priscilla his wife, he came to them.
- Ac* 18, 3 Because he was of the same trade he remained with them, and wrought: (now they were tent-makers by trade.)
- Ac* 20, 34 You yourselves know: for such things as were needful for me and them that are with me these hands have furnished.
- 1 C* 4, 10-12 We are fools for Christ's sake, but you are wise in Christ: we are weak, but you are strong: you are honourable, but we without honour. — Even unto this hour we both hunger and thirst, and are naked, and are buffeted, and have no fixed abode. — And we labour, working with our own hands.
- 1 T* 2, 9 You remember, brethren, our labour and toil: working night and day lest we should be chargeable to any of you, we preached among you the Gospel of God.
- Ge* 26, 2-3 The Lord appeared to Isaac and said: Go not down into Egypt, but stay in the land that I shall tell thee. — And sojourn in it, and I will be with thee, and will bless thee: for to thee and to thy seed I will give all these countries, to fulfil the oath which I swore to Abraham thy father.
- Isaac sowed in that land, *Ge* 26, 12-13 and he found that same year a hundredfold: and the Lord blessed him. — And the man was enriched, and he went on prospering and increasing till he became exceeding great.
- Laban said to Jacob: Let me find favour in thy sight. I have learned by experience that God hath blessed me for thy sake. *Ge* 30, 27
- Remember the Lord thy God, that He hath given thee strength, that He might fulfil His Covenant, concerning which He swore to thy fathers, as this present day sheweth. *Dt* 8, 18
- The Lord blessed the latter end of Job more than his beginning. And he had fourteen thousand sheep, and six thousand camels, and a thousand yoke of oxen, and a thousand she-asses. *Jb* 42, 12
- The blessing of the Lord maketh men rich; neither shall affliction be joined to them. *Pv* 10, 22
- In the morning sow thy seed, and in the evening let not thy hand cease: for thou knowest not which may rather spring up, this or that; and if both together, it shall be the better. *Ecl* 11, 6
- Thou shalt not muzzle the ox that treadeth out thy corn on the floor. *Dt* 25, 4
- Hurt not the servant that *Eci* 7, 22

- worketh faithfully, nor the hired man that giveth thee his life.
- Le* 19, 13 Thou shalt not calumniate thy neighbour, nor oppress him by violence. The wages of him that hath been hired by thee shall not abide with thee until the morning.
- Je* 22, 13 Wo to him that buildeth up his house by injustice, and his chambers not in judgment: that will oppress his friend without cause, and will not pay him his wages !
- Ma* 3, 5 I will come to you in judgment, and will be a speedy witness against sorcerers, and adulterers, and falseswearers, and them that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widows, and the fatherless: and oppress the stranger, and have not feared Me, saith the Lord of Hosts.
- Mt* 10, 10 The workman is worthy of his meat.
- Lu* 10, 7 The labourer is worthy of his hire.
- Pv* 12, 11 He that tilleth his land shall be satisfied with bread.
- 1 C* 9, 9 It is written in the law of Moses: Thou shalt not muzzle the mouth of the ox that treadeth out the corn. Thou shalt not muzzle the ox that treadeth out the corn; and the labourer is worthy of his reward.
- Prepare thy work without, *Pv* 24, 27 and diligently till thy ground, that afterwards thou mayst build thy house.
- He that tilleth his ground *Pv* 28, 19 shall be filled with bread.
- Better is the poor man *Pv* 12, 9 that provideth for himself than he that is glorious and wanteth bread.
- He that tilleth his land *Eci* 20, 30 shall make a high heap of corn, and he that worketh justice shall be exalted.
- We beseech you, brethren, *1 T* 5, 12-13 to know them that labour among you; and we admonish you—That you esteem them more abundantly in charity for their work's sake. Have peace with them.
- The thoughts of the industrious always bring forth abundance. *Pv* 21, 5

## 20.—IDLENESS AND ITS CONSEQUENCES.

- 2 T* 3, 10-11 If any man will not work, neither let him eat.—For we have heard there are some among you who walk disorderly, working not at all, but curiously meddling.
- 1 Th* 12, 24 The hand of the valiant shall bear rule; but that which is slothful shall be under tribute.
- Pv* 19, 18 He that neglecteth his own way shall die.
- Pv* 20, 13 Love not sleep, lest poverty oppress thee: open thy eyes, and be filled with bread.
- He that followeth idleness *Pv* 28, 19 shall be filled with poverty.
- The slothful hand hath wrought poverty; but the hand of the industrious getteth riches. *Pv* 10, 4
- He that pursueth idleness *Pv* 12, 11 is very foolish.
- The way of the slothful is as a hedge of thorns. *Pv* 15, 19
- Slothfulness casteth into a deep sleep, and an idle soul shall suffer hunger.—The slothful hideth his hand under his armpit, and will

- not so much as bring it to his mouth. fore, the talent from him, and give to him that hath ten talents.—And the unprofitable servant cast ye into the exterior darkness. There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.
- Po* 24, 33- Thou wilt sleep a little, 34 thou wilt slumber a little, thou wilt fold thy hands a little to rest:—And poverty shall come to thee as a runner, and beggary as an armed man. Become not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience shall inherit the promises. *He* 6, 12
- Eci* 10, 29 Linger not in the time of distress. Withal, being idle, they learn to go about from house to house: and are not only idle, but tattlers also, and busybodies, speaking things which they ought not. *1 Ti* 5, 13
- Po* 21, 5 Every sluggard is always in want.
- Po* 20, 4 Because of the cold the sluggard would not plough: he shall beg therefore in the summer, and it shall not be given him. (God foretold through His prophet Aggeus that many evils would befall His people because they had not laboured to rebuild the Temple.) *Ag* 1, 10
- Eci* 33, 29 Idleness hath taught much evil.
- Mt* 25, 26, 28, 30 Thou wicked and slothful servant.—Take away, there-

## 21.—HIS MANY MISERIES IN BODY AND SOUL.

- Jb* 5, 7 Man is born to labour and the bird to fly. Great labour is created for all men, and a heavy yoke is upon the children of Adam, from the day of their coming out of their mother's womb until the day of their burial into the mother of all.—Their thoughts, and fears of the heart, their imagination of things to come, and the day of their end:—From him that sitteth on a glorious throne unto him that is humbled in earth and ashes. *Eci* 40, 1-3
- Jb* 7, 1 The life of man upon earth is a warfare, and his days are like the days of a hireling.
- Jb* 14, 1 Man born of a woman, living for a short time, is filled with many miseries.
- Eci* 2, 23 All his days are full of sorrows and miseries; even in the night he doth not rest in mind: and is not this vanity? of things to come, and the day of their end:—From him that sitteth on a glorious throne unto him that is humbled in earth and ashes.

## 22.—MAN'S IGNORANCE.

- Ja* 4, 22 My foolish people have not known Me; they are foolish and senseless children: they are wise to do evils, but to do good they have no knowledge. many; but they that are ignorant shall die in the want of understanding. There is a time and opportunity for every business, and great affliction for man: —Because he is ignorant of
- Po* 10, 21 The lips of the just teach *Eci* 8, 6-7

- things past, and things to come he cannot know by any messenger.
- Ecl* 10, 14 A man cannot tell what hath been before him: and what shall be after him, who can tell him?
- Ecl* 11, 5 As thou knowest not what is the way of the spirit, nor how the bones are joined together in the womb of her that is with child; so thou knowest not the works of God, Who is the Maker of all.
- W* 9, 14 The thoughts of mortal men are fearful, and our counsels uncertain.
- Pv* 27, 1 Boast not for to-morrow, for thou knowest not what the day to come may bring forth.
- Ecl* 9, 1-3, 11 There are just men and wise men, and their works are in the hand of God; and yet man knoweth not whether he be worthy of love or hatred:—But all things are kept uncertain for the time to come, because all things equally happen to the just and to the wicked, to the good and to the evil, to the clean and to the unclean, to him that offereth victims and to him that despiseth sacrifices. As the good is, so also is the sinner: as the perjured, so he also that sweareth truth.—This is a very great evil among all things that are done under the sun, that the same things happen to all men: whereby also the hearts of the children of men are filled with evil and with contempt while they live, and afterwards they shall be brought down to hell.—The race is not to the swift, nor the battle to the strong, nor bread to the wise, nor riches to the learned, nor favour to the skilful; but time and chance in all.
- Behold, now, you that say: To-day or to-morrow we will go into such a city, and there we will spend a year, and will traffic, and make our gain.—Whereas you know not what shall be on the morrow.
- It is not for you to know the times or moments, which the Father hath put in His own power.
- What I do thou knowest not now, but thou shalt know hereafter.
- They that are ignorant shall die in the want of understanding.
- The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master's crib; but Israel hath not known Me, and My people hath not understood.
- My people is led away captive, because they had not knowledge.
- The Priests did not say: Where is the Lord? And they that held the Law knew Me not.
- The heart is perverse above all things and unsearchable, who can know it?
- My people have been silent, because they had no knowledge: because thou hast rejected knowledge I will reject thee, that thou shalt not do the office of Priesthood to Me.
- Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do.
- Neither Me do you know, nor My Father: if you did
- Ja* 4, 13 14
- Ac* 1, 7
- Ja* 13, 7
- Pv* 10, 21
- Is* 1, 3
- Is* 5, 13
- Je* 2, 8
- Je* 17, 9
- Os* 4, 6
- Lu* 23, 34
- Jn* 8, 19



- know Me, perhaps you would know My Father also. He that loveth not, knoweth not God. 1 J 4, 8
- 1 J 2, 4 He who saith that he knoweth Him, and keepeth not His commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him. To know Thee is perfect justice; and to know Thy justice and Thy power is the root of immortality. W 15, 3

### 23.—HIS WANT OF COURAGE TO DO GOOD; HIS PRONENESS TO EVIL.

- Eci 17, 29-31 All things cannot be in men, because the son of man is not immortal, and they are delighted with the vanity of evil.—What is brighter than the sun? yet it shall be eclipsed. Or what is more wicked than that which flesh and blood hath invented? and this shall be reprov'd.—He beholdeth the power of the height of heaven: and all men are earth and ashes. I prone to evil from his youth: therefore I will no more destroy every living soul as I have done. Ro 7, 18-19
- Ro 7, 18-19 I know that there dwelleth not in me (that is to say, in my flesh) that which is good. For to will is present with me; but to accomplish that which is good I find not.—For the good which I will, I do not; but the evil which I will not, that I do.
- Ge 6, 5 God seeing that the wickedness of men was great on the earth, and that all the thought of their heart was bent upon evil at all times, it repented Him that He had made man on the earth. I see another law in my members, fighting against the law of my mind, and captivating me in the law of sin, that is in my members. Ro 7, 23
- Ge 8, 21 The imagination and thought of man's heart are With the mind I serve the law of God; but with the flesh, the law of sin. Ro 7, 25

### 24.—HIS LITTLENESS IN GOD'S SIGHT.

- Jb 9, 2-3, 12-14 Indeed I know it is so, and that man cannot be justified compared with God:—If he will contend with Him, he cannot answer Him one for a thousand.—If He examine on a sudden, who shall answer Him? or who can say: Why dost Thou so?—God, Whose wrath no man can resist, and under Whom they stoop that bear up the world.—What am I, then, that I should answer Him, and have words with Him? Can man be compared with God, even though he were of perfect knowledge? Jb 22, 2
- Jb 25, 4-5 Can man be justified compared with God, or he that is born of a woman appear clean?—Behold, even the moon doth not shine, and the stars are not pure in His sight.
- W 13, 1 All men are vain in whom there is not the knowledge of God.

## PART IV.

## THE MESSIAH, OR CHRIST THE REDEEMER OF THE HUMAN RACE.

MANY of the Angels fell with Lucifer, and all mankind fell with Adam. The sin of the Angels was, as S. Thomas shows,\* irremediable. The sin of man was, indeed, remediable; but man possessed neither power of remedy nor claim upon God for assistance. "But God so loved the world as to give His Only-Begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him may not perish, but may have Eternal Life." † "And the Word was made flesh." It was fitting that the Word, rather than the Father or the Holy Spirit, should become man's Redeemer, for (1) the Word is the Art of the Father, and the art which makes things restores them when they have become impaired. (2) He is the Son of God by nature, and Redemption was to make us sons of God by adoption. (3) Man had fallen through the desire of false wisdom; and the Word is the substantial Wisdom of the Godhead. ‡

## 1.—THE MESSIAH PROMISED TO THE WORLD.

- Ge 22, 18 In Thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed. a ruler from his thigh, till He come that is to be sent,  
 Ge 28, 14 In Thy seed all the tribes and He shall be the Expectation of nations.  
 Ge 49, 10 The sceptre shall not be taken away from Juda, nor I will set upon thy throne. Of the fruit of thy womb Ps 131, 11

\* Sum. Theol., P.P. q. 64, a. 2. † John 3, 16. ‡ Cf. Sum. Theol., 3<sup>ra</sup>, pars q. 3, a. 8.

- Ac* 2, 30 David was a prophet, and Juda, the Root of David, hath knew that God hath sworn to prevailed to open the Book.  
 him with an oath, that of the Jesus Christ the Son of *Ro* 1, 3  
 fruit of his loins One should God, Who was made to Him  
 sit upon his throne. of the seed of David accord-  
*Ap* 5, 5 The Lion of the tribe of ing to the flesh.

2.—CHRIST'S INCARNATION FORETOLD AND LONGED FOR BY THE PROPHETS.

- Is* 7, 14 Behold, a Virgin shall conceive, and bear a Son, and His Name shall be called Emmanuel. O that Thou wouldst rend the heavens, and wouldst come down ! *Is* 64, 1  
*Ge* 3, 15 I will put enmities between thee and the woman, and thy seed and her seed : she shall crush thy head, and thou shalt lie in wait for her heel. Drop down dew, ye heavens, from above, and let the clouds rain the Just : let the earth be opened, and bud forth a Saviour. *Is* 45, 8  
*Is* 31, 22 The Lord hath created a New Thing upon the earth : A woman shall compass a Man. I will raise up to David a Just Branch : and a King shall reign and shall be wise : and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth. *Je* 23, 5  
*Ps* 71, 6 He shall come down like rain upon the fleece, and as showers falling gently upon the earth. The desired of all Nations shall come. *Ag* 2, 8  
 Show us, O Lord, Thy mercy, and grant us Thy Salvation. *Ps* 84, 8

3.—HIS COMING IN PASSIBLE FLESH.

- Lk* 2, 6 It came to pass that when they were there, her days were accomplished that she should be delivered.—And she brought forth her First-born Son, and wrapped Him up in swaddling clothes, and laid Him in a manger. He thought it not robbery to be equal with God ; but emptied Himself, taking the form of a servant, being made in the likeness of men, and in habit found as a man. *1 Ty* 2, 5  
*Jn* 1, 14 And the Word was made flesh. There is One God, and One Mediator of God and men, the Man Christ Jesus. *He* 2, 14, 16  
*Ro* 1, 3 He was made of the seed of David according to the flesh. Because the children are partakers of flesh and blood, He also Himself in like manner hath been partaker of the same : that through death He might destroy him who had the empire of death.—For nowhere doth He take hold of the Angels : but of *16*
- Ga* 4, 4 When the fulness of the time was come, God sent His Son, made of a woman, made under the law.  
*Ph* 2, 6 Being in the form of God,

- the seed of Abraham He the flesh, be you also armed  
 taketh hold; wherefore it with the same thought.  
 behoved Him in all things to Every spirit which 1 J 4, 2  
 be made like unto His brethren confesseth that Jesus Christ is  
 come in the flesh is of God.  
 1 Pt 3, 18 Christ died, being put to Many seducers are gone 2 J 1, 7  
 death in the flesh, but en- out into the world, who con-  
 livened in the spirit. fess not that Jesus Christ is  
 1 Pt 4, 1 Christ having suffered in come in the flesh.

#### 4.—THE FIRST-BEGOTTEN, THE HEAD AND PRINCE OF ALL CREATURES.

- Ci* 1, 15 He is the Image of the hand of God, Who also mak-  
 Invisible God, the First-born eth intercession for us.  
 of every creature. Doing the truth in charity, *Ep* 4, 15  
*Ci* 2, 10 You are filled in Him, Who may we in all things grow  
 is the Head of all principality up in Him Who is the Head,  
 and power. even Christ.  
*Ep* 1, 22 He hath made Him Head Christ is the Head of the *Ep* 5, 23  
 over all the Church. Church; He is the Saviour  
*Ro* 8, 34 Who is He that shall condemn? Christ Jesus, that  
 died, yea that is risen also He is the Head of the *Ci* 1, 18  
 again, Who is at the right Body, the Church, Who is the  
 Beginning.

#### 5.—CHRIST A MOST POWERFUL AND MIGHTY KING EVEN AS MAN.

- Ps* 2, 6 I am appointed King by He hath subjected all *Jn* 1, 22  
 Him over Sion His Holy things under His feet.  
 Mountain, preaching His When a strong man armed *Lu* 11, 21-  
 commandment. keepeth his court, those 22  
*Ap* 1, 5 Grace be unto you and things are in peace which he  
 peace from Jesus Christ, Who possesseth; — But if a  
 is the Prince of the kings of stronger than he come upon  
 the earth. him and overcome him, he  
*Ap* 19, 16 He hath on His garment will take away all his ar-  
 and on His thigh written: mour wherein he trusted,  
 King of kings and Lord of and will distribute his spoils.  
 lords. Gird Thy sword upon Thy *Ps* 44, 4  
*Mt* 11, 27 All things are delivered to thigh, O Thou most mighty.  
 Me by My Father. Thy arrows are sharp: *Ps* 44, 6  
*Mt* 23, 18 All power is given to Me under Thee shall people fall,  
 in Heaven and on earth. into the hearts of the king's  
*Jn* 17, 2 Thou hast given Him enemies.  
 power over all flesh. Who hath raised up the *Jn* 41, 2  
*Jn* 3, 35 The Father loveth the Son: Just One from the east, hath  
 and He hath given all things called Him to follow Him?  
 into His hand. He shall give the nations in

His sight, and He shall rule sword, as stubble driven by  
over kings: He shall give the wind to His bow.  
them as the dust to His

# 6.—CHRIST, THE SAVIOUR OF THE WORLD.

- Lu* 2, 11 This day is born to you a Saviour Who is Christ the Lord.
- Is* 53, 4-5 Surely He hath borne our infirmities and carried our sorrows: and we have thought Him as it were a leper, and as one struck by God and afflicted.—But He was wounded for our iniquities, He was bruised for our sins: the chastisement of our peace was upon Him, and by His bruises we are healed.
- Is* 62, 11 Behold, the Lord hath made it to be heard in the ends of the earth, tell the daughter of Sion: Behold, thy Saviour cometh: behold, His reward is with him, and His work before Him.
- Je* 23, 6 In those days shall Juda be saved, and Israel shall dwell confidently: and this is the name that they shall call Him: The Lord our Just One.
- Ma* 3, 2 He is like a refining fire, and like the fuller's herb.
- Za* 9, 9 Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Sion; shout for joy, O daughter of Jerusalem: Behold, thy King will come to thee, the Just and Saviour: He is poor, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.
- Mt* 1, 21 Thou shalt call His Name Jesus. For He shall save His people from their sins.
- Mt* 12, 21 In His Name the Gentiles shall hope.
- Lu* 19, 10 For the Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost.
- To enlighten them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death: to direct our feet into the way of peace.
- We ourselves have heard Him, and know that this is indeed the Saviour of the world.
- Come to Me, all you that labour and are burdened, and I will refresh you.
- They that are in health need not a physician; but they that are sick.—I am not come to call the just, but sinners.
- The Son of man came not to destroy souls, but to save.
- I am the Door. By Me if any man enter in, he shall be saved: and he shall go in and go out, and shall find pastures.—I am the Good Shepherd. The Good Shepherd giveth His life for His sheep.—I am the Good Shepherd; I know Mine, and Mine know Me.
- I am the Way, and the Truth, and the Life. No man cometh to the Father but by Me.
- And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all things to Myself.—I came not to judge the world, but to save the world.
- All that the Father giveth Me shall come to Me; and him that cometh to Me I will not cast out.
- Lu* 1, 29
- Jn* 4, 42
- Mt* 11, 28
- Mt* 9, 12-13
- Lu* 9, 56
- Jn* 10, 9 11, 14
- Jn* 14, 6
- Jn* 12, 32, 47
- Jn* 6, 37

- Jn* 17, 1-3 Jesus spoke, and lifting up His eyes to heaven, He said: Father, the hour is come; glorify Thy Son, that Thy Son may glorify Thee. As Thou hast given Him power over all flesh, that He may give eternal life to all whom Thou hast given Him.—Now this is eternal life: That they may know Thee, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, Whom Thou hast sent.
- 1 J* 5, 10-11 He that believeth in the Son of God hath the testimony of God in himself.—And this is the testimony, that God hath given to us eternal life. And this life is in His Son.
- Ac* 4, 12 Neither is there salvation in any other. For there is no other name under heaven given to men whereby we must be saved.
- Ac* 10, 43 To Him all the prophets give testimony, that by His name all receive remission of sins who believe in Him.
- Ro* 9, 5 Who is over all things, God blessed for ever. Amen.
- 2 Ti* 2, 19 Let every one depart from iniquity who nameth the Name of the Lord.
- Giving thanks to God the Father, Who hath made us worthy to be partakers of the lot of the saints in light;—Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the Kingdom of the Son of His love, — In Whom we have redemption through His Blood, the remission of sins.—And He is the Head of the body, the Church, Who is the Beginning, the First-born from the dead: that in all things He may hold the Primacy:—Because in Him it hath well pleased the Father that all fulness should dwell;—And through Him to reconcile all things unto Himself, making peace through the Blood of His Cross, both as to the things on earth and the things that are in heaven.
- For there is one God, and one Mediator of God and men, the Man Christ Jesus, —Who gave Himself a redemption for all.

### 7.—HIS CHARITY, GRACE, KNOWLEDGE, AND BEAUTY.

- Jn* 3, 34 God doth not give the Spirit by measure.
- Jn* 1, 14 We saw His Glory, the Glory as it were of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth.
- Ca* 2, 3 As the apple-tree among the trees of the woods, so is My Beloved among the sons.
- Ep* 3, 19 I pray that He would grant you to know the charity of Christ, which surpasseth all knowledge.
- 2 Co* 5, 21 Him, that knew no sin, for us He hath made sin, that we might be made the justice of God in Him.
- Christ suffered for us, Who did no sin, neither was guile found in His mouth.
- You know that He appeared to take away our sins, and in Him there is no sin.
- All the Churches shall know that I am He that searcheth the reins and hearts, and I will give to every one of you according to your works.

- Jn* 16, 30 We know that Thou knowest all things, and Thou needest not that any man should ask Thee. By this we believe that Thou comest forth from God. *Jn* 21, 17 Lord, Thou knowest all things: Thou knowest that I love Thee. *1 Pt* 2, 11-13 The grace of God our Saviour hath appeared to all men;—Instructing us that, denying ungodliness and worldly desires, we should live soberly, and justly, and
- godly in this world,—Looking for the blessed hope and coming of the glory of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.
- Grace is poured abroad in Thy lips. *Ps* 44, 3
- They wondered at the words of grace that proceeded from His mouth. *Lu* 4, 22
- Never did man speak like this Man. *Jn* 7, 46
- The charity of Christ presseth us. *2 Co* 5, 14

### 8.—HIS VOLUNTARY POVERTY.

- Mt* 8, 20 The foxes have holes, and the birds of the air nests; but the Son of man hath not where to lay His head. *Je* 14, 8-9 O Expectation of Israel, the Saviour thereof in time of trouble, why wilt Thou be as a stranger in the land, and as a wayfaring man turning in to lodge?—Why wilt Thou be as a wandering man, as a Mighty Man that cannot save?
- You know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that being rich He became poor for your sakes, that through His poverty you might be rich.
- I am poor and in labours from My youth; and being exalted have been humbled and troubled. *Ps* 87, 16
- There was no room for them in the inn. *Lu* 2, 7

### 9.—CHRIST AS HIGH PRIEST, AND MEDIATOR BETWEEN GOD AND MAN.

- Ps* 109, 4 The Lord hath sworn, and He will not repent: Thou art a Priest for ever according to the order of Melchisedech. *Heb* 5, 5 Christ did not glorify Himself that He might be made a High Priest; but He that said unto Him: Thou art My Son, this day have I begotten Thee.\* *Heb* 8, 1, 3 We have such an High Priest, Who is set on the right hand of the Throne of
- Majesty in the heavens, a Minister of the Holies;—For every high priest is appointed to offer gifts and sacrifices: wherefore it is necessary that he also should have something to offer.
- He hath delivered Himself for us, an Oblation and a Sacrifice to God for an odour of sweetness. *Ep* 5, 2
- There is One God and One Mediator of God and men, *1 Ti* 2, 5

\* Hence Christ appeared to St. John clothed with power,

the Man Christ Jesus, Who gave Himself a redemption for all.

2 Co 5, 18 All things are of God, Who hath reconciled us to Himself by Christ.

He 9, 15 He is the Mediator of the

new testament: that by means of His death they that are called may receive the promise of Eternal Inheritance.

Christ was offered once to exhaust the sins of many. He 9, 28

### 10.—CHRIST'S LOVE OF SUFFERING AND PERFECT OBEDIENCE.

Lu 12, 50 I have a baptism where-with I am to be baptised; and how I am straitened until it be accomplished?

Jn 4, 34 My meat is to do the will of Him that sent Me, that I may perfect His work.

Ma 20, 22 Can you drink the chalice that I shall drink?

He 12, 2 Having joy set before Him, He endured the Cross, despising the shame.

Ro 5, 6-8 Why did Christ, when as yet we were weak, according to the time, die for the ungodly?—For scarce for a just man will one die; yet perhaps for a good man some one would dare to die.—But God commendeth His charity towards us, because when as yet we were sinners, Christ died for us.

He 5, 8 Whereas indeed He was the Son of God, He learned obedience by the things which He suffered.

He 2, 10-11 It became Him, for Whom are all things and by Whom are all things, Who had brought many children into glory, to perfect the Author of their salvation by His Passion.—For both He that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified are all of one. For which cause He is not ashamed to call them brethren.

Because the children are partakers of flesh and blood, He 2, 14 15

He also Himself in like manner hath been partaker of the same; that through death He might destroy him who had the empire of death, that is to say, the devil;—And might deliver them, who through the fear of death were all their lifetime subject to servitude.

It behoved Him in all things to be made like unto His brethren, that He might become a merciful and faithful High Priest before God, He 2, 17-18

that He might be a propitiation for the sins of the people.—For in that wherein He Himself hath suffered and been tempted He is able to succour them also that are tempted.

He humbled Himself, becoming obedient unto death, even to the death of the Cross;—For which cause God also hath exalted Him, and hath given Him a Name which is above all names:—That in the Name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those that are in Heaven, on earth, and under the earth,—And that every tongue should confess that the Lord Jesus Christ is in the glory of God the Father. He 2, 8-11



## 11.—HIS VICTORY AND TRIUMPH ON THE CROSS.

- C12, 15* Despoiling the principalities and powers, He hath exposed them confidently in open show, triumphing over them in Himself. *Is 53, 10-12* If He shall lay down His Life for sin, He shall see a long-lived seed, and the will of the Lord shall be prosperous in His hand.—Because
- Ha 3, 4-5* Horns are in His hands:—There is His strength hid; death shall go before His Face, and the devil shall go forth before His feet. His soul hath laboured, He shall see and be filled; by His knowledge shall this My Just Servant justify many, and He shall bear their iniquities.—Therefore will I distribute to Him very many, and He shall divide the spoils of the strong, because
- Jn 12, 32* I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all things to Myself. He hath delivered His soul unto death, and was reputed with the wicked: and He hath borne the sins of many, and hath prayed for the transgressors.
- 1 C1, 23-25* We preach Christ Crucified, unto the Jews indeed a stumbling-block, and unto the Gentiles foolishness:—But unto them that are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God and the wisdom of God;—For the foolishness of God is wiser than men, and the weakness of God is stronger than men. Christ having suffered in the flesh, be you also armed with the same thought: for he that hath suffered in the flesh hath ceased from sins,—
- Is 9, 6* A Child is born to us, and a Son is given to us, and the government is upon His shoulder. That now he may live the rest of his time in the flesh, not after the desires of men, but according to the will of God.
- Ca 7, 8* I will go up into the Palm-tree, and will take hold of the fruit thereof. Of His fulness we all have received. *Jn 1, 16*

## 12.—CHRIST'S MERIT, AND THE DIVINE EXPIATION.

- Jn 12, 24* Unless the grain of wheat, falling into the ground, dieth, itself remaineth alone; but if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit. *Ep 1, 7* He hath graced us in His Beloved Son. In Whom we have Redemption through His Blood, the remission of sins, according to the riches of His grace, which hath superabounded in us.
- He 5, 9* Being consummated, He became, to all that obey Him, the cause of Eternal Salvation. Christ died for all. *2 C 5, 15*
- Ro 3, 23-24* For all have sinned, and do need the glory of God. Being justified freely by His grace, through the Redemption that is in Christ Jesus. He gave Himself a Redemption for all. *1 Ti 2, 6*
- He is the Propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for those of the whole world. *1 J 2, 2*

- Ps* 106, 1-2 Give glory to the Lord, for He is good, for His mercy endureth for ever:—Let them say so that have been redeemed by the Lord, whom He hath redeemed from the hand of the enemy, and gathered out of the countries.
- Ps* 129, 7 With the Lord there is mercy, and with Him plentiful redemption.
- 2 Co* 5, 19 God was in Christ, reconciling the world to Himself.
- Cl* 1, 14 In Him we have redemption through His Blood, the remission of sins.
- Cl* 1, 19-20 In Him it hath well pleased the Father that all fulness should dwell:—And through Him to reconcile all things unto Himself, making peace through the Blood of His Cross, both as to the things on earth and the things that are in Heaven.
- Blotting out the handwriting of the decree that was against us, which was contrary to us. And He hath taken the same out of the way, fastening it to the Cross:—And despoiling the principalities and powers, He hath exposed them confidently in open show, triumphing over them in Himself. *Cl* 2, 14-15

### 13.—CHRIST'S REDEMPTION OF SINNERS BY HIS BLOOD, HE FREELY WASHES AWAY SIN.

- Ep* 2, 13-16 In Christ Jesus you, who some time were afar off, are made nigh by the Blood of Christ.—For He is our Peace, Who hath made both one, and breaking down the middle wall of partition, the enmities in His flesh;—Making void the law of commandments contained in decrees, that He might make the two in Himself into one new man, making peace,—And might reconcile both to God in one Body by the Cross, killing the enmities in Himself.
- 1 Pt* 1, 18-19 You were not redeemed with corruptible things, as gold or silver, from your vain conversation of the tradition of your fathers,—But with the Precious Blood of Christ, as of a Lamb unspotted and undefiled.
- Christ by His own Blood entered once into the Holies, having obtained Eternal Redemption.
- Thus saith the Lord: You were sold gratis, and you shall be redeemed without money.
- I am, I am He that blot out thy iniquities for My own sake, and I will not remember thy sins.
- For nothing shalt Thou save them.
- You, when you were dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of the flesh, He hath quickened together with Him, forgiving you all offences.
- He* 9, 12
- Is* 52, 3
- Is* 43, 25
- Ps* 55, 8
- Cl* 2, 13

### 14.—CHRIST APPOINTED BY GOD JUDGE OF THE LIVING AND THE DEAD.

- Ap* 1, 8 I am Alpha and Omega, the Beginning and the End, saith the Lord God, Who is, and Who was, and Who is to come, the Almighty.
- We shall all stand before *Ro* 14, 10-11

- the Judgment-seat of Christ; —For it is written: As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to Me, and every tongue shall confess to God.
- 2C 5, 10** We must all be manifested before the Judgment-seat of Christ, that every one may receive the proper things of the body, according as he hath done, whether it be good or evil.
- Ac 10, 42** He commanded us to preach to the people, and to testify that it is He Who was appointed by God to be Judge of the living and of the dead.
- Ac 17, 31** He hath appointed a day wherein He will judge the world in equity by the Man Whom He hath appointed, giving faith to all by raising Him up from the dead.
- Da 7, 10** The Judgment sat and the Books were opened.
- Da 7, 13-14** I beheld in the vision of the night, and lo, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and He came even to the Ancient of days, and they presented Him before Him;—And He gave Him Power, and Glory, and a Kingdom: and all peoples, tribes, and tongues shall serve Him: His power is an Everlasting Power that shall not be taken away, and His Kingdom shall not be destroyed.
- They shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with much Power and Majesty.
- I say to you: Hereafter you shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of the power of God, and coming in the clouds of heaven.
- Neither doth the Father judge any man; but hath given all judgment to the Son.
- Mt 24, 30**
- Mt 26, 64**
- Jn 5, 22**

**15.—NO ONE WILL BE ABLE TO RESIST THE  
IRREVOCABLE JUDGMENT OF CHRIST.**

- Ap 1, 16;** From His mouth came out  
**19, 15** a sharp two-edged sword.
- Is 49, 2** He hath made My mouth like a sharp sword.
- Ps 2, 9** Thou shalt rule them with a rod of iron, and shalt break them in pieces like a potter's vessel.
- Ps 75, 8** Thou art terrible, and who shall resist Thee?
- Je 50, 44** Who is that shepherd that can withstand My Countenance?
- Eci 8, 3-4** He will do all that pleaseth Him, and His Word is full of power. Neither can any man say to Him: Why dost Thou so?
- The Lord of Hosts hath decreed, and who can disannul it? and His hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it away?
- Wo to them that desire the day of the Lord! to what end is it for you? the day of the Lord is darkness and not light.—As if a man should flee from the face of a lion, and a bear should meet him: or enter into the house, and lean with his hand upon the wall, and a serpent should bite him.
- What will you do in the day of visitation, and of the
- Is 14, 27**
- Am 5, 18-19**
- Is 10, 3**

calamity which cometh from afar? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?	God, Whose wrath no man can resist, and under Whom they stoop that bear up the world.	Job, 13
---	---	---------

## 16.—OUR LORD'S NAMES AND TITLES.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p><i>Mt</i> 16, 15-16 Jesus saith to them: But Whom do you say that I am? —Simon Peter answered and said: Thou art the Christ, the Son of the Living God.</p> <p><i>1 J</i> 4, 14 We have seen and do testify that the Father hath sent His Son to be the Saviour of the world.</p> <p><i>Jn</i> 1, 34 I saw, and I gave testimony, that this is the Son of God.</p> <p><i>Ga</i> 4, 4 When the fulness of the time was come, God sent His Son, made of a woman.</p> <p><i>Jn</i> 3, 16 God so loved the world as to give His Only-Begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him may not perish, but may have life everlasting.</p> <p><i>Jn</i> 3, 18 He that believeth in Him is not judged. But he that doth not believe is already judged, because he believeth not in the Name of the Only-Begotten Son of God.</p> <p><i>2 J</i> 3 Grace be with you, mercy, and peace from God the Father, and from Christ Jesus, the Son of the Father, in truth and charity.</p> <p><i>Jn</i> 1, 14 The Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us (and we saw His glory, as it were of the Only-Begotten of the Father), full of grace and truth.</p> <p><i>Jn</i> 1, 18 No man hath seen God at any time: the Only-Begotten Son, Who is in the Bosom of the Father He hath declared Him.</p> | <p>I.</p> <p>He is the image of the invisible God, the First-born of every creature.</p> <p>He that spared not even His own Son, but delivered Him up for us all, how hath He not also, with Him, given us all things?</p> <p>A Child is born to us, and a Son is given to us, and the government is upon His shoulder: and His Name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, God the Mighty, the Father of the world to come, the Prince of peace.</p> <p>Therefore having yet one Son most dear to Him, He also sent Him unto them last of all, saying: They will reverence My Son.</p> <p>The Lord hath said to Me: Thou art My Son; this day have I begotten thee.</p> <p>He hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the Kingdom of the Son of His love.</p> <p>He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Most High, and the Lord God shall give unto Him the Throne of David His father, and He shall reign in the House of Jacob for ever.</p> <p>He held His peace and answered nothing. Again the high priest asked Him, and said to Him: Art Thou the Christ, the Son of the Blessed God?</p> <p>He answered him [Manue]:</p> | <p><i>Ct</i> 1, 15</p> <p><i>Ro</i> 8, 32</p> <p><i>Is</i> 9, 6</p> <p><i>Mt</i> 12, 6</p> <p><i>Ps</i> 2, 7</p> <p><i>Ct</i> 1, 13</p> <p><i>Lu</i> 1, 32</p> <p><i>Mk</i> 14, 61</p> <p><i>Jg</i> 13, 18</p> |
|---|--|--|

- Why askest thou My Name, which is Wonderful?  
*Is* 9, 6 His Name shall be called Wonderful.  
*Mt* 17, 5 As He was yet speaking, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them. And lo, a voice out of the cloud, saying: This is My beloved Son, in Whom I am well pleased: hear ye Him.  
*Jn* 10, 36 Do you say of Him, Whom the Father hath sanctified and sent into the world: Thou blasphemest, because I said, I am the Son of God?  
*Mk* 1, 1 The beginning of the Gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.  
*Lk* 1, 35 The Angel, answering, said to her: The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Most High shall overshadow thee. And therefore also the Holy which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.  
*Jn* 1, 34 I saw, and I gave testimony, that this is the Son of God.  
*Jn* 20, 31 These are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing you may have life in His Name.  
*Ac* 9, 20 Immediately he preached Jesus in the synagogues, that He is the Son of God.  
*Mt* 14, 33 They that were in the boat came and adored Him, saying: Indeed Thou art the Son of God.  
*Jn* 1, 49 Nathanael answered Him, and said: Rabbi, Thou art the Son of God, Thou art the King of Israel.  
*Jn* 11, 27 She saith to Him: Yea, Lord, I have believed that Thou art Christ, the Son of the Living God, Who art come into this world.  
He, answering, said: I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.  
The centurion who stood over against Him, seeing that crying out in this manner He had given up the ghost, said: Indeed this Man was the Son of God.  
The unclean spirits, when they saw Him, fell down before Him; and they cried, saying: Thou art the Son of God.  
Crying with a loud voice, he said: What have I to do with Thee, Jesus, the Son of the Most High God?
- II.
- In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.  
*Jn* 1, 1  
Behold, a Virgin shall be with Child, and shall bring forth a Son, and they shall call His Name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.  
*Mt* 1, 23  
The voice of one crying in the desert: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight in the wilderness the paths of our God.  
*Is* 40, 3  
Thy Throne, O God, is for ever and ever.  
*He* 1, 8  
A Child is born to us, and a Son is given to us, and the government is upon His shoulder: and His Name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, God the Mighty.  
*Is* 9, 6  
Knowest thou not, or hast thou not heard? The Lord is the Everlasting God, Who hath created the ends of the

- earth: He shall not faint nor labour, neither is there any searching out of His wisdom.
- 1 Jn 5, 20** We know that the Son of God is come: and He hath given us understanding, that we may know the true God, and may be in His true Son. This is the true God, and Life Eternal.
- Jn 20, 28** Thomas said to Him: My Lord and my God.
- Lu 1, 47** My spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour.
- Ro 9, 5** Christ is over all things, God blessed for ever. Amen.
- Is 54, 5** He that made thee shall rule over thee, the Lord of Hosts is His Name: and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel, shall be called the God of all the earth.
- 1 Tm 3, 16** Evidently great is the Mystery of godliness, which was manifested in the flesh, was justified in the Spirit, appeared unto Angels, hath been preached unto the Gentiles, is believed in the world, is taken up in Glory.
- 2 Pt 1, 1** Simon Peter, servant and apostle of Jesus Christ, to them that have obtained equal faith with us in the justice of our God and Saviour Jesus Christ.
- Ti 2, 13** Looking for the blessed hope and coming of the glory of the Great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.
- Mt 1, 23** They shall call His Name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.
- Ex 3, 2-6** The Lord appeared to him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush; and he saw that the bush was on fire, and was not burnt.—And Moses said: I will go and see this great sight, why the bush is not burnt. — And when the Lord saw that he went forward to see, He called to him out of the midst of the bush, and said: Moses, Moses. And he answered: Here I am.—And He said: Come not nigh hither: put off the shoes from thy feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground. — And He said: I am the God of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.—Moses hid his face, for he durst not look at God.
- Thou, Child, shalt be called the Prophet of the Highest; for thou shalt go before the face of the Lord to prepare His ways.
- Holy, Holy, Holy, the Lord God of Hosts.
- The voice of one crying in the desert: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight in the wilderness the paths of our God.
- Behold, the Lord God shall come with strength, and His arm shall rule: behold, the reward is with them, and His work is before Him.
- You shall flee to the valley of those mountains, for the valley of the mountains shall be joined even to the next, and you shall flee as you fled from the face of the earthquake in the days of Ozias King of Juda; and the Lord my God shall come, and all the saints with Him.
- Say to the cities of Juda: Behold your God.
- He prevailed over the Angel, and was strengthened: he wept and made supplication to Him: he found Him
- Lc 1, 78**
- Is 6, 3**
- Is 40, 3**
- Is 40, 10**
- Za 14, 5**
- Is 40, 9**
- Os 12, 4-5**

- in Bethel, and there He spoke with us. Even the Lord the God of Hosts, the Lord is his memorial.
- A 23, 8** Who is this King of Glory? The Lord, Who is strong and mighty: the Lord mighty in battle.
- Jo 23, 6** In those days shall Juda be saved, and Israel shall dwell confidently: and this is the Name that they shall call Him: **The Lord our Just One.**
- Ro 10, 13** Whosoever shall call upon the Name of the Lord shall be saved.
- Jo 2, 32** Every one that shall call upon the Name of the Lord shall be saved: for in Mount Sion and in Jerusalem shall be salvation, as the Lord hath said, and in the residue whom the Lord shall call.
- 1 C 2, 8** We speak the wisdom of God, which none of the princes of this world knew; for if they had known it, they would never have crucified the Lord of Glory.
- He 1, 12** As a vesture shalt Thou change them, and they shall be changed: but Thou art the self-same, and Thy years shall not fail.
- Ps 101, 27-28** They shall perish, but Thou remainest: and all of them shall grow old like a garment:—And as a vesture Thou shalt change them, and they shall be changed. But Thou art always the self-same, and Thy years shall not fail.
- Ex 3, 14** God said to Moses: **I AM WHO AM.** He said: Thus shalt thou say to the children of Israel: **HE WHO IS** hath sent me to you.
- A 8, 24** If you believe not that
- I am He, you shall die in your sins.**
- Jesus said to them: Amen, amen, I say to you, before Abraham was made, **I AM.**
- Jesus said to them: Whom seek ye?—They answered Him: Jesus of Nazareth. Jesus saith to them: **I am He.**—As soon therefore as He had said to them: **I am He,** they went backward, and fell to the ground.
- Jesus said to them: When you shall have lifted up the Son of man, then shall you know that **I am He,** and that I do nothing of Myself; but as the Father hath taught Me, these things I speak.
- Jesus said to her: **I am the Resurrection and the Life:** he that believeth in Me, although he be dead, shall live.
- III.**
- I am Alpha and Omega,** the Beginning and the End, saith the Lord God, **Who is, and Who was, and Who is to come, the Almighty.**
- In Him were all things created, in Heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones, or dominations, or principalities, or powers: **all things were created by Him and in Him.**
- He, being the Brightness of His Glory and the Figure of His Substance, and upholding all things by the Word of His Power, making purgation of sins, sitteth on the right hand of the Majesty on High.
- A Child is born to us, and a Son is given to us, and the government is upon His shoulder: and His Name
- Jn 8, 58**
- Jn 18, 4-6**
- Jn 8, 23**
- Jn 11, 25**
- Ap 1, 8**
- Cl 1, 16**
- He 1, 3**
- Is 9, 6**

	shall be called the Father of the world to come.	<b>THE WORD WAS MADE FLESH</b> , and dwelt among us (and we saw His glory, the glory as it were of the Only-Begotten of the Father) full of grace and truth.	<i>Jn 1, 14</i>
<i>Ci 1, 18</i>	He is the Head of the body, the Church, Who is the Beginning, the First-born from the dead, that in all things He may hold the Primacy.	If our Gospel be also hid, it is hid to them that are lost, in whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of unbelievers, that the light of the Gospel of the glory of Christ, Who is the Image of God, should not shine unto them.	<i>2 C 4, 4</i>
<i>Ap 1, 8</i>	I am Alpha and Omega, the Beginning and the End, saith the Lord God.		
<i>Ap 1, 17</i>	When I had seen Him, I fell at His feet as dead. And He laid His right hand upon me, saying: Fear not. I am the First and the Last.		
<i>1 Jn 1, 2</i>	The Life was manifested: and we have seen, and do bear witness, and declare unto you the Life Eternal, which was with the Father, and hath appeared to us.	He is the Image of the Invisible God, the First-born of every creature.	<i>Ci 1, 15</i>
<i>1 Jn 5, 20</i>	We know that the Son of God is come. And He hath given us understanding, that we may know the true God, and may be in His Son. This is the true God, and Life Eternal.	He being the Figure of His Substance, and upholding all things by the Word of His Power, making purgation of sins, sitteth on the right hand of the Majesty on High.	<i>He 1, 3</i>
<i>1 Jn 1, 2</i>	We have seen, and do bear witness, and declare unto you the Life Eternal, which was with the Father.	The Brightness of His Glory.	<i>He 1, 3</i>
<i>Ap 1, 18</i>	Behold, I am living for ever and ever.	I Wisdom dwell in counsel, and am present in learned thoughts.—The Lord possessed Me in the beginning of His ways, before He made anything from the beginning.	<i>Ps 8, 13, 22</i>
<i>Jn 1, 1</i>	In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.	Christ, the Power of God and the Wisdom of God.	<i>1 C 1, 24</i>
<i>1 J 5, 7</i>	The Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost are One.	Unto them that are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the Power of God.	<i>1 C 1, 24</i>
<i>Ap 19, 13</i>	He was clothed with a garment sprinkled with Blood: and His Name is called: The Word of God.	Who is blind, but My servant? or deaf, but he to whom I have sent My Messengers?	<i>Is 42, 19</i>
<i>1 Jn 1, 1</i>	That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of Life.	Behold, I send My Angel, and he shall prepare the way before My face. And presently the Lord Whom you seek, and the Angel of the Testament whom you desire, shall come to His Temple.	<i>Ma 3, 1</i>
		The Angel of the Lord	<i>Ge 22, 15</i>



called to Abraham a second time from Heaven.

*Ge* 31, 11-13 The Angel of God said to me in my sleep: Jacob. And I answered: Here I am.—And He said: Lift up thy eyes:—I am the God of Beth-el, where thou didst anoint the stone, and make a vow to Me.

*Ex* 14, 19 The Angel of God, Who went before the camp of Israel, removing, went behind them; and together with Him the pillar of the cloud, leaving the fore-part.

*Is* 63, 9 In all their affliction he was not troubled, and the Angel of His Presence saved them: in His love and in His mercy He redeemed them, and He carried them and lifted them up all the days of old.

#### IV.

*Jn* 19, 5 Jesus therefore came forth bearing the Crown of Thorns and the purple garment: and he [Pilate] saith to them: Behold the Man.

*1 Ti* 2, 5 There is one God and one Mediator of God and men, the Man Christ Jesus.

*Ac* 2, 22 Ye men of Israel, hear these words: Jesus of Nazareth, a Man approved of God among you by miracles, and wonders, and signs, which God did by Him in the midst of you, as you also know.

*1 C* 15, 47 The first man was of the earth, earthly: the Second Man from Heaven, heavenly.

*Mk* 10, 33 Behold, we go up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man shall be betrayed to the chief priests, and to the scribes and ancients, and they shall

condemn Him to death, and shall deliver Him to the Gentiles.

The Book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the Son of David, the Son of Abraham.

The Son of David.

Is not this the Carpenter, the Son of Mary, the Brother of James, and Joseph, and Jude, and Simon? Are not also His sisters here with us?

We have found Him of Whom Moses in the Law and the Prophets did write, Jesus the Son of Joseph.

I will put enmities between thee and the woman, and thy seed and her Seed: she shall crush thy head, and thou shalt lie in wait for her heel.

To Abraham were the promises made, and to his Seed. He saith not, *And to his seeds*, as of many; but as of one, *And to thy Seed*, which is Christ.—Why then was the law? It was set because of transgressions, until the Seed should come, to Whom He made the promise, being ordained by Angels in the hand of a Mediator.

His Son was made to him of the seed of David, according to the flesh.

This shall be a sign unto you: you shall find the Infant wrapped in swaddling clothes, and laid in a manger.

Before the Child know to refuse the evil, and to choose the good, the land which thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of the face of her two kings.

Arise, and take the Child and His Mother, and go into the land of Israel. For they are dead that sought the life of the Child.

*Mt* 1, 1

*Mt* 1, 1

*Mt* 6, 3

*Jn* 1, 45

*Ge* 3, 15

*Ga* 3, 16-19

*Ro* 1, 3

*Lk* 2, 12

*Is* 7, 16

*Mt* 2, 20

- Is* 9, 6      A Child is born to us, and in Whom My soul hath been a Son is given to us, and the government is upon His shoulder. well pleased. I will put My Spirit upon Him, and He shall show judgment to the Gentiles.
- Lu* 2, 43      Having fulfilled the days, Thou art My Servant Israel, for in Thee will I glory. when they returned the Child Jesus remained in Jerusalem.
- Lu* 2, 7      She brought forth her Hear, O Jesus, thou high First-born Son, and wrapped priest, thou and thy friends Him up in swaddling clothes. that dwell before thee, for they are portending men; for behold, I will bring My Servant the Orient.
- Jn* 10, 36      Do you say of Him, Whom the Father hath sanctified and sent into the world: Thou blasphemest because I said: I am the Son of God? Because His soul hath laboured, He shall see and be filled: by His knowledge shall this My just Servant justify many, and He shall bear their iniquities.
- He* 3, 1      Holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly vocation, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our confession, Jesus. Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, His Holy One, to the soul that is despised, to the nation that is abhorred, to the Servant of rulers: Kings shall see, and princes shall rise up, and adore for the Lord's sake, because He is faithful, and for the Holy One of Israel, Who hath chosen thee.
- Ac* 3, 22-23      Moses said: A Prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me: Him you shall hear according to all things whatsoever He shall speak to you.—And it shall be that every soul which will not hear that Prophet shall be destroyed from among the people. *Is* 49, 7
- Lu* 7, 16      A great Prophet is risen up among us, and God hath visited His people. Coming He dwelt in a city called Nazareth: that it might be fulfilled which was said by the prophets: That He shall be called a Nazarite. *Mt* 2, 23
- Mt* 21, 11      The people said: This is Jesus the Prophet, from Nazareth of Galilee. Is not this the Carpenter? *Mk* 6, 3
- Lu* 24, 19      To whom He said: What things? And they said: Concerning Jesus of Nazareth, who was a Prophet, mighty in work and word before God and all the people. Is not this the carpenter's Son? Is not His Mother called Mary? *Mt* 13, 55
- Ph* 2, 7      He emptied Himself, taking the form of a servant, being made in the likeness of men, and in habit found as a man. He humbled Himself unto death. — I am become a Stranger to My brethren, and an Alien to the sons of My mother. *Ps* 68, 9
- Mt* 12, 18      Behold My Servant Whom I have chosen, My Beloved We have seen Him, despised and the most abject of men, a Man of sorrows and acquainted with infirmity. *Is* 53, 3
- I am a worm, and no man, *Ps* 21, 7

the reproach of men, and the outcast of the people.

*De* 21, 23 He is accursed of God that hangeth on a tree.

## V.

*Mat* 1, 21 Thou shalt call His Name Jesus. For He shall save His people from their sins.

*Lu* 24, 15 It came to pass that while they talked and reasoned with themselves, Jesus Himself also drawing near went with them.

*Ap* 22, 16 I Jesus have sent My Angel to testify to you these things in the churches.

*Ac* 13, 23 Of this man's seed God, according to His promise, hath raised up to Israel a Saviour, Jesus.

*1 J* 4, 14 We have seen and do testify that the Father hath sent His Son to be the Saviour of the world.

*Lu* 2, 11 This day is born to you a Saviour, Who is Christ the Lord, in the city of David.

*Ap* 1, 5 Jesus Christ is the faithful Witness, the First-Begotten of the dead, and the Prince of the kings of the earth, Who hath loved us, and washed us from our sins in His own Blood.

*Cl* 1, 2 To the saints and faithful brethren in Christ Jesus.

*Cl* 1, 3 Grace be to you and peace from God our Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ.

*2 T* 2, 15-16 May our Lord Jesus Christ Himself, and God, and our Father, Who hath loved us, and hath given us everlasting consolation, and good hope in grace, exhort your hearts, and confirm you in every good work and word.

*Mat* 16, 20 He commanded His dis-

ciples that they should tell no one that He was Jesus the Christ.

Where sin abounded, grace did more abound.—That as sin hath reigned to death, so also grace might reign by justice unto life everlasting, through Jesus Christ our Lord. *Ro* 5, 20-21

My little children, these things I write to you that you may not sin. But if any man sin, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the Just. *1 J* 2, 1

Jesus Christ, yesterday, and to-day, and the same for ever. *He* 13, 8

I [Paul] answered: Who art Thou, Lord? And He said to me: I am Jesus of Nazareth, Whom thou persecutest. *Ac* 22, 8

Be it known to you all, and to all the people of Israel, that by the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ of Nazareth, Whom you crucified, Whom God hath raised from the dead, even by Him this man standeth here before you whole. *Ac* 4, 10

They stoned Stephen, invoking and saying: Lord Jesus, receive my spirit. *Ac* 7, 53

A faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptation, that Christ Jesus came into this world to save sinners, of whom I am the chief. *1 Ti* 1, 15

Neither be ye called masters: for One is your Master, Christ. *Mat* 23, 10

The woman saith to Him: I know that the Messias cometh (Who is called Christ); therefore when He is come, He will tell us all things. *Jn* 4, 25

The kings of the earth *Ac* 4, 23

- stood up, and the princes met together against the Lord and against His Christ.
- Pa 3, 20* From Heaven also we look for the Saviour, our Lord Jesus Christ.
- Cl 3, 24* Serve ye the Lord Christ.
- Lu 9, 20* He said to them: But Whom do you say that I am? Simon Peter answering said: The Christ of God.
- Lu 2, 25* He [Simeon] had received an answer from the Holy Ghost, that he should not see death before he had seen the Christ of the Lord.
- Mk 14, 61* The high priest said to Him: Art Thou the Christ, the Son of the Blessed God?
- Jn 4, 42* They said to the woman: We now believe, not for thy saying, for we ourselves have heard Him, and know that This is indeed the Saviour of the world.
- Ap 5, 12* The Lamb that was slain is worthy to receive power, and divinity, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and benediction.
- Jn 1, 29* John saw Jesus coming to him, and he saith: Behold the Lamb of God, behold Him Who taketh away the sin of the world.
- 1 Pt 1, 18-19* You were not redeemed with corruptible things, — But with the Precious Blood of Christ, as of a Lamb unspotted and undefiled.
- Ap 5, 12* The Lamb that was slain.
- Ap 5, 6* I saw; and behold, in the midst of the Throne and of the four living creatures, and in the midst of the ancients, a Lamb standing as it were slain, having seven horns and seven eyes: which are the seven Spirits of God, sent forth into all the earth.
- The Lamb, which is in the midst of the Throne, shall rule them, and shall lead them to the fountains of the waters of life, and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.
- Jesus said to them: Can the children of the bridegroom mourn as long as the Bridegroom is with them? But the days will come when the Bridegroom shall be taken away from them, and then they shall fast.
- There came one of the seven Angels, who had the vials full of the seven last plagues, and spoke with me, saying: Come, and I will show thee the bride, the wife of the Lamb.
- I saw no temple therein. For the Lord God Almighty is the Temple thereof, and the Lamb.
- The city hath no need of the sun nor of the moon to shine in it. For the glory of God hath enlightened it, and the Lamb is the Lamp thereof.
- These shall fight with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them, because He is Lord of lords and King of kings, and they that are with Him are called, and elect, and faithful.
- Other sheep I have, that are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear My voice, and there shall be one Fold and one Shepherd.
- Awake, O sword, against My Shepherd, and against the man that cleaveth to Me, saith the Lord of Hosts; strike the shepherd and the
- Ap 7, 17*
- Mt 9, 15*
- Ap 21, 9*
- Ap 21, 22*
- Ap 21, 23*
- Ap 17, 14*
- Jn 10, 16*
- Za 13, 7*

sheep shall be scattered; and I will turn My hand to the little ones.

*He 13, 20* May the God of peace, Who brought again from the dead, the Great Pastor of the sheep, our Lord Jesus Christ, in the Blood of the everlasting testament fit you in all goodness that you may do His will.

*Jn 14, 6* Jesus saith to him: I am the Way, and the Truth, and the Life. No man cometh to the Father but by Me.

*Jn 10, 7* Jesus said to them again: Amen, amen, I say to you, I am the Door of the sheep.

*1 Pt 2, 25* You were as sheep going astray, but you are now converted to the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

*Jn 10, 11* I am the good Shepherd. The good Shepherd giveth His life for His sheep.

*Pt 5, 4* When the Prince of Pastors shall appear you shall receive a never-fading crown of glory.

## VI.

*Is 11, 10* In that day the Root of Jesse, Who standeth for an ensign of people, Him the Gentiles shall beseech, and His sepulchre shall be glorious.

*Ap 5, 5* One of the ancients said to me: Weep not; behold, the Lion of the tribe of Juda, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof.

*Ap 22, 16* I Jesus have sent My Angel to testify to you these things in the churches. I am the Root and Stock of David, the Bright and Morning Star.

There shall come forth a Rod out of the root of Jesse, and a Flower shall rise up out of his root. *Is 11, 1*

A Flower out of his root. *Is 11, 1*  
In that day the Bud of the Lord shall be in magnificence and glory, and the fruit of the earth shall be high, and a great joy to them that shall have escaped of Israel. *Is 4, 2*

In those days, and at that time, I will make the Bud of Justice to spring forth unto David, and He shall do judgment and justice in the earth.

Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, and I will raise up to David a Just Branch; and a King shall reign, and shall be wise, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth. *Je 23, 5*

I am the Vine, you the branches: he that abideth in Me, and I in him, the same beareth much fruit; for without Me you can do nothing.

I am the True Vine: and My Father is the Husbandman. *Jn 15, 5*

He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith to the churches: To him that overcometh I will give to eat of the Tree of Life, which is in the Paradise of My God. *Jn 15, 1*

Amen, amen, I say to you: Unless the Grain of Wheat falling into the ground die, itself remaineth alone.

The Bread of God is that which cometh down from Heaven, and giveth life to the world. *Ap 2, 7*

Jesus said to them: Amen, amen, I say to you: Moses gave you not bread from

*Jn 6, 32*

- Heaven; but My Father giveth you the True Bread from Heaven.
- Jn 6, 41* The Jews murmured at Him, because He had said: I am the Living Bread which came down from Heaven.
- Jn 6, 50* This is the Bread which cometh down from Heaven: that if any man eat of It, he may not die.
- Jn 6, 35* Jesus said to them: I am the Bread of Life: he that cometh to Me shall not hunger.
- Jn 6, 51* I am the Living Bread.
- Ap 2, 17* To him that overcometh I will give the Hidden Manna.
- Ez 34, 29* I will raise up for them a Bud of renown: and they shall be no more consumed with famine in the land, neither shall they hear any more the reproach of the Gentiles.
- Ca 2, 1* I am the Flower of the Field.
- Ca 2, 1* I am the Lily of the Valleys.
- Ca 1, 12* A Bundle of Myrrh is my Beloved to me. He shall abide between my breasts.
- Ca 1, 13* A Cluster of Cypress my Love is to me in the vineyards of Engaddi.
- VII.
- Jn 12, 35* Jesus said to them: Yet a little while, the Light is among you. Walk whilst you have the Light, that the darkness overtake you not. And he that walketh in darkness knoweth not whither he goeth.
- Jn 1, 9* That was the True Light which enlighteneth every man that cometh into this world.
- The people that walked in darkness have seen a Great Light: to them that dwelt in the region of the shadow of death Light is risen.
- I am come a Light into the world, that whosoever believeth in Me may not remain in darkness.
- Jesus spoke to them, saying: I am the Light of the world: he that followeth Me walketh not in darkness, but shall have the Light of Life.
- In Him was life, and the life was the Light of men.
- A Light to the revelation of the Gentiles, and the glory of Thy people Israel.
- I have given Thee for a Covenant of the people, for a Light of the Gentiles.
- I shall see Him, but not now: I shall behold Him, but not near. A Star shall rise out of Jacob, and a Sceptre shall spring up from Israel.
- As I also have received of My Father; and I will give him the Morning Star.
- I Jesus have sent My Angel to testify to you these things in the churches. I am the Root and Stock of David, the Bright and Morning Star.
- We have the more firm prophetic Word: whereunto you do well to attend, as to a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the Daystar arise in your hearts.
- Through the bowels of the mercy of our God, in which the Orient from on High hath visited us.
- Unto you that fear My Name the Son of Justice shall arise, and health in His
- Is 9, 2*
- Jn 12, 46*
- Jn 8, 12*
- Jn 1, 4*
- Lu 2, 32*
- Is 42, 6*
- Nu 24, 17*
- Ap 2, 28*
- Ap 22, 16*
- 1 Pt 1, 19*
- Lu 1, 78*
- Ma 4, 2*

wings; and you shall go forth, and shall leap like calves of the herd.

## VIII.

to the poor, a Strength to the needy in his distress: a Refuge from the whirlwind, a Shadow from the heat.

This Man was counted worthy of greater glory than Moses, by so much as He that hath built the House hath greater honour than the House.

I say to thee: That thou art Peter; and upon this rock I will build My Church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

Other Foundation no man can lay but that which is laid, which is Christ Jesus.

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lay a Stone in the foundations of Sion, a tried Stone, a corner Stone, a precious Stone, founded in the foundation.

As new-born babes desire the rational milk without guile, — If so be you have tasted that the Lord is sweet, unto Whom coming, as to a Living Stone, rejected indeed by men, but chosen and made honourable by God.

A Tried Stone. Behold, I lay in Sion a chief Corner - Stone, elect, precious. And he that shall believe in Him shall not be confounded.

An Elect Stone.

A Precious Stone.

The Stone which builders rejected, the same is become the Head of the corner.

Thus thou sawest till a Stone was cut out of a mountain without hands: and it struck the statue upon the feet thereof that were of iron

*Jo 3, 16* The Lord shall roar out of Sion, and utter His voice from Jerusalem, and the heavens and the earth shall be moved: and the Lord shall be the Hope of His people, and the Strength of the children of Israel.

*Is 25, 4* Thou hast been a Strength to the poor.

*Is 25, 4* A Strength to the needy in distress.

*Is 25, 4* Thou hast been a Refuge from the whirlwind, a Shadow from the heat. For the blast of the Mighty is like a whirlwind beating against a wall.

*Is 32, 2* A man shall be as when one is hid from the wind, and hideth himself from a storm, as rivers of water in drought, and the Shadow of a Rock that standeth out in a desert land.

*Jo 3, 12* The Lord shall be the Hope of His people, and the Strength of the children of Israel.

*Lu 1, 69* He hath raised up an Horn of Salvation to us, in the House of David His servant.

*Ps 60, 3* To Thee have I cried from the ends of the earth: when my heart was in anguish, Thou hast exalted me on a Rock.

*1 C 10, 4* They drank of the spiritual Rock.

*1 C 10, 4* They drank of the Spiritual Rock that followed them, and the Rock was Christ.

*Is 25, 4* Thou hast been a Strength

- and clay, and broke them in pieces.
- Da 2, 45* According as thou sawest that the Stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and broke in pieces the clay, and the iron, and the brass, and the silver, and the gold, the Great God hath shown the king what shall come to pass hereafter, and the dream is true, and the interpretation thereof is faithful.
- 1 Pt 2, 8* A Stone of stumbling, and a Rock of scandal, to them who stumble at the Word, neither do believe, whereunto also they are set.
- IX.
- Ap 21, 22* I saw no temple therein. For the Lord God Almighty is the Temple thereof and the Lamb.
- He 8, 2* We have a Minister of the Holies and of the True Tabernacle, which the Lord hath pitched, and not man.
- Ro 15, 8* Christ Jesus was Minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers.
- He 10, 20* Having a New and Living Way, which He hath dedicated for us through the Veil, that is to say His Flesh, let us draw near.
- He 13, 10* We have an Altar, whereof they have no power to eat who serve the tabernacle.
- He 7, 27* It was fitting that we should have such a High Priest Who needeth not daily (as the other priests) to offer sacrifices first for His own sins, and then for the people's: for this He did once in offering Himself.
- Walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath delivered Himself for us, an Oblation and a Sacrifice to God for an odour of sweetness.
- Christ hath delivered Himself for us, a Sacrifice to God for an odour of sweetness.
- The Son of man is not come to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give His life a Redemption for many.
- I saw a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and tribes, and peoples, and tongues, standing before the Throne, and in sight of the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands.
- All that dwell upon the earth adored him whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb, which was slain from the beginning of the world.
- Within the veil the Fore-runner Jesus is entered for us, made a High Priest for ever, according to the order of Melchisedech.
- Whom God hath proposed to be a Propitiation, through faith in His Blood, to the showing of His justice, for the remission of former sins.
- As He saith also in another place: Thou art a Priest for ever, according to the order of Melchisedech.
- Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly vocation, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our confession, Jesus.
- Having a Great High Priest that hath passed into the Heavens, Jesus the Son
- Ep 5, 2*
- Ep 5, 2*
- Mk 10, 45*
- Ap 7, 9*
- Ap 13, 8*
- He 6, 20*
- Ro 3, 25*
- He 5, 6*
- He 3, 1*
- He 4, 14*



of God, let us hold fast our confession.

1 *Th* 2, 5 There is one God, and one Mediator of God and men, the Man Christ Jesus.

*He* 7, 25 Always Living to make Intercession for us.

1 *Jn* 2, 1 If any man sin, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the Just.

*He* 7, 22 By so much is Jesus made a Surety of a better Testament.

X.

*Jn* 3, 16 God so loved the world as to give His Only-begotten Son: that whosoever believeth in Him may not perish, but may have Life Everlasting.

*Jn* 4, 10 Jesus said to her: If thou didst know the Gift of God, and Who He is that saith to thee, Give Me to drink, thou perhaps wouldst have asked of Him, and He would have given thee Living Water.

2 *Co* 9, 15 Thanks be to God for His Unspeakable Gift.

*Mt* 12, 18 Behold My Servant Whom I have chosen, My Beloved in Whom My soul hath been well pleased.

*Is* 42, 1 Behold My Servant, I will uphold Him: My Elect, My soul delighteth in Him: I have given My Spirit upon Him.

*Ac* 4, 27 There assembled together in this city against Thy Holy Child Jesus, Whom Thou hast anointed, Herod and Pontius Pilate, with the Gentiles and the people of Israel.

*Lu* 23, 35 The people stood beholding, and the rulers with them derided Him, saying: He saved others; let Him save

Himself, if He be Christ, the Elect of God.

Now dost Thou dismiss Thy servant, O Lord, in peace, because my eyes have seen Thy Salvation.

Behold, the Lord hath made it to be heard in the ends of the earth, tell the daughter of Sion: Behold, thy Saviour cometh: behold, His reward is with Him, and His work before Him.

There shall come a Redeemer to Sion, and to them that return from iniquity in Jacob, saith the Lord.

The sceptre shall not be taken away from Juda, nor a ruler from his thigh, till He come that is to be sent, and He shall be The Expectation of nations.

Behold, there was a man in Jerusalem named Simeon, and this man was just and devout, waiting for the Consolation of Israel.

Let His Name be Blessed for evermore, His Name continueth before the sun.

Thou shalt give Him to be a Blessing for ever and ever; Thou shalt make Him joyful in gladness with Thy countenance.

Jesus saith to Him: I am the Way, and the Truth, and the Life. No man cometh to the Father but by Me.

I saw Heaven opened, and behold, a white horse: and He that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and with justice doth He judge and fight.

I the Lord have called Thee in justice, and taken Thee by the hand, and preserved Thee. And I have

- given Thee for a Covenant of the people, for a Light of the Gentiles.
- He 9, 16-17* Where there is a testament, the death of the Testator must of necessity come in. For a testament is of force after men are dead; otherwise it is as yet of no strength whilst the testator lives.
- Ap 1, 5* Jesus Christ, Who is The Faithful Witness, the First-begotten of the dead, and the Prince of the kings of the earth, Who hath loved us, and washed us from our sins in His own Blood.
- Ap 3, 14* To the Angel of the Church of Laodicea write: These things saith the Amen, The Faithful and True Witness, Who is the Beginning of the creation of God.
- Is 54, 4* Behold, I have given Him for a Witness to the people, for a Leader and a Master to the Gentiles.
- Ap 3, 14* These things saith the Amen.
- 1 Pt 3, 18* Christ also died once for our sins, the Just for the unjust: that He might offer us to God, being put to death indeed in the flesh, but enlivened in the Spirit.
- Ac 7, 52* Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? And they have slain them who foretold of the coming of the Just One, of Whom you have been now the betrayers and murderers.
- Ac 2, 27* Thoa wilt not leave My soul in hell, nor suffer Thy Holy One to see corruption.
- Ac 3, 14* You denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you.
- Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, His Holy One, to the soul that is despised, to the nation that is abhorred, to the servant of rulers: Kings shall see, and princes shall rise up, and adore for the Lord's sake, because He is faithful, and for the Holy One of Israel, Who hath chosen thee.
- What have we to do with Thee, Jesus of Nazareth? art Thou come to destroy us? I know Who Thou art, the Holy One of God.
- They cried one to another, and said: Holy, Holy, Holy, the Lord God of Hosts: all the earth is full of His Glory.
- These things said Isaias, when he saw His Glory and spoke of Him.
- These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true Witness, Who is the Beginning of the creation of God.
- I will make Him My First-born, high above the Kings of the earth.
- He is the Head of the Body, the Church, Who is the Beginning, the First-born from the dead, that in all things He may hold the primacy.
- Jesus Christ, the First-begotten of the dead.
- Whom He foreknew He also predestinated to be made conformable to the Image of His Son, that He might be the First-born among many brethren.
- Christ is risen from the dead, the First-fruits of them that sleep.
- The first man Adam was made into a living soul:
- Is 49, 7*
- Mk 1, 24*
- Is 6, 3*
- Jn 12, 41*
- Ap 3, 14*
- Pt 88, 28*
- Ct 1, 18*
- Ap 1, 5*
- Ro 8, 29*
- C 15, 20*
- 1 C 15, 45*

the last Adam into a Quickening Spirit.

*Is* 11, 25 Jesus said to her: I am the Resurrection and the Life; he that believeth in Me, although he be dead, shall live.

*1 C* 15, 45 **A Quickening Spirit.**

*Ep* 4, 15 Doing the truth in charity, we may in all things grow up in Him Who is the Head, even Christ.

*C* 1, 18 He is the Head of the Body, the Church.

*Ep* 1, 22 He hath subjected all things under His feet, and hath made Him Head over all the Church.

*1 C* 11, 3 I would have you know that the Head of every man is Christ: and the head of the woman is the man: and the Head of Christ is God.

*C* 2, 10 You are filled in Him Who is the Head of all principality and power.

## XI.

*Is* 5, 14 Josue said: Art thou one of ours, or of our adversaries? And He answered: No; but I am Prince of the Host of the Lord, and now I am come.

*Is* 2, 10 It became Him, for Whom are all things and by Whom are all things, Who had brought many children into glory, to perfect the Author of their Salvation by His Passion.

*He* 12, 2 Looking on Jesus the Author and Finisher of faith, Who, having joy set before Him, endured the Cross, despising the shame, and now sitteth on the right hand of the Throne of God.

*Is* 55, 4 Behold. I have given Him

for a Witness to the people, for a Leader and a Master to the Gentiles.

Behold, I have given Him for a Master to the Gentiles.

Thou, Bethlehem Ephrata, art a little one among the thousands of Juda: out of thee shall He come forth unto Me that is to be the Ruler in Israel; and His going forth is from the beginning, from the days of Eternity.

Thou Bethlehem, the land of Juda, are not least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come forth The Captain that shall rule My people Israel.

All Israel should be saved, as it is written: There shall come out of Sion He that shall deliver, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob.

One of the ancients said to me: Weep not: behold, the Lion of the Tribe of Juda, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof.

In that day the Root of Jesse, Who standeth for an Ensign of people, Him the Gentiles shall beseech, and His Sepulchre shall be glorious.

My Beloved is white and ruddy, chosen out of thousands.

He hath made My mouth like a sharp sword: in the shadow of His hand He hath protected Me, and hath made Me as a Chosen Arrow: in His quiver He hath hidden Me.

No man can say the Lord Jesus but by the Holy Ghost.

One Lord, one Faith, one

Baptism.

*Is* 55, 4

*Mt* 5, 2

*Mt* 2, 6

*Ro* 11, 26

*Ap* 5, 5

*Is* 11, 10

*Ca* 5, 10

*Is* 49, 2

*1 C* 12, 3

*Ep* 4, 5

- Ac 2, 36** Let all the House of Israel know most certainly that God hath made both Lord and Christ, this same Jesus, Whom you have crucified.
- Ap 17, 14** These shall fight with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them, because He is Lord of lords and
- Ap 17, 14** King of kings.
- Ro 14, 9** To this end Christ died and rose again: that He might be Lord both of the dead and of the living.
- Lu 6, 5** The Son of man is Lord also of the Sabbath.
- 1 T 3, 16** The Lord of Peace Himself give you everlasting peace in every place.
- Ac 10, 36** God sent the Word to the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (He is Lord of all.)
- Ro 10, 12** There is no distinction of the Jew and the Greek: for the same is Lord over all.
- XII.**
- Da 9, 25** Take notice that from the going forth of the Word, to build up Jerusalem again, unto Christ the Prince, there shall be seven weeks and sixty-two weeks.
- Ac 5, 31** Him hath God exalted with His right hand to be Prince and Saviour, to give repentance to Israel and remission of sins.
- Is 9, 6** A Child is born to us, and a Son is given to us, and the government is upon His Shoulder: and His Name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, God the Mighty, the Father of the world to come, the Prince of Peace.
- Da 8, 23, 25** There shall arise a king, and his heart shall be puffed up;—And in the abundance of all things he shall kill many; and he shall rise up against the Prince of Princes, and shall be broken without hand.
- Grace be unto you and peace from Him that is:—And from Jesus Christ, Who is the Faithful Witness, the First-begotten of the dead, and the Prince of the kings of the earth, Who hath loved us, and washed us from our sins in His own Blood.
- I the Lord will be their God, and My Servant David the Prince in the midst of them.
- Now Thou dost dismiss Thy servant, O Lord, according to Thy Word in peace.—Because my eyes have seen Thy Salvation;—Which Thou hast prepared before the face of all peoples:—A Light to the revelation of the Gentiles, and the Glory of Thy people Israel.
- He hath subjected all things under His feet, and hath made Him head over all the Church,—Which is His Body, and the fulness of Him Who is filled all in all.
- He shall reign for ever and ever.
- He hath appointed a day wherein He will judge the world in equity by the Man Whom He hath appointed, giving faith to all, by raising Him up from the dead.
- As to the rest, there is laid up for me a crown of justice, which the Lord the Just Judge will render to me in that day; and not only to me, but to them also that love His coming.
- Ap 1, 4-5**
- Ex 34, 24**
- Lu 2, 29-32**
- Ep 1, 22-23**
- Ap 11, 15**
- Ac 17, 31**
- 2 T 4,**

- Za 14, 16** All they that shall be left of all nations that came against Jerusalem shall go up from year to year, to adore the King, the Lord of hosts, and to keep the Feast of Tabernacles.
- Ap 19, 16** He hath on His garment and on His thigh written: King of kings and Lord of lords.
- Nu 24, 17** A Star shall rise out of Jacob, and a Sceptre shall spring up from Israel.
- Ps 71, 1** Give to the King Thy judgment, O God, and to the King's Son Thy justice.
- Je 30, 9** They shall serve the Lord their God, and David their King, Whom I will raise up to them.
- Jn 1, 49** Nathanael answered Him and said: Rabbi, Thou art the Son of God, Thou art the King of Israel.
- Jn 12, 15** Fear not, daughter of Sion: behold, thy King cometh sitting on an ass's colt.
- Mt 2, 2** Where is He that is born King of the Jews?
- Mk 15, 2** Pilate asked Him: Art Thou the King of the Jews? But He answering saith to him: Thou sayest it.
- Jn 19, 19** Pilate wrote a title also; and he put it upon the Cross. And the writing was: Jesus of Nazareth, the King of the Jews.
- Ap 15, 2-3** I saw as it were a sea of glass mingled with fire, and them that had overcome the beast and his image and the number of his name, standing on the sea of glass, having the harps of God:—And singing the canticle of Moses the servant of God, and the canticle of the Lamb, saying: Great and wonderful are Thy works, O Lord God Almighty; just and true are Thy ways, O King of ages.
- The Lord shall be King over all the earth: in that day there shall be one Lord, and His Name shall be one.
- This Melchisedech was King of Salem, to whom also Abraham divided the tithes of all: Who first indeed, by interpretation, is King of Justice.
- Who is this King of Glory? The Lord of Hosts, He is the King of Glory.
- His eyes shall see the King in His Beauty; they shall see the land far off.
- The Lord maketh the flood to dwell; and the Lord shall sit King for ever.
- The soldiers, plating a Crown of Thorns, put it upon His head.
- We see Jesus, Who was made a little lower than the Angels, for the suffering of death, crowned with Glory and Honour.
- Thou hast prevented Him with sweetness: Thou hast set on His Head a Crown of Precious Stones.
- His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on His Head were many diadems.
- Za 14, 9**
- He 7, 1**
- Ps 23, 10**
- Je 33, 1**
- Ps 23, 10**
- Jn 19, 2**
- He 2, 9**
- Ps 20, 3**
- Ap 19, 12**

## 17.—ALLUSIONS TO OUR LORD.

- Ma 3, 1-2** Presently the Lord, Whom you seek, and the Angel of the Testament, whom you desire, shall come to His Temple. Behold, He cometh, saith the Lord of Hosts.—

- And who shall be able to think of the day of His coming? and who shall stand to see Him? for He is like a Refining Fire, and like the fuller's herb.
- 2 K 23, 4** As the light of the morning, when the sun riseth, shineth in the morning without clouds, and as the grass springeth out of the earth by rain, [so shall be the kingdom of Christ.]
- Is 53, 2** He shall grow up as a Tender Plant before Him, and as a root out of a thirsty ground: there is no beauty in Him.
- Ps 71, 6** He shall come down like rain upon the fleece, and as showers falling gently upon the earth.
- Is 32, 2** A man shall be as when one is hid from the wind, and hideth himself from a storm; as rivers of water in drought, and the Shadow of a rock that standeth out in a desert land.
- Ca 1, 2** Thy Name is as oil poured out; therefore young maidens have loved Thee.
- Ps 44, 3** Thou art Beautiful above the sons of men; grace is poured abroad in Thy lips; therefore hath God blessed Thee for ever.
- Is 17, 12** A high and Glorious Throne from the beginning is the Place of our Sanctification.
- Is 22, 23** He shall be for a Throne of Glory to the House of His Father.
- In that day the Lord of Hosts shall be a Crown of Glory, and a Garland of Joy to the residue of His people.
- The Expectation of him that expecteth is a most acceptable Jewel; whithersoever he turneth himself, he understandeth wisely.
- I will fasten Him as a peg in a sure place, and He shall be for a Throne of Glory to the House of His Father.—And they shall hang upon Him all the glory of His Father's house, divers kinds of vessels, every little vessel, from the vessels of cups even to every instrument of music.
- He that is a friend loveth at all times; and a Brother is proved in distress.
- A man amiable in society shall be more friendly than a Brother.
- He that is a Friend loveth at all times.
- He had in His hand seven stars. And from His mouth came out a sharp two-edged sword; and His face was as the sun shineth in His power.
- His form is as of Libanus, excellent as the cedars.
- His throat is most sweet, and He is all lovely; such is my Beloved, and He is my Friend, O ye daughters of Jerusalem.
- Is 23, 5**
- Ps 17, 8**
- Is 22, 23-24**
- Ps 17, 17**
- Ps 18, 24**
- Ps 17, 17**
- Ap 1, 16**
- Ca 5, 15**
- Ca 5, 16**

## 18.—CHARACTERISTICS OF OUR LORD.

- PA 2, 8** He humbled Himself, becoming obedient unto death, even to the death of the Cross.
- Take up My yoke upon you, and learn of Me, because I am meek and humble of Heart; and you shall find
- Mt 11, 29**

rest to your souls.

1 Pt 2, 22 He did no sin, neither was guile found in His mouth.

He 4, 15 We have not a High Priest who cannot have compassion on our infirmities; but One tempted in all things like as we are, without sin.

Is 53, 7 He was offered because it was His own will, and He opened not His mouth; He shall be led as a Sheep to the slaughter, and shall be dumb as a Lamb before His shear-er, and He shall not open His mouth.

Is 53, 3 We have seen Him despised and the most abject of men, a Man of Sorrows and acquainted with infirmity; and His look was as it were hidden.

Mt 27, 3-4 Judas, who betrayed Him, seeing that He was condemned, repenting himself, brought back the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and ancients, saying: I have sinned in betraying innocent Blood.

Mt 14, 64 You have heard the blasphemy: what think you? Who all condemned Him to be guilty of death.

1 Pt 2, 23 When He was reviled, He did not revile; when He suffered, He threatened not.

Jn 19, 1 Pilate took Jesus and scourged Him.

Mt 27, 29 Plating a crown of thorns, they put it upon His Head, and a reed in His right hand. And bowing the knee before Him, they mocked Him, saying: Hail, King of the Jews.

Is 53, 5 He was wounded for our iniquities, He was bruised for our sins.

Is 53, 4 Surely He hath borne our

infirmities and carried our sorrows; and we have thought Him as it were a leper, and as One struck by God and afflicted.

After they had crucified Mt 27, 35 Him they divided His garments.

O God, My God, look upon Ps 21, 1 Me: why hast Thou forsaken Me?

It behoved Him in all He 2, 17 things to be made like unto His brethren, that He might become a Merciful and Faithful High Priest before God, that He might be a Propitiation for the sins of the people.

It was fitting that we He 7, 28 should have such a High Priest, holy, innocent, undefiled, separated from sinners, and made higher than the heavens.

Being consummated, He He 5, 9 became, to all that obey Him, the cause of eternal salvation.

And now, saith the Lord, Is 49, 5 that formed Me from the womb to be His servant, that I may bring back Jacob unto Him, and Israel will not be gathered together; and I am glorified in the eyes of the Lord, and My God is made My strength.

Who is this that cometh Is 63, 1 from Edom, with dyed garments from Bosra, this beautiful One in His robe, walking in the greatness of His strength? I that speak justice, and am a Defender to save.

Great is the Mystery of 1 Ti 3, 16 godliness, which was manifested in the flesh, was justified in the Spirit, appeared unto Angels, hath been

- preached unto the Gentiles, is believed in the world, is taken up in Glory.
- Ac 2, 33* This Jesus hath God raised again, whereof all we are witnesses. — Being exalted therefore by the right hand of God, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, He hath poured forth this which you see and hear.
- Lu 24, 6* He is not here, but is risen.
- Ac 3, 13* The God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, the God of our fathers, hath glorified His Son Jesus, Whom you indeed delivered up and denied before the face of Pilate, when he judged He should be released.
- Is 54, 6* He that made thee shall rule over thee: the Lord of Hosts is His Name.
- Ca 1, 13* A bundle of myrrh is my Beloved to me.
- 2 Pt 3, 18* Grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.
- 1 Ti 1, 1* Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ, according to the Commandment of God our Saviour, and of Christ Jesus our Hope.
- Mk 3, 35* Whosoever shall do the Will of God, he is My brother, and My sister, and mother.
- Je 10, 16* The Portion of Jacob is not like these: for it is He Who formed all things.
- He 13, 6* We may confidently say: The Lord is my Helper: I will not fear what man shall do to me.
- Je 8, 22* Is there no Balm in Galaad? or is there no Physician there? Why then is not the wound of the daughter of My people closed?
- He went into a desert place apart: which when the people knew they followed Him; and He received them, and spoke to them of the Kingdom of God, and healed them who had need of healing.
- He shall sit refining and cleansing the silver, and He shall purify the sons of Levi, and shall refine them as gold and as silver, and they shall offer sacrifices to the Lord in justice.
- You call Me Master and Lord: and you say well, for so I am.
- Blessed are those servants whom the Lord, when He cometh, shall find watching. Amen I say to you, that He will gird Himself, and make them sit down to meat, and passing will minister unto them.
- I have given you an Example, that as I have done to you, so you do also.
- This man [Nicodemus] came to Jesus by night, and said to Him: Rabbi, we know that Thou art come a Teacher from God; for no man can do these signs which Thou dost, unless God be with him.
- The Lord ruleth me: and I shall want nothing. He hath set me in a Place of Pasture.
- While I was with them I kept them in Thy Name. Those whom Thou gavest Me have I kept.
- I will set up One Shepherd over them, and He shall feed them, even My Servant David:
- Lu 9, 10* 11
- Ma 3, 3*
- Jn 13, 13*
- Lu 12, 37*
- Jn 13, 15*
- Jn 3, 2*
- Pt 22, 1*
- Jn 17, 12*
- Ez 34, 23*



	He shall feed them, and He shall be their Shepherd.	they have gone from mountain to hill, they have forgotten their Resting-place.	
<i>Lk</i> 40, 11	He shall feed His flock like a Shepherd: He shall gather together the lambs with His arm, and shall take them up in His Bosom; and He Himself shall carry them that are with young.	My Flesh is Meat indeed, and My Blood is Drink indeed.	<i>Jn</i> 6, 56
		Christ our Pasch is sacrificed.	1 <i>C</i> 5, 7
<i>Ps</i> 22, 2	The Lord ruleth me: He hath brought me up on the water of refreshment: He hath converted my soul.	You, who some time were afar off, are made nigh by the Blood of Christ.—For He is our Peace.	<i>Ep</i> 2, 13-14
<i>Lk</i> 50, 6	My people hath been a lost flock, their shepherds have caused them to go astray, and have made them wander in the mountains;	Of Him are you in Christ Jesus, Who of God is made unto us Wisdom, and Justice, and Sanctification, and Redemption.	1 <i>C</i> 1, 30
		Christ is All, and in All.	<i>C</i> 7, 11

19.—OUR LORD TYPIFIED IN THE LIFE OF ST. JEREMIAS THE PROPHET. PROPHECIES AND CONFORMITIES.\*

	1.—THE INCARNATION OF OUR LORD. HIS EARLY LIFE.	The Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us.	<i>Jn</i> 1, 14
<i>Mt</i> 1, 23	Behold, a Virgin shall be with Child and bring forth a Son, and they shall call His Name Emmanuel.	Afterwards He was seen upon earth, and conversed with men.	<i>Bat</i> 3, 38
<i>Je</i> 31, 22	The Lord hath created a New Thing upon earth: A Woman shall compass a Man.	Because the children were partakers of flesh and blood, He also Himself in like manner hath been partaker of the same.	<i>He</i> 2, 14
<i>Lu</i> 1, 35	The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the Power of the Most High shall overshadow thee. And therefore also the Holy which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.	Their Leader shall be of themselves, and their Prince shall come forth from the midst of them; and I will bring Him near, and He shall come to Me.	<i>Je</i> 30, 21
<i>Je</i> 1, 5	Before I formed thee in the bowels of thy mother I knew thee: before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee.	Behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy.—For this day is born to you a Saviour.	<i>Lu</i> 2, 10-11
		The man that brought the	<i>Je</i> 20, 15

\* "To Him all the Prophets give testimony."—Acts x. 43.

† This Sacred Book, written at the dictation of St. Jeremias by Baruch, his faithful disciple and scribe.

*tidings to my father, saying :  
A man-child is born to thee,  
made him greatly rejoice.*

Mt 4, 16

The people that sat in darkness hath seen a Great Light ; and to them that sat in the region of the shadow of death Light is sprung up.

Ba 5, 9

*God will bring Israel with joy in the Light of His Majesty, with mercy and justice that cometh from Him.*

Jn 8, 12

I am the Light of the world.

Ba 5, 3

*God will show His Brightness in thee, to every one under heaven.*

Lu 7, 16

They glorified God, saying : A Great Prophet is risen up among us ; and : God hath visited His people.

Je 1, 5

*I made thee a Prophet unto the nations.*

He 4, 15

We have not a High Priest who cannot have compassion on our infirmities ; but One tempted in all things like as we are, without sin.

Je 1, 1

*Jeremias the son of Helcias, of the Priests that were in Anathoth.*

Is 49, 6

Behold, I have given Thee to be the Light of the Gentiles, that Thou mayst be My Salvation even to the farthest part of the earth.

Je 1, 10

*Lo ! I have set thee this day over the nations and over kingdoms, to root up and to pull down, and to waste and to destroy, and to build and to plant.*

Ja 1, 3

All things were made by

Him, and without Him was made nothing that was made.

*He made the earth by His Power, and prepared the world by His Wisdom, and stretcheth out the heavens by His Knowledge.*

Je 10, 12

Blessed be the Lord God of Israel, because He hath visited and wrought the redemption of His people.

Lu 1, 69

*Hear us, O God our Saviour, the Hope of all the ends of the earth.—Thou hast visited the earth, and hast plentifully watered it ; Thou hast many ways enriched it.*

Ps 64, \* 6, 10

There is One Mediator of God and man, the Man Christ Jesus.

1 Ty 2, 5

*I have stood in Thy sight to speak good for them, and to turn away Thy indignation from them.*

Je 18, 20

Behold, this Child is set for the fall and for the resurrection of many in Israel, and for a Sign that shall be contradicted.

Lu 2, 34

*Wo is me, my mother ! why hast thou borne me, a man of strife, a man of contention to all the earth ?*

Je 15, 10

After eight days were accomplished that the Child should be circumcised His Name was called Jesus.

Lu 2, 21

*Be circumcised to the Lord, and take away the foreskins [not of your flesh but] of your hearts.*

Je 4, 3

He arose and took the Child and His Mother by

Mt 2, 14-15

- night, and retired into Egypt, — That it might be fulfilled which the Lord spoke by the Prophet, saying: Out of Egypt have I called My Son.
- Je 43, 67* *Johanan took all the remnant of Juda and Jeremias the Prophet, and they went into the land of Egypt.*
- Mt 2, 17-18* Then [at the massacre of the Innocents] was fulfilled that which was spoken by Jeremias the Prophet, saying: — A voice of Rama was heard, lamentation and great mourning; Rachel bewailing her children, and would not be comforted because they are not.
- Je 31, 15* *A voice was heard on High of lamentation, of mourning and weeping, of Rachel weeping for her children, and refusing to be comforted for them because they are not.*
- 2 C 8, 9* Being rich He became poor for your sakes, that through His poverty you might be rich.
- La 3, 1* *I am the man that see my poverty by the rod of His indignation.*
- Mt 4, 13* Leaving the City of Nazareth, He came and dwelt in Capharnaum.
- Je 12, 7-8* *I have forsaken my house [at Anathoth], I have left my inheritance. — My inheritance is become to me a lion in the wood: it hath cried out against me.*
- Jn 1, 11* Christ came unto His own, and His own received Him not, [but the Gentiles received and worshipped Him.]
- Je 40, 4* *(Jeremias is persecuted by his own people, but honourably received by the Chaldeans.)*
- Jesus hid Himself, and went out of the Temple.
- Jn 8, 59* *The King [Joakim] commanded Jeremiel to take up Baruch the scribe and Jeremias the Prophet: but the Lord hid them.*
- Learn of Me, because I am meek and humble of heart.
- Mt 11, 29* *I was as a meek lamb.*
- Je 11, 19*
- 2.—JESUS THE GOOD SHEPHERD. HIS CALLING THE APOSTLES. HIS PREACHING LIFE.
- I am the Good Shepherd.
- Jn 10, 11* *He that scattered Israel will gather him, and He will keep him as the shepherd doth his flock. — For the Lord hath redeemed Jacob, and delivered him out of the hand of one that was mightier than he.*
- Je 31, 10-11*
- The Lord hath made My mouth like a sharp sword.
- Je 49, 2* In the shadow of His hand He hath protected Me, and hath made Me as a chosen arrow.
- Je 1, 18-19* *Behold, I have made thee this day a fortified city, and a pillar of iron, and a wall of brass over all the land to the kings of Juda, to the Princes thereof, and to the Priests and to the people of the land. — And they shall not prevail; for I am with thee, saith the Lord, to deliver thee.*
- He passed from thence to teach and preach in their Cities.
- Mt 11, 1*
- The Lord said to me: Pro
- Je 11, 6*

*claim aloud all these words in the Cities of Juda and in the streets of Jerusalem.*

*Mt 4, 19* Come ye after Me, and I will make you to be Fishers of men.

*Je 16, 18* Behold, I will send Fishers, and they shall fish them.

*Jn 15, 18* You have not chosen Me, but I have chosen you, and have appointed you that you should go and should bring forth fruit.

*Je 3, 15* I will give you Pastors according to My own Heart, and they shall feed you with knowledge and doctrine.

*Jn 12, 49* He gave Me commandment what I should speak.

*Je 1, 17* Speak to them all that I command thee.

*Mt 28, 19* Going therefore, teach ye all nations.

*Je 1, 5* I made thee a Prophet unto the nations.

*1 C1, 27* The weak things of the world hath God chosen, that He may confound the strong.

*Je 1, 6* Ah! ah! ah! Lord God, behold, I cannot speak, for I am a child.

*Lu 10, 16* He that heareth you heareth Me.

*Je 15, 19* If thou wilt separate the precious from the vile, thou shalt be as My Mouth.

*1 C1, 27-31* The foolish things of the world hath God chosen, that He may confound the wise: and the weak things of the world hath God chosen, that He may confound the strong.—And the base things of the

world and the things that are contemptible hath God chosen, and the things that are not, that He might bring to naught things that are,—That no flesh should glory in His sight.—But of Him are you in Christ Jesus, Who from God is made unto us wisdom, and justice, and justification, and redemption,—That, as it is written, He that glorieth may glory in the Lord.

*Je 9, 23* Let not the wise man glory in his wisdom, and let not the strong man glory in his strength, and let not the rich man glory in his riches.—But let him that glorieth glory in this, that he understandeth and knoweth Me; for I am the Lord that exercise mercy and judgment and justice in the earth.

Out of the mouth of infants *Mt 21, 16* and of sucklings Thou hast perfected praise.

Ah! ah! ah! Lord God, *Je 1, 6-7* behold, I cannot speak, for I am a child.—And the Lord said to me: Behold, I have given My words in thy mouth.

Behold, the Sower went *Mt 13, 3, 7* forth to sow. Some fell by the wayside,—And others fell among thorns; and the thorns grew up and choked them.

Break up anew your fallow *Je 4, 3* ground, and sow not upon thorns.

Let your loins be girt. *Lu 12, 35*  
Gird up thy loins and arise, *Je 1, 17*  
and speak to them all that I command thee.

- Ep 6, 17* Take unto you the Sword of the Spirit (which is the Word of God). *Ro 9, 27* If the number of the children of Israel be as the sand of the sea, a remnant shall be saved.
- 2 M 15, 15-18* *Jeremias stretched forth his right hand, and gave to Judas a Sword of Gold, saying: Take this holy Sword a gift from God, wherewith thou shalt overcome the adversaries of my people.* *All the land shall be desolate, but yet I will not utterly destroy.* *Je 4, 27*
- Mt 24, 35* Heaven and earth shall pass away, but My words shall not pass away. *Brethren, we are not the children of the bond-woman, but of the free, by the freedom wherewith Christ has made us free.* *Ga 4, 31*
- Je 23, 28* The prophet that hath a dream let him tell a dream, and he that hath My Word let him speak My Word with truth. What hath the chaff to do with the wheat? saith the Lord. *You have forgotten God, Who brought you up; and you have grieved Jerusalem, that nursed you.* *Ba 4, 8*
- Mt 16, 18* Thou art Peter: and upon this rock I will build My Church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it. *There shall be One Fold and One Shepherd.* *Je 23, 3*
- Je 46, 28* Thou, My servant Jacob, fear not, saith the Lord, because I am with thee: for I will consume all the nations to which I have cast thee out; but thee I will not consume. *I will gather together the remnant of My flock out of all the lands into which I have cast them.* *Je 23, 3*
- Je 10, 27* My sheep hear My voice: and I know them, and they follow Me. *The Word of God is living and effectual, and more piercing than any two-edged sword.* *He 4, 12*
- Je 8, 23* Hearken to My voice, and I will be your God, and you shall be My people: and walk in all the way that I have commanded you, that it may be well with you. *Are not My words as a Hammer that breaketh the rock in pieces?* *Je 23, 29*
- Lk 12, 32* Fear not, little flock. *You shall know the Truth, and the Truth shall make you free.* *Je 8, 32*
- Je 23, 4* I will set up Pastors over them, and they shall feed them. They shall fear no more, and they shall not be dismayed: and none shall be wanting of their number, saith the Lord. *It shall come to pass in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I will break his yoke from off thy neck, and will burst his bands.* *Je 30, 8*
- 8.—HIS PRESENCE IN THE TEMPLE. THE BLESSED SACRAMENT.
- I was daily with you in *Mk 14, 49* the Temple.

- Ps 26,\* 4-5* One thing I have asked of the Lord, this will I seek after: that I may dwell in the House of the Lord all the days of my life;—That I may see the delight of the Lord and visit His Temple. *Jn 15, 11* These things I spoke to you that My joy may be in you, and your joy may be filled.
- Jn 2, 17* The zeal of Thy House hath eaten Me up. *Je 15, 16* Thy words were found and I did eat them, and Thy Word was to me a joy and gladness of my heart.
- Ps 25,\* 8* I have loved, O Lord, the beauty of Thy House, and the Place where Thy Glory dwelleth. *Mt 26, 26* Jesus took bread, and blessed, and broke, and gave to His disciples, and said: Take ye and eat: This is My Body.
- Lk 21, 38* All the people came early in the morning to hear Him. *Je 11, 19* I knew not that they had devised counsels against me, saying: Let us put wood on his bread, and cut him off from the land of the living.†
- Je 32, 33* When I taught them early in the morning and instructed them, they would not hearken to receive instruction. *Jn 6, 68* Thou hast the words of Eternal Life.
- Mt 11, 28* Come to Me, all you that labour and are burdened, and I will refresh you. *Je 42, 6* Whether it be good or evil, we will obey the Voice of the Lord our God.
- Je 3, 22* Return, you rebellious children, and I will heal your rebellions. *Jn 6, 51* I am the Living Bread which came down from Heaven.
- Lk 2, 46* They found Him in the Temple, sitting in the midst of the doctors, hearing them, and asking them questions. *La 1, 11* All her people sigh, they seek bread. They have given all their precious things for food to relieve the soul.
- Je 26, 2* Stand in the Court of the House of the Lord, and speak to all the cities of Juda out of which they come to adore in the House of the Lord all the words which I have commanded you to speak unto them. *Lk 15, 13* When thou makest a Feast call the poor, the maimed, the lame, and the blind.
- Jn 10, 27* My sheep hear My voice. *Je 31, 8* Behold, I will bring them from the North country, and will gather them from the ends of the earth, and among them shall be the blind and the lame.
- Je 7, 23* Hearken to My voice, and I will be your God and you shall be My people. *Jn 10, 4* He goeth before them, and

\* Attributed to St. Jeremias.

† Tertullian and others interpret this text as referring to the Eucharistic Sacrament.

the sheep follow Him, because they know His Voice.

*Je 31, 34* All shall know Me, from the least of them even to the greatest.

*Jn 17, 26* I have made known Thy Name to them, and will make it known, that the love wherewith Thou hast loved Me may be in them, and I in them.

*Je 24, 7* I will give them a heart to know Me that I am the Lord.

*Mt 26, 28* Jesus said: This is the Blood of the New Testament, which shall be shed for many unto the remission of sins.

*Je 31, 31* Behold, the days shall come, saith the Lord [to Jeremias], and I will make a new covenant with the House of Israel and with the House of Juda.

*Jn 6, 55* He that eateth My Flesh and drinketh My Blood hath Everlasting Life.

*Je 31, 12* They shall flow together to the good things of the Lord, for the Corn and Wine.

*He 10, 1* The Law having a shadow of the good things to come.

*Je 3, 16* In those days they shall say no more: The Ark of the Covenant of the Lord: neither shall it come upon the heart, neither shall they remember it.

*Ap 11, 19* The Temple of God was opened in Heaven, and the Ark of His Testament was seen in His Temple.

*2 M 2, 5-6* When Jeremias came [to Mount Sinai] he found a hollow cave: and he carried in thither the Ark, and so stopped the door.—Then some of them that followed him

came up to mark the place, but could not find it.

Behold, I am with you all *Mt 28, 20* days.

I am with thee, saith the *Je 30, 11* Lord, to save thee.

Blessed are ye that hunger *Lu 6, 21* now, for you shall be filled.

I have inebriated the weary *Je 31, 25* soul, and I have filled every hungry soul.

Behold, I am with you all *Mt 28, 20* days, even to the consummation of the world.

I am with you to save you, *Je 42, 11* and to deliver you from his hand.

I, if I be lifted up from *Jn 12, 32* the earth, will draw all things to Myself.

As the girdle sticketh close *Je 13, 11* to the loins of a man, so have I brought close to Me all the House of Israel.

He that eateth My Flesh *Jn 6, 57* and drinketh My Blood abideth in Me and I in him.

I will fill the soul of the *Je 31, 14* Priests with Fatness, and My people shall be filled with My Good Things, saith the Lord.

Many of His disciples hearing it said: This saying is *Jn 6, 61,* hard, and who can hear it? *67*

—After this many of His disciples went away, and walked no more with Him.

They have cast away the *Je 8, 9* Word of the Lord, and there is no wisdom in them.

Jesus saith to them: Why *Mt 8 18* do you reason because you have no bread? Do you not

- yet know nor understand?  
 (Claving eyes, see you not?  
 And having ears, hear you not?)
- Jn 6, 53, 67*
- Jn 6, 21-22* Hear, O foolish people and without understanding, who have eyes and see not, and ears and hear not. Will you not, then, fear Me? saith the Lord: and will not you repent at My Presence?
- Ma 24, 24* There shall arise false christs.
- Jn 2, 13* They have forsaken Me, the Fountain of Living Water, and have digged to themselves cisterns, broken cisterns that can hold no water.
- Mt 21, 13* My House shall be called the House of Prayer; but you have made it a den of thieves.
- Jn 7, 11* Is this House, then, in which My Name is called upon, in your eyes become a den of robbers?
- Mt 7, 21* Not every one that saith to Me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven; but he that doth the will of My Father Who is in Heaven, he shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Jn 7, 4-5* Trust not in lying words, saying: The Temple of the Lord, the Temple of the Lord, it is the Temple of the Lord. For if you will order well your ways and your doings, I will dwell with you in this Place.
- Jn 6, 61* This saying is hard, and who can hear it?
- Jn 32, 27* Behold, I am the Lord the God of all flesh: shall anything be hard to Me?
- The Jews strove among themselves, saying: How can this Man give us His Flesh to eat?—After this many of His disciples went away and walked no more with Him.
- Jn 6, 12* They have denied the Lord, and said: It is not He.
- 4.—HIS EVERLASTING LOVE FOR US.
- Jn 15, 9* As the Father hath loved Me, I also have loved you.
- Jn 30, 3* The Lord hath appeared from afar to me. Yea, I have loved thee with an Everlasting Love; therefore have I drawn thee, taking pity on thee.
- 1 J 3, 16* In this we have known the Charity of God, because He hath laid down His Life for us.
- 2 M 15, 14* This is the Lover of his brethren and of the people Israel, Jeremias the Prophet of God.
- Lu 10, 34* Going up to him, He bound up his wounds, pouring in oil and wine.
- Jn 33, 6* Behold, I will close their wounds and give them health, and I will cure them.
- Mk 2, 5* When Jesus had seen their faith, He saith to the sick of the palsy: Son, thy sins are forgiven thee.
- Jn 31, 34* I will forgive their iniquity, and will remember their sin no more.
- 1 J 2, 27* You have no need that any man teach you: but as His unction teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie.
- Jn 31, 33* I will put My Law within



*them, and I will write it in their heart: and I will be their God, and they shall be My people.*

*astray from God, so when you return again you shall seek Him ten times as much*

*Jn 14, 27 My Peace I give unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, nor let it be afraid.*  
*Je 17, 18 I am not troubled, following Thee for my Pastor.*

Behold, we have left all things, and have followed Thee. *Lx 18, 28*

*They shall come and be joined to the Lord by an Everlasting Covenant which shall never be forgotten.* *Je 50, 5*

*Lx 10, 20 Rejoice in this that your names are written in Heaven.*  
*Je 17, 13 They that depart from Thee shall be written in the earth.*

The water that I shall give him shall become in him a Fountain of water springing up into Life Everlasting. *Jn 4, 14*

*They have forsaken the Lord, the Vain of Living Waters.* *Je 17, 13*

*2 C 3, 3 You are the epistle of Christ ministered by us, and written not in ink, but with the Spirit of the Living God; not in tables of stone, but in fleshy tables of the heart.*  
*Je 31, 33 I will write My law in their hearts.*

Blessed are they that hunger and thirst after Justice, for they shall have their fill. *Mt 5, 6*

*Ac 17, 28 In Him we live, and move, and are.*  
*La 4, 20 The breath of our mouth, Christ the Lord, is taken in our sins.*

*As the hart panteth after the fountains of water, so my soul panteth after Thee, O God.* *Ps 41, 2*

*Jn 11, 9-10 If a man walk in the day he stumbleth not, because he seeth the Light of this world.*

Blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy. *Mt 5, 7*

*Deliver him that is oppressed by violence out of the hand of the oppressor.* *Je 21, 12*

*Je 31, 9 I will bring them through the torrents of waters in a right way, and they shall not stumble in it.*

Your Father Who is in Heaven maketh His sun to rise upon the good and bad, and raineth upon the just and the unjust. *Mt 5, 45*

*Lu 1, 50 His mercy is from generation to generation to them that fear Him.*

*The mercies of the Lord are new every morning; great is Thy faithfulness.* *La 3, 23*

*Je 31, 39 I will give them one heart and one way, that they may fear Me.*

They that are well have no need of a Physician, but they that are sick. *Mk 2 17*

*Lx 7, 17 To whom less is forgiven he loveth less.*  
*Ba 4, 28 As it was your mind to go*

*Is there no balm in Galaad? or is there no Physician there?* *Je 8, 22*

### 5.—THE NECESSITY OF PRAYER.

*Mt 14, 23* He went up into a mountain alone to pray. And when it was evening, He was there alone.

*La 3, 28* He shall sit solitary and hold his peace, because he hath taken it upon himself.

*Lu 6, 12* He passed the whole night in the prayer of God.

*2 M<sup>15</sup>, 14* This is he that prayeth much for the people, and for all the Holy City, Jeremias the Prophet of God.

*Ja 1, 17* Every best gift, and every perfect gift, is from above, coming down from the Father of lights.

*Ba 3, 22* [Wisdom] hath not been heard of in the Land of Chanaan, neither hath it been seen in Theman.

*Mk 11, 24* All things whatsoever you ask when ye pray, believe that you shall receive, and they shall come unto you.

*La 3, 56-57* Thou hast heard My voice: turn not away Thy ear from my sighs and cries. — Thou drawest near in the day when I called upon Thee. Thou saidest: Fear not.

*Mk 4, 38* Master, doth it not concern Thee that we perish?

*La 5, 20* Why wilt Thou forget us for ever, why wilt Thou forsake us for a long time?

*Mt 7, 7* Seek, and you shall find.

*Je 29, 13* You shall seek Me, and you shall find Me, when you seek Me with all your heart.

*Jn 14, 27* My Peace I give unto you.

*I will reveal to them the prayer of Peace and Truth.* *Je 33, 6*

Lord, save us, we perish. *Mt 8, 25*  
*Heal me, O Lord, and I shall be healed: save me, and I shall be saved: for Thou art my Praise.\** *Je 17, 14*

\* See Tierce.

All things whatsoever you shall ask in prayer, believing, you shall receive. *Mt 21, 22*

You shall call upon Me and you shall go; and you shall pray to Me, and I will hear you. *Je 29, 12*

This man went down into his house justified rather than the other. *Lu 18, 14*

The rebellious Israel hath justified her soul in comparison of the treacherous Juda. *Je 3, 11*

### 6.—THE NECESSITY OF PENANCE.

Jesus began to preach and to say: Do penance. *Mt 4, 17*

There is none that doth penance for his sin. *Je 8, 6*

Except you do penance you shall all likewise perish. *Lu 13, 5*

They have not laid open thy iniquity to excite thee to penance. *La 2, 14*

Can you drink the chalice that I shall drink? They say to Him: We can.—He saith to them: My chalice indeed you shall drink. *Mt 26, 23*

Rejoice and be glad, O daughter of Edom, (as much as thou pleasest; yet) to thee also shall the cup come. *La 4, 21*

Father, I have sinned against Heaven and before Thee. *Lu 15, 18*

- Je 14, 29* We acknowledge, O Lord, our wickedness, because we have sinned against Thee. *Make the bands and chains, and thou shalt put them on thy neck.*
- 
- Mt 17, 20* This kind is not cast out but by prayer and fasting. *I chastise my body and bring it into subjection.*
- Ba 4, 20* I have put off the robe of peace, and have put upon me the sackcloth of supplication, and I will cry to the Most High in my days. *Thou hast chastised me, and I was instructed as a young bullock unaccustomed to the yoke.*
- 
- Lu 2, 37* She departed not from the Temple, by fastings and prayers and serving day and night. *Jesus said to him: Go wash in the pool of Siloe. Wash thy heart from wickedness, O Jerusalem, that thou mayst be saved.*
- Ba 1, 5* They wept and fasted before the Lord. *Every one shall be salted with fire, and every victim shall be salted with salt.*
- 
- Lu 5, 32* I come not to call the just, but sinners to penance. *Behold, I will melt and try them; for what else shall I do before the daughter of My people?*
- Je 3, 12* Return, O rebellious Israel, saith the Lord, and I will not turn away My face from you: for I am Holy, saith the Lord, and I will not be angry for ever. *Gladly will I glory in my infirmities, that the power of Christ may dwell in me.*
- 
- Mt 11, 21* If in Tyre and Sidon had been wrought the miracles that have been wrought in you, they had long ago done penance in sackcloth and ashes. *Their Redeemer is strong; the Lord of Hosts is His Name.*
- 
- Je 47, 3-4* The fathers have not looked back to the children for feebleness of hands, — Because of the coming of the day in which Tyre and Sidon shall be destroyed with all the rest of their helpers. *He that shall humble himself shall be exalted. Dost thou seek great things for thyself? Seek not.*
- 
- Lk 3, 8* Bring forth fruits worthy of penance. *Take up My yoke upon you, and you shall find rest to your souls.*
- Je 31, 19* After Thou didst convert me, I did penance. *Ask for the Old Paths, which is the good way, and walk ye in it, and you shall find refreshment for your souls.*
- 
- Lk 13, 3* Unless you do penance you shall all likewise perish. *All that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution.*
- Je 27, 2* Thus saith the Lord to me: *From above He hath sent fire into my bones, and hath*

*chastised me: He hath spread and before your feet stumble a net for my feet, He hath upon the dark mountains. turned me back, He hath made me desolate, wasted with sorrow all the day.*

**Mt 10, 22** You shall be hated by all men for My Name's sake.

**Eci 49, 9** *They treated him [Jeremias] evil, who was consecrated a Prophet from his mother's womb.*

**1 C 4, 21** What will you? Shall I come to you with a rod, or in charity and in the spirit of meekness?

**Je 1, 11** *What seest thou, Jeremias? And I said: I see a rod watching.*

**Mt 11, 29** Take up My yoke upon you.

**La 3, 27** *It is good for a man when he hath borne the yoke from his youth.*

**2 C 4, 17** That which is at present momentary and light of our tribulation worketh for us above measure exceedingly an eternal weight of glory.

**La 3, 31-32** *The Lord will not cast off for ever.—For if He hath cast off, He will also have mercy, according to the multitude of His mercies.*

#### 7.—DIVERS TEACHINGS.

**Mt 16, 26** What doth it profit a man if he gain the whole world and suffer the loss of his soul?

**Je 17, 21** *Take heed to your souls.*

**Jn 9, 4** The night cometh when no man can work.

**Je 13, 16** *Give ye glory to the Lord your God before it be dark,*

*You shall be holy because I am Holy.*

*Israel is holy to the Lord.* **Je 2, 3**

*You shall know the Truth, and the Truth shall make you free.*

*I will break his yoke from off his neck, and will burst his bands: and strangers shall no more rule over him.* **Je 30, 8**

*No man putting his hand to the plough and looking back is fit for the Kingdom of God.* **Lu 9, 62**

*Cursed be the man whose heart departeth from the Lord.—He shall be like a tamaric in the desert.* **Je 17, 5-6**

*I would that all men were even as myself; but every one hath his proper gift from God, one after this manner and another after that.* **1 C 7, 7**

*The Word of the Lord came to me, saying: Thou shalt not take to thee a wife.* **Je 16, 2**

*Every good tree bringeth forth good fruit.* **Mt 7, 17**

*He shall be as a tree that is planted by the waters, that spreadeth out its roots towards moisture.—In the time of drought it shall not be solicitous, neither shall it cease at any time to bring forth fruit.* **Je 17, 8-9**

*Every plant which My Heavenly Father hath not planted shall be rooted out.* **Mt 15, 13**

*Take away the branches thereof, because they are not the Lord's.* **Je 5, 10**

- He 10, 35* Do not lose your confidence, which hath a great reward. *I sat not in the assembly of jesters: I sat alone.* *Je 15, 17*
- Je 17, 7* Blessed be the man that trusteth in the Lord, and the Lord shall be his confidence.
- 1 C 11, 1* Be ye followers of me, as I also am of Christ.
- Mt 16, 13-14* Jesus asked His disciples, saying: Whom do men say that the Son of man is?—But they said: Some John the Baptist and other some Elias, and others Jeremias.
- Ro 10, 2* They have a zeal of God, but not according to knowledge.
- Ba 3, 20* Young men have seen the light and dwelt upon the earth, but the way of knowledge they have not known.
- Ro 5, 12* As by one man sin entered this world, and by sin death; and so death passed upon all men, in whom all have sinned.
- Je 31, 29* The fathers have eaten a sour grape, and the teeth of the children are set on edge.
- Ac 2, 17* Your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams.
- Je 31, 26* I was awaked out of a sleep, and I saw, and my sleep [my prophetic vision] was sweet to me.
- Ph 2, 12* With fear and trembling work out your salvation.
- Je 31, 40* I will give My fear in their heart, that they may not revolt from Me.
- 2 T 3, 6* Withdraw yourselves from every brother walking disorderly.
- You cannot serve God and mammon.
- Behold, I set before you the way of life and the way of death.* *Je 21, 8*
- From the heart cometh forth evil thoughts.
- Behold, every one of you walketh after the perverseness of his evil heart, so as not to hearken to Me.* *Mt 15, 19*
- Be not high-minded, but fear.
- Be not proud, for the Lord hath spoken.* *Je 17, 12*
- The kings of the Gentiles lord it over them; and they that have power over them are called beneficent.—But not so you: but he who is the greatest among you, let him be as the least; and he that is the leader, as he that serveth.
- Thy arrogance hath deceived thee, and the pride of thy heart, O thou that dwellest in the clefts of the rock, and endeavourest to lay hold on the height of the hill: but though thou shouldst make thy rest as high as an eagle, I will bring thee down from thence, sayest the Lord.* *Je 49, 16*
- 8.—FALSE TEACHERS.  
DIVINE JUDGMENTS.
- Beware of false prophets, who come to you in the clothing of sheep.
- I did not send prophets, but they ran. I have not spoken to them, yet they prophesied.* *Mt 7, 15*
- Je 23, 21*

- Jn 10, 12* The wolf catcheth and scattereth the sheep. *raise it, even to the foundation thereof.*
- Je 5, 6* A wolf in the evening hath spoiled them. *The wisdom of this world is foolishness with God. 1 C 3, 19*
- 1 C 8, 4* We know that an idol is nothing in the world, and that there is no God but one. *The wisemen are confounded. Je 8, 9*
- Je 8, 19* Why have they provoked Me to wrath with their idols and strange vanities? *They are dismayed and taken: for they have cast away the Word of the Lord, and there is no wisdom in them.*
- Ac 17, 23* Passing by and seeing your idols, I found an altar also on which was written: To the unknown God. *All things are naked and open to His eyes to Whom our speeches. He 4, 13*
- Je 17, 1* The sin of Juda is graven with a pen of iron upon the horns of their altars. *Shall a man be hid in secret places and I not see him? saith the Lord. Je 23, 24*
- Jn 8, 19* Neither Me do you know, nor My Father: if you did know Me, perhaps you would know My Father also. *What fellowship hath light with darkness? 2 C 6, 14*
- Je 4, 22* My foolish people have not known Me. They are foolish and senseless children: they are wise to do evils, but to do good they have no knowledge. *What hath the chaff to do with the wheat? Je 23, 28*
- Jn 8, 6* Jesus bowing Himself down, wrote with His finger on the ground. *His fan is in His hand, and He will thoroughly cleanse His floor. Mt 3, 12*
- Je 17, 13* O Lord, the Hope of Israel, all that depart from Thee shall be written in the earth. *I will scatter them with a fan in the gates of the land. Je 15, 7*
- Ga 6, 8* What things a man shall sow, those also shall he reap. *A fire shall go before Him, and shall burn His enemies round about. Ps 96, 3*
- Je 21, 14* I will visit upon you according to the fruit of your doings. *I see a boiling Caldron. Je 1, 13*
- 1 T 6, 10* The desire of money is the root of all evil, which some coveting have erred from the faith. *Behold, your House shall be left to you desolate. Mt 23, 38*
- Ps 136, 7* Remember, O Lord, the children of Edom in the day of Jerusalem, who say: Rase it, *With desolation is all the land made desolate, because there is none that considereth in his heart. Je 12, 11*
- The Son of man when He cometh, shall He find you, faith on earth? Lu 18, 8*

- Je 7, 28* Faith is lost, and is taken away out of their mouth. the sword must be killed by the sword.
- 1 J 5, 16* There is a sin unto death: for that I say not that any man ask. *Je 30, 16* All they that devour thee shall be devoured: and all thy enemies shall be carried into captivity: and they that waste thee shall be wasted, and all that prey upon thee will I give for a prey.
- Je 7, 16* Do not thou pray for this people, nor take to thee praise and supplication for them, and do not withstand Me, for I will not hear thee.
- Lu 10, 15* Thou Capharnaum, which art exalted unto Heaven, thou shalt be thrust down to hell. The great day of their wrath is come, and who shall be able to stand? *Ap 6, 17*
- Je 22, 7* I will prepare against thee the destroyer and his weapons: and they shall cut down thy chosen cedars, and shall cast them headlong into the fire. We have heard a voice of terror. There is fear and no peace.—Alas, for that day is great, neither is there the like to it. *Je 30, 5, 7*
- Lu 12, 55-56* When ye see the south wind blow, you say: There will be heat, and it cometh to pass.—You hypocrites, how is it you do not discern this time? The day of the Lord shall so come as a thief in the night.—For when they shall say peace and security, then shall sudden destruction come upon them. *1 T 5, 2-3*
- Je 8, 7* The kite in the air hath known her time; the turtle and the swallow have observed the time of their coming: but My people have not known the judgment of the Lord. Behold the whirlwind of the Lord, His fury going forth, a violent storm: it shall rest upon the head of the wicked. *Je 30, 23*
- Jn 15, 6* If any one abide not in Me, he shall be cast forth as a branch, and shall wither: and they shall gather him up, and cast him into the fire, and he burneth. There shall be then great tribulation, such as had not been from the beginning of the world until now, neither shall be. *Mt 24, 21*
- Je 5, 14* Behold, I will make My words in thy mouth as fire, and this people as wood, and it shall devour them. At His wrath the earth shall tremble, and the nations shall not be able to abide His threatening. *Je 10, 10*
- Ap 13, 10* He that shall lead into captivity shall go into captivity: he that shall kill by You shall hear of wars and rumours of wars. See that ye be not troubled. For these things must come to pass, but the end is not yet. *Mt 24, 6*
- The noise is come even to the ends of the earth, for the Lord entereth into judgment with the nations. He entereth into judgment with all flesh; *Je 25, 31*

*the wicked I have delivered up to the sword, saith the Lord.* *be as innocent and escape free? You shall not escape free.*

- Mt 24, 14** This Gospel of the Kingdom shall be preached in the whole world for a testimony of all nations, and then shall the consummation come.
- Je 25, 10-11** *I will take away from them the voice of mirth and the voice of gladness and the light of the lamp,—And all this land shall be a desolation and an astonishment: and all these nations shall serve the King of Babylon seventy years.*
- Ap 2, 23** I am He that searcheth the reins and hearts, and I will give to every one of you according to your works.
- Je 11, 20** *Thou, O Lord of Sabaoth, judgest justly, and triest the reins and the hearts.*
- Ap 14, 9-10** The third Angel followed him, saying with a loud voice: If any man shall adore the beast,—He also shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is mingled with pure wine in the cup of His wrath.
- Je 25, 15** *Thus saith the Lord of Hosts, the God of Israel: Take the cup of wine of this fury at My hand, and thou shalt make all the nations to drink thereof unto which I shall send thee.*
- 1 Pt 4, 17** The time is that judgment should begin at the House of God. And if first at us, what shall be the end of them that believe not the Gospel of God?
- Je 25, 29** *Behold, I begin to bring evil on the City wherein My Name is called upon, and shall you*
- Go out from her, My people, that you be not partakers of her sins, and that you receive not of her plagues.
- Go out of the midst of her, my people, that every man may save his life from the fierce wrath of the Lord.*
- The chaff He will burn with unquenchable fire.
- Judge ye judgment in the morning, lest My indignation go forth like a fire and be kindled, and there be none to quench it.*
- That great Babylon is fallen, is fallen, which made all the nations to drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication.
- Babylon is suddenly fallen and destroyed: howl for her. Take balm for her pain, if so she may be healed.*
- Hath not the potter power over the clay, of the same lump to make one vessel unto honour and another unto dishonour?—What if God, willing to show His wrath and to make His power known, endured with much patience vessels of wrath, fitted for destruction?
- Behold, as clay is in the hand of the potter, so are you in My hand, O House of Israel.—Behold, I frame evil against you.*
- With what measure you mete it shall be measured to you again.
- This is My lot, and the por-*
- Ap 18, 4**
- Je 51, 45**
- Mt 3, 12**
- Je 21, 12**
- Ap 14, 8**
- Je 51, 8**
- Ro 9, 21-22**
- Je 18, 6, 11**
- Mt 7, 2**
- Je 13, 25**



*tion of thy measure from Me, afflicted with a great affliction, saith the Lord, because thou with an exceeding grievous hast forgotten Me, and hast evil. trusted in falsehood.*

*Lu 13, 43-44* The days shall come upon thee [O Jerusalem]: and thy enemies shall cast a trench about thee, and compass thee around and straiten thee on every side,—Because thou hast not known the time of thy visitation.

*Je 6, 6* *(Jeremias says of Jerusalem): This is the City to be visited [with punishment]: all oppression is in the midst of her.*

9.—OUR LORD, THE MAN OF SORROWS. HIS PASSION AND DEATH.

*Is 53, 3* We have seen Him despised, a Man of Sorrows.

*La 3, 48* *My eye hath run down with streams of water, for the destruction of the daughter of my people.*

*Lu 19, 41* When He drew near, seeing the City, He wept over it.

*J-9, 1* *Who will give water to my head, and a fountain of tears to my eyes? And I will weep day and night for the slain of the daughter of my people.*

*Ro 5, 7* He, in the days of His flesh, with a strong cry and tears, offering up prayers and supplications to Him that was able to save Him from death, was heard for His reverence.

*Je 14, 17* *Let my eyes shed down tears night and day, and let them not cease because the virgin daughter of my people is*

Blessed are they that mourn, for they shall be comforted. *Mt 5, 5*

*O vineyard of Sabama, I will weep for thee with the mourning of Jazer.* *Je 48, 32*

Going forth, he wept bitterly. *Mt 28, 75*

*Weeping she hath wept in the night, and her tears are on her cheeks.* *La 1, 2*

Jesus Himself gave testimony that a prophet hath no honour in his own country. *Jn 4, 44*

*The men of Anathoth seek thy life.* *Je 11, 21*

A man's enemies shall be they of his own household. *Mt 10, 36*

*Even thy brethren and the house of thy Father, even they have fought against thee, and have cried after thee with full voice.* *Je 12, 6*

Neither did His brethren believe in Him. *Jn 7, 5*

When His friends had heard of it, they went out to lay hold of Him. For they said: He is become mad. *Mt 3, 21*

*Even thy brethren and the house of thy father, even they have fought against thee.* *Je 12, 6*

I have a baptism where-with I am to be baptised: and how straitened until it be accomplished! *Lu 12, 50*

*There came in my heart as a burning fire shut up in my bones, and I was wearied, not being able to bear it.* *Je 20, 8-9*

- Mt 26, 59* The chief priests and the whole council sought false witness against Jesus, that they might put Him to death. *Know ye and understand Je 28, 15 that if ye put me to death, you will shed innocent blood against your own selves and against this city.*
- Je 18, 18* The Jews said: Come and let us invent devices against Jeremias, let us strike him with the tongue. *He went to the Mount of Olives, and kneeling down, He prayed.—And being in an agony, He prayed the longer.—And His sweat became as drops of blood trickling down upon the ground. Lu 22, 43-44*
- Jn 10, 31* The Jews took up stones to stone Him. *O all ye that pass by the way, attend, and see if there be any sorrow like to my sorrow. La 1, 12*
- He 11, 36* They were stoned.\* *My Soul is sorrowful even unto death. Mt 26, 38*
- Mk 14, 56* Many bore false witness against Him. *He hath broken me in pieces. He hath made me desolate. La 3, 11*
- Je 37, 12-14* Jerias took hold of Jeremias the Prophet, saying: Thou art fleeing to the Chaldeans.—And Jeremias answered: It is not so. I am not fleeing to the Chaldeans. But he hearkened not to him.—Wherefore the Princes beat him and cast him into the prison. *He fell flat on the ground: Mk 14, 35 and He prayed that if it might be, the hour might pass from Him. La 2, 10*
- 1 C 4, 13* We are made as the refuse of this world, the off-scouring of all even until now. *The ancients of the daughter of Sion sit upon the ground: they have held their peace, they have sprinkled their heads with dust, they are girded with hair-cloth: the virgins of Jerusalem hang down their heads to the ground.*
- La 3, 45* Thou hast made me as an out-cast, and refuse in the midst of the people. *Daughters of Jerusalem, weep not over Me, but weep for yourselves and for your children. Lu 23, 28*
- Mt 26, 61, 66* The Man said: I am able to destroy the Temple of God, and after three days to rebuild it.—He is guilty of death. *My eye is afflicted, and hath not been quiet, because there was no rest,—Till the Lord regarded and looked down from the heavens. La 3, 49-50*
- Je 26, 11* The judgment of death is for this man [Jeremias], because he hath prophesied against this city.
- Mt 27, 25* His Blood be upon us, and upon our children!

\* St. Jerome, St. Epiphanius, Tertullian, refer these words to St. Jeremias among others, who was stoned to death at Taphnes in wicked fury by his fellow-exiles for preaching against their stubborn idolatry.

- Mt 26, 39* My Father, if it be possible, let this chalice pass from Me; nevertheless, not as I will, but as Thou wilt.
- Je 20, 7* Thou hast deceived me, O Lord, and I am deceived [Thou hast concealed from me the greatness of the evil]—Thou hast been stronger than I, and Thou hast prevailed.
- Mt 26, 52* Jesus saith to him: Put up again thy sword into its place: for all that take the sword shall perish by the sword.
- Je 47, 6* O thou sword of the Lord, how long wilt thou not be quiet? Go into thy scabbard rest, and be still.
- Mt 26, 56* The disciples, all leaving Him, fled.
- La 1, 19, 21* I called for my friends, but they deceived me.—They have heard that I sigh, and there is none to comfort me.
- Je 53, 7* He shall be led as a Sheep to the slaughter, and shall be dumb as a Lamb before His shearer, and He shall not open His mouth.
- Je 11, 19* I was a meek lamb that is carried to be a victim.
- Jn 8, 22* One of the servants gave Jesus a blow, saying: Answerest Thou the high priest so?
- Je 20, 2* Phassur<sup>\*</sup> struck Jeremias the Prophet, and put him in the stocks.
- Pr 21, 7* I am a worm and no man, the reproach of men and
- the outcast of the people. — All they that saw Me have laughed Me to scorn. They have spoken with the lips, and wagged the head.
- I am become a laughing-stock all the day: all scoff at me.* *Je 20, 7*
- Pilate took Jesus and scourged Him.
- The princes were angry with Jeremias, and they beat him\* and cast him into prison.* *Je 37, 14*
- Bearing His own Cross, He went forth to that place which is called Calvary, where they crucified Him.
- I knew not that they devised counsels against me, saying: Let us put wood on his bread,† and cut him off from the land of the living, and let his name be remembered no more.* *Jn 19, 18*
- If the world hate you, know ye that it hath hated Me before you. — He that hateth Me hateth My Father also.
- I have not lent on usury, neither hath any man lent to me on usury: yet all curse me.* *Je 15, 10*
- The soldiers mocked Him, coming to Him and offering Him vinegar.
- He hath filled me with bitterness, He hath inebriated me with wormwood.* *Lu 23, 36*
- My God, My God, why hast Thou forsaken Me?
- When I cry and entreat, He hath shut out my prayer.* *Mk 15, 34*
- La 3, 8*

\* Inflicting probably the legal "forty stripes save one."  
† I.e., let us destroy him by putting the juice of some poisonous tree into his food: a mystic allusion to the fatal Tree of the Cross, the instrument of our Lord's death.

- Lu 23, 34* Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do. *me round about, that I may not get out.*
- Je 29, 7* Seek the peace of the city to which I have caused you to be carried away captives; and pray to the Lord for it. *He is not here, for He is risen, as He said. Mt 28, 6*  
*The graves were opened, and many bodies of the saints that slept arose.—And coming out of the tombs after His Resurrection, came into the Holy City, and appeared to many.\* Mt 27, 52-53*
- Mt 27, 39* They that passed by blasphemed Him, wagging their heads. *Was not our heart burning within us whilst He spoke in the way, and opened to us the Scriptures? Lu 24, 32*  
*Are not My words as a fire? Je 23, 28*
- La 2, 15* All they that passed by the way have clapped their hands at thee: they have hissed and wagged their heads. *It is written: Not in bread alone doth man live, but in every Word that proceedeth from the mouth of God. Mt 4, 4*  
*Thy words were found, and I did eat them; and Thy word was to me a joy and gladness of my heart. Je 15, 16*
- 10.—THE RESURRECTION OF OUR LORD AND HIS GLORY IN HEAVEN.**
- Lu 23, 47* The centurion glorified, saying: Indeed, this was a Just Man. *They constrained Him, saying: It is towards evening, and the day is now far spent. And He went in with them. Lu 24, 29*  
*O Expectation of Israel, the Saviour thereof in time of trouble, why wilt Thou be as a Stranger in the land, and as a Wayfaring Man turning in to lodge? Je 14, 8*
- Je 23, 5-6* I will raise up to David a Just Branch: and a King shall reign.—And this is the name that they shall call Him: The Lord our Just One. *You now indeed have sorrow; but I will see you again, and your heart shall rejoice, and your joy no man shall take from you. Jn 16, 22*  
*I will turn their mourning*
- Mt 15, 46* Joseph laid Him in a sepulchre, and he rolled a stone to the door. *Je 31, 13*
- La 3, 5, 7* He hath set me in dark places, as those that are dead for ever.—He hath built against

\* Sister Cath. Emmerich relates that among these was St. Jeremias, who appeared in the Sanctuary of the Temple at the rending of the veil, and with a warning voice proclaimed that the ancient Sacrifice of Expiation was at an end, and that the True Sacrifice of Expiation had come.

*into joy, and will comfort them, and make them joyful after their sorrow.*

*Sing ye to the Lord: praise the Lord. Give ye glory to the Lord of Hosts; for the Lord is good, for His mercy endureth for ever.* Je 33, 11

**Ps 8, 6** Thou hast crowned Him with honour and glory.

**2 M 15, 13** There appeared also another man [Jeremias], admirable for age and glory, and environed with great beauty and majesty.

I saw them that had over-  
come the beast singing the canticle of the Lamb, saying: Great and wonderful are Thy works, O Lord God Almighty.

**Ap 3, 11** Hold fast that which thou hast, that no man take thy crown.

—Who shall not fear Thee, O Lord, and magnify Thy Name? For Thou only art Holy; for all nations shall come and shall adore in Thy sight.

**Ra 4, 2** Return, O Jacob, and take hold of it [the Book of the Commandments]: walk in the way of its brightness, in the presence of the Light thereof.

There is none like to Thee, O Lord. Thou art great, and great is Thy Name in might.

**Ap 12, 5** A voice came out from the Throne, saying: Give praise to our God, all ye His servants; and you that fear Him, little and great.

—Who shall not fear Thee, O King of Nations? For Thine is the glory among all the wise men of the nations, and in all their kingdoms there is none like unto Thee.

## 20.—OUR LORD'S RESURRECTION.

**Ps 15, 9-10** My Flesh shall rest in hope, — Because Thou wilt not leave My Soul in hell; nor wilt Thou give Thy Holy One to see corruption.

they had seen till the Son of man shall be risen again from the dead. — And they kept the word to themselves, questioning together what that should mean: When He shall be risen from the dead.

**Mt 12, 40** As Jonas was in the whale's belly three days and three nights, so shall the Son of man be in the heart of the earth three days and three nights.

Thus it is written, and thus it behoved Christ to suffer and to rise again from the dead the third day.

**Mt 20, 19** They shall deliver Him to the Gentiles to be mocked, and scourged, and crucified, and the third day He shall rise again.

Destroy this Temple, and in three days I will raise it up. — But He spoke of the Temple of His Body.

**Mk 14, 28** After I shall be risen again I will go before you into Galilee.

They said unto them: Why seek you the living with the dead?—He is not here, but is risen. Remember how He spoke unto you when He was yet in Galilee,

**Mk 9, 8-9** He charged them not to tell any man what things

- Saying: The Son of man must be delivered into the hands of sinful men, and be crucified, and the third day rise again.
- Ac 1, 3* To [His Apostles] also He shewed Himself alive after His Passion by many proofs, appearing to them, and speaking of the Kingdom of God.
- Ac 2, 24* Jesus of Nazareth God hath raised up, having loosed the sorrows of hell, as it was impossible that He should be holden by it.
- Ac 3, 15* The Author of life you killed, Whom God hath raised from the dead, of which we are witnesses.
- Ac 10, 40-41* Him God raised up the third day, and gave Him to be made manifest, — Not to all the people, but to witnesses preordained by God, even to us who did eat and drink with Him after He rose again from the dead.
- Ac 13, 36-37* David was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption. — But He Whom God hath raised from the dead saw no corruption.
- Ac 26, 22-23* I stand unto this day saying no other thing than those which the prophets and Moses did say should come to pass: — That Christ should suffer, and that He should be the first that should rise from the dead.
- If we have been planted together in the likeness of His death, we shall be also in the likeness of His Resurrection.
- Ro 6, 5*
- Christ rising again from the dead, dieth now no more; death shall no more have dominion over Him.
- Ro 6, 9*
- Who is He that shall condemn? Christ Jesus that died, yea that is risen also again.
- Ro 8, 34*
- If thou confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and believe in thy heart that God hath raised Him up from the dead, thou shalt be saved.
- Ro 10, 9*
- He arose again the third day, according to the Scriptures.
- 1 C 15, 4*
- Christ is risen from the dead, the First-fruits of them that sleep.
- 1 C 15, 20*
- Be mindful that the Lord Jesus Christ is risen again from the dead, according to my Gospel.
- 2 T 2, 8*
- Whereunto Baptism, being of the like form [with the water by which Noe was saved], now saveth you also by the Resurrection of Jesus Christ.
- 1 Pt 3, 21*
- Grace be unto you from Jesus Christ, Who is the First-Begotten of the dead.
- Ac 1, 5*
- I am alive and was dead, and behold, I am living for ever and ever.
- Ac 1, 18*

## 21.—OUR LORD'S ASCENSION.

- Mk 16, 19* The Lord Jesus, after He had spoken to them, was taken up into Heaven, and sitteth on the right hand of God.
- Mk 16, 19* suffered these things, and so to enter into His Glory?
- Lu 24, 26* Ought not Christ to have
- Lu 24, 50-51* He led them as far as Bethania: and lifting up His hands, He blessed them. — And it came to pass, whilst

- He blessed them He departed from them, and was carried up into Heaven.
- Jn 6, 63* If, then, you shall see the Son of man ascending up where He was before.
- Jn 7, 33* Yet a little while I am with you, and then I go to Him that sent Me.
- 14, 2* I go to prepare a place for you.
- 14, 23* You have heard that I said to you: I go away, and I come unto you. If you loved Me, you would indeed be glad because I go to the Father, for the Father is greater than I.
- Jn 16, 5* And now I go to Him that sent Me, and none of you asketh Me: Whither goest Thou?
- Jn 16, 7* It is expedient for you that I go. For if I go not, the Paraclete will not come to you: but if I go, I will send Him to you.
- Jn 16, 10* I go to My Father, and you shall see Me no longer.
- Jn 16, 16* A little while and now you shall not see Me: and again a little while and you shall see Me, because I go to the Father.
- Jn 16, 28* I came forth from the Father, and am come into the world: again I leave the world and go to the Father.
- Jn 17, 5* Glorify Thou Me, O Father, with Thyself, with the glory which I had, before the world was, with Thee.
- Jn 20, 17* Do not touch Me, for I am not ascended to My Father: but go to My brethren, and say to them: I ascend to My Father and to your Father, to My God and to your God.
- Pt 23, 7* Lift up your gates, O ye princes, and be ye lifted up, O eternal gates, and the King of Glory shall enter in.
- Thou hast ascended on High, hast led captivity captive.
- When He had said these things, while they looked on, He was raised up: and a cloud received Him out of their sight.
- Being exalted by the right hand of God, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, He hath poured forth this which you see and hear.
- He shall send Him, — Whom Heaven indeed must receive until the times of the restitution of all things.
- Him hath God exalted with His right hand to be Prince and Saviour, to give repentance to Israel, and remission of sins.
- Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing at the right hand of God.
- He raised Him up from the dead, and set Him on His right hand in the Heavenly Places.
- He that descended is the same also that ascended above all the heavens, that He might fill all things.
- God hath also exalted Him.
- He was manifested in the flesh. Great is the Mystery of godliness which was manifested in the flesh, is taken up in Glory.
- We see Jesus, Who was made a little lower than the Angels, for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour.
- Pt 67, 19*
- Ac 1, 9*
- Ac 2, 33*
- Ac 3, 20-21*
- Ac 5, 31*
- Ac 7, 55*
- Ep 1, 20*
- Ep 4, 10*
- Pt 2, 9*
- Tv 3, 16*
- He 2, 9*

- He 8, 1* We have such an High Priest, Who is set on the right hand of the Throne of Majesty in the heavens. and sitteth on the right hand of the Throne of God. He is on the right hand of God, being gone into Heaven. *1 Pt 3, 22*
- He 10, 12* This Man, offering one sacrifice for sins, for ever sitteth on the right hand of God. To him that shall overcome I will give to sit with Me in My Throne: as I also have overcome, and am set down with My Father in His Throne. *Ap 3, 21*
- He 12, 2* Jesus, Who having joy set before Him endured the Cross, despising the shame, Throne.

22.—THE VISIBLE COMING OF OUR LORD AT THE  
END OF THE WORLD.

- Mt 16, 27* The Son of man shall come in the glory of His Father with His Angels: and then will He render to every man according to his works. cry made: Behold, the Bridegroom cometh: go ye forth to meet Him.
- Mt 24, 27* As lightning cometh out of the east and appeareth even into the west, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. When the Son of man shall come in His Majesty, and all the Angels with Him, then shall He sit upon the seat of His Majesty. *Mt 25, 31*
- Mt 24, 31-32* And then shall appear the Sign of the Son of man in Heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn; and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with much Power and Majesty.— Watch ye, therefore, for you know not when the Lord of the House cometh: at even or at midnight, or at the cock-crowing or in the morning. *Mt 13, 35*
- And He shall send His Angels with a trumpet and a great voice, and they shall gather together His elect from the four winds, from the farthest parts of the heavens to the utmost bounds of them. He that shall be ashamed of Me and of My words, of him the Son of man shall be ashamed, when He shall come in His Majesty, and that of His Father and of the Holy Angels. *Lu 9, 26*
- Mt 24 37* As in the days of Noe, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. Blessed are those servants whom the Lord, when He cometh, shall find watching. *Lu 12, 37*
- Mt 24, 42* Watch ye, therefore, because you know not at what hour your Lord will come. Yet the Son of man, when He cometh, shall He find, think you, faith on earth? A certain Nobleman went into a far country to receive for Himself and to return. I will come again and take you to Myself, that where I am, you also may be. *Lu 18, 8*
- Mt 25, 6* At midnight there was a This Jesus, Who is taken *Ac 1, 11*



- up from you into Heaven, shall so come as you have seen Him going into Heaven.
- 1 C 4, 5 Judge not before the time: until the Lord come, Who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts.
- Cl 3, 4 When Christ shall appear Who is your life, then you also shall appear with Him in glory.
- 1 T 4, 15 The Lord Himself shall come down from Heaven with commandment, and with the voice of an Archangel, and with the trumpet of God; and the dead who are in Christ shall rise first.
- 1 T 6, 14 I charge thee that thou keep the commandment without spot, blameless, unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.
- 1 Pt 5, 4 When the Prince of Pastors shall appear you shall receive a never-fading crown of glory.
- 2 Pt 3, 12 Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of the Lord, by which the Heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with the heat of fire.
- Little children, abide in 1 J 2, 23 Him: that when He shall appear we may have confidence, and not be confounded by Him at His coming.
- We know that when He 1 J 3, 2 shall appear we shall be like to Him, because we shall see Him as He is.
- Enoch, the seventh from Jc 14-15 Adam, prophesied, saying: Behold, the Lord cometh with thousands of His Saints,—To execute judgment upon all.
- Behold, He cometh with Ap 1, 7 the clouds, and every eye shall see Him, and they also that pierced Him.
- Behold, I come quickly, Ap 22, 12 and My reward is with Me to render to every man according to his works.
- He that giveth testimony Ap 22, 20 of these things saith: Surely I come quickly; amen. Come, Lord Jesus.

### 23.—THE WORSHIP OF OUR LORD.

- Pr 94, 6 Come, let us adore and fall down and weep before the Lord that made us.
- Ps 98, 7 Adore Him, all you His Angels. Sion heard, and was glad.
- Ps 98, 5 Adore His Footstool, for He is Holy.
- Za 14, 18 They shall adore the King, the Lord of Hosts.
- Mt 2, 11 Falling down, they adored Him; and opening their treasures, they offered Him gifts: gold, frankincense, and myrrh.
- A leper came and adored Mt 8, 2 Him, saying: Lord, if Thou wilt, Thou canst make me clean.
- They that were in the boat Mt 14, 33 came and adored Him, saying: Thou art the Son of God.
- A woman of Canaan came Mt 15, 26 and adored Him, saying: Lord, help me.
- Jesus met them, saying: Mt 28, 9 All hail. But they came up and took hold of His Feet, and adored Him.

- Mt* 28, 17 Seeing Him, they adored Him, but some doubted. *Ap* 5, 8-9, 12
- Mk* 5, 6 Seeing Jesus afar off, he ran and adored Him.
- Mt* 11, 9-10 They that went before and they that followed cried, saying: Hosanna. — Blessed is He that cometh in the Name of the Lord.
- Lu* 24, 52 They adoring went back into Jerusalem with great joy.
- Jn* 5, 23 He who honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father Who hath sent Him.
- Jn* 4, 23 The true adorers shall adore the Father in Spirit and in Truth.
- Jn* 9, 38 He said: I believe, Lord. And falling down, he adored Him.
- Ph* 2, 9-11 God hath given Him a Name above every name, — That in the Name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those that are in Heaven, on earth, and under the earth, — And that every tongue should confess that the Lord Jesus Christ is in the glory of God the Father.
- He* 1, 6 When He bringeth in the First - Begotten into the world, He saith: And let all the Angels of God adore Him.
- He* 11, 21 By faith Jacob dying blessed each of the sons of Joseph, and adored the top of his rod.\*
- When He had opened the Book, the four living creatures and the four-and-twenty ancients fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints. And they sang a new canticle, saying: Thou art worthy, O Lord, to take the Book, and to open the seals thereof. Worthy is the Lamb to receive power and divinity, and wisdom and strength, and honour, and glory, and benediction.
- Every creature which is in Heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, I heard all saying: To Him that sitteth on the Throne, and to the Lamb, benediction, and honour, and glory, and power for ever and ever.
- And the four living creatures said: Amen. And the four-and-twenty ancients fell down on their faces, and adored Him that liveth for ever and ever.
- They cried with a loud voice, saying: Salvation to our God, Who sitteth upon the Throne, and to the Lamb.

## 24.—THE PARABLES OF OUR LORD.

- |                     |  |   |                     |
|---------------------|--|---|---------------------|
| <i>Mt</i> 13, 3-8   | 1. The Sower.                                | 5. The Net cast into the sea.                       | <i>Mt</i> 13, 45-46 |
| <i>Mt</i> 13, 24-30 | 2. The Cockle.                               | 6. The Seed growing secretly.                       | <i>Mt</i> 4, 26-29  |
| <i>Lu</i> 13, 18-19 | 3. The Mustard-seed.                         |   |                     |
| <i>Mt</i> 13, 33    | 4. The Leaven hid in three measures of meal. | 7. The Good Shepherd giving His Life for His Sheep. | <i>Jn</i> 10, 11-18 |

\* Venerating the top of the sceptre of Joseph as to a figure of Christ's Sceptre.

- Lu* 15, 11-32 8. The Prodigal Son.
- Lu* 15, 8-10 9. The Groat that was lost.
- Mt* 18, 12-14 10. The lost Sheep.
- Lu* 18, 9-14 11. The Pharisee and the Publican.
- Lu* 14, 7-11 12. Strife for the first seats at the table.
- Mt* 25, 31-46 13. The Sheep and the Goats.
- 
- Mt* 13, 44 14. The hidden Treasure.
- Mt* 13, 45-46 15. The Merchant seeking good pearls.
- Mt* 21, 33-44 16. The two Sons.
- Lu* 14, 28-33 17. The Tower and the warring King.
- Mt* 22, 1-14 18. The Wedding Garment.
- 
- Lu* 14, 15-24 19. The great Supper.
- Jn* 15, 1-8 20. The True Vine.
- Mt* 21, 33-44 21. The wicked Husbandmen.
- Mt* 25, 14-30 22. The Talents.
- Lu* 13, 6-9 23. The barren Fig-tree.
- Mt* 20, 1-16 24. The Labourers in the Vineyard.
- Lu* 19, 11-27 25. The Pounds.
- 
- Lu* 10, 30-37 26. The Good Samaritan.
- Lu* 7, 41-43 27. The Creditor and the two Debtors.
- Jn* 10, 1-18 28. The Door and the Sheepfold.
- Lu* 17, 7-10 29. The unprofitable Servants.
- Lu* 16, 1-9 30. The unjust Steward.
- Lu* 16, 19-31 31. The rich Man and Lazarus.
- Mt* 18, 23-35 32. The unmerciful Servant.

33. The ten Virgins. *Mt* 25, 1-13
34. The importunate Widow. *Lu* 18, 1-8
35. The Friend on his journey. *Lu* 11, 5-10
36. The Servants waiting for their Lord returning from the Wedding. *Lu* 12, 35-48

*Emblems and Imageries.*

37. The Mote and the Beam. *Mt* 7, 3-5
38. The narrow Gate. *Mt* 7, 13-14
39. The House built upon a rock. *Mt* 7, 24-27
40. The Birds of the air. *Mt* 6, 26
41. The Lilies of the field. *Mt* 6, 28
42. The Axe laid to the root of the Tree. *Mt* 3, 10
43. The Fishers and their Nets. *Mt* 4, 18
44. Salt. *Mt* 5, 13
45. A City seated on a Mountain. *Mt* 5, 14
46. A Light under a Bushel. *Mt* 5, 15
47. The Single Eye. *Mt* 6, 22
48. The two Builders. *Mt* 7, 24
49. The Broad Way. *Mt* 7, 13
50. The Strait Way. *Mt* 7, 14
51. The Great Physician. *Mt* 9, 10
52. The Keys of the Kingdom of Heaven. *Mt* 16, 19
53. The Little Child. *Mt* 18, 2
54. The Sudden Lightning. *Mt* 24, 27
55. The Thief in the Night. *Mt* 24, 43
56. The Hen gathering her Chickens. *Mt* 23, 37
57. Perverse Children. *Lu* 7, 31
58. Lambs among Wolves. *Lu* 10, 3
59. The Faithful and Wise Steward. *Lu* 12, 42
60. The Stone crying out. *Lu* 19, 40
61. The Human Temple. *Jn* 2, 21
62. Wind an emblem of the Holy Spirit. *Jn* 3, 8
63. Darkness an emblem of Evil. *Jn* 3, 19

<i>Jn</i> 4, 35	64. Fields white to Harvest.	77. The Anchor of the Soul.	<i>He</i> 6, 19
<i>Jn</i> 10, 9	65. Christ the Door.	78. Running the Race.	<i>He</i> 12, 1
<i>Jn</i> 12, 24	66. The Grain of Wheat.	79. The Flower of the Grass that perisheth.	<i>Ja</i> 1, 11
<i>Jn</i> 14, 6	67. Christ the Way.	80. The Faithful Mirror.	<i>Ja</i> 1, 23
<i>Jn</i> 15, 5	68. The Branches.	81. The Helm of a Ship.	<i>Ja</i> 3, 4
<i>Ac</i> 3, 12	69. The Pillar of the Temple.	82. Pilgrims on Earth.	<i>1 Pt</i> 2, 11
<i>Ro</i> 8, 15	70. Adoption of Sons.	83. The Roaring Lion.	<i>1 Pt</i> 5, 8
<i>Ro</i> 12, 4	71. One Body and many Members.	84. The Sow wallowing in the Mire.	<i>2 Pt</i> 2, 22
<i>Ro</i> 14, 10	72. The Judgment-Seat.	85. The Dog returning to his Vomit.	<i>2 Pt</i> 2, 22
<i>1 C</i> 3, 10	73. The Sure Foundation.	86. Light an emblem of God.	<i>1 Jn</i> 1, 5
<i>2 C</i> 5, 1	74. The Earthly House of this Tabernacle.	87. Clouds without Water.	<i>Ju</i> 12
<i>1 Th</i> 3, 15	75. The Pillar and Ground of the Truth.	88. Christ knocking at the door of the Soul.	<i>Ap</i> 3, 20
<i>2 Th</i> 2, 3	76. The Soldier of Christ.		

### 25.—PARABLES, VISIONS, ETC., IN THE OLD TESTAMENT.

<i>Ge</i> 28, 12	1. Jacob's Ladder.	18. The Rod watching.	<i>Je</i> 1, 11
<i>Ge</i> 37, 5	2. Joseph's Dream.	19. The boiling Caldron.	<i>Je</i> 1, 13
<i>Ex</i> 3, 2	3. The burning Bush.	20. The linen Girdle.	<i>Je</i> 13, 1
<i>Jg</i> 9, 7	4. The Trees that made a King to reign over them.	21. The two Baskets of Figs.	<i>Je</i> 24, 1
<i>Jg</i> 14, 8	5. A Honeycomb in the carcass of a Lion.	22. The Cup of the Wine of Fury.	<i>Je</i> 25, 2
<i>2 K</i> 12, 1	6. The poor Man's little Ewe-lamb.	23. The Bands and Chains.	<i>Je</i> 27, 2
<i>2 K</i> 14, 6	7. The two Brothers that quarrelled.	24. The Chains of Wood and of Iron.	<i>Je</i> 28, 13
<i>3 K</i> 20, 19	8. The Man that slipped away.	25. The Book cast into the Euphrates.	<i>Je</i> 51, 63
<i>3 K</i> 22, 19	9. Micaiah's Vision.	26. Eating a Book.	<i>Ez</i> 3, 1
<i>4 K</i> 14, 9	10. The Thistle of Libanus and a Cedar-tree.	27. The Hair of the Prophet.	<i>Ez</i> 5, 1
<i>Jb</i> 4, 15	11. The Vision of a Spirit.	28. The Vision of the Temple.	<i>Ez</i> 8, 1
<i>Jb</i> 40, 1	12. The Behemoth.	29. The Thau-Cross [T].	<i>Ez</i> 9, 4
<i>Jb</i> 41, 1	13. The Leviathan.	30. The Coals of Fire scattered over the City.	<i>Ez</i> 10, 1
<i>Pv</i> 6, 6	14. The Ant and the Slug-gard.	31. The untempered Mortar.	<i>Ez</i> 13, 14
<i>Is</i> 5, 1	15. The Vineyard of wild Grapes.	32. The Cushions and Pillows of the Prophetesses.	<i>Ez</i> 13, 20
<i>Is</i> 6, 1	16. The Vision of the Throne of God.	33. The two Eagles and the Vine.	<i>Ez</i> 17, 1
<i>Is</i> 14, 12	17. The parable of Lucifer fallen from Heaven.	34. The young Lion taken in a pit.	<i>Ez</i> 19, 1

<i>Ez</i> 19, 10	35. The Vine plucked up and burnt.	66. The Rush and the Sedge-bush.	<i>Jb</i> 8, 11
<i>Ez</i> 24, 1	36. The boiling Pot.	67. The Spider's Web.	<i>Jb</i> 8, 14
<i>Ez</i> 37, 1	37. The Resurrection of dry Bones.	68. Manfleeth as a Shadow.	<i>Jb</i> 14, 2
<i>Ez</i> 37, 15	38. The two Sticks that were joined together into one.	69. The old Tree spring- ing up again at the scent of Water.	<i>Jb</i> 14, 9
<i>Ez</i> 47, 1	39. Holy Waters issuing out from under the Temple.	70. The Dust driven away by the Wind.	<i>Pz</i> 1, 4
<i>Da</i> 2, 31	40. Nabuchodonosor's Dream of the great Statue.	71. The Hart panting after the Fountains of Water.	<i>Pz</i> 41, 1
<i>Da</i> 4, 7	41. Nabuchodonosor's Dream of the great Tree.	72. The Mighty Conqueror.	<i>Pz</i> 44, 4
<i>Da</i> 7, 1	42. The four Beasts.	73. Snow.	<i>Pz</i> 50, 9
<i>Da</i> 8, 1	43. The Ram and the Goat.	74. Sparrows building near the Sanctuary.	<i>Pz</i> 83, 4
<i>Jo</i> 4, 6	44. The Ivy that withered.	75. The Pelican of the Wilderness.	<i>Pz</i> 101, 7
<i>Am</i> 7, 1	45. The Locusts.	76. Rejuvenescence.	<i>Pz</i> 102, 5
<i>Am</i> 8, 1	46. The Fruit-hook.	77. The Compassionate Father.	<i>Pz</i> 102, 13
<i>Am</i> 7, 4	47. The Fire.	78. A Cry from the great Depths.	<i>Pz</i> 129, 1
<i>Am</i> 7, 7	48. The Mason's Trowel.	79. The Precious Ointment and the Dew of Hermon.	<i>Pz</i> 132, 2
<i>Za</i> 1, 7	49. The Vision of the Horses.	80. The Fowler's Net.	<i>Pv</i> 1, 17
<i>Za</i> 1, 18	50. The four Horns and the four Smiths.	81. The Dawning of Day.	<i>Pv</i> 4, 18
<i>Za</i> 4, 1	51. The Golden Candlestick and the seven Lamps.	82. The Wandering Bird.	<i>Pv</i> 27, 8
<i>Za</i> 5, 1	52. The flying Volume.	83. Iron sharpeneth Iron.	<i>Pv</i> 27, 17
<i>Za</i> 5, 6	53. The Woman in the Vessel.	84. The Face shining in the Water.	<i>Pv</i> 27, 19
<i>Za</i> 6, 1	54. The four War-chariots.	85. The Threefold Cord.	<i>Ecl</i> 4, 12
<i>Za</i> 11, 10	55. The two Rods.	86. The Neglected House.	<i>Ecl</i> 10, 18
<i>Za</i> 11, 15	56. The foolish Shepherd.	87. Bread cast upon the Waters.	<i>Ecl</i> 11, 1
<i>2M</i> 5, 1	57. The Battle in the Air.	88. The Fallen Tree.	<i>Ecl</i> 11, 3
<i>2M</i> 15, 13	58. The Vision of St. Jeremias the Prophet, environed with great beauty and majesty.	89. The Pitcher crushed at the Fountain.	<i>Ecl</i> 12, 6
<i>Emblems and Imageries.</i>		90. Words as Goads and as Nails.	<i>Ecl</i> 12, 11
<i>Ge</i> 3, 17	59. Thorns and Thistles.	91. White as Wool.	<i>Is</i> 1, 18
<i>Ge</i> 15, 5	60. The Stars of Light.	92. The Cords of Vanity.	<i>Is</i> 5, 18
<i>Nu</i> 24, 5	61. The Woody Valleys.	93. The Oak-tree.	<i>Is</i> 6, 13
<i>De</i> 32, 2	62. Divine Doctrine likened to Rain.	94. The Wolf dwelling with the Lamb.	<i>Is</i> 12, 6
<i>De</i> 32, 11	63. The Eagle training her Young.	95. The Boundless Sea.	<i>Is</i> 12, 9
<i>3K</i> 4, 29	64. Sands on the Seashore.	96. The Falling Star.	<i>Is</i> 14, 12
<i>Jb</i> 7, 2	65. The Hireling looking for the Evening.	97. The Watchman of the City.	<i>Is</i> 21, 11
		98. The Key of the House of David.	<i>Is</i> 22, 22

- Is* 22, 23 99. A Peg in a sure Place. 118. The Ethiopian and *Je* 13, 23  
*Is* 24, 13 100. The Shaking of the the Leopard.  
*Is* 32, 15 101. The Desert as a Carmel. 119. The Dark Mountains. *Je* 13, 16  
*Is* 35, 1 102. The Desert an impassable Land. 120. The Graver's Tool. *Je* 17, 1  
*Is* 40, 7 103. Summer Blossoms. 121. The Tamaric in the *Je* 17, 6  
*Is* 42, 3 104. The bruised Reed and the smoking Flax. Desert.  
*Is* 44, 20 105. Feeding on Ashes. 122. The Tree planted by *Je* 17, 8  
*Is* 52, 3 106. The Captive. the Waters.  
*Is* 53, 7 107. The Lamb before his Shearer. 123. Clay in the hand of *Je* 18, 1  
*Is* 57, 20 108. The Raging Sea. the Potter.  
*Is* 62, 3 109. The Royal Diadem. 124. The Hammer that *Je* 23, 29  
*Is* 64, 6 110. The Fallen Leaf. breaketh the Rock in pieces.  
*Je* 2, 13 111. The Fountain of Living Water. 125. The watered Garden. *Je* 31, 12  
*Je* 2, 13 112. The Broken Cisterns. 126. The Bullock unaccustomed to the Yoke. *Je* 31, 18  
*Je* 4, 3 113. The Husbandry. 127. Rising early to work. *Je* 35, 15  
*Je* 6, 16 114. The Old Paths. 128. Wine upon the Lees. *Je* 48, 11  
*Je* 8, 6 115. The Horse rushing to the Battle. 129. The Espousals by *Os* 2, 20  
*Je* 8, 22 116. The Physician. Faith.  
*Je* 8, 7 117. The Returning Swallow. 130. The Morning Dew. *Os* 6, 4  
131. The Brand pluckt out of the Fire. *Za* 3, 2  
132. Gold in the Furnace. *Ma* 3, 2  
133. The Sun an emblem of our Lord. *Ma* 4, 3

## 26.—THE MIRACLES OF OUR LORD. VISIONS.

- Lu* 1, 38 1. **THE INCARNATION OF THE EVERLASTING SON OF THE FATHER.** 11. Healing of the Woman who was troubled for twelve years with an issue of blood. *Mk* 5, 35-43  
*Lu* 1, 20 2. Zachary's dumbness and cure. 12. Two blind Men receive their sight. *Mt* 11, 27-31  
*Lu* 2, 13 3. The heavenly Army of Angels singing the "Gloria in Excelsis" at His Birth. 13. Healing of a dumb Man possessed by the devil. *Mt* 11, 32-33  
*Mt* 2, 2 4. His Star in the East. 14. Healing one sick of the palsy. *Mk* 2, 1-12  
*Jn* 2, 1-11 5. Water changed into Wine at Cana. 15. Cleansing of the Leper. *Mt* 8, 1-4  
*Jn* 4, 46-54 6. Healing of the Ruler's Son at Capharnaum. 16. The Centurion's Servant healed at Capharnaum. *Lu* 7, 1-10  
*Mt* 8, 23-27 7. Stilling of the Storm on the Lake of Galilee. 17. The unclean Spirit driven out of a Man in the synagogue at Capharnaum. *Mk* 1, 23-28  
*Lu* 5, 1-11 8. The miraculous Draught of Fishes. 18. Peter's Mother-in-law cured of fever. *Mt* 8, 14-17  
*Mt* 8, 28-34 9. The Devils driven out of two Demoniacs. 19. Healing a Man who was a cripple thirty-eight years. *Jn* 5, 1-16  
*Mt* 9, 23-28 10. The Daughter of Jairus raised to life.

- Jn* 5, 4 20. The Water of the pond of Bethsaida troubled by an Angel.
- Lk* 9, 12-17 21. Feeding of five Thousand with five loaves and two fishes at Decapolis.
- Lk* 7, 11-16 22. The Widow's Son raised to life at Naim.
- Mt* 14, 22-33 23. Jesus walks upon the Sea of Galilee.
- Jn* 9, 1-41 24. In Jerusalem the Man born blind restored to sight.
- Mt* 12, 9-13 25. Healing the withered Hand.
- Mt* 12, 22-23 26. Healing one possessed with a devil, blind and dumb, so that he spoke and saw.
- Lk* 13, 11-17 27. Healing in Galilee a Woman who had a spirit of infirmity eighteen years.
- Lk* 14, 1-6 28. Healing of the dropsical Man in Galilee.
- Lk* 17, 11-19 29. Cleansing of the ten Lepers in Samaria.
- Mt* 15, 21-28 30. Cure of the Daughter of the Syrophenician Woman.
- Mk* 7, 31-37 31. Healing the Man that was deaf and dumb at Decapolis.
- Mt* 15, 32-39 32. Feeding of four Thousand with seven loaves and a few little fishes.
- Mk* 8, 22-26 33. He gives sight in Bethsaida to a blind Man.
- Mt* 17, 14-21 34. Cure of the lunatic Child at Thabor.
- Mt* 17, 24-27 35. The Fish with the tribute-money in its mouth.
- Jn* 11, 1-44 36. Raising to life of Lazarus of Bethania after he had been dead four days.
- Mt* 20, 29-34 37. Sight given to two blind Men nigh to Jericho.
- Mk* 11, 12-14 38. Cursing the barren Fig-tree on Mount Olivet, which immediately withered away.
- Mt* 28, 26 39. **THE INSTITUTION**

**OF THE MOST BLESSED SACRAMENT.\***

40. Healing of Malchus's *Lk* 22, 49-51 ear in the Garden of Gethsemani.
41. Darkness over the whole earth at our Lord's Death. *Mt* 27, 45
42. A great Earthquake at our Lord's Resurrection. *Mt* 28, 2
43. The second miraculous Draught of Fishes. *Jn* 21, 1-23

*Miracles not specified.*

Jesus went about all the cities and towns, teaching in their synagogues and preaching the Gospel of the Kingdom, and healing every disease and every infirmity.

There came the blind and the lame in the Temple, and He healed them. *Mt* 21, 14

When it was evening, after sunset, they brought to Him all that were ill and that were possessed with devils.—And all the city was gathered together at the door.—And He healed many that were troubled with divers diseases, and He cast out many devils. *Mk* 1, 32-34

Running through the whole country, they began to carry about in beds those that were sick where they heard He was.—And whithersoever He entered into towns or into villages or cities, they laid the sick in the streets, and besought Him that they might touch but the hem of His garment: and as many as touched Him were made whole. *Mk* 6, 55-56

All the multitude sought *Lk* 6, 19

\* See Book IV., Part 3.

to touch Him, for virtue went out from Him and healed all.

*Other Miracles and Visions.*

- Ac* 2, 2-4 1. The Descent of the Holy Ghost at Pentecost in parted tongues of fire.
- Ac* 7, 55-58 2. Our Lord appears to St. Stephen.
- Ac* 9, 3-8 3. Our Lord appears to St. Paul.

4. Our Lord appears to *Ac* 9, 10 Ananias.

5. An Angel appears to *Ac* 10, 3 Cornelius.

6. St. Peter's vision of the *Ac* 10, 9-18 clean and unclean Beasts.

7. Ananias appears in a *Ac* 9, 12 vision to St. Paul.

8. A Man of Macedonia *Ac* 16, 9 appears in a vision to St. Paul.

9. St. Paul is caught up *2 C* 12, 1-4 into Paradise.

27.—MIRACLES OF THE OLD TESTAMENT.

1—*Wrought in Divine Mercy.*

- Ge* 1, 1 1. Creation of the World out of nothing.
- Ge* 1, 3 1st day. Light.
- Ge* 1, 6 2nd day. The Firmament and the division of the Waters.
- Ge* 1, 9 3rd day. The Seas, Dry Land, and Plants.
- Ge* 1, 14 4th day. The Sun, Moon, and Stars.
- Ge* 1, 20 5th day. Fishes, Birds, and Fowls.
- Ge* 1, 24-31 6th day. Beasts and creeping things. Man made to God's Image.
- Ge* 2, 9 2. The miraculous properties of the Tree of Life.
- Ge* 9, 12 3. The Rainbow.
- Ex* 13, 21 4. A Pillar of a Cloud and of Fire.
- Nu* 17, 8 5. Blossoming of Aaron's Rod.
- Ex* 16, 8 6. God gives Quails and Manna to the children of Israel in the wilderness.
- Ex* 16, 24 7. Preservation of the Manna.
- Jo* 3, 16 8. The Jordan dried up for the passage of the children of Israel.

9. The Walls of Jericho *Jo* 6, 20 fall down at the sounding of the Trumpets by the Priests.

10. The Sun and Moon *Jo* 10, 12 stand still at the prayer of Josue.

11. Water issues out of a *Ju* 15, 19 jaw-bone of an Ass, to quench the thirst of Samson.

12. Isaias heals Ezechias *Is* 38, 21 of sickness.

13. Sidrach, Misach, and Abdenago cast into the fiery Furnace without being hurt.

14. Daniel cast into the *Da* 6, 22 Lions' Den. The mouths of the lions closed by an Angel.

15. The Ivy prepared by *Jo* 4, 10 the Lord for Jonas.

16. Ravens bring Elias *3 K* 17, 6 bread and flesh to eat morning and evening.

17. The Pot of Meal be- *3 K* 17, 9 longing to the widow woman of Sarephta wasted not, and her Cruse of Oil diminished not.

18. The widow's Son raised *3 K* 17, 17 to life.

19. An Angel feeds Elias *3 K* 19, 6 with an hearth-cake and a vessel of water.



- 3K19, 8 20. Elias forty days and forty nights without eating.
- 4K2, 14 21. Eliseus divides the Waters of the Jordan with the mantle of Elias.
- 4K2, 19 22. The bad Waters of Jericho healed by casting in salt.
- 4K4, 1 23. Eliseus multiplies the widow's Oil.
- 4K4, 34 24. The Sunamitess's Child raised to life.
- 4K4, 38 25. Miracle of the Meal and Pottage.
- 4K5, 14 26. Naaman the Syrian is cleansed of his leprosy by washing seven times in the Jordan.
- 4K6, 6 27. The iron head of an Axe swims upon the water.
- 4K13, 21 28. A dead man is raised to life by touching the Bones of Eliseus.
- Nu21, 9 29. Those bitten by fiery serpents healed by the Brazen Serpent (a figure of Christ Crucified).
- 2—*Wrought in Divine Vengeance.*
- Ge7, 11 30. The Deluge.
- Ge11, 7 31. The Confusion of Tongues.
- Ge19, 24 32. The Destruction of the Cities of the Plain.
- Ex7, 20 33. The Plagues of Egypt.
- (1) The Waters of the Nile are changed into Blood.
- Ex8, 6 (2) Frogs cover the land.
- Ex8, 16 (3) Lice on men and on beasts.
- Ex8, 20 (4) Flies of divers kinds.
- Ex9, 1 (5) A grievous Murrain among cattle.
- Ex9, 8 (6) Boils and Blains, both in men and beasts.
- (7) An exceeding great Hail.
- (8) Locusts cover the face of the earth.
- (9) A horrible Darkness in all the land for three days.
- (10) The Death of the First-born.
34. The waters of the Red Sea come upon the Egyptians, and the Lord shut them up in the midst of the waves.
35. Nadab and Abihu burnt by fire for offering strange fire.
36. Israelites burnt by fire at Taberah for murmuring against God.
37. Josue overcomes the five Kings of the Amorrites.
38. Dagon twice falls before the Ark.
39. For curiously looking into the Ark 50,070 were slain.
40. Thunder and Rain sent in punishment of sin.
41. Samson slays a thousand Men with a jaw-bone.
42. The people punished with Pestilence, which David stops by offering sacrifice of expiation on the threshing-floor of Ornan.
43. Withering of Jeroboam's Hand for offering violence to the Prophet.
44. The Waters of Moab turned into blood.
45. The Panic in the Syrian camp.
46. An Angel of the Lord slew of Sennacherib's army 85,000 men.
47. Elias shuts up the heaven from raining three years and six months.
48. Elias causes fire to come from heaven to consume
- Ex9, 16
- Ex10, 4
- Ex10, 21
- Ex11, 4
- Ex14, 27
- Le10, 2
- Nu10, 1
- Jo10, 10
- 1K5, 3
- 1K6, 19
- 1K12, 17
- Ju15, 15
- 1P21, 15
- 3K13, 4
- 4K3, 22
- 4K7, 6
- 4K19, 35
- 3K17, 1
- 4K1, 10

- two Captains and their Companies.
- 4 K 6, 18 49. Eliseus smites with blindness the Syrian soldiers sent to apprehend him.
- Da 5, 5 50. The Handwriting on the wall—**MANE, THECEL, PHARES.**
- 3—Other miracles.**
- Ex 7, 10 51. Aaron's Rod turned into a serpent.
- Nu 22, 28 52. Balaam's Ass speaks.
- Ju 15, 18 53. Gideon's Fleece.
- 4 K 20, 11 54. The shadow in the Dial of Achaz goes ten degrees backwards.
- Jo 1, 15 55. The Tempest ceases on Jonas being cast into the sea.
- Jo 2, 1 56. Jonas in the Whale three days and three nights.
- Ex 19, 9 57. The Law given on Mount Sinai in thunder and lightning.
58. The Earthquake and 3 K 19, 11 Fire at Horeb.
59. Elias divides the waters of the Jordan with his mantle.
60. Elias is taken up by a whirlwind into Heaven in a fiery chariot.
61. Fire from Heaven consumed the Holocaust of Elias, and the wood and the stones and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench.
62. Fire came from the Lord upon the Altar.
63. An Angel causes fire to arise from the rock to consume Gideon's Holocaust.
64. Manue's Holocaust consumed by fire from Heaven.
65. Fire comes from Heaven to consume the Sacrifices of Solomon.
- 4 K 2, 8
- 4 K 2, 11
- 3 K 18, 38
- Le 9, 24
- Ju 6, 20
- Ju 13, 19
- 2 P 7, 1

## 28.—VISIONS AND SYMBOLS OF THE APOCALYPSE.\*

### ✱

- |  |  |   |  |
|--|--|---|--|
| <p>Ap 1, 12-19</p> <p>Ap 1, 20</p> <p>Ap 2, 1-7</p> <p>Ap 2, 8-11</p> <p>Ap 2, 12-17</p> <p>Ap 2, 18-29</p> <p>Ap 3, 1-6</p> | <p>1. Our Lord walking in the midst of the Golden Candlesticks.</p> <p>2. The Seven Stars and the Seven Churches.</p> <p>3. Messages to the seven Churches of Asia—i.e.:</p> <p>(1) Ephesus.</p> <p>(2) Smyrna.</p> <p>(3) Pergamus.</p> <p>(4) Thyatira.</p> <p>(5) Sardis.</p> | <p>(6) Philadelphia.</p> <p>(7) Laodicea.</p> <p>4. A Door opened in Heaven.</p> <p>5. A Rainbow round about the Throne.</p> <p>6. Four - and - twenty Ancients seated around the Throne.</p> <p>7. Seven Lamps burn before the Throne.</p> <p>8. Before the Throne as it were a Sea of Glass.</p> <p>9. The Four living Creatures.</p> | <p>Ap 3, 7-13</p> <p>Ap 3, 14-22</p> <p>Ap 4, 1</p> <p>Ap 4, 2-3</p> <p>Ap 4, 4</p> <p>Ap 4, 5</p> <p>Ap 4, 6</p> <p>Ap 4, 6-8</p> |
|--|--|---|--|

\* "Seal not the words of the Prophecy of this Book: for the time is at hand."—Apoc. xii. 10.

*Ap* 5, 1-5 10. The Book sealed with seven seals, and opened by the Lamb.

\*

*Ap* 3, 8 11. Golden Vials full of odours.

12. The opening of the Seven Seals—i.e.:

*Ap* 6, 1-3 (1) The white horse and its rider.

*Ap* 6, 4 (2) The red horse and its rider.

*Ap* 6, 5-6 (3) The black horse and its rider.

*Ap* 6, 7-8 (4) The pale horse and its rider.

*Ap* 6, 9-11 (5) The souls of them that were slain for the Word of God.

*Ap* 6, 12-14 (6) Earthquake and convulsion of the heavenly bodies.

*Ap* 8, 2 (7) The seven Angels with their trumpets.

*Ap* 7, 1 13. Four Angels holding the four winds.

*Ap* 7, 2-8 14. The signing of the 144,000.

*Ap* 8, 1 15. Silence in Heaven for half-an-hour.

*Ap* 8, 5 16. Incense offered on the Golden Altar.

*Ap* 8, 6 17. The seven Angels sounding the seven trumpets.

*Ap* 8, 7 1st Trumpet. Hail and Fire mingled with Blood cast upon earth.

*Ap* 8, 8-9 2nd Trumpet. A burning Mountain cast into the sea.

*Ap* 8, 10-11 3rd Trumpet. A Star from Heaven, burning like a torch, falls upon the third part of waters.

*Ap* 8, 12 4th Trumpet. The third part of the Sun,

Moon, and Stars darkened.

5th Trumpet. A Star falls from Heaven. *Ap* 9, 1

The opening of the bottomless Pit. *Ap* 9, 2

Locusts like unto horses. *Ap* 9, 3-11

6th Trumpet. Four Angels loosed from the river Euphrates to kill the third part of men. *Ap* 9, 14

An army of Horsemen twenty thousand times ten thousand. *Ap* 9, 16-19

An Angel having a little book opened. Seven Thunders utter their voices. *Ap* 10, 2-4

7th Trumpet. The Mystery of God finished. The Book eaten. *Ap* 10, 9-10

18. Measurement of the Temple. *Ap* 11, 1-2

19. The two Witnesses clothed in sackcloth. *Ap* 11, 3

20. The Court of the Temple given to the Gentiles. *Ap* 11, 2

\*

21. The two Olive-trees and two Candlesticks. *Ap* 11, 4

22. The Beast ascending out of the abyss. *Ap* 11, 7

23. Fall of the tenth Part of the City. *Ap* 11, 13

24. The second Woe and the third Woe. *Ap* 11, 14

25. The Temple of God opened in Heaven. *Ap* 11, 19

26. The Woman clothed with the Sun, birth of a Man-child. *Ap* 12, 1-6

27. The red Dragon with seven heads and ten horns. *Ap* 12, 3-7

28. St. Michael and his Angels fight a great battle *Ap* 12, 7-9

with the Dragon and his angels.

*Ap* 12, 14 29. The Woman flees into the desert from the face of the Serpent.

*Ap* 13, 1 30. A Beast comes up out of the sea.

\*

*Ap* 13, 11-18 31. A Beast comes out of the earth with two horns like a lamb.

*Ap* 14, 1-5 32. The Lamb on Mount Sion, and with Him the 144,000.

*Ap* 14, 6-7 33. The Angel flying through Heaven having the Everlasting Gospel.

*Ap* 14, 8-13 34. The Angel proclaims the fall of Babylon.

*Ap* 14, 14-16 35. The Son of man having on His head a crown of gold, and in His hand a sharp sickle.

*Ap* 14, 17 36. An Angel coming out of the Temple.

*Ap* 14, 18 37. The Angel reaping the harvest and gathering in the clusters of the vineyard.

*Ap* 14, 19 38. The Vine of the earth cast into the great press of the wrath of God.

*Ap* 15, 1 39. Seven Angels with the seven last Plagues.

*Ap* 15, 2 40. A Sea of Glass mingled with fire.

\*

*Ap* 15, 5 41. The Temple of the Tabernacle of the Testimony opened.

42. The seven Angels pour out the seven vials of God's wrath - i.e. :

*Ap* 16, 2 (1) A grievous wound falling upon men who have the character of the beast.

*Ap* 16, 3 (2) Sea turned into blood.

(3) The rivers and *Ap* 16, 46 springs become blood.

(4) Men scorched with *Ap* 16, 9 great heat.

(5) The kingdom of the *Ap* 16, 10-11 beast becomes dark, and they gnaw their tongues for pain.

(6) The waters of the *Ap* 16, 12 Euphrates dry up.

Three unclean *Ap* 16, 13-14 spirits like frogs.

The kings of the *Ap* 16, 15-16 earth gather at Armagedon to battle against the great day of the Almighty God.

(7) A great earthquake, *Ap* 16, 17-18 such an one as never hath been since men were upon earth, and great hail from Heaven.

The earthquake *Ap* 16, 19-20 divides the great city of Babylon in three parts.

43. The Woman on the scarlet-coloured beast with seven *Ap* 17, 1-18 heads and ten horns.

44. The Fall of Babylon. *Ap* 18, 1-20 Kings and merchants lament over her.

45. A Stone like a great *Ap* 18, 21 mill-stone cast into the sea by an Angel.

46. Christ's Victory over *Ap* 19, 1-10 the beast.

47. The Word of God *Ap* 19, 11-16 riding on a white horse.

48. An Angel standing in *Ap* 19, 17-21 the sun.

49. The Birds gather to eat *Ap* 19, 18 the flesh of the slain army.

50. The Beast and false *Ap* 19, 20 Prophet cast alive in the pool of fire burning with brimstone.

\*

- Ap* 20, 1-3 51. Satan bound for a thousand years.  
*Ap* 20, 4 52. The souls of the Martyrs reign with Christ a thousand years.  
*Ap* 20, 5 53. The first Resurrection.  
*Ap* 20, 7-10 54. Satan, loosed out of his prison, seduces the nations.  
*Ap* 20, 8-9 55. Gog and Magog encompass the camp of the Saints.  
*Ap* 20, 10 56. The Devil cast into the pool of Fire.  
*Ap* 20, 11 57. The great White Throne.  
*Ap* 20, 12 58. The opening of the Book of Life.  
*Ap* 20, 14 59. Hell and Death cast into the pool of Fire.  
*Ap* 21, 1 60. St. John's Vision of the New Jerusalem, coming down out of Heaven from God.

\*

- Ap* 21, 16 61. The length, height, and breadth thereof.  
*Ap* 21, 1-11 62. The exceeding riches, splendour, and glory thereof.  
*Ap* 21, 12 63. The Walls thereof are of Jasper-stone, the twelve Gates of Pearls.  
 64. The twelve Founda-

tions thereof are of precious Stones—i.e. of

- (1) Jasper. *Ap* 21, 19-20  
 (2) Sapphire.  
 (3) Chalcedony.  
 (4) Emerald.  
 (5) Sardonyx.  
 (6) Sardius.  
 (7) Chrysolite.  
 (8) Beryl.  
 (9) Topaz.  
 (10) Chrysoprasus.  
 (11) Jacinth.  
 (12) Amethyst.  
 65. The Streets thereof of pure Gold. *Ap* 21, 21  
 66. The Brightness and eternal Felicity thereof. *Ap* 21, 22-27  
 67. The River of the Water of Life. *Ap* 22, 1  
 68. The Tree of Life bearing twelve manner of fruits. *Ap* 22, 2  
 69. The Angel's Words to St. John. *Ap* 22, 8  
 70. Our Lord calls upon us to yearn after the possession of Heaven. *Ap* 22, 17  
 71. He that giveth testimony of these things saith: Surely I come quickly. Amen. *Ap* 22, 20  
 72. The Soul, sighing after Heaven and our Lord, cries out: *Ap* 22, 20

COME, LORD JESUS.

*Ap* 22, 20

29.—OUR LORD'S SEVEN LAST WORDS.

1.

*Lu* 23, 34 Jesus said: Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do.

2.

*Lu* 23, 43 Jesus said to him: Amen I say to thee, this day thou shalt be with Me in Paradise.

3.

When Jesus had seen His Mother and the disciple standing whom He loved, He saith to His Mother: Woman, behold thy son.—After that He saith to the disciple: Behold thy Mother. And from that hour the disciple took her to his own. *Jn* 19, 26-27

4. things were now accomplished, that the Scripture might be fulfilled, said: I thirst.
- Mt* 27, 45-46 From the sixth hour there was darkness over the whole earth until the ninth hour.— And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying: Eli, Eli, lamma sabacthani? that is, My God, My God, why hast Thou forsaken Me?
6. When Jesus had taken the *Jn* 19, 3 vinegar, He said: It is consummated.
7. Jesus crying with a loud *Lk* 23, 46 voice said: Father, into Thy hands I commend my Spirit.
- Jn* 19, 28 Jesus knowing that all

## 30.—THE SEVEN BLOOD-SHEDDINGS OF OUR LORD.

- 1.—In His Circumcision. *Lk* 2, 21 After eight days were accomplished that the Child should be circumcised, His Name was called Jesus.
- 2.—In His Agony. *Lk* 22, 43-44 There appeared to Him an Angel from Heaven strengthening Him. And being in an agony, He prayed the longer.—And His sweat became as drops of Blood trickling down upon the ground.
- 3.—In His Scourging. *Mt* 27, 26 Having scourged Jesus, [Pilate] delivered Him unto them to be crucified.
- 4.—In His Crowning with Thorns. The soldiers plating a crown of thorns, put it upon His Head. *Jn* 19, 2
- 5.—In the Stripping of His Garments. Stripping Him, they put a scarlet cloak about Him. *Mt* 27, 28
- 6.—In His Crucifixion. It was the third hour, and they crucified Him. *Mk* 15, 25
- 7.—In the Opening of His Side. One of the soldiers with a spear opened His Side, and immediately there came out Blood and Water. *Jn* 19, 34

## 31.—THE STATIONS OF THE CROSS.

- 1.—Jesus is condemned to Death. *Mk* 14, 64 They all condemned Him to be guilty of death.
- 2.—Jesus is made to bear His Cross. *Jn* 19, 17 Bearing His own Cross, He went forth to that place which is called Calvary.
- 3.—Jesus falls the first Time under His Cross. The Lord lifteth up all that fall, and setteth up all that are cast down. *Ps* 144, 1
- 4.—Jesus meets His afflicted Mother. Thy own soul a sword shall pierce. *Lk* 2, 35

5.—The Cyrenean helps Jesus to carry His Cross.

*Lu* 23, 26 They laid hold of one Simon of Cyrene coming from the country, and they laid the Cross on him to carry after Jesus.

6.—Veronica wipes the Face of Jesus.

*Lk* 4, 6 The Light of Thy countenance, O Lord, is signed upon us.

7.—Jesus falls the second Time.

*Lk* 9, 4 The yoke of their burden and the rod of their shoulder and the sceptre of their oppressor Thou hast overcome.

8.—Jesus speaks to the Daughters of Jerusalem.

*Lu* 23, 27-28 There followed Him a great number of people, and of women who bewailed and lamented Him.—But Jesus turning to them, said: Daughters of Jerusalem, weep not over Me, but weep for yourselves and for your children.

9. — Jesus falls the third Time.

*La* 1, 14 He hath made my strength to fall.

10.—Jesus is stripped of His Garments.

The soldiers stripping Him, *Mt* 27, 28 put a scarlet cloak about Him.

11.—Jesus is nailed to the Cross.

Blotting out the handwriting of the decree that was against us, He took the same out of the way, nailing it to the Cross. *C12*, 14

12.—Jesus dies on the Cross.

Jesus, crying with a loud voice, said: Father, into Thy hands I commend My spirit. And saying this, He gave up the ghost. *Lu* 23, 46

13.—Jesus is taken down from the Cross.

Joseph of Arimathea went to Pilate and asked for the Body of Jesus. Then Pilate commanded that the Body should be delivered. *Mt* 27, 57-58

14.—Jesus is placed in the Sepulchre.

Joseph, taking the Body, wrapped It up in a clean linen cloth, and laid It in his own new Monument which he had hewed out in a rock. And he rolled a great stone to the door of the Monument, and went his way. *Mt* 27, 59-60

32.—DEVOTION TO THE SACRED HUMANITY.

1.—His Sacred Heart.

*Jn* 13, 23-25 Now there was leaning on Jesus's bosom one of His disciples whom Jesus loved.—Simon Peter therefore beck-

oned to him, and said to him: Who is it of whom He speaketh? — He therefore leaning on the breast of Jesus saith to Him: Lord, who is it?

## 2.—His Sacred Side.

**Lu 19, 34-37** The soldiers broke the legs of the first and of the other that was crucified with Him.—But after they were come to Jesus, when they saw that He was already dead, they did not break His legs.—But one of the soldiers with a spear opened His Side, and immediately there came out Blood and Water.—And he that saw it had given testimony: and his testimony is true. And he knoweth that he saith true: that you also may believe. — For these things were done that the Scripture might be fulfilled: *You shall not break a bone of Him.*—And again another Scripture saith: *They shall look on Him Whom they pierced.*

## 3.—His Sacred Head.

**Mt 27, 27-31** The soldiers of the governor taking Jesus into the hall, gathered together unto Him the whole band.—And stripping Him, they put a scarlet cloak about Him.—And plating a crown of thorns, they put it upon His Head and a reed in His right Hand. And bowing the knee before Him, they mocked Him, saying: Hail, King of the Jews.

## 4.—His Sacred Eyes.

**Lu 11, 33-36** Jesus when He saw her weeping, and the Jews that were come to her weeping, groaned in the Spirit, and troubled Himself,—And said: Where have you laid him? They say to Him: Lord, come

and see.—And Jesus wept.—The Jews therefore said: Behold how He loved him.

## 5.—His Sacred Mouth.

Jesus knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the Scriptures might be fulfilled, said: I thirst.—Now there was a vessel set there full of vinegar. And they putting a sponge full of vinegar about with hyssop, put it to His Mouth.—When Jesus therefore had taken the vinegar, He said: It is consummated. And bowing His Head, He gave up the ghost.

## 6.—His Sacred Hands.

They shall say to Him: **Zc 13, 6** What are these wounds in the midst of Thy Hands? And He shall say: With these I was wounded in the house of them that loved Me.

## 7.—His Sacred Feet.

He said unto Simon: Dost thou see this woman? I entered into thy house; thou gavest Me no water for My Feet: but she with tears hath washed My Feet, and with her hair hath wiped them.—Thou gavest Me no kiss: but she, since she came in, hath not ceased to kiss My Feet.—My Head with oil thou didst not anoint: but she with ointment hath anointed My Feet.

## 8. The Sacred Arms.

Taking a child, He set him in the midst of them. **Mt 9, 36**



Whom when He had embraced, He saith to them:— Whosoever shall receive one such child as this in My Name, receiveth Me.

9. The Sacred Face.

They blindfolded Him, *Lu 22, 64* and smote His Face. And they asked Him, saying: Prophecy, who is it that struck Thee?

33.—LESSONS READ IN HOLY WEEK.

It came to pass, after Israel was carried into captivity, and Jerusalem was desolate, that Jeremias the Prophet sat weeping, and mourned with this lamentation over Jerusalem; and with a sorrowful mind, sighing and moaning, he said :

HOLY THURSDAY.

I.

*La 1, 1-5 Aleph.* How doth the City sit solitary that was full of people! how is the Mistress of the Gentiles become as a widow: the Princes of provinces made tributary?

*Beth.* Weeping she hath wept in the night, and her tears are on her cheeks: there is none to comfort her among all them that were dear to her: all her friends have despised her, and are become her enemies.

*Ghimet.* Juda hath removed her Dwelling-place because of her affliction, and the greatness of her bondage: she hath dwelt among the nations, and she hath found no rest: all her persecutors have taken her in the midst of straits.

*Daleth.* The ways of Sion mourn, because there are none that come to the Solemn Feast: all her gates are broken down: her Priests sigh: her virgins are in affliction, and she is oppressed with bitterness.

*He.* Her adversaries are become her lords, her enemies are enriched: because the Lord hath spoken against her for the multitude of her iniquities: her Children are led into captivity, before the face of the oppressor.

II.

*Vau.* From the daughter *La 1, 6-9* of Sion all her beauty is departed; her princes are become like rams that find no pastures: and they are gone away without strength before the face of the pursuer.

*Zain.* Jerusalem hath remembered the days of her affliction, and prevarication of all her desirable things which she had from the days of old, when her people fell in the enemy's hand, and there was no helper: the enemies have seen her, and have mocked at her Sabbaths.

*Heth.* Jerusalem hath grievously sinned, therefore

K

hath she become unstable: into a hand, out of which I am not able to rise.  
all that honoured her have despised her, because they have seen her shame: but she sighed and turned backward.

*Teth.* Her filthiness is on her feet, and she hath not remembered her end: she is wonderfully cast down, not having a comforter: behold, O Lord, my affliction, because the enemy is lifted up.

## III.

*La 1, 10-14 Jod.* The enemy hath put out his hand to all her desirable things: for she hath seen the Gentiles enter into her Sanctuary, of whom Thou gavest commandment that they should not enter into Thy Church.

*Caph.* All her people sigh, they seek bread: they have given all their precious things for food to relieve the soul: see, O Lord, and consider, for I am become vile.

*Lamed.* O all ye that pass by the way, attend, and see if there be any sorrow like to my sorrow: for he hath made a vintage of me, as the Lord spoke in the day of His fierce anger.

*Mem.* From above He hath sent fire into my bones, and hath chastised me: He hath spread a net for my feet, He hath turned me back, He hath made me desolate, wasted with sorrow all the day long.

*Nun.* The yoke of my iniquities hath watched: they are folded together in His hand, and put upon my neck: my strength is weakened: the Lord hath delivered me

into a hand, out of which I am not able to rise.

## GOOD FRIDAY.

## IV.

*Heth.* The Lord hath purposed to destroy the wall of the daughter of Sion: He hath stretched out His line, and hath not withdrawn His hand from destroying: and the bulwark hath mourned, and the wall hath been destroyed together.

*Teth.* Her gates are sunk into the ground: He hath destroyed, and broken her bars: her king and her princes are among the Gentiles: the Law is no more, and her Prophets have found no vision from the Lord.

*Jod.* The ancients of the daughter of Sion sit upon the ground, they have held their peace: they have sprinkled their heads with dust, they are girded with haircloth, the virgins of Jerusalem hang down their heads to the ground.

*Caph.* My eyes have failed with weeping, my bowels are troubled: my liver is poured out upon the earth, for the destruction of the daughter of my people, when the children, and the sucklings, fainted away in the streets of the City.

## V.

*Lamed.* They said to their mothers: Where is corn and wine? when they fainted away as the wounded in the streets of the City: when they breathed out their souls in the bosoms of their mothers.

*La 2, 12-15*

*Mem.* To what shall I compare thee? or to what shall I liken thee, O daughter of Jerusalem? to what shall I equal thee, that I may comfort thee, O virgin daughter of Sion? for great as the sea is thy destruction: who shall heal thee?

*Nun.* Thy prophets have seen false and foolish things for thee: and they have not laid open thy iniquity, to excite thee to penance: but they have seen for thee false revelations and banishments.

*Samech.* All they that passed by the way have clapped their hands at thee: they have hissed, and wagged their heads at the daughter of Jerusalem, saying: Is this the City of perfect beauty, the joy of all the earth?

## VI.

*La 3, 1-9 Aleph.* I am the man that see my poverty by the rod of His indignation.

*Aleph.* He hath led me, and brought me into darkness, and not into light.

*Aleph.* Only against me He hath turned, and turned again His hand all the day.

*Beth.* My skin and my flesh He hath made old, He hath broken my bones.

*Beth.* He hath built round about me, and He hath compassed me with gall, and labour.

*Beth.* He hath set me in dark places as those that are dead for ever.

*Ghimel.* He hath built against me round about, that I may not get out: He hath made my fetters heavy.

*Ghimel.* Yea, and when I

cry and entreat, He hath shut out my prayer.

*Ghimel.* He hath shut up my ways with square stones, He hath turned my paths upside down.

## HOLY SATURDAY.

## VII.

*Heth.* The mercies of the Lord that we are not consumed: because His commissions have not failed. *La 3, 22-30*

*Heth.* They are new every morning, great is Thy faithfulness.

*Heth.* The Lord is my portion, said my soul: therefore will I wait for Him.

*Teth.* The Lord is good to them that hope in Him, to the soul that seeketh Him.

*Teth.* It is good to wait in silence for the salvation of God.

*Teth.* It is good for a man, when he hath borne the yoke from his youth.

*Jod.* He shall sit solitary, and hold his peace: because he hath taken it up upon himself.

*Jod.* He shall put his mouth in the dust, if so be there may be hope.

*Jod.* He shall give his cheek to him that striketh him, he shall be filled with reproaches.

## VIII.

*Aleph.* How is the gold become dim, the finest colour is changed, the stones of the Sanctuary are scattered in the top of every street? *La 4, 1-6*

*Beth.* The noble sons of Sion, and they that were clothed with the best gold:

how are they esteemed as and behold our reproach.  
earthen vessels, the work of Our Inheritance is turned  
to the potter's hands? to aliens: our houses to  
strangers.

*Ghimel.* Even the sea-monsters have drawn out the breast, they have given suck to their young: the daughter of My people is cruel, like the ostrich in the desert.

*Daleth.* The tongue of the suckling child hath stuck to the roof of his mouth for thirst: the little ones have asked for bread, and there was none to break it unto them.

*He.* They that were fed delicately have died in the streets: they that were brought up in scarlet have embraced the dung.

*Vau.* And the iniquity of the daughter of My people is made greater than the sin of Sodom, which was overthrown in a moment, and hands took nothing in her.

## IX.

## THE PRAYER OF ST. JEREMIAS THE PROPHET.

*La* 5, 1-11 Remember, O Lord, what is come upon us: consider

We are become orphans without a father: our mothers are as widows.

We have drunk our water for money: we have bought our wood.

We were dragged by the necks, we were weary and no rest was given us.

We have given our hand to Egypt, and to the Assyrians, that we might be satisfied with bread.

Our fathers have sinned, and are not: and we have borne their iniquities.

Servants have ruled over us: there was none to redeem us out of their hand.

We fetched our bread at the peril of our lives, because of the sword in the desert.

Our skin was burnt as an oven, by reason of the violence of the famine.

They oppressed the women in Sion, and the virgins in the cities of Juda.

## 34.—EJACULATIONS IN HIS PRAISE AND LOVE.

*P* 17, 1 I love Thee, O Lord my Strength.

*P* 72, 25-26 What have I in Heaven? and besides Thee what do I desire upon earth?—For Thee my flesh and my heart hath fainted away. Thou art the God of my heart, and the God that is my Portion for ever.

*Jn* 21, 17 Lord, Thou knowest all things: Thou knowest that I love Thee.

*Ap* 11, 17 We give Thee thanks, O

Lord God Almighty, Who art, and Who wast, and Who art to come: because Thou hast taken to Thee Thy great power, and Thou hast reigned.

Great and wonderful are Thy works, O Lord God Almighty; just and true are Thy ways, O King of Ages. —Who shall not fear Thee, O Lord, and magnify Thy Name? For Thou only art Holy: for all nations shall

- come and shall adore in Thy sight, because Thy judgments are manifest.
- Ap 4, 11* Thou art worthy, O Lord our God, to receive glory and honour and power: because Thou hast created all things, and for Thy will they were and have been created.
- Da 2, 23* To Thee, O God of our fathers, I give thanks, and I praise Thee: because Thou hast given me wisdom and strength.
- P 145, 1* Praise the Lord, O my soul: in my life I will praise the Lord, I will sing to my God as long as I shall be.
- P 144, 1-2* I will extol Thee, O God my King; and I will bless Thy Name for ever, yea for ever and ever.—Every day I will bless Thee, and I will praise Thy Name for ever, yea for ever and ever.
- P 73, 13* We Thy people, and the sheep of Thy pasture, will give thanks to Thee for ever. We will show forth Thy praise unto generation and generation.
- I will praise Thee, O Lord *P 85, 12* my God, with my whole heart, and I will glorify Thy Name for ever.
- I will praise Thee for ever, *P 51, 11* because Thou hast done it.
- O God, my God, to Thee *P 62, 2* do I watch at break of day. For Thee my soul hath thirsted: for Thee my flesh, O how many ways!
- In the daytime the Lord *P 41, 9-* hath commanded His mercy; 10
- and a canticle to Him in the night. With me is prayer to the God of my life;—I will say to God: Thou art my Support.
- My soul doth magnify the *Lx 1, 46-* Lord, and my spirit had re- 47  
rejoiced in God my Saviour.

## PART V.

ON MARY THE VIRGIN-MOTHER OF JESUS;  
ST. JOSEPH, HIS FOSTER-FATHER;  
AND ST. JOHN THE BAPTIST, HIS PRECURSOR.

THE texts which refer to Mary the Sinless may now appropriately be quoted. For after Jesus comes Mary. The distance between them is indeed infinite, for Jesus is God, and Mary is but the creature of His Hands. Yet Mary comes nearest to Jesus, and is therefore First of creatures in the orders of grace and of glory. "The nearer a thing approaches to its principle," says S. Thomas,\* "the more does it partake of the effect

\* Sum. Theol., 3<sup>us</sup>, pars q. 27, a. 5.

of that principle, . . . but Christ is the principle of grace, and Mary is nearest to Him, since He received from her His human nature. Hence she ought to receive from Christ a greater fulness of grace than any other." With the sanction of Breviary and Missal we accommodate to Mary passages from the Canticle of Canticles.

**1.—THE NOBLE LINEAGE OF THE BLESSED VIRGIN.  
HER PARENTS. HER IMMACULATE CONCEPTION.  
HER NATIVITY. HER VIRGINITY. HER ESPOUSALS  
WITH ST. JOSEPH. PROPHECIES.**

<i>Mt</i> 1, 1-2,	The Book of the Generation of Jesus Christ the Son of David, the son of Abraham:—Abraham begot Isaac.—And Jacob begot Joseph the Husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus.	she will crush thy head, and thou shalt lie in wait for her heel. There shall come forth a rod out of the root of Jesse, and a flower shall rise up out of her root.	<i>Is</i> 11, 1
<i>Eci</i> 31, 8	Blessed is the man that is found without blemish, and that hath not gone after gold, nor put his trust in money nor in treasures ( <i>and on to verse 11</i> ).*	Thou art all fair, O my Love, and there is no spot in thee. As the lily among thorns, so is my love among the daughters.	<i>Ca</i> 4, 7 <i>Ca</i> 2, 2
<i>Pv</i> 31, 10	Who shall find a valiant woman? far and from the uttermost coasts is the price of her ( <i>and on to verse 31</i> ).†	O fairest among women!— O thou most beautiful among women!	<i>Ca</i> 1, 7 <i>Ca</i> 5, 9
<i>Ge</i> 3, 13-15	The Lord God said to the woman: Why hast thou done this? And she answered: The serpent deceived me, and I did eat.—And the Lord God said to the serpent:—I will put enmities between thee and the woman, and thy seed and her seed:	I will greatly rejoice in the Lord, and my soul shall be joyful in my God; for He hath clothed me with the garments of salvation; and with the robe of justice He hath covered me, and as a bride adorned with her jewels. Who is she that cometh	<i>Is</i> 61, 10 <i>Ca</i> 6, 9

\* See Epistle for the Feast of St. Joachim.

† See Epistle for the Feast of St. Anne.

- forth as the morning rising, fair as the moon, bright as the sun?
- Pv 8, 22* The Lord possessed me in the beginning of His ways before He made anything from the beginning (*to verse 35*). (*See Epistle for the Feasts of the Nativity and Immaculate Conception.*)
- Ca 4, 12* My sister, My spouse is a garden enclosed, a garden enclosed, a fountain sealed up.
- Ca 6, 8* My perfect one is but one, she is the only one of her mother, the chosen of her that bore her.
- Is 86, 1* The foundations thereof are in the Holy Mountains; the Lord loveth the gates of Sion above all the tabernacles of Jacob.
- W7, 25-26* No defiled thing cometh unto her. For she is the brightness of Eternal Light and the unspotted mirror of God's Majesty, and the image of His goodness. (*See Gradual for Feast of the Most Pure Heart of Mary.*)
- Ex 44, 2* This gate shall be shut, and no man shall pass through it, because the Lord the God of Israel hath entered in by it, and it shall be shut.
- The Lord Himself shall give you a sign: Behold, a Virgin shall conceive, and bear a Son, and His Name shall be called EMMANUEL.
- When His Mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with Child of the Holy Ghost.
- The Angel Gabriel was sent to a Virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph.
- Drop down dew, ye heavens, from above, and let the clouds rain the Just: let the earth be opened, and bud forth a Saviour.
- The Lord hath created a New Thing upon the earth: A WOMAN SHALL COM-PASS A MAN.
- Behold, a Virgin shall be with Child, and bring forth a Son, and they shall call His Name Emmanuel (which being interpreted is, God with us).
- Is 7, 14*
- Mt 1, 18*
- Lu 1, 27*
- Is 45, 8*
- Jo 31, 22*
- Mt 1, 23*

2.—THE ANGEL GABRIEL ANNOUNCES TO HER THE INCARNATION. HER VISIT TO HER COUSIN ST. ELIZABETH. HER SONG OF PRAISE: THE "MAGNIFICAT."

- Lu 1, 26-38* In the sixth month, the Angel Gabriel was sent from God into a city of Galilee called Nazareth,—To a Virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, of the House of David; and the Virgin's name was Mary.—And the Angel being come in, said to her: Hail, full of grace: the Lord is with thee:
- Blessed art thou among women.—Who having heard, was troubled at his saying, and thought within herself what manner of salutation this should be.—And the Angel said to her: Fear not, Mary, for thou hast found grace with God.—Behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and shalt bring forth a Son; and thou

shalt call His Name Jesus.—He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Most High, and the Lord God shall give unto Him the Throne of David His Father; and He shall reign in the House of Jacob for ever.—And of His Kingdom there shall be no end. And Mary said to the Angel: How shall this be done? because I know not man.—And the Angel answering said to her: The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Most High shall overshadow thee. And therefore also the Holy [One] which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.—And behold, thy cousin Elizabeth, she also hath conceived a son in her old age; and this is the sixth month with her that is called barren:—Because no word shall be impossible with God.—And Mary said: Behold the handmaid of the Lord: be it done to me according to thy word. And the Angel departed from her.

*Mt* 1, 18-21 When His Mother Mary was espoused to Joseph before they came together, she was found with Child of the Holy Ghost. — Whereupon Joseph her husband, being a just man, and not willing publicly to expose her, was minded to put her away privately. — But while he thought on these things, behold an Angel of the Lord appeared to him in his sleep, saying: Joseph, son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife, for that which is conceived in her is

of the Holy Ghost.—And she shall bring forth a Son: and thou shalt call His Name Jesus. For He shall save His people from their sins.

Mary, rising up in those days, went into the hill-country with haste into a city of Juda.—And she entered into the house of Zachary, and saluted Elizabeth.—And it came to pass that when Elizabeth heard the salutation of Mary, the Infant leaped in her womb. And Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Ghost,—And she cried out with a loud voice and said: Blessed art thou among women, and blessed is the Fruit of thy womb. And whence is this to me, that the Mother of my Lord should come to me? For behold, as soon as the voice of thy salutation sounded in my ears, the Infant in my womb leaped for joy. And blessed art thou that hast believed, because those things shall be accomplished that were spoken to thee by the Lord.

And Mary said: *Lk* 1, 46-55

- (1) My soul doth magnify the Lord,
- (2) And my spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour.
- (3) Because He hath regarded the humility of His handmaid: for behold, from henceforth all generations shall call me blessed.
- (4) Because He that is mighty hath done great things to me:



- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| <p>and Holy is His Name.</p> <p>(5) And His mercy is from generation unto generations, to them that fear Him.</p> <p>(6) He hath shown might in His arm: He hath scattered the proud in the conceit of their heart.</p> <p>(7) He hath put down the mighty from their seat, and hath exalted the humble.</p> <p>(8) He hath filled the hungry with good things, and the rich He hath sent empty away.</p> <p>(9) He hath received Israel His servant,</p> | <p>being mindful of His mercy.</p> <p>(10) As He spoke to our fathers, to Abraham and to his seed for ever.</p> <p>And Mary abode with her about three months, and she returned to her own house.</p> <p>Behold, He cometh leaping upon the mountains, skipping over the hills (<i>to verse 14</i>). (<i>See Epistle for Feast of the Visitation.</i>)</p> <p>When the fulness of the time was come, God sent His Son, made of a woman.</p> <p>He that made me rested in my tabernacle.</p> <p>By me His handmaid He hath fulfilled His mercy which He promised to the House of Israel.</p> | <p><i>Lu</i> 1, 53</p> <p><i>Ca</i> 2, 8</p> <p><i>Ga</i> 4, 4</p> <p><i>Eci</i> 24, 12</p> <p><i>Jg</i> 13, 18</p> |
|---|---|---|

### 3.—HER JOURNEY TO BETHLEHEM. THE BIRTH OF HER DIVINE SON. THE VISIT OF THE ANGELS AND THE SHEPHERDS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><i>Lu</i> 2, 4-5 Joseph went up from Galilee out of the city of Nazareth into Judea, to the city of David which is called Bethlehem, because he was of the House and family of David.—To be enrolled with Mary his espoused wife, who was with Child.</p> <p><i>Lu</i> 3, 6-7 And it came to pass that when they were there, her days were accomplished that she should be delivered.—And she brought forth her First-born Son, and wrapped Him up in swaddling clothes, and laid Him in a manger, because there was no room for them in the Inn.</p> <p><i>Lu</i> 2, 8-18 And there were in the same country shepherds</p> | <p>watching and keeping the night - watches over their flock.—And behold, an Angel of the Lord stood by them, and the Brightness of God shone round about them, and they feared with a great fear.—And the Angel said to them: Fear not: for behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, that shall be to all the people:—For this day is born to you a Saviour, Who is Christ the Lord, in the city of David.—And this shall be a sign unto you: you shall find the Infant wrapped in swaddling clothes, and laid in a manger.—And suddenly there was with the Angel a multitude of the</p> |
|--|---|

Heavenly Army, praising God and saying:—**GLORY TO GOD IN THE HIGH-EST: AND ON EARTH PEACE TO MEN OF GOOD WILL.**—And it came to pass, after the Angels departed from them into Heaven, the shepherds said one to another: Let us go over to Bethlehem, and let us see this Word that is come to pass, which the Lord hath showed to us. — And they came with haste, and they found Mary and Joseph, and the Infant lying in the manger. — And seeing, they understood the Word that had been spoken concerning this Child. — And all that heard wondered, and at those things that were told them by the shepherds. *Thou art He that hast drawn Me out of the womb.* *Ps 21,*

**4.—PRESENTATION OF HER SON IN THE TEMPLE.  
SIMEON'S PROPHECY. HER SORROW FORETOLD.  
HER SACRIFICE OF PURIFICATION. HER JOUR-  
NEY TO NAZARETH.**

*Lu 2, 22-28* After the days of her purification according to the Law of Moses were accomplished, they carried Him to Jerusalem, to present Him to the Lord.—As it is written in the Law of the Lord: Every male opening the womb shall be called holy to the Lord. — And to offer a sacrifice according as it is written in the Law of the Lord, a pair of turtle-doves or two young pigeons.—And behold, there was a man in Jerusalem named Simeon, and this man was just and devout, waiting for the Consolation of Israel, and the Holy Ghost was in him.—And he had received an answer from the Holy Ghost, that he should not see death before he had seen the Christ of the Lord.—And he came by the Spirit into the Temple. And when His parents brought in the Child Jesus to do for Him according to the custom of the Law,—He also took Him into his arms, and blessed God, and said:

(1) Now Thou dost dismiss Thy servant, O Lord, according to Thy Word, in peace. *Lu 2, 2-32*

(2) Because my eyes have seen Thy Salvation,

(3) Which Thou hast prepared before the face of all people:

(4) A Light to the revelation of the Gentiles, and the Glory of Thy people Israel.

And His Father and Mother were wondering at these things which were spoken concerning Him.—And Simeon blessed them, and said to Mary His Mother: Behold, this Child is set for the fall and for the resurrection of many in Israel, and for a sign which shall be contracted.—And thy own soul a sword shall pierce, that out of many hearts thoughts may be revealed. *Lu 2, 22-35*

- Lu 2, 39* After they had performed all things according to the Law of the Lord, they returned into Galilee, into their City Nazareth. *P 83, 5*
- P 26, 4-5* One thing I have asked of the Lord, this will I seek after: that I may dwell in the House of the Lord all the days of my life:—That I may see the delight of the Lord, and visit His Temple. Blessed are they that dwell in Thy House, O Lord: they shall praise Thee for ever and ever. *P 83, 2*
- How lovely are Thy Tabernacles, O Lord of Hosts! My soul longeth and fainteth for the Courts of the Lord.

**5.—(HER RETURN TO BETHLEHEM.) THE VISIT OF THE WISE MEN. HER FLIGHT FROM HEROD BY NIGHT INTO EGYPT. HER RETURN OUT OF EGYPT TO NAZARETH. HER JOURNEY TO JERUSALEM FOR THE PASCH. LOSS AND FINDING OF HER SON. HER WONDERMENT AT HIS TEACHING.**

- Mt 2, 9-11* Behold, the Star which they [the Magi] had seen in the East went before them, until it came and stood over where the Child was.—And seeing the Star, they rejoiced with exceeding great joy.—And entering into the House, they found the Child with Mary His Mother; and falling down, they adored Him; and opening their treasures, they offered Him gifts: gold, frankincense, and myrrh. *Mt 2, 19-22*
- Mt 2, 13-15* After they [the Magi] were departed, behold an Angel of the Lord appeared in sleep to Joseph, saying: Arise, and take the Child and His Mother, and fly into Egypt, and be there until I shall tell thee. For it will come to pass that Herod will seek the Child to destroy Him.—Who arose, and took the Child and His Mother by night and retired into Egypt: and he was there until the death of Herod:—That it might be fulfilled which the Lord spoke by the Prophet [Osee], saying: Out of Egypt have I called My Son. But when Herod was dead, behold an Angel of the Lord appeared in sleep to Joseph in Egypt,—Saying: Arise, and take the Child and His Mother, and go into the land of Israel: for they are dead that sought the life of the Child.—Who arose, and took the Child and His Mother and came into the land of Israel.—But hearing that Archelaus reigned in Juda in the room of Herod his father, he was afraid to go thither; and being warned in sleep, retired into the quarters of Galilee. And coming, he dwelt in a City called Nazareth. His parents went every year to Jerusalem, at the solemn day of the Pasch.—And when He was twelve years old, they going up into *Mt 2, 2: Lu 2, 41-50*

Jerusalem according to the custom of the Feast,—And having fulfilled the days, when they returned, the Child Jesus remained in Jerusalem; and His parents knew it not.—And thinking that He was in the company, they came a day's journey, and sought Him among their kinsfolks and acquaintance.—And not finding Him, they returned into Jerusalem, seeking Him.—And it came to pass, that after three days they found Him in the Temple, sitting in the midst of the doctors, hearing them and asking them questions.—And all that heard Him were astonished at His Wisdom and His answers.—And seeing Him, they wondered.

And His Mother said to Him Son, why hast Thou done so to us? Behold, Thy Father and I have sought Thee sorrowing. And He said to them: How is it that you sought Me? Did you not know that I must be about My Father's Business? And they understood not the Word that He spoke unto them.

And He went down with them, and came to Nazareth, and was subject to them.

And His Mother kept all these words in her heart.

Mary kept all these words, pondering them in her heart.

His Father and Mother were wondering at these things which were spoken concerning Him.

Lu 2, 5.

Lu 2, 51

Lu 2, 19

Lu 2, 53

**6.—HER POWER WITH HER SON AT CANA OF GALILEE. HER GOING WITH HIM TO CAPHARNAUM. HER VISIT TO HIM WHEN PREACHING IN GALILEE. HER PRAISES PROCLAIMED.**

**Jn 2, 1-11** There was a marriage of Cana of Galilee; and the Mother of Jesus was there.—And Jesus also was invited, and His disciples, to the marriage.—And the wine failing, the Mother of Jesus saith to Him: They have no wine.—And Jesus said to her: Woman, what is it to Me and to thee? My hour is not yet come.—His Mother saith to the waiters: Whatsoever He shall say to you, do ye.—Now there were set there six water-pots of stone, according to the manner of the purifying of the Jews, containing two or three measures apiece.—Jesus saith to them: Fill the water-pots with water. And they filled them up to the brim.—And Jesus saith to them: Draw out now and carry to the chief steward of the Feast: and they carried it.—And when the chief steward had tasted the water made wine, and knew not whence it was (but the waiters knew who had drawn the water), the chief steward calleth the bridegroom.—And saith to him: Every man at first setteth forth good wine, and when men have well drunk, then that which is worse: but thou hast kept the good wine until now.—This begin-

ning of miracles did Jesus in Cana of Galilee; and He manifested His glory, and His disciples believed in Him.

*Jn 2, 12* After this He went down to Capharnaum, He and His Mother. As He was yet speaking to the multitudes, behold His Mother and His brethren stood without, seeking to speak to Him.—And one of them said to Him: Behold, Thy Mother and Thy brethren stand without, seeking Thee. *Mt 12, 46-47*

*Lk 11, 27-28* And it came to pass as He spoke these things, a certain woman from the crowd, lifting up her voice, said to Him: Blessed is the womb that bore thee, and the breasts that gave Thee suck.

**7.—SHE STANDS BY THE CROSS. JESUS COMMENDS HER TO ST. JOHN, WHO TAKES HER TO HIS HOME. HER SORROWS. HER PRAYER WITH THE DISCIPLES IN THE UPPER CHAMBER AT PENTECOST. HER GLORY IN HEAVEN.**

*Jn 19, 25-27* There stood by the Cross of Jesus, His Mother, and His Mother's sister, Mary of Cleophas, and Mary Magdalene.—When Jesus therefore had seen His Mother and the disciple standing whom He loved, He saith to His Mother: Woman, behold thy son. —After that, He saith to the disciple: Behold thy Mother. And from that hour the disciple took her to his own. with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and on her head a Crown of twelve stars. Who is she that cometh forth as the morning rising, fair as the moon, bright as the sun, terrible as an army set in array? *Ca 6, 9*

*La 1, 12* O all ye that pass by the way, attend, and see if there be any sorrow like to my sorrow! So was I established in Sion, and in the Holy City likewise I rested, and my power was in Jerusalem;—And I took root in an honourable people, and in the portion of my God His inheritance, and my abode is in the full assembly of the Saints. *Eci 24, 15-16*

*La 1, 2* Weeping, she hath wept in the night, and her tears are on her cheeks. The Queen stood on Thy right hand in gilded clothing, surrounded with variety. *Ps 44, 11*

*Ac 1, 14* The Apostles were persevering with one mind in prayer with the women, and with Mary the Mother of Jesus, and with His brethren. I am exalted like a cedar in Libanus, and as a cypress-tree on Mount Sion. *Eci 24, 17*

*Ap 12, 1* A great sign appeared in heaven: A Woman clothed My Abode is in the full assembly of Saints. Behold, my Beloved speaketh to me: Arise, make haste, *Eci 24, 16* *Ca 2, 10*

My love, My dove, My beautiful one, and come (to verse 14). (*See Epistle for Feast of her Purity.*)

*Eci* 24, 11 In all these I sought rest, and I shall abide in the

Inheritance of the Lord (to verse 20). (*See Epistle for Feasts of the Assumption, Holy House of Loreto, and Humility of the B.V.M.*)

**8.—HER CHARACTERISTICS AND VIRTUES—VIZ. HER FAITH, HOPE, AND CHARITY. HER CONFORMITY TO GOD'S WILL. HER LOVE OF HER NEIGHBOUR. HER GIFT OF PRAYER. HER PURITY, HER OBEDIENCE, HER FORTITUDE AND HUMILITY.**

*Lx* 1, 45 Blessed art thou that hast believed.

*Eci* 24, 24 I am the Mother of holy Hope.

*Eci* 24, 24 I am the Mother of fair Love.

*Ca* 8, 6-7 Put Me as a seal upon thy heart, as a seal upon thy arm; for love is strong as death, jealousy as hard as hell, the lamps thereof are fire and flames.—Many waters cannot quench Charity, neither can the floods drown it: if a man should give all the substance of his house for love, he shall despise it as nothing. (*See Epistle for Feast of the Most Pure Heart of Mary.*)

*Eci* 24, 23 As the Vine I have brought forth a pleasant odour: and my flowers are the fruit of honour and riches (to verse 31). (*See Epistle for Feasts of Mount Carmel, Good Counsel, Maternity, and Holy Name of Mary.*)

*Jd* 15, 11 Thou hast done manfully, and thy heart has been strengthened: therefore also the hand of the Lord hath strengthened thee, and therefore thou shalt be blessed for ever.

Grace is poured abroad in thy lips: therefore hath God blessed thee for ever. *Ps* 44, 3

The Lord hath blessed thee by His power, because by thee He hath brought our enemies to naught. *Jd* 13, 22

Blessed art thou, O daughter, by the Lord the Most High God, above all women upon the earth. *Jd* 13, 23

He hath so magnified thy name this day that thy praise shall not depart out of the mouth of men, who shall be mindful of the power of the Lord for ever; for that thou hast not spared thy life by reason of the distress and tribulation of thy people, but hast prevented our ruin in the Presence of God. *Jd* 13, 25

Mary hath chosen the best part, which shall not be taken from her. (*See Gospel for Feast of the Assumption.*) *Lx* 10, 42

Mary rising up in those days went into the hill-country with haste, into a city of Juda,—And she entered into the house of Zachary, and saluted Elizabeth. *Lx* 1, 39-40

The wine failing, the Mother of Jesus saith to *Jn* 2, 3

- Him : They have no wine.
- Lu 2, 41* His parents went every year to Jerusalem, at the solemn day of the Pasch.
- Lu 2, 4* Joseph went up to Bethlehem, to be enrolled with Mary.
- Lu 2, 48* Behold, I have sought Thee sorrowing.
- Lu 2, 22* After the days of Mary's purification according to the law of Moses were accomplished, they carried Jesus to Jerusalem, to present Him to the Lord.
- Lu 1, 46* My soul doth magnify the Lord.
- Ca 6, 3* Thou art beautiful, O My love, sweet and comely as Jerusalem : terrible as an army set in array.
- Ps 17, 33* God hath girt me with strength, and made my way blameless.
- Jd 15, 10* Thou art the glory of Jerusalem, thou art the joy of Israel, thou art the honour of our people.
- Blessed art thou, O daughter, by the Lord the Most High God, above all women of the earth.
- Many daughters have gathered together riches ; thou hast surpassed them all.
- Behold the handmaid of the Lord : be it done to me according to Thy Word.
- A great sign appeared in heaven : a Woman clothed with the sun.
- On her head was a crown of twelve stars.
- I am the Mother of fear and of knowledge.
- All the glory of the King's daughter is within, in golden borders clothed around about with varieties.
- Jd 13, 23*
- Po 31, 29*
- Lu 1, 38*
- Ap 12, 1*
- Ap 12, 1*
- Eci 24, 24*
- Ps 44, 15-*
- 17

### 9.—PROPHETIC TYPES AND FIGURES, ETC., OF THE BLESSED VIRGIN.

#### 1.—IN THE OLD TESTAMENT.

- Ge 3, 20* 1. The Second Eve.
- Ge 3, 20* 2. Mother of all the Living.
- Ge 3, 15* 3. The Woman that crushed the Serpent's head.
- Ge 29, 17* 4. Rachel, Mother of Joseph.
- Ex 3, 2* 5. The Burning Bush.
- Nu 10, 33* 6. The Ark of the Covenant.
- Nu 24, 17* 7. The Star of Jacob.
- Nu 17, 8* 8. The Blooming of Aaron's Rod.
- Jg 6, 37* 9. Gideon's Fleece.
- Jg 4, 4* 10. Deborah the Prophetess.
- Jg 4, 21* 11. Jahel.
- Ju 11, 37* 12. The Daughter of Jepté the Galaadite.
13. Ruth the Moabite. *Ru 1, 4*
14. Anna, the Mother of Samuel (her Canticle). *1 K 1, 20*
15. The Ivory Throne of Solomon. *2 K 10, 18*
16. Vessel of Gold. *2 K 10, 25*
17. The Glory of Jerusalem. *Jd 15, 10*
18. Judith (her Canticle). *Jd 16, 1*
19. Edissa or Esther. *Es 2, 7*
20. Set up from Eternity. *Po 8, 23*
21. The Valiant Woman. *Po 31, 10*
22. Surpassing all the daughters of men. *Po 31, 29*
23. The Unspotted Mirror. *W 7, 26*
24. The Morning Star in the midst of a cloud. *Eci 50, 6*
25. Cedar of Libanus. *Eci 24, 17*
26. Palm-tree of Cades. *Eci 24, 13*
27. The First-born before all creatures. *Eci 24, 6*

<i>Ca</i> 2, 1	28. The Flower of the Field.	2.—IN THE NEW TESTAMENT.	
<i>Ca</i> 2, 1	29. The Lily of the Valleys.	1. Born of the Race of David.	<i>Mt</i> 1, 1
<i>Ca</i> 2, 2	30. The Lily among thorns.	2. Espoused to St. Joseph.	<i>Mt</i> 1, 8
<i>Ca</i> 4, 11	31. The Honeycomb.	3. Saluted by an Angel.	<i>Lu</i> 1, 26
<i>Ca</i> 4, 12	32. The Garden enclosed.	4. Visited by the Shepherds.	<i>Lu</i> 2, 16
<i>Ca</i> 4, 12	33. A Fountain sealed up.	5. Visited by the Wise Men.	<i>Mt</i> 2, 11
<i>Ca</i> 4, 15	34. The Well of living Waters.	6. Her Flight into Egypt.	<i>Mt</i> 2, 13
<i>Ca</i> 6, 9	35. The Morning Rising.	7. Her inviolable Virginity.	<i>Lu</i> 1, 34
<i>Ca</i> 6, 9	36. Bright as the Sun.	8. Handmaid of the Lord.	<i>Lu</i> 1, 38
<i>Ca</i> 6, 9	37. Terrible as an Army set in array.	9. Full of Grace.	<i>Lu</i> 1, 28
<i>Ca</i> 7, 4	38. Tower of Ivory.	10. Blessed among women.	<i>Lu</i> 1, 28
<i>Is</i> 7, 14	39. Foretold by the Prophets.	11. Overshadowed by the Holy Ghost.	<i>Lu</i> 1, 35
<i>Is</i> 45, 8	40. The Earth that budded forth a Saviour.	12. The Mother of the Lord.	<i>Lu</i> 1, 43
<i>Is</i> 31, 22	41. The Woman that compassed a Man.	13. Called "Blessed" by all generations.	<i>Lu</i> 1, 48
<i>Ex</i> 44, 2	42. The Gate passed through by the Prince alone.	14. Mother of Sorrows.	<i>Lu</i> 2, 35
<i>Da</i> 2, 34	43. The Stone cut out of a mountain without hands.	15. Vessel of Honour.	<i>Ro</i> 9, 21
<i>2 M</i> 7, 1	44. The Mother of the Machabees.	16. The Woman clothed with the Sun.	<i>Ap</i> 12, 1
		17. The Tabernacle of God with men.	<i>Ap</i> 21, 3

## 10.—THE SEVEN SORROWS OF THE BLESSED VIRGIN.

	1.—THE PROPHECY OF HOLY SIMEON.	and be there until I shall tell thee: for it will come to pass that Herod will seek the Child to destroy Him.—Who arose, and took the Child and His Mother by night, and retired into Egypt: and he was there until the death of Herod.	
<i>Lu</i> 2, 34-35	Simeon blessed them, and said to Mary His Mother: Behold, this Child is set for the fall and for the resurrection of many in Israel, and a sign which shall be contradicted:—And thy own soul a sword shall pierce, that out of many hearts thoughts may be revealed.		
	2.—THE FLIGHT INTO EGYPT.	3.—THE LOSING OF THE CHILD JESUS.	
<i>Mt</i> 2, 13-14	Behold, an Angel of the Lord appeared in sleep to Joseph, saying: Arise, and take the Child and His Mother, and fly into Egypt,	They came a day's journey, and sought Him among their kinsfolks and acquaintance.—And not finding Him, they returned to Jerusalem seeking Him. ( <i>See above, section 5.</i> )	<i>Lu</i> 2, 44-45



4.—THE MEETING OF JESUS  
CARRYING THE CROSS.

*Jn* 19, 17-  
18 Bearing His own Cross,  
He went forth to that place  
which is called Calvary,  
but in Hebrew Golgotha.—  
Where they crucified Him,  
and with Him two others, one  
on each side, and Jesus in the  
midst.

*Is* 1, 6 From the sole of the Foot  
unto the top of the Head  
there is no soundness therein:  
wounds and bruises and  
swelling sores: they are not  
bound up, nor dressed, nor  
fomented with oil.

5. — THE WITNESSING THE  
SUFFERINGS AND DEATH  
OF HER DIVINE SON.

*Jn* 19, 25-  
27 There stood by the Cross  
of Jesus His Mother.—When  
Jesus therefore had seen His  
Mother and the disciple  
standing whom He loved, He  
saith to His Mother: Woman,  
behold thy son.—After that  
He saith to the disciple:  
Behold thy Mother. And  
from that hour the disciple  
took her to his own.

6. — THE TAKING DOWN OF  
HER DEAD SON FROM THE  
CROSS.

When it was evening there *Mt* 27, 57-  
came a certain rich man of 59  
Arimathea, named Joseph,  
who also himself was a disciple  
of Jesus.—He went to Pilate,  
and asked the Body of Jesus.  
Then Pilate commanded that  
the Body should be delivered.  
—And Joseph taking the  
Body, wrapped it up in a  
clean linen cloth.

7. — JESUS IS LAID IN THE  
SEPULCHRE.

They took the Body of *Jn* 19, 40  
Jesus, and bound It in linen 42  
cloths with the spices, as the  
manner of the Jews is to  
bury.—Now there was in the  
place where He was crucified  
a garden, and in the garden  
a new sepulchre, wherein no  
man yet had been laid.—  
There therefore, because of  
the Parasceve of the Jews,  
they laid Jesus, because the  
Sepulchre was nigh at  
hand.

## 11.—THE ROSARY OF THE BLESSED VIRGIN.

I. *The Joyful Mysteries*1.—THE INCARNATION OF  
OUR LORD.

*Jn* 1, 14 The Word was made flesh,  
and dwelt among us. (*See*  
*above, section 2.*)

## 2.—THE VISITATION.

*Lk* 1, 39-  
40 Mary rising up in those  
days went into the hill-coun-  
try with haste, into a city of  
Juda.—And she entered into  
the house of Zachary, and  
saluted Elizabeth. (*See*  
*above, section 2.*)

3.—THE NATIVITY OF OUR  
LORD.

She brought forth her *Lk* 2, 7  
First-born Son, and wrapped  
Him up in swaddling clothes,  
and laid Him in a manger.  
(*See above, section 3.*)

4 — THE PRESENTATION OF  
OUR LORD IN THE TEM-  
PLE.

After the days of her Puri- *Lk* 2, 22  
fication according to the Law  
of Moses were accomplished,  
they carried Him to Jeru-  
salem, to present Him to the  
Lord. (*See above, section 4.*)

### 5.—THE FINDING OF OUR LORD IN THE TEMPLE.

*Lu* 2, 46

It came to pass that after three days they found Him in the Temple, sitting in the midst of the doctors, hearing them and asking them questions. (*See above, section 5.*)

## II. The Sorrowful Mysteries.

### 1.—THE AGONY IN THE GARDEN.

*Lu* 22, 39, 41-44

Going out, He went according to His custom to the Mount of Olives.—And kneeling down, He prayed,—Saying: Father, if Thou wilt, remove this chalice from Me: but yet not My will but Thine be done.—And there appeared to Him an Angel from Heaven strengthening Him. And being in an agony, He prayed the longer.—And His sweat became as drops of Blood trickling down upon the ground.

### 2.—THE SCOURGING AT THE PILLAR.

*Jn* 19, 1

Then Pilate took Jesus and scourged Him.

*La* 1, 12

O all ye that pass by the way, attend and see if there be any sorrow like to My sorrow.

### 3.—THE CROWNING WITH THORNS.

*In* 19, 1-5

The soldiers plattig a Crown of Thorns, put it upon His Head, and they put on Him a purple garment.—And they came to Him and said: Hail, King of the Jews. And they gave Him blows.—Pilate therefore went forth again, and saith to them: Behold, I

bring Him forth unto you that you may know that I find no cause in Him.—(Jesus therefore came forth bearing the Crown of Thorns and the purple garment.) And he saith to them: Behold the Man.

Go forth, ye daughters of Sion, and see King Solomon in the diadem wherewith His mother crowned Him. *Ca* 3, 11

From the sole of the Foot unto the top of the Head there is no soundness therein: wounds and bruises and swelling sores: they are not bound up, nor dressed, nor fomented with oil. *Is* 1, 6

### 4.—THE CARRYING OF THE CROSS.

They took Jesus and led Him forth.—And bearing His own Cross, He went forth to that place which is called Calvary, but in Hebrew Golgotha. *Jn* 19, 16-17

And there followed Him a great multitude of people, and of women who bewailed and lamented Him.—But Jesus turning to them, said: Daughters of Jerusalem, weep not over Me, but for yourselves and for your children. *Lu* 23, 27-28

If any man will come after Me, let him deny himself and take up his cross daily and follow Me. *Lu* 9, 23

God forbid that I should glory, save in the Cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by Whom the world is crucified to me, and I to the world. *Ca* 6, 14

### 5.—THE CRUCIFIXION OF OUR LORD.

Pilate spoke again to them, desiring to release Jesus.— *Lu* 23, 20-21

- But they cried again, saying :  
Crucify Him, crucify Him.
- Mt* 27, 26 Pilate delivered Him unto them to be crucified.
- Jn* 19, 17-18 They took Jesus and led Him forth to that place which is called Calvary, —Where they crucified Him.
- Jn* 19, 30 Jesus bowing His Head, gave up the ghost.
- Ga* 5, 24 They that are Christ's have crucified their flesh with the vices and concupiscences.
- Ga* 2, 19 With Christ I am nailed to the Cross.

Paraclete, that He may abide with you for ever : — The Spirit of Truth, whom the world cannot receive.

It is expedient to you that I go; for if I go not, the Paraclete will not come to you: but if I go, I will send Him to you.—He will teach you all Truth.

When the days of the Pentecost were accomplished, they were all together in one place.—And suddenly there came a sound from Heaven, as of a mighty wind coming, and it filled the whole house where they were sitting.—And there appeared to them parted tongues, as it were of fire, and it sat upon every one of them : — And they were filled with the Holy Ghost; and they began to speak with divers tongues, according as the Holy Ghost gave them to speak.

### III.—The Glorious Mysteries.

#### 1.—THE RESURRECTION OF OUR LORD.

- Mt* 28, 5-6 The Angel said to the women: Fear not you: for I know that you seek Jesus, Who was crucified.—He is not here, for He is risen, as He said. (*See above, Part 3, section 20.*)
- Ct* 12, 12 You are buried with Him in Baptism, in Whom also you are risen again by the faith of the operation of God.
- Ct* 13, 1 If you be risen with Christ, seek the things that are above.
- 2.—THE ASCENSION OF OUR LORD.
- Lu* 24, 50-51 He led them out as far as Bethania, and lifting up His Hands He blessed them.—And whilst He blessed them He departed from them, and was carried up into Heaven. (*See above, Part 3, section 21.*)

#### 3.—THE DESCENT OF THE HOLY GHOST.

- Jn* 14, 16-17 I will ask the Father, and He shall give you another

#### 4.—THE ASSUMPTION OF THE BLESSED VIRGIN.

A Throne was set for the King's Mother, and she sat on His right hand.

In the Holy City I rested, and My power was in Jerusalem.—And I took root in an honourable people, and My abode is in the full assembly of the Saints. (*See above, section 7.*)

#### 5.—HER CORONATION.

Thou art all fair, O my Love, and there is no spot in thee. Come from Libanus, my Spouse, come from Libanus, come: Thou shalt be crowned from the top of Amana.

Ap 12, 1 A great sign appeared in Heaven: a Woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and on her head a crown of twelve stars. (See above, section 7.)

---

### LIFE OF ST. JOSEPH, PATRON OF THE UNIVERSAL CHURCH.

“As God appointed Joseph, son of the Patriarch Jacob, over all the land of Egypt, to store up corn for the people, so when the fulness of time was come, and He was about to send on earth His Only-Begotten Son, the Saviour of the World, He chose another Joseph, of whom the first Joseph had been the type, and made him Lord and Ruler of His household and possession, and Guardian of His greatest treasures. And Joseph espoused the Immaculate Virgin Mary, of whom was born by the Holy Ghost Jesus Christ our Lord, Who deigned to be reputed before men the Son of Joseph, and was subject to him. Our Lord, indeed, Whom so many kings and prophets desired to see, Joseph not only saw, but abode with, and embraced with paternal affection, and kissed—yea, and most sedulously nurtured—Him Whom the faithful should receive as the Bread come down from Heaven that they might have Eternal Life. On account of this sublime dignity which God conferred on His most faithful Servant, the Church has always most highly honoured and lauded the Most Blessed Joseph next after his Spouse the Virgin-Mother of God, and has implored his intercession in all her great necessities.” \*

---

\* From the Decree of Pius IX. in 1870, declaring St. Joseph Patron of the Universal Church.

## 1.—ST. JOSEPH.

1.—ROYAL PEDIGREE OF ST. JOSEPH. HUSBAND OF MARY. FATHER OF JESUS. HIS TRIAL. HIS VISION OF AN ANGEL. CONSOLED BY HIS ANGELIC MESSAGE.

*Mt* 1, 1-2, 15-16 The Book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the Son of David, the son of Abraham.—Abraham begot Isaac.—And Mathan begot Jacob.—And Jacob begot Joseph, the Husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, Who is called Christ.

*Mt* 1, 24 And Joseph, rising up from sleep, did as the Angel of the Lord had commanded him, and took unto him his wife.

*Lu* 1, 26-27 The Angel Gabriel was sent from God—To a Virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, of the House of David.

*Mt* 1, 18 When His Mother was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with Child of the Holy Ghost.

*Mt* 1, 19 Whereupon Joseph her husband, being a just man, and not willing publicly to expose her, was minded to put her away privately.

*Mt* 1, 20 But while he thought on these things, behold the Angel of the Lord appeared to him in his sleep, saying: Joseph, son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife, for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost.

*Lu* 4, 22 They wondered at the words of grace that proceeded from His mouth, and they said; Is not This the Son of Joseph?

Philip findeth Nathanael, *Jn* 1, 45 and saith to him: We have found Him of Whom Moses in the Law and the Prophets did write, Jesus the Son of Joseph of Nazareth.

2.—HIS JOURNEY TO BETHLEHEM FOR ENROLMENT. THE BIRTH OF HIS SON JESUS. THE SHEPHERDS' VISIT. HIS PRESENTATION OF JESUS IN THE TEMPLE. HIS WONDERMENT AT SIMEON'S PROPHECY. HIS RETURN TO NAZARETH. HIS HIDDEN LIFE.

Joseph also went up from Galilee out of the City of Nazareth into Judea, to the City of David which is called Bethlehem, because he was of the House and Family of David,—To be enrolled with Mary his espoused wife, who was with Child.—And it came to pass that when they were there her days were accomplished that she should be delivered.

They came with haste, and they found Mary and Joseph, and the Infant lying in the manger. *Lu* 2, 16

After the days of her purification according to the law of Moses were accomplished, they carried Him to Jerusalem, to present Him to the Lord. *Lu* 2, 22

When His Parents brought in the Child Jesus, to do for Him according to the custom of the Law,—He [Simeon] also took Him into his arms, and blessed God, and said: Now Thou dost *Lu* 2, 29, 33

dismiss Thy servant, O Lord, according to Thy word, in peace; &c.—And His Father and Mother were wondering at these things which were spoken concerning Him.

*Lu 2, 39*

After they had performed all things according to the Law of the Lord they returned into Galilee, into their city Nazareth.

**3.—AS HEAD OF THE HOLY FAMILY, HE IS WARNED BY AN ANGEL TO FLY INTO EGYPT AWAY FROM HEROD. SORROWS OF EXILE. AN ANGEL BIDS HIM TO RETURN INTO THE LAND OF ISRAEL. HIS JOURNEY TO NAZARETH. HIS GOING UP TO JERUSALEM FOR THE PASCH. THE LOSS OF JESUS. HIS BOWROW. HIS UNWEARYING SEARCH. HIS JOY IN FINDING HIM IN THE TEMPLE.**

*Mt 2, 13-*

14

After they were departed, behold an Angel of the Lord appeared in sleep to Joseph, saying: Arise, and take the Child and His Mother, and fly into Egypt, and be there until I shall tell thee. For it will come to pass that Herod will seek the Child to destroy Him. — Who arose, and took the Child and His Mother by night, and retired into Egypt.

*Mt 2, 19-*

23

When Herod was dead, behold an Angel of the Lord appeared in sleep to Joseph in Egypt, — Saying: Arise, and take the Child and His Mother, and go into the land of Israel. For they are dead that sought the life of the

Child.—Who arose, and took the Child and His Mother, and came into the land of Israel. — But hearing that Archelaus reigned in Judea in the room of Herod his father, he was afraid to go thither: and being warned in sleep, retired into the quarters of Galilee.—And coming, he dwelt in a city called Nazareth.

His Parents went every *Lu 2, 41-*  
year to Jerusalem at the solemn day of the Pasch.—And 45

when He was twelve years old, they going up to Jerusalem according to the custom of the Feast,—And having fulfilled the days, when they returned the Child Jesus remained in Jerusalem; and His Parents knew it not. —And thinking that He was in the company, they came a day's journey, and sought Him among their kinsfolks and acquaintance.—And not finding Him, they returned into Jerusalem, seeking Him.

And it came to pass that *Lu 2, 46-*  
after three days they found 48

Him in the Temple, sitting in the midst of the doctors, hearing them and asking them questions.—And all that heard Him were astonished at His wisdom and His answers.—And seeing Him, they wondered. And His Mother said to Him: Son, why hast Thou done so to us? Behold, Thy Father and I have sought Thee sorrowing (*to verse 50. See above, section 5.*)

**4.—HIS EMPLOYMENT. HIS CHARACTERISTICS AND HIS**

VIRTUES. SACRED TEXTS  
ACCOMMODATED TO HIM  
BY THE CHURCH. HIS  
GLORY.

- Mt 13, 54-55** He taught them in their Synagogues, so that they wondered and said: How came this Man by this wisdom and these mighty works? — Is not This the Carpenter's Son?
- Mt 6, 41-42** The Jews murmured at Him because He had said: I am the Living Bread which came down from Heaven. — And they said: Is not This Jesus the Son of Joseph, whose Father and Mother we know? How then saith He, I came down from Heaven?
- Mt 1, 19** Joseph her husband being A JUST MAN.
- Lu 1, 41** His Parents went every year to Jerusalem at the solemn day of the Pasch.
- Lu 2, 48** Behold, Thy Father and I have sought Thee sorrowing.
- Ps 91, 13-14** The just shall flourish like the palm-tree. He shall grow up like the cedar of Libanus. — They that are planted in the House of the Lord shall flourish in the Courts of the House of our God.
- Ps 147, 12-13** Praise the Lord, O Jerusalem, because He hath strengthened the bolts of thy gates, He hath blessed thy children within thee.
- Ps 111, 1-2** Blessed is the man that feareth the Lord: he shall delight exceedingly in His commandments. — His seed shall be mighty upon earth: the generation of the righteous shall be blessed.
- My truth and My mercy **Ps 88, 25** shall be with him: and in My Name shall his horn be exalted.
- The Lord is our Helper **Ps 32, 20-** and Protector. — For in Him **21** our heart shall rejoice: and in His Holy Name we have trusted.
- Thou that rulest Israel: **Ps 79, 2** Thou that leadest Joseph as a sheep.
- Israel shall spring as a **Os 14, 6** Lily, and his root shall shoot as that of Libanus.
- My Beloved feedeth among **Ca 2, 16** the Lilies.\*
- The young man shall dwell **Is 62, 5** with the Virgin. And the Bridegroom shall rejoice over the Bride. And thy God shall rejoice over thee.
- Beloved of God and men, **Eci 45, 1-6** whose memory is in benediction.
- He made him like the Saints in glory, and magnified him in the fear of his enemies, and with his words he made prodigies to cease.
- He glorified him in the sight of kings, and gave him commandments in the sight of his people, and showed him His glory.
- He sanctified him in his faith and meekness, and chose him out of all flesh.
- For He heard him and his voice, and brought him into a cloud.
- And He gave him commandments and a law of life and instruction. (*See Epistle for his Feast.*)
- The Lord made him **Eci 45, 9** blessed in glory. He clothed him with a robe of glory.

\* *I.e.* Mary and Joseph.

**Ps 20, 5-4** He asked life of Thee: him with blessings of sweet-  
and Thou hast given him: ness: Thou hast set on his  
length of days for ever and head A CROWN OF PRECIOUS  
ever.—Thou hast prevented STONES.

## 2.—JOSEPH, SON OF JACOB, TYPE OF ST. JOSEPH.

**1.—JOSEPH BELOVED BY GOD AND MAN. HIS FUTURE GREATNESS FORETOLD IN VISIONS.**

**Ge 37, 3** Israel loved Joseph above all his sons.

**Ge 37, 5-10** Now it fell out also that he told his brethren a dream that he had dreamed, which occasioned them to hate him the more.

And he said to them: Hear my dream which I dreamed.

I thought we were binding sheaves in the field: and my sheaf arose, as it were, and stood, and your sheaves standing about bowed down before my sheaf.

His brethren answered: Shalt thou be our king? or shall we be subject to thy dominion? Therefore this matter of his dreams and words ministered nourishment to their envy and hatred.

He dreamed also another dream, which he told his brethren, saying: I saw in a dream, as it were, the sun, and the moon, and eleven stars worshipping me.

And when he had told this to his father and brethren, his father rebuked him, and said: What meaneth this dream that thou hast dreamed? shall I and thy mother and thy brethren worship thee upon the earth?

**Ge 37, 27** He is our brother and our flesh.

**2.—HIS GOING INTO EGYPT. GOD PROSPERS HIM IN ALL THINGS. HIS ROYAL HONOURS AND PRIVILEGES. HIS PERSONAL APPEARANCE. HIS MARRIAGE.**

They led him into Egypt. **Ge 37, 2**  
And the Lord was with **Ge 39, 2**  
him; and he was a prosperous man in all things, and he dwelt in his master's house:

Who knew very well that the Lord was with him, and made all that he did to prosper in his hand.

And Joseph found favour in the sight of his master, and ministered to him: and being set over all by him, he governed the house committed to him, and all things that were delivered to him.

And the Lord blessed the house of the Egyptian for Joseph's sake, and multiplied all his substance, both at home and in the fields.

Neither knew he any other thing but the bread which he ate. And Joseph was of a beautiful countenance, and comely to behold.

The chief butler, when **Ge 40, 23**  
things prospered him, forgot his intercessor.

I awoke, and then fell **Ge 41, 21**  
asleep again, and dreamed a dream.

And he [Pharao] said to **Ge 41, 38-40**  
them: Can we find such another man, that is full of the Spirit of God?

He said therefore to Jo-



seph: Seeing God hath shown thee all that thou hast said, can I find one wiser and one like unto thee?

Thou shalt be over my house, and at the commandment of thy mouth all the people shall obey: only in the kingly throne will I be above thee.

*Ge 41, 41-45* And again Pharaoh said to Joseph: Behold, I have appointed thee over the whole land of Egypt.

And he took his ring from his own hand, and gave it into his hand: and he put upon him a robe of silk, and put a chain of gold about his neck.

And he made him go up into his second chariot, the crier proclaiming that all should bow their knees before him, and that they should know he was made governor over the whole land of Egypt.

And the king said to Joseph: I am Pharaoh; without thy commandment no man shall move hand or foot in all the land of Egypt.

And he turned his name, and called him in the Egyptian tongue the saviour of the world. And he gave him to wife Aseneth the daughter of Putiphare, the Priest of Heliopolis.

*Ge 41, 51* God hath made me to forget all my labours.

*Ge 41, 52* God hath made me to grow in the land of my poverty.

3. — HEAD OF THE ROYAL HOUSEHOLD. KEEPER AND DISPENSER OF THE BREAD OF LIFE.

*Ge 41, 55-56* And when there also they began to be famished, the

people cried to Pharaoh for food. And he said to them: Go to Joseph, and do all that he shall say to you.

And the famine increased daily in all the land: and Joseph opened all the barns, and sold to the Egyptians for the famine had oppressed them also.

Joseph was governor in the land of Egypt, and corn was sold by his direction to the people.

Though he knew his brethren, he was not known by them.

Do as I have said, and you shall live: for I fear God. *Ge 42, 18*

And bring your youngest brother to me, that I may find your words to be true, and you may not die. They did as he had said. *Ge 42, 20-24*

And they talked one to another: We deserve to suffer these things, because we have sinned against our brother, seeing the anguish of his soul when he besought us, and we would not hear: therefore is this affliction come upon us.

And Ruben, one of them, said: Did not I say to you: Do not sin against the boy: and you would not hear me? Behold, his blood is required.

And they knew not that Joseph understood, because he spoke to them by an interpreter.

And he turned himself away a little while, and wept: and returning, he spoke to them.

4. — JOSEPH'S TENDER LOVE OF HIS BRETHREN. HE REVEALS HIMSELF TO THEM.

HE FILLS THEM WITH BLESSINGS. THEIR LOVE AND DEVOTION TOWARDS HIM.

*Ge 43, 23* Peace be with you, fear not: your God and the God of your father hath given you treasure in your sacks.

*Ge 43, 28* Then Joseph came into his house; and they offered him the presents, holding them in their hands, and they bowed down with their faces to the ground.

*Ge 43, 28* Bowing themselves, they made obeisance to him.

*Ge 43, 29-31* And Joseph, lifting up his eyes, saw Benjamin his brother. And he said: God be gracious to thee, my son. —And he made haste because his heart was moved upon his brother, and tears gushed out; and going into his chamber, he wept.—And when he had washed his face, coming out again, he refrained himself, and said: Set bread on the table.

*Ge 44, 14* Juda, at the head of his brethren, went in to Joseph (for he was not yet gone out of the place); and they all together fell down before him on the ground.

*Ge 44, 15* Know you not that there is no one like me in the science of divining?

*Ge 45, 1-13* Joseph could no longer refrain himself before many that stood by: whereupon he commanded that all should go out, and no stranger be present at their knowing one another.

And he lifted up his voice with weeping, which the Egyptians and all the house of Pharaoh heard.

And he said to his bre-

thren: I am Joseph: is my father yet living? His brethren could not answer him, being struck with exceeding great fear.

And he said mildly to them: Come nearer to me. And when they were come near him, he said: I am Joseph your brother, whom you sold into Egypt.

Be not afraid, and let it not seem to you a hard case that you sold me into these countries: for God sent me before you into Egypt for your preservation.

For it is two years since the famine began to be upon the land, and five years more remain wherein there can be neither ploughing nor reaping.

And God sent me before, that you may be preserved upon the earth, and may have food to live.

Not by your counsel was I sent hither, but by the will of God, Who hath made me as it were a father to Pharaoh, and lord of his whole house, and governor in all the land of Egypt.

Make haste, and go ye up to my father, and say to him: Thus saith thy son Joseph: God hath made me lord of the whole land of Egypt: come down to me, linger not.

And thou shalt dwell in the land of Gessen: and thou shalt be near me, thou and thy sons, and thy sons' sons, thy sheep, and thy herds, and all things that thou hast.

And there I will feed thee (for there are yet five years of famine remaining), lest both thou perish, and thy

house, and all things that thou hast.

Behold, your eyes and the eyes of my brother Benjamin see that it is my mouth that speaketh to you.

You shall tell my father of all my glory, and all things that you have seen in Egypt: make haste and bring him to me.

Ge 45, 14-22 And falling upon the neck of his brother Benjamin, he embraced him and wept: and Benjamin, in like manner, wept also on his neck.

And Joseph kissed all his brethren, and wept upon every one of them: after which they were emboldened to speak to him.

And it was heard, and the fame was spread abroad in the king's court: The brethren of Joseph are come: and Pharaoh with all his family was glad.

And he spoke to Joseph that he should give orders to his brethren, saying: Load your beasts and go into the land of Chanaan.

And bring away from thence your father and kindred, and come to me, and I will give you all the good things of Egypt, that you may eat the marrow of the land.

Give orders also that they take wagons out of the land of Egypt, for the carriage of their children and their wives: and say: Take up your father, and make haste to come with all speed:

And leave nothing of your household-stuff; for all the riches of Egypt shall be yours.

And the sons of Israel did as they were bid. And Joseph gave them wagons according to Pharaoh's commandment, and provisions for the way.

He ordered also to be brought out for every one of them two robes: but to Benjamin he gave three hundred pieces of silver with five robes of the best.

So he sent away his brethren, and at their departing said to them: Be not angry in the way. Ge 45, 24-28

And they went up out of Egypt, and came into the land of Chanaan to their father Jacob.

And they told him, saying: Joseph thy son is living: and he is ruler in all the land of Egypt. Which when Jacob heard, he awaked as it were out of a deep sleep, yet did not believe them.

They, on the other side, told the whole order of the thing. And when he saw the wagons and all that he had sent, his spirit revived,

And he said: It is enough for me if Joseph my son be yet living: I will go and see him before I die.

The father said to Joseph: Ge 46, 30 Now shall I die with joy, because I have seen thy face.

The king therefore said to Joseph: Thy father and thy brethren are come to thee. Ge 47, 5-15

The land of Egypt is before thee: make them dwell in the best place, and give them the land of Gessen. And if thou knowest that there are industrious men among them, make them rulers over my cattle.

After this Joseph brought in his father to the king, and presented him before him: and he blessed him.

And being asked by him: How many are the days of the years of thy life?

He answered: The days of my pilgrimage are a hundred and thirty years, few and evil, and they are not come up to the days of the pilgrimage of my fathers.

And blessing the king, he went out.

But Joseph gave a possession to his father and his brethren in Egypt, in the best place of the land, in Ramesses, as Pharaoh had commanded.

And he nourished them, and all his father's house, allowing food to every one.

For in the whole world there was want of bread, and a famine had oppressed the land, more especially of Egypt and Chanaan.

Out of which he gathered up all the money for the corn which they bought, and brought it into the king's treasure.

And when the buyers wanted money, all Egypt came to Joseph, saying: Give us bread: why should we die in thy presence, having now no money?

##### 5.—THE BLESSINGS OF HEAVEN FALL UPON THE HEAD OF JOSEPH.

*Ge* 49, 22-26 Joseph is a growing son, a growing son and comely to behold: the daughters run to and fro upon the wall.

But they that held darts provoked him, and quarrelled with him, and envied him.

His bow rested upon the strong, and the bands of his arms and his hands were loosed by the hands of the Mighty One of Jacob: thence he came forth a Pastor, the Stone of Israel.

The God of thy father shall be thy Helper, and the Almighty shall bless thee with the blessings of Heaven above, with the blessings of the deep that lieth beneath, with the blessings of the breasts and of the womb.

The blessings of thy father are strengthened with the blessings of his fathers: until THE DESIRE OF THE EVERLASTING HILLS should come; may they be upon the head of Joseph, and upon the crown of the Nazarite among his brethren.

Joseph was a man born: *Eci* 49, 17

- (1) Prince of his brethren.
- (2) The Support of his family.
- (3) The Ruler of his brethren.
- (4) The Stay of the people.

And his bones were visited, *Eci* 49, 18 and after death they prophesied.

##### Other types of St. Joseph.

Abraham, who offered his son Isaac. *Ge* 22, 2

Eliezer, who watched over and protected Rebecca. *Ge* 24, 2

The Ladder on which the Lord leant. *Ge* 28, 13

<i>Ex</i> 37, 8	The Golden Cherubim,* which, spreading their wings, covered and protected the Propitiatory.	Mardochai, guardian of Queen Esther.	<i>Es</i> 2, 7
<i>Ex</i> 40, 3	The Veil of violet, that concealed the Sacred Ark from eyes profane.	The Lily. The Silver Bulwark. The Board of Cedar. The Bridegroom.	<i>Ca</i> 2, 16 <i>Ca</i> 8, 9 <i>Ca</i> 8, 9 <i>Is</i> 62, 5

## ST. JOHN THE BAPTIST, PRECURSOR OF OUR LORD.

**1.—ST. JOHN THE BAPTIST** ANNOUNCED BY THE PROPHETS. HIS PARENTS BOTH JUST. AN ANGEL FORETELLS TO ST. ZACHARY HIS CONCEPTION, BIRTH AND NAME, SANCTITY, AND OFFICE. SANCTIFIED BEFORE BIRTH. HAD USE OF REASON YET UNBORN. HIS LEAP OF JOY IN THE WOMB AT CHRIST'S PRESENCE.

*Ma* 3, 1 Behold, I send My Angel, and he shall prepare the way before My Face.

*Ma* 4, 5-6 Behold, I will send you Elias the Prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord.

And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers: lest I come, and strike the earth with anathema.

*Is* 4, 3-5 The voice of one crying in the desert: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight in the wilderness the paths of our God.

Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and

hill shall be made low, and the crooked shall become straight, and the rough ways plain.

And the glory of the Lord shall be revealed, and all flesh together shall see that the mouth of the Lord hath spoken.

There was in the days of Herod the king of Judea a certain Priest named Zachary, of the course of Abia, and his wife was of the daughters of Aaron, and her name Elizabeth.

And they were both just before God, walking in all the commandments and justifications of the Lord without blame.

And there appeared to him an Angel of the Lord, standing on the right side of the Altar of incense.

And Zachary seeing him was troubled, and fear fell upon him:

But the Angel said to him: Fear not, Zachary, for thy prayer is heard, and thy wife Elizabeth shall bear thee a

\* They typified Mary and Joseph. According to Arias Montanus, one of these Cherubim had the form of a man, the other of a woman.

son, and thou shalt call his name John:

And thou shalt have joy and gladness, and many shall rejoice in his nativity.

For he shall be great before the Lord, and shall drink no wine nor strong drink: and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost, even from his mother's womb.

And he shall convert many of the children of Israel to the Lord their God.

And he shall go before Him in the spirit and power of Elias: that he may turn the hearts of the fathers unto the children, and the incredulous to the wisdom of the just, to prepare unto the Lord a perfect people.

*Lk 1, 39-44* Mary, rising up in those days, went into the hill-country with haste into a city of Juda.

And she entered into the house of Zachary, and saluted Elizabeth.

And it came to pass that when Elizabeth heard the salutation of Mary, the infant leaped in her womb. And Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Ghost.

And she cried out with a loud voice, and said: Blessed art thou among women, and blessed is the Fruit of thy womb.

And whence is this to me that the Mother of my Lord should come to me?

For behold, as soon as the voice of thy salutation sounded in my ears, the infant in my womb leaped for joy.

*Je 1, 5* Before I formed thee in the bowels of thy mother, I knew thee: and before thou

camest forth out of the womb, I sanctified thee. (*See Gradual for the Feast of his Nativity.*)

Give ear, ye Islands, and hearken, ye people from afar. The Lord hath called me from the womb: from the bowels of my mother He hath been mindful of my name (*to verse 7*). (*See Epistle for the Feast of his Nativity.*)

*Is 49,*

Behold, I have given thee to be the light of the Gentiles, that thou mayst be my salvation even to the farthest part of the earth.

*Is 49, 6*

2. — BIRTH IN THE HILL-COUNTRY OF JUDEA; FRUIT OF PRAYER. HIS PARENTS' JOY. HIS CIRCUMCISION. HIS MOTHER NAMES HIM JOHN BY REVELATION. HIS FATHER'S CURE. HIS CANTICLE. JOHN'S HIDDEN AND AUSTERE LIFE OF PENANCE IN THE DESERT. HIS RAIMENT, FASTS, ABSTINENCE FROM WINE. CALLED ELIAS BY JESUS. NONE GREATER BORN OF WOMAN. PERSONAL CHARACTER.

Now Elizabeth's full time of being delivered was come, and she brought forth a son. *Lk 1, 57-58*

And her neighbours and kinsfolks heard that the Lord had showed His great mercy towards her, and they congratulated with her.

And it came to pass that on the eighth day they came to circumcise the child, and they called him by his father's name Zachary. *Lk 1, 59-63*

And his mother answering,

said: Not so, but he shall be called John.

And they said to her: There is none of thy kindred that is called by this name.

And they made signs to his father, how he would have him called.

And demanding a writing-table, he wrote, saying: John is his name. And they all wondered.

*Lu 1, 64-67* And immediately his mouth was opened, and his tongue loosed, and he spoke, blessing God.

And fear came upon all their neighbours; and all these things were noised abroad over all the hill-country of Judea.

And all they that had heard them laid them up in their heart, saying: What an one, think ye, shall this child be? For the hand of the Lord was with him.

And Zachary his father was filled with the Holy Ghost: and he prophesied, saying:

- Lu 1, 68-79*
- (1) Blessed be the Lord God of Israel: because He hath visited and wrought the Redemption of His people;
  - (2) And hath raised up a horn of Salvation to us, in the House of David His servant.
  - (3) As He spoke by the mouth of His holy Prophets, who are from the beginning:
  - (4) Salvation from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us.

(5) To perform mercy to our fathers, and to remember His Holy Testament.

(6) The oath which He swore to Abraham our father, that He would grant to us,

(7) That, being delivered from the hand of our enemies, we may serve Him without fear,

(8) In holiness and justice before Him, all our days.

(9) And thou child shalt be called the Prophet of the Highest: for thou shalt go before the face of the Lord to prepare His ways.

(10) To give knowledge of Salvation to His people, unto the remission of their sins.

(11) Through the bowels of the mercy of our God, in which the Orient, from on High, hath visited us.

(12) To enlighten them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death: to direct our feet into the way of peace.

And the child grew, and was strengthened in Spirit; and was in the deserts until the day of his manifestation to Israel. *Lu 1, 80*

And the same John had his garment of camel's hair, and a leathern girdle about his loins: and his meat was locusts and wild honey. *Mt 3, 4*

And John was clothed *Mk 1, 6*

with camel's hair, and a leathern girdle about his loins: and he ate locusts and wild honey.

**Mt 11, 18** John came neither eating nor drinking, and they say: He hath a devil.

**Lu 1, 15** He shall drink no wine nor strong drink; and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

**Lu 7, 33** John the Baptist came neither eating nor drinking wine, and you say: He hath a devil.

**Mt 11, 7-19** And when they went their way, Jesus began to say to the multitudes concerning John: What went you out into the desert to see? a reed shaken with the wind?

But what went you out to see? a man clothed in soft garments? Behold, they that are clothed in soft garments are in the houses of kings.

But what went you out to see? a prophet? Yea, I tell you, and more than a Prophet.

For this is he of whom it is written: Behold, I send My Angel before Thy face, who shall prepare Thy way before Thee.

Amen I say to you, there hath not risen among them that are born of women a greater than John the Baptist; yet he that is the lesser in the Kingdom of Heaven is greater than he.

And from the days of John the Baptist until now the Kingdom of Heaven suffereth violence, and the violent bear it away.

For all the Prophets and the Law prophesied until John:

And if you will receive it, he is Elias that is to come.

He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.

But whereunto shall I esteem this generation to be like? It is like to children sitting in the market-place,

Who, crying to their companions, say: We have piped to you, and you have not danced: we have lamented, and you have not mourned.

For John came neither eating nor drinking; and they say: He hath a devil.

The Son of man came eating and drinking, and they say: Behold a Man that is a glutton and a wine-drinker, a friend of publicans and sinners. And Wisdom is justified by her children.

He was a burning and a shining light, and you were willing for a time to rejoice in his light.

I meditated on Thy commandments, which I loved. **Ps 118, 47**  
(See Introit for his Feast of Beheading.)

The just shall flourish like the Palm-tree: he shall grow up like the Cedar of Libanus. **Ps 91, 13**

Israel shall spring as the Lily, and his root shall shoot forth as that of Libanus. **Os 14, 6**

3.—HIS PUBLIC MINISTRY. A VOICE CRYING IN THE WILDERNESS. PREACHES PENANCE AND GOOD WORKS. REPROVES THE PHARISEES. HIS POPULARITY. TAKEN FOR THE MESSIAS. TEACHES HIS DISCIPLES TO PRAY.

In those days cometh John the Baptist preaching in the desert of Judea, **Mt 3, 1-12**

And saying: Do penance: for the Kingdom of Heaven is at hand.



For this is he that was spoken of by Isaias the Prophet, saying: A voice of one crying in the desert: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight His paths.

*Mk* 1, 4-5 John was in the desert, baptising and preaching the baptism of penance unto remission of sins.

And there went out to him all the country of Judea, and all they of Jerusalem, and were baptised by him in the river of Jordan, confessing their sins.

*Lk* 3, 1-6 In the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Cesar, Pontius Pilate being governor of Judea, and Herod being Tetrarch, of Galilee, and Philip his brother Tetrarch of Iturea and the country of Trachonitis, and Lysanias Tetrarch of Abilina,

Under the High Priests Annas and Caiphas, the Word of the Lord was made unto John the son of Zachary, in the desert.

And he came into all the country about the Jordan, preaching the baptism of penance for the remission of sins.

As it was written in the Book of the sayings of Isaias the Prophet: A voice of one crying in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight His paths.

Every valley shall be filled, and every mountain and hill shall be brought low: and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough ways plain.

And all flesh shall see the Salvation of God.

He said to the multitudes *Lk* 3, 7-18 that went forth to be baptised by him: Ye offspring of vipers, who hath showed you to flee from the wrath to come?

Bring forth therefore fruits worthy of penance, and do not begin to say: We have Abraham for our father. For I say unto you, that God is able of these stones to raise up children to Abraham.

For now the axe is laid to the root of the trees. Every tree therefore that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be cut down, and cast into the fire.

And the people asked him, saying: What then shall we do?

And he answering said to them: He that hath two coats, let him give to him that hath none; and he that hath meat, let him do in like manner.

And the publicans also came to be baptised, and said to him: Master, what shall we do?

But he said to them: Do nothing more than that which is appointed you.

And the soldiers also asked him, saying: And what shall we do? And he said to them: Do violence to no man, neither calumniate any man; and be content with your pay.

And as the people was of opinion and all were thinking in their hearts of John, that perhaps he might be the Christ,

John answered, saying unto all: I indeed baptise you with water; but there

**M**

shall come One Mightier than I, the latchet of Whose shoes I am not worthy to loose; He shall baptise you with the Holy Ghost and with fire:

Whose fan is in His hand, and He will purge His floor; and will gather the wheat into His Barn, but the chaff He will burn with unquenchable fire.

And many other things exhorting did he preach to the people.

*Ls 49, 2* He hath made my mouth like a sharp sword: in the shadow of His hand He hath protected me, and hath made me as a chosen arrow: in His quiver He hath hidden me.

*Ls 49, 4* My work is with my God.

*Mt 3, 5-6* Then went out to him Jerusalem and all Judea, and all the country about Jordan:

And were baptised by him in the Jordan, confessing their sins.

*Mt 14, 5* Having a mind to put him to death, he feared the people, because they esteemed him as a Prophet.

*Mt 21, 32* John came to you in the way of justice, and you did not believe him. But the publicans and the harlots believed him: but you seeing it did not even afterwards repent, that you might believe him.

*Mt 11, 30-33* The baptism of John, was it from heaven or from men? Answer Me.

But they thought with themselves, saying: If we say, From Heaven, He will say, Why then did you not believe him?

If we say, From men, we fear the people. For all men

counted John that he was a Prophet indeed.

And they answering say to Jesus: We know not. And Jesus answering saith to them: Neither do I tell you by what authority I do these things.

The people was of opinion and all were thinking in their hearts of John, that perhaps he might be the Christ.

And this is the testimony of John, when the Jews sent from Jerusalem Priests and Levites to him, to ask him: Who art thou?

And he confessed and did not deny: and he confessed, I am not the Christ.

And they asked him: What then? Art thou Elias? And he said: I am not. Art thou the Prophet? And he answered: No.

They said therefore unto him: Who art thou, that we may give an answer to them that sent us? what sayest thou of thyself?

He said: I am the voice of one crying in the wilderness: Make straight the way of the Lord, as said the Prophet Isaias.

And they that were sent were of the Pharisees.

And they asked him, and said to him: Why then dost thou baptise, if thou be not Christ, nor Elias, nor the Prophet?

John answered them, saying: I baptise with water; but there hath stood One in the midst of you Whom you know not.

The Same is He that shall come after me, Who is preferred before me, the latchet

*Lu 3, 15*

*Jn 1, 19-23*

of Whose shoe I am not worthy to loose.

These things were done in Bethania beyond the Jordan, where John was baptising.

*Jn* 10, 41 Many resorted to him, and they said: John indeed did no sign.

*Mk* 2, 18 The disciples of John used to fast.

*Lk* 11, 1 Lord, teach us to pray, as John also taught his disciples.

#### 4.—HIS TESTIMONY OF CHRIST.

ANDREW HIS DISCIPLE FOLLOWS JESUS. JOHN BAPTISES BY DIVINE COMMAND (1) IN THE JORDAN, (2) AT BETHANIA, AND (3) AT JENNON. PREDICTS THE BAPTISM OF THE HOLY GHOST, OF WHICH HIS IS BUT A TYPE. DECLINES IN HUMILITY TO BAPTISE CHRIST, BUT DOES SO UNDER OBEDIENCE.

*Jn* 1, 6-8 There was a man sent from God, whose name was John.

This man came for a witness, to give testimony of the Light, that all men might believe through him.

He was not the Light, but was to give testimony of the Light.

*Mk* 1, 7-8 There cometh after me One Mightier than I, the latchet of Whose shoes I am not worthy to stoop down and loose.

I have baptised you with water; but He shall baptise you with the Holy Ghost.

*Lk* 3, 16 John answered, saying unto all: I indeed baptise with water; but there shall come One Mightier than I, the latchet of Whose shoes I am not worthy to loose. He

shall baptise you with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

The next day again John stood, and two of his disciples. *Jn* 1, 35-40

And beholding Jesus walking, he saith: Behold the Lamb of God.

And the two disciples heard Him speak, and they followed Jesus.

And Jesus turning, and seeing them following Him, saith to them: What seek you? Who said to Him, Rabbi (which is to say, being interpreted, Master), where dwellest Thou?

He saith to them: Come and see. They came, and saw where He abode, and they stayed with Him that day: now it was about the tenth hour.

And Andrew the brother of Simon Peter was one of the two who had heard from John, and followed Him.

John beareth witness of Him, and crieth out, saying: This was He of Whom I spoke: He that shall come after me is preferred before me, because He was before me. *Jn* 1, 15

John answered them, saying: I baptise you with water; but there hath stood One in the midst of you Whom you know not. *Jn* 1, 26-27

The Same is He that shall come after me, Who is preferred before me, the latchet of Whose shoe I am not worthy to loose.

The next day John saw Jesus coming to him, and he saith: Behold the Lamb of God; behold Him Whom I said: After me there cometh a Man

This is He of Whom I said: After me there cometh a Man

Who is preferred before me, because He was before me,

And I knew Him not; but that He may be made manifest in Israel, therefore am I come baptising with water.

And John gave testimony, saying: I saw the Spirit coming down as a dove from Heaven, and He remained upon Him.

And I knew Him not: but He Who sent me to baptise with water said to me: He upon Whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending and remaining upon Him, He it is that baptiseth with the Holy Ghost.

And I saw, and I gave testimony, that this is the Son of God.

The next day again John stood, and two of his disciples.

And beholding Jesus walking, he saith: Behold the Lamb of God.

*Jn 3, 28-38* And they came to John, and said to him: Rabbi, He that was with thee beyond the Jordan, to Whom thou gavest testimony, behold He baptiseth, and all men come to Him.

John answered and said: A man cannot receive anything unless it be given him from Heaven.

You yourselves do bear me witness that I said, I am not Christ, but that I am sent before Him.

He that hath the bride is the Bridegroom: but the friend of the Bridegroom, who standeth and heareth him, rejoiceth with joy because of the Bridegroom's voice. This my joy therefore is fulfilled.

He must increase, but I must decrease.

He that cometh from Above is above all. He that is of the earth, of the earth he is, and of the earth he speaketh. He that cometh from Heaven is above all.

And what He hath seen and heard, that He testifieth: and no man receiveth His Testimony.

He that hath received His Testimony hath set to his seal that God is True.

For He whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God doth not give the Spirit by measure.

The Father loveth the Son: and He hath given all things into His hand.

He that believeth in the Son hath Life Everlasting: but he that believeth not the Son shall not see Life, but the wrath of God abideth on him.

There is another that beareth witness of Me: and I know that the witness which he witnesseth of Me is true. *Jn 5, 32-33*

You sent to John: and he gave testimony to the Truth.

And He went again beyond the Jordan into that place where John was baptising first; and there He abode. *Jn 10, 40-42*

And many resorted to Him, and they said: John indeed did no sign.

But all things whatsoever John said of This Man were true. And many believed in Him.

John first preaching before His coming the baptism of penance to all the people of Israel. *Lc 13, 24-25*

And when John was ful-

filling his course, he said: I am not he whom you think me to be: but behold there cometh One after me, the shoes of Whose feet I am not worthy to loose.

*Mt* 1, 5 They were baptised by him in the river of Jordan, confessing their sins.

*Jn* 1, 28 These things were done in Bethania beyond the Jordan, where John was baptising.

*Jn* 3, 23 John was baptising in Aenon near Salim, because there was much water there.

*Jn* 1, 33 He Who sent me to baptise with water said to me: He upon Whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending and remaining upon Him, He it is that baptiseth with the Holy Ghost.

*Mt* 3, 11 I indeed baptise you in water unto penance: but He that shall come after me is Mightier than I, Whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: He shall baptise you in the Holy Ghost and fire.

*Mt* 1, 8 I have baptised you with water, but He will baptise you with the Holy Ghost.

*Jn* 1, 33 He upon Whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending and remaining upon Him, He it is that baptiseth with the Holy Ghost.

*Ac* 1, 5 John indeed baptised with water, but you shall be baptised with the Holy Ghost not many days hence.

*Ac* 11, 16 I remembered the word of the Lord, how that He said: John indeed baptised with water, but you shall be baptised with the Holy Ghost.

*Mt* 3, 13-17 Then cometh Jesus from Galilee to the Jordan, unto John, to be baptised by him.

But John stayed Him, say-

ing: I ought to be baptised by Thee, and comest Thou to me?

And Jesus answering said to him: Suffer it to be so now, for so it becometh us to fulfil all justice. Then he suffered Him.

And Jesus being baptised, forthwith came out of the water: and lo, the heavens were opened to him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove, and coming upon Him.

And behold a voice from Heaven, saying: This is My Beloved Son, in Whom I am well pleased.

For all the Prophets prophesied until John: *Mt* 11, 13-14

And if you will receive it, he is Elias that is to come.

And His disciples asked Him, saying: Why then do the scribes say that Elias must come first? *Mt* 17, 10-13

But He answering said to them: Elias indeed shall come, and restore all things.

But I say to you that Elias is already come, and they knew him not, but have done unto him whatsoever they had a mind. So also the Son of man shall suffer from them.

Then the disciples understood that He had spoken to them of John the Baptist.

5.—JOHN FAVOURED BY HEROD. HE REBUKES HEROD FOR INCEST, WHEREUPON HEROD CASTS HIM INTO PRISON. DURING HIS YEAR'S IMPRISONMENT HE SENDS TWO DISCIPLES TO JESUS. HEROD'S BANQUET. HIS RASH OATH. JOHN BEHEADED WITH THE SWORD. HIS

HEAD SERVED UP ON A DISH  
TO SALOME. HIS BURIAL.  
HEARING OF CHRIST'S MIR-  
ACLES, HEROD IMAGINES  
THAT HE HAD RISEN FROM  
THE DEAD. HIS DIADEM  
OF GLORY.

*Mk* 6, 19-  
20 Now Herodias laid snares  
for him, and was desirous to  
put him to death, and could  
not.

For Herod feared John,  
knowing him to be a just and  
holy man, and kept him:  
and when he heard him, did  
many things: and he heard  
him willingly.

*Lu* 3, 19-  
20 Herod the Tetrarch, when  
he was reprov'd by him for  
Herodias his brother's wife,  
and for all the evils which  
Herod had done,

He added this also above  
all, and shut up John in pri-  
son.

*Mt* 14, 3-5 Herod had apprehended  
John and bound him, and put  
him into prison, because of  
Herodias his brother's wife.

For John said to him: It is  
not lawful for thee to have  
her.

And having a mind to put  
him to death, he feared the  
people, because they esteem-  
ed him as a Prophet.

*Ps* 118, 46 I spoke of Thy testimonies  
before kings: and I was not  
ashamed. (*See Introit for his  
Feast of Beheading.*)

*Mt* 11, 2-3 Now when John had heard  
in prison the works of Christ,  
sending two of his disciples,  
he said to Him:

Art Thou He that art to  
come, or look we for another?

*Lu* 7, 21 And in that same hour He  
cured many of their diseases,  
and hurts, and evil spirits:

and to many that were blind  
He gave sight.

And Jesus making answer, *Mt* 11, 2 &  
said to them: Go and relate  
to John what you have heard  
and seen:

The blind see, the lame  
walk, the lepers are cleansed,  
the deaf hear, the dead rise  
again, the poor have the Gos-  
pel preached to them.

And blessed is he that shall  
not be scandalised in Me.

And when a convenient *Mt* 6, 21.  
day was come, Herod made  
30 a supper for his birthday, for  
the Princes, and Tribunes,  
and chief men of Galilee.

And when the daughter of  
the same Herodias had come  
in, and had danced, and  
pleased Herod, and them that  
were at table with him, the  
king said to the damsel: Ask  
of me what thou wilt, and I  
will give it thee.

And he swore to her:  
Whatsoever thou shalt ask I  
will give thee, though it be  
the half of my kingdom.

Who, when she was gone  
out, said to her mother: What  
shall I ask? But she said:  
The head of John the Baptist.

And when she was come in  
immediately with haste to the  
king, she asked, saying: I  
will that forthwith thou give  
me in a dish the head of John  
the Baptist.

And the king was struck  
sad. Yet because of his oath,  
and because of them that  
were with him at table, he  
would not displease her;

But, sending an execu-  
tioner, he commanded that  
his head should be brought  
in a dish. And he beheaded  
him in the prison,

And brought his head in a dish, and gave it to the damsel, and the damsel gave it to her mother.

Which his disciples hearing, came, and took his body, and laid it in a tomb.

And the apostles coming together unto Jesus, related to Him all things that they had done and taught.

**Mt 14, 1-2** At that time Herod the Tetrarch heard the fame of Jesus.

And he said to his servants: This is John the Baptist: he is risen from the dead, and therefore mighty works show forth themselves in Him.

**Mt 16, 14** And Jesus came into the quarters of Cesarea Philippi: and He asked His disciples, saying: Whom do men say that the Son of man is?

But they said: Some John the Baptist, and other some Elias, and others Jeremias or one of the Prophets.

In Thy strength, O Lord, Ps 20, 2-3 the just shall joy: and in Thy Salvation he shall rejoice exceedingly.

Thou hast given him his heart's desire. (*See Offertory for his Feast.*)

His glory is great in Thy Ps 20, 6 Salvation: glory and great beauty shalt Thou lay upon Him.

Thou hast crowned him Ps 8, 6 with glory and honour, and hast set him over the works of Thy hands. (*See Offertory for the Vigil of his Feast.*)

Thou hast set on his head, Ps 20, 4 O Lord, A CROWN OF PRECIOUS STONES. (*See Communion for his Feast.*)

#### THE SACERDOTAL PRAYER OF OUR LORD TO HIS ETERNAL FATHER.

**Jn 17, 1** These things Jesus spoke, and lifting up His eyes to Heaven, He said:

##### 1.—FOR HIMSELF.

**Jn 17, 1-5** Father, the hour is come: glorify Thy Son, that Thy Son may glorify Thee.

As Thou hast given Him power over all flesh, that He may give Eternal Life to all whom Thou hast given Him.

Now this is Eternal Life: That they may know Thee, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, Whom Thou hast sent.

I have glorified Thee on the earth: I have finished the work which Thou gavest Me to do.

And now glorify Thou Me, O Father, with Thyself, with the glory which I had, before the world was, with Thee.

##### 2.—FOR HIS DISCIPLES.

I have manifested Thy Ps 17, 6-19 Name to the men whom Thou hast given Me out of the world. Thine they were, and to Me Thou gavest them: and they have kept Thy word.

Now they have known that all things which Thou hast given Me are from Thee: Because the words which Thou gavest Me I have given to them: and they have received them, and have known in very deed

that I came out from Thee, and they have believed that Thou didst send Me.

I pray for them: I pray not for the world, but for them whom Thou hast given Me, because they are Thine.

And all My things are Thine, and Thine are Mine: and I am glorified in them.

And now I am not in the world, and these are in the world, and I come to Thee. Holy Father, keep them in Thy Name whom Thou hast given Me, that they may be one, as We also are.

While I was with them I kept them in Thy Name. Those whom Thou gavest Me have I kept: and none of them is lost but the son of perdition, that the Scripture may be fulfilled.

And now I come to Thee: and these things I speak in the world, that they may have My joy filled in themselves.

I have given them Thy Word: and the world hath hated them, because they are not of the world, as I also am not of the world.

I pray not that Thou shouldst take them out of the world, but that Thou shouldst keep them from evil.

They are not of the world, as I also am not of the world.

Sanctify them in Truth. Thy Word is Truth.

As Thou hast sent Me into the world, I also have sent

them into the world.

And for them do I sanctify Myself, that they also may be sanctified in truth.

### 3.—FOR HIS CHURCH.

And not for them only do I pray, but for them also who through their word shall believe in Me. Jn 17, 20-26

That they all may be one, as Thou, Father, in Me, and I in Thee: that they also may be one in Us: that the world may believe that Thou hast sent Me.

And the glory which Thou hast given Me I have given to them, that they may be one, as We also are One.

I in them, and Thou in Me: that they may be made perfect in one; and the world may know that Thou hast sent Me, and hast loved them, as Thou hast also loved Me.

Father, I will that where I am, they also whom Thou hast given Me may be with Me: that they may see My Glory which Thou hast given Me, because Thou hast loved Me before the foundation of the world.

Just Father, the world hath not known Thee: but I have known Thee, and these have known that Thou hast sent Me.

And I have made known Thy Name to them, and will make it known: that the love wherewith Thou hast loved Me may be in them, and I in them.



## BOOK II.

---

### OUR LAST END, AND THE MEANS OF ITS ATTAINMENT.

IN this Book we will adduce from the Holy Scriptures those passages which refer :

- I. To God considered as the Final End and Happiness for which we are created.
- II. To the means of attaining that End.
- III. To the obstacles which hinder its attainment.

S. Thomas, who defines Beatitude as "the exercise of man's noblest faculty upon the noblest object," proves that man's End and Happiness can be found neither in riches, nor honours, nor glory, nor power, nor any created thing, but in God alone. ° "Thou hast made us, O Lord, for Thyself," says S. Augustine, "and our heart hath no rest until it rest in Thee." God Himself constitutes the *objective* Beatitude, and the intuitive vision of God constitutes the *formal* Beatitude of man. The joy of the Blessed is a *consequence* of their Beatitude.

We attain our End by means of good works, and we are led to the knowledge and practice of good works by the light of God's Law and by the aid of His Grace. The obstacles are our sins by which we violate God's Law, and reject His Grace.

\* Sum. Theol. P.S. qq. 2 et seqq.

## PART I.

### FINAL END AND BEATITUDE OF MAN.

#### 1.—GOD THE FINAL END OF ALL THINGS.

<i>Po</i> 16, 4	The Lord hath made all things for Himself, the wicked also for the evil day.	I am Alpha and Omega, the Beginning and the End, saith the Lord.	<i>Ap</i> 1, 8
<i>Is</i> 40, 13	Who hath forwarded the Spirit of the Lord? or who hath been His counsellor, and hath taught Him?	What doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but that thou fear the Lord thy God, and walk in His ways, and love Him, and serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul?	<i>De</i> 10, 12
<i>Ro</i> 11, 34-35	Who hath known the mind of the Lord?—Or who hath first given to Him, and recompense shall be made Him?—For of Him, and by Him, and in Him are all things.	I am the Lord your God. Know ye that the Lord He is God. We are His people, and the sheep of His pasture.	<i>Le</i> 18, 2 <i>Pr</i> 99, 3
<i>Is</i> 43, 7, 15	I have created him for My glory, I have formed him and made him.—I am the Lord your Holy One, the Creator of Israel, your King.	Thou hast created all things, and for Thy will they were and have been created.	<i>Ap</i> 4, 11
<i>Ps</i> 85, 9	All the nations Thou hast made shall come and adore before Thee, O Lord, and they shall glorify Thy Name.	Adore not any strange god. The Lord His Name is Jealous. He is a jealous God.	<i>Ex</i> 34, 14

#### 2.—NOT CREATURES, BUT GOD ALONE THE OBJECT OF ETERNAL BLISS.

<i>Ps</i> 149, 2	Let Israel rejoice in Him that made him, and let the children of Sion be joyful in their King.	Thee my flesh and my heart hath fainted away;—Thou art the God of my heart, and the God that is my Portion for ever.	
<i>Ge</i> 15, 1	Fear not, Abram, I am thy Protector, and thy Reward exceeding great.	It is good for me to adhere to my God, to put my hope in the Lord God.	<i>Ps</i> 72, 28
<i>Ps</i> 72, 25-26	What have I in Heaven? and besides Thee what do I desire upon earth? For	Vanity of vanities, and all is vanity.	<i>Ecl</i> 1, 2

- 1 J 2, 15 Love not the world nor the things which are in the world. find no reason of all those works of God that are done under the sun; and the more he shall labour to seek, so much the less shall he find; yea, though the wise man should say that he knoweth it, he shall not be able to find it.
- Ecl 3, 10-11 I have seen the trouble which God hath given the sons of men, to be exercised in it.—He hath made all things good in their time, and hath delivered the world to their consideration, so that man cannot find out the work which God hath made from the beginning to the end. I have given my heart to know prudence, and learning, and errors, and folly; and I have perceived that in these also there was labour, and vexation of spirit,—Because in much wisdom there is much indignation; and he that addeth knowledge, addeth also labour.
- Ecl 1, 8 All things are hard; man cannot explain them by word. The eye is not filled with seeing, neither is the ear filled with hearing.
- Ecl 8, 17 I understood that man can

## 3.—FORMAL BEATITUDE IN THE INTELLECT.

- Is 33, 17 His eyes shall see the King in His Beauty, they shall see the Land far off. of Life, and in Thy Light we shall see Light.
- To 13, 22 Alleluia shall be sung in its streets. The Lord will give grace and glory. Ps 83, 12
- Ap 19, 1 After these things I heard as it were the voice of much people in Heaven, saying: Alleluia, Salvation, and Glory, and Power is to our God. The grace of God is Life Everlasting. Ro 6, 23
- Ps 149, 6 The high praises of God shall be in their mouth. My sheep hear My Voice; and I know them, and they follow Me. And I give them Life Everlasting. Jn 10, 27
- Ps 83, 5 Blessed are they that dwell in Thy House, O Lord; they shall praise Thee for ever and ever. Lord, show us the Father, and it is enough for us. Jn 14, 8
- Ex 33, 13 Show me Thy Face, that I may know Thee. Passing, He will minister unto them. Lu 12, 37
- Ps 35, 10 With Thee is the fountain

## 4.—JOY OF THE BLESSED IN THE WILL.

- Mt 25, 21 Well done, good and faithful servant: because thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will place thee over many things; enter thou in to the joy of thy Lord. I dispose to you, as My Father hath disposed to Me, a Kingdom;—That you may eat and drink at My table in

- My Kingdom; and may sit upon thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Jn 16, 22* I will see you again, and your heart shall rejoice; and your joy no man shall take from you.
- Ro 14, 17* The Kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but Justice, and Peace, and Joy in the Holy Ghost.
- Ps 35, 9* They shall be inebriated with the plenty of Thy House, and Thou shalt make them drink of the torrent of Thy Pleasure.
- Ps 15, 11* Thou hast made known to me the ways of life, Thou shalt fill me with joy with Thy Countenance; at Thy right Hand are delights even to the end.
- Ps 86, 7* The dwelling in Thee is as it were of all rejoicing.
- Is 25, 6* The Lord of Hosts shall make unto all people in this Mountain a Feast of fat things, a feast of Wine, of fat things full of marrow, of Wine purified from the lees.
- Is 66, 13-14* As one whom the mother caresseth, so will I comfort you, and you shall be comforted in Jerusalem. — You shall see and your heart shall rejoice, and your bones shall flourish like a herb: and the Hand of the Lord shall be known to His servants, and He shall be angry with His enemies.
- The saints shall rejoice in Glory; they shall be joyful in their beds.
- Everlasting joy shall be upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and mourning shall flee away.
- You shall be glad and rejoice for ever in those things which I create; for behold, I create Jerusalem a rejoicing, and the people there of joy.
- You shall have a song as in the night of the sanctified solemnity and joy of heart, as when one goeth with a pipe to come into the Mountain of the Lord to the Mighty One of Israel.
- The passage of the rod shall be strongly grounded, which the Lord shall make to rest upon Him with timbrels and harps.
- Ps 149, 5*
- Ps 35, 10*
- Is 65, 18*
- Is 30, 29*
- Is 30, 32*

## 5.—QUALITIES OF A GLORIFIED BODY.

- W 3, 7* The just shall shine, and shall run to and fro like sparks among the reeds.
- Mt 13, 43* Then shall the just shine as the sun in the Kingdom of their Father.
- 1 C 15, 42-44* It is sown in corruption, it shall rise in incorruption. — It is sown in dishonour, it shall rise in glory. It is sown in weakness, it shall rise in power. — It is sown a natural body, there is also a spiritual body.
- They that are learned shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that instruct many to justice, as stars for all Eternity.
- We look for the Saviour, our Lord Jesus Christ, — Who will reform the body of our lowliness, made like to the Body of His Glory, according to the operation whereby
- Da 12, 3*
- Ps 3, 20-21*

- also He is able to subdue all things unto Himself.
- 1 C 15, 53 This corruptible must put on Incorruption, and this mortal must put on Immortality.
- Is 40, 31 They that hope in the Lord shall renew their strength: they shall run and not be weary, they shall walk and not faint.
- Unto you that fear My Name the Sun of Justice shall arise, and health in His wings; and you shall go forth, and shall leap like calves of the herd.
- They shall receive double in their land.
- Ma 4, 2
- Is 61, 7

## 6.—KINGLY DIGNITY OF THE BLESSED.

- Ap 22, 5 His servants shall reign for ever and ever.
- Mt 5, 3 Blessed are the poor in spirit, for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Mt 5, 10 Blessed are they that suffer persecution for justice' sake, for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Mt 25, 34 Come, ye blessed of My Father, possess ye the Kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.
- Ap 3, 21 To him that shall overcome I will give to sit with Me in My Throne; as I also have overcome and am sat down with My Father in His Throne.
- If we suffer, we shall also reign with Him.
- I John am your brother, and your partner in tribulation and in the Kingdom.
- God hath chosen the poor in this world rich in Faith, and heirs of the Kingdom which God hath promised to them that love Him.
- 2 Ti 2, 12
- Ap 1, 9
- Ja 2, 5

## 7.—POWER, HONOUR, AND GLORY OF THE BLESSED.

- Mt 24, 46-47 Blessed is that servant whom when his Lord shall come He shall find so doing.—Amen I say to you, He shall place him over all His goods.
- Lu 12, 37 Blessed are those servants whom the Lord when He cometh shall find watching. Amen I say to you, that He will gird Himself, and make them sit down to meat, and passing will minister to them.
- 2 Ti 4, 7-8 I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the Faith.—As to the rest, there is laid up for me a Crown of Justice, which the Lord the Just Judge will render to me in that day;
- and not only to me, but to them also that love His coming.
- When the Prince of Pastors shall appear, you shall receive a never-fading Crown of Glory.
- Blessed is the man that endureth temptation; for when he hath been proved, he shall receive the Crown of Life, which God hath promised to them that love Him.
- They are equal to the Angels, and are the children of God, being the children of the Resurrection.
- Thither did the Tribes go
- 2 Pt 5, 4
- Ja 1, 12
- Lu 20, 36
- Ps 121, 4-5

up, the Tribes of the Lord:—Because their Seats have  
the testimony of Israel, to sat in judgment, Seats upon  
praise the Name of the Lord. the House of David.

### 8.—SPLENDOUR AND BEAUTY OF OUR HEAVENLY COUNTRY.

- To 13, 21- The gates of Jerusalem twelve pearls, one to each;  
22 shall be built of sapphire and every several gate was  
and of emerald, and all the of one several pearl. And  
walls thereof round about of the street of the city was  
precious stones.—All its pure gold, as it were trans-  
streets shall be paved with parent glass.  
white and clean stones, and They shall bring the glory *Ap* 21, 26  
Alleluia shall be sung in its and honour of the nations  
streets. into it.
- Ap* 21, 18 The building of the wall The Kingdom of Heaven *Mt* 13, 44  
thereof was of jasper-stone; is like unto a treasure.  
but the city itself pure gold, The Kingdom of Heaven *Mt* 13, 45-  
like to clear glass. is like to a Merchant seeking 46
- Ap* 21, 19 The foundations of the good pearls,—Who, when he  
wall of the City were adorned had found one pearl of great  
with all manner of precious price, went his way and sold  
stones. all that he had, and bought
- Ap* 21, 21 The twelve gates are: it.

### 9.—MAGNITUDE AND MULTITUDE OF CELESTIAL GOODS.

- Ps* 35, 9 They shall be inebriated are seen are temporal; but  
with the plenty of Thy House, the things which are not seen  
and Thou shalt make them: are eternal.  
drink of the torrent of Thy My eyes shall see Jerusa- *Is* 33, 20  
Pleasure. lem, a rich habitation, a
- 2 *C* 5, 1 We know if our earthly Tabernacle that cannot be  
house of this habitation is removed, neither shall the  
dissolved, that we have a nails thereof be taken away  
building of God, a House for ever, neither shall any  
not made with hands, eternal of the cords thereof be broken.  
in Heaven.
- 2 *C* 4, 17- That which is at present He that spoke with me *Ap* 21, 15  
18 momentary and light of our had a measure of a reed of  
tribulation worketh for us gold.  
above measure exceedingly He looked for a City that *He* 11, 10  
an eternal weight of glory,— hath foundations, whose  
While we look not at the Builder and Maker is God.  
things which are seen, but at O how great is the multi- *Ps* 30, 20  
the things which are not tude of Thy sweetness, O  
seen. For the things which Lord, which Thou hast hid-

den for them that fear Thee! Eye hath not seen, nor ear  
Which Thou hast wrought heard, neither hath it entered  
for them that hope in Thee, into the heart of man, what  
in the sight of the sons of things God hath prepared  
men! for them that love Him.

## 10.—VARIETY OF REWARD FOR VARIETY OF LABOUR.

- Ps* 17, 21 The Lord will reward me according to my justice, and will repay me according to the cleanness of my hands. *2 C* 9, 6
- Mt* 5, 19 He that shall do and teach, he shall be called great in the Kingdom of Heaven. He that is the lesser in the Kingdom of Heaven is greater than he. *Mt* 11, 11
- Mt* 5, 12 Your Reward is very great in Heaven. To sit on My right or left Hand is not Mine to give to you, but to them for whom it is prepared by My Father. *Mt* 20, 23
- Ro* 2, 6 He will render to every man according to his works. I will give to them in My House, and within My walls, a place, and a name better than sons and daughters: I will give them an everlasting name which shall never perish. *Is* 56, 5
- Jn* 14, 2 In My Father's House there are many Mansions. No man could say the Canticle but those hundred and forty-four thousand, who were purchased from the earth. *Ap* 14, 3
- 1 C* 15, 41-42 One is the glory of the sun, another the glory of the moon, and another the glory of the stars. — For star differeth from star in Glory. So also is the Resurrection of the dead.

11.—ENJOYMENT WITHOUT WEARINESS OF  
ETERNAL LIFE.

- Je* 31, 25 I have inebriated the weary soul, and I have filled every hungry soul. Glorious things are said of thee, O City of God. *Ps* 86, 3
- Jl* 3, 18 It shall come to pass in that day that the mountains shall drop down sweetness, and the hills shall flow with milk; and water shall flow through all the rivers of Juda, and a Fountain shall come forth of the House of the Lord. He hath blessed thy children within thee. *Ps* 147, 2
- He satisfieth thy desire with good things; thy youth shall be renewed like the eagle's. *Ps* 102, 5
- He* 4, 9 There remaineth therefore a day of Rest for the people of God. I shall be satisfied when Thy Glory shall appear. *Ps* 16, 15
- Show us the Father, and it is enough for us. *Jn* 14, 8
- I saw the Holy City, the New Jerusalem, coming down out of Heaven from God, *Ap* 21, 2-3

prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. — And I heard a great Voice from the Throne, saying: Behold the Tabernacle of God with men, and He will dwell with them, and they shall be His people; and God Himself with them shall be their God.

Better is one day in Thy Courts above thousands. *Ps 83, 11*

Every one that hath left house, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for My Name's sake, shall receive an hundredfold, and shall possess Life Everlasting. *Mt 19, 29*

## 12.—PURITY OF HEAVENLY JOY WITHOUT ADMIXTURE OF SORROW.

*Ps 90, 10* There shall no evil come to thee, nor shall the scourge come near thy Dwelling.

*Ap 21, 4* God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and death shall be no more, nor mourning, nor crying, nor sorrow shall be any more, for the former things are passed away.

*Ap 7, 16-17* They shall no more hunger nor thirst, neither shall the sun fall on them, nor any heat.—For the Lamb, which is in the midst of the Throne, shall rule them, and shall lead them to the Fountains of the Waters of Life, and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

*Is 25, 7* He shall destroy in this mountain the face of the bond with which all people were tied, and the web that He began over all nations.

*Is 25, 8* He shall cast Death down headlong for ever; and the Lord shall wipe away tears from every face, and the reproach of His people He shall take away from off the whole earth; for the Lord hath spoken it.

*Is 35, 10* The redeemed of the Lord shall come into Sion with praise, and Everlasting Joy

shall be upon their heads. They shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

I will rejoice in Jerusalem, and joy in My people, and the voice of weeping shall no more be heard in her, nor the voice of crying. *Is 65, 19*

Iniquity shall no more be heard in thy Land, wasting nor destruction in thy borders, and Salvation shall possess thy walls, and praise thy gates. *Is 60, 18*

Thou shalt no more have the sun for thy light by day, neither shall the brightness of the moon enlighten thee; but the Lord shall be unto thee for an Everlasting Light, —And the days of thy mourning shall be ended. *Is 60, 19-20*

Give praise, O Daughter of Sion: shout, O Israel: be glad and rejoice with all thy heart, O daughter of Jerusalem. *So 3, 14*

Winter is now past, the rain is over and gone, the flowers have appeared in our Land. *Ca 2, 11*

I will clothe her Priests with Salvation, and her Saints shall rejoice with exceeding great joy. *Ps 131, 16*



## 13.—SAFETY WITHOUT ANXIETY.

- Ap 21, 25* The gates thereof shall not be shut by day; for there shall be no night There. height, and the breadth thereof are equal.
- Ca 5, 1* I have gathered my myrrh, with my aromatical spices. The City itself was pure gold, like to clear glass. *Ap 21, 18*
- Is 60, 11* Thy Gates shall be open continually: they shall not be shut day nor night, that the strength of the Gentiles may be brought to thee, and their Kings may be brought. I will be to it, saith the Lord, a Wall of fire round about; and I will be in glory in the midst thereof. *Za 2, 5*
- Is 33, 16* He shall dwell on High, the Fortifications of Rocks shall be his Highness; Bread is given him, his works are sure. They shall feed and shall lie down, and there shall be none to make them afraid. *So 3, 13*
- Is 45, 17* Israel is saved in the Lord with an Eternal Salvation: you shall not be confounded, and you shall not be ashamed for ever and ever. The Lord hath turned away thy enemies: the King of Israel the Lord is in the midst of thee, thou shalt fear evil no more. *So 3, 15*
- Ap 21, 10-12* He showed me the Holy City Jerusalem;—And it had a wall great and high. He has strengthened the bolts of thy Gates. *Ps 147, 2*
- Ap 21, 16* The City lieth in a four-square, and the length thereof is as great as the breadth: and he measured the City with a golden reed for twelve thousand furlongs, and the length, and the He hath placed Peace in thy borders. *Ps 147, 3*
- He that shall overcome I will make him a pillar in the Temple of My God: and he shall go out no more: and I will write upon him the Name of My God, and the Name of the City of My God, the New Jerusalem which cometh down out of Heaven from My God, and My New Name. *Ap 3, 12*

## 14.—SURE WAY OF OBTAINING ETERNAL LIFE.

- He 12, 14* Follow Peace with all men, and Holiness, without which no man shall see God. Be you also as living stones built up, a Spiritual House. *1 Pt 2, 5*
- Ac 14, 21* Through many tribulations we must enter into the Kingdom of God. Our feet were standing in thy courts, O Jerusalem:—Jerusalem, which is built as a city which is compact together. *Ps 121, 2-3*
- Mt 19, 17* If thou wilt enter Life, keep the Commandments. Go out quickly into the streets and lanes of the city, and bring in hither the poor, and the feeble, and the blind, and the lame. *Lu 14, 21*
- Mt 10, 39* He that shall lose his life for Me shall find it.
- 1 C 9, 24* Know you not that they that run in the race all run indeed, but one winneth the Prize? So run that you may obtain. He showed me the Holy City Jerusalem. It had twelve gates, and names

N

- written thereon which are but he that doth the Will of  
the names of the twelve My Father Who is in Heaven,  
tribes of the children of he shall enter into the King-  
Israel. dom of Heaven.
- Mt* 5, 20 Unless your justice abound If by the Spirit you mor- *Ro* 8, 13  
more than that of the Scribes, tify the deeds of the flesh,  
and Pharisees, you shall not, you shall live.
- enter into the Kingdom of Heaven. Labour the more, that by *2 Pt* 1, 10  
good works you may make
- Mt* 7, 21 Not every one that saith to sure your calling and elec-  
Me, Lord, Lord, shall enter tion. For doing these things,  
into the Kingdom of Heaven; you shall not sin at any time.

### 15.—ETERNAL LIFE THE REWARD OF LABOUR, AND NOT BESTOWED WITHOUT GRACE.

- Pt* 36, 18 The Lord knoweth the days Knowing that you shall re-  
of the undefiled, and their ceive of the Lord the reward  
Inheritance shall be for ever. of inheritance. Serve ye the
- Pt* 36, 29 The just shall inherit the Lord Christ.
- Land, and shall dwell therein To him that thirsteth I *Ap* 21, 6  
for evermore. will give of the Fountain of  
the Water of Life freely.
- Jn* 4, 36 He that reapeth receiveth I reckon that the sufferings *Ro* 8, 18  
wages, and gathereth fruit of this time are not worthy  
unto Life Everlasting. to be compared with the glory  
to come, that shall be re-  
vealed in us.
- W* 5, 18 The just shall live for ever- Come ye, buy wine and *Is* 55, 1  
more, and their reward is milk without money and  
with the Lord, and the care without any price.
- Ap* 22, 12 Behold, I come quickly; He that thirsteth, let him *Ap* 22, 17  
and My reward is with Me, come; and he that will, let  
to render to every man ac- him take the Water of Life  
cording to his works. freely.
- Cl* 3, 23-24 Whatsoever you do, do it from the heart, as to the  
Lord, and not to men;—

### 16.—ETERNAL LIFE NOT TO BE OBTAINED ON EARTH, ONLY TO BE WON BY COMBAT.

- Ex* 33, 20 Man shall not see Me and then face to face. Now I  
live. know in part; but then I
- He* 4, 3 We who have believed shall shall know, even as I am  
enter into Rest. known.
- Jb* 14, 1 Man born of a woman, While we are in the body *2 C* 5, 6-7  
living for a short time, is we are absent from the Lord.  
filled with many miseries. —(For we walk by faith, and  
not by sight.)—But we are
- 1 C* 13, 12 We see now through a glass in a dark manner; but confident, and have a good

will to be absent rather from the body, and to be present with the Lord.—And therefore we labour, whether absent or present, to please Him.

We have not here a lasting city, but we seek One that is to come.

God hath regenerated us *1 Pt 1, 3-4* unto a lively hope, by the Resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead.—Unto an Inheritance Incorruptible, and undefiled, and that cannot fade, reserved in Heaven for you,—Who are kept by Faith unto salvation.

*2 Ti 2, 5*

He is not crowned who does not strive lawfully.

*2 Ti 7, 1*

The life of man upon earth is a warfare, and his days are like the days of a hireling.

### 17.—ETERNAL LIFE ONLY TO BE WON WHEN LIFE'S COMBAT IS HAPPILY OVER.

*Lu 23, 43*

This day thou shalt be with Me in Paradise.

*Ac 7, 55*

Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God.

*Ac 7, 59*

Lord Jesus, receive my spirit.

*Ep 4, 8*

Ascending on High, He led captivity captive; He gave gifts to men.

*Ph 1, 21-23*

To me to live is Christ, and to die is gain.—And if to live in the flesh, this is the fruit of labour, and what I shall choose I know not.—But I am straitened between two, having a desire to be dissolved, and to be with Christ.

*He 9, 8*

The Holy Ghost signifying this: that the way into the

Holies was not yet made manifest, whilst the former Tabernacle was yet standing.

You are come to Mount Sion, and to the City of the

Living God, the Heavenly Jerusalem, and to the company of many thousands of Angels.—And to the Church of the First-born, who are written in the heavens, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of the just made perfect.

White robes were given to every one of them one: and it was said to them that they should rest for a little time, till their fellow-servants and their brethren, who are to be slain even as they, should be filled up.

### 18.—ETERNAL LIFE IS PROMISED TO THOSE WHO FIGHT AND WIN LAWFULLY.

*2 P 15, 7*

Do you take courage, and let not your hands be weakened: for there shall be a reward for your work.

*To 2, 18*

We are the children of Saints, and look for that life which God will give to those

that never change their faith in Him.

To him that overcometh I will give to eat of the Tree of Life, which is in the Paradise of My God.

Be thou faithful unto

- death, and I will give thee the Crown of Life.
- Ps 36, 11* The meek shall inherit the Land, and shall delight in abundance of Peace.
- Ap 2, 17* To him that overcometh I will give the Hidden Manna, and will give him a white counter, and in the counter a new name written, which no man knoweth but he that receiveth it.
- Ap 14, 13* Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord. From henceforth now, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours: for their works follow them.
- Ap 2, 26-28* He that shall overcome, and keep My works unto the end, I will give him power over the nations.—And he shall rule them with a rod of iron; and as the vessel of a potter they shall be broken.—As I also have received of My
- Father; and I will give him the Morning Star.
- He that shall overcome shall thus be clothed in white garments, and I will not blot his name out of the Book of Life, and I will confess his name before My Father and before His Angels.
- He that shall overcome shall possess these things, and I will be his God, and he shall be My son.
- If you be willing, and will hearken to Me, you shall eat the Good Things of the Land.
- Whom He justified, them He also glorified.
- They shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it.
- Thy people shall be all just, they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of My planting, the work of My Hand, to glorify Me.
- Ap 3, 8*
- Ap 21, 7*
- Is 1, 19*
- Ro 8, 30*
- Ap 21, 26*
- Is 60, 21*

### 19.—COWARDS, UNBELIEVERS, AND WICKED MEN FORFEIT ETERNAL LIFE.

- Ap 21, 8* The fearful and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremonsters, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, they shall have their portion in the pool burning with fire and brimstone, which is the second death.
- Ap 21, 27* There shall not enter into It anything defiled or that worketh abomination or maketh a lie, but they that are written in the Book of Life of the Lamb.
- Ap 22, 15* Without are dogs, and sorcerers, and unchaste, and murderers, and servers of idols, and every one that loveth and maketh a lie.
- If they hear not they shall pass by the sword, and shall be consumed in folly.
- I have seen those who work iniquity, and sow sorrows and reap them,—Perishing by the blast of God, and consumed by the Spirit of His Wrath.
- The enemies of the Lord, presently after they shall be honoured and exalted, shall come to nothing and vanish like smoke.
- The unjust shall be punished, and the seed of the wicked shall perish.
- I will visit upon you according to the fruit of your doings, saith the Lord: and
- Jb 35, 12*
- Jb 4, 8-9*
- Ps 36, 20*
- Ps 36, 29*
- Jc 21, 14*

I will kindle a fire in the forest thereof, and it shall devour all things round about it.

*Is* 52, 1 Henceforth the uncircumcised and unclean shall no more pass through thee.

*Jo* 3, 17 Jerusalem shall be holy, and strangers shall pass through it no more.

*Ps* 36, 1-2 Envy not them that work iniquity, for they shall shortly wither away as grass, and as the green herbs shall quickly fall.

*Ps* 10, 7 He shall rain snares upon sinners, fire and brimstone: and storms of winds shall be the portion of their cup.

*Ps* 91, 10 Behold, Thy enemies, O Lord, shall perish: and all the workers of iniquity shall be scattered.

*Ps* 7, 13-14 Except you will be converted, He will brandish His sword. He hath bent His bow, and made it ready.—And in it He hath prepared

the instruments of death. He hath made ready His arrows for them that burn.

Friend, how camest thou in *Mt* 22, 12 hither not having on a wedding garment? But he was silent.—Then the King said

to the waiters: Bind his hands and feet, and cast him into the exterior darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

At last came also the other *Mt* 25, 11-12 virgins, saying: Lord, Lord, open to us.—But He answering said: Amen I say to you, I know you not.

And He shall say to you: *Lu* 13, 27 I know you not whence you are: depart from Me, all ye workers of iniquity.

The Angels shall go out, *Mt* 13, 49-50 and shall separate the wicked from among the just.—And shall cast them into the furnace of fire; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

## 20.—YEARNING AFTER OUR HEAVENLY COUNTRY.

*Ge* 49, 18 I look for Thy Salvation, O Lord.

*Ps* 136, 5-6 If I forget thee, O Jerusalem, let my right hand be forgotten.—Let my tongue cleave to my jaws, if I do not remember thee; if I make not Jerusalem the beginning of my joy.

*Ps* 38, 13 Be not silent; for I am a stranger with Thee, and a sojourner, as all my fathers were.

*Ps* 72, 25 What have I in Heaven? and besides Thee what do I desire upon earth?

*Ps* 118, 174 I have longed for Thy Salvation, O Lord.

*Ps* 136, 1 Upon the rivers of Babylon

there we sat and wept, when we remembered Sion.

Our conversation is in Heaven. *Ps* 3, 20

Thou that dwellest in the gardens, the friends hearken: make me hear Thy Voice. *Ca* 8, 13

All those died according to faith, not having received

the promises, but beholding them afar off, and saluting them, and confessing that they are pilgrims and strangers on the earth.—For they that say these things do signify that they seek a country.—And truly if they had been mindful of that from whence they came out, they

- had doubtless time to return. In a desert land, and where *Ps 62, 3*  
 —But now they desire a better, that is to say a Heavenly Country. there is no way and no water; so in the Sanctuary have I come before Thee, to see Thy Power and Thy Glory.
- Ro 7, 24* Unhappy man that I am, who will deliver me from the body of this death! I have gone round, and *Ps 26, 6*  
*Ps 141, 8* Bring my soul out of prison, have offered up in His Tabernacle a sacrifice of jubilation; that I may praise Thy Name; I will sing and recite a psalm to the Lord. the just wait for me until Thou reward me.

## 21.—EJACULATIONS OF THE SOUL ARDENTLY DESIRING THE GLORY OF HEAVEN.

- Is 61, 3* [O, when shall be given] to the mourners of Sion a crown for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, a garment of praise for the spirit of grief! Better is one day in Thy Courts above thousands. *Ps 83, 11*
- Ps 26, 4* One thing I have asked of the Lord, this will I seek after: that I may dwell in the House of the Lord all the days of my life. That I may see the delight of the Lord, and may visit His Temple. Wo is me that my sojourn- *Ps 119, 5*  
 ing is prolonged! my soul has been long a sojourner.
- Ps 41, 1-2* As the hart panteth after the fountains of water, so my soul panteth after Thee, O God.—My soul hath thirsted after the strong living God: when shall I come and appear before the Face of God? My soul hath fainted after *Ps 118, 81*  
 Thy Salvation.
- Ps 54, 7* Who will give me wings like a dove, and I will fly and be at rest? For Thee my flesh and my heart hath fainted away: *Ps 72, 26*  
 Thou art the God of my heart, and the God that is my Portion for ever.
- Ps 59, 11* Who will bring me into the strong City? For Thee my flesh hath *Ps 62, 2*  
 thirsted; for Thee my flesh, O how many ways!
- Ex 33, 13* If I have found favour in Thy sight, O Lord, show me Thy Face. Open ye to me the gates of *Ps 117, 19*  
 Justice: I will go into them, and give praise to the Lord.
- Ps 83, 1* How lovely are Thy Tabernacles, O Lord of Hosts! my soul longeth and fainteth for the Courts of the Lord. O Lord, save me: O Lord, *Ps 117, 25*  
 give good success.
- Ps 83, 5* Blessed are they that dwell in Thy House, O Lord; they shall praise Thee for ever and ever. O Lord, we have patiently *Is 26, 8-*  
 waited for Thee: Thy Name and Thy remembrance are the desire of the soul.
- My soul hath desired Thee *Is 26, 9*  
 in the night: yea, and with my spirit within me in the morning early I will watch to Thee.
- Lord, all my desire is before *Ps 37, 10*  
 Thee, and my groaning is not hidden from Thee.
- Who will grant that my request may come: and that God may give me what I look for? *Jb 6, 8*

## PART II.

### FREE-WILL AND GOOD AND BAD HUMAN ACTIONS.

---

As has been shown, God is *necessarily* the End and Beatitude of man. But, although God is *necessarily* the End of man, still man must attain to God by his *free* exertions, for man is, by the very constitution of his nature, a *free* agent, and, as S. Thomas points out, "it belongs to God's Providence to control and direct each thing in a manner suitable to the conditions of its nature." \* Man's will is the immediate *subject* of his freedom, but his reason is the *root* of his freedom. As the reason judges, so the will elects. As are our thoughts, so are our actions. Hence the necessity of meditation and of filling our minds with the things of God. "With desolation," says the Prophet Jeremias, "is the whole world laid desolate, because there is no one that *thinketh* in his heart." † By good works alone we can "make our election sure."

#### 1.—USE OF FREE-WILL IN PURSUIT AFTER GOOD OR EVIL, VIRTUE OR VICE.

<i>Eci</i> 15, 14	God made man from the beginning, and left him in the hand of his own counsel.	Before man is Life and Death, Good and Evil: that which he shall choose shall be given him.	<i>Eci</i> 15, 18
<i>Eci</i> 15, 16-16	He added His commandments and precepts;—If thou wilt keep them, they will preserve thee.	Consider that I have set before thee this day Life and Good, and on the other	<i>Dt</i> 30, 15-16

---

\* Sum. Theol. 3<sup>ia</sup>. pars q. 61, a. 1.

† Jer. 12, 11.

- hand Death and Evil;—That thou mayst love the Lord thy God, and walk in His ways, and keep His Commandments.
- Ma 30, 19* I call Heaven and earth to witness this day that I have set before you Life and Death, blessing and cursing.
- De 30, 20* Choose therefore Life, that both thou and thy seed may live, and that thou mayst love the Lord thy God, and obey His voice.
- Os 13, 9* Destruction is thy own, O Israel: thy help is only in Me.
- He 10, 26-27* If we sin wilfully after having received the knowledge of the truth, there is now left no sacrifice for sins, —But a certain dreadful expectation of judgment, and the rage of a fire which shall consume the adversaries.
- Fr 53, 8* I will freely sacrifice to Thee, and will give praise, O God, to Thy Name because it is good.
- Nu 30, 14* It shall depend on the will of her husband whether she shall do it or not do it.
- Je 21, 8* Behold, I set before you the way of life and the way of death.
- Je 3, 5* Behold, thou hast spoken and hast done evil things, and hast been able.
- Je 24, 15* If it seem evil to you to serve the Lord, you have your choice; choose this day that which pleaseth you.
- Ge 4, 7* If thou do well, shalt thou not receive? but if ill, shalt not sin forthwith be present at the door? But the lust thereof shall be under thee, and thou shalt have dominion over it.
- He that hath determined, being steadfast in his heart, having no necessity, but having power of his own will. Without thy counsel I would do nothing; that thy good deed might not be as it were of necessity, but voluntary.
- If you be willing, and will hearken to Me, you shall eat the Good Things of the Land;—But if you will not, and will provoke Me to wrath, the sword shall devour you.
- It depends on the will of a man whether he shall do or not do.
- Because I called, and you refused, I stretched out My Hand, and there was none that regarded. — You have despised all My Counsel, and have neglected My reprehensions.—I also will laugh in your destruction, and will mock when that shall come to you which you feared.
- How often would I have gathered together thy children, as the hen doth gather her chickens under her wings, and thou wouldst not!
- You have been called unto liberty: only make not liberty an occasion to the flesh, but by charity of the Spirit serve one another.
- You are bought with a price: be not made the bond-slaves of men.
- 1 C 7, 37*
- Ps 14*
- Is 1, 19-20*
- Nu 30, 14*
- Ps 1, 24-25*
- Mt 23, 37*
- Ga 5, 13*
- 1 C 7, 23*

## 2.—INCENTIVES TO THE PRACTICE OF GOOD WORKS.

- Os 10, 12* Sow for yourselves in justice and reap in the month of mercy, break up your fallow ground; but the time



to seek the Lord is when He shall come that shall teach you justice.

In doing good let us not fail, for in due time we shall reap, not failing.—Therefore, whilst we have time let us work good to all men, but especially to those who are of the Household of the Faith.

*Za* 8, 16 Speak ye truth every one to his neighbour; judge ye truth and judgment of peace in your gates.

*Jn* 15, 16 I have appointed you that you should go, and should bring forth fruit, and your fruit should remain.

Labour the more, that by 1 *Pt* 1, 10-11 good works you may make sure your calling and election. For doing these things, you shall not sin at any time.—For so an entrance shall be ministered to you abundantly into the Everlasting Kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

*Ga* 6, 8 What things a man shall sow, those also shall he reap. For he that soweth in the flesh, of the flesh also shall reap corruption. But he that soweth in the Spirit, of the Spirit shall reap Life Everlasting.

### 3.—PRECEPTS AS TO GOOD WORKS.

*Os* 14, 9 From Me is thy fruit found.

and the cause which I knew not I searched out most diligently.

*Eci* 51, 38 Work your work before the time, and He will give you your reward in His time.

Turn away from evil and do good. *Ps* 33, 15

*Ps* 36, 27 Decline from evil and do good, and dwell for ever and ever.

Judge for the needy and fatherless: do justice to the humble and the poor. *Ps* 81, 3

*Pv* 16, 5 The beginning of a good way is to do justice: and this is more acceptable with God than to offer sacrifices.

Do not withhold him from doing good who is able: and if thou art able, do good thyself also. *Pv* 3, 27

*Ps* 14, 1-2 Lord, who shall dwell in Thy Tabernacle? or who shall rest in Thy Holy Hill?—He that walketh without blemish and worketh justice.

My son, in thy good deeds make no complaint; and when thou givest anything, add not grief by an evil word. *Eci* 18, 15

*2 E* 13, 14 Remember me, O my God, for this thing, and wipe not out my kindnesses, which I have done relating to the House of my God and His ceremonies.

Eat thy bread with the hungry and the needy, and with thy garments cover the naked. *To* 4, 17

*Eci* 15, 1 He that feareth God will do good.

The fruit of good labours is glorious. *W* 3, 15

*Jb* 29, 15-16 I was an eye to the blind and a foot to the lame.—I was the father of the poor:

Lay up for yourselves treasures in Heaven, where neither the rust nor the moth doth consume, and where thieves do not break

through nor steal. — For where thy Treasure is, there is thy heart also.

*Mt 12, 33* By the fruit the tree is known.

*Mt 7, 17* Every good tree yieldeth good fruit.

*Lu 13, 6-7* He spoke also this parable: A certain Man had a fig-tree planted in His Vineyard, and He came seeking fruit on it, and found none.—And He said to the dresser of the Vineyard: Behold, these three years I come seeking fruit on this fig-tree, and I find none. Cut it down, therefore: why cumbereth it the ground?

*Ja 15, 5-8* I am the Vine; you the branches. He that abideth in Me, and I in him, the same beareth much fruit: for without Me you can do nothing.—In this is My Father glorified: that you bring forth very much fruit and become My disciples.

*1 Pt 2, 12* Having your conversation good among the Gentiles: that whereas they speak against you as evil-doers, they may, by the good works which they shall behold in you, glorify God in the day of visitation.

*1 Co 3, 11-14* Other foundation no man can lay but that which is laid, which is Christ Jesus.—Now if any man build upon this foundation, gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble,—Every man's work shall be manifest: for the day of the Lord shall declare it, because it shall be revealed in fire: and the fire shall try every man's work, of what sort it is.—If any man's work abide which he

hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward.

Cornelius, thy prayer is heard, and thy alms are had in remembrance in the sight of God. *Ac 10, 31*

We are His workmanship, created in Christ Jesus in good works, which God hath prepared that we should walk in them. *Ep 2, 10*

Filled with the fruit of justice through Jesus Christ, unto the glory and praise of God. *Ph 1, 11*

[Jesus Christ] Who gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto Himself a people acceptable, pursuing good works. *Ti 2, 14*

May the communication of thy faith be made evident in the acknowledgment of every good work that is in you in Christ Jesus. *Ph 6*

God is not unjust, that He should forget your work, and the love which you have shown in His Name, you who have ministered and do minister to the saints.—And we desire that every one of you show forth the same carefulness to the accomplishing of hope unto the end. *He 6, 10*

Let us consider one another to provoke unto charity and to good works. *11*

Walk worthy of God, in all things pleasing: being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God. *He 10, 24*

A doer of the work: this man shall be blessed in his deed. *Cl 1, 10*

Do you see that by works a man is justified, and not by faith only? *Ja 1, 25*

Do you see that by works a man is justified, and not by faith only? *Ja 2, 24*

- Ja* 4, 17 To him, therefore, who knoweth to do good, and doeth it not, to him it is sin.
- 2 Pt* 1, 10 Brethren, labour the more, that by good works you may make sure your vocation and election. For doing these things, you shall not sin at any time.
- Mt* 3, 10 Now the axe is laid to the root of the trees. Every tree, therefore, that doth not yield good fruit shall be cut down, and cast into the fire.
- Jn* 15, 2 Every branch in Me that beareth not fruit He will take away; and every one that beareth fruit He will purge it, that it may bring forth more fruit.
- Tt* 3, 8 It is a faithful saying, and
- these things I will have thee affirm constantly, that they who believe in God may be careful to excel in good works. These things are good and profitable to men.
- What shall it profit, my brethren, if a man say he hath faith, but have not works? shall faith be able to save him?
- If a brother or sister be naked and want daily food,—And one of you say to them: Go in peace, Be ye warmed and filled, yet give them not those things that are necessary for the body, what shall it profit?—So faith also, if it have not works, is dead in itself.
- Ja* 2, 14
- Ja* 2, 15-17

4.—PURITY OF HEART AND PIETY TO BE UNITED  
TO EXTERIOR GOODNESS.

- Is* 1, 11, To what purpose do you  
16-17 offer Me the multitude of your victims? saith the Lord. I am full, I desire not holocausts of rams, and fat of fatlings, and blood of calves, and lambs and buck-goats.—Wash yourselves, be clean, take away the evil of your devices from My eyes; cease to do perversely,—Learn to do well: seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge for the fatherless, defend the widow.
- Is* 58, 2 To whom shall I have respect, but to him that is poor and little, and of a contrite spirit, and that trembleth at My words?
- Mt* 6, 6 What shall I offer to the Lord that is worthy? where-with shall I kneel before the High God? Shall I offer holocausts unto Him, and
- calves of a year old?
- May the Lord be appeased with thousands of rams, or with many thousands of fat he-goats? Shall I give my first-born for my wickedness, the fruit of my body for the sin of my soul?
- I will show thee, O man, what is good, and what the Lord requireth of thee. Verily to do judgment, and to love mercy, and to walk solicitous with thy God.
- Speak to all the people of the land, and to the Priests, saying: When you fasted and mourned in the fifth and the seventh month for these seventy years, did you keep a fast unto Me?
- And when you did eat and drink, did you not eat for yourselves and drink for yourselves?
- Mt* 6, 7
- Mt* 6, 8
- Za* 7, 5
- Za* 7, 6

**Za 7, 9-10** Thus saith the Lord of Hosts, saying: Judge ye true judgment, and show ye mercy and compassion every man to his brother.—And oppress not the widow, and the fatherless, and the stranger, and the poor; and let not a man devise evil in his heart against his brother. Religion clean and undefiled before God and the Father is this: to visit the fatherless and widows in their tribulation, and to keep one's self unspotted from this world. **Ja 1, 21**

### 5.—OF THOSE WHO NEGLECT DUTIES AND BOAST OF RELIGION.

**Mt 3, 8** I am filled with the strength of the Spirit of the Lord, with judgment and power, to declare unto Jacob his wickedness, and to Israel his sin. between a man and his neighbour,—I will dwell with you in this Place, in the land which I gave to your fathers from the beginning and for evermore.

**Mt 3, 9-12** Hear this, ye Princes of the House of Jacob, and ye judges of the House of Israel, you that abhor judgment, and pervert all that is right.—You shall build up Sion with blood, and Jerusalem with iniquity.—The Princes have judged for bribes, and her Priests have taught for hire, and her Prophets divined for money; and they leaned upon the Lord, saying: Is not the Lord in the midst of us? No evil shall come upon us.—Therefore, because of you, Sion shall be ploughed as a field, and Jerusalem shall be as a heap of stones, and the mountain of the Temple as the high places of the forests.

**Je 7, 3** Make your ways and your doings good, and I will dwell with you in this Place.

**Je 7, 4** Trust not in lying words, saying: The Temple of the Lord, the Temple of the Lord, it is the Temple of the Lord.

**Je 7, 5, 7** For if you will order well your ways and your doings, if you will execute judgment: Bring forth fruit worthy of penance.—And think not to say within yourselves: We have Abraham for our father. Hear ye these things, O House of Jacob, you that are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Juda, you who swear by the Name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, but not in truth nor in justice.—For they are called of the Holy City, and are established upon the God of Israel: the Lord of Hosts is His Name. **Je 7, 8-10** Behold, you put your trust in lying words which shall not profit you.—To steal, to murder, to commit adultery, to swear falsely, to offer to Baalim, and to go after strange gods which you know not.—And you have come and stood before Me in this House, in which My Name is called upon, and have said: We are delivered, because we have done these abominations. **Mt 3, 8-9** **Je 48, 1-2**

6.—OPPORTUNITY FOR DOING GOOD MUST BE PROMPTLY SEIZED AND OCCASIONS WATCHED FOR.

- Is* 55, 6      Seek ye the Lord while He may be found: call upon Him while He is near.
- Jn* 7, 37      If any man thirst, let him come to Me and drink.
- 2 P* 29, 11    My sons, be not negligent. The Lord hath chosen you to stand before Him, and to minister to Him, and to worship Him.
- Ecl* 11, 6      In the morning sow thy seed, and in the evening let not thy hand cease; for thou knowest not which may rather spring up, this or that; and if both together, it shall be better.
- Eci* 51, 38    Work your work before the time, and He will give you your reward in His time.
- Jn* 9, 4       The night cometh, when no man can work.
- Lk* 19, 13    Trade till I come.
- Jn* 12, 36-37   Yet a little while the Light is among you. Walk whilst you have the Light, that the darkness overtake you not.—And he that walketh in darkness knoweth not whither he goeth.
- See, brethren, how you walk circumspectly; not as unwise,—But as wise; redeeming the time, because the days are evil
- Behold, I stand at the gate and knock. If any man shall hear My voice, and open to Me the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with Me.
- Understand, ye senseless among the people; and you fools, be wise at last.
- To-day, if you shall hear His voice, harden not your hearts.
- I called, and you refused: I stretched out My hand, and there was none that regarded.
- There is a time and opportunity for every business, and great affliction for man.
- All things have their season, and in their time all things pass under Heaven.
- I gave her [Jezebel] a time that she might do penance, and she will not repent of her fornication.

7.—FRUITS OF GOOD AND EVIL DEEDS.

- Is* 17, 10      I am the Lord, Who search the heart and prove the reins: Who give to every one according to his way, and according to the fruit of his devices.
- Is* 68, 4       I will bring upon them the things they feared, because they have done evil in My eyes, and have chosen the things that displease Me.
- Pv* 11, 18      The wicked maketh an unsteady work; but to him that soweth justice there is a faithful reward.
- If you be willing, and will hearken to Me, you shall eat the good things of the Land.—But if you will not, and will provoke Me to wrath, the sword shall devour you.
- Say to the just man that it is well, for he shall eat the fruit of his doings.
- He will render to a man his work, and according to

the ways of every one He will reward them.

*Ro 2, 6-8* He will render to every man according to his works.—To them indeed who, according to patience in good work, seek glory, and honour, and incorruption, Eternal Life.—But to them that are contentious and obey not the truth, but give credit to iniquity, wrath and indignation. Tribulation and anguish *Ro 2, 9-11* upon every soul of man that worketh evil, of the Jew first, and also of the Greek.—But glory, and honour, and peace to every one that worketh good, to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.—For there is no respect of persons before God.

### 8.—ALL RIGHT ACTIONS TO BE DONE WITH A VIEW TO THE GLORY OF GOD.

*1 Pt 4, 11* If any man speak, let him speak as the words of God. If any man minister, let him do it as of the power which God administereth; that in all things God may be honoured through Jesus Christ; to Whom is glory and empire for ever and ever. Amen.

*1 C 10, 31* Whether you eat or drink, or whatsoever else you do, do all to the glory of God.

*Cl 3, 17* All whatsoever else you do in word or in work, do all in the Name of the Lord Jesus Christ, giving thanks to God and the Father by Him.

*Mt 6, 22-23* The light of thy body is thy eye. If thy eye be single, thy whole body shall be light-some.—But if thy eye be evil, thy whole body shall be darksome. If then the light that is in thee be darkness, the darkness itself how great shall it be!

*3 K 6, 22* There was nothing in the Temple that was not covered with gold.

Give praise to the Lord, *P 117, 1* for He is good; for His Mercy endureth for ever.

Labour not for the meat *Jn 6, 27* which perisheth, but for that which endureth unto Life Everlasting, which the Son of man will give you.

He that doeth truth cometh to the light, that his works may be made manifest, because they are done in God. *Jn 3, 21*

Take heed that you do *Mt 6, 1-2,* not your justice before men, 6 that you may be seen by them: otherwise you shall not have a reward from your Father.—But when you doest alms, let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth.—But thou when thou shalt pray, enter into thy chamber, and having shut the door, pray to thy Father in secret; and thy Father, Who seeth in secret, will reward thee.

### 9.—PURITY OF INTENTION AND HEART ACCEPTABLE TO GOD.

*Js 24, 14* Fear the Lord, and serve Him with a perfect and a most sincere heart. Let our hearts be perfect *3 K 8, 61* with the Lord our God, that we may walk in His statutes

- and keep His Commandments.
- Pv 11, 3* The simplicity of the just shall guide them.
- Dt 18, 13* Thou shalt be perfect and without spot before the Lord thy God.
- 1 P 22, 19* Give your hearts and your souls to seek the Lord your God.
- Pv 4, 23* With all watchfulness keep thy heart, because life issueth out from it.
- Pv 5, 1-2* My son, attend to My wisdom, and incline thy ear to My prudence.—That thou mayst keep thoughts, and thy lips may preserve instruction.
- Eci 37, 21* A wicked word shall change the heart, out of which four manner of things arise, good and evil, life and death; and the tongue is continually the ruler of them.
- My Son, give Me thy heart; and let thy eyes keep My ways.
- Evil thoughts are an abomination to the Lord; and pure words most beautiful shall be confirmed by Him.
- Purge out the old leaven, that you may be a new paste, as you are unleavened. For Christ our Pasch is sacrificed.—Therefore let us feast not with the leaven of malice and wickedness, but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.
- At all times let thy garments be white, and let not oil depart from thy hand.
- Thou hast a few names in Sardis which have not defiled their garments; and they shall walk with Me in white, because they are worthy.
- Pv 23, 26*
- Pv 15, 26*
- 1 C 5, 7-8*
- Eci 9, 8*
- Ap 3, 4*

10.—AN EVIL INTENTION DISPLEASES TO GOD,  
DESTROYING THE MERITS OF GOOD WORKS.

- Ge 4, 3-5* Cain offered, of the fruits of the earth, gifts to the Lord.—Abel also offered of the firstlings of his flock and of their fat: and the Lord had respect to Abel and to his offerings.—But to Cain and his offerings He had no respect.
- Is 1, 15* When you stretch forth your hands I will turn away my eyes from you: and when you multiply prayer I will not hear, for your hands are full of blood.
- Eci 2, 14* Wo to the sinner that goeth on the earth two ways!
- Os 9, 4* They shall not offer wine to the Lord, neither shall they please Him: their sacrifices shall be like the bread of mourners; all that shall eat it shall be defiled; for their bread is life for their soul, it shall not enter into the House of the Lord.
- They shall sow wind, and reap a whirlwind.
- When thou dost an alms-deed sound not a trumpet before thee, as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may be honoured by men.
- The unjust shall be caught in their own snares.
- The bud shall yield no meal; and if it should yield, strangers shall eat it.
- Amen, amen I say to you, you seek Me not because you have seen miracles, but because you did eat of the loaves and were filled.
- Os 8, 7*
- Mt 6, 2*
- Pv 11, 6*
- Os 8, 7*
- Jn 6, 26*

## 11.—ACTS OF HYPOCRISY MANIFOLD.

- Je* 12, 2 Thou art near, O Lord, in their mouth, and far from their reins. secretly he lieth in wait for him.
- Je* 32, 7 The vessels of the deceitful are most wicked; for he hath framed devices to destroy the meek with lying words, when the poor man speaketh judgment. There is none to comfort her among all them that were dear to her: all her friends have despised her, and are become her enemies.
- Je* 139, 4 They have sharpened their tongues like a serpent; the venom of asps is under their lips. They that eat with thee shall lay snares under thee.
- Je* 42, 20-21 You have deceived your own souls; for you sent me to the Lord our God, saying: Pray for us to the Lord our God, and according to all that the Lord our God shall say to thee so declare unto us, and we will do it.—And now I have declared it to you this day, and you have not obeyed the Voice of the Lord your God. They say, and do not. For they bind heavy and insupportable burdens, and lay them on men's shoulders, and with a finger of their own they will not move them.
- Ps* 34, 20-21 They spoke indeed peaceably to me; and speaking in the anger of the earth, they devised guile. — And they opened their mouth wide against me: they said: Well done, well done; our eyes have seen it. All their works they do for to be seen of men. For they make their phylacteries broad, and enlarge their fringes.
- Ps* 11, 3 Their throat is an open sepulchre; with their tongues they acted deceitfully; the poison of asps is under their lips. Wo to you Scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! because you shut the Kingdom of Heaven against men: for you yourselves do not enter in, and those that are going in you suffer not to enter.— Wo to you Scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! because you devour the houses of widows, praying long prayers: for this you shall receive the greater judgment.
- Je* 9, 4 Let every man take heed of his neighbour, and let him not trust in any brother of his: for every brother will utterly supplant, and every friend will walk deceitfully. Wo to you Scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! because you tithe the mint and anise and cummin, and have left the weightier things of the Law: judgment and mercy and faith. These things you ought to have done, and not leave those undone.—Blind guides, who strain out a gnat and swallow a camel!
- Je* 9, 8 Their tongue is a piercing arrow, it hath spoken deceit: with his mouth one speaketh peace with his friend, and Wo to you Scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! be-

*Le* 1, 2*Ab* 7*Mt* 23, 3-4*Mt* 23, 5*Mt* 23, 13  
14*Mt* 23, 23-  
24*Mt* 23, 25-  
26



cause you make clean the outside of the cup and of the dish, but within you are full of rapine and uncleanness.—Thou blind Pharisee, first make clean the inside of the cup and of the dish, that the outside may become clean.

- Pv 30, 12* There is a generation that are pure in their own eyes, and yet are not washed from their filthiness.
- Eci 19, 23* There is one that humbleth himself wickedly, and his interior is full of deceit.
- There is one that submit-teth himself exceedingly with a great lowliness; and there is one that casteth down his countenance, and maketh as if he did not see that which is unknown.
- And if he be hindered from sinning for want of power, if he shall find opportunity to do evil, he will do it.
- Lying lips hide hatred. *Pv 10, 18*

## 12.—MANIFOLD EFFECTS OF HYPOCRISY.

- Pv 10, 10* He that winketh with the eye shall cause sorrow.
- Je 9, 8-9* Their tongue is a piercing arrow, it hath spoken deceit; with his mouth one speaketh peace with his friend, and secretly he lieth in wait for him.—Shall I not visit them for these things? saith the Lord; or shall not My soul be revenged on such a nation?
- Mt 24, 51* He shall separate him, and appoint his portion with the hypocrites. There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.
- Pv 26, 28* A deceitful tongue loveth not truth, and a slippery mouth worketh ruin.
- Eci 3, 28* A heart that goeth two ways shall not have success, and the perverse of heart shall be scandalised therein.
- Eci 32, 19* He that seeketh the Law shall be filled with it; and he that dealeth deceitfully shall meet with a stumbling-block therein.
- Jb 8, 13-15* The hope of the hypocrite shall perish.—His folly shall not please him, and his trust shall be like the spider's web.—He shall lean upon his house, and it shall not stand; he shall prop it up, and it shall not rise.
- The congregation of the hypocrite is barren.
- This I know from the beginning, since man was placed upon the earth:—That the praise of the wicked is short, and the joy of the hypocrite but for a moment.—If his pride mount up even to heaven, and his head touch the clouds,—In the end he shall be destroyed like a dunghill, and they that had seen him shall say: Where is he?—As a dream that fleeth away, he shall not be found; he shall pass as a vision of the night.
- Deceitful souls go astray in sins. *Pv 13, 13*
- What is the hope of the hypocrite, if through covetousness he take by violence, and God deliver not his soul?—Will God hear his cry when distress shall come upon him?—Or can he delight himself with the Almighty, and call upon God at all times? *Jb 27, 8-10*

## 13.—HYPOCRISY SOONER OR LATER DETECTED.

<i>Mt</i> 10, 26	Nothing is covered that shall not be revealed, nor hid that shall not be known.	attire of the body, and the laughter of the teeth, and the gait of the man show what he is.
<i>Pv</i> 28, 28	He that covereth hatred deceitfully, his malice shall be laid open to the public assembly.	Examples of hypocrisy:
<i>Jb</i> 20, 15	The riches which he hath swallowed he shall vomit up, and God shall draw them out of his belly.	(1) Herod. <i>Mt</i> 2, 8
<i>Pv</i> 10, 9	He that walketh sincerely walketh confidently; but he that perverteth his ways shall be manifest.	(2) Judas. <i>Jn</i> 12, 5
<i>Eci</i> 19, 26-27	A man is known by his look; and a wise man, when thou meetest him, is known by his countenance.—The	(3) Pilate. <i>Mt</i> 27, 24
		(4) The High Priest. <i>Mt</i> 26, 65
		(5) Ananias and Saphira. <i>Ac</i> 5, 1
		(6) Simon, the magician. <i>Ac</i> 8, 9
		(7) Pharaoh. <i>Ex</i> 8, 23
		(8) Balaam, the sooth-sayer. <i>Nu</i> 23, 10
		(9) Saul. <i>1 K</i> 15, 13
		(10) Absalom. <i>2 K</i> 15, 5
		(11) Hazael. <i>4 K</i> 8, 12
		(12) Jehu. <i>4 K</i> 10, 31
		(13) Johanan. <i>Je</i> 42, 20

## 14.—HYPOCRITES HATED BY GOD.

<i>Pv</i> 11, 20	A perverse heart is abominable to the Lord, and His Will is in them that walk sincerely.	is an abomination before God.
<i>Lu</i> 6, 46	Why call you Me Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?	God is a Spirit, and they that adore Him must adore Him in Spirit and in Truth. <i>Jn</i> 4, 24
<i>W</i> 1, 5	The Holy Spirit of discipline will fly from the deceitful.	Forasmuch as this people draw near Me with their mouth, and with their lips glorify Me, but their heart is far from Me, and they have feared Me with the commandment and doctrines of men:—Therefore, behold, I will proceed to cause an admiration in this people by a great and wonderful miracle; for Wisdom shall depart from their wise men, and the understanding of their prudent men shall be hid. <i>Is</i> 29, 13-14
<i>Jb</i> 13, 16	No hypocrite shall come before His Presence.	
<i>Jb</i> 36, 13	Dissemblers and crafty men prove the wrath of God; neither shall they cry out when they are bound.	
<i>Lu</i> 16, 15	You are they who justify yourselves before men, but God knoweth your hearts; for that which is high to men	

## 15.—HYPOCRISY FORBIDDEN, PURITY AND SINCERITY OF HEART COMMENDED.

<i>1 Pt</i> 2, 1	Laying away all malice, and all guile, and dissimulations, and envies, and all out guile.	detractions, as new-born babes desire the rational milk without
------------------	---	---

- Ja* 4, 8 Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double-minded.
- Eci* 1, 38 Be not incredulous to the fear of the Lord; and come not to Him with a double heart.
- Eci* 1, 37 Be not a hypocrite in the sight of men, and let not thy lips be a stumbling-block to them.
- Eci* 1, 38-40 Watch over them, lest thou fall and bring dishonour upon thy soul,—And God discover thy secrets, and cast thee down in the midst of the congregation.—Because thou camest to the Lord wickedly, and thy heart is full of guile and deceit.
- W* 1, 1 Think of the Lord in goodness, and seek Him in simplicity of heart.
- Is* 24, 14 Fear the Lord, and serve Him with a perfect and most sincere heart.
- Ps* 31, 2 Blessed is the man in whose spirit there is no guile.
- He that walketh sincerely *Ps* 10, 9 walketh confidently.
- A perverse heart is abominable to the Lord: and His will is in them that walk sincerely. *Ps* 11, 20
- Let us feast, not with the old leaven, nor with the leaven of malice and wickedness, but with the Unleavened Bread of Sincerity and Truth. *1 Co* 5, 8
- Our glory is this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity of heart and sincerity of God, and not in carnal wisdom, but in the grace of God, we have conversed in this world. *2 Co* 1, 12
- From a sincere heart love one another earnestly. *1 Pt* 1, 22
- That you may be blameless, and sincere children of God, without reproof, in the midst of a crooked and perverse generation: among whom you shine as lights in the world. *Ph* 2, 15

16.—HUMAN ACTIONS, WHETHER GOOD OR EVIL,  
DO NOT INTRINSICALLY AFFECT GOD.

- Pv* 9, 12 If thou be wise, thou shalt be so to thyself; and if a scorner, thou alone shalt bear the evil.
- Jb* 35, 6 If thou sin, what shalt thou hurt Him? and if thy iniquities be multiplied, what shalt thou do against Him?
- Jl* 35, 7 If thou do justly, what shalt thou give Him, or what shall He receive at thy hand?
- Jb* 35, 8-9 Thy wickedness may hurt a man that is like thee; and thy justice may help the son of man.—By reason of the multitude of oppressors they shall cry out, and shall
- wait for the violence of the arm of tyrants.
- What is man, and what is his grace? and what is his good, or what is his evil? *Eci* 18, 7
- What doth it profit God if thou be just? or what dost thou give Him if thy way be unspotted? *Jb* 22, 3
- When you shall have done all these things which are commanded you, say: We are unprofitable servants; we have done that which we ought to do. *Lk* 17, 10
- Who hath first given to Him, and recompense shall be made him? *Ro* 11, 35

*Jb* 28, 2-3 Whose helper art thou? thou given counsel? perhaps  
Is it of him that is weak? to him that hath no wisdom,  
and dost thou hold up the arm of him that has no  
strength? — To whom hast  
and thou hast shown thy  
very great prudence.

17.—GOD CAN MAKE USE OF ONE MAN INSTEAD OF  
ANOTHER.

<i>Mt</i> 3, 9	Think not to say within yourselves: We have Abraham for our father. For I tell you that God is able of these stones to raise up children to Abraham.	One Head, and shall come up out of the land; for great is the day of Jezrahel.	<i>Mt</i> 21, 43
<i>Os</i> 1, 10	The number of the children of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea, that is without number, and shall not be numbered. And it shall be in the place where it shall be said to them: You are not my people; it shall be said to them: Ye are the sons of the Living God.	The Kingdom of God shall be taken from you, and shall be given to a nation yielding the fruits thereof. He saith to His servants: <i>Mt</i> 22, 8-9 The marriage indeed is ready, but they that were invited were not worthy. — Go ye therefore into the highways, and as many as you shall find, call to the marriage.	
<i>Os</i> 1, 11	The children of Juda and the children of Israel shall be gathered together; and they shall appoint themselves	Hold fast that which thou hast, that no man take thy Crown. He shall break in pieces many and innumerable, and shall make others to stand in their stead.	<i>Ap</i> 3, 11 <i>Jb</i> 34, 24

---

## PART III.

### EXTERNAL AND INTERNAL LAW.

---

MAN, as has been seen, attains to his End by freely exerting himself in the pursuit of good and the avoidance of evil. But evil often appears in the guise of good, and good is often represented as evil. How then shall man distinguish between them? Evidently he needs some rule or standard by which he can test actions

whether they be good or evil. God has not been wanting to man in his necessity, but has supplied him with the needed rule or standard ; and it is twofold :

I. The Natural Law, or the Light of Conscience.

II. The Divine-Positive Law of the Old and New Testaments.

A human action is in every way good provided that it is in perfect conformity to these laws, but it is evil if it be out of harmony with them.

We will add to our texts on Law a few Sacred Texts on the passions, which S. Paul often calls by the name of *law*, that so we may set forth more forcibly the necessity of grace.

### 1.—GOD THE SUPREME LAWGIVER.

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <p><i>Ex</i> 31, 18 The Lord gave to Moses two stone Tables of Testimony, written with the finger of God.</p> <p><i>Ex</i> 34, 27-28 The Lord said to Moses: Write thee these words, by which I have made a Covenant both with thee and with Israel.—And he was there with the Lord forty days and forty nights: he neither ate bread nor drank water; and he wrote upon the Tables the ten words of the Covenant.</p> <p><i>De</i> 9, 10 The Lord gave me two Tables of stone, written with the finger of God, and containing all the words that He spoke to you in the Mount from the midst of the fire, when the people were assembled together.</p> <p><i>Os</i> 8, 12 I shall write to them My manifold Laws.</p> | <p>Thou camest down to <i>2 F 9</i>, 13 Mount Sinai, and did speak with them from Heaven; and Thou gavest them right judgments, and the law of Truth, ceremonies and good precepts.</p> <p>The Lord is our Judge, the Lord is our Lawgiver, the Lord is our King: He will save us. The Lord shall give unto Him [Christ our Saviour] the Throne of David His Father, and He shall reign in the House of Jacob for ever.</p> <p>Let every soul be subject to higher powers: for there is no power but from God; and those that are, are ordained of God.</p> <p>Therefore he that resisteth the power resisteth the ordinance of God. And they that resist purchase to themselves damnation.</p> | <p><i>Is</i> 33, 22</p> <p><i>Lu</i> 1, 32</p> <p><i>Ro</i> 13, 1</p> <p><i>Ro</i> 13, 2</p> |
|--|---|--|

- Ro* 13, 3 For Princes are not a terror to the good work, but to the evil. Wilt thou not be afraid of the power? Do that which is good, and thou shalt have praise from the same.
- Ro* 13, 5 Wherefore be subject of necessity, not only for wrath, but also for conscience' sake.
- Ex* 20, 11 I have given to them My Statutes, and I showed them My judgments, which if a man do, he shall live in them.
- Remember the Law of *Ma* 4, 4 Moses My servant, which I commanded him in Horeb for all Israel, the precepts and judgments.
- He set up a Testimony in *Ps* 87, 5 Jacob, and made a Law in Israel. How great things He commanded our fathers, that they should make the same known to their children!

## 2.—COMPENDIUM AND END OF THE LAW.

- Mt* 7, 12 All things whatsoever you would that men should do to you, do you also to them. For this is the Law and the Prophets.
- Ro* 13, 10 The love of our neighbour worketh no evil. Love, therefore, is, the fulfilling of the Law.
- Ga* 5, 14 All the Law is fulfilled in one word: Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.
- Ga* 6, 2 Bear ye one another's burdens, and so you shall fulfil the Law of Christ.
- 1 Th* 1, 5 The end of the commandment is charity from a pure heart, and a good conscience, and an unfeigned faith.
- The law of the wise is a *Pv* 13, 14 fountain of life, that he may decline from the ruin of death.
- If thou wilt enter into Life, *Mt* 19, 17 keep the commandments.
- By this shall all men know *Jn* 13, 35 that you are My disciples, if you have love one for another.
- Let us all hear together the *Eccl* 12, 13 conclusion of the discourse: Fear God and keep His commandments: for this is all man.

## 3.—THE LAW OF GOD IS SWEET AND EASY, INSTRUCTING THE HEARER, PERFECTING THE DOER OF THE SAME.

- Mt* 11, 30 My yoke is sweet and My burden light.
- 1 J* 5, 3 This is the charity of God, that we keep His commandments: and His commandments are not heavy.
- Eccl* 34, 8 The word of the Law shall be fulfilled without a lie, and wisdom shall be made plain in the mouth of the faithful.
- Pv* 6, 23 The commandment is a lamp, and the law a light, and reproofs of instruction are the way of Life.
- The declaration of Thy *Ps* 118, 130 Words giveth light: and giveth understanding to little ones.
- He that keepeth the law is *Pv* 28, 7 a wise son.
- You shall observe and fulfil *Dt* 4, 6 them in practice. For this is your wisdom and understanding in the sight of nations, that hearing all these precepts, they may say: Behold a wise and understanding people, a great nation.

## 4.—FRUITS OF FAITHFUL OBSERVANCE OF THE LAW.

- Pv* 13, 15 Good instruction shall give grace: in the way of scorners is a deep pit. *Take up My yoke upon you, Mt* 11, 29 and learn of Me, because I am meek and humble of heart: and you shall find rest to your souls.
- Eci* 15, 16 If thou wilt keep the commandments and perform acceptable fidelity for ever, they shall preserve thee. *They that remain shall Eci* 23, 37 know that there is nothing better than the fear of God: and that there is nothing sweeter than to have regard to the commandments of the Lord.
- Eci* 32, 18-19 He that feareth the Lord will receive His discipline; and they that will seek Him early shall find a blessing.—He that seeketh the Law shall be filled with it; and he that dealeth deceitfully shall meet with a stumbling-block therein. *It is great glory to follow Eci* 23, 38 the Lord, for length of days shall be received from Him.
- Eci* 33, 3 A man of understanding is faithful to the Law of God, and the Law is faithful to him. *He that keepeth justice Eci* 21, 12-13 shall get the understanding thereof.—The perfection of the fear of God is wisdom and understanding.
- Pv* 27, 18 He that keepeth the fig-tree shall eat the fruit thereof; and he that is the keeper of his Masters shall be glorified. *He that keepeth the Law Eci* 35, 1 multiplieth offerings.
- Pv* 29, 27 The son that keepeth the Word shall be free from destruction. *It is a wholesome sacrifice Eci* 35, 2-3 to take heed to the commandments, and to depart from all iniquity.—And to depart from injustice is to offer a propitiatory sacrifice for injustices, and a begging of pardon for sins.
- W* 6, 19-20 The keeping of her laws is the firm foundation of incorruption;—And incorruption bringeth near to God.

## 5.—EXHORTATIONS TO HEAR AND TO MEDITATE UPON GOD'S LAW, AND TO BEAR IT EVER IN MIND.

- Pv* 22, 17-18 Incline thine ear, and hear the words of the wise, and apply thy heart to My doctrine:—Which shall be beautiful for thee, if thou keep it in thy bowels, and it shall flow in thy lips. *meditate continually on His Dt* 6, 6 commandments: and He will give thee a heart, and the desire of wisdom shall be given to thee.
- Pv* 23, 12 Let thy heart apply itself to instruction, and thy ears to words of knowledge. *These words which I command Dt* 6, 6 thee this day shall be in thy heart.
- Eci* 6, 37 Let thy thoughts be upon the precepts of God, and *Thou shalt bind them as a Dt* 6, 8-9 sign on thy hand, and they shall be and shall move between thy eyes.—And thou

shalt write them in the entry and on the doors of thy house. and the doors of thy house.  
 Thou shalt tell them to thy children. *Dt 6, 7*

*Dt 11, 18,* Lay up these My words in Teach your children that *Dt 11, 19*  
 20 your hearts and minds, and they meditate on them, when  
 hang them for a sign on your thou sittest in thy house,  
 hands, and place them be- and when thou walkest on  
 tween your eyes.—Thou shalt the way, and when thou liest  
 write them upon the posts down and risest up.

## 6.—REWARDS PROMISED TO THE DOER OF THE LAW.

*Pv 3, 1-2* My son, forget not My law, the sight of my mother.—  
 and let thy heart keep My And He taught me, and said:  
 commandments.—For they Let thy heart receive My  
 shall add to thee length of words, keep My command-  
 days, and years of life and ments, and thou shalt live.  
 peace.

*Pv 3, 3-4* Let not mercy and truth Get wisdom, get prudence; *Pv 4, 5-6*  
 leave thee: put them about forget not, neither decline  
 thy neck, and write them from the words of My mouth.  
 in the tables of thy heart.— Forsake her not, and she  
 And thou shalt find grace shall keep thee: love her,  
 and good understanding before and she shall preserve thee.

*Pv 3, 21-* My son, let not these My son, hearken to My *Pv 4, 20-*  
*22, 25-26* things depart from thy eyes: words, and incline thy ear to 22  
 keep the law and counsel:— My sayings.—Let them not  
 And there shall be life to depart from thy eyes, keep  
 thy soul and grace to thy them in the midst of thy  
 mouth. heart;—For they are life to  
 —Then shalt thou walk those that find them, and  
 confidently in thy way, health to all flesh.  
 and thy foot shall not stumble.—  
 If thou sleep thou shalt not My son, keep the command- *Pv 6, 20-*  
 fear; thou shalt rest, and sements of thy father, and for- 22  
 thy sleep shall be sweet.—Be sake not the law of thy  
 not afraid of sudden fear, nor mother.—Bind them in thy  
 of the power of the wicked fall- heart continually, and put  
 ing upon thee.—For the Lord them about thy neck.—When  
 will be at thy side, and will thou walkest, let them go  
 keep thy foot that thou be with thee: when thou sleep-  
 not taken. est, let them keep thee: and  
 when thou awakest, talk  
 with them.

*Pv 4, 1* Hear, ye children, the in- My son, keep My words, *Pv 7, 1-3*  
 struction of a father, and and lay up My precepts with  
 attend that you may know thee. Son,—Keep My com-  
 prudence. mandments, and thou shalt  
 live: and My law, as the

*Pv 4, 2-4* I will give you a good gift, apple of thy eye.—Bind it  
 forsake not My law. For I upon thy fingers, write it  
 also was My father's son, upon the tables of thy heart.



- 1 *Mt* 2, 50-51 O My sons, be ye zealous for the Law, and give your lives for the Covenant of your fathers.—And call to remembrance the works of the fathers, which they have done in their generations: and you shall receive great glory and an Everlasting Name.
- 1 *Mt* 2, 64 My sons, take courage, and behave manfully in the Law: for by it you shall be glorious.
- Jb* 22, 21-22 Submit thyself then to Him, and be at peace: and thereby thou shalt have the best fruits.—Receive the Law of His mouth, and lay up His words in thy heart.
- Js* 55, 2-3 Hearken diligently to Me, and eat that which is good, and your soul shall be delighted in fatness.—Incline your ear and come to Me: hear and your soul shall live, and I will make an Everlasting Covenant with you, the faithful mercies of David.
- O that thou hadst hearkened to My commandments! thy peace had been as a river, and thy justice as the waves of the sea.
- If thou wilt enter into Life, keep the commandments.
- This is My Beloved Son in Whom I am well pleased: hear ye Him.
- Be ye doers of the Word; and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.—For if a man be a hearer of the Word and not a doer, he shall be compared to a man beholding his natural countenance in a glass.—For he beheld himself, and went his way, and presently forgot what manner of man he was.—But he that hath looked into the perfect law of liberty, and hath continued therein, not becoming a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work: this man shall be blessed in his deed.
- Js* 48, 18
- Mt* 19, 17
- Mt* 17, 5
- Ja* 1, 22-25

### 7.—NEGLECT OF THE LAW BRINGING RUIN AND ETERNAL PUNISHMENT.

- Mt* 7, 26-27 Every one that heareth these My words and doth them not shall be like a foolish man that built his house upon the sand:—And the rain fell, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and they beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall thereof.
- Jb* 28, 10 Let us have pity on the wicked, but he will not learn justice: in the Land of the Saints he hath done wicked things, and he shall not see the Glory of the Lord.
- God hath given him place for penance, and he abuseth it unto pride: but His eyes are upon his ways.
- The heavens shall reveal his iniquity, and the earth shall rise up against him.—The offspring of his house shall be exposed, he shall be pulled down in the day of God's wrath.—This is the portion of a wicked man from God, and the inheritance of his doings from the Lord.
- He that soweth iniquity
- Jb* 24, 23
- Jb* 20, 27-29
- Pv* 22, 8

shall reap evils, and with the rod of His anger he shall be consumed.

*Pv 10, 25* As a tempest that passeth, so the wicked shall be no more,

*Pv 33, 22* The death of the wicked is very evil: and they that hate the just shall be guilty.

*Pv 11, 7* When the wicked man is dead, there shall be no hope any more.

*W 4, 19-20* They shall fall after this without honour, and be a reproach among the dead for ever: for He shall burst them puffed up and speechless, and shall shake them from the foundations, and they shall be utterly laid waste: they shall be in sorrow, and their memory shall perish. — They shall come with fear at the thought of their sins, and their iniquities shall stand against them to convict them.

*W 5, 1-15* Then shall the just stand with great constancy against those that have afflicted them, and taken away their labours. — These seeing it shall be troubled with terrible fear, — Saying within themselves, repenting, and groaning for anguish of spirit: These are they whom we had some time in derision, and for a parable of reproach. — We fools esteemed their life madness, and their end without honour. — Behold how they are numbered among the children of God, and their lot is among the Saints. — Therefore we have erred from the Way of Truth, and the Light of Justice hath not shined unto us, and the Sun of understanding hath

not risen upon us. — We wearied ourselves in the way of iniquity and destruction, and have walked through hard ways, but the Way of the Lord we have not known. — What hath pride profited us? or what advantage hath the boasting of riches brought us? — All those things are passed away like a shadow, and like a post that runneth on. — So we also being born, forthwith ceased to be, and have been able to show no mark of virtue; but are consumed in our wickedness. — Such things as these the sinners said in hell: — For the hope of the wicked is as dust, which is blown away with the wind, and as a thin froth which is dispersed by the storm, and a smoke that is scattered abroad by the wind, and as the remembrance of a guest of one day that passeth by.

Wo to the wicked unto evil, for the reward of his hands shall be given him! *Is 3, 11*

Wo to them that desire the day of the Lord! to what end is it for you? The day of the Lord is darkness, and not light. — Shall not the day of the Lord be darkness, and not light: and obscurity, and no brightness in it? *Am 5, 18, 20*

Acting wickedly against the laws of God doth not pass unpunished. *2 M 4, 17*

Thy pride is brought down to hell, thy carcass is fallen down: under thee shall the moth be strewed, and worms shall be thy covering. *Is 14, 11*

Depart from Me, you cursed, into everlasting fire which was prepared for the *Mt 25, 41, 46*

devil and his angels.—And these shall go into everlasting punishment.

*Mt* 13, 49-50 So shall it be at the end of the world. The angels shall go out, and shall separate the wicked from among the just.—And shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

*Ap* 11, 15, 18 The kingdom of this world is become our Lord's and His Christ's, and He shall reign for ever and ever.—And Thy wrath is come, and the time of the dead, that they should be judged, and that Thou shouldest destroy them that have corrupted the earth.

*Ap* 21, 8 The fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, they shall have their portion in

the pool burning with fire and brimstone, which is the second death.

Unless thou hold thyself diligently in the fear of the Lord, thy house shall quickly be overthrown. *Eci* 27, 4

The earth is infected by the inhabitants thereof: because they have transgressed the laws, they have changed the ordinance, they have broken the everlasting covenant.—Therefore shall a curse devour the earth, and the inhabitants thereof shall sin: and therefore they that dwell therein shall be mad, and few men shall be left. *Is* 24, 5-6

The Lord Jesus shall be revealed from Heaven with the Angels of His power,—In a flame of fire yielding vengeance to them who know not God, and who obey not the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ. *2 T* 1, 7-8

### 8.—FORCE OF HABIT FOR GOOD OR EVIL.

*Ja* 23, 8, 9 Cleave ye unto the Lord your God, as you have done until this day.—And then no man shall be able to resist you.

*Ps* 1, 6 Being confident of this very thing, that He Who hath begun a good work in you will perfect it unto the day of Jesus Christ.

*Je* 13, 23 If the Ethiopian can change his skin, or the leopard his spots, you also may do well when you have learned evil.

*Pv* 22, 6 It is a proverb: A young man according to his way, even when he is old he will not depart from it.

It is good for a man when he hath borne the yoke from his youth.—He shall sit solitary and hold his peace, because he hath taken it up upon himself. *La* 3, 27-28

His bones shall be filled with the vices of his youth, and they shall sleep with him in the dust. *Jb* 20, 11

Despairing, they have given themselves up to lasciviousness, unto the working of all uncleanness, unto covetousness. *Eph* 4, 19

Wo to you that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as the rope of a cart! *Is* 5, 18

### 9.—STRENGTH OF THE INTERIOR LAW OR CONSCIENCE FOR GOOD OR EVIL.

- Po* 20, 27 The spirit of a man is the Lamp of the Lord, which searches all the hidden things of the bowels.
- Ro* 2, 14-15 When the Gentiles, who have not the Law, do by nature those things that are of the Law; these having not the Law, are a law to themselves: who show the work of the Law written in their hearts, their conscience bearing witness to them, and their thoughts between themselves accusing or also defending one another.
- Ro* 14, 14 To him that esteemeth anything to be unclean, to him it is unclean.
- Ti* 1, 15 All things are clean to the clean; but to them that are defiled and to unbelievers nothing is clean, but both their mind and their consciences are defiled.
- 1 J* 3, 21-22 If our heart do not reprehend us, we have confidence towards God:—And whatsoever we shall ask, we shall receive of Him, because we keep His commandments, and do those things which are pleasing in His sight.
- Po* 15, 15 All the days of the poor are evil: a secure mind is like a continual feast.
- 2 Co* 1, 12 Our glory is this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity of heart and sincerity of God, and not in carnal wisdom, but in the grace of God, we have conversed in this world, and more abundantly towards you.
- In every work of thine regard thy soul in faith: for this is the keeping of the commandments.
- Day and night Thy hand was heavy upon me: I am turned in my anguish whilst the thorn is fastened.
- Whereas wickedness is fearful, it beareth witness of its condemnation: for a troubled conscience always forecasteth grievous things.
- Over them only [the Egyptians] was spread a heavy night, an image of that darkness which was to come upon them. But they were to themselves more grievous than the darkness.
- The wicked man, when he is come into the depth of sins, contemneth: but ignominy and reproach follow him.
- By what things a man sinneth, by the same also he is tormented.
- I will make Babylon a possession for the ericius.
- The wicked are like the raging sea, which cannot rest.
- Eci* 32, 27
- Po* 31, 1
- W* 17, 10
- W* 17, 20
- Po* 18, 3
- W* 11, 17
- Is* 14, 23
- Is* 57, 20

### 10.—POWER OF THE PASSIONS OF THE SOUL FOR GOOD OR EVIL.

- Eci* 13, 31 The heart of a man changeth his countenance either for good or for evil.
- Ec* 15, 13 A glad heart maketh a cheerful countenance; but by grief of mind the spirit is cast down.
- The wickedness of a wo-
- Eci* 25, 24

man changeth her face: and she darkeneth her countenance as a bear, and sheweth it like sackcloth.

- Pv 21, 29* The wicked man impudently hardeneth his face: but he that is righteous correcteth his way.
- Pv 25, 28* As a city that lieth open and is not compassed with walls, so is a man that cannot restrain his own spirit in speaking.
- A hot soul is a burning *Eci 23, 22* fire: it will never be quenched till it devour something.
- Soundness of heart is the *Pv 14, 30* life of the flesh: but envy is the rottenness of the bones.

### 11.—ASPIRATIONS OF ONE WHO DESIRES AND RESOLVES TO KEEP GOD'S LAW.

- Pz 118, 5* O that my ways may be directed to keep Thy justifications!
- Pz 118, 8* I will keep Thy justifications; O, do not Thou utterly forsake me! Let me not stray from Thy Commandments.
- Pz 118, 44* In Thy words I have hoped exceedingly; so shall I always keep Thy law, for ever and ever.
- I have said, I would keep *Pz 118, 57* Thy law.
- Thy justifications I will *Pz 118, 93* never forget, for by them Thou hast given me life.
- I have sworn and am de- *Pz 118, 106* termined to keep the judgments of Thy justice.
- I am ready and am not *Pz 118, 60* troubled: that I may keep Thy commandments.

### 12.—ASPIRATIONS OF ONE SEEKING LIGHT AND GRACE TO UNDERSTAND AND TO KEEP GOD'S LAW.

- Ex 33, 13* If I have found favour in Thy sight, show me Thy Face, that I may know Thee, and may find grace before Thy eyes.
- Is 34, 32* If I have erred, teach Thou me.
- Pz 118, 10* With my whole heart have I sought after Thee: let me not stray from Thy commandments.
- Pz 118, 12* Blessed art Thou, O Lord: teach me Thy justifications.
- Pz 118, 35-36* Lead me into the path of Thy commandments; for this same I have desired.—Incline my heart unto Thy testimonies, and not to covetousness.
- Show, O Lord, Thy ways to *Pz 24, 4-5* me, and teach me my paths.
- Direct me in Thy truth and teach me; for Thou art God my Saviour, and on Thee have I waited all the day.
- Send forth Thy light and *Pz 42, 3* Thy truth: they have conducted me and brought me unto Thy Holy Hill and into Thy Tabernacle.
- Lead me into the Eternal *Pz 138, 24* Way.
- Cause me to hear Thy *Pz 142, 8* mercy in the morning, for in Thee have I hoped. Make the way known to me wherein I should walk, for I have lifted up my soul to Thee.

- Ps* 142, 10 Teach me to do Thy will, for Thou art my God. Thy Good Spirit shall lead me into the right Land, for Thy Name's sake.
- Ps* 38, 6 O Lord, make me know my end, and what is the number of my days, that I may know what is wanting to me.
- Ps* 85, 11 Conduct me, O Lord, in Thy Way, and I will walk in Thy truth. Let my heart rejoice that it may fear Thy Name.
- Ps* 118, 80 Let my heart be undefiled in Thy justifications, that I may not be confounded.
- Ps* 118, 18 Open Thou my eyes, and I will consider the wondrous things of Thy Law.
- Ps* 118, 19 I am a sojourner on the earth: hide not Thy commandments from me.
- I am Thy servant: give me understanding; that I may know Thy testimonies. Thy testimonies are justice for ever: give me understanding, and I shall live.
- Make me to understand the way of Thy justifications, and I shall be exercised in Thy wondrous works.
- Give me understanding, and I will search Thy law; and I will keep it with my whole heart.
- Thy hands have made me and formed me: give me understanding, and I will learn Thy commandments.
- Make Thy face to shine upon Thy servant, and teach me Thy justifications.

13.—ASPIRATIONS OF ONE WHO DESIRES TO KEEP  
THE DIVINE LAW PERFECTLY, AND WHO  
GRIEVES TO SEE IT BROKEN.

- Ps* 118, 38 Establish Thy word to Thy servant, in Thy fear.
- Ps* 118, 33 Set before me for a law the way of Thy justifications, O Lord, and I will always seek after it.
- Ps* 118, 133 Direct my steps according to Thy Word, and let no iniquity have dominion over me.
- Ps* 12, 5 Enlighten my eyes that I may never sleep in death; lest at any time my enemy say: I have prevailed against him.
- Ps* 118, 20 My soul hath coveted to long for Thy justifications at all times.
- Ps* 118, 53 A fainting hath taken hold of me, because of the wicked that forsake Thy Law.
- My eyes have sent forth springs of water, because they have not kept Thy Law.
- My zeal hath made me pine away, because my enemies forgot Thy words.
- I beheld the transgressors, and I pined away, because they kept not Thy word.
- Thus saith the Lord God: Strike with thy hand and stamp with thy foot, and say: Alas for all the abominations of the evils of the House of Israel!
- How long, O Lord, shall the enemy approach! Is the Adversary to provoke Thy Name for ever!

#### 14.—ASPIRATIONS OF ONE WHO LOOKS UPON THE LAW OF GOD AS EASY AND SWEET.

- Pz* 118, 54 Thy justifications were the subject of my song in the place of my pilgrimage. the way of Thy testimonies, as in all riches.
- Pz* 118, 103 How sweet are Thy words to my palate! More than honey to my mouth! They have dissipated Thy Law;—Therefore have I loved Thy commandments above gold and the topaz. *Pz* 118, 128-127
- Pz* 118, 111 I have purchased Thy testimonies for an inheritance for ever, because they are the joy of my heart. O how have I loved Thy Law, O Lord! It is my meditation all the day. *Pz* 118, 97
- Pz* 118, 72 The law of Thy mouth is good to Me, above thousands of gold and silver. Thy words were found, and I did eat them, and Thy word was to me a joy and gladness of my heart. *Je* 15, 16
- Pz* 118, 14 I have been delighted in

#### 15.—EJACULATIONS OF ONE WHO KEEPS GOD'S LAW IN THE FACE OF DEATH.

- Pz* 118, 109 My soul is continually in my hands, and I have not forgotten Thy Law. not from Thy Law. The wicked have waited for me to destroy me: but I have understood Thy testimonies. *Pz* 118, 96
- Pz* 118, 61 The cords of the wicked have encompassed me: but I have not forgotten Thy Law. Sinners have laid a snare for me: but I have not erred from Thy precepts. *Pz* 118, 110
- Pz* 118, 51 The proud did iniquitously altogether: but I declined

#### 16.—EJACULATIONS OF ONE HUMBLY OFFERING HIS GOOD WORKS TO GOD.

- 4 *K* 20, 3 I beseech Thee, O Lord, remember how I have walked before Thee in truth and with a perfect heart, and have done that which is pleasing before Thee. I spoke also to the Levites that they should be purified, and should come to keep the gates, and to sanctify the Sabbath-day; for this also remember me, O my God, and spare me according to the multitude of Thy tender mercies. 2 *E* 13, 22
- 2 *E* 5, 19 Remember me, O my God, for good, according to all that I have done for this people. O Lord, Thou knowest, remember me, and visit me, and defend me from them that persecute me: know that for Thy sake I have suffered reproach. *Je* 15, 15
- 2 *E* 13, 14 Remember me, O my God, for this thing, and wipe not out my kindnesses, which I have done relating to the House of my God and His ceremonies.

## PART IV.

### ACTUAL AND HABITUAL GRACE.

ENLIGHTENED by Conscience, "the law written on our hearts," and by the Divine-Positive Law, man is enabled to distinguish between good and evil. But what avails it to *know* the good, if we lack the power to *achieve* it? And yet, the Council of Orange says, "No man hath anything of his own save lying and sin." \* But God comes once more to our assistance; and as He enlightens our minds by His *Law*, so He also fortifies and elevates our wills by His *Grace*. Grace overcomes the sluggishness and repugnance of our fallen natures, and confers upon our pursuit of the good a supernatural character and dignity.

#### 1 —PREVENTING AND HELPING GRACE.

- 271, 2 He hath delivered us and we ought: but the Spirit called us by His holy calling; Himself asketh for us with not according to our works, unspeakable groanings. but according to His own. Whosoever are led by the purpose and grace, which Spirit of God, they are the was given us in Christ Jesus sons of God. *Ro 8, 14*
- Ap 3, 20 Behold. I stand at the gate, and knock. If any man shall hear My Voice, and open to Me the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with Me. His Mercy shall prevent me. *Ps 58, 11*  
The Lord loveth mercy *Ps 83, 12*  
and truth: the Lord will give grace and glory. *Jn 1, 16*  
Of His fulness we all have received, and grace for grace. *Pv 3, 34*  
To the meek He will give grace. *Ja 4, 6*  
The Spirit helpeth our infirmity. For we know not what we should pray for as humble. God giveth grace to the humble.

\* Second Council of Orange, canon 22.



<i>Pa</i> 2, 13	It is God Who worketh in you both to will and to accomplish, according to His good will. And do ye all things without hesitations.	What hast thou that thou hast not received? No man can come to Me, except the Father, Who hath sent Me, draw him.	<i>1 C</i> 4, 7 <i>Jn</i> 6, 44
-----------------	--	--	------------------------------------

## 2.—SUFFICIENT AND EFFICACIOUS GRACE.

<i>Ac</i> 9, 6	Lord, what wilt Thou have me to do?	of the wizard that charmeth wisely.	
<i>Ro</i> 10, 20	I was found by them that did not seek Me: I appeared openly to them that asked not after Me.	Turn ye to Me, saith the Lord of Hosts, and I will turn to you, saith the Lord of Hosts.	<i>Za</i> 1, 3
<i>Ro</i> 10, 16	All do not obey the Gospel. For <i>Isaias</i> saith: Lord, who hath believed our report?	The Lord waiteth that He may have mercy on you.	<i>Is</i> 30, 18
<i>Ps</i> 57, 5-6	The wicked have spoken false things. Their madness is according to the likeness of a serpent: like the deaf asp that stoppeth her ears;—Which will not hear the voice of the charmers, nor	If you be willing and will hearken to Me, you shall eat the good things of the land. If any man love Me, he will keep My word, and My Father will love him; and We will come to him, and will make Our abode with him.	<i>Is</i> 1, 19 <i>Jn</i> 14, 23

## 3.—HELPS OF GRACE GIVEN SUFFICIENTLY TO

## ADULTS.

<i>Jb</i> 25, 3	Upon whom shall not His light arise?	That was the True Light, which enlighteneth every man that cometh into this world.	<i>Jn</i> 1, 9
<i>Ps</i> 3, 28	The Lord will be at thy side, and will keep thy foot, that thou be not taken.	We labour and are reviled, 1	<i>Ti</i> 4, 10
<i>Eze</i> 18, 8-11	The number of the days of men, at the most, are a hundred years: as a drop of water of the sea are they esteemed: and as a pebble of the sand, so are a few years compared to Eternity.—Therefore God is patient in them, and poureth forth His mercy upon them.—He hath seen the presumption of their heart that it is wicked, and hath known their end that it is evil.—Therefore hath He filled up His mercy in their favour, and hath shown them the way of justice.	In times past He suffered all nations to walk in their own ways.—Nevertheless He left not Himself without testimony, doing good from heaven, giving rains and fruitful seasons, filling our hearts with food and gladness.	<i>Ac</i> 14, 15-16
		The invisible things of Him, from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being understood by the	<i>Ro</i> 1, 20-21

things that are made: His ened.

Eternal Power also and He will have all men to be saved, and to come to the knowledge of the truth.—Because that, when they knew God, they have not glorified Him as God, or given thanks: but became vain in thoughts, and their foolish heart was dark—Who gave Himself a Redemption for all.

#### 4.—NO SINNER, HOWEVER GREAT, IS IN THIS LIFE DESTITUTE OF NECESSARY MEANS OF SALVATION.

*Is* 49, 14-15 Sion said: The Lord hath forsaken Me, and the Lord hath forgotten me. Can a woman forget her infant, so as not to have pity on the son of her womb? and if she should forget, yet will not I forget thee.

*Ex* 33, 10-11 Thou, O son of man, say to the House of Israel: Thus you have spoken, saying: Our iniquities and our sins are upon us, and we pine away in them: how then can we live?—Say to them: As I live, saith the Lord God, I desire not the death of the wicked, but that the wicked turn from his way, and live.

*Mt* 11, 28 Come to Me, all you that labour and are burdened, and I will refresh you.

*2 Pt* 3, 9 The Lord delayeth not His promise, as some imagine, but dealeth patiently for your sake, not willing that any should perish, but that all should return to penance.

*Ro* 2, 4 Despisest thou the riches of His goodness, and patience,

*Is* 49, 14-15 Sion said: The Lord hath forsaken Me, and the Lord hath forgotten me. Can a woman forget her infant, so as not to have pity on the son of her womb? and if she should forget, yet will not I forget thee.

*Ex* 33, 10-11 Thou, O son of man, say to the House of Israel: Thus you have spoken, saying: Our iniquities and our sins are upon us, and we pine away in them: how then can we live?—Say to them: As I live, saith the Lord God, I desire not the death of the wicked, but that the wicked turn from his way, and live.

*Mt* 11, 28 Come to Me, all you that labour and are burdened, and I will refresh you.

*2 Pt* 3, 9 The Lord delayeth not His promise, as some imagine, but dealeth patiently for your sake, not willing that any should perish, but that all should return to penance.

*Ro* 2, 4 Despisest thou the riches of His goodness, and patience,

#### 5.—SUFFICIENT GRACE GIVEN TO ALL, BUT NOT IN EQUAL MEASURE.

*Ps* 147, 20 He hath not done in like manner to every nation, and His judgments He hath not made manifest to them.

If in Tyre and Sidon had been wrought the miracles that have been wrought in you, they had long ago done

- penance in sackcloth and ashes.
- Me* 11, 25- I confess to Thee, O Father,  
26 Lord of Heaven and earth, because Thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them to little ones.—Yea, Father, for so hath it seemed good in Thy sight.
- Mt* 13, 11 To you it is given to know the mysteries of the Kingdom of Heaven: but to them it is not given.
- He hath mercy on whom He will: and whom He will, He hardeneth.
- He that is good shall draw grace from the Lord.
- All you that thirst, come to the waters; and you that have no money, make haste, buy and eat; come ye, buy wine and milk without money, and without any price.
- Ro* 9, 18
- Pv* 12, 2
- Is* 55, 1

6.—NECESSITY OF GRACE FOR MAKING ACTS OF FAITH, HOPE, AND CHARITY, AND OTHER SUPERNATURAL VIRTUES.

- 1 *C* 12, 3 No man can say, The Lord Jesus, but by the Holy Ghost.
- 2 *C* 3, 5 Not that we are sufficient to think anything of ourselves as of ourselves; but our sufficiency is from God.
- Mt* 16, 17 Blessed art thou, Simon Bar-Jona: because flesh and blood hath not revealed it to thee, but My Father, Who is in Heaven.
- Mt* 11, 27 No one knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither doth any one know the Father, but the Son, and he to whom it shall please the Son to reveal Him.
- Ep* 2, 8-9 By grace you are saved through faith, and that not of yourselves; for it is the gift of God,—Not of works, that no man may glory.
- Jn* 6, 29 This is the work of God, that you believe in Him Whom He hath sent.
- Jn* 6, 66 No man can come to Me, unless it be given him by My Father.
- Je* 32, 40 I will give My fear in their heart, that they may not revolt from Me.
- Je* 31, 19 After Thou didst convert me, I did penance; and after Thou didst show unto me, I struck my thigh.
- God hath given to the Gentiles repentance unto life.
- Knowest thou not that the benignity of God leadeth thee to penance?
- Charity is of God.
- The charity of God is poured forth in our hearts by the Holy Ghost, Who is given to us.
- The fruit of the Spirit is charity.
- O God of Hosts, convert us, and show us Thy face, and we shall be saved.
- Convert us, O Lord, to Thee, and we shall be converted.
- Convert me, and I shall be converted, for Thou art the Lord my God.
- No man can come to Me, except the Father, Who hath sent Me, draw him.
- It is God Who worketh in you, both to will and to accomplish according to His good will.
- Ac* 11, 18
- Ro* 2, 4
- 1 *J* 4, 7
- Ro* 5, 5
- Ga* 5, 22
- Ps* 49, 8
- La* 5, 21
- Je* 31, 18
- Jn* 6, 44
- Ph* 2, 13

**7.—CO-OPERATING GRACE ENABLING MAN TO KEEP  
THE PRECEPTS OF THE DIVINE LAW, AND TO  
SHUN SIN.**

- Ez* 36, 26-27 I will give you a new heart, and put a new spirit within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and will give you a heart of flesh.—And I will put My Spirit in the midst of you: and I will cause you to walk in My Commandments, and to keep My judgments and do them.
- Jn* 15, 5 Without Me you can do nothing.
- Ro* 3, 20 By the works of the law no flesh shall be justified before Him. For by the law is the knowledge of sin.
- Ecl* 15, 16-18 If thou wilt keep the Commandments, and perform acceptable fidelity for ever, they shall preserve thee.—He hath set water and fire before thee: stretch forth thy hand to which thou wilt.—Before man is life, and good and evil: that which he shall choose shall be given him.
- This commandment, that I command thee this day, is not above thee, not far off from thee:—Nor is it in Heaven, that thou shouldst say: Which of us can go up to Heaven to bring it unto us, and we may hear and fulfil it in work? But the Word is very nigh unto thee, in thy mouth and in thy heart, that thou mayst do it.
- If you love Me, keep My Commandments.
- He that hath My Commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth Me.
- This is the charity of God, that we keep His Commandments; and His Commandments are not heavy.
- Dt* 30, 11-12, 14
- Jn* 14, 15
- Jn* 14, 21
- 1 J* 5, 3

**8.—MAN NOT ABLE TO AVOID VENIAL SIN BY THE  
NATURAL LAW ALONE.**

- 3 K* 8, 46 There is no man who sinneth not.
- Pv* 24, 16 A just man shall fall seven times, and shall rise again.
- Ecl* 7, 21 There is no just man upon earth that doth good, and sinneth not.
- Mt* 6, 12 Forgive us our debts.
- Mt* 18, 21-22 Then came Peter unto Him, and said: Lord, how often shall my brother offend against me, and I forgive him? till seven times?—Jesus saith to him: I say not to thee till seven times, but till seventy times seven times.
- Follow not in thy strength the desires of thy heart.
- The good which I will I do not; but the evil which I will not, that I do.
- If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.
- In many things we all offend.
- I see another law in my members, fighting against the law of my mind, and captivating me in the law of sin.
- Ecl* 5, 2
- Ro* 7, 19
- 1 J* 1, 8
- Ja* 3, 2
- Ro* 7, 23

**9.—ACTUAL GRACE NECESSARY TO PERSEVERE IN THE FRIENDSHIP OF GOD, AND IN THE KEEPING OF HIS COMMANDMENTS.**

- P<sup>r</sup> 93, 16-** Who shall rise up for me to direct his steps.  
**18** against the evil-doers? or Watch ye, and pray that *Mt* 26, 41  
 who shall stand with me ye enter not into temptation.  
 against the workers of ini- Thus shall you pray: Lead *Mt* 6, 9-13  
 quity? — Unless the Lord us not into temptation, but  
 had been my helper, my soul deliver us from evil. Amen.  
 had almost dwelt in hell.—If Holy Father, keep them *Jn* 17, 11,  
 I said: My foot is moved, in Thy Name whom Thou 15  
 Thy mercy, O Lord, assisted hast given Me: that they  
 me. may be one, as We also are.
- P<sup>r</sup> 126, 1** Unless the Lord build the —I pray not that Thou  
 house, they labour in vain shouldst take them out of  
 that build it. the world, but that Thou  
**P<sup>r</sup> 126, 1** Unless the Lord keep the shouldst keep them from  
 city, he watcheth in vain evil.  
 that keepeth it. Simon, Simon, behold *Lu* 10, 31-
- P<sup>r</sup> 26, 9** Be Thou my helper, for- Satan hath desired to have 32  
 sake me not; do not Thou you, that he may sift you as  
 despise me, O God my Sa- wheat.—But I have prayed  
 viour. for thee, that thy faith fail  
**Ca** 8, 5 Who is this that cometh not: and thou being once  
 up from the desert, flowing converted, confirm thy bre-  
 with delights, leaning upon thren.  
 her Beloved? We have this treasure in 2 *C* 4, 7  
**Je** 10, 23 I know, O Lord, that the earthen vessels, that the  
 way of man is not his: neither excellency may be of the  
 is it in a man to walk and power of God and not of us.

**10.—THE JUST MAN, WITH THE HELP OF GOD, CAN PERSEVERE IN GRACE UNTIL DEATH.**

- Jn** 15, 4 Abide in Me, and I in you. the severity; but towards  
 As the branch cannot bear thee, the goodness of God, if  
 fruit of itself, unless it abide thou abide in goodness;  
 in the vine, so neither can otherwise thou also shalt be  
 you, unless you abide in Me. cut off.
- Jn** 15, 9-10 Abide in My love.—If you Be thou faithful unto *Ap* 2, 10  
 keep My Commandments, death, and I will give thee  
 you shall abide in My love; the Crown of Life.  
 as I also have kept My Stand fast in the faith. 1 *C* 16, 13  
 Father's Commandments, and Whosoever is born of God 1 *Jn* 3, 9  
 do abide in His love. committeth not sin; for his  
**Ro** 11, 22 See the goodness and the seed abideth in him, and he  
 severity of God: towards cannot sin, because he is born  
 them indeed that are fallen, of God.

- 2 C1, 21- He that confirmeth us with | also hath sealed us, and given  
 22 you in Christ, and that hath | the pledge of the Spirit in  
 anointed us, is God:—Who | our hearts.

### 11.—GOD THE EFFICIENT CAUSE OF GRACE.

- Ps* 83, 12 The Lord will give grace | He is near that justifieth | *Is* 50, 8  
 and glory. | me: who will contend with  
*1 C* 15, 10 By the grace of God I am | me?  
 what I am. | Who can make him clean  
*Ps* 12, 2 He that is good shall draw | that is conceived of unclean  
 grace from the Lord. | seed? Is it not Thou Who  
*Ro* 1, 7 Grace to you and peace | only art?  
 from God our Father, and | I am, I am He that blot  
 from the Lord Jesus Christ. | out thy iniquities for My  
*Ja* 4, 6 He giveth grace to the | Own sake, and I will not  
 humble. | remember thy sins.  
*1 Pt* 5, 10 The God of all grace, Who | Our God is the God of sal- *Ps* 67, 21  
 hath called us unto His eter- | vation: and of the Lord, of  
 nal glory in Christ Jesus, | the Lord are the issues from  
 after you have suffered a | death.  
 little, will Himself perfect | Salvation is of the Lord. *Ps* 3, 9  
 you, and confirm you, and | I am, I am the Lord: and *Is* 43, 11  
 establish you. | there is no Saviour besides  
*Ro* 4, 5 To him that believeth in | Me.  
 Him that justifieth the un- | I am the Lord thy God: *Os* 13, 4  
 godly, his faith is reputed | and thou shalt know no God  
 to justice according to the | but Me, and there is no Sa-  
 purpose of the grace of God. | viour besides Me.

### 12.—CHRIST THE MERITORIOUS CAUSE OF GRACE; GOD THE FINAL CAUSE OF GRACE.

- Ep* 1, 5-6 He had predestinated us | all spiritual blessings in hea-  
 unto the adoption of chil- | venly places in Christ.  
 dren through Jesus Christ | Of His fulness we have all *Jn* 1, 16-  
 unto Himself, according to | received, and grace for grace. | 17  
 the purpose of His will:— | —For the law was given by  
 Unto the praise of the glory | Moses; grace and truth came  
 of His grace, in which He | by Jesus Christ.  
 had graced us in His Beloved | If by one man's offence *Ro* 5, 17  
 Son. | death reigned through one,  
*Ep* 1, 13- You were signed with the | much more they who receive  
 14 Holy Spirit of promise,— | abundance of grace, and of  
 Who is the pledge of our | the gift, and of justice, shall  
 Inheritance unto the re- | reign in life through One,  
 demption of acquisition, un- | Jesus Christ.  
 to the praise of His glory. | Full of the glory of the *Eci* 42, 16  
*Ep* 1, 3 He hath blessed us with | Lord is His work.

### 13.—ACTS OF FAITH, HOPE, AND CHARITY THE PREDISPOSING CAUSE OF SANCTIFYING GRACE.

- Ro* 3, 23 All have sinned, and do need the glory of God.
- Ro* 3, 23-25 Being justified freely by His grace, through the redemption which is in Christ Jesus, — Whom God hath proposed to be a propitiation through faith in His Blood.
- He* 11, 6 Without faith it is impossible to please God.
- Ro* 8, 24 We are saved by hope.
- 1 J* 3, 2-3 We know that when He shall appear, we shall be like to Him, because we shall see Him as He is.—Every one that hath this hope in Him sanctifieth himself, as He also is holy.
- Eci* 1, 27-28 The fear of the Lord driveth out sin:—For he that is without fear cannot be justified.
- If the wicked do penance *Ex* 18, 21 for all his sins which he hath committed, and keep all My commandments, and do judgment and justice, living he shall live, and shall not die.
- Unless you shall do penance, you shall all likewise perish. *Lk* 13, 3
- He that loveth Me shall be loved by My Father. *Jn* 14, 21
- The Father Himself loveth you, because you have loved Me, and have believed that I came out from God. *Jn* 16, 27
- We know that we have passed from death to life, because we love the brethren. *1 J* 3, 14
- He that loveth not abideth in death.

### 14.—ALL DO NOT WITH EQUAL ZEAL CORRESPOND TO ACTUAL AND HABITUAL GRACE, NEITHER IS GRACE EQUAL IN ALL.

- Jb* 1, 8 The Lord said to Satan: Hast thou considered My servant Job, that there is none like him in the earth, a simple and upright man, fearing God, and avoiding evil?
- Mt* 11, 11 Amen I say to you, there hath not risen among them that are born of women a greater than John the Baptist; yet he that is the lesser in the Kingdom of Heaven is greater than he.
- 1 K* 9, 2 There was not among the children of Israel a goodlier person than he.
- Ro* 8, 23 Ourselves also, who have the first-fruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption of the sons of God, the redemption of our body.
- To every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the giving of Christ. *Ep* 4, 7
- I gave you milk to drink, not meat; for you were not able as yet. But neither indeed are you now able; for you are yet carnal. *1 C* 3, 2
- In a great house there are not only vessels of gold and of silver, but also of wood and of earth; and some indeed unto honour, but some unto dishonour. *2 Tm* 2, 20
- I have laboured more abundantly than all they; yet not I, but the grace of God with me. *1 C* 15, 10

15.—NO MAN BY THE ORDINARY LAW OF GOD  
KNOWS WITH THE CERTAINTY OF FAITH  
WHETHER HE BE IN A STATE OF GRACE.

- Jb* 9, 11, 20-21 If He come to me, I shall not see Him; if He depart, I shall not understand.—If I would justify myself, my own mouth shall condemn me; if I would show myself innocent, He shall prove me wicked.—Although I should be simple, even this my soul shall be ignorant of, and I shall be weary of my life.
- Ps* 18, 13 Who can understand sins? From my secret sins cleanse me, O Lord; and from those of others spare Thy servant.
- Ps* 50, 8 The uncertain and unhidden things of Thy wisdom Thou hast made manifest to me.
- Ecl* 9, 1-2 There are just men and wise men, and their works are in the Hand of God; and yet man knoweth not whether he be worthy of love or hatred.—But all things are kept uncertain for the time to come, because all things equally happen to the just and to the wicked, to the good and to the evil, to the clean and to the unclean, to him that offereth victims and to him that despiseth sacrifices.
- Ecl* 9, 12 As the good is, so also is the sinner: as the perjured, so he also that sweareth truth.
- Ecl* 5, 5 Be not without fear about sin forgiven, and add not sin upon sin.
- Je* 17, 9-10 The heart is perverse above all things, and unsearchable. Who can know it?—I am the Lord Who search the heart and prove the reins: Who give to every one according to his way, and according to the fruit of his devices.
- O king, let my counsel be acceptable to thee, and redeem thou thy sins with alms, and thy iniquities with works of mercy to the poor: perhaps He will forgive thy offences.
- Neither do I judge my own self.—For I am not conscious to myself of anything; yet am I not hereby justified: but He that judgeth me is the Lord.—Therefore judge not before the time; until the Lord come, Who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts: and then shall every man have praise from God.
- There is a way which seemeth just to a man; but the ends thereof lead to death.
- Every way of a man seemeth right to himself: but the Lord weigheth the hearts.
- I bear them witness that they have a zeal of God, but not according to knowledge.
- If any man think himself to be something, whereas he is nothing, he deceiveth himself.
- Wherefore hath the Lord pronounced against us all this great evil? What is our iniquity? And what is our sin that we have sinned against the Lord our God?
- Da* 4, 24
- 1 C* 4, 3-5
- Pv* 14, 12
- Pv* 21, 2
- Ro* 10, 2
- Gal* 6, 3
- Je* 16, 10



**16.—MEN MAY HAVE A MORAL CERTAINTY THAT  
THEY ARE SONS AND FRIENDS OF GOD.**

- 1 J* 3, 21 If our heart do not reprehend us, we have confidence towards God. perfect charity casteth out fear, because fear hath pain. And he that feareth is not perfected in charity.
- Ps* 72, 28 It is good for me to adhere to my God, to put my hope in the Lord God. To him that overcometh I will give the Hidden Manna, and will give him a White Counter, and in the Counter a new name written, which no man knoweth but he that receiveth it. *Ap* 2, 17
- Ps* 17, 21-22 The Lord will reward me according to my justice, and will repay me according to the cleanness of my hands:—Because I have kept the ways of the Lord, and have not done wickedly against my God. As many as received Him He gave them power to be made the sons of God, to them that believe in His Name.—Who are born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God. *Jn* 1, 12-13
- Ps* 117, 15 The voice of rejoicing and of salvation is in the tabernacles of the just. Whosoever are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.—For you have not received the spirit of bondage again in fear; but you have received the spirit of adoption of sons, whereby we cry, Abba (Father).—For the Spirit Himself giveth testimony to our spirit that we are the sons of God. *Rm* 8, 14-16
- Ex* 32, 31-32 Either forgive them this trespass,—Or if Thou do not, strike me out of the Book that Thou hast written.
- Jb* 13, 15 Although He should kill me, I will trust in Him.
- Is* 32, 17 The work of justice shall be peace, and the service of justice quietness and security for ever.
- Ga* 5, 22 The fruit of the Spirit is charity, joy, peace.
- Ga* 6, 15-16 In Christ Jesus neither circumcision availeth anything, nor uncircumcision, but a new creature.—And whosoever shall follow this rule, peace on them and mercy, and upon the Israel of God.
- 1 J* 4, 18 Fear is not in charity; but If any man love Me, My Father will love him. He gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from all iniquity, and might cleanse to Himself a people acceptable, a pursuer of good works. *Jn* 14, 23 *1 J* 2, 14

**17.—GRACE CONFERS A QUASI-DIVINE EXISTENCE,  
WHICH IS THE SUPERNATURAL LIFE OF THE  
SOUL, AND PRODUCES IN THE SOUL OTHER  
WONDERFUL EFFECTS.**

- 2 Pt* 4, 1 He hath given us most great and precious promises; that by these you may be made partakers of the Divine Na-

- ture, flying the corruption of that concupiscence which is in the world.
- 2 C 5, 17 If any be in Christ a new creature, the old things are passed away; behold, all things are made new.
- Tt 3, 5-7 According to His mercy He saved us, by the laver of regeneration, and renovation of the Holy Ghost;—Whom He hath poured forth upon us abundantly, through Jesus Christ our Saviour:—That being justified by His grace, we may be heirs, according to hope of Life Everlasting.
- Jn 14, 23 If any man love Me he will keep My word, and My Father will love him; and We will come to him, and will make Our abode with him.
- 1 J 3, 24 He that keepeth His commandments abideth in Him, and He in him. And in this we know that He abideth in us by the Spirit which He hath given us.
- 1 J 4, 16 God is charity; and he that abideth in charity abideth in God, and God in him.
- 1 C 6, 19 Know you not that your members are the temple of the Holy Ghost, Who is in you, Whom you have from God, and you are not your own?
- Ro 6, 11 Reckon that you are dead indeed to sin, but alive unto God, in Christ Jesus our Lord.
- Ro 6, 13 Present yourselves to God as those that are alive from the dead.
- Js 55, 3 Incline your ear, and come to Me; hear, and your soul shall live.
- Ez 37, 13-14 You shall know that I am the Lord when I shall have opened your sepulchres, and shall have brought you out of your graves, O My people;—And shall have put My Spirit in you, and you shall live.
- My soul shall live, and shall praise Thee.
- As the Father raiseth up the dead, and giveth life, so the Son also giveth life to whom He will.—Amen, amen I say unto you, that the hour cometh, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God; and they that hear shall live.
- The first man Adam was made into a living soul: the last Adam into a quickening Spirit.—Yet that was not first which is spiritual, but that which is natural; afterwards that which is spiritual.—Such as is the earthly, such also are the earthly; and such as is the heavenly, such also are they that are heavenly.
- Rise thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead, and Christ shall enlighten thee.
- If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.
- God hath sent His Only-Begotten Son into the world, that we may live by Him.
- We are the circumcision, who serve God in spirit, and glory in Christ Jesus, not having confidence in the flesh.
- You, when you were dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, He hath quickened together with Him, forgiving you all offences.
- The Breath of our mouth, Christ the Lord, is taken in our sins; to Whom we said: Under Thy shadow we shall live among the Gentiles.
- Ps 118, 175  
Jn 5, 21, 25  
1 C 15, 45-46, 48  
Ep 5, 14  
Ga 5, 25  
1 J 4, 9  
Ph 3, 3  
Cl 2, 13  
La 4, 20

18.—GRACE NOT ONLY COVERS BUT BLOTS OUT SIN.

- Je* 31, 34 They shall teach no more every man his neighbour and every man his brethren, saying: Know the Lord; for all shall know Me, from the least of them even to the greatest, saith the Lord; for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.
- Je* 33, 8 I will cleanse them from all their iniquity, whereby they have sinned against Me; and I will forgive all their iniquities, whereby they have sinned against Me and despised Me.
- Is* 44, 22 I have blotted out thy iniquities as a cloud, and thy sins as a mist. Return to Me; for I have redeemed thee.
- Is* 1, 16, 18 Wash yourselves, be clean, take away the evil of your devices from My eyes.—If your sins be as scarlet, they shall be made as white as snow; and if they be red as crimson, they shall be white as wool.
- Mi* 7, 19 He will turn again, and have mercy on us. He will put away our iniquities, and He will cast all our sins into the bottom of the sea.
- Ps* 50, 3 According to the multitude of Thy tender mercies, blot out my iniquity.
- There is now no condemnation to them that are in Christ Jesus, who walk not according to the flesh.
- Neither fornicators, nor covetous, nor drunkards shall possess the Kingdom of God. —And such some of you were; but you are washed, but you are sanctified, but you are justified in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and in the Spirit of our God.
- I will save you from all your uncleannesses.
- Jesus answered him: If I wash thee not, thou shalt have no part with Me.
- God Himself will come and save you. Then shall the eyes of the blind be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped;—Then shall the lame man leap as a hart, and the tongue of the dumb shall be free: for waters are broken out in the desert, and streams in the wilderness.
- I am, I am He that blot out thy iniquities for My Own sake, and I will not remember thy sins.
- He appeared to take away our sins.
- I will turn My Hand to thee, and I will clean purge away thy dross.
- Ro* 8, 1
- C* 6, 10-11
- Ex* 36, 29
- Je* 13, 8
- Is* 35, 5-6
- Is* 43, 25
- 1 J* 3, 5
- Is* 1, 25

19.—GRACE DOES NOT DESTROY NATURE, BUT HEALS AND RESTORES IT, WHEN SICK WITH SIN, TO PERFECT HEALTH.

- Ps* 40, 5 I said: O Lord, be Thou merciful to me: heal my soul, for I have sinned against Thee.
- Heal me, O Lord, and I shall be healed: save me, and I shall be saved: for Thou art my praise.
- Je* 17, 14

- Mt* 9, 12 They that are in health need not a physician, but they that are ill. *Jn* 6, 10
- Mt* 9, 13 I am not come to call the just, but sinners. lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted, and I heal them.
- Jn* 7, 23 Are you angry at Me because I have healed the whole man on the Sabbath-day?

20.—GRACE THE PLEDGE OF GLORY, THE PRINCIPLE  
AND CAUSE OF MERIT.

- Ro* 6, 23 The grace of God [is] Life Everlasting in Christ Jesus our Lord. became to all that obey Him the cause of Eternal Salvation.
- 2 T<sup>2</sup>*, 15-16 Now our Lord Jesus Christ Himself, and God and our Father Who hath loved us, and hath given us Everlasting Consolation and good hope in grace,—Exhort your hearts, and confirm you in every good work and word. All things of His divine power which appertain to life and godliness are given us through the knowledge of Him Who hath called us by His own proper glory and virtue. *2 Pt* 1, 3
- Ro* 5, 21 That as sin hath reigned unto death, so also grace might reign by justice unto Life Everlasting, through Jesus Christ our Lord. If I should distribute all my goods to feed the poor, and if I should deliver my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing. *1 C* 13, 3
- Tt* 3, 7 Being justified by His grace, we may be heirs according to hope of Life Everlasting. Abide in Me, and I in you. *Jn* 15, 4-5
- Ro* 8, 16-17 The Spirit Himself giveth testimony to our spirit that we are the sons of God;—I am the Vine; you the branches. He that abideth in Me, and I in him, the same beareth much fruit: And if sons, heirs also: heirs indeed of God, and joint-heirs with Christ. for without Me you can do nothing.
- Ga* 4, 7 Now he is no more a servant, but a son. And if a son, an heir also through God. The water that I will give him shall become in him a fountain of water, springing up into Life Everlasting. *Jn* 4, 14
- He* 5, 9 Being consummated, He

21.—INCITEMENT TO USE AND CAREFULLY TO  
HOLD FAST TO GRACE.

- 2 C* 6, 1 We helping do exhort you, that you receive not the grace of God in vain. let us have peace with God, through our Lord Jesus Christ.
- Ro* 5, 1 Being justified by faith, Stand fast, and be not *Ga* 5, 1

- held again under the yoke of bondage.
- He 13, 9* It is best that the heart be established with grace, not with meats: which have not profited those that walk in them.
- Eci 30, 15* Health of the soul in holiness of justice is better than all gold and silver: and a sound body than immense revenues.
- Ap 22, 14* Blessed are they that wash their robes: that they may have a right to the Tree of Life, and may enter in by the gates into the City.
- Ap 16, 15* Blessed is he that watcheth, and keepeth his garments, lest he walk naked, and they see his shame.
- Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord. From henceforth now, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours: for their works follow them.
- Blessed are those servants whom the Lord, when He cometh, shall find watching. —And if He shall come in the second watch, or if He shall come in the third watch, and find them so, blessed are those servants.
- Ap 14, 13*
- Lu 12, 37-*
- 38*

## 22.—EXHORTATIONS TO INCREASE IN GRACE.

- Ap 22, 11* He that is just, let him be justified still; and he that is holy, let him be sanctified still.
- Eci 18, 22* Be not afraid to be justified even to death: for the reward of God continueth for ever.
- Po 4, 18* The path of the just, as a shining light, goeth forwards, and increaseth even to perfect day.
- Ps 83, 6-7* Blessed is the man whose help is from Thee: in his heart he hath disposed to ascend by steps in the vale of tears, in the place which he hath set.
- Ph 3, 13* Brethren, I do not count myself to have apprehended. But one thing I do: forgetting the things that are behind, and stretching forth myself to those that are before, I press towards the Mark, to the Prize of the supernal vocation of God in Christ Jesus.
- Ep 4, 15* But doing the truth in charity, may we in all things grow up in Him Who is the Head, even Christ.
- As new-born babes, desire the rational milk without guile, that thereby you may grow unto salvation.
- Grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To Him be glory, both now and unto the day of Eternity. Amen.
- As Christ is risen from the dead by the glory of the Father, so we also may walk in newness of life.
- I, a prisoner in the Lord, beseech you that you walk worthy of the vocation in which you are called.
- Walk in love.
- I will be as the dew, Israel shall spring as the lily, and his root shall shoot forth as that of Libanus.—His branches shall spread, and his glory shall be as the olive-tree.
- 1 Pt 2, 2*
- 2 Pt 3, 18*
- Ro 6, 4*
- Ep 4, 1*
- Ep 5, 2*
- Os 14, 6-7*

23.—EJACULATIONS OF THE SOUL, YEARNING FOR  
GOD'S GRACE AND KNOWING ITS NECESSITY  
AND FRUIT.

- Ca* 1, 3 Draw me, we will run in the odour of Thy ointments.
- Ps* 79, 4 Convert us, O God, and show us Thy face, and we shall be saved.
- Jn* 4, 15-16 Sir, give me this water that I may not thirst [for ever. Give me water which will become in me] a fountain of water springing up into Life Everlasting.
- Ps* 25, 4 Take away the rust from silver, and there shall come forth a most pure vessel.
- Ps* 29, 8 Thou turnedst away Thy face from me, and I became troubled.
- 2 E* 1, 11 O Lord, let Thy ear be attentive to the prayer of Thy servants who desire to fear Thy Name.
- Je* 31, 18 Convert me, and I shall be converted, for Thou art the Lord my God.
- Ha* 3, 2 O Lord, Thy work in the midst of the years bring it to life: when Thou art angry Thou wilt remember mercy.
- La* 5, 21 Convert us, O Lord, to Thee, and we shall be converted: renew our days as from the beginning.
- Ps* 67, 29 Confirm, O God, what Thou hast wrought in us.
- Ps* 89, 17 Let the brightness of the Lord our God be upon us: and direct Thou the works of our hands over us; yea, the works of our hands do Thou direct.
- Ps* 118, 5, 10, 17 O that my ways may be directed to keep Thy justifications!—With my whole heart have I sought after Thee; let me not stray from Thy commandments; give bountifully to Thy servant; enliven me, and I shall keep Thy words.
- Thou hast brought forth, O Lord, my soul from hell: Thou hast saved me from them that go down into the pit.
- Incline, O my God, Thy ear, and hear: open Thy eyes, and see our desolation, and the City upon which Thy Name is called: for it is not for our justifications that we present our prayers before Thy Face, but for the multitude of Thy tender mercies.
- O Lord, hear: O Lord, be appeased: hearken and do delay not, for Thy own sake, O my God: because Thy Name is invoked upon Thy City and upon Thy people.
- If our iniquities have testified against us, O Lord, do Thou it for Thy Name's sake: for our rebellions are many, we have sinned against Thee.
- We acknowledge, O Lord, our wickedness, the iniquities of our fathers, because we have sinned against Thee.—Give us not to be a reproach, for Thy Name's sake, and do not disgrace in us the Throne of Thy Glory; remember: break not Thy Covenant with us.
- O Lord, be Thou merciful to me: heal my soul, for I have sinned against Thee;—But Thou, O Lord, have
- Ps* 23, 4
- Da* 9, 13
- Da* 9, 19
- Je* 14, 7
- Je* 14, 20-21
- Ps* 40, 5, 10

mercy on me, and raise me up again. vant, because I have done exceeding foolishly.  
 2 K 24, 10 I have sinned very much O Lord God, be merciful, Am 7, 2  
 in what I have done: but I beseech Thee: who shall pray Thee, O Lord, to take away the iniquity of Thy ser-  
 little?

## PART V.

## VIRTUE, VICE, AND SIN IN GENERAL.

MAN either corresponds with the light and energy which God offers him, and then his state is a state of Virtue, or he refuses correspondence, and then his state is a state of sin. Virtue considered *generically* may be defined as "a habit of acting in a manner which is conformed to the Divine Law." In the present Part we will quote passages of Sacred Scripture which refer to Virtue considered in its generic, absolute, and unrestricted sense, as signifying the fulness of Virtue, and the possession of all the forms of Virtue. In Book III. we will treat, in detail, of the various forms of Virtue—that is, of the conformity of the human will to the various forms of the Divine Law.

Sin considered *generically* is "a free transgression of the Divine Law" (S. Alphonsus), or "a voluntary departure from the Law of God" (S. Thomas), or "a word, thought, or desire against the Eternal Law of God" (S. Augustine). Here we consider sin, like Virtue, in its general aspect.

## 1.—PRAISE OF VIRTUE AND ITS FRUITS.

- Ba* 3, 14 Learn where is wisdom, where is strength, where is understanding, that thou mayst know also where is length of days and life, where is the light of the eyes and peace.
- Pv* 1, 33 He that shall hear Me shall rest without terror, and shall enjoy abundance without fear of evils.
- Ro* 6, 22-23 Now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, you have your first-fruits unto sanctification, and the end Life Everlasting.—For the wages of sin is death, but the grace of God Life Everlasting, in Christ Jesus our Lord.
- Jn* 8, 51 Amen, amen I say to you, if any man keep My word, he shall not see death for ever.
- If any man minister to Me, let him follow Me: and where I am, there also shall My minister be. If any man minister to Me, him will My Father honour.
- They shall go from virtue to virtue: the God of gods shall be seen in Sion.
- His power, when it is tried, reproveth the unwise.
- We fools have been able to show no mark of virtue, but are consumed in our wickedness.—Such things as these the sinners said in hell.
- Rich men in virtue, lovers of beautifulness, living at peace in their houses:—All these have gained glory in their generations, and were praised in their days.
- Jn* 12, 26  
*Pt* 83, 8  
*W* 1, 3  
*W* 5, 13-14  
*Eci* 44, 6-7

## 2.—EXHORTATION TO AIM AT VIRTUE.

- Eci* 14, 16-17 Give and take and justify thy soul.—Before thy death work justice, for in hell there is no finding food.
- Pv* 16, 16 Get wisdom, because it is better than gold: and purchase prudence, for it is more precious than silver.
- Jn* 6, 27 Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for that which endureth unto Life Everlasting, which the Son of man will give you.
- Pt* 4, 8 Whatsoever things are true, whatsoever modest, whatsoever just, whatsoever holy, whatsoever lovely, whatsoever of good fame, if there be any virtue, if any praise of discipline, think on these things.
- 1 Pt* 3, 8 Be ye all of one mind,
- having compassion one of another, being lovers of the brotherhood, merciful, modest, humble.
- You, employing all care, minister in your faith, virtue: and in virtue, knowledge:—And in knowledge, abstinence: and in abstinence, patience: and in patience, godliness:—And in godliness, love of the brotherhood: and in love of the brotherhood, charity.
- Decline not to the right nor to the left.
- Eat honey, my son, because it is good, and the honeycomb most sweet to thy throat. So also is the doctrine of wisdom to thy soul:—Which when thou hast found, thou shalt have hope
- 2 Pt* 1, 5-7  
*Pt* 4, 27  
*Pv* 24, 13-14



in the end, and thy hope shall not perish.

*Eci* 41, 16 A good life hath its number of days, but a good name shall continue for ever.

*To* 14, 10-11 Serve the Lord in truth, and seek to do the things

that please Him:—And command your children that they do justice and alms-deeds, and that they be mindful of God, and bless Him at all times in truth, and with all their power.

### 3.—PERFECTION OF VIRTUE.

*1 J* 2, 5 He that keepeth His Word, in him in very deed the charity of God is perfected: and by this we know that we are in Him.

*1 J* 4, 12 If we love one another, God abideth in us, and His charity is perfected in us.

*1 J* 4, 17 In this is the charity of God perfected with us, that we may have confidence in the Day of Judgment: because as He is, so also are we in this world.

*Eci* 7, 29 One man among a thousand I have found.

*Pa* 3, 12-14 Not as though I had already attained, or were already perfect: but I follow after,

if I may by any means apprehend, and wherein I am also apprehended by Christ Jesus.—Brethren, I do not count myself to have apprehended. But one thing I do: forgetting the things that are behind, and stretching forth myself to those that are before,—I press towards the mark, to the Prize of the supernal vocation of God in Christ Jesus.

Fear is not in charity: but perfect charity casteth out fear, because fear hath pain. And he that feareth is not perfected in charity. *1 J* 4, 18

### 4.—COUNSELS OF PERFECTION.

*Ge* 17, 1 Walk before Me, and be perfect.

*Ma* 18, 13 Thou shalt be perfect, and without spot before the Lord thy God.

*Js* 24, 14 Fear the Lord, and serve Him with a perfect and most sincere heart.

*Mt* 5, 48 Be you therefore perfect, as also your Heavenly Father is perfect.

*Jn* 11, 16 Let us also go, that we may die with Him.

*Lu* 18, 28 Behold, we have left all things, and have followed Thee.

*Mt* 10, 38 He that taketh not up his cross, and followeth Me, is not worthy of Me.

For whosoever will save his life shall lose it: and he that shall lose his life for My sake shall find it.

The Kingdom of Heaven is like unto a treasure hid-den in a field: which when a man hath found, he hideth, and for joy thereof goeth and selleth all that he hath, and buyeth that field.—Again, the Kingdom of Heaven is like to a merchant seeking good pearls:—Who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went his way, and sold all that he had, and bought it. *Mt* 16, 25 *Mt* 13, 44-46

- Lu* 14, 26- If any man come to Me, things do not edify.  
 27, 33 and hate not his father and mother, and wife and children, and brethren and sisters, yea and his own life also, he cannot be My disciple.—And whosoever doth not carry his cross and come after Me cannot be My disciple.—So likewise every one of you that doth not renounce all that he possesseth cannot be My disciple.
- 1 C* 10, 24, Let no man seek his own,  
 23 but that which is for the welfare of another. All things are lawful to me, but all
- For none of us liveth to himself, and no man dieth to himself.—For whether we live, we live to the Lord; or whether we die, we die to the Lord. Therefore, whether we live or whether we die, we are the Lord's.
- With Christ I am nailed to the Cross.—And I live: now not I, but Christ liveth in me. And that I live now in the flesh, I live in the faith of the Son of God, Who loved me, and delivered Himself for me.
- Ro* 14, 7- 8  
*Ga* 2, 19- 20

### 5.—THE FEAR OF THE LORD THE FIRST STEP TO WISDOM AND VIRTUE.

- Ecl* 1, 18, The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom, and was created with the faithful in the womb: it walketh with chosen women, and is known with the just and faithful.—To fear God is the fulness of wisdom, and fulness is from the fruits thereof.
- Ecl* 1, 25- The root of wisdom is to  
 28 fear the Lord: and the branches thereof are long lived.—In the treasures of wisdom is understanding, and religiousness of knowledge: but to sinners wisdom is an abomination.
- Ecl* 19, 18 Give place to the fear of the Most High: for the fear of God is all wisdom, and therein is to fear God, and the disposition of the law is in all wisdom.
- Je* 5, 22 Will not you then fear Me? saith the Lord: and will you not repent at My Presence? I have set the sand a bound for the sea, an everlasting ordinance which it shall not pass over.
- The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.
- I will give them one heart and one way, that they may fear Me all days, and that it may be well with them and with their children after them.
- The fear of the Lord is the lesson of wisdom.
- I will give My fear in their heart, that they may not revolt from Me.
- Be thou in the fear of the Lord all the day long:—Because thou shalt have hope in the latter end, and thy expectation shall not be taken away.
- Serve ye the Lord with fear.
- In the fear of the Lord is confidence of strength, and there shall be hope for His children.
- The fear of the Lord is honour, and glory, and glad-
- Pv* 1, 7  
*Je* 32, 39  
*Pv* 15, 33  
*Je* 32, 40  
*Pv* 23, 17- 18  
*Pv* 2, 11  
*Pv* 14, 28  
*Ecl* 1, 11- 12, 27

ness, and a crown of joy.—The fear of the Lord shall delight the heart, and shall give joy and gladness, and length of days.—The fear of the Lord driveth out sin.

*Eci* 2, 18- They that fear the Lord  
21 will not be incredulous to His word, and they that love Him will keep His way.—They that fear the Lord will seek after the things that are well pleasing to Him: and they that love Him shall be filled with His Law.—They that fear the Lord will prepare their hearts, and in His sight will sanctify their souls.—They that fear the Lord keep His Commandments, and will

have patience even until His visitation.

He that feareth the Lord *Eci* 34, 16 shall tremble at nothing, and shall not be afraid: for He is his hope.

The fear of the Lord is *Eci* 40, 28 like a paradise of blessing, and they have covered it above all glory.

They that remain shall *Eci* 23, 37 know that there is nothing better than the fear of God: and that there is nothing sweeter than to have regard to the Commandments of the Lord.

The fear of the Lord is the *Eci* 25, 16 beginning of His love: and the beginning of faith is to be fast joined unto it.

#### 6.—EFFECTS OF THE FEAR OF THE LORD.

*Eci* 12, 13 Let us all hear together the conclusion of the discourse. Fear God and keep His Commandments: for this is all man.

*Eci* 1, 13, With him that feareth the  
20-21 Lord it shall be well in the latter end, and in the day of his death he shall be blessed.—To fear God is the fulness of wisdom, and fulness is from the fruits thereof.—She shall fill all her house with her increase, and the storehouses with her treasures.

*Eci* 33, 1 No evils shall happen to him that feareth the Lord: but in temptation God will keep him, and deliver him from evils.

*Eci* 34, 14- The spirit of those that  
15 fear God is sought after, and by His regard shall be blessed.—For their hope is on Him that saveth them, and the

eyes of God are upon them that love Him.

There is no want in the *Eci* 40, 27 fear of the Lord, and it needeth not to seek for help.

Fear the Lord, all ye His *Ps* 33, 10 saints: for there is no want to them that fear Him.

Blessed is the man to *Eci* 25, 15 whom it is given to have the fear of God: he that holdeth it, to whom shall he be likened?

The fear of the Lord is a *Ps* 14, 27 fountain of life, to decline from the ruin of death.

Blessed is the man that is *Ps* 28, 14 always fearful: but he that is hardened in mind shall fall into evil.

Blessed is the man that *Ps* 111, 1 feareth the Lord: he shall delight exceedingly in His Commandments. His seed shall be mighty upon earth.

## 7.—FRUITS OF THE FEAR OF THE LORD.

- Ps* 102, 17 The mercy of the Lord is from Eternity and unto Eternity, upon them that fear Him.
- Ps* 33, 8 The Angel of the Lord shall encamp round about them that fear Him, and shall deliver them.
- Ps* 102, 11 He hath strengthened His mercy towards them that fear Him.
- Jd* 16, 19 They that fear Thee shall be great with Thee in all things.
- Ps* 111, 3 Glory and wealth shall be in his house: and his justice remaineth for ever and ever.
- Eci* 25, 13-14 How great is he that findeth wisdom and knowledge! but there is none above him that feareth the Lord.—The fear of God hath set itself above all things.
- Pv* 22, 4 The fruit of humility is the fear of the Lord, riches and glory and life.
- Ps* 102, 13 As the father hath compassion on his children, so hath the Lord compassion on them that fear Him.
- Is* 50, 10 Who is there among you that feareth the Lord? Let him hope in the Name of the Lord, and lean upon his God.
- Ps* 111, 2 His seed shall be mighty upon earth; the generation of the righteous shall be blessed.
- Is* 33, 6 The fear of the Lord is his treasure.
- Eci* 27, 4 Unless thou hold thyself diligently in the fear of the Lord thy house shall quickly be overthrown.
- These are the precepts,— That thou mayst fear the Lord thy God, and keep all His commandments and precepts which I command thee and thy sons and thy grandsons, all the days of thy life, that thy days may be prolonged.
- Examples of God-fearing men:
1. St. Abraham, the Patriarch. *Ge* 22, 12
  2. St. Joseph, the Patriarch. *Ge* 42, 18
  3. St. Job, the Prophet. *Jb* 1, 8
  4. St. David, Royal Prophet. *Ps* 118, 38
  5. St. Abdias, "who feared the Lord from his infancy." *3K* 18, 12
  6. St. Jonas, the Prophet. *Jo* 1, 9
  7. St. Habacuc, the Prophet. *Ha* 2, 2
  8. St. Mary Magdalen. *Mt* 28, 8
  9. St. Cornelius, a centurion of the Italian Band. *Ac* 10, 1
  10. Noe. *He* 11, 7
  11. Jacob. *Ge* 28, 16
  12. The Midwives of Egypt. *Ex* 1, 17
  13. Ezechias. *Je* 26, 19
  14. Josaphat. *2P* 20, 3
  15. Nehemias. *2E* 5, 15
  16. Phinees. *Ma* 2, 5
  17. Hananias. *2E* 7, 3
  18. The Converts of Judea, Galilee, and Samaria. *Ac* 9, 31

## 8.—EVEN THE JUST MAN MUST TAKE HEED LEST HE FALL.

- 1 *C* 10, 12 He that thinketh himself to stand, let him take heed lest he fall.
- He that contemneth small things shall fall by little and little. *Eci* 19, 1

- Ro* 11, 20 Thou standest by faith. Him that can destroy both soul and body into hell.  
Be not high - minded, but fear. Who shall not fear Thee, *Je* 10, 7
- Eci* 18, 27 A wise man will fear in everything, and in the days of sins will beware of sloth. O King of nations? For Thine is the glory: among all the wise men of the nations, and in all their kingdoms, there is none like unto Thee.
- Jb* 31, 23 I have always feared God as waves swelling over me, and His weight I was not able to bear. If the just man shall *1 Pt* 4, 18
- Mt* 10, 28 Fear ye not them that kill the body, and are not able to kill the soul; but rather fear scarcely be saved, where shall the ungodly and the sinner appear?

### 9.—CRIES OF THE SOUL YEARNING AFTER THE FEAR OF THE LORD.

- Ps* 118, 120 Pierce Thou my flesh with Thy fear; for I am afraid of Thy judgments. better than gold; and purchase prudence, for it is more precious than silver.
- Ps* 118, 63 I am a partaker with all them that fear Thee. Who shall not fear Thee, *Ap* 15, 4
- Ps* 21, 21 Deliver, O God, my soul from the sword; save me from the lion's mouth. O Lord, and magnify Thy Name? for Thou only art Holy.
- Ps* 118, 38 Establish Thy Word to Thy servant in Thy fear. Teach me goodness and *Ps* 118, 66 discipline and knowledge, for I have believed Thy Commandments.
- Ps* 2, 11 Serve ye the Lord with fear, and rejoice unto Him with trembling. I will come into Thy House, *Ps* 5, 8
- Ps* 118, 143 Trouble and anguish have found me: Thy Commandments are my meditation. I will worship towards Thy Holy Temple in Thy fear.
- Ps* 79, 4 Convert us, O God; and show us Thy face, and we shall be saved. Arise, O Lord; save me, *Ps* 3, 7
- Ps* 85, 11 Let my heart rejoice, that it may fear Thy Name. O my God.
- Ps* 118, 146 I cried unto Thee: save me, that I may keep Thy Commandments. When my strength shall *Ps* 70, 9 fail, do not Thou forsake me.
- Je* 17, 14 Save me, O Lord, and I shall be saved. Lord, save us, we perish. *Mt* 8, 25
- Ps* 16, 16 Get wisdom, because it is Be to me, O Lord, a powerful Protector and Strong Stay, a Defence from the heat, and a Cover from the sun at noon. *Eci* 34, 19
- (See words *Salutary Fear, The Sword of the Spirit.*)

### 10.—THE MALIGNANCY OF VICE, AND MEANS FOR ITS DESTRUCTION.

- Jb* 20, 11 His bones shall be filled and they shall sleep with him with the vices of his youth, in the dust.

- Is* 1, 4 Wo to the sinful nation, a people laden with iniquity, a wicked seed, ungracious children! they have forsaken the Lord, they have blasphemed the Holy One of Israel, they are gone away backwards.
- Je* 30, 12 Thus saith the Lord: Thy bruise is incurable, thy wound is very grievous.
- Je* 8, 6 There is none that doth penance for his sin, saying: What have I done? They are all turned to their own course, as a horse rushing to the battle.
- Ga* 5, 24 They that are Christ's have crucified their flesh, with the vices and concupiscences.
- Ro* 6, 19-20 I speak a human thing, because of the infirmity of your flesh. For as you have yielded your members to serve uncleanness and iniquity unto iniquity, so now yield your members to serve justice unto sanctification.—
- For when you were servants of sin you were free men to justice.
- Mortify your members which are upon the earth, fornication, uncleanness, lust, evil concupiscence, and covetousness, which is the service of idols.
- I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercy of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing unto God, your reasonable service.
- I came not to send peace but the sword. *Mt* 10, 34
- I chastise my body, and bring it into subjection; lest perhaps, when I have preached to others, I myself should become a castaway. *1 Co* 9, 27
- We are cast down, but we perish not:—Always bearing about in our body the mortification of Jesus, that the Life also of Jesus may be made manifest in our bodies. *2 Co* 4, 9-10

# 11.—EXHORTATIONS TO ROOT UP VICE AND TO . CONQUER PASSIONS.

- Eci* 18, 30-31 Go not after thy lusts, but turn away from thy own will.—If thou give to thy soul her desires, she will make thee a joy to thy enemies.
- Dt* 10, 16 Circumcise the foreskin of your heart, and stiffen your neck no more.
- Ja* 4, 4 Be circumcised to the Lord, and take away the foreskins of your hearts, ye men of Juda, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem, lest My indignation come forth like fire, and burn, and there be none that can quench it;
- because of the wickedness of your thoughts.
- If thy right eye scandalise thee, pluck it out and cast it from thee. For it is expedient for thee that one of thy members should perish, rather than thy whole body be cast into hell. *Mt* 5, 29
- Amen, amen I say to you, unless the grain of wheat falling into the ground die, itself remaineth alone. But if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit.—He that loveth his life shall lose it; and he that hateth his life in this

world keepeth it unto Life Eternal.

- 2 *Th* 2, 11- A faithful saying. For if we be dead with Him, we shall live also with him.—If we suffer, we shall also reign with Him. If we deny Him, He will also deny us.
- Po* 29, 21 He that nourisheth his servant delicately from his childhood afterwards shall find him stubborn.
- Is* 58, 6 Loose the bands of wickedness, undo the bundles that oppress, let them that are broken go free, and break asunder every burden.
- If thou wilt take away the chain out of the midst of thee, and cease to stretch out the finger and to speak that which profiteth not,—Then shall thy light rise up in darkness, and thy darkness shall be as the noonday.

## 12.—SIN IS THE TURNING FROM GOD TO CREATURES.

- Je* 2, 5 What iniquity have your fathers found in Me, that they have gone far from Me, and have walked after vanity, and are become vain?
- Je* 2, 13 They have forsaken Me, the Fountain of Living Water, and have digged to themselves cisterns, broken cisterns, that can hold no water.
- Am* 6, 14 You have rejoiced in a thing of naught.
- Jn* 1, 3 Without Him was made nothing that was made.
- Is* 59, 4 They trust in a mere nothing, and speak vanities.
- Ex* 13, 19 They violated Me among My people, for a handful of barley and a piece of bread,
- to kill souls which should not die, and to save souls alive which should not live, telling lies to My people that believe lies.
- Such a man for a morsel of bread forsaketh the Truth.
- You were sold gratis, and you shall be redeemed without money.
- They have turned their back to Me, and not their face; and in the time of their affliction they will say: Arise, and deliver us.
- Why will you contend with Me in judgment? you have all forsaken Me, saith the Lord. In vain have I struck your children.
- Po* 28, 21
- Is* 52, 3
- Je* 2, 27
- Je* 2, 29-30

## 13.—THE UNCLEANNESS OF SIN.

- Os* 5, 11 Ephraim is under oppression and broken in judgment, because he began to go after filthiness.
- Dt* 32, 5 They have sinned against Him, and are none of His children in their filth.
- Mi* 2, 10 For that uncleanness of the land it shall be corrupted with a grievous corruption.
- Za* 3, 3 Jesus [the high priest,
- who bore as it were the sins of all the people] was clothed with filthy garments.
- Behold, the hand of the Lord is not shortened that it cannot save, neither is His ear heavy that it cannot hear.—But your iniquities have divided between you and your God, and your sins have hid His face from you
- Is* 59, 1-3, 15

that He should not hear.—  
For your hands are defiled  
with blood, and your fingers  
with iniquity: your lips have  
spoken lies, and your tongue  
uttereth iniquity. — And  
truth hath been forgotten:  
and he that departed from  
evil lay open to be a prey;  
and the Lord saw, and it ap-  
peared evil in His eyes, be-  
cause there is no judgment.

*Mt 23, 67* They did spit in His Face,  
and buffet Him, and others  
struck His Face with the  
palms of their hands [that  
by these indignities He  
might wash away the filth  
of our sins].

*Is 4, 3-4* Every one that shall be  
left in Sion and that shall  
remain in Jerusalem shall be  
called holy,—If the Lord  
shall wash away the filth of  
the daughters of Sion, and  
shall wash away the blood of  
Jerusalem out of the midst  
thereof by the spirit of judg-  
ment and by the spirit of  
burning.

*Ro 13, 12* The night is past, and the  
day is at hand. Let us there-  
fore cast off the works of  
darkness, and put on the  
armour of light.

*Ep 5, 8* You were heretofore dark-  
ness, but now light in the Lord.

Have no fellowship with *Ep 5, 1*  
the unfruitful works of dark-  
ness, but rather reprove  
them.

If we say that we have *1 J 1, 6*  
fellowship with Him, and  
walk in darkness, we lie, and  
do not the truth.

Return to the Lord, and *Eci 17, 23*  
turn away from thy injus-  
tice, and greatly hate abom-  
ination.

For their cursing and ly- *Pt 53, 14*  
ing they shall be talked of  
when they are consumed:  
when they are consumed by  
Thy wrath, and they shall be  
no more.

When thou art come into *Dt 32, 16*  
the land which the Lord thy  
God shall give thee, beware  
lest thou have a mind to imi-  
tate the abominations of  
those nations.

The eyes of the wicked *Jb 11, 20*  
shall decay, and the way to  
escape shall fail them, and  
their hope the abomination  
of the soul.

Flee from sins as from the *Eci 21, 2-4*  
face of a serpent.—The  
teeth thereof are the teeth  
of a lion killing the souls of  
men.—All iniquity is like a  
two-edged sword: there is  
no remedy for the wound  
thereof.

#### 14.—SIN DISASTROUS TO BODY AND SOUL.

*Is 59, 4-5* They have conceived la-  
bour, and brought forth iniquity. — They have broken  
the eggs of asps, and have  
woven the webs of spiders:  
he that shall eat of their  
eggs shall die; and that  
which is brought out shall  
be hatched.

*Is 1, 2C* Behold, O Lord, for I am

in distress, my bowels are  
troubled: my heart is turned  
within me, for I am full of  
bitterness: abroad the sword  
destroyeth, and at home  
there is death alike.

They have laboured to *Je 9, 3*  
commit iniquity.

Evil pursueth sinners. *Pv 13, 21*  
He that soweth iniquity *Pv 22 8*



- shall reap evils, and with the rod of His anger he shall be consumed.
- Je* 2, 19 Thy own wickedness shall reprove thee, and thy apostasy shall rebuke thee. Know thou and see that it is an evil and a bitter thing for thee to have left the Lord thy God, and that My fear is not with thee, saith the Lord the God of Hosts.
- Je* 30, 14 I have wounded thee with the wound of an enemy, with a cruel chastisement: by reason of the multitude of thy iniquities, thy sins are hardened.
- Eci* 7, 1-3 Do no evils, and no evils shall lay hold of thee: depart from the unjust, and evils shall depart from thee. My son, sow not evils in the furrows of injustice, and thou shalt not reap them sevenfold.
- Je* 48, 36 Because he hath done more than he could, therefore they have perished.
- Pv* 28, 18 He that is perverse in his ways shall fall at once.
- Eci* 40, 14 Transgressors shall pine away in the end.
- Eci* 40, 8-9 Upon sinners are sevenfold more.—Moreover death and bloodshed, strife and sword, oppressions, famine, and affliction, and scourges.
- A wicked soul shall destroy him that hath it, and maketh him to be a joy to his enemies, and shall lead him into the lot of the wicked.
- We have wearied ourselves in the way of iniquity and destruction, and have walked through hard ways, but the way of the Lord we have not known. What hath pride profited us?
- Nothing upon earth is done without a cause, and sorrow doth not spring out of the ground.
- I remember the evils that I have done in Jerusalem, from whence also I took away all the spoils of gold and of silver that were in it, and I sent to destroy the inhabitants of Juda without cause.—I know therefore that for this cause these evils have found me: and behold, I perish with great grief in a strange land.
- The wicked man diggeth evil, and in his lips is a burning fire.
- Eci* 6, 4
- W* 5, 7
- Jb* 5, 6
- 1 M* 6, 12-13
- Pv* 16, 27
- Is* 59, 1-2

### 15.—SIN DEPRIVES OF MERIT OUR WORDS AND UNDERTAKINGS.

- Is* 59, 6 Their webs shall not be for clothing, neither shall they cover themselves with their works, and the work of iniquity is in their hands.
- Eci* 9, 18 He that shall offend in one shall lose many good things.
- Os* 8, 7 They shall sow wind and reap a whirlwind: there is no standing stalk in it, the bud shall yield no meal; and if it should yield, strangers shall eat it.
- Whosoever sinneth hath not seen Him, nor known Him.
- Ephraim feedeth upon the wind, and followeth the burning heat; all the day long he multiplied lies and desolation.
- Behold, the hand of the
- 1 J* 3, 6
- Os* 12, 1
- Is* 59, 1-2

Lord is not shortened that it cannot save;—But your iniquities have divided between you and your God, and your sins have hid His Face from you that He should not hear.

*Ez 18, 24* If the just man turn himself away from his justice,—All his justices which he hath done shall not be remembered.

*Ez 33, 12-13* The justice of the just shall not deliver him in what day soever he shall sin, and the just shall not be able to live in his justice in what day soever he shall sin.—Yea, if I shall say to the just that he shall surely live, and he, trusting in his justice, commit iniquity, all his justices shall be forgotten, and in his iniquity which he hath committed, in the same shall he die.

Wickedness shall not save *Ecl 8, 3* the wicked.

The wicked maketh an un-*Ps 11, 18* steady work: but to him that soweth justice there is a faithful reward.

Because you robbed the *Am 5, 11-12* poor, and took the choice prey from him, you shall build houses with square stones, and shall not dwell in them: you shall plant most delightful vineyards, and shall not drink the wine of them.—Because I know your manifold crimes and your grievous sins: enemies of the just, taking bribes, and oppressing the poor in the gate.

He that rejecteth wisdom and discipline is unhappy: and their hope is vain, and their labours without fruit, and their works unprofitable.

*W 3, 11*

### 16.—SIN BRINGS WITH IT BOTH TEMPORAL AND ETERNAL PUNISHMENT.

*2 K 23, 6-7* Transgressors shall all of them be plucked up as thorns, which are not taken away with hands.—And if a man will touch them, he must be armed with iron and with the staff of a lance: but they shall be set on fire and burnt to nothing.

*Ma 4, 1* Behold, the day shall come kindled as a furnace, and all the proud and all that do wickedly shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall set them on fire, saith the Lord of Hosts: it shall not leave them root nor branch.

*Je 5, 23-25* The heart of this people is become hard of belief and provoking: they are revolted

and are gone away.—And they have not said in their heart: Let us fear the Lord our God, Who giveth us the early and the latter rain in due season, Who preserveth for us the fulness of the yearly harvest.—Your iniquities have turned these things away, and your sins have withholden good things from you.

Gathering I will gather *Je 8, 13-15* them together, saith the Lord. There is no grape on the vines, and there are no figs on the fig-tree, the leaf is fallen: and I have given them the things that are passed away.—Why do we sit still? Assemble your-

- selves, and let us enter into the fenced city, and let us be silent there: for the Lord our God hath put us to silence, and hath given us water of gall to drink: for we have sinned against the Lord.—We looked for peace, and no good came: for a time of healing, and behold fear.
- Eci* 41, 11-12 Wo to you, ungodly men, who have forsaken the law of the Most High Lord!—And if you be born, you shall be born in malediction: and if you die, malediction shall be your portion.
- Gal* 6, 8 What things a man shall sow, those also shall he reap. For he that soweth in his flesh, of the flesh also shall reap corruption. But he that soweth in the spirit, of the spirit shall reap Life Everlasting.
- Jn* 15, 6 If any one abide not in Me, he shall be cast forth as a branch, and shall wither: and they shall gather him up, and cast him into the fire, and he burneth.
- Ja* 1, 15 Sin, when it is completed, begetteth death.
- Je* 13, 22 If thou shalt say in thy heart: Why are these things come upon us? For the greatness of thy iniquity thy nakedness is discovered, the soles of thy feet are defiled.
- Behold, I will feed this people with wormwood, and give them water of gall to drink.
- The fearful and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, they shall have their portion in the pool burning with fire and brimstone, which is the second death.
- They shall eat the fruit of their own way, and shall be filled with their own devices.
- A man that shall wander out of the way of doctrine shall abide in the company of the giants.
- Behold, all you that kindle a fire, encompassed with flame, walk in the light of your fire, and in the flames which you have kindled; this is done to you by My hand: you shall sleep in sorrows.
- Je* 9, 15
- Ap* 21, 8
- Pv* 1, 31
- Pv* 21, 16
- Is* 50, 11

17.—SIN ROBS THE SOUL OF SUPERNATURAL GIFTS,  
SUBJECTING IT TO THE POWER OF THE DEVIL  
AND TO EVERLASTING DEATH.

- Luk* 10, 30 A certain man went down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and fell among robbers, who also stripped him and having wounded him went away, leaving him half dead.
- Je* 2, 22 Though thou wash thyself with nitre, and multiply to thyself the herb borith, thou art stained in thy iniquity
- before Me, saith the Lord God.
- Is it a small thing to you that you sinned with Beelphegor, and the stain of that crime remaineth in us to this day? And many of the people perished.
- Thou hast stained thy glory.
- Je* 22, 17
- Eci* 47, 22

- Ep* 5, 25-27 Christ loved the Church and delivered Himself up for it,—That He might sanctify it, cleansing it by the laver of water in the Word of Life;—That He might present it to Himself a glorious Church, not having spot or wrinkle, or any such thing, but that it should be holy and without blemish.
- Pv* 5, 22 His own iniquities catch the wicked, and he is fast bound with the ropes of his own sins.
- Je* 3, 25 We shall sleep in our confusion, and our shame shall cover us, because we have sinned against the Lord our God.
- Eci* 27, 11 The lion always lieth in wait for prey: so do sins for them that work iniquities.
- Pv* 10, 7 He shall rain snares upon sinners: fire and brimstone and storms of winds shall be the portion of their cup.
- Ez* 8, 24 If the just man turn himself away from his justice, and do iniquity according to all the abominations which the wicked man useth to work, shall he live? All his justices which he had done shall not be remembered.
- I will put it in the hand of them that have oppressed thee, and have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we may go over: and thou hast laid thy body as the ground, and as a way to them that went over.
- They may recover themselves from the snares of the devil, by whom they are held captive at his will.
- You are of your father the devil, and the desires of your father you will do.
- Depart from Me, you cursed, into everlasting fire.
- O full of all guile and of all deceit, child of the devil!
- They that commit sin and iniquity are enemies to their own soul.
- A man indeed killeth through malice.
- I know thy works, that thou hast the name of being alive: and thou art dead.
- All that hate Me love death.
- Is* 51, 23
- 2 Ti* 2, 25
- Jn* 8, 44
- Mt* 25, 14
- Ac* 13, 10
- To* 12, 10
- W* 16, 14
- Ap* 3, 1
- Pv* 8, 36

### 18.—SIN CAUSES BLINDNESS AND IGNORANCE IN THE UNDERSTANDING.

- Is* 6, 9-10 Hearing hear, and understand not: and see the vision, and know it not.—Blind the heart of this people, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes: lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted, and I heal them.
- Is* 42, 18-19 Hear, ye deaf; and ye blind, behold, that you may see.—Who is blind but My servant? or deaf, but he to whom I have sent My messengers? Who is blind, but he that is sold? or who is blind, but the servant of the Lord?
- They have not known the way of peace, and there is no judgment in their steps: their paths are become crooked to them; every one that treadeth in them knoweth no peace.
- We have groped for the
- Is* 59, 8
- Is* 59, 10

- wall, and like the blind we have groped as if we had no eyes: we have stumbled at noonday as in darkness: we are in dark places, as dead men.
- Je 4, 22* My foolish people have not known Me: they are foolish and senseless children: they are wise to do evils, but to do good they have no knowledge.
- Is 43, 8* Bring forth the people that are blind, and have eyes: that are deaf, and have ears.
- Je 5, 21* Hear, O foolish people, and without understanding: who have eyes, and see not; and ears, and hear not.
- Os 9, 7* The days of visitation are come, the days of repaying are come. Know ye, O Israel, that the prophet was foolish, the spiritual man was mad, for the multitude of thy iniquity, and the multitude of thy madness.
- So 1, 17* They shall walk like blind men, because they have sinned against the Lord.
- Os 7, 9* Strangers have devoured his strength, and he knew it not: yea, gray hairs also are spread about upon him, and he is ignorant of it.
- Os 7, 11* Ephraim is become as a dove that is decoyed, not having a heart: they called upon Egypt, they went to the Assyrians.
- Ro 1, 21-23* They became vain in their thoughts, and their foolish heart was darkened.—For professing themselves to be wise, they became fools.—And they changed the glory of the incorruptible God into the likeness of the image of a corruptible man, and of birds, and of four-footed beasts, and of creeping things.
- To whom shall I speak? and to whom shall I testify, that he may hear? Behold, their ears are uncircumcised, and they cannot hear: behold, the word of the Lord is become unto them a reproach, and they will not receive it.
- Je 6, 10*
- As they liked not to have God in their knowledge, God delivered them up to a reprobate sense, to do those things which are not convenient.
- Ro 1, 28*
- He who saith that he knoweth Him, and keepeth not His Commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him.
- 1 J 2, 4*
- Whosoever abideth in Him sinneth not; and whosoever sinneth hath not seen Him nor known Him.
- 1 J 3, 6*
- There is a way which seemeth just to a man: but the ends thereof lead to death.
- Pv 14, 12*
- The childish shall possess folly, and the prudent shall look for knowledge.
- Pv 14, 18*
- Be not over-much wicked; and be not foolish, lest thou die before thy time.
- Eci 7, 18*
- These things they thought, and were deceived: for their own malice blinded them,—And they knew not the secrets of God, nor hoped for the wages of justice, nor esteemed the honour of holy souls.
- W 2, 21-22*
- They shall grope as in the dark, and not in the light, and He shall make them stagger like men that are drunk.
- Jb 12, 25*
- Is this the return thou makest to the Lord, O foolish and senseless people? Is
- Dt 32, 6*

not He thy Father, that hath possessed thee, and made thee, and created thee?	We fools esteemed their life madness, and their end without honour.	W 5, 4
---	---	--------

**19.—SIN TURNS AWAY THE WILL FROM THE SUPREME GOOD, HARDENING IT IN EVIL.**

- |                     |   |   |                  |
|---------------------|---|---|------------------|
| <i>Os</i> 3, 1      | The Lord loveth the children of Israel, and they love the husks of grapes.  | They have turned their backs to Me, and not their faces: when I taught them early in the morning, and instructed them, and they would not hearken to receive instruction.   | <i>Je</i> 32, 33 |
| <i>Pv</i> 1, 22     | O children, how long will you love childishness? and fools covet those things which are hurtful to themselves, and the unwise hate knowledge?   | O Lord, Thy Eyes are upon truth: Thou hast struck them, and they have not grieved: Thou hast bruised them, and they have refused to receive correction; they have made their faces harder than the rock, and they have refused to return. | <i>Je</i> 5, 3   |
| <i>Je</i> 5, 30-31  | Astonishing and wonderful things have been done in the land.—The prophets prophesied falsehood, and the priests clapped their hands, and My people loved such things. What then shall be done in the end thereof? | They hearkened not, nor inclined their ear; but walked in their own will, and in the perversity of their wicked heart, and went backward and not forward.   | <i>Je</i> 7, 24  |
| <i>Os</i> 9, 10     | They became abominable, as those things were which they loved.  | This is a nation which hath not hearkened to the Voice of the Lord their God, nor received instruction; faith is lost, and is taken away out of their mouth.  | <i>Je</i> 7, 28  |
| <i>Pz</i> 73, 23    | The pride of them that hate Thee ascendeth continually.   | Why then is this people in Jerusalem turned away with a stubborn revolting? They have laid hold on lying, and have refused to return.   | <i>Je</i> 8, 5   |
| <i>Pz</i> 73, 4     | They that hate Thee have made their boasts in the midst of Thy solemnity.   | I spoke to thee in thy prosperity, and thou saidst: I will not hear. This hath been thy way from thy youth, because thou hast not heard My Voice.   | <i>Je</i> 22, 21 |
| <i>Jg</i> 2, 17     | And hearing the Commandments of the Lord, they did all things contrary.   | I called, and you refused; I stretched out My Hand, and there was none that regarded.   | <i>Pv</i> 1, 24  |
| <i>2 P</i> 30, 8    | Yield yourselves to the Lord, and come to His Sanctuary, which He hath sanctified for ever: serve the Lord the God of your fathers, and the wrath of His indignation shall be turned away from you.               |   |                  |
| <i>Pz</i> 70, 12-13 | My people heard not My Voice, and Israel hearkened not to Me.—So I let them go according to the desires of their heart: they shall walk in their own inventions.  |   |                  |

- Po 29, 1** The man that with a stiff neck despiseth him that reproveth him shall suddenly be destroyed, and health shall not follow him. **audacious, self-willed, they fear not to bring in sects, blaspheming.**
- Za 1, 4** Be not as your fathers, to whom the former Prophets have cried, saying: Thus saith the Lord of hosts: Turn ye from your evil ways and from your wicked thoughts; but they did not give ear, neither did they hearken to Me, saith the Lord. **The sin of Juda is written with a pen of iron, with the point of a diamond; it is graven upon the table of their heart, upon the horns of their altars.**
- Za 7, 11** They would not hearken, and they turned away the shoulder to depart; and they stopped their ears, not to hear. **Thy bruise is incurable, thy wound is very grievous. There is none to judge thy judgment, to bind it up; thou hast no healing medicines.**
- Ps 77, 10** They kept not the covenant of God; and in His law they would not walk. **You stiff-necked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, you always resist the Holy Ghost. As your fathers did, so do you also.**
- 2 Pt 2, 9-10** The Lord knoweth how to reserve the unjust unto the Day of Judgment, to be tormented; — And especially them who walk after the flesh in the lust of uncleanness, and despise government: **Go up into Galaad, and take balm, O virgin daughter of Egypt. In vain dost thou multiply medicines; there shall be no cure for thee. I knew that thou art stubborn, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy forehead of brass.**
- Je 17, 1**
- Je 30, 12-13**
- Ac 7, 51**
- Je 46, 11**
- Is 48, 4**

## 20.—SIN BEGETS FEAR AND PERPLEXITY.

- Po 10, 29** The strength of the upright is the way of the Lord, and fear to them that work evil. **his feet. The sound of dread is always in his ears; and when there is peace, he always suspecteth treason.**
- Po 21, 15** It is joy to the just to do judgment, and death to them that work iniquity. **I will send fear in their hearts in the countries of their enemies; the sound of a flying leaf shall terrify, and they shall flee as it were from the sword; they shall fall when no man pursueth them.**
- Po 23, 1** The wicked man fleeth when no man pursueth; but the just, bold as a lion, shall be without dread. **When he moveth himself to seek bread, he knoweth that the day of darkness is ready at his hand.**
- W 17, 10** Whereas wickedness is fearful, it beareth witness to its condemnation; for a troubled conscience always forecasteth grievous things. **Tribulation shall terrify him, and distress shall sur-**
- Jb 15, 21**
- Le 23, 36**
- Jb 15, 23**
- Jb 15, 24**

round him, as a king that is prepared for the battle.

*Jb 24, 22* He hath pulled down the strong by his might; and when he standeth up he shall not trust to his life.

They have not called upon the Lord; there have they trembled for fear where there was no fear. *Po 13, 5*

## 21.—SIN BRINGS WITH IT SHAME AND SHAMELESSNESS.

*Ro 6, 21* What fruit had you then in those things, of which you are now ashamed? for the end of them is death.

abroad their sin as Sodom, and they have not hid it. Wo to their souls, for evils are rendered to them!

*Po 13, 5* The wicked confoundeth, and shall be confounded.

All the House of Israel are of a hard forehead and an obstinate heart. *Ex 3, 7*

*Je 2, 28* As the thief is confounded when he is taken, so is the House of Israel confounded, they and their kings, their princes and their priests, and their prophets.

Thou hadst a harlot's forehead, that wouldst not blush. *Je 3, 3*

*Is 1, 29* They shall be confounded for the idols to which they have sacrificed; and you shall be ashamed of the gardens which you have chosen; when you shall be as an oak with leaves falling off, and as a garden without water.

The wicked man impudently hardeneth his face; but he that is righteous correcteth his way. *Po 21, 29*

*Is 3, 9* The show of their countenance hath answered them; and they have proclaimed

They were confounded because they committed abomination; yea, rather they were not confounded with confusion, and they knew not how to blush. Wherefore they shall fall among them that fall; in the time of their visitation they shall fall down, saith the Lord. *Je 6, 16*

## 22.—SADNESS AND DESPAIR THE END OF SIN.

*Po 5, 12-13* Why have I hated instruction, and my heart consented not to reproof?—And have not heard the voice of them that taught me, and have not inclined my ear to masters?

the boasting of riches brought us?—All those things have passed away like a shadow, and like a post that runneth on.

*1 M 6, 11-12* Into how much tribulation am I come, and into what floods of sorrow wherein now I am, I that was pleasant and beloved in my power!—But now I remember the evils that I have done.

Why art thou angry? and why is thy countenance fallen?—If thou do well, shalt thou not receive? but if ill, shall not sin forthwith be present at the door? *Ge 4, 6-7*

*W 5, 8-9* What hath pride profited us? or what advantage hath

Tribulation and anguish upon every soul of man that worketh evil. *Ro 2, 9*

The mirth of timbrels hath ceased, the noise of them that

*Is 24, 8-9*



rejoice is ended, the melody of the harp is silent.—They shall not drink wine with a song; the drink shall be bitter to them that drink it.

*Ge* 4, 13 My iniquity is greater than that I may deserve pardon.

*Je* 2, 25 I have lost all hope, I will not do it; for I have loved

strangers, and I will walk after them.

We have no hopes; for we *Je* 18, 12 will go after our own thoughts, and we will do every one according to the perverseness of his evil heart.

Why is my sorrow become *Je* 15, 18 perpetual, and my wound desperate, so as to refuse to be healed?

### 23.—SIN ROBS BODY AND SOUL OF STRENGTH.

*Is* 1, 31 Your strength shall be as the ashes of tow, and your work as a spark: and both shall burn together, and there shall be none to quench it.

*Eci* 21, 10 The congregation of sinners is like tow heaped together, and the end of them is a flame of fire.

*Os* 7, 9 Strangers have devoured his strength, and he knew it not: yea, gray hairs also are spread about upon him, and he is ignorant of it.

*Is* 3, 1-4 Behold, the sovereign the Lord of Hosts shall take away from Jerusalem, and from Juda the valiant and the strong, the whole strength of bread and the whole strength of water.—The strong man and the man of war,—The captain over fifty.—And I will give children to be their princes, and the effeminate shall rule over them.

*Pz* 37, 3 Thy arrows are fastened in

me, and Thy hand hath been strong upon me.

There is no health in my *Pz* 37, 4 flesh because of Thy wrath: there is no peace for my bones because of my sins.

O forgive me, that I may *Pz* 38, 14 be refreshed before I go hence, and be no more.

I said: O Lord, be Thou *Pz* 40, 5 merciful to me: heal my soul, for I have sinned against Thee.

He rebuketh also by sor- *Jb* 33, 19-22 row in the bed, and He maketh all his bones to wither.—

Bread becometh abominable to him in his life, and to his soul the meat which before he desired.—His flesh shall be consumed away, and his bones that were covered shall be made bare.—His soul hath drawn near to corruption, and his life to the destroyers.

Behold, thou art made *Jn* 5, 14 whole: sin no more, lest some worse thing happen to thee.

### 24.—SIN SHORTENS LIFE AND HASTENS DEATH.

*Pz* 2, 22 The wicked shall be destroyed from the earth: and they that do unjustly shall be taken away from it.

As a tempest that passeth, *Pz* 10, 25 so the wicked shall be no more: but the just is an everlasting foundation.

R

- Pv* 12, 7 Turn the wicked and they shall not be: but the house of the just shall stand firm. cast out and could not stand. The wages of sin is death. *Ro* 6, 23
- Pz* 36, 35 I have seen the wicked highly exalted, and lifted up like the cedars of Libanus. If you live according to the flesh, you shall die: but if by the Spirit you mortify the deeds of the flesh, you shall live. *Ro* 8, 13
- Pz* 36, 36 I passed by, and lo, he was not: and I sought him, and his place was not found. In the path of justice is life: but the byway leadeth to death. *Pv* 12, 28
- Eci* 7, 18 Be not over-much wicked: and be not foolish, lest thou die before thy time. Clemency prepareth life: *Pv* 11, 19
- To* 14, 13 Children, hear me, and do not stay here [Ninive], for I see that its iniquity will bring it to destruction. and the pursuing of evil things death.
- Ec* 36, 2 Be not emulous of evil-doers; for they shall shortly wither away as grass, and as the green herbs shall quickly fall. As by one man sin entered into this world, and by sin death: and so death passed upon all men, in whom all have sinned. *Ro* 5, 12
- Pz* 36, 13 There the workers of iniquity are fallen: they are What fruit had you then in those things of which you are now ashamed? for the end of them is death. *Ro* 6, 21

## 25.—SIN DESTROYS REPUTATION, HONOUR, AND

## FAME.

- Pv* 10, 7 The memory of the just is with praises, and the name of the wicked shall rot. Thou hast stained thy glory. *Eci* 47, 22
- Pz* 15, 4 I will not be mindful of their names by My lips. The wise shall possess glory: the promotion of fools is disgrace. *Pv* 3, 35
- Eci* 44, 9 There are some of whom there is no memorial: who are perished, as if they had never been: and are born as if they had never been born, and their children with them. Who will honour him that dishonoureth his own soul? *Eci* 10, 32
- Jb* 18, 17 Let the memory of him perish from the earth, and let not his name be renowned in the streets. In His sight the malignant is brought to nothing: but He glorifieth them that fear the Lord. *Pz* 14, 4
- W* 2, 4-5 Our name in time shall be forgotten, and no man shall have any remembrance of our works.—For our time is as the passing of a shadow, and there is no going back of our end: for it is fast sealed, and no man returneth. If his pride mount up even to heaven, and his head touch the clouds,—In the end he shall be destroyed like a dung-hill, and they that had seen him shall say: Where is he? *Jb* 20, 6-7
- As a dream that fleeth *Jb* 20, 8-9 away he shall not be found, he shall pass as a vision of the night.—The eyes that had seen him shall see him no more, neither shall his place any more behold him.

## 26.—SIN RUINS PROSPERITY.

- Is* 1, 7-8 Your land is desolate, Behold, it is heard in Jerusalem that guards are coming your cities are burnt with fire: your country, strangers devour before your face, and out their voice against the cities of Juda.—They are wasted by enemies:—And the daughter of Sion shall be left as a covert in a vineyard, and as a lodge in a garden of cucumbers. set around about her, as keepers of fields, because she hath provoked Me to wrath, saith the Lord.—Thy ways and thy devices have brought these things upon thee: this is thy wickedness, because it is bitter, because it hath touched thy heart.
- Is* 3, 8 Jerusalem is ruined, and Juda is fallen, because their tongue and their devices are against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of His Majesty. When thou shalt tell this *Je* 16, 10-13
- Is* 24, 3 With desolation shall the earth be laid waste, and it shall be utterly spoiled: for the Lord hath spoken this word. people all these words, and they shall say to thee: Wherefore hath the Lord pronounced against us all this great evil? what is our iniquity? and what is our sin that we have sinned against the Lord our God? — Thou shalt say to them: Because your fathers forsook Me, saith the Lord, and went after strange gods, and served them and adored them: and they forsook Me and kept not My law.—And you also have done worse than your fathers: for behold every one of you walketh after the perverseness of his evil heart, so as not to hearken to Me.—So I will cast you forth out of this land into a land which you know not.
- Is* 24, 19-20 With breaking shall the earth be broken, with crushing shall the earth be crushed, with trembling shall the earth be moved.—With shaking shall the earth be shaken as a drunken man, and shall be removed as the tent of one night: and the iniquity thereof shall be heavy upon it, and it shall fall and not rise again.
- Is* 2, 14-15, 17 Is Israel a bondman or a home-born slave? why then is he become a prey?—The lions have roared upon him, and have made a noise, they have made his land a wilderness: his cities are burnt down, and there is none to dwell in them.—Hath not this been done to thee because thou hast forsaken the Lord thy God at that time when He led thee by the way? How happeneth it, O Israel, *Ba* 3, 10-13
- Is* 4, 15-18 Say ye to the nations: Fountain of Wisdom:—For

if thou hadst walked in the way of God, thou hadst surely dwelt in peace for ever.

*Ez* 7, 10-

11

Behold the day, behold it is come: destruction is gone forth, the rod hath blossomed, pride hath budded.—Iniquity is risen up into a rod of impiety: nothing of them shall remain, nor of their people, nor of the noise of them: and there shall be no rest among them.

*Os* 5, 5,

11

The pride of Israel shall answer in His face: and Israel and Ephraim shall fall in their iniquity, Juda also shall fall with them.—Ephraim is under oppression and broken in judgment, because he began to go after filthiness.

*Jd* 5, 17-

18

There was no one that triumphed over this people but when they departed from the worship of the Lord their God.—But as often as beside their own God they worshipped any other they were given to spoil, and to the sword, and to reproach.

*Jd* 5, 21-

22

As long as they sinned not in the sight of their God it was well with them: for their God hateth iniquity.—And even some years ago, when they had revolted from the way which God had given them to walk therein, they were destroyed in battles by many nations, and very many of them were led away captive into a strange land.

*Jd* 5, 24

My lord, search if there be any iniquity of theirs in the sight of their God: let us go up to them, because their God will surely deliver

them to thee, and they shall be brought under the yoke of thy power.

It is certain our God is so *Jd* 11, 8-9

offended with sins that He hath sent word by His Prophets to the people, that He will deliver them up for their sins.—And because the children of Israel know they have offended their God, thy dread is upon them.

Israel cannot stand before his enemies, but he shall flee from them, because he is defiled with the anathema. I will be no more with you till you destroy him that is guilty of this wickedness.

*Js* 7, 12

Antiochus, going astray in mind, did not consider that God was angry for a while, because of the sins of the inhabitants of the city, and therefore this contempt had happened to the place:—Otherwise had they not been involved in many sins, as Heliodorus, who was sent by King Seleucus to rob the treasury, so this man also, as soon as he had come, had been forthwith scourged, and put back from his presumption.

*2 M* 5,  
17-18

They found under the coats of the slain some of the donaries of the idols, which the law forbiddeth to the Jews: so that all plainly saw that for this cause they were slain.

*2 M* 12,  
40

Wo to them, for they have departed from Me! they shall be wasted because they have transgressed against Me: and I redeemed them: and they have spoken lies against Me.

*Os* 7, 13

Israel hath cast off the thing that was good: the enemy shall pursue him.

*Os* 2, 2

- Mt* 6, 13-15 I began to strike thee with desolation for thy sins. —Thou shalt eat, but shalt not be filled, and thy humiliation shall be in the midst of thee: and thou shalt take hold, and shalt not save: and those whom thou shalt save I will give up to the sword. —Thou shalt sow, but shalt not reap: thou shalt tread the olives, but shalt not be anointed with the oil: and the new wine, but shalt not drink the wine.
- Justice exalteth a nation: *Ps* 14, 34 but sin maketh nations miserable.
- A kingdom is translated *Eci* 10, 8 from one people to another, because of injustices, and wrongs, and injuries, and divers deceits.

## 27.—SIN DESTROYS OFFSPRING AND POSTERITY.

- Jb* 18, 19 His seed shall not subsist, nor his offspring among his people, nor any remnants in his country. taken away by the breath of his own mouth.
- Os* 9, 14 Give them, O Lord. What wilt Thou give them? Give them a womb without children, and dry breasts. The seed of the wicked *Ps* 36, 28 shall perish.
- Os* 9, 16 Ephraim is struck, their root is dried up, they shall yield no fruit. The remnants of the wicked shall perish. *Ps* 36, 38
- Je* 22, 30 Write this man barren, a man that shall not prosper in his days: for there shall not be a man of his seed that shall sit upon the throne of David, and have power any more in Juda. The congregation of the hypocrite is barren. *Jb* 15, 34
- Os* 9, 11-12 As for Ephraim, their glory hath flown away like a bird from the birth, and from the womb, and from the conception.—Wo to them when I shall depart from them! Let the first-born death consume his arms. *Jb* 18, 13
- Jb* 15, 30 The flame shall dry up his branches, and he shall be fruit of their womb. Though they should bring up their children, I will make them without children among men. *Os* 9, 12
- I will destroy the name of Babylon, and the remains, and the bud, and the offspring, saith the Lord. *Is* 14, 22
- The offspring of the ungodly shall not bring forth many branches, and make a noise as unclean roots upon the top of a rock. *Eci* 40, 15
- If they should have issue, I will slay the first beloved fruit of their womb. *Os* 9, 16

## 28.—GOD HATES NOT ONLY WICKED MAN AND HIS WICKEDNESS, BUT HIS OFFERINGS AND SACRIFICES.

- W* 14, 9 To God the wicked and his wickedness are hateful alike. ful man the Lord will abhor. I abhor the wicked. *Ex* 23, 7
- Ps* 5, 7 The bloody and the deceitful man the Lord thy God hateth all injustice. *De* 25, 16

- Pv* 3, 32 Every mocker is an abomination to the Lord.
- Pv* 17, 15 He that justifieth the wicked and he that condemneth the just both are abominations before God.
- Pz* 5, 7 Thou hatest all the workers of iniquity: Thou wilt destroy all that speak a lie.
- Ap* 3, 18 I will begin to vomit thee out of My mouth.
- Pv* 15, 8 The victims of the wicked are abominable to the Lord: the vows of the just are acceptable.
- Pv* 21, 27 The sacrifices of the wicked are abominable, because they are offered of wickedness.
- Eci* 34, 23 The Most High approveth not the gifts of the wicked: neither hath He respect to the oblations of the unjust, nor will He be pacified for sins by the multitude of their sacrifices.
- Is* 1, 11, 13-14 To what purpose do you offer Me the multitude of your victims? saith the Lord.
- I am full: I desire not holocausts of rams, and fat of fatlings, and blood of calves, and lambs, and buck-goats. Offer sacrifice no more in vain: incense is an abomination to Me.—The new moons, and the sabbaths, and other festivals I will not abide: your assemblies are wicked.—My soul hateth your new moons, and your solemnities: they are become troublesome to Me, I am weary of bearing them.
- I hate and have rejected *Am* 5, 21-23 your festivities: and I will not receive the odour of your assemblies.—And if you offer Me holocausts, and your gifts, I will not receive them. Neither will I regard the vows of your fat beasts.—Take away from Me the tumult of thy songs, and I will not hear the canticles of thy harp.

### 29.—GOD REPROACHES THE SINNER FOR THE MISUSE OF HIS BLESSINGS.

- Pz* 53, 13-15 If my enemy had reviled Me, I would verily have borne with it.—And if he that hated Me had spoken great things against Me, I would perhaps have hidden Myself from him.—But thou, a man of one mind, My guide, and My familiar,—Who didst take sweet meats together with Me: in the House of God we walked with consent.
- Is* 1, 2-3 Hear, O ye heavens, and give ear, O earth, for the Lord hath spoken: I have brought up children, and exalted them: but they have despised Me.—The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master's crib; but Israel hath not known Me, and My people hath not understood.
- I planted thee a chosen Vineyard, all true seed; how then art thou turned unto Me into that which is good for nothing, O strange Vineyard?
- What iniquity have your fathers found in Me that they are gone far from Me, and have walked after vanity, and are become vain?—And they have not said: Where is the Lord, that made us come up out of the land of
- Je* 2, 21
- Je* 2, 5-

Egypt, that led us through the desert?—And I brought you into the land of Carmel, to eat of the fruit thereof and the best things thereof; and when ye entered in, you defiled My land, and made My inheritance an abomination.

Because I called, and you refused; I stretched out My hand, and there was none that regarded.—You have despised all My counsel, and have neglected My reprehensions.

*Po* 1, 24-25

*Is* 65, 2

I have spread forth My hands all the day to an un-

### 30.—GOD EXHORTS SINNERS TO ABANDON SIN.

• *Is* 1, 16-17 Wash yourselves, be clean, take away the evil of your devices from My eyes: cease to do perversely,—Learn to do well: seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge for the fatherless, defend the widow.

to you, rising early and speaking, and you have not obeyed Me.

Return, as you had deeply revolted, O children of Israel.

*Is* 31, 6

Therefore at the least from this time call to Me: Thou

*Je* 3, 4, 12

art my Father, the Guide of my virginity.—Return, O rebellious Israel, saith the Lord, and I will not turn away My face from you: for I am Holy, saith the Lord, and I will not be angry for ever.

*Je* 4, 14

Wash thy heart from wickedness, O Jerusalem, that thou mayst be saved. How long shall hurtful thoughts abide in thee?

*Je* 2, 18

What hast thou to do in the way of Egypt, to drink the troubled water? and what hast thou to do with the way of the Assyrians, to drink the water of the river?

Is it My will that a sinner should die, saith the Lord God, and not that he should be converted from his ways, and live?

*Ez* 18, 23

*Is* 7, 26

Thou shalt detest it as dung, and shalt utterly abhor it as uncleanness and filth, because it is an anathema.

O children, how long will you love childishness; and fools covet those things which

*Po* 1, 22-23

*Je* 15, 6

Thou hast forsaken Me, saith the Lord, thou art gone backward; and I will stretch out My hand against thee, and I will destroy thee; I am weary of entreating thee.

are hurtful to themselves, and the unwise hate knowledge?—Turn ye at My reproof. Behold, I will utter My Spirit to you, and will show you My words.

*Je* 35, 14

The words of Jonabab the son of Rechab, by which he commanded his sons not to drink wine, have prevailed; and they have drunk none to this day, because they obeyed the commandment of their father. But I have spoken

Be converted, and do penance for all your iniquities, and iniquity shall not be your ruin.—Cast away from you all your transgressions by which you have transgressed, and make to yourselves a new heart and a

*Ez* 18, 30-32

new spirit; and why will you die, O House of Israel? I labour and are burdened, and I will refresh you.

—For I desire not the death of him that dieth, saith the Lord God. Return ye, and live. Take up My yoke upon you: *Mt* 11, 29—For My yoke is sweet, and My burden light. 30

*Ex* 36, 32 Be confounded and ashamed at your own ways, O House of Israel. O, O flee ye out of the land of the north, saith the Lord.—O Sion, flee thou that dwellest with the daughter of Babylon. *Za* 2, 6-7

*Mt* 11, 28 Come to Me, all you that

### 31.—GOD PROMISES MERCY AND GRACE TO PENITENTS.

*Os* 2, 18-20 In that day I will make a Covenant with them, with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of the air, and with the creeping things of the earth; and I will destroy the bow, and the sword, and war out of the land; and I will make them sleep secure.—And I will espouse thee to Me for ever; and I will espouse thee to Me in justice, and judgment, and in mercy, and in commiserations.—And I will espouse thee to Me in faith; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord. I will heal their breaches; I will love them freely; for My wrath is turned away from them.—I will be as the dew. Israel shall spring as the lily, and his root shall shoot forth as that of Libanus.—Who is wise, and he shall understand these things? prudent, and he shall know these things? For the ways of the Lord are right, and the just shall walk in them; but the transgressors shall fall in them. *Os* 14, 5-6, 10

*Os* 2, 21-24 And it shall come to pass in that day I will hear, saith the Lord; I will hear the heavens, and they shall hear the earth;—And the earth shall hear the corn, and the wine, and the oil, and these shall hear Jezrahel.—And I will sow her unto Me in the earth; and I will have mercy on her that was without mercy.—And I will say to that which was not My people, Thou art My people; and they shall say, Thou art My God. Fear not, for I am with thee; turn not aside, for I am thy God. I have strengthened thee, and have helped thee, and the right hand of My Just One hath upheld thee.—Behold, all that fight against thee shall be confounded and ashamed: they shall be as nothing, and the men shall perish that strive against thee.—Fear not, thou worm of Jacob, you that are dead of Israel: I have helped thee, saith the Lord, and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel. *Is* 41, 10-11, 14

*Os* 2, 14 Behold, I will allure her, and will lead her into the wilderness, and I will speak to her heart. The bruised reed He shall not break, and the smoking flax He shall not quench. He shall bring forth judgment unto truth. *Is* 42, 3



## 32:—EXHORTATIONS TO THOROUGH CONVERSION.

- Eci* 5, 8-9 Delay not to be converted to the Lord, and defer it not from day to day.—For His wrath shall come on a sudden, and in the time of vengeance He will destroy thee.
- Eci* 5, 4-7 Say not: I have sinned, and what harm hath befallen me? for the Most High is a patient Rewarder.—Add not sin upon sin:—And say not: The mercy of the Lord is great, He will have mercy on the multitude of my sins.—For mercy and wrath quickly come from Him, and His wrath looketh upon sinners.
- Ro* 13, 11-14 It is now the hour for us to rise from sleep. For now our salvation is nearer than when we believed.—The night is passed, and the day is at hand.—Let us therefore cast off the works of darkness, and put on the Armour of Light. Let us walk honestly, as in the day: not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and impurities, not in contention and envy.—But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh in its concupiscences.
- La* 3, 40 Let us search our ways, and seek, and return to the Lord.
- Ps* 33, 15 Turn away from evil and do good: seek after peace and pursue it.
- Eci* 35, 5 To depart from iniquity is that which pleaseth the Lord, and to depart from injustice is an entreaty for sins.
- Is* 45, 22 Be converted to Me, and you shall be saved, all ye ends of the earth: for I am God, and there is no other.
- Be converted, and depart from your idols, and turn away your faces from all your abominations.
- Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unjust man his thoughts, and let him return to the Lord, and He will have mercy on him: and to our God, for He is bountiful to forgive.
- And I will give them a heart to know Me, that I am the Lord: and they shall be My people, and I will be their God: because they shall return to Me with their whole heart.
- Is it My will that a sinner should die, saith the Lord God, and not that he should be converted from his ways and live?—When the wicked turneth himself away from his wickedness which he hath wrought, and doeth judgment and justice, he shall save his soul alive.—Cast away from you all your transgressions, by which you have transgressed, and make to yourselves a new heart and a new spirit: and why will you die, O House of Israel?—For I desire not the death of him that dieth, saith the Lord God: return ye, and live.
- Be converted to Me with all your heart, in fasting, and in weeping, and in mourning.—And rend your hearts, and not your garments, and turn to the Lord your God: for He is gracious and merciful, patient and rich in mercy, and ready to repent of the evil.—Who knoweth but He will return, and forgive, and

- leave a blessing behind Him?
- Os* 12, 5 Therefore turn thou to thy God: keep mercy and judgment, and hope in thy God always.
- Os* 14, 2 Return, O Israel, to the Lord thy God: for thou hast fallen down by thy iniquity.
- Am* 5, 15 Hate evil, and love good, and establish judgment in the gate.
- Ma* 3, 7 Return to Me, and I will return to you, saith the Lord of Hosts.
- Mt* 18, 3 Amen I say to you, unless you be converted, and become as little children, you shall not enter into the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Mt* 13, 15 The heart of this people is grown gross, and with their ears they have been dull of hearing, and their eyes they have shut: lest at any time they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their hearts, and be converted, and I should heal them.
- Ac* 3, 26, 19 To you first God, raising up His Son, hath sent Him to bless you: that every one may convert himself from his wickedness.—Be penitent, therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out.
- Ja* 4, 8 Draw nigh to God, and He will draw nigh to you. Cleanse your hands, ye sinners: and purify your hearts, ye double-minded.
- 1 Pt* 2, 25 You were as sheep going astray: but you are now converted to the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.
- 2 C* 5, 19-20 God indeed was in Christ, reconciling the world to Himself, not imputing to them their sins;—And He hath placed in us the word of reconciliation.
- Having these promises, 2 *C* 7, 1 dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all defilement of the flesh and of the spirit, perfecting sanctification in the fear of God.
- Rise, thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead: and Christ shall enlighten thee. *Ep* 5, 1
- Turn to the Lord and forsake thy sins:—Make thy prayer before the face of the Lord, and offendless.—Return to the Lord and turn away from thy injustice, and greatly hate abomination.—And know the justices and judgments of God, and stand firm in the lotset before thee, and in prayer to the Most High God. *Eci* 17, 24
- This then I say and testify *Ep* 4, 17-19 in the Lord: that henceforward you walk not as also the Gentiles walk in the vanity of their mind,—Having their understanding darkened, being alienated from the Life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their hearts.—Who despairing, have given themselves up to lasciviousness, unto the working of all uncleanness, unto covetousness.
- Do penance from this thy wickedness: and pray to God, if perhaps this thought of thy heart may be forgiven thee. *Ac* 8, 22
- Make your ways and your doings good: and I will dwell with you in this place. *Je* 7, 3
- He shall pray to God, and He will be gracious to him: and he shall see His Face with joy, and He will render to man his justice. *Jb* 33, 26

### 33.—WORDS OF THE SINNER WHO PURPOSES TO RETURN TO GOD, AND TO ACKNOWLEDGE HIS SIN WITHIN HIMSELF.

- Os 2, 7* I will go and return to my first husband, because it was better with me then than now.
- Lu 15, 17-19* Returning to himself, he said: How many hired servants in My Father's House abound with bread, and I here perish with hunger?—I will arise, and will go to My Father, and say to Him: Father, I have sinned against Heaven and before Thee: I am not worthy to be called Thy son: make me as one of Thy hired servants.
- Is 28, 13* O Lord our God, other lords besides Thee have had dominion over us: only in Thee let us remember Thy Name.
- 2 K 24, 10* I have sinned very much
- in what I have done: but I pray Thee, O Lord, to take away the iniquity of Thy servant, because I have done exceeding foolishly.
- My God, I am confounded and ashamed to lift up my face to Thee: for our iniquities are multiplied over our heads, and our sins are grown up even unto Heaven.
- I have sinned, and indeed I have offended: and I have not received what I have deserved.
- O God of Hosts, convert us.
- Convert us, O God our Saviour.
- Convert me, and I shall be converted: for Thou art the Lord my God.
- 1 E 9, 6*
- Jb 33, 27*
- Ps 78, 8*
- Ps 84, 5*
- Je 31, 18*

### 34.—CRIES OF THE SINNER GRIEVING OVER HIS SINS.

- Jb 7, 20* I have sinned: what shall I do to Thee, O Keeper of men?
- Ps 50, 5* I know my iniquity, and my sin is always before me.
- Ps 105, 6* We have sinned with our fathers: we have acted unjustly, we have wrought iniquity.
- Is 59, 2-3* Your iniquities have divided between you and your God, and your sins have hid His face from you, that He should not hear:—For your hands are defiled with blood, and your fingers with iniquity: your lips have spoken lies, and your tongue uttereth iniquity.
- Is 59, 12-13* Our iniquities are multiplied before Thee, and our
- sins have testified against us: for our wicked doings are with us, and we have known our iniquities.—In sinning and lying against the Lord; and we have turned away so that we went not after our God, but spoke calumny and transgression: we have conceived and uttered from the heart words of falsehood.
- As a woman that despiseth her lover, so hath the House of Israel despised Me, saith the Lord.
- What hast thou done? the Voice of thy Brother's Blood [Christ's] crieth to Me from the earth.
- I have sinned against the
- Jb 3, 20*
- Ge 4, 10*
- 2 K 12, 13*

Lord. The Lord also hath taken away thy sin.

2 K 19, 19-20 Impute not to me, my Lord, the iniquity, nor remember the injuries of Thy servant.—For I Thy servant acknowledge my sin.

2 E 1, 5-7 I beseech Thee, O Lord God of Heaven, strong, great, and terrible, Who keepest covenant and mercy with those that love Thee, and keep Thy commandments:—Let Thy ears be attentive, and Thy eyes open, to hear the prayer of Thy servant, which I pray before Thee now, night and day, for the children of Israel Thy servants: and I confess the sins of the children of Israel, by which they have sinned against Thee: I and my father's house have sinned.—We have been seduced by vanity, and have not kept Thy commandments, and ceremonies, and judgments, which Thou hast commanded Thy servant Moses.

2 E 9, 33-37 And Thou art just in all things that have come upon us: because Thou hast done truth, but we have done wickedly.—Our kings, our princes, our priests, and our fathers have not kept Thy law, and have not minded Thy commandments, and Thy testimonies which Thou hast testified among them.—And they have not served Thee in their kingdoms, and in Thy manifold goodness, which Thou gavest them, and in the large and fat land, which Thou hadst delivered before them, nor did they return from their most wicked devices.—Behold, we ourselves

this day are bondmen: and the land, which Thou gavest our fathers, to eat the bread thereof, and the good things thereof, and we ourselves are servants in it. We are in great tribulation.

Withhold not Thou, O Ps 39, 12-14 Lord, Thy tender mercies from me: Thy mercy and Thy truth have always upheld me.—For evils without number have surrounded me; my iniquities have overtaken me, and I was not able to see.—They are multiplied above the hairs of my head: and my heart hath forsaken me.—Be pleased, O Lord, to deliver me: look down, O Lord, to help me.

Have mercy on me, O God, Ps 50, 3-5 according to Thy great mercy. And according to the multitude of Thy tender mercies blot out my iniquity:—Wash me yet more from my iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin.—For I know my iniquity, and my sin is always before me.

If I would justify myself, Jb 9, 20 my own mouth shall condemn me: if I should show myself innocent, He shall reprove me wicked.

How many are my iniquities and sins? Make me Jb 13, 23 know my crimes and offences.

With the hearing of the ear Jb 42, 5, 6 I have heard Thee, but now my eye seeth Thee.—Therefore I reprehend myself, and do penance in dust and ashes.

O God, Thou knowest my Ps 68, 6 foolishness: and my offences are not hidden from Thee. 11—And I covered my soul in fasting.

## BOOK III.

---

### THE THEOLOGICAL AND CARDINAL VIRTUES, AND THEIR CONTRARY VICES.

WE have treated of virtue and vice *in general*. In the present Book we will treat of the *various forms* of virtue and vice.

Virtues are either Theological or Moral. Theological virtues are those virtues which have *God* for their *immediate* object. Moral virtues are those virtues which have for their *immediate* object, not God, but the natural rectitude of some action.

The Theological virtues are three in number—viz., Faith, Hope, and Charity. There are many Moral virtues, but they are all reducible to four, which are called Cardinal virtues—viz., Prudence, Justice, Fortitude, and Temperance. In treating of each virtue, we shall at the same time treat of the contrary vices.

The Theological virtues stand first in order of dignity. S. Clement of Alexandria calls the Theological virtues "The three foundations of the Temple of Christ."\* St. Augustine names them "The three weapons of all science and prophecy."† Rupert regards them as "The three steps by which we are led to the likeness of the Blessed Trinity."‡

---

\* Stromat., lib. 5. † De Doct. Christ., lib. 1, cap. 37. ‡ De Glorificatione Trinitatis, lib. 6, cap. 19.

## PART I.

### DIVINE FAITH AND THE CONTRARY VICES.

---

FAITH, which the Council of Trent\* has declared to be "The beginning of human salvation, the foundation and root of all justification," is "an infused, supernatural habit inclining the intellect to firmly assent to the truths revealed by God and proposed by the Church, on account of the authority of God, the Revealer." The *material* object of Faith is God Himself, as the "*prima veritas in essendo*," and whatever else has been revealed by God. The *formal* object or motive determining our assent of Faith is God Himself, as the "*prima veritas in dicendo*," or, in other words, the veracity of God. The habit of Faith, like the habits of the other virtues, must not remain inoperative. It must go forth into act. It must even, as often as the glory of God or our neighbours' good should require it, manifest itself externally. "With the heart, we believe unto justice; but, with the mouth, *confession* is made unto salvation."† The Gifts of the Holy Spirit which correspond to the virtue of Faith are Intellect and Science. The vices opposed to the *habit* of Faith are Unbelief, Heresy, and Apostasy. The vice opposed to the *confession* or external manifestation of Faith is Blasphemy.

---

\* Sess. 6, c. 8.

† Epist. ad Rom., 10, 10

1.—ORTHODOX FAITH RESTS NOT ON HUMAN  
CONVICTION.

- 1 C 2, 4 My speech and my preaching was not in the persuasive words of human wisdom, but in the showing of the Spirit and power.
- Ge 1, 11-12 I give you to understand that the Gospel which was preached by me is not according to man: for neither did I receive it of man, nor did I learn it but by the revelation of Jesus Christ.
- 1 T 2, 13 We give thanks to God without ceasing: because that when you had received of us the Word of the hearing of God, you received it not as the word of men, but (as it is indeed) the Word of God.
- If we receive the testimony of men, the testimony of God is greater. For this is the testimony of God, which is greater, because He hath testified of His Son.
- He that believeth in the Son of God hath the testimony of God in himself.—He that hath the Son hath life.
- 1 J 5, 9
- 1 J 5, 10-11

2.—ORTHODOX FAITH RESTS SOLELY ON DIVINE  
AUTHORITY.

- Mt 16, 17 Blessed art thou, Simon Bar-Jona: because flesh and blood hath not revealed it to thee, but My Father Who is in Heaven.
- Jn 12, 44 He that believeth in Me doth not believe in Me, but in Him that sent Me.
- Jn 7, 16 My doctrine is not Mine, but His that sent Me.
- Jn 16, 17 If any man will do the will of Him, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of Myself.
- Many other signs also did Jesus in the sight of His disciples, which are not written in this Book.—But these are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ the Son of God: and that believing, you may have life in His Name.
- Believe in the Lord your God, and you shall be secure: believe the Prophets, and all things shall succeed well.
- Jn 20, 30-31
- 2 P 20, 20

3.—REVELATION UNIVERSAL AND PARTICULAR,  
MEDIATE AND IMMEDIATE.

- Mk 16, 15 Go ye into the whole world, and preach the Gospel to every creature.
- Ro 1, 8 Your faith is spoken of in the whole world.
- Lu 24, 47 Penance and the remission of sins must be preached in His Name unto all nations.
- Abraham believed God, and it was reputed to him unto justice.
- You shall be witnesses unto Me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea, and Samaria.
- We see now through a glass in dark manner, but then face to face.
- Ge 15, 6
- Ac 1, 8
- 1 C 13, 12

- Jn* 1, 9 He enlighteneth every man that cometh into this world. God will have all men to be saved, and to come to the knowledge of the truth. *1 Tm* 2, 4

## 4.—GOD AS THE FIRST TRUTH.

- Ro* 3, 4 God is true: and every man a liar. shall not pass away. May God give unto you *Ep* 1, 17-19
- He* 6, 18 God interposed an oath, that by two immutable things, in which it is impossible for God to lie, we may have the strongest comfort, who have fled for refuge to hold fast the hope set before us. the Spirit of wisdom, and of revelation in the knowledge of Him, that the eyes of your heart enlightened, you may know what the hope is of His calling, and what are the riches of the glory of His inheritance in the Saints:—
- 1 Pt* 3, 4 God is faithful and without any iniquity. He is just and right. And what is the exceeding greatness of His power towards us, who believe according to the operation of the might of His power.
- Mt* 24, 35 Heaven and earth shall pass away, but My words

## 5.—THE NATURE, STABILITY, AND CERTITUDE OF FAITH.

- He* 11, 1 Faith is the substance of things to be hoped for, the evidence of things that appear not. No man hath seen God at any time: the Only Begotten Son, Who is in the bosom of the Father, He hath declared Him. *Jn* 1, 18
- 2 Pt* 1, 18-19 This voice we heard brought from Heaven, when we were with Him in the Holy Mount.—We have the more firm prophetic Word: whereunto you do well to attend, as to a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day-star arise in your hearts. Thy testimonies are become exceedingly credible. *Pt* 92, 5
- Ga* 1, 8-9 Though we, or an angel from Heaven, preach a Gospel to you besides that which we have preached to you, let him be anathema.—How shall we escape if we neglect so great salvation? which having begun to be declared by the Lord, was confirmed unto us by them that heard Him:—God also bearing them witness by signs, and wonders, and divers miracles, and distributions of the Holy Ghost according to His own will. By grace you are saved through faith: and that not of yourselves, for it is the gift of God. *He* 2, 3-4 *Ep* 2, 8
- As we said before, so now I say again: If any one preach to you a Gospel besides that which you have received, let him be anathema. I will espouse thee to Me in faith: and thou shalt know that I am the Lord. *Os* 2, 20



6.—THE UNITY, NECESSITY, AND UTILITY OF FAITH.

- Ep 4, 5-6* One Lord, one faith, one baptism. — One God and Father of all, Who is above all, and through all, and in us all. judgments to Israel. — He hath not done in like manner to every nation: and His judgments He hath not made manifest to them. Alleluia.
- Ga 5, 6* In Christ Jesus neither circumcision availeth anything, nor uncircumcision: but faith that worketh by charity. You are no more strangers and foreigners: but you are fellow-citizens with the Saints and the domestics of God.
- He 11, 6* Without faith it is impossible to please God. For he that cometh to God must believe that He is, and is a Rewarder to them that seek Him. We cease not to pray for you, — Giving thanks to God the Father, Who hath made us worthy to be partakers of the lot of the Saints in light.
- Ac 4, 11-12* This [Jesus] is the stone which was rejected by you the builders, which is become the Head of the corner. — Neither is there salvation in any other. For there is no other Name under Heaven given to men whereby we must be saved. — Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the Kingdom of the Son of His love, — In whom we have redemption through His Blood, the remission of sins.
- Ep 1, 16, 19* I cease not to give thanks for you, making commemoration of you in my prayers, — That you may know what is the exceeding greatness of His power towards us who believe. The things that were gain to me, the same I have counted loss for Christ.
- Ba 4, 4* We are happy, O Israel: because the things that are pleasing to God are made known to us. I count all things to be but loss, for the excellent knowledge of Jesus Christ my Lord: for Whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and count them but as dung, that I may gain Christ.
- Ps 147, 19-20* Praise the Lord, Who declareth His justices and His strength unto all men. If you had faith as a grain of mustard-seed, you shall say to this mountain: Remove from hence thither, and it shall remove.

7.—FAITH AS LIVING AND AS DEAD.

- Ha 2, 4* The just shall live in his faith. being witnessed by the Law and the Prophets: — Even the justice of God by faith of Jesus Christ, unto all and upon all them that believe in Him: for there is no distinction.
- Ro 5, 1* Being justified by faith, let us have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ. To Him all the Prophets
- Ro 3, 21-22* Without the Law the justice of God is made manifest, *Ac 10, 43*

- give testimony, that through His Name all receive remission of sins who believe in Him.
- Mk 16, 16* He that believeth and is baptised shall be saved: but he that believeth not shall be condemned.
- Jn 1, 12* As many as received Him, He gave them power to be made the sons of God, to them that believe in His Name.
- Jn 3, 16* God so loved the world as to give His Only-Begotten Son: that whosoever believeth in Him may not perish, but may have Life Everlasting.
- Jn 6, 35* I am the Bread of Life: he that cometh to Me shall not hunger; and he that believeth in Me shall never thirst.
- Jn 6, 47* Amen, amen I say unto you, he that believeth in Me hath Everlasting Life.
- Jn 5, 24* Amen, amen I say unto you, that he who heareth My word, and believeth Him Who sent Me, hath Life Everlasting, and cometh not into judgment, but is passed from death to life.
- Ecc 32, 28* He that believeth God
- taketh heed to the Commandments: and he that trusteth in Him shall fare never the worse.
- Some man will say: Thou hast faith, and I have works; show me thy faith without works, and I will show thee by works my faith.
- What shall it profit, my brethren, if a man say he hath faith, but hath not works? Shall faith be able to save him?—And if a brother or sister be naked, and want daily food,—And one of you say to them: Go in peace, be you warmed and filled, yet give them not those things that are necessary for the body, what shall it profit?—So faith also, if it have not works, is dead in itself.
- Many of the chief men believed in Him: but because of the Pharisees they did not confess Him, that they might not be cast out of the synagogue.—For they loved the glory of men more than the glory of God.
- If thou wilt enter into Life, keep the Commandments.
- Ja 2, 18*
- Ja 2, 14-17*
- Jn 12, 42-43*
- Mt 19, 17*

### 8.—EXHORTATIONS TO LIVE A LIFE WORTHY OF FAITH, AND TO PERSEVERE THEREIN.

- Eph 4, 1* I therefore, a prisoner in the Lord, beseech you that you walk worthy of the vocation in which you are called.
- Ph 1, 27* Let your conversation be worthy of the Gospel of Christ: that whether I come and see you, or being absent may hear of you, that you stand fast in one spirit with one mind, labouring together for the faith of the Gospel.
- We cease not to pray for you, and to beg that you may walk worthy of God in all things pleasing, and increasing in the knowledge of God.
- Pass not beyond the ancient bounds which thy fathers have set.
- C11, 10*
- Po 22, 28*

- 1 C 16, 13 Stand fast in the faith.  
 Je 6, 18 Thus saith the Lord: Stand ye on the ways, and see, and ask for the old paths, which is the good way, and walk ye in it: and you shall find refreshment for your souls.
- Ga 3, 1 O senseless Galatians, who hath bewitched you that you should not obey the truth, before whose eyes Jesus Christ hath been set forth crucified among you?
- Ga 5, 1 Stand fast, and be not held again under the yoke of bondage.
- Ga 5, 7 You did run well: who hath hindered you, that you should not obey the truth?
- He gave some Apostles, Ep 4, 11, 14 and some prophets, and other some evangelists, and other some pastors and doctors:— That henceforth we be no more children tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine by the wickedness of men, by cunning and craftiness, by which they lie in wait to deceive.
- Be not led away with various and strange doctrines. He 13, 9
- Labour the more, that by good works you may make sure your calling and election. 2 Pt 1, 10

9.—FAITH TO BE PROFESSED BOTH INWARDLY  
AND OUTWARDLY.

- Lu 9, 28 He that shall be ashamed of Me and of My words, of him the Son of man shall be ashamed when He shall come in His Majesty, and that of His Father and of the holy Angels.
- Ro 10, 10 With the heart we believe unto justice; but with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.
- Jn 12, 42-43 Many of the chief men believed in Him: but because of the Pharisees they did not confess Him.—For they loved the glory of men more than the glory of God.
- Jn 9, 22 These things his parents said, because they feared the Jews. For the Jews had already agreed among themselves, that if any man should confess Him to be Christ, he should be put out of the synagogue.
- To 2, 18 We are the children of Saints, and look for that Life which God will give to those that never change their faith from Him.
- By our Lord Jesus Christ we have received grace and apostleship for obedience to the faith in all nations for His Name.
- We walk by faith. 2 C 5, 7
- Your faith groweth exceedingly, and the charity of every one of you towards each other aboundeth. 2 T 1 3
- Take unto you the armour of God, that you may be able to resist in the evil day.—In all things taking the shield of faith, wherewith you may be able to extinguish all the fiery darts of the most wicked one.
- Every one that shall confess Me before men, I will also confess him before My Father Who is in Heaven. Mt 10, 32
- We ought to obey God rather than men. Ac 5, 29

## 10.—EXAMPLES OF HEROIC FAITH.

- Ge* 15, 6 Abram believed God, and it was reputed to him unto justice.
- Ge* 22, 5 Stay you here with the ass: I and the boy will go with speed as far as yonder, and after we have worshipped will return to you.
- Mt* 2, 11 Entering into the house, they found the Child with Mary His Mother, and falling down they adored Him; and opening their treasures, they offered Him gifts: gold, frankincense, and myrrh.
- Mt* 9, 21 She said within herself: If I shall touch only His garment, I shall be healed.
- Mt* 9, 28-30 Jesus saith to them: Do you believe that I can do this unto you? They say to Him: Yea, Lord.—Then He touched their eyes, saying: According to your faith be it done unto you.—And their eyes were opened: and Jesus strictly charged them, saying: See that no man know this.
- Mt* 14, 36 They besought Him that they might touch but the hem of His garment. And as many as touched were made whole.
- Mt* 15, 28 O woman, great is thy faith: be it done to thee as thou wilt. And her daughter was cured from that hour.
- Lu* 1, 45 Blessed art thou that hast believed, because those things shall be accomplished that were spoken to thee by the Lord.
- Mt* 9, 2 Jesus, seeing their faith, said to the man sick of the palsy: Be of good heart, son: thy sins are forgiven thee.
- Lu* 7, 50 Thy faith hath made thee safe: go in peace.

## Examples of men of faith:

1. St. Abraham. *Ge* 12, 4
2. St. Joseph, the Patriarch. *Ge* 50, 20
3. St. Moses. *He* 11, 24
4. St. David, the Royal Prophet. *1 K* 17, 32
5. St. Joseph, Foster-Father of Jesus. *Mt* 2, 24
6. St. Peter, Prince of the Apostles. *Mk* 1, 18
7. St. John, the Evangelist. *Jn* 20, 8
8. St. Philip, the Apostle. *Jn* 1, 45
9. St. Barnabas. *Ac* 11, 24
10. St. Stephen, Protomartyr. *Ac* 6, 8
11. St. Timothy, his mother Eunice, and his grandmother Lois. *2 T* 1, 5
12. St. Philemon. *Pn* 5
13. St. Zachary. *Lu* 1, 64
14. SS. Gaspar, Melchor, and Baltasar. *Mt* 2, 1
15. St. Paulus (Sergius), Proconsul. *Ac* 13, 12
16. Abel. *He* 11, 4
17. Caleb. *Nu* 13, 31
18. Rahab. *Js* 2, 9
19. The Widow of Rephtha. *Sa-3 K* 17, 15
20. Amasias, King of Juda. *2 P* 25, 10
21. The Ninivites. *Jo* 3, 5
22. The man born blind. *Jn* 9, 38
23. The Nobleman who was a Ruler. *Jn* 4, 53
24. The Sick in the country of Genesar. *Mt* 14, 36
25. The grateful Leper. *Lu* 17, 19
26. The Woman who touched the hem of Christ's garment. *Mt* 9, 21
27. The Paralytic and his Friends. *Mk* 2, 4
28. St. Paul's Gaoler. *Ac* 16, 36

<i>Ac</i> 14, 9	29. The Cripple of Lystra.	35. The Ephesians.	<i>Ep</i> 1, 15
<i>Ac</i> 8, 37	30. The Ethiopian.	36. The Colossians.	<i>Cl</i> 1, 4
<i>Ac</i> 2, 41	31. The Three Thousand at Pentecost.	37. The Thessalonians.	1 <i>T</i> 3, 6
<i>Ac</i> 4, 4	32. The Five Thousand.	38. The Church of Thyatira.	<i>Ap</i> 2, 19
<i>Ac</i> 9, 35	33. The People of Lydda and Saron.	39. The Romans, whose faith is spoken of in the whole world."	<i>Ro</i> 1, 8
<i>Ac</i> 9, 42	34. The People of Jaffa.	40. Multitudes.	<i>Ac</i> 5, 14

# II.—EJACULATORY PRAYERS TO EXCITE AND INCREASE FAITH IN THE SOUL.

<i>Lu</i> 17, 5	Lord, increase our faith.	things of the Lord in the
<i>Lu</i> 17, 6	Give me, Lord, faith like unto a grain of mustard-seed.	Land of the living.
<i>Mk</i> 9, 23	I do believe, Lord: help my unbelief.	I know Whom I have believed, and I am certain that He is able to keep that which I have committed unto Him against that day.
<i>Ps</i> 28, 13	I believe to see the good	

## 12.—UNBELIEF.

<i>Ha</i> 2, 4	He that is unbelieving, his soul shall not be right in himself; but the just shall live in his faith.	what doth it profit us if we pray to Him?
<i>Jn</i> 3, 18	He that doth not believe is already judged, because he believeth not in the Name of the Only Begotten Son of God.	The fool hath said in his heart: There is no God. They are corrupt, and are become abominable in their ways; there is none that doth good, no, not one.
<i>Jn</i> 3, 36	He that believeth in the Son hath Life Everlasting; but he that believeth not the Son shall not see life, but the wrath of God abideth on him.	Say not before the Angel: There is no Providence, lest God be angry at thy words, and destroy all the works of thy hands.
<i>Jn</i> 8, 24	If you believe not that I am He, you shall die in your sin.	Wo to them that are faint-hearted, who believe not God, and therefore shall not be protected by Him!
<i>Jb</i> 22, 13-14	Thou sayest: What doth God know? and He judgeth as it were through a mist.—The clouds are His covert, and He doth not consider our things, and He walketh about the poles of Heaven.	If you will not believe, you shall not continue.
<i>Jb</i> 21, 15	Who is the Almighty that we should serve Him? and	I have spread forth My hands all the day to an unbelieving people, who walk in a way that is not good, after their own thoughts.
		When the Son of man cometh, shall He find, think you, faith on earth?

- Mk* 16, 16 He that believeth not shall be condemned.
- Lu* 16, 31 If they hear not Moses and the Prophets, neither will they believe if one rise again from the dead.
- Mk* 16, 14 He upbraided them with their incredulity and hardness of heart, because they did not believe them who had seen Him after He was risen again.
- Lx* 24, 25 O foolish and slow of heart to believe in all things which the Prophets have spoken!
- 1 Pt* 2, 8 Jesus Christ [is] a stone of stumbling and a rock of scandal to them that stumble at the Word, neither do believe, whereunto also they are set.
- 2 C* 4, 3-4 If our Gospel be also hid, it is hid to them that are lost:—In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of unbelievers, that the Light of the Gospel of the glory of Christ, Who is the Image of God, should not shine unto them.
- Jhs* 3, 18-19 To whom did He swear that they should not enter into His Rest, but to them that were incredulous?—And we see that they could not enter in, because of unbelief.
- He* 12, 25 See that you refuse not Him that speaketh. For if they escaped not who refused Him that spoke upon earth, much more shall not we, that turn away from Him that speaketh to us from Heaven.
- 2 Pt* 3, 3-4, 8 In the last days there shall come deceitful scoffers, walking after their own lusts,—Saying: Where is His promise, or His coming? For since the time that the fathers slept all things continue as they were from the beginning of the creation.—But of this one thing be not ignorant, my beloved: that one day with the Lord is as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day.
- My doctrine is not Mine, *Jn* 7, 16-17 but His that sent Me.—If any man will do the will of Him, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be from God, or whether I speak of Myself.
- He that believeth in the Son hath Life Everlasting; but he that believeth not the Son shall not see Life, but the wrath of God abideth in him. *Jn* 3, 36
- He that is of God heareth the words of God. Therefore you hear them not, because you are not of God. *Jn* 8, 47
- He that hateth Me hateth My Father also. *Jn* 15, 23
- He that despiseth Me, and receiveth not My words, hath One that judgeth him: the Word that I have spoken the Same shall judge him in the last day. *Jn* 12, 48
- He that loveth Me not keepeth not My words; and the Word which you have heard is not Mine, but the Father's, Who sent Me. *Jn* 14, 24
- Be not faithless, but believing. *Jn* 20, 27
- The Word of the Cross to them indeed that perish is foolishness; but to them that are saved, that is, to us, it is the power of God.—We preach Christ Crucified, unto the Jews indeed a stumbling-block, and unto the Gentiles foolishness. *1 C* 1, 18, 23
- These men blaspheme whatsoever things they know not; *Jn* 10

and what things soever they are inexcusable. — Because naturally know, like dumb beasts, in these they are corrupted.

*Ro* 1, 18-21 The wrath of God is revealed from Heaven against all ungodliness and injustice of these men that detain the Truth of God in injustice;—

Because that which is known of God is manifest in them; for God hath manifested it unto them.—For the invisible things of Him, from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made: His Eternal Power also and Divinity; so that they

Certain men are secretly entered in (who were written of long ago unto this judgment), ungodly men, turning the grace of God into riotousness, and denying the Only Sovereign Ruler and our Lord Jesus Christ.

Whosoever denieth the Son, the same hath not the Father. *1 J* 2, 23

### 13.—OBSTACLES AND HELPS TO FAITH.

*Jn* 5, 44 How can you believe who receive glory one from another, and the glory which is from God alone you do not seek?

*He* 13, 9 It is best that the heart be established with grace, not with meats, which have not profited those that walk in them.

*Pv* 25, 27 As it is not good for a man to eat much honey, so he that is a searcher of Majesty shall be overwhelmed by Glory.

*Pv* 25, 16 Thou hast found honey; eat what is sufficient for thee, lest being gluttoned therewith thou vomit it up.

*1 Tm* 1, 17-19 To the King of Ages be honour and glory for ever and ever. Amen.—This precept I commend thee, O son

Timothy, according to the prophecies going before on thee, that thou war in them a good warfare.—Having faith and a good conscience, which some rejecting have made shipwreck concerning the faith.

Because of unbelief they were broken off. But thou standest by faith; be not high-minded, but fear.—For if God hath not spared the natural branches, fear lest perhaps He also spare not thee.—See then the goodness and the severity of God: towards them indeed that are fallen the severity, but towards thee the goodness of God, if thou abide in goodness, otherwise thou shalt be cut off. *Ro* 11, 20-22

### 14.—EXAMPLES OF UNBELIEF.

*4 K* 7, 1-2 Eliseus said: Fine flour shall be sold for a stater, and two bushels of barley for a stater, in the gate of Samaria.—Then one of the lords said: If the Lord should

make floodgates in Heaven, can that possibly be which thou sayest? And he said: Thou shalt see it with thy eyes, but shalt not eat thereof.

*Lu* 1, 18-20 Zachary said to the Angel: Whereby shall I know this? for I am an old man, and my wife is advanced in years.—And the Angel answering, said to him:—And behold, thou shalt be dumb, and shalt not be able to speak until the day wherein these things shall come to pass, because thou hast not believed my words, which shall be fulfilled in their time.

*Mt* 13, 58 He wrought not many miracles there, because of their unbelief.

*Mt* 14, 31 Immediately Jesus stretching forth His hand took hold of him, and said to him: O

thou of little faith, why didst thou doubt?

Put in thy finger hither, *Jn* 20, 27-28 and see My hands; and bring hither thy hand, and put it into My side, and be not faithless but believing.—Thomas answered, and said to Him: My Lord and my God!

Examples of unbelief:

- (1) The Gerasens. *Lu* 8, 37
- (2) The Disciples who disbelieved in the Blessed Sacrament. *Jn* 6, 67
- (3) The Chief Priests and Scribes. *Mt* 21, 15
- (4) The Pharisees. *Lu* 7, 30
- (5) The Egyptians. *Ex* 9, 21
- (6) Lot's Sons-in-law. *Ge* 19, 14
- (7) Naaman, General of the Syrian Army. *4 K* 5, 12
- (8) The incredulous Nobleman. *4 K* 7, 2
- (9) The Capharnites. *Mt* 13, 58

### 15.—APOSTASY FROM THE FAITH.

*Pv* 27, 8 As a bird that wandereth from her nest, so is a man that leaveth his place.

*Ju* 13 These are wandering stars, to whom the storm of darkness is reserved for ever.

*Ge* 19, 17 Save thy life: look not back, neither stay thou in all the country about: but save thyself in the mountain, lest thou be also consumed.

*Ge* 19, 26 His wife, looking behind her, was turned into a statue of salt.

*Ap* 2, 5 Be mindful from whence thou art fallen: and do penance, and do the first works. Or else I come to thee, and will move thy candlestick out of its place, except thou do penance.

*He* 6, 4-6 It is impossible for those

who were once illuminated, have tasted also the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost,—Have moreover tasted the good Word of God, and the power of the world to come,—And are fallen away, to be renewed again to penance, crucifying again to themselves the Son of God, and making Him a mockery.

If we sin wilfully after *He* 10, 26-27 having received the knowledge of the truth, there is now left no sacrifice for sins,—But a certain dreadful expectation of judgment.

He forsook God Who made *Dt* 32, 15 him, and departed from God his Saviour.

The Lord was angry with *3 K* 11, 9



- Solomon, because his mind was turned away from the Lord the God of Israel, Who had appeared to him twice.
- Je 17, 13* O Lord, the Hope of Israel, all that forsake Thee shall be confounded: they that depart from Thee shall be written in the earth: because they have forsaken the Lord, the Vein of Living Waters.
- 2 P 15, 2* If you forsake Him, He will forsake you.
- Je 2, 19-13* Thy own wickedness shall reprove thee, and thy apostasy shall rebuke thee. Know thou, and see that it is an evil and a bitter thing for thee to have left the Lord thy God, and that My fear is not with thee, saith the Lord the God of Hosts.—My people have done two evils. They have forsaken Me, the Fountain of Living Waters, and have digged to themselves cisterns, broken cisterns, that can hold no water.
- Je 15, 6* Thou hast forsaken Me, saith the Lord, thou art gone backward: and I will stretch out My hand against thee, and I will destroy thee: I am weary of entreating thee.
- Os 4, 6* Thou hast forgotten the law of thy God: I also will forget thy children.
- Because iniquity hath abounded, the charity of many shall grow cold.
- Take heed, brethren, lest perhaps there be in any of you an evil heart of unbelief, to depart from the Living God.
- It had been better for them not to have known the way of justice, than after they have known it, to turn back from that holy Commandment which was delivered to them.
- Take heed lest being led aside by the error of the unwise, you fall from your own steadfastness.
- Examples of apostasy:
- (1) Demas. *2 Tt 4, 9*
  - (2) Hymeneus and Alexander. *1 Tt 1, 20*
  - (3) Phigellus and Herogenes. *2 Tt 1, 15*
  - (4) Saul. *1 K 15, 11*
  - (5) Solomon. *3 K 11, 4*
  - (6) Amon. *4 K 21, 22*
  - (7) Roboam, who "forgot the law of the Lord." *2 P 12, 1*
  - (8) Joram. *2 P 21, 6*
  - (9) Ochozias. *2 P 22, 7*
  - (10) Jcas. *2 P 24, 24*
  - (11) Amasias. *2 P 25, 27*
  - (12) Asa, King of Juda. *2 P 16, 7*

# 16.—HERETICS TYPICALLY DESCRIBED.

- Tt 3, 10* A man that is a heretic avoid.
- Mt 7, 15* (1) False prophets and ravening wolves.
- Jn 10, 8* (2) Thieves and robbers.
- Is 11, 6* (3) Wolf, leopard, lions, bears, asps, basilisk.
- 2 Pt 2, 17* (4) Fountains without water, clouds tossed with whirlwinds.
- (5) The dog returning to his vomit, the sow wallowing in the mire.
- (6) Deceitful scoffers. *2 Pt 3, 3*
- (7) False prophets and lying teachers. *2 Pt 2, 1*
- (8) Antichrists. *1 Jn 2, 18*
- (9) Dogs and evil workers. *Ph 3, 2*

<i>Ca</i> 2, 15	(10) Foxes that destroy the vines.	jesty.	
<i>2 C</i> 11, 15	(11) Ministers of Satan.	(17) Despisers of dominion.	<i>Ju</i> 8
<i>Mt</i> 13, 26	(12) Cockle.	(18) Trees of the autumn.	<i>Ju</i> 12
<i>Ju</i> 13	(13) Wandering stars.	(19) Raging waves of the sea.	<i>Ju</i> 13
<i>2 J</i> 7	(14) Seducers.	(20) The blind and leaders of the blind.	<i>Mt</i> 15, 14
<i>1 J</i> 2, 22	(15) Liars.		
<i>Ju</i> 8	(16) Blasphemers of Ma-		

17.—HERESIES GENERATED BY A VICIOUS LIFE,  
AND JUSTLY PERMITTED BY GOD.

<i>2 T</i> 3, 8	As Jannes and Mambres resisted Moses, so these also resist the Truth: men corrupted in mind, reprobate concerning the faith.	therefore of the world they speak, and the world heareth them.	
<i>1 Jn</i> 2, 19	They went out from us, but they were not of us: for if they had been of us, they would no doubt have remained with us: but that they may be manifest that they are not all of us.	The Priest and the Prophet have been ignorant through drunkenness, they are swallowed up with wine, they have gone astray in drunkenness, they have not known Him that seeth, they have been ignorant of judgment.	<i>Is</i> 23, 7
<i>1 T</i> 4, 1	In the last times some shall depart from the faith.	Because the pastors have done foolishly, and have not sought the Lord, therefore have they not understood, and all their flock is scattered.	<i>Je</i> 10, 21
<i>1 C</i> 11, 19	There must be also heresies, that they also who are approved may be made manifest among you.		
<i>1 J</i> 4, 5	They are of the world:		

18.—IGNORANCE, PRIDE, AND OBSTINACY OF  
HERETICS.

<i>1 T</i> 6, 3-5	If any man teach otherwise, and consent not to the sound words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to that doctrine which is according to godliness,—He is proud, knowing nothing, but sick about questions and strifes of words: from which arise envies, contentions, blasphemies, evil suspicions,—Conflicts of men corrupted in mind, and who are destitute of the truth, supposing gain to be godliness.	Know also this, that in the last days shall come on dangerous times.—Men shall be lovers of themselves, covetous, haughty, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, wicked,—Without affection, without peace, slanderers, incontinent, unmerciful, without kindness,—Traitors, stubborn, puffed up, and lovers of pleasures more than of God:—Having an appearance indeed of godliness, but	<i>2 T</i> 3, 1-6
-------------------	---	--	-------------------

- denying the power thereof.
- 2 C 11, 13-15** Such false apostles are deceitful workmen, transforming themselves into the Apostles of Christ.—And no wonder: for Satan himself transformeth himself into an angel of light.—Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers be transformed as the ministers of justice: whose end shall be according to their works.
- Ro 16, 18** They that are such serve not Christ our Lord, but their own belly: and by pleasing speeches, and good words, seduce the hearts of the innocent.
- 2 T 3, 6** Of this sort are they who creep into houses, and lead captive silly women loaded with sins, who are led away with divers desires. Having their conscience seared. Through covetousness shall they with feigned words make merchandise of you,—Whose judgment now of a long time lingereth not, and their perdition slumbereth not.
- If God spared not the angels that sinned, but delivered them unto torments, [nevertheless] the Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly from temptation, but to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment, to be tormented.

19.—HERETICS TO BE SHUNNED AND PUNISHED.

- Dt 18, 20** The prophet who being corrupted with pride shall speak in My Name things that I did not command him to say, or in the name of strange gods, shall be slain.
- T 3, 10-11** A man that is a heretic after the first and second admonition, avoid:—Knowing that he that is such a one is subverted, and sinneth, being condemned by his own judgment.
- Mt 7, 15** Beware of false prophets, who come to you in the clothing of sheep, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.
- Ro 16, 17** I beseech you, brethren, to mark them who cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine which you have learned, and to avoid them.
- 2 J 10, 11** If any man come to you, and bring not this doctrine, receive him not into the house, nor say to him, God speed you.—For he that saith unto him, God speed you, communicateth with his wicked works.
- Beware of dogs, beware of evil workers, beware of the concision.
- He that will be proud, and refuse to obey the commandment of the priest, who ministereth at that time to the Lord thy God, and the decree of the judge, that man shall die, and thou shalt take away the evil from Israel.
- The prophet who being corrupted with pride shall speak in My Name things that I did not command him to say, or in the name of strange gods, shall be slain.

## 20.—EXISTENCE OF HERETICS FROM APOSTOLIC TIMES EVEN TO OUR OWN.

- 17:1, 18-20 This precept I commend to thee, O son Timothy: according to the prophecies going before on thee, that thou war in them a good warfare,—Having faith and a good conscience, which some rejecting have made shipwreck concerning the faith:—Of whom is Hymeneus and Alexander, whom I have delivered up to Satan, that they may learn not to blaspheme.
- 2 T 2, 18-18 Shun profane and vain babblings, for they grow much towards ungodliness.—And their speech spreadeth like a canker: of whom are Hymeneus and Philetus;—Who have erred from the truth, saying that the resurrection is past already, and have subverted the faith of some.
- 1 J 2, 18 Little children, it is the last hour, and as you have heard that Antichrist cometh, even now there are become many Antichrists, whereby we know that it is the last hour.
- Ac 20, 29-31 I know that after my departure ravening wolves will enter in among you, not sparing the flock.—And of your own selves shall arise men speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples after them.—Therefore watch, keeping in memory that for three years I ceased not with tears to admonish every one of you night and day.
- 2 Pt 2, 1 There are false prophets among the people, even as there shall be among you lying teachers, who shall bring in sects of perdition, and deny the Lord Who bought them, bringing upon themselves swift destruction.
- Take heed that no man seduce you; for many will come in My Name, saying: I am Christ, and they will seduce many.
- Many seducers are gone out into the world, who confess not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh; this is a seducer and an Antichrist.—Look to yourselves that you lose not the things which you have wrought; but that you may receive a full reward.
- Apostasy in the latter days:**
- (1) Apostasy from the Faith. *Lu 18, 8*
  - (2) Deceitful scoffers, walking after their own lusts. *2 Pt 3, 3*
  - (3) The Man of Sin. *2 T 2, 3*
  - (4) The taking of "the Beloved City." *Ap 20, 3*
  - (5) Mockers, walking according to their own desires in ungodliness. *Ju 18*
  - (6) Apostates from the Faith. *1 T 4, 1*
- Characteristics of these latter days of Apostasy. Men shall be:**
- (1) Lovers of themselves. *2 T 3, 2*
  - (2) Covetous, haughty.
  - (3) Proud, blasphemous.
  - (4) Disobedient to parents.
  - (5) Ungrateful, wicked.

- |          |                                       |   |          |
|----------|---------------------------------------|---|----------|
| 2 T 3, 3 | (6) Without affection, without peace. | (10) Puffed up.   |          |
|          | (7) Slanderers, incontinent.          | (11) Lovers of pleasures more than of God.                                    |          |
|          | (8) Unmerciful, without kindness.     | (12) Having an appearance indeed of godliness, and denying the power thereof. | 2 T 3, 5 |
| 2 T 3, 4 | (9) Traitors, stubborn.               |   |          |

21.—EJACULATORY PRAYERS AGAINST HERESY  
AND HERETICS.

- Pv* 30, 7-8 Two things I have asked and shall be delighted in of Thee, deny them not to me before I die:—Remove from me vanity and lying words. *Ps* 67, 2-3 Let God arise, and let His enemies be scattered; and let them that hate Him flee from before His Face.—As smoke vanisheth, so let them vanish away; as wax melteth before the fire, so let the wicked perish at the Presence of God.
- Pv* 67, 31 Rebuke the wild beasts of the reeds, the congregation of bulls with the kine of the people, who seek to exclude them who are tried with silver. *Ps* 25, 4-6 I have not sat with the council of vanity: neither will I go in with the doers of unjust things.—I have hated the assembly of the malignant: and with the wicked I will not sit.—I will wash my hands among the innocent: and will compass Thy Altar, O Lord.
- Ps* 34, 1 Judge Thou, O Lord, them that wrong me; overthrow them that fight against me. *Ps* 138, 21 Have I not hated them, O Lord, that hated Thee? and pined away because of Thy enemies?
- Ps* 34, 3-4 Bring out the sword, and shut up the way against them that persecute me.—Let them be confounded and ashamed that seek after my soul. *Ps* 105, 47 Save us, O Lord our God, and gather us from among the nations: that we may give thanks to Thy Holy Name, and may glory in Thy praise.
- Ps* 34, 5-9 Let them be turned back and be confounded that devise evil against me. Let them become as dust before the wind, and let the Angel of the Lord straiten them. Let their way become dark and slippery, and let the Angel of the Lord pursue them.—For without cause they have hidden their net for me unto destruction, without cause they have upbraided my soul.—Let the snare which he knoweth not come upon him, and let the net which he had hidden catch him, and into that very snare let them fall.—But my soul shall rejoice in the Lord, *Ro* 15, 5-6 God grant you to be of one mind one towards another,—That with one mind and with one mouth you may glorify God.
- The Epistle for *Missa ad Ep* 4, 1-21 *tollendum Schisma.*  
The Gospel for *Missa ad Jn* 17, 1-22 *tollendum Schisma.*

## PART II.

### THEOLOGICAL HOPE AND THE CONTRARY VICES.

---

HOPE is "a supernatural virtue divinely infused, by which, with certain confidence, we expect eternal happiness and the means conducing thereto, through the assistance of God." The *material* object of Hope is God Himself, "ut possidendus," and the means which lead to the possession of Him. The *formal* object or motive of Hope is the Mercy and Omnipotence of God and His Faithfulness to His promises. Although Hope has God for its immediate object, still, since it implies a good *not yet* possessed, it involves imperfection, and therefore, like Faith, which involves *imperfect* vision, Hope will have no existence in Heaven. Some indeed have thought that the Blessed hope for a *continuance* of their Beatitude, and for the Resurrection of their *bodies*. But as S. Thomas\* points out, (1) the Blessed enjoy *Eternal* Life which transcends the distinctions of past, present, and future; (2) the Resurrection of their bodies is an *assured certainty*, and therefore cannot be matter for Hope, the object of which is the "bonum arduum," or the good which is *difficult of attainment*. Gift which corresponds to Hope is Holy Fear. The vices opposed to Hope are Presumption and Despair.

---

\* Sum. Theol., 3<sup>rd</sup>, pars q. 18, a. 2.

## 1.—HOPE AND ITS KINDS.

<i>Ps</i> 38, 8	Now what is my hope? Is it not the Lord?	of my help, and my hope is in God.	
<i>Ps</i> 70, 5	Thou art my hope, O Lord, from my youth.	We are saved by hope. Thou, O Lord, art my	<i>Ro</i> 8, 24 <i>Ps</i> 90, 9
<i>Jl</i> 3, 16	The Lord shall be the hope of His people.	Hope.	
<i>Ct</i> 1, 5	The hope that is laid up for you in Heaven.	The grace of God our Saviour hath appeared to all men, instructing us that we	<i>Tit</i> 2, 11, 13
<i>Ro</i> 5, 2	We glory in the hope of the glory of the sons of God.	should live godly in this world. — Looking for the	
<i>1 C</i> 13, 13	Now there remain, faith, hope, and charity.	blessed hope, and coming of the glory of the Great God,	
<i>Jb</i> 19, 27	This my hope is laid up in my bosom.	and our Saviour Jesus Christ.	
<i>Ps</i> 61, 8	In God is my Salvation and my glory: He is the God	Hope that is seen is not hope. For what a man seeth, why doth he hope for?	<i>Ro</i> 8, 24

## 2.—FRUITS OF HOPE IN GOD.

<i>Ecc</i> 2, 11-13	My children, behold the generations of men: and know ye that no one hath hoped in the Lord, and hath been confounded.—Who hath continued in His commandment, and hath been forsaken? or who hath called upon Him, and He despised him?—God is compassionate and merciful, and will forgive sins in the day of tribulation: and He is a protector to all that seek Him in truth.	putteth his trust in Me shall inherit the Land and shall possess My Holy Mount. Blessed be the man that trusteth in the Lord, and the Lord shall be his confidence.—He shall be as a tree that is planted by the waters, that spreadeth out its roots towards moisture: and it shall not fear when the heat cometh. And the leaf thereof shall be green, and in the time of drought it shall not be solicitous, neither shall it cease at any time to bring forth fruit.	<i>Je</i> 17, 7-8
<i>Ps</i> 36, 3	Trust in the Lord, and do good, and thou shalt be fed with its riches.	Delivering, I will deliver thee, and thou shalt not fall by the sword: but thy life shall be saved for thee, because thou hast put thy trust in Me, saith the Lord.	<i>Je</i> 39, 18
<i>Is</i> 40, 31	They that hope in the Lord shall renew their strength, they shall take wings as eagles, they shall run and not be weary, they shall walk and not faint.	He that feareth man shall quickly fall: he that trusteth in the Lord shall be set on High.	<i>Ps</i> 29, 25
<i>Is</i> 57, 13	When thou shalt cry let thy companions deliver thee, but the wind shall carry them all off, a breeze shall take them away, but he who	He that believeth God taketh heed to the command-	<i>Ecc</i> 32, 28

ments: and he that trusteth in Him shall fare never the worse.

1 M 2, 61 Thus consider through all generations: that none that trust in Him fail in strength.

W 3, 9 They who trust in Him shall understand the truth, and they that are faithful in love shall rest in Him, for grace and peace is to His elect.

P 124, 1 They that trust in the Lord shall be as Mount Sion: he shall not be moved forever.

P 10, 28 The expectation of the just is joy.

P 12, 6 I have trusted in Thy mercy. My heart shall rejoice in Thy salvation: I will sing to the Lord, Who giveth me good things: yea, I will sing to the Name of the Lord the Most High.

In Thee have our fathers P 21, 5-6 hoped; they have hoped, and Thou hast delivered them.— They cried to Thee, and they were saved; they trusted in Thee, and were not confounded.

Let them trust in Thee P 9, 11 who know Thy Name, for Thou hast not forsaken them that seek Thee, O Lord.

To Thee, O Lord, have I P 24, 1-3 lifted up My soul.—In Thee, O my God, I put my trust: let me not be ashamed.— Neither let my enemies laugh at me: for none of them that wait on Thee shall be confounded.

Blessed is the man whose P 39, 5 trust is in the Name of the Lord: and who hath not had regard to vanities and lying follies.

### 3.—EXHORTATIONS TO FIX OUR HOPE IN GOD.

Is 43, 1-3 Thus saith the Lord: Fear not, for I have redeemed thee, and called thee by thy name: thou art Mine.— When thou shalt pass through the waters, I will be with thee, and the rivers shall not cover thee: when thou shalt walk in the fire, thou shalt not be burnt, and the flames shall not burn in thee.—I am the Lord thy God, the Holy One, thy Saviour.

Is 44, 1-2 Hear, O Jacob, My servant, and Israel whom I have chosen.—Thus saith the Lord that made and formed thee, thy Helper from the womb: Fear not, O My servant Jacob, and thou most righteous whom I have chosen.

Is 50, 10 Who is there among you that feareth the Lord, that

heareth the voice of His servant, that hath walked in darkness, and hath no light? let him hope in the Name of the Lord, and lean upon his God.

Have confidence in the Lord with all thy heart, and lean not upon thy own prudence. P 3, 5

Be not incredulous to the fear of the Lord: and come not to Him with a double heart. Ec 1, 36

Believe God, and He will recover thee: and direct thy way, and trust in Him. Keep His fear, and grow old therein.—Ye that fear the Lord, wait for His mercy: and go not aside from Him, lest ye fall.—Ye that fear the Lord, believe Him: and Ec 2, 6-10



- your reward shall not be made void.—Ye that fear the Lord, hope in Him: and mercy shall come to you for your delight.—Ye that fear the Lord, love Him, and your hearts shall be enlightened.
- 2 *P* 32, 7-8 Behave like men, and take courage, be not afraid nor dismayed for the king of the Assyrians, nor for all the multitude that is with him: for there are many more with us than with him.—With him is an arm of flesh: with us the Lord our God, Who is our Helper, and fighteth for us. And the people were encouraged with these words of Ezechias king of Juda.
- 1 *P* t 1, 13 Having the loins of your mind girt up, being sober, trust perfectly in the grace which is offered you in the revelation of Jesus Christ.
- P* s 61, 9 Trust in Him, all ye congregation of people; pour out your hearts before Him: God is our Helper for ever.
- 1 *P* t 5, 6-7 Be you humbled under the mighty hand of God, that He may exalt you in the day of visitation.—Casting all your care upon Him, for He hath care of you.
- P* s 4, 6 Offer up the sacrifice of justice, and trust in the Lord.
- P* s 2, 13 Blessed are all they that trust in Him.
- P* s 39, 5 Blessed is the man whose trust is in the Name of the Lord, and who hath not had regard to vanities and lying follies.
- The Lord will redeem the souls of His servants: and none of them that trust in Him shall offend.
- The children of men shall put their trust under the covert of Thy wings.
- He that trusteth in the Lord is blessed.
- They that trust in Him shall understand the Truth.
- There is no confusion to them that trust in Thee.
- Be not solicitous therefore, saying: What shall we eat, or what shall we drink, or where-with shall we be clothed?—For after all these things do the heathen seek. For your Father knoweth that you have need of all these things.—Seek ye therefore first the Kingdom of God and His justice, and all these things shall be added unto you.—Be not therefore solicitous for to-morrow; for the morrow will be solicitous for itself. Sufficient for the day is the evil thereof.
- When they shall bring you into the synagogues, and to magistrates and powers, be not solicitous how or what you shall answer, or what you shall say.—For the Holy Ghost shall teach you in the same hour what you must say.
- My Lord, and my God!
- P* s 33, 23
- P* s 35, 8
- P* v 16, 20
- W* 3, 9
- Da* 3, 40
- Mt* 6, 31-34
- Lu* 12, 11-12
- Jn* 20, 23

#### 4.—STEADFAST HOPE OF THE JUST, VAIN SELF-RELIANCE OF THE WICKED.

- P* v 10, 28 The expectation of the just is joy; but the hope of the wicked shall perish.
- The eyes of the wicked shall decay, and the way to escape shall fail them, and
- Jb* 11, 20

T

their hope the abomination of the soul.

*Po* 11, 23 The desire of the just is all good: the expectation of the wicked is indignation.

*W* 5, 15 The hope of the wicked is as dust which is blown away with the wind, and as a thin froth which is dispersed by the storm, and a smoke that is scattered abroad by the wind, and as a remembrance of a guest of one day that passeth by.

*Jb* 8, 11-15 Can the rush be green without moisture? or a sedge-bush grow without water?—

When it is yet in flower, and is not plucked up with the hand, it withereth before all herbs. — Even so are the ways of all that forget God, and the hope of the hypocrite shall perish:—His folly shall not please him, and his trust shall be like the spider's web. —He shall lean upon his house, and it shall not stand: he shall prop it up, and it shall not rise.

The hopes of a man that is void of understanding are vain and deceitful; and dreams lift up fools. *Ez* 34, 1

#### 5.—LOSS AND PUNISHMENT OF THOSE WHO TRUST IN MAN RATHER THAN IN GOD.

*Jb* 17, 5-6 Cursed be the man that trusteth in man, and maketh flesh his arm, and whose heart departeth from the Lord.—For he shall be like tamaric in the desert, and he shall not see when good shall come: but he shall dwell in dryness in the desert in a salt land, and not inhabited.

*2P* 18, 7-9 Hanani the prophet came to Asa, King of Juda, and said to him: Because thou hast had confidence in the King of Syria, and not in the Lord thy God, therefore hath the army of the King of Syria escaped out of thy hand.—Were not the Ethiopians and the Libyans much more numerous in chariots, and horsemen, and an exceeding great multitude? yet because thou trustedst in the Lord, He delivered them into thy hand.—The eyes of the Lord behold all the earth, and give strength to those who with a perfect heart trust in Him.

Wherefore thou hast done foolishly, and for this cause from this time wars shall arise against thee.

You are all troublesome comforters. *Jb* 16, 2

Vain are the sons of men, the sons of men are liars in the balances, that by vanity they may together deceive. *Po* 61, 10

O, grant us help from trouble: for vain is the help of man. *Po* 107, 13

Put not your trust in princes: in the children of men, in whom there is no salvation. *Po* 145, 2

He that trusteth in his own heart is a fool. *Po* 28, 26

Wo to you, apostate children, saith the Lord, that you would take counsel, and not of Me: and would begin a web, and not by My Spirit, that you might add sin upon sin!—Who walk to go down into Egypt, and have not asked at My mouth, hoping for help in the strength of

Pharao, and trusting in the shadow of Egypt.—And the strength of Pharao shall be to your confusion, and the confidence of the shadow of Egypt to your shame.—For thy princes were in Tanis, and thy messengers came even to Hanes.—They were all confounded at a people that could not profit them: they were no help, nor to any profit, but to confusion and to reproach.

will spread My net upon them: I will bring them down as the fowl of the air, I will strike them as their congregation hath heard.

Israel hath forgotten his Maker, and hath built temples: and Juda hath built many fenced cities: and I will send fire upon his cities, and it shall devour the houses thereof.

*Os 8, 14*

Wo to you that are wealthy in Sion, and to you that have confidence in the mountain of Samaria: ye great men, heads of the people, that go in with state into the House of Israel!

*Am 6, 1*

Hail shall overturn the hope of falsehood: and waters shall overflow its protection.

*Is 28, 17*

Your league with death shall be abolished, and your covenant with hell shall not stand: when the overflowing scourge shall pass, you shall be trodden down by it.—Whosoever it shall pass through, it shall take you away: because in the morning early it shall pass through, in the day and in the night.

*Is 28, 18-19*

# 6.—WARNINGS AGAINST SELF-CONFIDENCE AND AGAINST RELYING ON MAN RATHER THAN GOD.

*Ps 12, 2* He that is good shall draw grace from the Lord: but he that trusteth in his own devices doth wickedly.

Trust not in lying words, saying: The Temple of the Lord, the Temple of the Lord, it is the Temple of the Lord.

*Je 7, 4*

*Eci 5, 2-3* Follow not in thy strength the desires of thy heart:—And say not: How mighty am I! and who shall bring me under for my deeds? for God will surely take revenge.

Put not your trust in princes,—In the children of men, in whom there is no salvation.

*Ps 145, 2-3*

His spirit shall go forth, and he shall return into his

*Ps 145, 4*

earth: in that day all their thoughts shall perish.

- Ps* 145, 5-6 Blessed is he who hath the God of Jacob for his helper, whose hope is in the Lord his God: who made Heaven and earth, the sea, and all the things that are in them.

Examples of self-confidence:

- (1) The Builders of the Tower of Babel. *Ge* 11, 4
- (2) Sennacherib. *4 K* 19, 23
- (3) Asa, King of Juda. *2 P* 16, 7
- (4) Ezechias. *Is* 22, 17
- (5) The foolish Builder. *Mt* 7, 26

### 7.—EXAMPLES OF HOPE AND CONFIDENCE IN GOD.

- Ex* 14, 13 Fear not, stand and see the great wonders of the Lord, which He will do this day: for the Egyptians, whom you see now, you shall see no more for ever.

- Jb* 13, 15 Although He should kill me, I will trust in Him.

- Nu* 14, 7-9 The land which we have gone round is very good.—If the Lord be favourable, He will bring us into it, and give us a land flowing with milk and honey.—Be not rebellious against the Lord: and fear ye not the people of this land, for we are able to eat them up as bread. All aid is gone from them: the Lord is with us, fear ye not.

- 1 K* 17, 37 David said: The Lord Who delivered me out of the paw of the lion, and out of the paw of the bear, He will deliver me out of the hand of this Philistine.

- 1 K* 17, 45-46 David said to the Philistine: Thou comest to me with a sword, and with a spear, and with a shield: but I come to thee in the Name of the Lord of Hosts, the

God of the armies of Israel, which thou hast defied—This day: and the Lord will deliver thee into my hand, and I will slay thee, and take away thy head from thee: and I will give the carcasses of the army of the Philistines this day to the birds of the air and to the beasts of the earth: that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel.

Machabeus ever trusted *2 M* 15, 7-8 with all hope that God would help them.—And he exhorted his people not to fear the coming of the nations, but to remember the help they had before received from Heaven, and now to hope for victory from the Almighty.

I will deliver thee in that *Je* 39, 17-18 day, saith the Lord, and thou shalt not be given into the hands of the men whom thou fearest.—But delivering, I will deliver thee, and thou shalt not fall by the sword; but thy life shall be saved for thee, because thou hast put thy trust in Me, saith the Lord.

### 8.—EJACULATIONS OF A HOPEFUL SOUL.

- Je* 20, 11 The Lord is with me as a fall, and shall be weak: they strong warrior; therefore shall be greatly confounded. they that persecute me shall The Lord is my Portion, *La* 3, 24

- said my soul; therefore will I wait for Him.
- La* 3, 25 The Lord is good to them that hope in Him, to the soul that seeketh Him.
- La* 3, 26 It is good to wait in silence for the Salvation of God, for He will not cast off for ever.
- Ps* 22, 4 Though I should walk in the midst of the shadow of death, I will fear no evils, for Thou art with me.
- Ps* 3, 3-4 Many say to my soul: There is no salvation for him in his God.—But Thou, O Lord, art my Protector, my Glory, and the Lifter up of my head.
- Ps* 3, 7 I will not fear thousands of the people surrounding me. Arise, O Lord; save me, O my God.
- Ps* 41, 6-7 Hope in God, for I will still give praise to Him, the Salvation of my countenance and my God.
- Ps* 118, 116 Uphold me, according to Thy Word, and I shall live; and let me not be confounded in my expectation.
- The Lord is my Helper: I will not fear what man can do unto me.—The Lord is my Helper: and I will look over my enemies.—It is good to confide in the Lord, rather than to have confidence in man.—It is good to trust in the Lord, rather than to trust in princes.
- I have stuck to Thy testimonies, O Lord: put me not to shame.
- In Thee, O Lord, I have hoped: let me never be put to confusion.—Deliver me in Thy justice.
- The God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing; that you may abound in hope, and in the Holy Ghost.
- Though I should walk in the midst of the shadow of death, I will fear no evils, for Thou art with me.
- Rejoicing in hope.
- Ps* 117, 6-9  
*Ps* 118, 31  
*Ps* 70, 1-2  
*Ro* 15, 13  
*Ps* 22, 4  
*Ro* 12, 12

### 9.—THE BITTER FRUITS OF DESPAIR; THE SAVING EFFECTS OF THE FEAR OF THE LORD.

- Eci* 38, 9 My son, in thy sickness neglect not thyself, but pray to the Lord, and He shall heal thee.
- Je* 18, 12 We have no hopes; for we will go after our own thoughts, and we will do every one according to the perverseness of his evil heart.
- Ep* 4, 19 Despairing, they have given themselves up to lasciviousness, unto the working of all uncleanness, unto covetousness.
- La* 26, 38 The sound of a flying leaf shall terrify them, and they shall flee as it were from the sword: they shall fall when no man pursueth them.
- Thou saidst: I have lost all hope, I will not do it; for I have loved strangers, and I will walk after them.
- If thou lose hope, being weary in the day of distress, thy strength shall be diminished.
- If any man sin, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the Just.—And He is the Propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for those of the whole world.
- Je* 2, 25  
*Pv* 24, 10  
*1 J* 2, 1-2

<p><i>Ps</i> 146, 11 The Lord taketh pleasure in them that fear Him, and in them that hope in His mercy.</p>	<p>They blasphemed the God <i>Ap</i> 16, 11 of Heaven, because of their pains and wounds, and did not penance from their works.</p>
--	---

---

## PART III.

### CHARITY AND ITS OPPOSITE VICES.

---

CHARITY is "a divinely infused supernatural virtue by which we love God, above all things, for His own sake, and our neighbour for God's sake." The joy, glory, and crown of Charity lie in this, that it makes us the Friends of God. That we may become the Friends of God is clear from the sacred text, "You are My Friends."\* That Charity possesses the conditions of this Friendship is equally clear. According to S. Thomas,† the conditions of friendship are, (1) *unselfish* love, (2) *mutual* love, (3) intercommunion. But by Charity, (1) man loves God for *God's* sake, and God loves man for *man's* sake, as a subject to whom He wishes eternal Beatitude. (2) The love is *mutual*. "*He that loveth Me shall be loved of My Father, and I will love him.*"‡ (3) There is *intercommunion* of God and man by communion in the same Beatitude which the Just possess "in exilio, in jure et in spe, in patria autem in re."

---

\* John 15, 14.

† Sum. Theol., sec. sec., q. 23, a. 1.

‡ John 14, 21.

The effects of Charity are (1) Joy at the thought of the Bliss of God and the welfare of our neighbour ; to which are opposed indifference to God's glory and envy of our neighbour's welfare. (2) Peace and concord ; to which are opposed sedition and strife. (3) Compassion, almsgiving, and fraternal reproof ; to which hard-heartedness and scandal-giving are opposed.

The Gift of the Holy Spirit which corresponds to Charity is Wisdom, and its opposite is spiritual folly.

### 1.—THE PERFECTION AND EXCELLENCE OF CHARITY IN GENERAL.

- 1 T 1, 5 The end of the Commandment is charity from a pure heart, and a good conscience, and an unfeigned faith. truth;—Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.
- Ga 5, 14 All the law is fulfilled in one word: Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. Love is strong as death; jealousy as hard as hell.—Ca 8, 6-7
- Ro 13, 8-10 He that loveth his neighbour hath fulfilled the law. —For thou shalt not commit adultery; thou shalt not kill; thou shalt not steal; thou shalt not bear false witness; thou shalt not covet; and if there be any other commandment, it is comprised in this word: Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.—The love of our neighbour worketh no evil; love, therefore, is the fulfilling of the law. floods drown it.
- 1 C 13, 4-7 Charity is patient, is kind; charity envieth not, dealeth not perversely; is not puffed up;—Is not ambitious; seeketh not her own; is not provoked to anger; thinketh no evil;—Rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth with the truth. If I speak with the tongues of men and of Angels, and have not charity, I am become as sounding brass or a tinkling cymbal.—And if I should have prophecy, and should know all mysteries and all knowledge, and if I should have all faith, so that I could remove mountains, and have not charity, I am nothing.—And if I should distribute all my goods to feed the poor, and if I should deliver my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing. 1 C 13, 1-3
- Charity never falleth away, whether prophecies shall be made void, or tongues shall cease, or knowledge shall be destroyed. 1 C 13 8

- Ga* 5, 6 In Christ Jesus neither circumcision availeth anything nor uncircumcision, but faith that worketh by charity. Above all these things have charity, which is the bond of perfection. *Cl* 3, 14  
Follow after charity. *1 Cl* 14, 1

## 2.—THE VALUE, SPLENDOUR, AND BEAUTY OF CHARITY.

- Ap* 3, 18 I counsel thee to buy of Me gold fire-tried, that thou mayest be made rich, and mayest be clothed in white garments, and that the shame of thy nakedness may not appear. Blessed is the man that findeth Wisdom.—Length of days is in her right hand, and in her left hand riches and glory.—Her ways are beautiful ways, and all her paths are peaceable.—She is a tree of life to them that lay hold on her, and he that shall retain her is blessed. *Pb* 3, 13, 16-18
- Pz* 44, 14 All the glory of the King's daughter is within, in golden borders, clothed round about with varieties. The purchasing of Wisdom is better than the merchandise of silver, and her fruit than the chiefest and purest gold.—She is more precious than all riches, and all the things that are desired are not to be compared with her. *Pb* 3, 14-15
- Lm* 12, 49 I am come to cast fire on the earth; and what will I but that it be kindled? *Is* 60, 1
- Ca* 8, 7 If a man should give all the substance of his house for love, he shall despise it as nothing. *1 Co* 13, 3

## 3.—THE KEEPING OF GOD'S COMMANDMENTS THE PROOF OF OUR LOVE FOR HIM

- 1 J* 2, 5 He that keepeth His Word, in him in very deed the charity of God is perfected; and by this we know that we are in Him. This is the charity of God, that we keep His Commandments; and His Commandments are not heavy. *1 J* 5, 3
- 1 J* 4, 18 God is Charity; and he that abideth in Charity abideth in God, and God in him. This is charity, that we walk according to His Commandments. *2 J* 6
- Jn* 14, 15 If you love Me, keep My Commandments. They that love God will keep His way. *Eci* 2, 18
- You that love the Lord, hate evil. *Pz* 96, 10

## 4.—FRUITS AND REWARDS OF CHARITY.

- Jn* 15, 6 He that abideth in Me, and I in him, the same beareth much fruit: for without Me you can do nothing. It is that loveth Me; he that loveth Me shall be loved of My Father: and I will love him, and will manifest Myself to him. *Jn* 14, 23
- Jn* 14, 21 He that hath My Commandments, and keepeth them, he If any one love Me, he will



- keep My Word, and My Father will love him: and We will come to him, and will make Our abode with him.
- Pv 8, 17* I love them that love Me; and they that in the morning early watch for Me shall find Me.
- Eci 2, 19* They that love God shall be filled with His Law.
- Eci 1, 14* The love of God is honourable wisdom.
- The Eyes of God are upon *Eci 34, 15* them that love Him.
- He that loveth God shall *Eci 3, 4* obtain pardon for his sins by prayer, and shall refrain himself from them, and shall be heard in the prayer of days.
- He loved God that made *Eci 47, 10,* him, and He gave him power *24* over his enemies;—And He will not utterly take away the seed of him that loveth the Lord.

5.—PRECEPTS OF CHARITY; PUNISHMENT OF  
SINNING AGAINST CHARITY.

- Mt 22, 37-38* Jesus said to him: Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with thy whole heart, and with thy whole soul, and with thy whole mind.—This is the greatest and the first Commandment.
- Eci 7, 32* With all thy strength love Him that made thee, and forsake not His ministers.
- Eci 13, 18* Love God all thy life, and
- call upon Him for thy salvation.
- If any man love not our *1 C 16, 22* Lord Jesus Christ, let him be anathema, Maran Atha.
- If any one abide not in Me, *Ja 15, 6* he shall be cast forth as a branch, and shall wither: and they shall gather him up, and cast him into the fire, and he burneth.

6.—CHARITY TOWARDS OUR NEIGHBOUR.

- 1 Pt 4, 8* Before all things have a constant mutual charity among yourselves: for charity covereth a multitude of sins.
- 1 J 3, 14* We know that we have passed from death to life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not, abideth in death.
- 1 J 4, 7* Every one that loveth is born of God, and knoweth God.
- 1 J 4, 12* If we love one another, God abideth in us, and His charity is perfected in us.
- Ja 13, 35* By this shall all men know that you are My disciples, if you have love one for another.
- 1 J 2, 10* He that loveth his brother
- abideth in the light, and there is no scandal in him.
- Let us not love in word nor *1 J 3, 18-19* in tongue, but in deed and in truth.—In this we know that we are in the Truth, and in His sight shall persuade our hearts.
- To love one's neighbour as *Mk 12, 33* one-self is a greater thing than all holocausts and sacrifices.
- Say not: I will do to him *Pv 24, 29* as he hath done to me; I will render to every one according to his work.
- Remember not any injury *Eci 10, 6* done thee by thy neighbour, and do thou nothing by deeds of injury.

- Eci* 28, 2 Forgive thy neighbour if he hath hurt thee; and then shall thy sins be forgiven to thee when thou prayest.
- Eci* 19, 10 Hast thou heard a word against thy neighbour? let it die within thee.
- Eci* 27, 18 Love thy neighbour, and be joined to him with fidelity.
- Mt* 22, 39 Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.
- Lu* 6, 31-35 As you would that men should do to you, do you also to them in like manner.—And if you love them that love you, what thanks are to you? for sinners also love those that love them.—And if you do good to them who do good to you, what thanks are to you? for sinners also do this.—And if you lend to them of whom you hope to receive, what thanks are to you? for sinners also lend to sinners, for to receive as much.—But love ye your enemies; do good, and lend, hoping for nothing thereby: and your reward shall be great, and you shall be the sons of the Highest; for He is kind to the unthankful and to the evil.
- Mk* 4, 24 He said to them: Take heed what you hear. In what measure you shall mete, it shall be measured to you again, and more shall be given to you.
- Jn* 13, 34 A new commandment I give unto you: That you love one another, as I have loved you, that you also love one another.
- These things I command *Jn* 15, 17 you, that you love one another.
- Concerning fraternal charity *1 T* 4, 9-10 we have no need to write to you; for yourselves have learned of God to love one another.—We entreat you, brethren, that you abound more.
- Loving one another with *Ro* 12, 10 brotherly love; in honour preventing one another.
- The love of the neighbour *Ro* 13, 10 worketh no evil. Love, therefore, is the fulfilling of the law.
- See thou never do to another what thou wouldst hate to have done to thee by another.
- Charity covereth all sins. *Pe* 10, 12
- By charity of the Spirit *Ga* 5, 13-14 serve one another.—For all the law is fulfilled in one sentence: Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.
- May the Lord multiply *1 T* 3, 12 you, and make you abound in charity towards each other and towards all men.
- Let fraternal charity abide *He* 13, 1 in you.
- If you fulfil the royal law, *Ja* 2, 8 according to the Scriptures: Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself, you do well.
- Greater love than this no *Jn* 15, 13 man hath, that a man lay down his life for his friends.
- In this we have known the *1 J* 3, 16 charity of God, because He hath laid down His life for us: and we ought to lay down our lives for the brethren.

### 7.—DUTY OF PRACTISING CHARITY.

- Za* 7, 9 Show ye mercy and compassion every man to his brother.
- Let love be without dissimulation:—Loving one another with the charity of *Ro* 12, 9-10

- brotherhood, with honour preventing one another.
- Ga 6, 2* Bear ye one another's burdens; and so you shall fulfil the law of Christ.
- Ep 4, 1-2* I, a prisoner in the Lord, beseech you that you walk worthy of the vocation in which you are called,—With all humility and mildness, with patience, supporting one another in charity.
- Ep 5, 1-2* Be ye followers of God, as most dear children:—And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath delivered Himself for us, an oblation and a sacrifice to God, for an odour of sweetness.
- Ex 23, 4-5* If thou meet thy enemy's ox or ass going astray, bring it back to him.—If thou see the ass of him that hateth thee lie underneath his burden, thou shalt not pass by, but shalt lift him up with him.
- Ex 22, 21* Thou shalt not molest a stranger, nor afflict him: for yourselves also were strangers in the land of Egypt.
- Dt 22, 1-3* Thou shalt not pass by, if thou seest thy brother's ox or his sheep go astray, but thou shalt bring them back to thy brother.—And if thy brother be not nigh, or thou know him not, thou shalt bring them to thy house, and they shall be with thee until thy brother seek them and receive them.—Thou shalt do in like manner with his ass, and with his raiment, and with everything that is thy brother's which is lost: if thou find it, neglect it not as pertaining to another.
- Dt 20, 10* If at any time thou come to fight against a city, thou shalt first offer it peace.
- When thou hast besieged a city a long time, and hath compassed it with bulwarks to take it, thou shalt not cut down the trees that may be eaten of, neither shalt thou spoil the country round about with axes.
- When thou hast reaped the corn in thy field, and hast forgot and left a sheaf, thou shalt not return to take it away; but thou shalt suffer the stranger and the fatherless and the widow to take it away: that the Lord thy God may bless thee in all the works of thy hands.—If thou have gathered the fruit of thy olive-trees, thou shalt not return to gather whatsoever remaineth on the trees: but shalt leave it for the stranger, for the fatherless and the widow.—If thou make the vintage of thy vineyard, thou shalt not gather the clusters that remain, but they shall be for the stranger, the fatherless, and the widow.
- If thy brother be impoverished and weak of hand, and thou receive him as a stranger and sojourner, and he live with thee,—Take not usury of him, nor more than thou gavest: fear thy God, that thy brother may live with thee.
- If thou lend money to any of My people that is poor that dwelleth with thee, thou shalt not be hard upon them as an extortioner, nor oppress them with usuries.
- Deliver him that suffereth wrong out of the hand of the
- Dt 20, 19*
- Dt 24, 19-21*
- Le 25, 35-36*
- Ex 22, 25*
- Eccl 4, 9*

- proud: and be not faint-hearted in thy soul.
- Ecc* 7, 38-39 Be not wanting in comforting them that weep, and walk with them that mourn.—Be not slow to visit the sick: for by these things thou shalt be confirmed in love.
- Mt* 7, 12 All things, therefore, whatsoever you would that men should do to you, do you also to them: for this is the Law and the Prophets.
- Mt* 5, 44, 46 I say to you: Love your enemies; do good to them that hate you, and pray for them that persecute and calumniate you.—For if you love those that love you, what reward shall you have? do not even the publicans the same?
- Ph* 2, 2 Fulfil ye my joy, that you be of one mind, having the same charity, being of one accord, agreeing in sentiment.
- Ep* 4, 2 With all humility and mildness, with patience, supporting one another in charity.
- 1 Pt* 3, 8 Be ye all of one mind, having compassion one of another, being lovers of the Brotherhood.
- Cl* 3, 14 Above all these things have charity, which is the bond of perfection.
- He* 10, 24 Let us consider one another to provoke unto charity and to good works.
- He* 13, 1 Let the charity of the Brotherhood abide in you.
- 1 Pt* 1, 22-23 Purifying your souls in the obedience of charity, with a brotherly love, from a sincere heart love one another earnestly:—Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but incorruptible, by the Word of God, Who liveth and remaineth for ever.
- Love the Brotherhood. *1 Pt* 2, 17
- As every man hath received grace, ministering the same one to another, as good stewards of the manifold grace of God. *1 Pt* 4, 10
- This is the declaration, *1 J* 3, 1: which you have heard from the beginning, that you should love one another.
- We that are stronger ought to bear the infirmities of the weak, and not to please ourselves.—Let every one of you please his neighbour unto good to edification.—For Christ did not please Himself.—Wherefore receive one another, as Christ also hath received you unto the honour of God. *Ro* 15, 1-3, 7
- Let all your things be done in charity. *1 C* 16, 14
- As touching the charity of brotherhood we have no need to write to you; for you yourselves have learned of God to love one another.—For indeed you do it towards all the brethren in all Macedonia. But we entreat you, brethren, that you abound more.
- This is My Commandment, *Jn* 15, 12, 17 that you love one another, as I have loved you.—These things I command you, that you love one another.
- A new Commandment I give unto you: That you love one another; as I have loved you, that you also love one another. *Jn* 13, 34
- I wept for him that was afflicted, and my soul had compassion on the poor. *Jb* 30, 25
- We rejoice that we are weak and you are strong. *1 C* 13, 12
- Charity covereth all sins. *Ps* 10, 12

8.—WHY AND HOW OUR NEIGHBOUR SHOULD BE LOVED.

- Ro* 13, 5 We being many are one body in Christ, and every one members one of another. made to drink. There is neither Jew nor Greek: there is neither bond nor free: there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in Christ Jesus. *Ga* 3, 28
- 1 *C* 10, 17 We being many are one bread, one body, all that partake of one Bread. One body and one Spirit, as you are called in one hope of your calling. *Ep* 4, 4
- 1 *C* 12, 13 In one Spirit were we all baptised into one body, whether Jews or Gentiles, whether bond or free; and in one Spirit we have all been to love one another. *Ro* 13, 8

9.—LOVE OF OUR NEIGHBOUR IMPOSSIBLE WITHOUT THE LOVE OF GOD.

- 1 *J* 4, 20-21 If any man say, I love God, and hateth his brother, he is a liar. For he that loveth not his brother, whom he seeth, how can he love God, Whom he seeth not?—And this Commandment we have from God: That he who loveth God love also his brother. Friend, how camest thou in hither, not having on a wedding garment? But he was silent.—Then the King said to the waiters: Bind his hands and feet, and cast him into the exterior darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. *Mt* 22, 12-13
- 1 *J* 3, 14, 15 He that loveth not abideth in death.—Whosoever hateth his brother is a murderer. At last come also the other virgins, saying: Lord, Lord, open to us.—But He answering, said: Amen I say to you, I know you not. *Mt* 25, 11-12
- 1 *J* 3, 10 Whosoever is not just is not of God, nor he that loveth not his brother.
- 1 *J* 2, 11 He that hateth his brother is in darkness, and walketh

10.—EXAMPLES OF CHARITY TOWARDS GOD AND CHRIST OUR LORD.

- Ac* 21, 13 Paul answered and said: What do you mean weeping and afflicting my heart? For I am ready not only to be bound, but to die also in Jerusalem, for the Name of the Lord Jesus. He saith to Him: Yea, Lord, Thou knowest that I love Thee. He saith to him: Feed My lambs. Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall tribulation? or distress or famine? or nakedness? or danger? or persecution? or *Ro* 8, 35-39
- 1 *n* 21, 15 Simon, son of John, lovest thou Me more than these?

the sword?—As it is written: For Thy sake we are put to death all the day long. We are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.—But in all these things we overcome, because of Him that hath loved us. For I am sure that neither death, nor life, nor Angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, nor might, —Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

1 C 2, 2 I judged not myself to know anything among you but Jesus Christ, and Him Crucified.

Ph 3, 7-8 The things that were gain to me, the same I have counted loss for Christ.—Furthermore, I count all things to be but loss, for the excellent knowledge of Jesus Christ my Lord; for Whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and count them

but as dung, that I may gain Christ.

Examples of the Love of God:

- (1) Jesus, His everlasting love for His Eternal Father. *Jn 14, 31*
- (2) The Blessed Virgin-Mother of God. *Lu 1, 38*
- (3) St. Peter. *Jn 21, 15*
- (4) St. Paul. *2 C 5, 14*
- (5) St. Thomas called Didymus. *Jn 11, 16*
- (6) St. Nicodemus. *Jn 19, 39*
- (7) St. Mary Magdalene. *Lu 7, 47*
- (8) St. Jeremias, the Prophet. *Je 15, 16*
- (9) St. David, the Royal Prophet. *Ps 25, 8*
- (10) The Disciples of Jesus. *Jn 16, 27*
- (11) The Daughters of Jerusalem. *Lu 23, 27*
- (12) King Solomon. *3 K 3, 3*
- (13) The Man who besought Him that he might be with Him. *Mk 5, 18*
- (14) The Catholic Church, the Spouse of Christ. *Ca 3, 1*
- (15) The Faithful Soul. *Ca 5, 8*

### 11.—EXAMPLES OF CHARITY TOWARDS OUR NEIGHBOUR.

Ex 32, 31-32 Either forgive them this trespass,—Or if Thou do not, strike me out of the Book Thou hast written.

Nu 11, 29 Why [asked Moses] hast thou emulation for me? O that all the people might prophesy, and that the Lord would give them His Spirit!

2 K 24, 17 David said to the Lord, when he saw the Angel striking the people: It is I, I am he that have sinned; I have done wickedly. These that are the sheep, what have they done? Let Thy

hand, I beseech Thee, be turned against me, and against my father's house.

The dignity and greatness wherewith Assuerus exalted Mardochai are written in the books of the Medes and Persians:—And how Mardochai was acceptable to the people of his brethren, seeking the good of his people, and speaking those things which were for the welfare of his seed.

Thou knowest all things, and thou knowest that it was not out of pride and con-

Ex 10, 3

Ec 3, 12-13

tempt, or any desire of glory, that I refused to worship the proud Aman;—For I would willingly and readily, for the salvation of Israel, have kissed even the steps of his feet.

Es 4, 18

Go, and gather together all the Jews whom thou shalt find in Susan, and pray for me. Neither eat nor drink for three days and three nights, and I with my handmaids will fast in like manner; and then I will go in to the king, against the law, not being called, and expose myself to death and to danger.

1 Ma 13,  
3-8

You know what great battles I and my brethren, and the house of my father, have fought for the Laws and the Sanctuary, and the distress that we have seen:—By reason whereof all my brethren have lost their lives for Israel's sake, and I am left alone.—And now far be it from me to spare my life in any time of trouble: for I am not better than my brethren:—I will avenge then my Nation and the Sanctuary, and our children and wives; for all the heathens are gathered together to destroy us out of mere malice.

9, 3

I wished myself to be an anathema from Christ, for my brethren, who are my kinsmen according to the flesh.

Ac 20, 20

You know I have kept back nothing that was profitable to you, but have preached it to you, and taught you publicly and from house to house.

With desire I have desired to eat this Pasch with you before I suffer. *Lu 22, 15*

As the Father hath loved Me, I also have loved you. *Jn 15, 9*

I long to see you, that I may impart unto you some spiritual grace, to strengthen you:—That is to say, that I may be comforted together in you by that which is common to us both, your faith and mine. *Ro 1, 11-12*

And I would not have you ignorant, brethren, that I have often purposed to come unto you, and have been hindered hitherto, that I might have some fruit among you also, even as among other Gentiles. *Ro 1, 13*

To the Greeks and to the Barbarians, to the wise and to the unwise, I am a debtor.—So (as much as is in me) I am ready to preach the Gospel to you also that are at Rome. *Ro 1, 14-15*

Whereas I was free as to all, I made myself the servant of all, that I might gain the more.—And I became to the Jews a Jew, that I might gain the Jews.—To them that are under the law, as if I were under the law (whereas myself was not under the law), that I might gain them that were under the law. To them that were without the law, as if I were without the law (whereas I was not without the law of Christ), that I might gain them that were without the law.—To the weak I became weak, that I might gain the weak. I became all things to all men, that I might save all.—And I do all things for the Gos-

*1 Co 9, 19-23*

pel's sake, that I may be made partaker thereof.

Examples of true friendship:

- Ca* 5, 1 (1) Our Lord and His Redeemed Ones.  
*Jn* 15, 15 (2) Our Lord and His Apostles.  
*Jn* 3, 29 (3) Our Lord and St. John Baptist.  
*Jn* 11, 11 (4) Our Lord and Lazarus.  
*2 Pt* 3, 15 (5) St. Peter and St. Paul.  
*Ph* 2, 25 (6) St. Paul and Epaphroditus.  
*2 C* 2, 13 (7) St. Paul and St. Titus.  
*2 Ti* 1, 2 (8) St. Paul and St. Timothy.  
*2 P* 20, 7 (9) St. Abraham, the

Friend of God for ever.

- (10) St. David and Jonathan. *1 K* 18, 1  
 (11) St. David and Hanon, 2 *K* 10, 2 son of Naas.  
 (12) St. David and Hiram, 3 *K* 5, 1 King of Tyre.  
 (13) St. David and Chusai 2 *K* 16, 16 the Arachite.  
 (14) The Householder and the Traveller. *Lk* 11, 5  
 (15) Ruth and Noemi. *Ru* 1, 16  
 (16) Solomon and Zabud, 3 *K* 4, 5 son of the Priest Nathan.  
 (17) King Abimelech and Ochozath. *Ge* 26, 26  
 (18) Israel, the Friend of God. *Is* 41, 8  
 (19) Wisdom and the Soul. *W* 8, 18

## 12. — EJACULATORY PRAYERS TO EXCITE IN OUR HEARTS THE LOVE OF GOD AND OF OUR NEIGHBOUR.

- Jn* 21, 17 Lord, Thou knowest all things: Thou knowest that I love Thee.  
*Ps* 17, 1 I will love Thee, O Lord, my Strength. The Lord is my Firmament, my Refuge, and my Deliverer.  
*Ps* 72, 25 What have I in Heaven? and besides Thee what do I desire upon earth?  
*Ps* 114, 7-9 Turn, O my soul, into Thy Rest: for the Lord hath been bountiful to thee.—For He hath delivered my soul from death; my eyes from tears; my feet from falling.—I will please the Lord in the Land of the living.  
*Ps* 17, 1 I will love Thee, O Lord, my Strength.  
*Ps* 41, 1 As the hart panteth after the fountains of water, so my soul panteth after Thee, O my God.  
 Thou hast delivered my soul that it should not perish, Thou hast cast all my sins behind Thy back.—For hell shall not confess to Thee, neither shall death praise Thee: nor shall they that go down into the pit look for Thy Truth.—The living, the living, he shall give praise to Thee, as I do this day.  
 Hear my prayer, O Lord, and my supplication: give ear to my tears.—Be not silent: for I am a stranger with Thee, and a sojourner, as all my fathers were.—O forgive me, that I may be refreshed before I go hence, and be no more.



13.—ACTS AND EFFECTS OF LOVE, OF WHICH  
SPIRITUAL JOY IS ONE OF THE FIRST.

- Ga* 5, 22 The fruit of the Spirit is charity, joy.
- Ro* 14, 17 The Kingdom of God is not meat and drink, but justice, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost.
- 2 Es* 8, 10 The joy of the Lord is our strength.
- Ps* 76, 3 My soul refused to be comforted. I remembered God, and was delighted, and was exercised, and my spirit swooned away.
- Eci* 30, 16, 23, 27 There is no riches above the riches of the health of the body: and there is no pleasure above the joy of the heart.—The joyfulness of the heart is the life of a man, and a never-failing treasure of holiness: and the joy of a man is length of life.—A cheerful and good heart is always feasting: for his banquets are prepared with diligence.
- Is* 61, 10 I will greatly rejoice in the Lord, and my soul shall be joyful in my God: for He hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, and with the robe of justice He hath covered me, as a bridegroom decked with a crown, and as a bride adorned with her jewels.
- Ps* 117, 15 The voice of rejoicing and of salvation is in the tabernacles of the just.
- Is* 58, 7 I will bring them into My Holy Mount, and will make them joyful in My House of Prayer.
- 1 K* 2, 1 My heart hath rejoiced in the Lord.
- Ps* 4, 7 The light of Thy countenance, O Lord, is signed upon us: Thou hast given gladness in my heart.
- I will be glad and rejoice in Thee: I will sing to Thy Name, O Thou Most High.—I will rejoice in Thy Salvation.
- Thou hast made known to me the ways of life, Thou shalt fill me with joy with Thy countenance: at Thy right hand are delights even to the end.
- Thou art my refuge from the trouble which hath encompassed me: my joy, deliver me from them that surround me.—Be glad in the Lord, and rejoice, ye just; and glory, all ye right of heart.
- For in Him our heart shall rejoice: and in His Holy Name we have trusted.
- Delight in the Lord, and He will give thee the requests of thy heart.
- My soul shall rejoice in the Lord, and shall be delighted in His Salvation.
- Let my heart rejoice, that it may fear Thy Name.
- We are filled in the morning with Thy mercy: and we have rejoiced, and are delighted all our days.—We have rejoiced for the days in which Thou hast humbled us: for the years in which we have seen evils.
- Whatsoever shall befall the just man, it shall not make him sad.
- It is joy to the just to do judgment.
- Ps* 9, 3, 16  
*Ps* 15, 11  
*Ps* 31, 7, 11  
*Ps* 32, 21  
*Ps* 36, 4  
*Ps* 34, 9  
*Ps* 85, 11  
*Ps* 89, 14-15  
*Ps* 12, 21  
*Ps* 21, 15

## 14.—INCITEMENTS TO ASPIRE AFTER THIS TRUE JOY.

- Za* 2, 10 Sing praise and rejoice, O daughter of Sion: for behold I come, and I will dwell in the midst of thee, saith the Lord.
- Is* 15, 11 These things I have spoken to you, that My joy may be in you, and your joy may be filled.
- Ps* 67, 4 Let the just feast and rejoice before God, and be delighted with gladness.
- Is* 9, 3 They shall rejoice before Thee as they that rejoice in the harvest, as conquerors rejoice after taking a prey when they divide the spoils.
- Ps* 149, 2 Let Israel rejoice in Him that made him, and let the children of Sion be joyful in their King.
- Ps* 36, 4 Delight in the Lord, and He will give thee the requests of thy heart.
- Ps* 32, 1 Rejoice in the Lord, ye just: praise becometh the upright.
- 1 T* 5, 16 Always rejoice.
- Is* 29, 19 The meek shall increase their joy in the Lord, and the poor men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.
- Mt* 13, 44 The Kingdom of Heaven is like unto a treasure hidden in a field, which a man having found hideth, and for joy thereof goeth and selleth all that he hath, and buyeth that field.
- Ph* 4, 4 Rejoice in the Lord al-
- ways; again I say rejoice. Rejoicing in hope. *Ro* 12, 12 Joy be to thee always. *Jb* 5, 11 I will bring them into My Holy Mount, and will make them joyful in My House of Prayer. *Is* 56, 7 The eight Beatitudes. *Mt* 5, 2 "Opening His mouth, He taught them, saying:"
- (1) Blessed are the poor in spirit; for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven. *Mt* 5, 3-10
  - (2) Blessed are the meek; for they shall possess the Land.
  - (3) Blessed are they that mourn; for they shall be comforted.
  - (4) Blessed are they that hunger and thirst after Justice; for they shall be filled.
  - (5) Blessed are the merciful; for they shall find mercy.
  - (6) Blessed are the clean of heart; for they shall see God.
  - (7) Blessed are the peace-makers; for they shall be called the children of God.
  - (8) Blessed are they that suffer persecution for justice' sake; for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.

## 15.—THE JOY OF THE WICKED VAIN AND FALSE.

- Ps* 31, 10 Many are the scourges of the sinner. not with thee, saith the Lord the God of Hosts.
- Je* 2, 19 Know thou, and see that it is an evil and a bitter thing for thee to have left the Lord thy God, and that My fear is This is thy wickedness, because it is bitter, because it hath touched thy heart. *Je* 4, 18 Wo to you that call evil *Is* 5, 20

good and good evil: that put darkness for light and light for darkness: that put bitter for sweet and sweet for bitter!

*Ecl* 2, 2 Laughter I counted error, and to mirth I said: Why art thou vainly deceived?

*Po* 2, 14 They are glad when they have done evil, and rejoice in most wicked things.

*Os* 9, 1 Rejoice not, O Israel: rejoice not as the nations do: for thou hast committed fornication against thy God:

thou hast loved a reward upon every corn-floor.

Be afflicted, and mourn, and weep: let your laughter be turned into mourning, and your joy into sorrow. *Ja* 4, 9

The sinners in Sion are afraid, trembling hath seized upon the hypocrites. Which of you can dwell with devouring fire? Which of you shall dwell with everlasting burnings? *Is* 33, 14

Evil pursueth sinners. *Po* 13, 21  
Folly is joy to the fool. *Po* 15, 24

### 16.—THE CONSOLATION OF TRUE JOY FLOWING FROM GOD.

*2 C* 1, 3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies, and the God of all comfort.

*2 C* 7, 6 God, Who comforteth the humble, comforted us by the coming of Titus.

*Jb* 5, 11 He setteth up the humble on high.

*Po* 93, 19 According to the multitude of my sorrows in my heart, Thy comforts have given joy to my soul.

*Na* 1, 7 The Lord is good, and giveth strength in the day of trouble; and knoweth them that hope in Him.

*Ca* 2, 4 He brought me into the cellar of wine.

*Is* 12, 3 You shall draw waters with joy out of the Saviour's fountains.

*Lu* 1, 47 My spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour.

Ask, and you shall receive: that your joy may be full. *Ja* 16, 24

These things I have spoken to you, that My joy may be in you, and your joy may be filled. *Ja* 15, 11

Thou hast made known to me the ways of life: Thou shalt make me full of joy with Thy countenance. *Ac* 2, 28

If you partake of the suffering of Christ, rejoice; that when His Glory shall be revealed, you may also be glad with exceeding joy. *1 Pt* 4, 13

May the trial of your faith be found unto the praise and glory at the appearing of Jesus Christ,—Whom having not seen you love: in Whom also now, though you see Him not, you believe, and believing shall rejoice with joy unspeakable and glorified. *1 Pt* 1, 8

### 17.—OUR CONSOLATION IN GOD.

*Po* 118, 92 Unless that Thy Law is my meditation, I had then perhaps perished in my abjection. I sat down under His shadow, Whom I desired: and His fruit was sweet to my palate. *Ca* 2, 3

- Ps* 32, 1 Rejoice in the Lord, O ye just: praise becometh the upright.
- Ps* 118, 50 This hath comforted me in my humiliation: because Thy Word hath enlivened me.
- Ac* 15, 30-31 They being dismissed went down to Antioch: and gathering together the multitude delivered the Epistle, —Which when they had read they rejoiced for the consolation.
- Ph* 4, 4 Rejoice in the Lord always; again I say rejoice. My heart and my flesh *Ps* 83, 3 have rejoiced in the Living God.
- What have I in Heaven? *Ps* 72, 25 and besides Thee what do I desire upon earth? For Thee my flesh and my heart fainted away. Thou art the God of my heart, and the God that is my portion for ever.
- My soul doth magnify the *Lu* 1, 46-47 Lord, and my spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour.

## 18.—PROMISE OF ALL TRUE COMFORT AND JOY.

- Je* 31, 13 I will turn their mourning into joy, and will comfort them, and make them joyful after their sorrow.
- Is* 51, 12 I, I Myself will comfort you.
- Ap* 2, 17 To him that overcometh I will give the Hidden Manna.
- Is* 66, 12-13 You shall be carried at the breasts, and upon the knees they shall caress you. —As one whom the mother caresseth, so will I comfort you, and you shall be comforted in Jerusalem.
- Behold, I will allure her, *Os* 2, 14 and will lead her into the wilderness: and I will speak to her heart.

## 19.—TRUE JOY GIVEN TO THOSE WHO FEAR AND LOVE GOD.

- Ps* 30, 20-21 How great is the multitude of Thy sweetness, O Lord, which Thou hast hidden for them that fear Thee! which Thou hast wrought for them that hope in Thee, in the sight of the sons of men! —Thou shalt hide them in the secret of Thy face from the disturbance of men. Thou shalt protect them in Thy Tabernacle from the contradiction of tongues.
- Ps* 29, 12 Thou hast turned for me my mourning into joy: Thou hast cut my sackcloth, and hast compassed me with gladness.
- Whom shall He teach *Is* 28, 9 knowledge? and whom shall He make to understand the hearing? Them that are weaned from the milk, that are drawn away from the breasts.
- Blessed are they that *Mt* 5, 6 mourn; for they shall be comforted.

## 20.—FRUITS OF DIVINE CONSOLATION.

- Lu* 1, 46-47 My soul doth magnify the Lord, —And my spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour.
- My soul melted when He *Ca* 5, 6 spoke.
- I have run the way of Thy *Ps* 118, 32

Commandments, when Thou  
didst enlarge my heart.

O Lord, Thou art my God: *Is* 25, 1, 4

*Ps* 85, 11 Let my heart rejoice, that  
it may fear Thy Name.

I will exalt Thee, and give  
glory to Thy Name; for Thou  
hast done wonderful things.

*Ps* 35, 9 They shall be inebriated  
with the plenty of Thy  
House; and Thou shalt  
make them drink of the tor-  
rent of Thy pleasure.

—Thou hast been a strength  
to the poor, a strength to the  
needy in his distress: a re-  
fuge from the whirlwind, a  
shadow from the heat.

## 21.—HUMAN CONSOLATION VAIN AND UNSTABLE.

*Jb* 16, 2 You are all troublesome  
comforters.

I found none.

*Ecl* 2, 1 I said in my heart: I will  
go and abound with delights,  
and enjoy good things. And  
I saw that this also was  
vanity.

All things have their sea-  
sons: a time to weep and a  
time to laugh, a time to  
mourn and a time to dance.

*Ps* 59, 13 Give us help from trouble:  
for vain is the salvation of  
man.

Laughter shall be mingled *Pv* 14, 13  
with sorrow, and mourning  
taketh hold of the end of  
joy.

*Ps* 68, 21 I looked for one that would  
grieve together with me,  
but there was none: and for  
one that would comfort, and

There is none to comfort *La* 1, 2  
her among all them that  
were dear to her: all her  
friends have despised her,  
and are become her enemies.

## 22.—EJACULATORY PRAYERS OF THE SOUL DESIROUS OF HEAVENLY CONSOLATION.

*Ps* 34, 9 My soul shall rejoice in  
the Lord, and shall be de-  
lighted in His salvation.

days of my life.—And that I  
may dwell in the House of  
the Lord unto length of  
days.

*Ps* 50, 10 To my hearing Thou shalt  
give joy and gladness: and  
the bones that have been  
humbled shall rejoice.

And Thou, O Lord, art a *Ps* 85, 15-  
God of compassion, and mer-  
ciful, patient and of much  
mercy, and true. — O look  
upon me, and have mercy on  
me: give Thy command to  
Thy servant, and save the  
son of Thy handmaid. —  
Show me a token for good,  
that they who hate me may  
see and be confounded: be-  
cause Thou, O Lord, hast  
helped me and hast com-  
forted me.

*Ps* 22, 4-6 For though I should walk  
in the midst of the shadow  
of death, I will fear no evils,  
for Thou art with me.—Thy  
rod and Thy staff, they have  
comforted me.—Thou hast  
prepared a Table before me,  
against them that afflict me.  
—Thou hast anointed my  
head with oil; and my Cha-  
lice which inebriateth me,  
now goodly is it!—And Thy  
mercy will follow me all the

Restore unto me the joy *Ps* 50, 14  
of Thy salvation.

- Ps* 93, 19 According to the multitude of my sorrows in my heart, Thy comforts have given joy to my soul.
- Ps* 118, 76 Let Thy mercy be for my comfort, according to Thy Word unto Thy servant.
- Ps* 118, 77 Let Thy tender mercies come unto me, and I shall live.
- Ps* 118, 82 My eyes have failed through looking after Thy Word, saying: When wilt Thou comfort me?
- Who will grant me that I might know and find Him, and come even to His Throne?—I would set judgment before Him, and would fill my mouth with complaints.—That I might know the words that He would answer me, and understand what He would say to me. *Jb* 23, 3-5

## 23.—PEACE AND THE AUTHOR OF PEACE.

- Is* 9, 6 A Child is born to us, and His Name shall be called the Prince of Peace.
- Ro* 5, 1 Being justified therefore by Faith, let us have peace with God.
- Ep* 2, 14 He is our peace, Who hath made both one, and breaking down the middle wall of partition, the enmities in His flesh, that He might make the two in Himself into one new man, making peace.
- Is* 32, 17-18 The work of justice shall be peace, and the service of justice quietness, and security for ever.—And My people shall sit in the Beauty of peace, and in the Tabernacles of confidence, and in wealthy Rest.
- Ps* 118, 165 Much peace have they that love Thy law; and to them there is no stumbling-block.
- Ap* 1, 4 Grace be unto you and peace from Him that is.
- Ps* 71, 7 In His days shall justice spring up, and abundance of peace.
- Is* 17, 16 I am not troubled, following Thee for my pastor; and I have not desired the day of man, Thou knowest.
- Nu* 6, 26 The Lord turn His countenance to thee, and give thee peace.
- Submit thyself then to Him, and be at peace: and thereby thou shalt have the best fruits.
- When He granteth peace, who is there that can condemn?
- The Lord will bless His people with peace.
- With them that hated peace I was peaceable.
- When the ways of man shall please the Lord, He will convert even his enemies to peace.
- Only love ye Truth and Peace.
- The work of justice shall be peace, and the service of justice quietness, and security for ever.
- Blessed are the peacemakers; for they shall be called the children of God.
- Have peace among you.
- The peace of God, which surpasseth all understanding, keep your hearts and minds in Christ Jesus.
- The Lord of Peace Himself give you everlasting peace in every place. The Lord be with you all. *Jb* 22, 21 *Ps* 28, 10 *Ps* 119, 7 *Ps* 16, 7 *Za* 8, 19 *Is* 32, 17 *Mt* 5, 9 *Mk* 9, 49 *Ph* 4, 7 *2 T* 3, 16

- He* 12, 14 Follow peace with all men, and holiness: without which no man shall see God.
- Ja* 3, 18 The fruit of justice is sown in peace, to them that make peace.
- Ro* 15, 5 The God of patience and of comfort grant you to be of one mind one towards another, according to Jesus Christ.
- 2 J* 1, 3 Grace be with you, mercy, and peace from God the Father, and from Christ Jesus, the Son of the Father, in truth and charity.
- Ba* 5, 4 Thy Name shall be given Thee by God for ever: the Peace of justice and Honour of piety.
- Jn* 16, 33 These things I have spoken to you, that in Me you may have peace. In the world you shall have distress; but have confidence, I have overcome the world.
- Peace I leave with you, *Jn* 14, 27
- My peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth do I give unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, nor let it be afraid.
- Glory be to God in the highest, and on earth peace to men of good will. *Lu* 2, 14
- Peace be to you: it is I, *Lu* 24, 36 fear not.
- Behold, I will bring upon her as it were a river of peace. *Is* 66, 12
- I will give peace in your coasts: you shall sleep, and there shall be none to make you afraid. I will take away evil beasts; and the sword shall not pass through your quarters.—I will look on you and make you increase. *Le* 26, 6, 9

#### 24.—WHAT KIND OF PEACE NECESSARY; ITS FRUITS.

- Jn* 17, 11, Holy Father, keep them as is in you [have] peace
- 20-21 in Thy Name whom Thou hast given Me: that they may be one, as We also are.—And not for them only do I pray, but for them also who through their word shall believe in Me:—That they also may be one in Us, that the world may believe that Thou hast sent Me.
- Blessed are the peace-makers; for they shall be called the children of God. *Mt* 5, 9
- The fruit of justice is sown in peace to them that make peace. *Ja* 3, 18
- The Kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but justice and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost. *Ro* 14, 17
- Ro* 12, 18 If it be possible, as much

#### 25.—EXHORTATIONS TO SEEK PEACE.

- Ro* 14, 19 Let us follow after the things that are of peace, and keep the things that are of edification one towards another.
- I beseech you [to be] careful to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace. *Ep* 4, 5
- Follow peace with all men, and holiness: without which no man shall see God. *He* 12, 14
- Flee thou youthful desires, and pursue justice, faith, charity, and peace, *2 Ty* 2, 22
- God is not the God of dissension, but of peace: as also I teach in all the Churches of the Saints.

- with them that call on the Lord out of a pure heart.
- 1 Pt 3, 11 He that will love life and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile.—Let him decline from evil, and do good: let him seek after peace and pursue it.
- Mk 9, 49 Have salt in you, and have peace among you.
- 1 Cl 1, 10 I beseech of you, brethren, by the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you all speak the same thing, and that there be no schisms among you: but that you be perfect in the same mind and in the same judgment.
- If there be any consolation in Christ, if any comfort of charity, if any society of the Spirit, if any bowels of commiseration,—Fulfil ye my joy, that you be of one mind, having the same charity, being of one accord, agreeing in sentiment.—Let nothing be done through contention. P 2, 1-3

## 26.—CRIES OF THE SOUL AFTER THIS PEACE.

- P 71, 3 Let the mountains receive peace for the people, and the hills justice.
- P 59, 13 Give us help from trouble, for vain is the salvation of man.
- P 6, 2-5 O Lord, rebuke me not in Thy indignation, nor chastise me in Thy wrath.—Have mercy on me, O Lord, for I am weak: heal me, O Lord, for my bones are troubled.—And my soul is troubled exceedingly: but Thou, O Lord, how long?—Turn to me, O Lord, and deliver my soul: O save me for Thy mercy's sake.
- P 141, 6-8 I cried to Thee, O Lord; I said: Thou art my hope, my portion in the land of the living.—Attend to my supplication; for I am brought very low.—Deliver me from my persecutors; for they are stronger than I.—Bring my soul out of prison, that I may praise Thy Name: the just wait for me, until Thou reward me.
- P 107, 13 O grant us help from trouble; for vain is the help of man.
- O God, the heathens are come into Thy Inheritance, they have defiled Thy Holy Temple.—How long, O Lord, wilt Thou be angry for ever? shall Thy zeal be kindled like a fire?
- Save me from all them that persecute me, and deliver me:—Lest at any time he seize upon my soul like a lion, while there is no one to redeem me nor to save me.
- Show forth Thy wonderful mercies, Thou Who savest them that trust in Thee.—From them that resist Thy right hand keep me, as the apple of Thy eye.—Protect me under the shadow of Thy wings—From the face of the wicked who have afflicted me.
- My enemies have surrounded my soul:—They have cast me forth, and now they have surrounded me: they have set their eyes bowing down to the earth.—They have taken me, as a lion prepared for the prey, and as a young lion dwelling in secret P 78, 1, 5 P 7, 1-2 P 16, 7-9 P 16, 10 13



places.—Arise, O Lord, dis-appoint him and supplant him; deliver my soul from the wicked one: Thy sword from the enemies of Thy hand.

27.—LOVELINESS, UTILITY, AND SWEETNESS OF CONCORD.

- Eci* 25, 1-2 With three things my spirit is pleased which are approved before God and men: the concord of brethren, and the love of neighbours, and man and wife that agree well together.
- Jb* 25, 2-3 Power and terror are with Him Who maketh peace in His high places.—Is there any numbering of His soldiers? and upon whom shall not His light arise?
- Pv* 30, 27 The locust hath no king, yet they all go out by their bands.
- Pv* 18, 19 A brother that is helped by his brother is like a strong city: and judgments are like the bars of cities.
- Behold how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity.—Like the precious ointment on the head, that ran down upon the beard, the beard of Aaron; which ran down to the skirt of his garment:—As the dew of Hermon, which descendeth upon Mount Sion.—For there hath the Lord commanded blessing, and life for evermore.
- The Mildness of Christ.
- Pv* 132, 1-4
- 2 C 10, 1

28.—PEACE FREQUENTLY AND EARNESTLY COMMENDED BY THE APOSTLES.

- Ph* 4, 7 The peace of God, which surpasseth all understanding, keep your hearts and minds in Christ Jesus.
- Ro* 12, 16 Be of one mind one towards another.
- Ro* 15, 5-6 The God of patience and of comfort grant you to be of one mind one towards another, according to Jesus Christ: that with one mind and with one mouth you may glorify God and the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ.
- 1 Pt* 4, 13 If you partake of the suffering of Christ, rejoice that when His glory shall be revealed you may also be glad with exceeding joy.
- 1 C* 1, 10 I beseech you, brethren, by the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you all speak the same thing, and that there be no schisms among you; but that you be perfect in the same mind and in the same judgment.
- Let the peace of Christ rejoice in your hearts, wherein also you are called in one body.
- Let your conversation be worthy of the Gospel of Christ: that whether I come and see you, or being absent may hear of you, that you stand fast in one spirit, with one mind labouring together for the faith of the Gospel.
- Glory, and honour, and peace to every one that worketh good: to the Jew first and also to the Greek.
- That we be of the same
- Ph* 1, 27
- C* 13, 15
- Ro* 2, 10
- Ph* 3, 16

mind, let us continue in the same rule. | not meat and drink; but justice and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost.

Ro 14, 17 The Kingdom of God is | the Holy Ghost.

### 29.—NOTABLE EXAMPLES OF CONCORD.

- Jg* 20, 1-2 All the children of Israel went out, and gathered together as one man from Dan to Bersabee, with the land of Galaad, to the Lord in Maspha:—And all the chiefs of the people and all the tribes of Israel met together in the assembly of the people of God, four hundred thousand foot-men fit for war. | All they that believed were together, and had all things in common. *Ac* 2, 44
- Ge* 13, 8 Let there be no quarrel, I beseech thee, between me and thee, and between my herdsmen and thy herdsmen; for we are brethren. | The multitude of believers had but one heart and one soul; neither did any one say that aught of the things which he possessed was his own, but all things were common unto them. *Ac* 4, 32
- 1 K* 11, 7 The fear of the Lord fell upon the people, and they went out as one man. | They were all with one accord in Solomon's porch. *Ac* 5, 12
- Jb* 1, 4 His sons went, and made a feast by houses, every one in his day. And sending, they called their three sisters to eat and drink with them. | The seventh month was come, and the children of Israel were in their cities, and the people gathered themselves together as one man to Jerusalem. *1 E* 2, 1
- | They [the Apostles] were persevering with one mind in prayer with the women, and Mary the Mother of Jesus, and with His brethren. *Ac* 1, 14
- | Have peace with you. *1 T* 5, 13

### 30.—BEAUTY, EFFECTS, AND REWARDS OF MERCY.

- Os* 6, 6 I desired mercy and not sacrifice, and the knowledge of God more than holocausts. | Brethren are a help in the time of trouble; but mercy shall deliver more than they. *Eci* 40, 24
- Mt* 6, 8 I will show thee, O man, what is good, and what the Lord requireth of thee: verily to do judgment, and to love mercy, and to walk solicitous with thy God. | But love ye your enemies: do good, and lend, hoping for nothing thereby: and your reward shall be great, and you shall be the sons of the Highest; for He is kind to the unthankful and to the evil.—Be ye therefore merciful, as your Father also is merciful. *Lu* 6, 35-36
- Mt* 5, 7 Blessed are the merciful; for they shall obtain mercy. | Judge not, and you shall not be judged. Condemn not, and you shall not be condemned. Forgive, and
- Ps* 111, 5 Acceptable is the man that showeth mercy and lendeth: he shall order his words with judgment, because he shall not be moved for ever. *Lu* 6, 37-38

you shall be forgiven.—Give, and it shall be given to you: good measure and pressed down and shaken together and running over shall they give into your bosom. For with the same measure that you shall mete withal it shall be measured to you again.

God is not unjust, that He should forget your work, and the love you have shown in His Name, you who have ministered and do minister to the Saints.

## 31.—WORKS OF MERCY: HOSPITALITY.

- Za* 7,9 Thus saith the Lord of Hosts: Judge ye true judgment, and show ye mercy and compassion every man to his brother.
- Mt* 18, 33 Shouldst not thou then have had compassion on thy fellow-servant, even as I had compassion on thee?
- Cl* 3, 12 Put ye on, as the elect of God, holy and beloved, the bowels of mercy, benignity, humility, modesty, patience.
- Po* 24, 11-12 Deliver them that are led to death, and those that are drawn to death forbear not to deliver.—If thou say: I have not strength enough, He that seeth into the heart, He understandeth, and nothing deceiveth the Keeper of thy soul, and He shall render to a man according to his works.
- Eci* 17, 37 Restrain not grace from the dead.
- He* 13, 3 Remember them that are in bands, as if you were bound with them; and them that labour, as being yourselves also in the body.
- Eci* 7, 39 Be not slow to visit the sick; for by these things thou shalt be confirmed in love.
- Eci* 7, 38 Be not wanting in comforting them that weep, and walk with them that mourn.
- Eci* 4, 9 Deliver him that suffereth wrong out of the hand of the proud, and be not faint-hearted in thy soul.
- Recover thy neighbour according to thy power, and take heed to thyself that thou fall not.
- Examples of Hospitality:
- (1) Jesus entertains 5000 in the desert. *Mt* 14, 14
  - (2) 4000 in the desert. *Mt* 15, 32
  - (3) His disciples on the shores of the Lake of Galilee. *Jn* 21, 12
  - (4) Two disciples entertain Jesus at Emmaus. *Lu* 24, 29
  - (5) Zacheus entertains our Lord "with joy." *Lu* 19, 5
  - (6) Simon the Tanner entertains St. Peter. *Ac* 10, 6
  - (7) Lydia entertains St. Paul. *Ac* 16, 14
  - (8) Publius "courteously" entertains St. Paul in the island of Melita for three days. *Ac* 28, 7
  - (9) Gaius praised for his charity to strangers. *3 J* 1, 5
  - (10) Melchisedech entertains Abram. *Ge* 14, 18
  - (11) Abraham entertains Angels. *Ge* 18, 3
  - (12) Laban entertains Abram's steward. *Ge* 24, 31
  - (13) Jethro entertains Moses when fleeing into Madian. *Ex* 2, 20
  - (14) St. Job, "whose door

- |            |   |   |
|------------|---|---|
|            | was open to the traveller."                         | tertain Eliseus.  |
| 3 K 17, 10 | (15) The widow - woman of Sarepta entertains Elias. | (17) Eliseus entertains the Syrian robbers. 4 K 6, 22             |
| 4 K 4, 8   | (16) The Sunamitess en-                             | (18) The Israelites entertain David fleeing from Saul. 1 P 12, 33 |

## 32.—PUNISHMENTS OF THOSE WHO SHOW NOT MERCY.

- |               |   |  |
|---------------|---|--|
| Os 6, 4       | What shall I do to thee, O Ephraim? what shall I do to thee, O Juda? Your mercy is as a morning cloud, and as the dew that goeth away in the morning. | the earth, because he remembered not to show mercy;—But persecuted the poor man, and the beggar, and the broken in heart, to put him to death. |
| Ja 2, 13      | Judgment without mercy to him that hath not done mercy. And mercy exalteth itself above judgment.   | Shouldst not thou then have had compassion on thy fellow-servant, even as I had compassion on thee?—And  |
| Ps 108, 15-16 | May they be before the Lord continually, and let the memory of them perish from   | his lord being angry delivered him to the torturers until he paid all the debt. Mt 18, 33-34   |

## 33.—ALMSGIVING RECOMMENDED.

- |           |   |   |
|-----------|---|---|
| Eci 4, 1  | Son, defraud not the poor of alms, and turn not away thy eyes from the poor.                                | he that soweth in blessings shall also reap in blessings.   |
| Eci 4, 8  | Bow down thy ear cheerfully to the poor, and pay what thou owest, and answer peaceable words with mildness. | According to thy ability be merciful.—If thou have much, give abundantly; if thou have little, take care even so to bestow willingly a little. To 4, 8-9  |
| He 13, 15 | Do not forget to do good and to impart; for by such sacrifices God's favour is obtained.                    | Amen I say to you, this poor widow hath cast in more than all they who have cast into the treasury.—For all they did cast in of their abundance; but she of her want cast in all she had, even her whole living. Mk 12, 43-44 |
| Ga 5, 13  | By charity serve one another.   |   |
| 2 C 9, 6  | He who soweth sparingly shall also reap sparingly; and  |   |

## 34.—TO WHOM ALMS SHOULD BE GIVEN, AND HOW OFTEN.

- |         |  |  |                       |
|---------|--|--|-----------------------|
| To 4, 7 | Give alms out of thy substance, and turn not away thy face from any poor person; for so it shall come to pass that the face of the Lord shall not be turned from thee. | Eat thy bread with the hungry and the needy, and with thy garments cover the naked.<br>When thou dost an alms-deed, sound not a trumpet before thee, as the hypocrites | To 4, 17<br>Mt 6, 2-4 |
|---------|--|--|-----------------------|

do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may be honoured by men. Amen I say to you, they have received their reward. — But when thou dost alms, let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doth,—That thy alms may be in secret; and thy Father, Who seeth in secret, will repay thee.

2 C 9, 7

Every one as he hath determined in his heart, [let him give] not with sadness or of necessity: for God loveth a cheerful giver.

Eci 18, 15-

18

My son, in thy good deeds make no complaint: and when thou givest anything, add not grief by an evil word.—Shall not the dew assuage the heat? so also the good word is better than the gift.—So is not a word better than a gift? but both are

with a justified man.—A fool will upbraid bitterly, and a gift of one ill taught consumeth the eyes.

Make thyself affable to the congregation of the poor. *Eci 4, 7*

Afflict not the heart of the needy, and defer not to give to him that is in distress.—Reject not the petition of the afflicted, and turn not away thy face from the needy. *Eci 4, 3-4*

Say not to thy friend: Go and come again, and to-morrow I will give to thee, when thou canst give at present. *Pv 3, 28*

As your mind is forward to be willing, so it may be also to perform out of that which you have.—For if the will be forward, it is accepted according to that which a man hath, not according to that which he hath not. *2 C 8, 11-12*

### 35.—WHEN ALMS SHOULD BE GIVEN, AND HOW OFTEN.

Eci 14, 13,

17

Do good to thy friend before thou die, and according to thy ability stretch out thy hand, and give to the poor.—Before thy death work justice; for in hell there is no finding food.

and if both together, it shall be the better.

In doing good let us not fail; for in due time we shall reap, not failing.—Therefore whilst we have time let us work good to all men, but especially to those who are of the household of the Faith. *Ga 6, 9-10*

Ecl 11, 6

In the morning sow thy seed, and in the evening let not thy hand cease; for thou knowest not which may rather spring up, this or that:

men, but especially to those who are of the household of the Faith.

But you, brethren, be not weary in well-doing. *2 T 3, 13*

### 36.—FRUITS OF ALMSGIVING.

Eci 31, 28

The lips of many shall bless him that is liberal of his bread, and the testimony of his truth is faithful.

of his bread he hath given to the poor.

Let my counsel be acceptable to thee, and redeem thou thy sins with alms, and thy iniquities with works of *Da 4, 24*

Pv 22, 9

He that is inclined to mercy shall be blessed; for

thou thy sins with alms, and thy iniquities with works of

- mercy to the poor: perhaps the poor shall be blessed.  
 He will forgive thy offences. Whosoever shall give to *Mt* 10, 42  
*2 C* 8, 14 In this present time let drink to one of these little  
 your abundance supply their ones a cup of cold water only,  
 want, that their abundance in the name of a disciple,  
 also may supply your want. amen I say to you, he shall  
*Pv* 14, 21 He that showeth mercy to not lose his reward.

### 37.—SPECIAL BLESSINGS OF ALMSGIVING IN SOUL AND BODY.

- Eci* 40, 17 Grace is like a paradise | Help the poor because of *Eci* 29, 12-17  
 in blessings, and mercy re- the commandment: and send  
 maineth for ever. him not away empty-handed  
*Ecl* 12, 2 Do good to the just, and because of his poverty. —  
 thou shalt find great recom- Lose thy money for thy bro-  
 pense: and if not of him, ther and thy friend, and hide  
 assuredly of the Lord. it not under a stone to be  
*Eci* 3, 33-34 Water quencheth a flaming lost.—Place thy treasures in  
 fire, and alms resisteth sins: the Commandments of the  
 —And God provideth for him Most High, and it shall bring  
 that showeth favour. He thee more profit than gold.—  
 remembereth him afterwards, Shut up alms in the heart of  
 and in the time of his fall he the poor, and it shall obtain  
 shall find a sure stay. help for thee against all evil.  
*Pv* 40, 1-3 Blessed is he that under- —Better than the shield of  
 standeth concerning the needy the mighty, and better than  
 and the poor: the Lord will the spear;—It shall fight for  
 deliver him in the evil day. thee against thy enemy.  
 —The Lord preserve him Prayer is good with fasting *To* 12, 8-9  
 and give him life, and make and alms, more than to lay  
 him blessed upon earth, and up treasures of gold:—For  
 deliver him not up to the alms delivereth from death:  
 will of his enemies.—The and the same is that which  
 Lord help him on his bed of purgeth away sins, and mak-  
 sorrow; Thou hast turned eth to find mercy and Life  
 all his couch in his sickness. Everlasting.

### 38.—ALMS CANCEL SIN, AND REMIT THE PENALTY OF SIN.

- Lu* 11, 41 Give alms: and behold all | poor beareth not reprehension.  
 things are clean unto you.  
*Pv* 18, 6 By mercy and truth iniquity is redeemed: and by | The relieving of thy father *Eci* 3, 15-17  
 the fear of the Lord men de- shall not be forgotten;—For  
 part from evil. good shall be repaid to thee  
*Pv* 13, 8 The ransom of a man's life for the sin of thy mother.—  
 are his riches: but he that is And in justice thou shalt be  
 built up, and in the day of

affliction thou shalt be remembered: and thy sins shall melt away as the ice in the fair warm weather.	Stretch out thy hand to the poor, that thy expiation and thy blessing may be perfected.	<i>Eci</i> 7, 36
--	---	------------------

39.—ALMS BRING RICHES AND HONOURS TO THE GIVER.

<i>2 C</i> 9, 6	He who soweth in blessings shall also reap blessings.	Some distribute their own goods, and grow richer; others take away what is not their own, and are always in want.—The soul which blesseth shall be made fat; and he that inebriateth shall be inebriated also himself.	<i>Pv</i> 11, 24-25
<i>2 C</i> 9, 10-11	He that ministereth seed to the sower will both give you bread to eat, and will multiply your seed, and increase the growth of your fruits of justice.—That being enriched in all things, you may abound unto all simplicity, which worketh through us thanksgiving to God.	He that giveth to the poor shall not want; he that despiseth his entreaty shall suffer indigence.	<i>Pv</i> 23, 27
<i>Pv</i> 3, 9-10	Honour the Lord with thy substance, and give Him the first of all thy fruits:—And thy barns shall be filled with abundance, and thy presses shall run over with wine.	These were men of mercy, whose godly deeds have not failed.	<i>Eci</i> 44, 10
<i>Ap</i> 2, 19	I know thy charity.	He that oppresseth the poor upbraideth his Maker; but he that hath pity on the poor honoureth Him.	<i>Pv</i> 14, 31

40.—EXHORTATIONS TO ALMSGIVING.

<i>Lx</i> 12, 33	Sell what you possess, and give alms; make to yourselves bags which grow not old, a treasure in Heaven that faileth not, where no thief approacheth, nor moth corrupteth.	Let not thy hand be stretched out to receive, and shut when thou shouldst give.	<i>Eci</i> 4, 36
<i>Lx</i> 16, 9	Make unto you friends of the mammon of iniquity, that when you shall fail they may receive you into everlasting dwellings.	As in all things you abound in faith, and the Word, and knowledge, and all carefulness: moreover also in your charity towards us, so in this grace may you also abound.—I speak not as commanding, but by the carefulness of others, approving also the good disposition of your charity.—For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that being rich He became poor, for your sakes; that through His poverty you might be rich.	<i>2 C</i> 8, 7-9
<i>Pv</i> 3, 27	Do not withhold him from doing good who is able: if thou art able, do good thyself also.		
<i>Pv</i> 5, 16	Let thy fountains be conveyed abroad, and in the streets divide thy waters.		

## 41.—THE SIN AND PUNISHMENT OF SELFISHNESS.

- Pv* 14, 21 He that despiseth his neighbour sinneth, but he that showeth mercy to the poor shall be blessed.
- Ja* 2, 15-16 If a brother or sister be naked, and want daily food, —And one of you say to them: Go in peace, be you warmed and filled, yet give them not those things that are necessary for the body, what shall it profit?
- 1 J* 3, 17 He that hath the substance of this world, and shall see his brother in need, and shall put up his bowels from him, how doth the charity of God abide in him?
- Eci* 34, 25-26 The bread of the needy is the life of the poor: he that defraudeth them thereof is a man of blood.—He that taketh away bread begotten by sweat is like him that killeth his neighbour.
- Eci* 4, 5-6 Turn not away thy eyes from the poor, for fear of anger; and leave not to them that ask thee to curse thee behind thy back.—For the prayer of him that curseth in the bitterness of his soul shall be heard; for He that made him will hear him.
- Pv* 21, 13 He that stoppeth his ear against the cry of the poor shall also cry himself, and shall not be heard.
- Eci* 34, 24 He that offereth sacrifice of the goods of the poor is as one that sacrificeth the son in presence of the father.
- Am I my brother's keeper? *Ge* 4, 9
- All have turned aside into their own way, every one after his own gain, from the first even to the last. *Is* 56, 11
- Who is there among you that will shut the doors, and will kindle the fire on My altar gratis? I have no pleasure in you, saith the Lord of Hosts; and I will not receive a gift of your hands. *Ma* 1, 10
- He that loveth his life shall lose it. *Jn* 12, 25
- I have sinned. What is that to us? Look thou to it. *Mt* 27, 4
- In the last days shall come dangerous times.—Men shall be lovers of themselves. *2 Ti* 3, 1-2
- All seek the things that are their own, not the things that are Jesus Christ's. *Ph* 2, 21
- Examples of selfishness:
- (1) The rich Man. *Lu* 16, 19
  - (2) The Priest and Levite. *Lu* 10, 32
  - (3) The Pharisees. *Lu* 16, 14
  - (4) The Lover of life. *Jn* 12, 25
  - (5) Cain. *Ge* 4, 9
  - (6) Lot. *Ge* 13, 10
  - (7) The Men of Soccoth and Phaul. *Jg* 8, 6
  - (8) David's Soldiers. *1 K* 30, 22
  - (9) The Jews. *Je* 8, 10
  - (10) The evil Pastors. *Ez* 34, 3
  - (11) The Men of Meroz. *Jg* 5, 23
  - (12) Achan and his Sons. *Js* 7, 21
  - (13) The Storer of riches. *Ps* 38, 7
  - (14) Jonas. *Jo* 4, 10

## 42.—EXAMPLES OF ALMSGIVING.

- To* 1, 19 Tobias daily went among all his kindred, and comforted them, and distributed to every one as he was able out of his goods.
- After the Sabbath they divided the spoils to the feeble and the orphans and the widows, and the rest they took for themselves. *2 M* 8, 23



- Ac 9, 36** In Joppe there was a certain disciple named Tabitha, which by interpretation is called Dorcas. This woman was full of good works and almsdeeds which she did.
- Ac 10, 1-2** There was a certain man in Cesarea named Cornelius, a centurion of that which is called the Italian band:—A religious man, and fearing God with all his house, giving much alms to the people.
- Ac 11, 29-30** The disciples, every man according to his ability, purposed to send relief to the brethren who dwelt in Judea:—Which also they did, sending it to the ancients by the hands of Barnabas and Saul.
- Lu 19, 8-9** Zacheus, standing, said to the Lord: Behold, Lord, the half of my goods I give to the poor; and if I have wronged any man of anything, I restore him fourfold. — Jesus said to him: This day is salvation come to this house, because he also is a son of Abraham.
- He 6, 10** God is not unjust that He should forget your work, and the love which you have shown in His Name, you who have ministered and do minister to the Saints.

**43.—BROTHERLY CORRECTION AND REPROOF TO BE PRACTISED BOTH PRIVATELY AND PUBLICLY.**

- Mr 18, 15-17** If thy brother shall offend against thee, go and rebuke him between thee and him alone. If he shall hear thee, thou shalt gain thy brother. —If he will not hear thee, take with thee one or two more, that in the mouth of one or two witnesses every word may stand; and if he will not hear them, tell the Church.—And if he will not hear the Church, let him be to thee as the heathen and publican.
- Le 19, 17** Thou shalt not hate thy brother in thy heart, but reprove him openly, lest thou incur sin through him.
- Pv 6, 23** Reproofs of instruction are the way of life.
- Pv 140, 5** The just man shall correct me in mercy, and shall reprove me.
- Pv 28, 23** He that rebuketh a man shall afterwards find favour with him more than he that
- by a flattering tongue deceiveth him.
- Pv 12, 1** He that loveth correction loveth knowledge: but he that hateth reproof is foolish.
- Eci 7, 6** It is better to be rebuked by a wise man than to be deceived by the flattery of fools.
- Eci 10, 28** A man that is prudent and well instructed will not murmur when he is reprovèd.
- Eci 11, 7** Before thou inquire, blame no man: when thou hast inquired, reprove justly.
- Ro 15, 14** I myself, my brethren, am assured of you, that you also are full of love, replenished with all knowledge, so that you are able to admonish one another.
- La 3, 48** My eye hath run down with streams of water, for the destruction of the daughter of my people.
- Je 13, 17** If you will not hear this, my soul shall weep in secret

- for your pride: weeping it shall weep, and my eyes shall run down with tears, because the flock of the Lord is carried away captive.
- 1 *Ti* 5, 14 We beseech you, brethren, rebuke the unquiet.
- Ep* 5, 11 Have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove them.
- He* 3, 13 Exhort one another every day, whilst it is called to-day, lest any of you be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin.
- In many things we all offend. *Ja* 3, 2
- Them that sin reprove before all, that the rest also may have fear. *1 Ti* 5, 20
- Reverence not thy neighbour in his fall: and refrain not to speak in the time of salvation.—Hide not thy wisdom in her beauty. *Eci* 4, 27-28
- Be not ashamed to inform the unwise and foolish, and the aged that are judged by young men: and thou shalt be well instructed in all things, and well approved in the sight of all men living. *Eci* 42, 8

#### 44.—BY WHOM REPROOF IS TO BE GIVEN, TO WHOM, AND IN WHAT WAY.

- Pv* 21, 29 The wicked man imprudently hardeneth his face: but he that is righteous correcteth his way.
- Pv* 27, 22 Though thou shouldst bray a fool in the mortar, as when a pestle striketh upon sodden barley, his folly would not be taken from him.
- 1 *Ti* 5, 1-3 An ancient man rebuke not: but entreat him as a father: young men as brethren,—Young women assisters, in all chastity.
- Eci* 8, 13 Kindle not the coals of sinners by rebuking them, lest thou be burnt with the flame of the fire of their sins.
- Pv* 140, 5 The just man shall correct me in mercy, and shall re-
- prove me: but let not the oil of the sinner fatten my head.
- With modesty admonish them that resist the truth: if peradventure God may give them repentance to know the truth,—And they may recover themselves from the snares of the devil, by whom they are held captive at his will. *2 Ti* 2, 25-26
- Do not esteem him as an enemy, but admonish him as a brother. *2 Ti* 3, 15
- If a man be overtaken in any fault, you, who are spiritual, instruct such a one in the spirit of meekness, considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted. *Ga* 6, 1

#### 45.—EXHORTATIONS TO BROTHERLY CORRECTION.

- Eci* 19, 12-16 Reprove a friend, lest he may not have understood, and say: I did it not; or if he did it, that he may do it no more.—Reprove thy neighbour, for it may be he hath not said it: and if he hath said it, that he may not say it again.—Admonish thy friend; for there is often a

	fault committed. — And believe not every word.	(3) St. John the Baptist.	<i>Mk</i> 6, 18
<i>Tt</i> 4, 2	Reprove, entreat, rebuke in all patience and doctrine.	(4) St. Stephen.	<i>Ac</i> 7, 51
		(5) St. Paul.	<i>Ac</i> 23, 3
<i>Tt</i> 1, 13	Rebuke them sharply, that they may be sound in the Faith.	(6) St. Jacob.	<i>Ge</i> 30, 2
		(7) St. Moses.	<i>Ex</i> 10, 29
<i>Tt</i> 2, 15	These things speak, and exhort, and rebuke with all authority. Let no man despise thee.	(8) St. Samuel.	1 <i>K</i> 15, 14
		(9) St. Elias.	3 <i>K</i> 19, 18
<i>Ju</i> 22	Some indeed reprove, being judged.	(10) St. Eliseus.	4 <i>K</i> 3, 13
		(11) St. Isaias.	4 <i>K</i> 20, 17
1 <i>T</i> 3, 14	We beseech you, brethren, rebuke the unquiet.	(12) St. Zacharias.	2 <i>P</i> 24, 20
		(13) St. Daniel.	<i>Da</i> 4, 27
<i>Eci</i> 20, 1	How much better it is to reprove than to be angry, and not to hinder him that confesseth in prayer!	(14) St. Amos.	<i>Am</i> 7, 12
	Examples of loving reproof:	(15) Jonathan.	1 <i>K</i> 19, 4
<i>Mt</i> 16, 23	(1) Our Lord.	(16) Nathan.	2 <i>K</i> 12, 1
<i>Ac</i> 5, 3	(2) St. Peter.	(17) Joab.	2 <i>K</i> 19, 5
		(18) Micheas.	3 <i>K</i> 22, 17
		(19) Joas.	4 <i>K</i> 12, 7
		(20) Semeias.	2 <i>P</i> 12, 5
		(21) Abia.	2 <i>P</i> 13, 4
		(22) Azarias.	2 <i>P</i> 15, 2
		(23) Jehu.	2 <i>P</i> 19, 2
		(24) Esdras.	1 <i>E</i> 10, 10
		(25) Nehemias.	2 <i>E</i> 5, 6

46.—FAULTY MODES OF CORRECTION.

<i>Jb</i> 6, 25-27	Why have you detracted the words of truth, whereas there is none of you that can reprove me?—You dress up speeches only to rebuke, and you utter words to the wind.—You rush in upon the fatherless, and you endeavour to overthrow your friend.	He that teacheth a scorner doth an injury to himself: and he that rebuketh a wicked man getteth himself a blot.—Rebuke not a scorner, lest he hate thee. Rebuke a wise man, and he will love thee.—Give an occasion to a wise man, and wisdom shall be added to him. Teach a just man, and he shall make haste to receive it.	<i>Pv</i> 9, 7-9
<i>Eci</i> 19, 28	There is a lying rebuke in the anger of an injurious man: and there is a judgment that is not allowed to be good: and there is one that holdeth his peace, and he is wise.	A wise son heareth the doctrine of his father: but he that is a scorner heareth not when he is reprov'd.	<i>Pv</i> 13, 1
<i>Pv</i> 25, 20	As vinegar upon nitre, so is he that singeth songs to a very evil heart.	Why seest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, and seest not the beam that is in thy own eye?—Or how sayest thou to thy brother: Let me cast the mote out of thy eye; and behold a beam is in	<i>Mt</i> 7, 3-5
<i>Eci</i> 19, 17-18	Admonish thy neighbour before thou threaten him,—And give place to the fear of the Most High.		

thy own eye?—Thou hypo- thou shalt see to cast out the  
crite! cast out first the beam mote out of thy brother's eye.  
out of thy own eye, and then

## 47.—FRUITS OF CORRECTION.

- Pv* 24, 24- They that say to the Am I then become your *Ga* 4, 16  
25 wicked man: Thou art just, enemy, because I tell you  
shall be cursed by the people, the truth?  
and the tribes shall abhor A reproof availeth more *Pv* 17, 10  
them. — They that rebuke with a wise man than a hun-  
him shall be praised: and a dred stripes with a fool.  
blessing shall come upon them. The perverse are hard to *Eci* 1, 16  
*Jn* 7, 7 The world cannot hate be corrected, and the number  
you; but Me it hateth, be- of fools is infinite.  
cause I give testimony of it, Consider the works of God, *Eci* 7, 14  
that the works thereof are that no man can correct whom  
evil. he hath despised.

## 48.—REPROOF TO BE BORNE WITH RESIGNATION.

- Eci* 21, 7 He that hateth to be re- ance! for so thou shalt escape  
proved walketh in the trace wilful sin.  
of a sinner: and he that fear- A man that is prudent and *Eci* 10, 28  
eth God will turn to his own well instructed will not mur-  
heart. mur when he is reproved.  
*He* 12, 7 Persevere under discipline. In no wise speak against *Eci* 4, 30  
*Eci* 20, 4 How good is it, when thou truth, but be ashamed of the  
art reproved, to show repent- lie of thy ignorance.

## 49.—ADVANTAGES OF FRATERNAL CORRECTION.

- Pv* 13, 18 Poverty and shame to proveth him shall suddenly  
him that refuseth instruc- be destroyed, and health shall  
tion: but he that yieldeth to not follow him.  
reproof shall be glorified. The way of life to him that *Pv* 10, 17  
*Pv* 15, 5 A fool laugheth at the observeth correction: but he  
instruction of his father; but that forsaketh reproofs goeth  
he that regardeth reproof astray.  
shall become more prudent. He that hateth chastise- *Eci* 19, 5  
ment shall have less life.  
*Pv* 15, 31 The ear that heareth the Instruction is grievous to *Pv* 15, 10  
reproofs of life shall abide in him that forsaketh the way  
the midst of the wise. of life: he that hateth re-  
*Pv* 15, 32 He that rejecteth instruc- proof shall die.  
tion despiseth his own soul: A sinful man will flee re- *Eci* 32, 21  
but he that yieldeth to re- proof, and will find an excuse  
proof possesseth under- according to his will.  
standing. As an earring of gold and *Pv* 25, 12  
*Pv* 29, 1 The man that with a stiff a bright pearl, so is he that  
neck despiseth him that re-

reproveth the wise, and the obedient ear.

*Ecl* 7, 4-7 Anger is better than laughter, because by the sadness of the countenance the mind of the offender is corrected.—The heart of the wise is where there is mourning, and the heart of fools where there is mirth.—It is better to be rebuked by a wise man than to be deceived with the flattery of fools;—For as the crackling of thorns burning under a pot, so is the laughter of a fool: now this also is vanity.

Better are the wounds of a friend than the deceitful kisses of an enemy. *Ps* 27, 6

# 50.—BROTHERLY ADMONITION ILLUSTRATED.

*Ex* 2, 13-14 Going out the next day, he [Moses] saw two Hebrews quarrelling; and he said to him that did the wrong: Why strikest thou thy neighbour?—But he answered: Who hath appointed thee prince and judge over us? Wilt thou kill me, as thou didst yesterday kill the Egyptian?

*Jg* 20, 12-13 They [the Israelites] sent messengers to all the tribes of Benjamin, to say to them: Why hath so great an abomination been found among you?—Deliver up the men of Gabaa that have committed this heinous crime, that they may die, and the evil may be taken out of Israel.

*3 K* 18, 21 And Elias coming to all the people, said: How long do you halt between two sides? If the Lord be God, follow Him; but if Baal, then follow him. And the people did not answer him a word.

*To* 2, 17-18 Tobias rebuked them, saying: Speak not so; for we are the children of Saints.—And look for that life which God will give to those that never change their faith from Him.

*Js* 22, 16 Thus saith all the people of the Lord: What meaneth

this transgression? Why have you forsaken the Lord the God of Israel, building a sacrilegious altar, and revolting from the worship of Him?

I was exceedingly angry when I heard their cry,—And my heart thought with myself: and I rebuked the nobles and magistrates, and said to them: Do you every one exact usury of your brethren? And I gathered together a great assembly against them.

I pleaded the matter against the magistrates, and said: Why have we forsaken the House of God?

O generation of vipers, how can you speak good things, whereas you are evil? for out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh.

Herod had apprehended John, and bound him, and put him in prison, because of Herodias, his brother's wife;—For John said to him: It is not lawful for thee to have her.

I have told you before, and foretell, as present and now absent, to them that sinned before, and to all the rest, that if I come again I will not spare.—Do you seek a proof of Christ Who speaketh

- in me, Who towards you is not weak, but is mighty in you? that neither see nor hear nor feel: but the God Who hath thy breath in His Hand, and all thy ways, thou hast not glorified. — Wherefore He hath sent the part of the hand which hath written this that is set down.
- Da 5, 22-24* Thou also his [Nabuchodonosor's] son, O Baltassar, hast not humbled thy heart, whereas thou knewest these things, — But hast lifted up thyself against the Lord of Heaven; and the vessels of His House have been brought before thee, and thou and thy nobles, and thy wives and thy concubines, have drunk wine in them: and thou hast praised the gods of silver, and of gold, and of brass, of iron, and of wood, and of stone, no evil.
- The other [thief] answer- *Lu 23, 40-41* ing, rebuked him, saying: Neither dost thou fear God, seeing thou art under the same condemnation? — And we indeed justly; for we receive the due reward of our deeds, but This Man hath done no evil.

**51. — VICES OPPOSED TO CHARITY : IN THE FIRST PLACE,  
HATRED OF GOD AND OF OUR NEIGHBOUR.**

- Pv 8, 36* All that hate Me love death.
- Pz 138, 21* Have I not hated them, O Lord, that hated Thee, and pined away because of Thy enemies?
- Ge 27, 41* Esau always hated Jacob for the blessing wherewith his father had blessed him; and he said in his heart: The days will come of the mourning for my father, and I will kill my brother Jacob.
- Am 5, 10* They have hated him that rebuketh in the gate; and have abhorred him that speaketh perfectly.
- Mt 24, 9* You shall be hated by all nations for My Name's sake.
- Jn 15, 18* If the world hate you, know ye that it hath hated Me before you.
- Jn 15, 25* They hated Me without a cause.
- 1 J 3, 14-15* He that loveth not abideth in death. — Whosoever hateth his brother is a murderer. And you know that no murderer hath eternal life abiding in himself.
- He that saith he is in the light, and hateth his brother, is in darkness even until now. — He that loveth his brother abideth in the light, and there is no scandal in him. — But he that hateth his brother is in darkness, and walketh in darkness, and knoweth not whither he goeth, because the darkness hath blinded his eyes.
- Examples of uncharitableness:**
- (1) Eliab, David's eldest brother. *1 K 17, 28*
  - (2) Baldad, the Suhite. *Jb 8, 1*
  - (3) Eliphaz, the Themanite. *Jb 15, 1*
  - (4) Sophar, the Naamathite. *Jb 11, 1*
  - (5) Nathanael. *Jn 1, 46*
  - (6) The Jews of Asia. *Ac 21, 27*
  - (7) Nabal. *1 K 25, 10*
  - (8) Edom. *Nu 20, 18*
  - (9) Sehon, King of the Amorrites. *Nu 21, 22*

## 52.—EVILS, PUNISHMENTS, AND EXAMPLES OF SPIRITUAL SLOTH.

- Ecl* 10, 18 By slothfulness a building shall be brought down, and through the weakness of hands the house shall drop through.
- Eci* 22, 1-2 The sluggard is pelted with a dirty stone, and all men will speak of his disgrace.—The sluggard is pelted with the dung of oxen, and every one that toucheth him will shake his hands.
- Ecl* 4, 5-6 The fool foldeth his hands together, and eateth his own flesh, saying:—Better is a handful with rest than both hands full with labour and vexation of mind.
- Is* 56, 10 His watchmen are all blind, they are all ignorant; dumb dogs, not able to bark; seeing vain things, sleeping and loving dreams.
- Ac* 17, 21 All the Athenians and strangers that were there employed themselves in nothing else but either in telling or in hearing some new thing.
- Pv* 19, 15 Slothfulness casteth into a deep sleep, and an idle soul shall suffer hunger.
- Pv* 13, 4 The sluggard willeth and willeth not.
- Pv* 22, 29 Hast thou seen a man swift in his work? he shall stand before kings, and shall not be before those that are obscure.
- The Israelites wearying of the Heavenly Manna, said: Who shall give us flesh to eat?—We remember the fish that we ate in Egypt free-cost; the cucumbers come into our mind, and the melons, and the leeks, and the onions, and the garlic.—Our soul is dry, our eyes behold nothing else but Manna.
- The people began to be weary of their journey and labour:—And speaking against God and Moses, they said: Why didst thou bring us out of Egypt, to die in the wilderness?—Wherefore the Lord sent among the people fiery serpents.
- Jonas, agitated by the furious tempest, went down into the inner part of the ship, and fell into a deep sleep.
- While men were asleep his enemy came and oversowed cockle among the wheat, and went his way.
- The virgins who slept, and whose lamps were not filled before the coming of the Spouse, were excluded from the Eternal Nuptials.
- Nu* 11, 4-6
- Nu* 21, 4-6
- Jo* 1, 5
- Mt* 13, 25
- Mt* 25, 1

## 53.—CAUSES AND EFFECTS OF ENVY.

- W* 2, 24-25 By the envy of the devil death came into the world:—And they follow him that are of his side.
- Jb* 5, 2 Envy slayeth the little one.
- W* 6, 25 Neither will I go with consuming envy; for such a man shall not be partaker of wisdom.
- If you have bitter zeal, and there be contentions in your hearts, glory not, and be not liars against the truth.—For this is not wisdom descending
- Ja* 3, 14-16

- from above; but earthly, sensual, devilish.—For where envy and contention is, there is inconstancy and every evil work.
- Ga* 5, 15 If you bite and devour one another, take heed you be not consumed one of another.
- Pv* 14, 30 Soundness of heart is the life of the flesh; but envy is the rottenness of the bones.
- Pv* 28, 22 A man that maketh haste to be rich, and envieth others, is ignorant that poverty shall come upon him.
- Pv* 36, 1, 7-8 Be not emulous of evil-doers; nor envy them that work iniquity.—Envy not the man who prospereth in his way, the man who doth unjust things.—Have no emulation to do evil.
- Let not thy heart envy sinners; but be thou in the fear of the Lord all the day long.
- Instead of a friend become not an enemy to thy neighbour; for an evil man shall inherit reproach and shame: so shall every sinner that is envious and double-tongued.
- The eye of the envious is wicked; and he turneth away his face, and despiseth his own soul.
- To envy doth the spirit covet which dwelleth in you.
- Whereas there is among you envying and contention, are you not carnal, and walk according to man?
- Charity envieth not.
- Pv* 23, 17  
*Eci* 6, 1  
*Eci* 14, 8  
*Ja* 4, 5  
*1 C* 3, 3  
*1 C* 13, 4

## 54.—EXHORTATIONS TO SHUN ENVY.

- Ro* 13, 13 Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in contention and envy.
- Ga* 5, 19-21 The works of the flesh are manifest, which are:—Contentions, emulations, dissensions, sects, — Envies, and suchlike. Of the which I foretell you, as I have foretold to you, that they who do such things shall not obtain the Kingdom of God.
- Ga* 5, 26 Let us not be made desirous of vain-glory, provoking one another, envying one another.
- Laying away all malice and envies.
- I considered all the labours of men, and I remarked that their industries are exposed to the envy of their neighbour: so in this also there is vanity and fruitless care.
- Envy not the glory and riches of a sinner; for thou knowest not what his ruin shall be.
- Envy not the unjust man, and do not follow his ways.
- 1 Pt* 2, 1  
*Ecl* 4, 4  
*Eci* 9, 16  
*Pv* 3, 31

## 55.—EXAMPLES OF ENVY.

- Mt* 27, 18 1. The Chief Priests envied Jesus. "He [Pilate] knew that for envy they had delivered Him."
- Ac* 13, 45 2. The Jews of Antioch envied Paul and Barnabas.
- 1 C* 3, 3 3. The Corinthians envied one another.
4. Cain envied Abel. *Ge* 4, 6
5. Sarai envied Agar. *Ge* 16, 4
6. The Palestines envied Isaac. *Ge* 26, 14
7. Rachel envied Lia. *Ge* 30, 1
8. Laban's sons envied Jacob. *Ge* 31, 1
9. Joseph's brethren envied *Ge* 37, 4



	him.	12. Saul envied David.	1K 18, 8
Nu 12, 1	10. Mary and Aaron envied Moses.	13. Darius's Princes envied Daniel.	Da 6, 4
Nu 16, 1	11. Core, Dathan, Abiron, and Hon envied Moses.	14. The Trees of Pleasure envied the Cedar of Libanus.	Ex 31, 9

56.—CAUSES, CONSEQUENCES, AND EXAMPLES OF DISCORD.

Pv 26, 20-21	When the wood faileth, the fire shall go out; and when the talebearer is taken away, contentions shall cease.—As coals are to burning coals, and wood to fire, so an angry man stirreth up strife.	Six things there are which the Lord hateth, and the seventh His Soul detesteth.—A deceitful witness that uttereth lies, and him that soweth discord among brethren.	Pv 6, 16, 19
1 C 3, 3	Whereas there is among you envying and contention, are you not carnal, and walk according to man?	There arose a strife between the herdsmen of Abram and of Lot.	Ge 13, 7
La 4, 15	They quarrelled, and being removed, they said among the Gentiles: He will no more dwell among them.	The Bread that I will give is My Flesh. The Jews therefore strove among themselves, saying: How can this Man give us His Flesh to eat?	Jn 6, 53

57.—WHAT LEADS TO STRIFE, AND THE INJURIES AND PUNISHMENTS WHICH RESULT THEREFROM.

Pv 29, 9	If a wise man contend with a fool, whether he be angry or laugh, he shall find no rest.	It is an honour for a man to separate himself from quarrels; but all fools are meddling with reproaches.	Pv 20, 3
Eci 8, 1-4	Strive not with a powerful man, lest thou fall into his hands.—Contend not with a rich man, lest he bring an action against thee.—For gold and silver hath destroyed many, and hath reached even to the heart of kings, and perverted them.—Strive not with a man that is full of tongue, and heap not wood upon his fire.	Refrain from strife, and thou shalt diminish thy sins. If a man will contend with thee in judgment, and take away thy coat, let go thy cloak also unto him.	Eci 28, 10
Eci 28, 11	A passionate man kindleth strife, and a sinful man will trouble his friends, and bring in debate in the midst of them that are at peace.	Cast out the scoffer, and contention shall go out with him, and quarrels and reproaches shall cease. He that boasteth puffeth up himself stirreth up quarrels.	Pv 22, 10
		An evil man always seeketh quarrels; but a cruel angel shall be sent against him.	Pv 17, 11

- Pv* 13, 6 The lips of a fool intermeddle with strife, and his mouth provoketh quarrels. *Pv* 17, 1 Better is a dry morsel with joy than a house full of victims with strife.
- Ja* 3, 16 Where envying and contention is, there is inconstancy and every evil work. *Pv* 6, 12, 14-15 A man that is an apostate walketh with a perverse mouth.—At all times he soweth discord;—To such a one his destruction shall presently come, and he shall suddenly be destroyed, and shall no longer have any remedy.
- Eci* 28, 13 A hasty contention kindleth a fire: and a hasty quarrel sheddeth blood: and a tongue that beareth witness bringeth death.

## 58.—STRIFE FORBIDDEN.

- Ph* 2, 3 Let nothing be done through contention, neither by vain-glory. custom, nor the Church of God.
- 2 Ti* 2, 14 Contend not in words, for it is to no profit, but to the subverting of the hearers. Brother goeth to law with 1 *C* 6, 6-8
- 2 Ti* 2, 23-24 Avoid foolish and unlearned questions, knowing that they beget strifes:—But the servant of the Lord must not wrangle. you, that you have lawsuits one with another. Why do you not rather take wrong? Why do you not rather suffer yourselves to be defrauded? —But you do wrong, and defraud: and that to your brethren.
- Ge* 13, 8 Let there be no quarrel.
- 1 C* 11, 16 If any man seem to be contentious, we have no such

## 59.—CAUSES, EFFECTS, AND PUNISHMENTS OF QUARRELS.

- Pv* 29, 22 A passionate man provoketh quarrels: and he that is easily stirred up to wrath shall be more prone to sin. thee. In the quarrels of the *Eci* 27, 16 proud is the shedding of blood, and their cursing is a grievous hearing.
- Eci* 8, 19 Quarrel not with a passionate man, and go not into the desert with a bold man; for blood is as nothing in his sight, and where there is no help he will overthrow quarrel. As he that taketh a dog by the ears, so is he that passeth by in anger, and meddleth with another man's quarrel. *Pv* 26, 17

## 60.—WAR. SIN THE CAUSE OF WAR.

- Is* 42, 24-25 Who hath given Jacob for a spoil, and Israel to robbers? hath not the Lord Himself, against Whom we have sinned? And they would not walk in His ways, and they have not hearkened to His law.—And He hath poured out upon him the indignation of His fury, and a strong

battle, and hath burnt him round about, and he knew not: and set him on fire, and he understood not.

*Is* 48, 18-19 O that thou hadst hearkened to My Commandments! thy peace had been as a river, and thy justice as the waves of the sea,—And thy seed had been as the sand, and the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof: his name should not have perished, nor have been destroyed from before My face.

*Je* 5, 28-29 They have not judged the cause of the widow, they have not managed the cause of the fatherless, and they have not judged the judgment of the poor:—Shall I not visit for these things? saith the Lord; or shall not My Soul take revenge on such a nation?

*Ecl* 3, 1, 8 All things have their season, and in their times all things pass under heaven.—A time of war and a time of peace.

*Mt* 24, 6 You shall hear of wars and rumours of wars. See that ye be not troubled. For these things must come to pass, but the end is not yet.

*Ge* 49, 5-7 Simeon and Levi brethren, ye are vessels of iniquity, waging war. — Let not my soul go into their counsel, nor my glory be in their assembly: because in their fury they slew a man, and in their self-will they undermined a wall. — Cursed be their fury because it was stubborn: and their wrath because it was cruel.

*3 K* 2, 5-6 Joah shed the blood of war in peace, and put the blood of war on his girdle that was

about his loins, and in his shoes that were on his feet.—Let not his hoary head go down to hell in peace.

The Word of the Lord *1 P* 22, 8 came to me, saying: Thou hast shed much blood and fought many battles, so thou canst not build a house to My Name, after shedding so much blood before Me.

In the strength of thy arm *Jb* 22, 8, 10 thou didst possess the land, and being the most mighty thou holdest it.—Therefore art thou surrounded with snares, and sudden fear troubleth thee.

Wo to him that buildeth a town with blood, and prepar- *Ha* 2, 12 eth a city by iniquity!

Come and behold ye the *P* 45, 9-10 works of the Lord: what wonders He hath done upon earth.—Making wars to cease even to the end of the earth. He shall destroy the bow, and break the weapons: and the shield He shall burn in the fire

Scatter Thou the nations *P* 67, 31 that delight in wars.

From whence are wars and contentions among you? Are they not hence, from your concupiscences, which war in your members? *Ja* 4, 1

Instances of wars, revolutions, conspiracies, riots, &c.:

- (1) The Jews' conspiracy *Mt* 26, 59 against Christ.
- (2) Uproar in the city *Ac* 21, 30 of Jerusalem.
- (3) Dissension in Jerusa- *Ac* 23, 10 lem.
- (4) Revolt of four kings *Ge* 14, 4 against five.
- (5) Riots in the camp. *Ex* 32, 17
- (6) Josue besieges: *Ja* 6, 14
  - (a) Jericho.

- Js* 7, 2 (b) Hai.  
*Js* 10, 28 (c) Maceda.  
*Js* 10, 31 (d) Lachis.  
*Js* 10, 34 (e) Eglon.  
*Js* 10, 36 (f) Hebron.  
*Js* 10, 29 (g) Lebnā.  
*Js* 10, 38 (h) Dabir.  
*Js* 11, 7 (7) Josue's sudden attack upon the kings of the North.  
*Jg* 1, 8 (8) The men of Dan besiege Laish.  
*Jg* 1, 11 (9) Juda besieges Cariathsepher, the City of Letters.  
*Jg* 7, 22 (10) Civil war in the Camp of Israel.  
*Jg* 9, 34 (11) Abimelech besieges Sichem.  
*Jg* 9, 50 (12) Abimelech besieges Thebes.  
*Jg* 12, 4 (13) Civil war between Ephraim and Galaad (Schibboleth).  
1 *K* 11, 1 (14) Naas besieges Jabes Galaad.  
1 *K* 14, 15 (15) Jonathan's miraculous victory over the Philistines.  
1 *K* 23, 8 (16) Saul besieges Ceila.  
1 *K* 30, 14 (17) David takes and burns Siceleg.  
2 *K* 2, 32 (18) Forced marches by David's men.  
2 *K* 11, 1 (19) Joab besieges Rabba.  
2 *K* 15, 12 (20) Absalom's conspiracy against David.  
2 *K* 20, 15 (21) Joab besieges Abela.  
2 *K* 18, 17 (22) Amri besieges Thersa.  
3 *K* 20, 1 (23) Benadad besieges Samaria.  
3 *K* 22, 29 (24) Josaphat besieges Ramoth Galaad.  
4 *K* 3, 24 (25) Israel's sudden attack upon the Moabites.  
4 *K* 8, 20 (26) Edom revolts against Juda.  
4 *K* 12, 17 (27) Hazael besieges Geth.
- (28) King Theglathphala- 4 *K* 15, 29  
sar takes Aion, Abel Domum Maacha, Janoe, Cedee, Asor, Galaad, and Galilee.  
(29) Sennacherib besieges 4 *K* 18, 13  
the cities of Juda.  
(30) Nabuchodonosor be- 4 *K* 24, 10  
sieges Jerusalem.  
(31) Solomon besieges 2 *P* 8, 3  
Emath Suba.  
(32) The Revolt of the 2 *P* 10, 16  
Ten Tribes.  
(33) Civil wars forbidden. 2 *P* 11, 4  
(34) Abia with 400,000 2 *P* 13, 3  
men fights Jeroboam with 800,000 men.  
" And there fell wounded of Israel 500,000 men."  
(35) Revolution against 2 *P* 13, 6  
Roboam.  
(36) Civil war between 2 *P* 20, 23  
Ammon and Moab.  
(37) Civil war in Egypt. *Js* 19, 2  
(38) Ambuscades. *Jg* 9, 32  
(39) Riots in Jerusalem. *Is* 22, 3  
(40) The Jews' conspiracy against Jeremias. *Je* 11, 9  
(41) The Horn of Moab *Je* 48, 45  
cut off. (A metaphor drawn from animals whose strength lies in their horns.)  
(42) Hesebon and Seon *Je* 48, 25  
destroyed by fire.  
(43) The Fall of Babylon *Je* 50-51  
described by Jeremias.  
(44) The taking and destruction of Jerusalem described by Jeremias. *Je* 52, 12  
(45) Revolution against a wicked Prince. *Ez* 21, 25  
(46) Gaza, Damascus, Tyre, Edom, and Ammon destroyed by fire for their obstinacy in sin. *Am* 1, 4-14

- |            |   |  |           |
|------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1 M 6, 62  | (47) Eupator besieges Mt. Sion.           | (50) Antiochus takes and plunders Jerusalem. | 2 M 5, 1  |
| 1 M 9, 34  | (48) Bacchides besieges Bethbessen.       | (51) Exploits of Judas Machabeus.            | 2 M 10, 1 |
| 1 M 13, 49 | (49) Simon takes the Castle of Jerusalem. | (52) Victory of Judas over Nicanor.          | 2 M 15, 1 |

61.—WAR A MEANS OF BRINGING MEN TO THEIR SENSES.

- Is* 10, 25 Yet a little and a very people in wrath with an incurable wound, that brought nations under in fury, that wrath shall be upon their wickedness.
- Is* 10, 33 Behold, the Sovereign Lord of Hosts shall break the earthen vessel with terror, and the tall of stature shall be cut down, and the lofty shall be humbled.
- Is* 14, 5-6 The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the rod of the rulers, that struck the
- Be of good comfort, O people of God, the memorial of Israel: you have been sold to the Gentiles, not for your destruction; but because you provoked God to wrath, you are delivered to your adversaries.—For you have provoked Him Who made you.
- Ba* 4, 5-7

62 —SOLDIERS TO BE ENCOURAGED TO FIGHT IN A JUST WAR.

- Jg* 5, 9, 13 O you that of your own good will offered yourselves to danger, bless the Lord.—The remnants of the people are saved, the Lord hath fought among the valiant ones.
- Pv* 20, 19 Designs are strengthened by counsels, and wars are to be managed by governments.
- Pv* 24, 6 Because war is managed by due ordering: and there shall be safety where there are many counsels.
- De* 20, 1-4 If thou go to war against thy enemies, and see horsemen and chariots and the numbers of the enemy's army greater than thine, thou shalt not fear them, because the Lord thy God is
- with thee.—And when the battle is now at hand, the priest shall stand before the army, and shall speak to the people in this manner:—Hear, O Israel, you join battle this day against your enemies: let not your heart be dismayed, be not afraid, do not give back, fear ye them not:—Because the Lord your God is in the midst of you, and will fight for you against your enemies, to deliver you from danger.
- Do manfully, and be of good heart, fear not, nor be ye dismayed at their sight; for the Lord thy God He Himself is thy Leader, and will not leave thee nor forsake thee.—And the Lord,
- De* 31, 6, 8

Who is your Leader, He Himself will be with thee: He will not leave thee, nor forsake thee: fear not, neither be dismayed.

*J*s 23, 8-11 Cleave ye unto the Lord your God, as you have done unto this day:—And then the Lord God will take away before your eyes nations that are great and very strong, and no man shall be able to resist you;—One of you shall chase a thousand men of the enemies: because the Lord your God Himself will fight for you, as He hath promised:—This only take care of with all diligence, that you love the Lord your God.

*2 K* 11, 25 David said to the messenger: Thus shalt thou say to Joab: Let not this thing discourage thee; for various is the event of war: and sometimes one, sometimes another, is consumed by the sword: encourage thy warriors against the city, and exhort them, that thou mayest overthrow it.

*2 P* 32, 7-8 Behave like men, and take courage: be not afraid or dismayed for the King of the Assyrians, nor for all the multitude that is with him; for there are many more with us than with him.—For with him is an arm of flesh: with us the Lord our God, Who is our Helper, and fighteth for us.

*2 P* 20, 15-17 Thus saith the Lord to you: Fear ye not, and be not dismayed at this multitude; for the battle is not yours, but God's.—To-morrow you shall go down against them; for they will come up by the ascent nam-

ed Sis, and you shall find them at the head of the torrent, which is over against the wilderness of Jeruel.—It shall not be you that shall fight; but only stand with confidence, and you shall see the help of the Lord over you, O Juda and Jerusalem: fear ye not, nor be you dismayed: to-morrow you shall go out against them, and the Lord will be with you.

Be not afraid of them. *2 E* 4, 14, 20 Remember the Lord, Who is great and terrible, and fight for your brethren, your sons, and your daughters, and your wives, and your houses.—In what place soever you shall hear the sound of the trumpet, run all thither unto us: our God will fight for us.

When they saw the army *1 M* 3, 17-22 coming to meet them, they said to Judas: How shall we, being few, be able to fight against so great a multitude, and so strong, and we are ready to faint with fasting to-day?—And Judas said: It is an easy matter for many to be shut up in the hands of a few: and there is no difference in the sight of the God of Heaven to deliver with a great multitude or with a small company.—For the success of war is not in the multitude of the army, but strength cometh from Heaven.—They come against us with an insolent multitude and with pride to destroy us, and our wives, and our children, and to take our spoils:—But we will fight for our lives and our laws.—And the Lord Himself will over-

throw them before our face: but as for you, fear them not.

1 M 3, 58-60 Judas said: Gird yourselves, and be valiant men, and be ready against the morning, that you may fight with these nations that are assembled against us to destroy us and our Sanctuary:—For it is better for us to die in battle than to see the evils of our nation and of the Holies:—Nevertheless as it shall be the will of God in Heaven, so be it done.

1 M 4, 8-11 Judas said to the men that were with him: Fear ye not their multitude, neither be ye afraid of their assault.—Remember in what manner our fathers were saved in the Red Sea, when Pharaoh pursued them with a great

army.—And now let us cry to Heaven: and the Lord will have mercy on us, and will remember the covenant of our fathers, and will destroy this army before our face this day:—And all nations shall know that there is One that redeemeth and delivereth Israel.

Valiant Generals raised up by God to fight the battles of the Lord:

- |                                 |                   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| (1) St. Michael the Arch-angel. | <i>Ap 12, 7</i>   |
| (2) Josue.                      | <i>Ex 17, 13</i>  |
| (3) Caleb.                      | <i>Nu 14, 6</i>   |
| (4) Gideon.                     | <i>Jg 7, 1</i>    |
| (5) Jephthe.                    | <i>Jg 11, 1</i>   |
| (6) Samson.                     | <i>Jg 15, 15</i>  |
| (7) David.                      | <i>1 K 17, 50</i> |
| (8) Josias.                     | <i>4 K 22, 1</i>  |
| (9) Mathathias.                 | <i>1 M 2, 1</i>   |
| (10) Judas Machabeus.           | <i>2 M 8, 1</i>   |

### 63.—PRAYERS FOR VICTORY IN WAR.

2 P 14, 11 Lord, there is no difference with Thee, whether Thou help with few or with many: help us, O Lord our God; for with confidence in Thee, and in Thy Name, we are come against this multitude.

Jd 7, 19-21 We have sinned with our fathers, we have done unjustly, we have committed iniquity.—Have Thou mercy on us, because Thou art good, or punish our iniquities by chastising us Thyself: and deliver not them that trust in Thee to a people that knoweth not Thee,—That they may not say among the Gentiles: Where is their God?

Jd 9, 10-11 Thou art our God, Who destroyest wars from the

beginning, and the Lord is Thy Name.—Lift up Thy arm as from the beginning, and crush their power with Thy power: let their power fall in their wrath, who promise themselves to violate Thy Sanctuary.

And now, O Lord, O King, O God of Abraham, have mercy on Thy people, because our enemies resolve to destroy us, and extinguish Thy inheritance.—Despise not Thy portion, which Thou hast redeemed for Thyself.

My Lord God, what shall I say, seeing Israel turning their backs to their enemies?—And what wilt Thou do to Thy great Name?

Bless, O Lord, his strength, and receive the works of his

hands. Strike the backs of his enemies, and let not them that hate him rise.

*Jd 6, 15* O Lord God of Heaven and earth, behold their pride, and look on our low condition, and have regard to the face of Thy Saints, and show that Thou forsakest not them that trust on Thee, and that Thou humblest them that presume of themselves, and glory in their own strength.

*Ps 58, 12* Scatter them by Thy power, and bring them down, O Lord my Protector.

*Ps 82, 14* O my God, make them like a wheel, and as stubble before the wind.

*Ex 15, 16, 11* Let fear and dread fall upon them in the greatness of Thy arm.—Who is like to Thee among the strong, O Lord?

EPISTLE FOR THE MASS  
"TEMPORE BELLI."

*Jr 42, 2, 7-12* All the Captains of the warriors said to Jeremias the Prophet: Let our supplication fall before thee: and

pray thou for us to the Lord thy God.—The word of the Lord came to Jeremias. And he called all the Captains of the fighting men, and all the people from the least to the greatest.—And he said to them: Thus saith the Lord the God of Israel to Whom you sent me, to present your supplications before Him:—If you will be quiet and remain in this land, I will build you up, and not pull you down: I will plant you, and not pluck you up: and now I am appeased for the evil that I have done to you.—Fear not because of the King of Babylon, of whom you are greatly afraid: fear him not, saith the Lord; for I am with you, to save you, and to deliver you from his hand.—And I will show mercies to you, and will take pity on you, and will cause you to dwell in your Land.

The Gospel for the Mass *Mt 24, 3-8*  
*Tempore Belli.*

64.—THE BLESSINGS OF PEACE.

*Ps 23, 11* The Lord will give strength to His people: the Lord will bless His people with peace.

*Ps 45, 9* Come ye, and behold ye the works of the Lord: what wonders He hath done upon earth, making wars to cease even to the end of the earth.

*Ps 45, 10* He shall destroy the bow, and break the weapons: and the shields He shall burn in the fire.

*Ps 16, 7* When the ways of man shall please the Lord, He will convert even His enemies to peace.

He shall judge the Gentiles and rebuke many people: and they shall turn their swords into ploughshares, and their spears into sickles; nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they be exercised any more to war.

The Lord spoke to me, *Dt 2, 17, 19* saying:—When thou comest nigh the frontiers of the children of Ammon, take heed thou fight not against them, nor once move to battle.

When the servants of *1 P 19, 19*

*Is 2, 4*



Adarezer saw themselves turned, and did not go overcome by Israel, they against Jeroboam.—And Ro- went over to David and boam dwelt in Jerusalem, and served him. and built walled cities in

5 P11, 2-6 And the word of the Lord came to Semeias, the man of God, saying:—Speak to Ro-boam the son of Solomon the King of Juda, and to all Israel, in Juda and Benja-min.—Thus saith the Lord: You shall not go up nor fight against your brethren: let every man return to his own house, for by My will this thing has been done. And when they heard the word of the Lord, they re-

Juda.—And he built Bethle-hem, and Etam, and Thecue. The fear of the Lord fell 2 P 20, 29- upon all the kingdoms of the 30

lands when they heard that the Lord had fought against the enemies of Israel.—And the kingdom of Josaphat was quiet, and God gave him peace round about.

The Epistle for the Mass 2 M 1, 1-6 Pro Pace.

The Gospel for the Mass Jn 20, 19-23 Pro Pace,

# 65.—MALICE AND PUNISHMENT OF THE SIN OF SCANDAL.

Je 2, 25 I have lost all hope. I will not do it: for I have loved strangers, and I will walk after them.

Pv 28, 10 He that deceiveth the just in a wicked way shall fall in his own destruction: and the upright shall possess his goods.

2 K 12, 14 Because thou hast given occasion to the enemies of the Lord to blaspheme, for this thing the child that is born to thee shall surely die.

Mt 18, 6-7 He that shall scandalise one of these little ones that believe in Me, it were better for him that a mill-stone should be hanged about his neck, and that he should be drowned in the depth of the sea.—Wo to the world be-

cause of scandals! For it must needs be that scandals come: but nevertheless wo to that man by whom the scandal cometh!

A friend of fools shall be- Pv 13, 20 come like to them.

Examples of scandal:

- (1) Jezabel. Ap 2, 20
- (2) The evil leaven. 1 C 5, 6
- (3) Evil communica- 2 C 15, 33 tions.
- (4) Moabites. Nu 25, 1
- (5) Dalila. Jg 16, 1
- (6) Manasses. 4 K 21, 9
- (7) Ochozias. 2 P 20, 37
- (8) Solomon's wives. 2 E 13, 26
- (9) Babylon. Je 51, 6
- (10) False prophets. Ez 13, 10
- (11) Scandal - mongers, Nu 33, 55 nails in the eyes and spears in the side.

# 66.—THE CARE WITH WHICH SCANDAL-GIVING IS TO BE AVOIDED.

Je 15, 17 I sat not in the assembly boast of the presence of Thy of jesters, nor did I make a hand.

Y

- Mt 17, 26** That we may not scandalise them, go to the sea, and cast in a hook: and that fish which shall first come up, take; and when thou hast opened its mouth, thou shalt find a stater: take that, and give it to them for Me and thee.
- Ge 19, 15** Arise, lest thou also perish in the wickedness of the city.
- 1 C 8, 13** If meat scandalise my brother, I will never eat flesh, lest I should scandalise my brother.
- 2 C 8, 20-21** Avoiding this, lest any man should blame us in this abundance which is administered by us.—For we forecast what may be good not only before God, but also before men.
- 2 M 6, 24-25** It doth not become our age, said he, to dissemble: whereby many young persons might think that Eleazar, at the age of fourscore and ten years, was gone over to the life of the heathens:—And so they, through my dissimulation, and for a little time of a corruptible life, should be deceived, and hereby I should bring a stain and a curse upon my old age.
- Je 9, 2** Who will give me in the wilderness a lodging-place of wayfaring men, and I will leave my people, and depart from them? because they are all adulterers, an assembly of transgressors.
- Je 51, 6** Flee ye from the midst of Babylon, and let every one save his own life: be not silent upon her iniquity.
- Je 51, 45** Go out of the midst of her, my people: that every man may save his life from the fierce wrath of the Lord.
- Do not so, my sons; for it is no good report that I hear, that you make the people of the Lord to transgress.
- Take away the stumbling-blocks out of the way of My people.
- Hear ye this, O priests, and hearken, O ye House of Israel, and give ear, O House of the king: for there is a judgment against you, because you have been a snare to them whom you should have watched over, and a net spread upon Thabor.—And you have turned aside victims into the depth: and I am the Teacher of them all.
- Whosoever shall scandalise one of these little ones that believe in Me, it were better for him that a mill-stone were hanged about his neck, and he were cast into the sea.
- The Son of man shall send His Angels, and they shall gather out of His Kingdom all scandals, and them that work iniquity.
- Let not him that eateth despise him that eateth not; and he that eateth not, let him not judge him that eateth.—Destroy not the work of God for meat. All things, indeed, are clean: but it is evil for that man who eateth with offence.—It is good not to eat flesh, and not to drink wine, nor anything whereby thy brother is offended, or scandalised, or made weak.
- Be not delighted in the paths of the wicked, neither let the way of evil men please thee.—Flee from it, pass not by it: go aside, and forsake it.
- 1 K 2, 24**
- Is 57, 14**
- Os 5, 1-2**
- Mt 9, 14**
- Mt 13, 41**
- Ro 14, 3, 20-21**
- Po 4, 14-15**

**67.—WARNINGS AGAINST GIVING AND TAKING  
SCANDAL.**

- Ro* 14, 13-15 Let us not judge one another any more. — But judge this rather, that you put not a stumbling-block or a scandal in your brother's way.—For if, because of thy meat, thy brother be grieved, thou walkest not now according to charity. Destroy not him with thy meat for whom Christ died.
- 1 C* 8, 9 Take heed lest perhaps this your liberty become a stumbling-block to the weak.
- 1 C* 10, 28-29, 32-33 If any man say: This has been sacrificed to idols, do not eat of it, for his sake that told it, and for conscience' sake.—Conscience, I say: not thy own, but the other's.—Be without offence to the Jews, and to the Gentiles, and to the Church of God.—As I also in all things please all men, not seeking that which is profitable to myself, but to many, that they may be saved.
- [Give] no offence to any man, that our ministry be not blamed. *2 C* 6, 3
- From all appearance of evil refrain yourselves. *1 T* 5, 22
- I beseech you, brethren, to mark them who make dissensions and offences contrary to the doctrines which you have learnt, and to avoid them. *Ro* 16, 17
- Beware thou never join in friendship with the inhabitants of that land, which may be thy ruin. *Ex* 34, 12

**68.—PHARISEAN SCANDAL NOT TO BE HEHEDED.**

- Mt* 15, 12 His disciples came, and said to Him: Dost Thou know that the Pharisees, when they heard this word, were scandalised?
- Mt* 9, 11-12 The Pharisees said to His disciples: Why doth your Master eat with publicans and sinners? — But Jesus hearing it, said: They that are in health need not a Physician, but they that are ill.
- Mt* 12, 2-4 The Pharisees said to Him: Behold, Thy disciples do that which is not lawful on the Sabbath-days.—But He said to them: Have you not read what David did when he was hungry, and they that were with him?—How he entered into the House of God, and did eat the Loaves of Proposition, which it was not lawful for him to eat, nor for them that were with him, but for the Priests only?
- He answering said: Every plant which My Heavenly Father hath not planted shall be rooted up. *Mt* 15, 13
- Let them alone: they are blind, and leaders of the blind. And if the blind lead the blind, both fall into the pit. *Mt* 15, 14

**69.—THE GIFT OF WISDOM.**

- Jc* 31, 34 All shall know Me, from the least of them even to the greatest, saith the Lord.
- You shall know the Truth, and the Truth shall make you free. *Jc* 8, 32

<i>Eci</i> 1, 14	The love of God is honourable wisdom.	crooked things straight.	
<i>Eci</i> 1, 20	To fear God is the fulness of wisdom.	Examples of Wisdom:	
<i>Eci</i> 21, 13	The perfection of the fear of God is wisdom and understanding.	(1) Jesus Christ, the Eternal Wisdom.	<i>Po</i> 3, 19
<i>Jb</i> 28, 28	Behold, the fear of the Lord, that is wisdom: and to depart from evil is understanding.	(2) St. Stephen.	<i>Ac</i> 6, 10
<i>Eci</i> 1, 16	The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.	(3) St. Moses.	<i>Ac</i> 7, 22
<i>W</i> 6, 18	The beginning of her is the most true desire of discipline.	(4) St. Daniel.	<i>Da</i> 6, 3
<i>Lu</i> 21, 15	I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to resist and gainsay.	(5) St. Joseph the Patriarch.	<i>Ge</i> 41, 38
<i>Is</i> 42, 16	I will lead the blind into the way which they know not, and in the paths which they were ignorant of I will make them walk: I will make darkness light before them, and	(6) SS. Ananias, Missael, and Azarias.	<i>Da</i> 1, 20
		(7) The Magi.	<i>Mt</i> 2, 1
		(8) Solomon.	<i>3 K</i> 3, 16
		(9) Hobab the Madianite.	<i>Nu</i> 10, 31
		(10) Ethan and Heman.	<i>3 K</i> 4, 31
		(11) Chalcol and Dorda.	<i>3 K</i> 4, 31
		(12) Beseleel and Ooliab.	<i>Ex</i> 36, 1
		(13) The Sons of Issachar.	<i>1 P</i> 12, 32
		(14) Esdras.	<i>1 E</i> 7, 25
		(15) Zacharias.	<i>1 P</i> 26, 14
		(16) The Five Wise Virgins.	<i>Mt</i> 25, 2
		(17) The Wise Steward.	<i>Lu</i> 12, 42
		(18) The Wise Architect.	<i>1 C</i> 3, 10

## 70.—GOD THE AUTHOR OF WISDOM.

<i>Eci</i> 1, 5	The Word of God on High is the Fountain of Wisdom, and her ways are everlasting commandments.	The fear of the Lord is a crown of wisdom, filling up peace and the fruit of salvation;—But both are the gifts of God.	<i>Eci</i> 1, 22-23
<i>Eci</i> 24, 40-41	I Wisdom have poured out rivers.—I like a brook out of a river of a mighty water, I like a channel of a river, and like an aqueduct, came out of Paradise.	I hoped that greater age would speak, and that a multitude of years would teach wisdom. But, as I see, there is a spirit in men, and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth understanding.	<i>Jb</i> 32, 7-8
<i>W</i> 7, 15-16	God hath given to me to speak as I would, and to conceive thoughts worthy of those things that are given me: because He is the Guide of wisdom, and the Director of the wise;—For in His hand are both we, and our words, and all wisdom, and the knowledge and skill of works.	She is a vapour of the power of God, and a certain pure emanation of the glory of the Almighty God: and therefore no defiled thing cometh into her.	<i>W</i> 7, 25
		In [Him] are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.	<i>C</i> 2, 3

71.—QUALITIES AND CONDITIONS OF WISDOM.

- Ja* 3, 17 The wisdom, that is from above, first indeed is chaste, then peaceable, modest, easy to be persuaded, consenting to the good, full of mercy and good fruits, without judging, without dissimulation.
- W* 1, 6 The spirit of wisdom is benevolent.
- Jb* 28, 12 Where is wisdom to be found, and where is the place of understanding? — The depth saith: It is not in me; and the sea saith: It is not with me.
- Jb* 28, 20-22 Whence then cometh wisdom? and where is the place of understanding?—It is hid from the eyes of all living, and the fowls of the air know it not. — Destruction and death have said: With our ears we have heard the fame thereof.
- Eci* 24, 16 I took root in an honourable people, and in the portion of My God His inheritance, and My abode is in the full assembly of Saints.
- Eci* 6, 23 The wisdom of doctrine is according to her name, and she is not manifest unto many; but with them to whom she is known she continueth even to the sight of God.
- I Wisdom dwell in counsel, *Pv* 8, 12-17 and am present in learned thoughts.—The fear of the Lord hateth evil: I hate arrogance, and pride, and every wicked way, and a mouth with a double tongue. — Counsel and equity is Mine, prudence is Mine, strength is Mine.—By Me kings reign, and lawgivers decree just things.—I love them that love Me: and they that in the morning early watch for Me shall find Me.
- Blessed are they that keep *Pv* 8, 32-36 My ways.—Hear instruction and be wise, and refuse it not.—Blessed is the man that heareth Me, and that watcheth daily at My gates, and waiteth at the posts of My doors.—He that shall find Me shall find life, and shall have salvation from the Lord: — But he that shall sin against Me shall hurt his own soul. All that hate Me love death.

72.—HOW TO ACQUIRE WISDOM.

- Eci* 6, 18 My son, from thy youth up love them, and you shall have receive instruction, and even to thy gray hairs thou shalt find wisdom.
- Ecl* 51, 18-19 When I was yet young, before I wandered about, I sought for Wisdom openly in my prayer.—I prayed for her before the Temple, and unto the very end I will seek after her.
- W* 6, 12-14 Covet ye My words, and love them, and you shall have instruction.—Wisdom is glorious, and never fadeth away, and is easily seen by them that love her, and is found by them that seek her.—She preventeth them that covet her, so that she first sheweth herself unto them.
- She walketh with him in *Eci* 4, 18-temptation, and at the first 21 she chooseth him.—She will

bring upon him fear and dread and trial; and she will scourge him with the affliction of her discipline, till she try him by her laws and trust his soul.—Then she will strengthen him, and make a straight way to him, and give him joy;—And will disclose her secrets to him, and will heap upon him treasures of knowledge and understanding of justice.

*Eci* 51, 27 I directed my soul to her, and in knowledge I found her.

*W* 1, 4-5 Wisdom will not enter into a malicious soul, nor dwell in a body subject to sins.—For the Holy Spirit of discipline will flee from the deceitful, and will withdraw Himself from thoughts that are without understanding, and He shall not abide when iniquity cometh in.

*W* 7, 27 Through nations she conveyeth herself into holy souls.

*W* 7, 7 I wished, and understanding was given me; and I called upon God, and the Spirit of wisdom came upon me.

*W* 8, 21 As I knew that I could not otherwise be continent except God gave it (and this also was a point of wisdom to know whose gift it was), I went to the Lord, and besought Him, and [prayed for her] with my whole heart.

*Eci* 51, 26 I stretched forth my hands on high, and I bewailed my ignorance of her.

*Eci* 38, 1, 6-7 The wise man will seek out the wisdom of all the ancients, and will be occupied in the Prophets.—He will give his heart to resort early to the Lord that made him,

and he will pray in the sight of the Most High.—He will open his mouth in prayer, and will make supplication for his sins.

If thou shalt call for wisdom, and incline thy heart to prudence;—If thou shalt seek her as money, and shalt dig for her as for a treasure;—Then shalt thou understand the fear of the Lord, and shalt find the knowledge of God. *Pv* 2, 3-5

I have determined to follow her: I have had a zeal for good, and shall not be confounded.—My soul hath wrestled for her, and in doing it I have been confirmed. *Eci* 51, 24-25

The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom,—A good understanding to all that do it. *Pv* 110, 11, 10

Son, if thou desire Wisdom, keep justice, and God will give her to thee. *Eci* 1, 33

To the godly He hath given wisdom. *Eci* 43, 37

Let thy thoughts be upon the precepts of God, and meditate continually on His Commandments: and He will give thee a heart, and the desire of wisdom shall be given to thee. *Eci* 6, 37

He that feareth God will do good; and he that possesseth justice shall lay hold on her. *Eci* 15, 1

The wisdom of a scribe cometh by his time of leisure; and he that is less in action shall receive wisdom. *Eci* 38, 25

If any man will do the will of Him, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of Myself. *Jn* 7, 17

I will give them a heart to know Me, that I am the Lord. *Jn* 24, 7

73.—BLESSINGS OF WISDOM IN SOUL AND BODY.

- W* 7, 11 All good things came to me together with her, and innumerable riches through her hands. And I rejoiced in all these; for this Wisdom went before me, and I knew not that she was mother of them all.
- Eci* 4, 12, 14 Wisdom inspireth life into her children, and protecteth them that seek after her, and will go before them in the way of justice.—They that hold her fast shall inherit Life; and whithersoever she entereth, God will give a blessing.
- It is thy life. *Po* 4, 13  
If he trust to her, he shall inherit her. *Eci* 4, 17  
He shall set his children under her shelter, and shall lodge under her branches.—He shall be protected under her covering from the heat, and shall rest in her glory. *Eci* 14, 26-27  
By wisdom they were healed, whosoever have pleased Thee, O Lord, from the beginning. *W* 9, 19  
If thou be wise, thou shalt be so to thyself; and if a scorner, thou alone shalt bear the evil. *Po* 9, 12

74.—BLESSINGS OF WISDOM IN THE UNDERSTANDING AND THE WILL.

- Po* 28, 5 They that seek after the Lord take notice of all things.
- W* 8, 1 She reacheth from end to end mightily, and ordereth all things sweetly.
- Po* 2, 3, 9-12 If thou shalt call for wisdom, and incline thy heart to prudence, — Then shalt thou understand justice, and judgment, and equity, and every good path.—If wisdom shall enter into thy heart, and knowledge please thy soul, — Counsel shall keep thee, and prudence shall preserve thee;—That thou mayest be delivered from the evil way, and from the man that speaketh perverse things.
- Po* 35, 10 With Thee is the fountain of Life; and in Thy Light we shall see Light.
- Po* 111, 4 To the righteous a Light is risen up in darkness.
- Is* 58, 11 The Lord will fill thy soul with brightness, and deliver thy bones: and thou shalt be like a watered garden, and like a fountain of water whose waters shall not fail.
- To you it is given to know the mysteries of the Kingdom of Heaven. *Mat* 13, 11  
You have the unction from the Holy One, and know all things. *1 J* 2, 20  
I directed my soul to her, and in knowledge I found her:—I possessed my heart with her from the beginning; therefore I shall not be forsaken. *Eci* 51, 27-28  
With the bread of life and understanding she shall feed him, and give him the water of wholesome wisdom to drink; and she shall be made strong in him, and he shall not be moved.—And in the midst of the Church she shall open his mouth, and shall fill him with the Spirit of wisdom and understanding. *Ecl* 15, 3-5

- and shall clothe him with a robe of glory.
- W 8, 7* If a man love justice, her labours have great virtues; for she teacheth temperance, and prudence, and justice, and fortitude, which are such things as men can have nothing more profitable in life. Her light can't be put out. *W 7, 10*

**75.—WISDOM BESTOWS JOY, PEACE, AND STABILITY OF MIND.**

- W 8, 16* When I go into my house I shall repose myself with her; for her conversation hath no bitterness, nor her company any tediousness, but joy and gladness.
- Eci 6, 29* In the latter end thou shalt find rest in her, and she shall be turned to thy joy.
- Pv 3, 17-18* Her ways are beautiful ways, and all her paths are peaceable.—She is a Tree of Life to them that lay hold on her; and he that shall retain her is blessed.
- Eci 4, 13* He that loveth her loveth Life; and they that watch for her shall embrace her sweetness.
- Eci 15, 2* She will meet him as an honourable mother, and will receive him as a wife married of a virgin.
- Eci 4, 21* She will disclose her secrets to him, and will heap upon him treasures of knowledge and understanding of justice.
- There is great delight in her friendship. *W 8, 18*
- Let your soul rejoice in His mercy, and you shall not be confounded in His praise. *Eci 51, 37*
- I purposed to take her to me to live with me; knowing that she will communicate to me of her good things, and will be a comfort in my care and grief. *W 8, 9*
- She shall be made strong in him, and he shall not be moved:—And she shall hold him fast, and he shall not be confounded. *Eci 15, 3-4*
- I saw that wisdom excelled folly as much as light differeth from darkness. *Eci 2, 13*

**76.—WISDOM BRINGS HONOUR AND GLORY.**

- Eci 39, 12-14* Many shall praise his wisdom, and it shall never be forgotten.—The memory of him shall not depart away, and his name shall be in request from generation to generation.—Nations shall declare his wisdom, and the Church shall show forth his praise.
- Eci 10, 28* They that are free shall serve a servant that is wise.
- Pv 12, 8* A man shall be known by his learning: but he that is vain and foolish shall be exposed to contempt.
- A wise man shall be filled with blessings, and they that see shall praise him.—A wise man shall inherit honour among his people, and his name shall live for ever. *Eci 37, 27*
- They that serve her shall be servants to the Holy One: and God loveth them that love her.—He that hearkeneth to her shall judge nations: and he that looketh



- upon her shall remain secure.
- Eci* 15, 4-6 She shall exalt him among his neighbours,—And in the midst of the Church she shall open his mouth;—She shall heap upon him a treasure of joy and gladness, and shall cause him to inherit an everlasting name.
- She maketh the friends of God and Prophets.
- Wisdom conducted the just through the right ways, and showed him the Kingdom of God, and gave him the knowledge of the holy things, made him honourable in his labours, and accomplished his labours.
- W* 7, 27
- W* 10, 10

## 77.—WISDOM GIVES PROSPERITY.

- Pv* 8, 11 Wisdom is better than all the most precious things: and whatsoever may be desired cannot be compared to it.
- W* 7, 14 She is an infinite treasure to men.
- W* 8, 5 If riches be desired in life, what is richer than wisdom, which maketh all things?
- W* 8, 18 Inexhaustible riches is in the works of her hands.
- Pv* 24, 3-4 By wisdom the house shall be built, and by prudence it shall be strengthened.—By instruction the store-rooms shall be filled with all precious and most beautiful wealth.
- Receive ye discipline as a great sum of money, and possess abundance of gold by her.
- Eci* 51, 36
- With Me are riches and glory, glorious riches and justice, that I may enrich them that love Me, and may fill their treasures.
- Pv* 8, 18, 21
- Knowledge is a fountain of life to him that possesseth it.
- Pv* 16, 22
- The wise in heart shall be called prudent: and he that is sweet in words shall attain to greater things.
- Pv* 16, 21

## 78.—MISERY OF HIM WHO DESPISES WISDOM.

- W* 3, 11-13 He that rejecteth wisdom and discipline is unhappy; and their hope is vain, and their labours without fruit, and their works unprofitable.—Their wives are foolish and their children wicked; their offspring is cursed.
- W* 9, 6 If one be perfect among the children of men, yet if Thy wisdom be not with him, he shall be nothing regarded.
- Eccl* 1, 15 They to whom she shall show herself love her by the sight and by the knowledge of her great works.
- Is* 29, 14 Wisdom shall perish from their wise men, and the understanding of their prudent men shall be hid.
- fore upon her is perfect understanding: and he that watcheth for her shall quickly be secure;—For she goeth about seeking such as are worthy of her, and she sheweth herself to them cheerfully in the ways, and meeteth them with all providence.
- He that awaketh early to seek her shall not labour: for he shall find her sitting at his door.—To think there-

- Jb* 5, 13-14 He catcheth the wise in their craftiness, and disappointeth the counsel of the wicked. — They shall meet with darkness in the day, and grope at noonday as in the night.
- 1 *C* 3, 19 The wisdom of this world is foolishness with God; for it is written: I will catch the wise in their own craftiness.
- Eci* 21, 15 There is a wisdom that aboundeth in evils.
- Je* 8, 9 The wise men are confounded, they are dismayed and taken: for they have cast away the word of the Lord, and there is no wisdom in them.
- Professing themselves to be wise they became fools. — And they changed the glory of the Incorruptible God into the likeness of the image of a corruptible man.
- Thy wisdom and knowledge, this hath deceived thee. And thou hast said in thy heart: I am, and besides me there is no other.
- Beware lest any man cheat you by philosophy and vain deceit, according to the tradition of men, according to the elements of the world, and not according to Christ.

## 79.—BLISS OF HIM WHO SEEKS WISDOM.

- Eci* 9, 17 The words of the wise are heard in silence, more than the cry of a prince among fools.
- Eci* 37, 26 A wise man instructeth his own people, and the fruits of his understanding are faithful.
- Eci* 39, 8-9, 11 If it should please the Great Lord, He will fill him with the Spirit of understanding:—And he will pour forth the words of his wisdom as showers, and in his prayer he will confess to the Lord.—He shall show forth the discipline he hath learned, and shall glory in the law of the Covenant of the Lord.
- The multitude of the wise is the welfare of the whole world: and a wise king is the upholding of the people.
- Learning to the prudent is an ornament of gold, and like a bracelet upon his right arm.
- Blessed is the man whom Thou shalt instruct, O Lord: and shalt teach him out of Thy Law.

## 80.—THE WISE AND FOOLISH MAN CONTRASTED.

- Eci* 15, 7-8 Foolish men shall not obtain her, and wise men shall meet her; foolish men shall not see her, for she is far from pride and deceit.—Lying men shall not be mindful of her: but men that speak truth shall be found with her, and shall advance, even till they come to the sight of God.
- The wisdom of a discreet man is to understand his way: and the imprudence of fools erreth.
- Folly is joy to the fool: and the wise man maketh straight his steps.
- The prudent man saw the evil, and hid himself: the simple passed on, and suffered loss.

*Ecl* 2, 13-14 I saw that wisdom excelled folly as much as light differeth from darkness.—The eyes of a wise man are in his head: the fool walketh in darkness.

*Ro* 8, 6-7 The wisdom of the flesh is death: but the wisdom of the spirit is life and peace.—Because the wisdom of the flesh is an enemy to God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither can it be.

81.—EXHORTATIONS TO WISDOM.

*Dt* 32, 29 O that they would be wise and would understand, and would provide for their last end!

*Pv* 8, 4-5, 10-11 O ye men, to you I call, and My voice is to the sons of men.—O little ones, understand subtlety; and ye unwise, take notice.—Receive My instruction, and not money; choose knowledge rather than gold.—For wisdom is better than all the most precious things: and whatsoever may be desired cannot be compared to it.

*Pv* 9, 4-6 Whosoever is a little one, let him come to Me. And to the unwise she said:—Come, eat My bread, and drink the wine which I have mingled for you.—Forsake childishness, and live, and walk by the ways of prudence.

*Eci* 51, 31-34 Draw near to Me, ye unlearned, and gather yourselves together into the house of discipline.—Why are ye slow? and what do you say of these things? your souls are exceeding thirsty.—I have opened My mouth, and have spoken: buy her for yourselves without silver.—And submit your neck to the yoke, and let your soul receive discipline: for she is near at hand to be found.

*Pv* 7, 4-5 Say to Wisdom: Thou art my sister: and call Prudence thy friend:—That she may keep thee from the woman that is not thine, and from the stranger who sweeteneth her words.

Get wisdom, because it is better than gold: and purchase prudence, for it is more precious than silver.

Give ear, My son, and take wise counsel, and cast not away My advice.—Put thy feet into her fetters, and thy neck into her chains:—Then shall her fetters be a strong defence for thee, and a firm foundation, and her chain a robe of glory:—For in her is the beauty of life, and her bands are a healthful binding.—Thou shalt put her on as a robe of glory, and thou shalt set her upon thee as a crown of joy.

Buy truth, and do not sell wisdom, and instruction, and understanding.

You were heretofore darkness, but now light in the Lord. Walk ye as children of the Light.

Study wisdom, My son, and make My heart joyful, that thou mayst give an answer to him that reproacheth.

Come over to Me, all ye that desire Me, and be filled with My fruits:—For My Spirit is sweet above honey and the honeycomb.

*Pv* 16, 16

*Eci* 6, 24-25, 30-32

*Pv* 23, 23

*Ep* 5, 8

*Pv* 27, 11

*Eci* 24, 26-27

## 82.—CRIES OF THE SOUL SEEKING WISDOM.

- W 9, 4 O Lord, give me Wisdom, that sitteth by Thy Throne, and cast me not off from among Thy children. rejoice that it may fear Thy Name.  
Lead me in the Eternal P 138, 24 Way.
- W 9, 10 Send Wisdom out of Thy Holy Heaven, and from the Throne of Thy Majesty, that She may be with me, and may labour with me, that I may know what is acceptable with Thee. Cause me to hear Thy P 142, 8-11 mercy in the morning: for in Thee have I hoped. Make the way known to me wherein I should walk: for I have lifted up my soul to Thee.—Deliver me from my enemies, O Lord, to Thee have I fled:—Teach me to do Thy will, for Thou art my God. Thy Good Spirit shall lead me into the right Land:—For Thy Name's sake, O Lord, Thou wilt quicken me in Thy justice.
- W 9, 17-19 Who shall know Thy thought, O Lord, except Thou give Wisdom, and send Thy Holy Spirit from above:—And so the ways of them that are upon earth may be corrected, and men may learn the things that please Thee?—For by Wisdom they were healed, whosoever have pleased Thee, O Lord, from the beginning. O Lord, Father, and Sovereign Ruler of my life, Eci 23, 1-6 leave me not to the counsel of my lips, nor suffer me to fall by them.—Who will set scourges over my thoughts and the discipline of Wisdom over my heart, that they spare not in their ignorances, and that their sins may not appear:—Lest my ignorance increase, and my offences be multiplied, and my sins abound, and I fall before my adversaries, and my enemy rejoice over me?—O Lord, Father, and God of my life, leave me not to their devices.—Give me not haughtiness of my eyes, and turn away from me all coveting.—Take from me greediness, and let not the lusts of the flesh take hold of me, and give me not over to a shameless and foolish mind.
- P 5, 9 Conduct me, O Lord, in Thy justice because of my enemies: direct my way in Thy sight. Draw me: we will run after Ca 1, 3 Thee.
- P 24, 4 Show, O Lord, Thy ways to me, and teach me Thy paths. If I have erred, teach Thou Jb 34, 32 me.
- P 24, 5 Direct me in Thy Truth, and teach me: for Thou art God my Saviour, and on Thee I have waited all the day.
- P 38, 5 O Lord, make me know my end, and what is the number of my days, that I may know what is wanting to me.
- P 42, 3 Send forth Thy Light and Thy Truth. They have conducted me and brought me unto Thy Holy Hill and into Thy Tabernacle.
- P 85, 11 Conduct me, O Lord, in Thy way, and I will walk in Thy Truth: let my heart

## PART IV.

### PRUDENCE AND ITS CONTRARY VICES.

---

WE now treat of the Cardinal Virtues, Prudence, Justice, Fortitude, and Temperance, to which all the other Moral Virtues are reducible. S. Thomas shows\* that four wounds were inflicted on the soul by the sin of our first parents, viz. (1) ignorance in the reason, (2) malice in the will, (3) infirmity in the irascible, and (4) concupiscence in the concupiscible appetites. These four wounds, which are the root of all sins, are removed by the four Cardinal Virtues. Thus, (1) Prudence enables the reason to perceive what, in the particular circumstances, is most conformed to Right Reason; (2) Justice disposes the will to act fairly, and to render to every one his due; (3) Fortitude enables the irascible appetite to steer a middle course between excessive fear and rashness; (4) Temperance balances the concupiscible appetite between the immoderate pursuit of pleasure and insensibility with respect to pleasure.

All the Moral Virtues have as their aim conformity to right reason, but "it belongs to *Prudence* to decide in what way, and by what means, man may in his conduct attain the golden mean of reason."† Hence Prudence is the measure and rule of the other Moral Virtues.

---

\* Sum. Theol. p.s. q. 85. a. 3.

† Ibid. sec. sec. q. 47. a. 7.

The functions of Prudence are (1) to seek out the means and circumstances necessary for the virtuous performance of an action; (2) to decide upon the fitness of the means and circumstances which present themselves; (3) to command the Moral Virtues to employ the suitable means and observe the suitable circumstances discovered.

### 1.—TRUE PRUDENCE COMMENDED.

- Mt* 7, 6 Give not that which is holy to dogs: neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest perhaps they trample them under their feet, and turning upon you, tear you.
- Mt* 10, 16 Be ye wise as serpents and simple as doves.
- Cl* 4, 5 Walk with wisdom towards them that are without, redeeming the time.
- Ro* 16, 19 I would have you to be wise in good and simple in evil.
- Eci* 7, 15 In the good day enjoy good things, and beware beforehand of the evil day.
- Let not our good be evil *Ro* 14, 16 spoken of.
- Be prudent, and watch in 1 *Pt* 4, 7 prayers.
- The wise in heart shall be *Pv* 16, 21 called prudent.
- The ear trieth words, and *Jb* 34, 3 the mouth discerneth meats by the taste.
- Let us choose to us judgment, and let us see among ourselves what is the best. *Jb* 34, 4
- He shall order his words *Pz* 111, 5 with judgment.

### 2.—FRUITS AND EFFECTS OF TRUE PRUDENCE.

- Pv* 16, 20 The learned in word shall find good things, and he that trusteth in the Lord is blessed.
- Pv* 14, 16 A wise man feareth, and declineth from evil: the fool leapeth over and is confident.
- Pv* 18, 16 A man's gift enlargeth his way, and maketh him room before princes.
- Pv* 22, 3 The prudent man saw the evil, and hid himself: the simple passed on, and suffered loss.
- A net is spread in vain before the eyes of them that have wings. *Pv* 1, 17
- As the faces of them that look therein shine in the water, so the hearts of men are laid open to the wise. *Pv* 27, 19
- (See *Wisdom*, sec. 72.)

### 3.—HUMAN PRUDENCE UNCERTAIN AND DECEITFUL.

- W* 9, 14 The thoughts of mortal men are fearful, and our counsels uncertain.
- There is a way which seemeth just to a man, but the ends thereof lead to death. *Pv* 14, 12

- Pr* 28, 26 He that trusteth in his own heart is a fool: but he that walketh wisely, he shall be saved.
- Pr* 3, 5-7 Have confidence in the Lord with all thy heart, and lean not upon thy own prudence. — In all thy ways think on Him, and He will direct thy steps. — Be not wise in thy own conceit: fear God, and depart from evil.
- Ro* 12, 16 Be not wise in your own conceits.
- Is* 5, 21 Wo to you that are wise in your own eyes, and prudent in your own conceits!

#### 4.—PRUDENCE OF THE WICKED CONDEMNED.

- Eci* 19, 19 The learning of wickedness is not wisdom: and the device of sinners is not prudence.
- Pr* 29, 11 A fool uttereth all his mind: a wise man deferreth, and keepeth it till afterwards.
- Ecl* 10, 1 Dying flies spoil the sweetness of the ointment.
- Eci* 19, 20-21 There is a subtle wickedness, and the same is detestable: and there is a man that is foolish, wanting in wisdom. — Better is a man that hath less wisdom, and wanteth understanding, with the fear of God, than he that aboundeth in understanding, and transgresseth the law of the Most High.
- Je* 4, 22 My foolish people have not known Me: they are foolish and senseless children: they are wise to do evils, but to do good they have no knowledge.
- 1 C* 8, 1 Knowledge puffeth up.
- 1 C* 3, 19-20 The wisdom of this world is foolishness with God. For it is written: I will catch the wise in their own craftiness. — And again: The Lord knoweth the thoughts of the wise, that they are vain.
- It is written: I will destroy the wisdom of the wise, and the prudence of the prudent I will reject. — Where is the wise? Where is the Scribe? Where is the disputer of this world? Hath not God made foolish the wisdom of this world?
- They that are according to the flesh mind the things that are of the flesh: but they that are according to the Spirit mind the things that are of the Spirit. — For the wisdom of the flesh is death: but the wisdom of the Spirit is life and peace. — Because the wisdom of the flesh is an enemy to God: for it is not subject to the Law of God, neither can it be. — And they who are in the flesh cannot please God.
- Thou hast trusted in thy wickedness, and hast said: There is none that seeth me. Thy wisdom and thy knowledge, this hath deceived thee. — Evil shall come upon thee, and thou shalt not know the rising thereof.
- Ro* 8, 5-8 They that are according to the flesh mind the things that are of the flesh: but they that are according to the Spirit mind the things that are of the Spirit. — For the wisdom of the flesh is death: but the wisdom of the Spirit is life and peace. — Because the wisdom of the flesh is an enemy to God: for it is not subject to the Law of God, neither can it be. — And they who are in the flesh cannot please God.
- Is* 47, 10-11 Thou hast trusted in thy wickedness, and hast said: There is none that seeth me. Thy wisdom and thy knowledge, this hath deceived thee. — Evil shall come upon thee, and thou shalt not know the rising thereof.

#### 5.—EXAMPLES OF PRUDENCE.

- 1 K* 18, 14-15 David behaved wisely in all his ways, and the Lord was with him. — And Saul saw that he was exceeding

- prudent, and began to be-  
ware of him.
- 1 K 18, 30 From the beginning of  
their going forth, David be-  
haved himself more wisely  
than all the servants of Saul,  
and his name became very  
famous.
- 2 M 14, 21-22 So they [Judas and Ni-  
canor] appointed a day upon  
which they might commune  
together by themselves: and  
seats were brought out, and  
set for each one.—But Judas  
ordered men to be ready in  
convenient places, lest some  
mischief might be suddenly  
practised by the enemies: so  
they made an agreeable con-  
ference.
- Lu 2, 47 All that heard Him were  
astonished at His wisdom  
and His answers.
- Lu 16, 8 The Lord commended the
- unjust steward, forasmuch  
as he had done wisely; for  
the children of this world  
are wiser in their generation  
than the children of Light.  
Other examples of pru-  
dence :
- (1) Our Lord. *Mt 22, 43*
  - (2) St. Paul. *Ac 23, 6*
  - (3) St. Joseph the Pa-  
triarch. *Ge 41, 33*
  - (4) St. David. *1 K 17, 39*
  - (5) Gamaliel. *Ac 5, 34*
  - (6) Jacob. *Ge 32, 7*
  - (7) Jethro. *Ex 18, 18*
  - (8) Abigail. *1 K 25, 18*
  - (9) Achis. *1 K 28, 9*
  - (10) Joram. *4 K 7, 12*
  - (11) Nehemias. *2 E 2, 12*
  - (12) Roboam's Counsel-  
lors. *3 K 12, 7*
  - (13) The Town Clerks at  
Ephesus. *Ac 19, 36*
  - (14) The wise Builder. *Mt 7, 24*

#### 6.—EJACULATORY PRAYERS FOR PRUDENCE.

- Ps 42, 3* Send forth Thy light and  
Thy truth: they have con-  
ducted me, and brought me  
unto Thy Holy Hill, and into  
Thy Tabernacles.
- Ps 118, 37* Turn away my eyes, that  
they may not behold vanity:  
quicken me in Thy way.
- Ps 17, 29* Thou lightest my lamp, O  
Lord: O my God, enlighten  
my darkness.
- Ps 24, 5* Direct Me in Thy truth,
- and teach me: for Thou art  
God my Saviour, and on  
Thee have I waited all the  
day long.
- Set a door about my lips. *Ps 140, 3*  
Prove me, O God, and  
know my heart: examine  
me, and know my paths.—  
And see if there be in me  
the way of iniquity: and  
lead me in the Eternal  
Way.

#### 7.—THE OFFICE OF PRUDENCE TO CONSULT, TO JUDGE, AND TO EXECUTE RIGHTLY. CAUSES AND EFFECTS OF COUNSEL.

- Pv 8, 12, 14* I Wisdom dwell in counsel,  
and am present in learned  
thoughts.—Counsel and equi-  
ty is Mine, prudence is Mine.
- Ecc 37, 22, 25* A skilful man hath taught  
many, and is sweet to his
- own soul. — There is a wise  
man that is wise to his own  
soul: and the fruit of his  
understanding is commend-  
able.
- The way of a fool is right *Pv 12, 15*



in his own eyes: but he that is wise hearkeneth unto counsels.

declineth from evil: the fool leapeth over and is confident.

*Pv 13, 10,* They that do all things with counsel are ruled by wisdom.—The prudent man doth all things with counsel: but he that is a fool layeth open his folly.

The childish shall possess folly, and the prudent shall look for knowledge. *Pv 14, 18*

In all thy works let the true word go before thee, and steady counsel before every action. *Eci 37, 20*

*Pv 15, 22* Designs are brought to nothing where there is no counsel: but where there are many counsellors they are established.

There is safety where there is much counsel. *Pv 11, 14*

*Eci 32, 24* My son, do thou nothing without counsel, and thou shalt not repent when thou hast done.

Gold and silver make the feet stand sure: but wise counsel is above them both. *Eci 40, 25*

*Pv 14, 16* A wise man feareth and

Ointment and perfumes rejoyce the heart: and the good counsels of a friend are sweet to the soul. *Pv 27, 9*

#### 8.—COUNSEL TO BE ASKED, AND FROM WHOM.

*Eci 21, 16* The knowledge of a wise man shall abound like a flood, and his counsel continueth like a fountain of life.

Seek counsel always of a wise man. *Jb 4, 19*

*Eci 37, 15-16* Be continually with a holy man, whomsoever thou shalt know to observe the fear of God.—Whose soul is according to thy own soul: and who, when thou shalt stumble in the dark, will be sorry for thee.

Establish within thyself a heart of good counsel: for there is no other thing of more worth to thee than it. *Eci 37, 17-18*

—The soul of a holy man discovereth sometimes true things, more than seven watchmen that sit in a high place to watch.

*Eci 9, 21* According to thy power beware of thy neighbour, and treat with the wise and prudent.

Above all these things pray to the Most High, that He may direct thy way in truth.—A wise man instructeth his own people. *Eci 37, 19, 26*

#### 9.—TO SEEK COUNSEL FROM MANY USELESS AND HURTFUL.

*Eci 37, 7-11* Consult not with him that layeth a snare for thee, and hide thy counsel from them that envy thee.—Every counsellor giveth out counsel, but there is one that is a counsellor for himself.—Beware of a counsellor, and

know before what need he hath: for he will devise to his own mind.—Lest he thrust a stake into the ground and say to thee:—Thy way is good: and then stand on the other side to see what shall befall thee.

- Eci* 8, 20-22 Advise not with fools, for they cannot love but such things as please them.—Before a stranger do no matter of counsel, for thou knowest not what he will bring forth.—Open not thy heart to every man: lest he repay thee with an evil turn, and speak reproachfully to thee.
- Eci* 6, 6 Be in peace with many, but let one of a thousand be thy counsellor.
- Is* 59, 5-6 They have broken the eggs of asps, and have woven the webs of spiders: he that shall eat of their eggs shall die; and that which is brought out shall be hatched into a basilisk.—Their webs shall not be for clothing, neither shall they cover themselves with their works: their works are unprofitable works, and the work of iniquity is in their hands.
- A wicked word shall change the heart out of which four manner of things arise: good and evil, life and death.
- The counsels of the wicked are deceitful.
- My son, if sinners shall entice thee, consent not to them.
- He that deceiveth the just in a wicked way shall fall in his destruction: and the upright shall possess his goods.
- Eci* 37, 21
- Pv* 12, 5
- Pv* 1, 10
- Pv* 28, 10

### 10.—THE COUNSEL OF THE WICKED SHALL PERISH.

- Is* 5, 12-14 He bringeth to naught the designs of the malignant, so that their hands cannot accomplish what they had begun:—He catcheth the wise in their craftiness, and disappointeth the counsel of the wicked:—They shall meet with darkness in the day, and grope at noonday as in the night.
- Is* 19, 13-14 The princes of Tanis are become fools, the princes of Memphis are gone astray, they have deceived Egypt, the stay of the people thereof.—The Lord hath mingled in the midst thereof the spirit of giddiness: and they have caused Egypt to err in all its works, as a drunken man staggereth and vomiteth.
- Is* 7, 7 Thus saith the Lord God: It shall not stand, and this shall not be.
- The spirit of Egypt shall be broken in the bowels thereof, and I will cast down their counsel: and they shall consult their idols, and their diviners, and their wizards, and soothsayers.
- Gather yourselves together, O ye people; and be overcome, and give ear, all ye lands afar off: strengthen yourselves and be overcome, gird yourselves and be overcome.—Take counsel together, and it shall be defeated: speak a word, and it shall not be done: because God is with us.
- There is no wisdom, there is no prudence, there is no counsel against the Lord.
- Behold, I will bring evils upon them, which they shall not be able to escape: and they shall cry to Me, and I will not hearken to them.
- Is* 19, 3
- Is* 8, 9-10
- Pv* 21, 30
- Is* 11, 11

## 11.—THE WORD OF GOD SHALL ABIDE FOR EVER.

- Is* 14, 24, The Lord of Hosts hath all My will shall be done.  
 26-27 sworn, saying: Surely as I I say to you, refrain from *Ac* 5, 38-39  
 have thought, so shall it be: these men, and let them  
 and as I have purposed.— alone: for if this counsel or  
 This is the counsel that I this work be of men, it will  
 have purposed upon all the come to naught.—But if it  
 earth, and this is the hand be of God, you cannot over-  
 that is stretched out upon all throw it: lest perhaps you  
 nations. — For the Lord of be found to fight against God.  
 Hosts hath decreed, and who And they consented to him.  
 can disannul it? and His The Lord bringeth to *P* 32, 10-11  
 hand is stretched out, and naught the counsels of na-  
 who shall turn it away? tions; and He doeth the  
*Is* 43, 13 From the beginning I am decrees of people, and casteth  
 the same, and there is none away the counsels of princes.  
 that can deliver out of My —But the counsel of the  
 hand: I will work, and who Lord standeth for ever: the  
 shall turn it away? thoughts of His heart to all  
*Is* 46, 10 My counsel shall stand, and generations.

## 12.—GOD AND HIS PRIESTS THE COUNSELLORS OF MEN.

- Nu* 27, 21 If anything be to be done, and worshipped the king:  
 Eleazar the Priest shall con- and he was soothed by their  
 sult the Lord for him services, and hearkened to  
 [Josue]. He and all the them.—And they forsook the  
 children of Israel with him Temple of the Lord the God  
 and the rest of the multitude, of their fathers.  
 shall go out and go in at his word. Go not up, for the Lord is *Nu* 14, 42-45  
 not with you, lest you fall  
*1 K* 8, 18- You shall cry out in that before your enemies.—The  
 20 day from the face of the Amalecite and the Chanaan-  
 king, whom you have chosen ite are before you, and by  
 to yourselves: and the Lord their sword you shall fall,  
 will not hear you in that day, because you would not con-  
 because you desired unto sent to the Lord, neither  
 yourselves a king.—But the will the Lord be with you.—  
 people would not hear the But they being blinded went  
 voice of Samuel, and they up to the top of the moun-  
 said: Nay, but there shall tain. — And the Amalecite  
 be a king over us.—And we came down, and the Chanaan-  
 also will be like all nations: ite that dwelt in the moun-  
 and our king shall judge us, tain: and smiting and slay-  
 and go out before us, and ing them, pursued them as  
 fight our battles for us. far as Horma.  
*2 P* 24, 17- After the death of Joiada He [Roboam] left the *3 K* 12, 8  
 18 the princes of Juda went in, counsel of the old men, which

they had given him, and consulted with the young men, that had been brought up with him, and stood before him.

*Da* 4, 24 Let my counsel, O King, offences.

### 13.—FRUITS OF IMPRUDENCE AND FOLLY.

- Eci* 10, 3 An unwise king shall be the ruin of his people: and cities shall be inhabited through the prudence of the rulers.
- Pv* 29, 11 A fool uttereth all his mind: a wise man deferreth and keepeth it till afterwards.
- Ecl* 10, 15 The labour of fools shall afflict them that know not how to go to the city.
- Pv* 30, 21-22 By three things the earth is disturbed: and the fourth it cannot bear:—By a slave when he reigneth: by a fool when he is filled with meat.
- Eci* 22, 17-18 What is heavier than lead? and what other name hath he but fool?—Sand and salt and a mass of iron is easier to bear than a man without sense, that is both foolish and wicked.
- Pv* 18, 13 He that answereth before he heareth sheweth himself to be a fool, and worthy of confusion.
- Pv* 17, 28 Even a fool, if he will hold his peace, shall be counted wise: and if he close his lips, a man of understanding.
- Pv* 26, 4-5 Answer not a fool according to his folly, lest thou be made like him.—Answer a fool according to his folly, lest he imagine himself to be wise.
- Pv* 26, 10 Judgment determineth causes: and he that putteth a fool to silence appeaseth anger.
- He that teacheth a fool is like one that glueth a potsherd together.—He that telleth a word to him that heareth not is like one that waketh a man out of a deep sleep.—He speaketh with one that is asleep who uttereth wisdom to a fool: and in the end of the discourse he saith: Who is this?
- I have seen those who work iniquity and sow sorrows reap the same.
- The Gentiles have stuck fast in the destruction which they prepared: their foot hath been taken in the very snare which they hid.
- They shall sow wind and reap the whirlwind.
- Every man that shall eat the sour grape, his teeth shall be set on edge.
- He will render them their iniquity: and in their malice He will destroy them.
- The wicked shall fall in his net.
- They shall eat the fruit of their own way, and shall be filled with their own devices.
- The promotion of fools is disgrace.
- His own iniquities catch the wicked, and he is fast bound with the ropes of his own sins.
- He shall die, because he hath not received instruction, and in the multitude of his folly he shall be deceived.

## PART V.

### JUSTICE AND THE CONTRARY VICES.

---

JUSTICE is a "Moral Virtue which inclines the will to *constantly* and *perpetually* render to each one his due." The words *constantly* and *perpetually* are employed in the definition to distinguish the habit of Justice, which like all habits is a "permanent disposition," from a mere passing impulse in the direction of Justice. Justice differs from the other Moral Virtues in this: that whereas they regulate man *in himself*, Justice regulates man in his *relations with others*. Consequently the matter on which Justice exercises itself is not the *passions*, but *exterior actions and things*.<sup>\*</sup> Justice may, indeed, exercise an *indirect* and *accidental* influence on the passions. Thus if Justice finds that its inclination to render to each one his due is opposed by the passions (by the passion, *e.g.*, of avarice), it will call upon the appropriate virtues to bestir themselves, and to overcome the passions. But the influence which Justice here exercises is indirect and mediate. Justice ranks higher than either Fortitude or Temperance, because (1) the latter reside in the *passions*, whereas Justice resides in a *nobler* subject, the *will*; (2) the latter conduce to the good of the virtuous man alone, but Justice conduces to the good of others also.<sup>†</sup>

The potential parts of Justice or the virtues reducible to Justice are of two classes. Justice *renders* to every one his *due*. Consequently when debt, *properly so called*,

---

<sup>\*</sup> Sum. Theol. sec. sec. q. 58. a. 9.

<sup>†</sup> Ibid. q. 58. a. 12.



care of them with the Most High. — Therefore shall they receive a kingdom of glory and a crown of beauty at the hand of the Lord: for with His right hand He will cover them, and with His holy arm He will defend them.

2 *Ty* 4, 8 As to the rest, there is laid up for me a crown of justice, which the Lord the just Judge will render to me in that day: and not only to me, but to them also that love His coming.

*Pv* 21, 21 He that followeth justice and mercy shall find life, justice, and glory.

*Pv* 28, 1 The wicked man fleeth when no man pursueth: but the just, bold as a lion, shall be without dread.

*Pv* 15, 5-6 In abundant justice there is the greatest strength: but the devices of the wicked

shall be rooted out. — The house of the just is very much strength: and in the fruits of the wicked is trouble.

The just shall be in everlasting remembrance: he shall not fear the evil hearing. *Ps* 111, 7

I will show thee, O man, what the Lord requireth of thee: verily to do judgment, and to love mercy, and to walk solicitous with thy God. *Mt* 6, 8

As you would that men should do to you, do you also to them in like manner. *Lu* 6, 31

The eyes of the Lord are upon the just, and His ears unto their prayers. — The just cried, and the Lord heard them, and delivered them out of all their troubles. *Ps* 33, 16, 18

Keep ye judgment and do justice. *Is* 56, 1

## 2.—CONTRASTS BETWEEN THE JUST AND THE UNJUST.

*Pv* 10, 6-9, The blessing of the Lord is upon the head of the just: but iniquity covereth the mouth of the wicked. — The memory of the just is with praises: and the name of the wicked shall rot. — The wise of heart receiveth precepts: a fool is beaten with lips. — He that walketh sincerely walketh confidently: but he that perverteth his ways shall be manifest. — The mouth of the just is a vein of life: and the mouth of the wicked covereth iniquity.

*Pv* 11, 10-11, 23 When it goeth well with the just the city shall rejoice; and when the wicked perish there shall be praise. — By

the blessing of the just the city shall be exalted: and by the mouth of the wicked it shall be overthrown. — The desire of the just is all good: the expectation of the wicked is indignation.

Man shall not be strengthened by wickedness, and the root of the just shall not be moved. — The thoughts of the just are judgments, and the counsels of the wicked are deceitful. — The words of the wicked lie in wait for blood: the mouth of the just shall deliver them. — Turn the wicked, and they shall not be: but the house of the just shall stand firm. *Pv* 12, 3, 5-7

- Pv* 13, 9, 25 The light of the just giveth joy, but the lamp of the wicked shall be put out.— The just eateth and filleth his soul: but the belly of the wicked is never to be filled.
- Pv* 14, 11 The house of the wicked shall be destroyed: but the tabernacles of the just shall flourish.
- 'The Lord is far from the wicked: and He will hear the prayers of the just.
- To do mercy and judgment pleaseth the Lord more than victims. *Pv* 15, 29 *Pv* 21, 3

### 3.—ALL SINS OF INJUSTICE FORBIDDEN BY GOD.

- Le* 19, 35 Do not any unjust thing in judgment, in rule, in weight, or in measure.
- Dt* 25, 13-16 Thou shalt not have divers weights in thy bag, a greater and a less: — Neither shall there be in thy house a greater bushel and a less. — Thou shalt have a just and a true weight, and thy bushel shall be equal and true: that thou mayst live a long time upon the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee. — For the Lord thy God abhorreth him that doth these things, and He hateth all injustice.
- Le* 19, 13 Thou shalt not calumniate thy neighbour, nor oppress him by violence. The wages of him that hath been hired by thee shall not abide with thee until the morning.
- It is no good thing to do hurt to the just.
- Be not pleased with the wrong done by the unjust, knowing that even to hell the wicked shall not please.
- Cursed be he that removeth his neighbour's landmarks: and all the people shall say: Amen.
- Oppress not the widow, and the fatherless, and the stranger, and the poor; and let not a man devise evil in his heart against his brother.
- Pv* 17, 26 *Ecl* 9, 17 *Dt* 27, 17 *Za* 7, 10

### 4.—INJUSTICE JUDGED AND PUNISHED BY GOD.

- Ecl* 5, 7-8 If thou shalt see the oppressions of the poor, and violent judgments, and justice perverted in the province, wonder not at this matter: for he that is high hath another higher, and there are others still higher than these. — Moreover there is the king, that reigneth over all the land subject to him.
- Is* 9, 5 Every violent taking of spoils, with tumult, and garment mingled with blood, shall be burnt, and be fuel for the fire.
- Is* 15, 34 Fire shall devour their tabernacles who love to take bribes.
- A kingdom is translated from one people to another, because of injustices, and wrongs, and injuries, and divers deceits.
- He that buildeth his house at other men's charges is as he that gathereth himself stones to build in the winter.
- If thou do well, shalt thou not receive? but if ill, shall not sin forthwith be present at the door?
- I am the Lord, Who search the heart and prove the
- Ecl* 10, 8 *Ecl* 21, 9 *Ge* 4, 7 *Is* 17, 10



- reins : Who give to every one according to his way, and according to the fruit of his devices.
- Je 32, 18* Thine eyes are open upon all the ways of the children of Adam, to render unto every one according to his ways, and according to the fruit of his devices.
- Ez 7, 3* I will judge thee according to thy ways : and I will set all thy abominations against thee.
- Wo to thee that spoilest ! shalt not thou be spoiled ? and thou that despiseth, shalt not thyself also be despised ? When thou shalt have made an end of spoiling, thou shalt be spoiled : when, being wearied, thou shalt cease to despise, thou shalt be despised.
- They shall serve them four hundred years. But I will judge the nation which they shall serve.
- Is 33, 1*
- Ge 15, 13-14*

5.—INJUSTICE OF JUDGES AND MAGISTRATES  
ESPECIALLY VISITED BY GOD'S JUSTICE.

- Is 1, 23-24* Thy princes are faithless, companions of thieves : they all love bribes, they run after rewards. — They judge not for the fatherless : and the widow's cause cometh not in to them. — Therefore saith the Lord the God of Hosts, the Mighty One of Israel : Ah ! I will comfort Myself over My adversaries ; and I will be revenged of My enemies.
- Is 5, 23-24* Wo to you that justify the wicked for gifts, and take away the justice of the just from him ! — Therefore as the tongue of the fire devoureth the stubble, and the heat of the flame consumeth it, so shall their root be as ashes, and their bud shall go up as dust ; for they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and have blasphemed the Word of the Holy One of Israel.
- Is 10, 1-3* Wo to them that make wicked laws, and when they write, write injustice ! — To oppress the poor in judgment, and do violence to the cause of the humble of My people, that widows might be their prey, and that they might rob the fatherless. — What will you do in the day of visitation, and of the calamity which cometh from afar ? To whom will ye flee for help ? and where will ye leave your glory ?
- The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of His people, and its princes ; for you have devoured the vineyard, and the spoil of the poor is in your house. — Why do you consume My people, and grind the faces of the poor ? saith the Lord the God of Hosts.
- Indeed the lying pen of the scribes hath wrought falsehood.
- O thou that art grown old in evil days, now are thy sins come out, which thou hast committed before : — The judging unjust judgments, oppressing the innocent, and letting the guilty to go free ; whereas the Lord saith : The innocent and the just thou shalt not kill.
- Is 3, 14-15*
- Je 8, 8*
- Da 13, 62-63*

### 6.—UNJUST CONDUCT IN JUDGMENTS AND IN TAKING BRIBES.

- Am* 5, 7-8 You that turn judgment into wormwood, and forsake justice in the land,—Seek Him that turneth darkness into morning. *Dt* 16, 19 Thou shalt not accept person nor gifts; for gifts blind the eyes of the wise, and change the words of the just.
- Am* 6, 13 Can horses run upon the rocks, or can any one plough with buffles? for you have turned judgment into bitterness, and the fruit of justice into wormwood. *Pv* 17, 22 The wicked man taketh gifts out of the bosom, that he may pervert the paths of judgment.
- Pv* 81, 2-4 How long will you judge unjustly, and accept the persons of the wicked?—Judge for the needy and fatherless: do justice to the humble and the poor.—Rescue the poor, and deliver the needy out of the hand of the sinner. *He* that hath respect to a person in judgment doth not well. Such a man even for a morsel of bread forsaketh the truth.
- Examples of Bribery:
- (1) The Chief Priests bribe Judas to deliver up Jesus to death. *Mt* 26, 15
  - (2) They bribe the soldiers at the Holy Sepulchre. *Mt* 28, 12
  - (3) Felix seeks to bribe St. Paul. *Ac* 24, 26
  - (4) Joeld and Abia, Judges of Israel, bribe the people. *1 K* 8, 3
  - (5) Aman bribes Assuerus. *Es* 3, 9
- Am* 2, 6-7 For three crimes of Israel, and for four, I will not convert him, because he hath sold the just man for silver, and the poor man for a pair of shoes.—They bruise the heads of the poor upon the dust of the earth, and turn aside the way of the humble to profane My Holy Name.

### 7.—PUNISHMENT OF UNJUST JUDGES.

- Dt* 27, 19 Cursed be he that perverteth the judgment of the stranger, of the fatherless, and the widow; and all the people shall say: Amen. *transgressed My words. They have not judged the cause of the widow; they have not managed the cause of the fatherless; and they have not judged the judgment of the poor.—Shall I not visit for these things? saith the Lord; or shall not My Soul take revenge on such a nation?*
- Is* 5, 26-29 Among My people are found wicked men, that lie in wait as fowlers, setting snares and traps to catch men.—As a net is full of birds, so their houses are full of deceit: therefore are they become great and enriched.—They are grown gross and fat, and have most wickedly Judge ye judgment in the morning, and deliver him that is oppressed by violence out of the hand of the oppressor: lest My indignation

go forth like a fire, and be kindled, and there be none to quench it, because of the evil of your ways.

*Pv 24, 24* They that say to the wicked man: Thou art just, shall be cursed by the people, and the tribes shall abhor them.

*Pv 17, 5* He that justifieth the wicked, and he that condemneth the just, both are abominable before God.

*W 6, 3-9* Give ear, you that rule the people, and that please yourselves in multitudes of nations.—For power is given you by the Lord, and strength by the Most High, Who will examine your works, and search out your thoughts.—Because being ministers of His Kingdom you have not judged rightly, nor kept the law of justice, nor walked according to the Will of God,—Horribly and speedily will He appear to you; for a most severe judgment shall be for them that bear rule.—For to him that is little, mercy is granted, but the mighty shall be mightily tormented.—For

God will not except any man's person, neither will He stand in awe of any man's greatness: for He made the little and the great, and He hath equally care of all.—But a greater punishment is ready for the more mighty.

Thus saith the Lord: You *Is 34, 17* have not hearkened to Me, in proclaiming liberty every man to his neighbour and every man to his friend. Behold, I proclaim a liberty for you, saith the Lord, to the sword, to the pestilence, and to the famine; and I will cause you to be removed to all the kingdoms of the earth.

To crush under his feet all *La 3, 34-38* the prisoners of the land;—To turn aside the judgment of a man before the face of the Most High;—To destroy a man wrongfully in his judgment, the Lord hath not approved.—Who is he that commanded a thing to be done when the Lord commandeth it not?—Shall not both evil and good proceed out of the mouth of the Highest?

### 8.—VIRTUES NECESSARY FOR A JUDGE.

*Is 11, 3-5* He shall not judge according to the sight of the eyes, nor reprove according to the hearing of the ears:—But He shall judge the poor with justice, and shall reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and He shall strike the earth with the rod of His mouth, and with the breath of His lips He shall slay the wicked:—And justice shall be the girdle of His loins, and faith the girdle of His reins.

He shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.—He shall not cry, nor have respect to persons, neither shall His voice be heard abroad.—The bruised reed He shall not break, and smoking flax He shall not quench: He shall bring forth judgment unto truth.—He shall not be sad nor troublesome till He set judgment in the earth; and the islands shall wait for His law.

Provide out of all the peo *Ex 18, 21*

- ple able men, such as fear God, in whom there is truth, and that hate avarice, and appoint of them rulers of thousands, and of hundreds, and of fifties, and of tens.
- Job* 29, 14-17 I was clad with justice; and I clothed myself with my judgment, as with a robe and a diadem.—I was an eye to the blind, and a foot to the lame.—I was the father of the poor, and the cause which I knew not I searched out most diligently.—I broke the jaws of the wicked man, and out of his teeth I took away the prey.
- Psa* 100, 8 In the morning I put to death all the wicked of the land, that I might cut off all the workers of iniquity from the City of the Lord.
- 3 K* 3, 12 I have given thee a wise and understanding heart, inasmuch that there hath been no one like thee before thee, nor shall arise after thee.
- W* 12, 18 Thou, being master of power, judgest with tranquillity, and with great favour disposest of us; for Thy power is at hand when Thou wilt.
- Then [there were] all the *Eci* 46, 13-14 judges, every one by name, whose heart was not corrupted:—Who turned not away from the Lord, that their memory might be blessed.
- The just taketh notice of the cause of the poor: the wicked is void of knowledge. *Psa* 29, 7
- O ye kings, understand; receive instruction, you that judge the earth.—Serve ye the Lord with fear, and rejoice unto Him with trembling.—Embrace discipline, lest at any time the Lord be angry, and you perish from the just way. *Psa* 2, 10-12
- Let the king provide a wise and industrious man, and make him ruler over the land of Egypt. *Ge* 41, 33
- Love justice, you that are judges of the earth. Think of the Lord in goodness, and seek Him in simplicity of heart. *W* 1, 1

### 9.—JUDICIAL ACTS TO BE CAREFULLY CARRIED OUT.

- Psa* 24, 11-12 Deliver them that are led to death; and those that are drawn to death forbear not to deliver.—If thou say: I have not strength enough, He that seeth into the heart He understandeth, and nothing deceiveth the Keeper of thy soul; and He shall render to a man according to his works.
- Je* 21, 12 Judge ye judgment in the morning.
- Dt* 17, 8 If thou perceive that there be among you a hard and doubtful matter in judgment between blood and blood, cause and cause, leprosy and leprosy, and thou see that the words of the judges within the gates do vary, arise, and go up to the place which the Lord thy God shall choose.
- When after most diligent inquisition they shall find that the false witness hath told a lie against his brother, —They shall render to him as he meant to do to his brother, and thou shalt take away the evil out of the midst of thee. *Dt* 19, 18-19

- Je* 22, 3. Execute judgment and justice, and deliver him who is oppressed out of the hand of the oppressor; and afflict not the stranger, the fatherless, and the widow, nor oppress them unjustly.
- Da* 13, 49. Return to judgment.
- 1 Ti* 5, 21. I charge thee before God, and Christ Jesus, and the elect Angels, that thou observe these things without prejudice, doing nothing by declining to either side. Before thou inquire, blame no man; and when thou hast inquired, reprove justly. Give to Thy servant an understanding heart, to judge Thy people, and discern between good and evil. For who shall be able to judge this people, Thy people, which is so numerous?
- Eci* 11, 7.
- 3 K* 3, 9.

### 10.—REWARDS AND WORKS OF A JUST JUDGE.

- Pv* 24, 26. He shall kiss the lips who answereth right words.
- Eci* 10, 1. A wise judge shall judge his people, and the government of a prudent man shall be steady.
- Pv* 29, 14. The king that judgeth the poor in truth, his throne shall be established for ever.
- Eci* 10, 2. As the judge of the people is himself, so also are his ministers: and what manner of man the ruler of a city is, such also are they that dwell therein. He that hath not taken bribes against the innocent, he that doth these things, shall not be moved for ever. Judge not against a judge: for he judgeth according to that which is just.
- Pr* 14, 5.
- Eci* 8, 17.

### 11.—ADVICE TO JUDGES.

- Ex* 23, 2, 3, 6. Thou shalt not follow the multitude to do evil, neither shalt thou yield in judgment to the opinion of the most part, to stray from the truth. —Neither shalt thou favour a poor man in judgment.—Thou shalt not go aside in the poor man's judgment.
- Le* 19, 15. Thou shalt not do that which is unjust, nor judge unjustly. Respect not the person of the poor, nor honour the countenance of the mighty. But judge thy neighbour according to justice.
- Dt* 25, 1. If there be a controversy between men, and they call upon judges, they shall give the prize of justice to him whom they perceive to be just: and him whom they find to be wicked they shall condemn the wickedness.
- Judge ye true judgment, and show ye mercy and compassion every man to his brother.
- Speak ye truth every one to his neighbour: judge ye truth and judgment of peace in your gates.
- Seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge for the fatherless, defend the widow.
- In judging be merciful to the fatherless as a father, and as a husband to their mother.—And thou shalt be as the obedient son of the
- Za* 7, 9.
- Za* 8, 16.
- Is* 1, 17.
- Eci* 4, 10-11.

- Most High, and He will have mercy on thee more than a mother.
- Ps* 31, 8-9 Open thy mouth for the dumb, and for the causes of all the children that pass.—Open thy mouth, decree that which is just, and do justice to the needy and poor.
- Jn* 7, 24 Judge not according to the appearance, but judge just judgment.
- Take heed what you do: *2P* 19, 6-7 for you exercise not the judgment of man, but of the Lord; and whatsoever you judge, it shall redound to you.—Let the fear of the Lord be with you, and do all things with diligence: for there is no iniquity with the Lord our God, nor respect of persons, nor desire of gifts.

## 12.—EXAMPLES OF GOOD AND EVIL JUDGES.

- Nu* 16, 15 Moses, being very angry, said to the Lord: Respect not their sacrifices: Thou knowest that I have not taken of them so much as a young ass at any time, nor have injured any of them.
- 1K* 7, 15-16 Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life.—And he went every year about to Bethel and to Galgal and to Masphath, and he judged Israel in the aforesaid places.
- 1K* 12, 3-5 Speak of me before the Lord, and before His anointed, whether I have taken any man's ox or ass: if I have wronged any man, if I have oppressed any man, if I have
- taken a bribe at any man's hand, and I will despise it this day, and will restore it to you.—And they said: Thou hast not wronged us, nor oppressed us, nor taken aught at any man's hand.—And he said to them: The Lord is witness against you, and His anointed is witness this day, that you have not found anything in my hand.
- There were two of the ancients of the people appointed judges that year, of whom the Lord said: Iniquity came out from Babylon from the ancient judges, that seemed to govern the people.
- De* 13, 5

## 13.—EJACULATIONS OF THE SOUL IMPLORING THE DIVINE JUDGMENT.

- Ps* 7, 9 Judge me, O Lord, according to my justice.
- Ps* 42, 1 Judge me, O God, and distinguish my cause from the nation that is not holy: deliver me from the unjust and deceitful man.
- Ps* 25, 1 Judge me, O Lord, for I have walked in my innocence: and I have put my trust in the Lord and shall not be weakened.
- Enter not into judgment with Thy servant: for in Thy sight no man living shall be justified.
- Arise, O God, judge Thou the earth, for Thou shalt inherit among all the nations.
- O earth, let not my cry find a hiding-place in thee.—For behold, my witness is in Heaven, and He that knoweth my conscience is on High.
- Ps* 142, 2
- Ps* 81, 8
- Jb* 16, 19-20

14.—UNDUE PARTIALITY FOR ONE MORE THAN  
FOR ANOTHER.

- Ps 11, 1** A deceitful balance is an abomination before the Lord, and a just weight is His will.
- Jn 7, 24** Judge not according to the appearance, but judge just judgment.
- Ja 2, 1-4** My brethren, have not the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ of glory with respect of persons. — For if there come into your assembly a man having a golden ring, in fine apparel; and there shall come in also a poor man in mean attire,—And you have respect to him that is clothed with the fine apparel, and shall say to him: Sit thou here well; but say to the poor man: Stand thou there, or sit under my footstool: — Do you not judge within yourselves, and are become judges of unjust thoughts?
- If you have respect to persons, you commit sin, being reproved by the law as transgressors.
- Respect not the person of the poor, nor honour the countenance of the mighty. But judge thy neighbour according to justice.
- In very deed I perceive that God is not a respecter of persons. — But in every nation, he that feareth Him, and worketh justice, is acceptable to Him.
- Ja 2, 9**
- Le 19, 15**
- Ac 10, 34-35**

15.—MURDER, HOMICIDE, MUTILATION, AND  
SUICIDE.

- Ge 4, 8** When they were in the field, Cain rose up against his brother Abel, and slew him.
- Ge 4, 10** What hast thou done? the voice of thy brother's blood crieth to Me from the earth.
- Ge 4, 11-12** Cursed shalt thou be upon the earth, which hath opened her mouth and received the blood of thy brother at thy hand. When thou shalt till it, it shall not yield to thee its fruit: a fugitive and a vagabond shalt thou be upon the earth.
- Ge 9, 6** Whosoever shall shed man's blood, his blood shall be shed.
- Ap 13, 10** He that shall kill by the sword, must be killed by the sword.
- Put up again thy sword into its place; for all that take the sword shall perish with the sword.
- If any man strike with iron, and he die that was struck, he shall be guilty of murder, and he himself shall die.— If he throw a stone, and he that was struck die, he shall be punished in the same manner.— If he that is struck with wood die, he shall be revenged by the blood of him that struck him.
- You shall not take money of him that is guilty of blood, but he shall die forthwith.
- Examples of murder:
- (1) Pontius Pilate and the Chief Priests put to death Jesus.
- Mt 26, 52**
- Nu 35, 16-18**
- Nu 35, 31**
- Mt 27, 22**

- |                   |  |  |                     |
|-------------------|--|--|---------------------|
| <i>Mt</i> 2, 16   | (2) Herod I.— <i>The men-children of Bethle-hem.</i>   | <i>and the band of Pil-grims.</i>                              |                     |
| <i>Mk</i> 6, 27   | (3) Herod II.— <i>St. John Baptist.</i>                | (24) Typhon— <i>Jonathan.</i>                                  | 1 <i>M</i> 13, 23   |
| <i>Ac</i> 12, 2   | (4) Herod III. — <i>St. James the Apostle.</i>         | (25) Ptolemee— <i>Simon.</i>                                   | 1 <i>M</i> 16, 16   |
| <i>Ac</i> 7, 54   | (5) The Sanhedrim — <i>St. Stephen.</i>                | (26) Menelaus— <i>Onias.</i>                                   | 2 <i>M</i> 4, 34    |
| <i>Ge</i> 4, 8    | (6) Cain— <i>Abel.</i>                                 | (27) Antiochus— <i>Eleazar.</i>                                | 2 <i>M</i> 6, 30    |
| <i>Ex</i> 1, 22   | (7) Pharaoh — <i>The men-children of the He-breus.</i> | (28) Antiochus— <i>The se-ven Machabees and their Mother.</i>  | 2 <i>M</i> 7, 1     |
| <i>Jg</i> 3, 22   | (8) Aod— <i>Eglon.</i>                                 | (29) Barabbas.   | <i>Mk</i> 15, 7     |
| <i>Jg</i> 4, 21   | (9) Jahel— <i>Sisara.</i>                              | (30) The Ammonite Rip-pers.                                    | <i>Am</i> 1, 13     |
| <i>Jg</i> 9, 5    | (10) Abimelech— <i>Seventy Brethren.</i>               | SUICIDE.   |                     |
| 2 <i>K</i> 2, 23  | (11) Abner— <i>Asael.</i>                              | Suicide forbidden.   | <i>Ex</i> 20, 13    |
| 2 <i>K</i> 3, 27  | (12) Joab— <i>Abner.</i>                               | Examples of Suicide :  |                     |
| 2 <i>K</i> 4, 5   | (13) Rechab and Baana — <i>Isboseth.</i>               | (1) Judas.   | <i>Mt</i> 27, 5     |
| 2 <i>K</i> 13, 28 | (14) Absalom— <i>Ammon.</i>                            | (2) Samson.  | <i>Jg</i> 16, 30    |
| 3 <i>K</i> 21, 10 | (15) Jezabel— <i>Naboth.</i>                           | (3) Saul.  | 1 <i>K</i> 31, 4    |
| 4 <i>K</i> 8, 15  | (16) Hazael— <i>Benadad.</i>                           | (4) Saul's Armour-bear-er.                                     | 1 <i>K</i> 31, 5    |
| 4 <i>K</i> 9, 24  | (17) Jehu— <i>Joram.</i>                               | (5) Zambri.  | 3 <i>K</i> 16, 18   |
| 4 <i>K</i> 11, 1  | (18) Athalia— <i>The Royal Family.</i>                 | (6) Achitophel.  | 2 <i>K</i> 17, 23   |
| 4 <i>K</i> 15, 14 | (19) Manahem— <i>Sellum.</i>                           | (7) Razias.  | 2 <i>M</i> 14, 14   |
| 2 <i>P</i> 21, 4  | (20) Joram— <i>All his bre-thren.</i>                  | Examples of Homicide :   |                     |
| 2 <i>P</i> 24, 21 | (21) Joas— <i>Zacharias.</i>                           | (1) Lamech.  | <i>Ge</i> 4, 23     |
| <i>Je</i> 39, 6   | (22) Nabuchodonosor — <i>The Sons of Sele-cias.</i>    | (2) Law regarding.   | <i>Nu</i> 35, 22-25 |
| <i>Je</i> 41, 2   | (23) Ismahel — <i>Godolais</i>                         | (3) Again.   | <i>Dt</i> 19, 4-6   |
|                   |  | Examples of Mutilation :                                       |                     |
|                   |  | (1) Adonibezec cuts off the fingers and toes of seventy kings. | <i>Jg</i> 1, 7      |
|                   |  | (2) He is requited by having his fingers and toes cut off.     | <i>Jg</i> 1, 6      |

# 16.—ADULTERY AND OTHER SINS OF IMPURITY ; GRAVITY OF THESE SINS ; EXHORTATIONS TO SHUN THEM.

- |                    |   |  |
|--------------------|---|--|
| <i>Ex</i> 20, 14   | Thou shalt not commit adultery.   | adulterer, for the folly of his heart shall destroy his own soul.  |
| <i>Pv</i> 6, 30-32 | The fault is not so great when a man hath stolen; for he stealeth to fill his hungry soul.—And if he be taken, he shall restore sevenfold, and shall give up all the substance of his house.—But he that is | Every man that passeth be-<br>yond his own bed shall be in disgrace with all men, be-<br>cause he understood not the law of the Lord.—So every woman also that leaveth her |



husband, and bringeth in an heir by another:—For first, she hath been unfaithful to the law of the Most High; and secondly, she hath offended against her husband; thirdly, she hath fornicated in adultery, and hath gotten her children of another man.

*Is 24, 15-17* The eye of the adulterer observeth darkness, saying: No eye shall see me; and he will cover his face. He diggeth through houses in the dark, as in the day they had appointed for themselves, and they have not known the light.—If the morning suddenly appear, it is to them the shadow of death; and they walk in darkness as if it were in light.

*Ep 5, 11-12* Have no fellowship with

the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove them.

—For the things that are done by them in secret it is a shame even to speak of.

Every man that passeth *Eci 23, 25-26, 30*

beyond his own bed, despising his own soul, and saying: Who seeth me?—Darkness compasseth me about, and the walls cover me, and no man seeth me. Whom do I fear? The Most High will not remember my sins:—This man shall be punished.

Take heed to keep thyself, my son, from all fornication, and beside thy wife never endure to know a crime.

They have committed adultery with the wives of their friends: I am the Judge and the Witness, saith the Lord.

*Jb 4, 13*

*Je 29, 23*

# 17.—ADULTERY PUNISHED BOTH IN BODY AND SOUL.

*Pv 6, 27-29* Can a man hide fire in his bosom, and his garments not burn?—Or can he walk upon hot coals, and his feet not be burnt?—So he that goeth in to his neighbour's wife shall not be clean when he shall touch her.

*1 C 6, 9* Do not err: neither adulterers shall possess the Kingdom of God.

*Pv 22, 14* The mouth of a strange woman is a deep pit: he whom the Lord is angry with shall fall into it.

*Jb 31, 11-12* This is a heinous crime, and a most grievous iniquity.—It is a fire that devoureth even to destruction, and rooteth up all things that spring.

*He 13, 4* Fornicators and adulterers God will judge.

The eye of the adulterer *Jb 24, 15, 18-20*

observeth darkness.—Cursed be his portion on the earth: let him not walk by the way of the vineyards.—Let him pass from the snow waters to excessive heat, and his sin even to hell.—Let mercy forget him: may worms be his sweetness: let him be remembered no more, but be broken in pieces as an unfruitful tree.

This man shall be punished *Eci 23, 30* in the streets of the city, and he shall be chased as a colt: and where he suspected not he shall be taken.

Let us not commit fornication, as some of them committed fornication, and there fell in one day three-and-twenty thousand.

*1 C 10, 8*

A A

### 18.—ADULTERERS PUNISHED IN REPUTATION, HONOUR, AND POSTERITY.

- Pv* 6, 33 He that is an adulterer gathereth to himself shame and dishonour, and his reproach shall not be blotted out.
- W* 3, 16-19 The children of adulterers shall not come to perfection, and the seed of the unlawful bed shall be rooted out.—And if they live long, they shall be nothing regarded, and their last old age shall be without honour.—And if they die quickly, they shall have no hope, nor speech of comfort in the day of trial.—For dreadful are the ends of a wicked race.
- 2 K* 12, 14 Because thou hast given occasion to the enemies of the Lord to blaspheme, for this thing the child that is born to thee shall surely die.
- 1 C* 3, 17 If any man violate the Temple of God, him shall God destroy. For the Temple of God is holy, which you are.
- Lo, thou shalt die for the woman thou hast taken: for she hath a husband.
- The multiplied brood of the wicked shall not thrive, and bastard slips shall not take deep root, nor any fast foundation.—And if they flourish in branches for a time, yet standing not fast, they shall be shaken with the wind, and through the force of winds they shall be rooted out.—For the branches not being perfect, shall be broken, and their fruits shall be unprofitable, and sour to eat, and fit for nothing.—For the children that are born of unlawful beds are witnesses of wickedness against their parents in their trial.
- I will kill her children [Jezabel's] with death.
- Ge* 20, 3
- W* 4, 3-6
- Ap* 2, 23

### 19.—ACCIDENTAL INJUSTICE; THEFT AND ROBBERY FORBIDDEN.

- Ex* 20, 15 Thou shalt not steal.
- Ep* 4, 23 He that stole, let him now steal no more: but rather let him labour, working with his hands the thing which is good, that he may have something to give to him that suffereth need.
- Pv* 29, 24 He that is partaker with a thief hateth his own soul: he heareth one putting him to his oath, and discovereth not.
- Pv* 28, 24 He that stealeth anything from his father, or from his mother, and saith, This is no sin, is the partner of a murderer.
- Thou shalt not take nor remove thy neighbour's landmark.
- Thou shalt not have divers weights in thy bag, a greater and a less.—Neither shall there be in thy house a greater bushel and a less.—Thou shalt have a just and a true weight, and thy bushel shall be equal and true: that thou mayest live a long time upon the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.—For
- Dt* 19, 1-
- Dt* 25, 13-16

- the Lord thy God abhorreth him that doth these things, and He hateth all injustice.
- Po* 20, 10 Diverse weights and diverse measures both are abominable before God.
- Po* 21, 7 The robberies of the wicked shall be their downfall, because they would not do judgment.
- Ecl* 5, 10, 17 Be not anxious for goods unjustly gotten, for they shall not profit thee in the day of calamity and revenge.—For confusion and repentance is upon a thief.
- Jr* 17, 10 As the partridge hath hatched eggs which she did not lay, so is he that hath gathered riches, and not by right: in the midst of his days he shall leave them, and in his latter end he shall be a fool.
- Es* 45, 10 You shall have just balances, and a just ephi, and a just bate.
- Mt* 6, 9-13 The voice of the Lord crieth to the city:—As yet there is a fire in the house of the wicked, the treasures of iniquity, and a scant measure full of wrath.—Shall I justify wicked balances, and the deceitful weights of the bag?—By which her rich men were filled with iniquity, and the inhabitants thereof have spoken lies, and there tongue was deceitful in their mouth.—And I therefore began to strike thee with desolation for thy sins.
- Wo to him that heapeth together that which is not his own! How long also doth he load himself with thick clay?
- Do not steal, do no fraud. *Mt* 10, 19 He that is unjust in that which is little is unjust also in that which is greater.—If you have not been faithful in that which is another's, who will give you that which is your own?
- Why was not this ointment sold for three hundred pence, and given to the poor?—Now he said this, not because he cared for the poor, but because he was a thief, and having the purse, carried the things that were put therein.
- Thou shalt not steal. *Ro* 13, 9 You do wrong and defraud: and that to your brethren.—Know you not that the unjust shall not possess the Kingdom of God?—Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor railers, nor extortioners shall possess the Kingdom of God.
- He that doeth an injury shall receive for that which he hath done unjustly. *C13*, 25
- [Let] no man overreach nor circumvent his brother in business: because the Lord is the avenger of all these things, as we have told you before, and have testified.—He therefore that despiseth these things despiseth not man, but God. *1 T* 4, 6, 8

## 20.—PUNISHMENT OF THEFT.

- 1 C* 6, 9-10 Do not err: neither fornicators, nor thieves, nor extortioners shall possess the Kingdom of God.
- The rest of the men did not do penance from the works of their hands that they should not adore devils. *Ap* 9, 20-21

—Neither did they penance from their murders, nor from their sorceries, nor from their fornication, nor from their thefts.

**Za 5, 3-4** This is the curse that goeth forth over the face of the earth: for every thief shall be judged as is there written; and every one that sweareth in like manner shall be judged by it.—I will bring it forth, saith the Lord of Hosts: and it shall come to the house of the thief, and to the house of him that sweareth falsely by My Name: and it shall remain in the midst of his house, and shall consume it, with the timber thereof and the stones thereof.

**Pv 11, 24** Some distribute their own goods, and grow richer: others take away what is not their own, and are always in want.

Examples of sacrilegious robbery:

**Jn 12, 6** (1) Judas.

- (2) Dismas and his Companion. **Mt 27, 38**
- (3) The Money-changers. **Mt 21, 13**
- (4) The Thieves and Robbers spoken of by our Lord. **Jn 10, 10**
- (5) Ananias and Sapphira. **Ac 5, 1**
- (6) Den of Thieves. **Mk 11, 17**
- (7) Den of Robbers. **Je 7, 11**
- (8) Achan. **Js 7, 21**
- (9) Stealers of God's Words. **Je 33, 30**
- (10) Nabuchodonosor. **Je 51, 4**
- (11) Baltassar. **Da 5, 2**
- (12) Heliodorus. **2 M 3, 23**
- (13) Antiochus. **2 M 5, 21**

Examples of robbery:

- (1) Barabbas. **Jn 18, 40**
- (2) Ismael. **Ge 17, 12**
- (3) Abimelech's servant. **Ge 21, 25**
- (4) Esau. **Ge 27, 40**
- (5) Laban. **Ge 29, 25**
- (6) Rachel. **Ge 31, 19**
- (7) Michas. **Jg 18, 17**
- (8) Achab. **3 K 21, 2**
- (9) The four Lepers of Samaria. **4 K 7, 8**

## 21.—OFFERINGS OF STOLEN GOODS DISPLEASING TO GOD.

**Ma 1, 13-14** You brought in of rapine the lame and the sick, and brought in an offering: shall I accept it at your hands? saith the Lord.—Cursed is the deceitful man that hath in his flock a male, and making a vow offereth in sacrifice that which is feeble to the Lord.

**Eci 34, 21, 23-24** The offering of him that sacrificeth of a thing wrongfully gotten is stained, and the mockeries of the unjust are not acceptable. — The Most High approveth not

the gifts of the wicked: neither hath He respect to the oblations of the unjust, nor will He be pacified for sins by the multitude of their sacrifices. — He that offereth sacrifice of the goods of the poor is as one that sacrificeth the son in the presence of his father.

Do not offer wicked gifts, **Eci 35, 14-15** for such He will not receive. —And look not upon an unjust sacrifice, for the Lord is Judge, and there is not with Him respect of persons.

22.—EXAMPLES OF THEFT PUNISHED AND PREVENTED.

- Js 7, 21* I saw among the spoils a scarlet garment exceeding good, and two hundred sicles of silver, and a golden rule of fifty sicles: and I coveted them, and I took them away, and hid them in the ground in the midst of my tent, and the silver I covered with the earth I dug up.
- Js 7, 24-25* Josue took Achan, the son of Zare, and the silver, and the garment, and the golden rule, his sons also, and his daughters, his oxen, and asses, and sheep, the tent also, and all the goods, and brought them to the valley of Achor. — Where Josue said: Because thou hast troubled us, the Lord trouble thee this day. And all Israel stoned him, and all things that were his were consumed with fire.
- Js 7, 24-25* It came to pass that she [Anna] received a young kid, and brought it home. — And when her husband heard it bleating, he said: Take heed, lest perhaps it be stolen: restore ye it to its owners, for it is not lawful for us either to eat or to touch anything that cometh by theft.

*To 2, 20-21*

23.—GREAT IMPIETY OF DECEIT AND FRAUD.

- Mt 7, 21-22* From within out of the heart of men proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, deceit. — All these evil things defile a man.
- Je 9, 6* Thy habitation is in the midst of deceit: through deceit they have refused to know Me, saith the Lord.
- Pt 35, 3-5* In His sight he hath done deceitfully, that his iniquity may be found unto hatred. — The words of his mouth are iniquity and guile: he would not understand that he might do well. — He hath devised iniquity on his bed, he hath set himself on every way that is not good: but evil he hath not hated.
- Jn 8, 44* You are of your father the devil; and the desires of your father you will do. He stood not in the truth, because truth is not in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father thereof.
- Ep 4, 25* Wherefore, putting away lying, speak ye the truth every man with his neighbour: for we are members one of another.
- 1 Pt 3, 10* He that will love life, and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile.
- 1 Pt 2, 1* Wherefore laying aside all malice, and all guile, and dissimulations.
- Cl 3, 9* Lie not one to another.
- Ap 21, 8* All liars shall have their portion in the pool burning with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.
- 1 J 2, 22* Who is a liar but he who denieth that Jesus is the Christ?
- Le 19, 11* You shall not lie, neither shall any man deceive his neighbour.

- Ex* 23, 7 Thou shalt fly lying.  
*Po* 57, 4 The wicked are alienated from the womb, they have gone astray from the womb, they have spoken false things.  
*Po* 10, 4 He that trusteth to lies feedeth the winds.  
*Po* 11, 9, 13 The dissembler with his mouth deceiveth his friend.—He that walketh deceitfully revealeth secrets: but he that is faithful concealeth the thing committed to him by his friend.  
*Po* 12, 19 A hasty witness frameth a lying tongue.  
*Po* 13, 13, 17 Deceitful souls go astray in sins.—The crafty man is hateful.  
*Po* 14, 17 The double-dealer uttereth lies.  
*Po* 17, 4 The evil man obeyeth an unjust tongue, and the deceitful hearkeneth to lying lips.  
*Po* 19, 5 A false witness shall not be unpunished, and he that speaketh lies shall not escape.  
*Po* 20, 17 The bread of lying is sweet to a man: but afterwards his mouth shall be filled with gravel.  
 Deceive not any man with thy lips.  
 A deceitful tongue loveth not truth, and a slippery mouth worketh ruin.  
 The Holy Spirit of discipline will flee from the deceitful.  
 In no wise speak against the truth, but be ashamed of the lie of thy ignorance.  
 Be not willing to make any manner of lie; for the custom thereof is not good.  
 Winnow not with every wind, and go not into every way: for so is every sinner proved by a double tongue.  
 A lie is a foul blot in a man, and yet it will be continually in the mouth of men without discipline.—A thief is better than a man that is always lying: but both of them shall inherit destruction.—The manners of lying men are without honour, and their confusion is with them without ceasing.  
 Thou shalt not bear false witness. *Po* 24, 28 *Po* 26, 28 *W* 1, 5 *Ecl* 4, 30 *Ecl* 7, 14 *Ecl* 5, 11 *Ecl* 20, 26-28 *Lx* 18, 20

## 24.—DECEIT VISITED UPON THE HEAD OF THE DECEIVER.

- Po* 26, 27 He that diggeth a pit shall fall into it: and he that rolleth a stone, it shall return to him.  
*Po* 9, 16 Their foot hath been taken in the very snare which they hid.  
*Po* 7, 16 He hath opened a pit and dug it, and he is fallen into the hole he made.  
*Po* 28, 10 He that deceiveth the just in a wicked way shall fall in his own destruction, and the upright shall possess his goods.  
 A man that speaketh to his friend with flattering and dissembling words spreadeth a net for his feet.  
 He that breaketh a hedge, a serpent shall bite him.—He that removeth stones shall be hurt by them, and he that cutteth trees shall be wounded by them.  
 If one cast a stone on high, *Po* 29, 5 *Ecl* 10, 8-9 *Ecl* 27, 28-30

it will fall upon his own head: and the deceitful stroke will wound the deceitful. And he that setteth a stone for his neighbour shall stumble upon it, and he that layeth a snare for another shall perish in it.—A mischievous counsel shall be rolled back upon the author, and he shall not know from whence it cometh to him.

on his own head, and his iniquity shall come down upon his crown.

*P<sup>s</sup> 7, 17* His sorrow shall be turned They speak peace with *P<sup>s</sup> 27, 3-4* their neighbour, but evils are in their hearts.—Give them according to their works, and according to the wickedness of their inventions. According to the works of their hands give Thou to them: render to them their reward.

**25.—THE DECEITFUL MAN INJURIOUS TO HIMSELF AND HIS FRIENDS ; HATEFUL ALIKE TO GOD AND MAN.**

*P<sup>v</sup> 12, 27* The deceitful man shall not find gain: but the substance of a just man shall be precious gold. The bloody and the deceitful man the Lord will abhor. *P<sup>s</sup> 5, 7*

*Ecc 10, 8* A kingdom is translated from one people to another, because of injustices, and wrongs, and injuries, and divers deceits. A deceitful balance is an abomination before the Lord, and a just weight is His will. *P<sup>v</sup> 11, 1*

*P<sup>s</sup> 54, 24* Bloody and deceitful men shall not live out half their days: but I will trust in Thee, O Lord. Cursed is the deceitful man, that hath in his flock a male, and making a vow, offereth in sacrifice that which is feeble to the Lord. *Ma 1, 14*

The crafty man is hateful. *P<sup>s</sup> 14, 17*

**26.—UNJUST INJURY OF REPUTATION AND HONOUR ; WHAT THE DETRACTOR MAY BE COMPARED TO.**

*Ecc 10, 11* If a serpent bite in silence, he is nothing better that backbiteth secretly. the poison of asps is under their lips.

*P<sup>v</sup> 16, 27* In his lips is a burning fire. They have whetted their *P<sup>s</sup> 63, 4-5* tongues like a sword:—They have bent their bow a bitter thing, to shoot in secret the undefiled.

*P<sup>s</sup> 13, 3* Their throat is an open sepulchre: with their tongues they acted deceitfully;

**27.—EFFECTS, INJURY, AND HARM OF DETRACTION, AND ITS PUNISHMENT.**

*P<sup>s</sup> 13, 13* Whosoever speaketh ill of anything bindeth himself for the time to come: but he that feareth the commandment shall dwell in peace.

His mouth is full of curs- *P<sup>s</sup> 9, 28*

- ing, and of bitterness, and of deceit: under his tongue are labour and sorrow.
- Pv 24, 9* The detractor is the abomination of men.
- Pv 10, 8* A fool is beaten with lips.
- W 1, 6, 8* The spirit of wisdom is benevolent, and will not acquit the evil speaker from his lips: for God is witness of his reins, and He is a true searcher of his heart, and a hearer of his tongue.—Therefore he that speaketh unjust things cannot be hid, neither shall the chastising judgment pass him by.
- Refrain your tongue from detraction, for an obscure speech shall not go for naught. *W 1, 11*
- My son, fear the Lord and the king, and have nothing to do with detractors.—For their destruction shall rise suddenly: and who knoweth the ruin of both? *Pv 24, 21-22*
- Neither confounders, nor adulterers, nor railers shall possess the Kingdom of God. *1 C 6, 9-10*

## 28.—DETRACTION FORBIDDEN IN GENERAL AND IN PARTICULAR.

- Pv 4, 24* Remove from thee a froward mouth, and let detracting lips be far from thee.
- Ja 4, 11* Detract not one another, my brethren. He that detracteth his brother, or he that judgeth his brother, detracteth the law and judgeth the law. But if thou judge the law, thou art not a doer of the law, but a judge.
- 1 Pt 2, 1-2* Laying away all malice and all detractions,—As newborn babes desire the rational milk.
- 2 C 12, 20* I fear lest contentions and detractions be among you.
- Ex 22, 28* Thou shalt not speak ill of the gods, and the prince of thy people thou shalt not curse.
- Nu 12, 8* Why then were you not afraid to speak ill of My servant Moses?
- Ecl 10, 20* Detract not the king, no not in thy thought: and speak not evil of the rich man in thy private chamber: because even the birds of the air will carry thy voice, and he that hath wings will tell what thou hast said.
- Accept no person against thy own person, nor against thy soul a lie. *Ecl 4, 66*
- Thou hast loved malice more than goodness, and iniquity rather than to speak righteousness.—Thou hast loved all the words of ruin, O deceitful tongue.—Therefore will God destroy thee for ever: He will pluck thee out, and remove thee from thy dwelling-place, and thy root out of the land of the living. *Pv 51, 5-7*
- Thy mouth hath abounded with evil, and thy tongue framed deceits.—Sitting thou didst speak against thy brother, and didst lay a scandal against thy mother's son: these things hast thou done, and I was silent.—Thou thoughtest unjustly that I shall be like to thee: but I will reprove thee, and set before thy face.
- Thou shalt not be a de- *Pv 49, 19-21* *Le 19, 16*



- tractor nor a whisperer among the people.
- Pr* 24, 15-16, 21 Lie not in wait, nor seek after wickedness in the house of the just, nor spoil his rest.—For a just man shall fall seven times, and shall rise again: but the wicked shall fall down into evil.—My son, fear the Lord and the king, and have nothing to do with detractors.
- Ecl* 7, 22-23 Do not apply thy heart to all words that are spoken, lest perhaps thou hear thy servant reviling thee.—For thy conscience knoweth that thou also hast often spoken evil of others.
- Eci* 28, 15 The whisperer and the double-tongued is accursed: for he hath troubled many that were at peace.
- An evil man out of the evil treasure (of his heart) bringeth forth that which is evil. For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh.
- If I speak with the tongues of men and of Angels, and have not charity, I am become as sounding brass or a tinkling cymbal.
- Speak evil of no man.
- If you bite and devour one another, take heed you be not consumed one of another.
- Render not evil for evil.
- Lu* 6, 45
- 1 C* 13, 1
- Tt* 3, 2
- Ga* 5, 15
- 1 Pt* 3, 9

29.—DETRACTORS TO BE PRAYED FOR.

- Mt* 5, 44 Pray for them that persecute and calumniate you.
- Pr* 108, 4 Instead of making me a return of love, they detracted me: but I gave myself to prayer.
- Mt* 5, 11 Blessed are ye when they shall speak all that is evil against you.
- Bless them that persecute you.
- We are reviled, and we bless: we are persecuted, and we suffer it.
- Ro* 12, 14
- 1 C* 4, 12

30.—THE DETRACTOR TO BE PUNISHED AND REPULSED.

- Eci* 28, 28 Hedge in thy ears with thorns, hear not a wicked tongue, and make doors and bars to thy mouth.
- Pr* 100, 5 The man that in private detracted his neighbour, him did I persecute.
- Eci* 19, 5-6 He that rejoiceth in iniquity shall be censured, and he that hateth chastisement shall have less life, and he that hateth babbling extinguisheth evil.—He that sinneth against his own soul shall repent, and he that is delighted with wickedness shall be condemned.
- The north wind driveth away rain, as doth a sad countenance a backbiting tongue.
- Anger is better than laughter: because by the sadness of the offender the mind of the offender is corrected.
- Rehearse not again a wicked and harsh word, and thou shalt not fare the worse.—Tell not thy mind to friend or foe: and if there be a sin
- Pv* 25, 23
- Ecl* 7, 4
- Eci* 19, 7-12

with thee, disclose it not.—For he will hearken to thee, and will watch thee, and as it were defending thy sin he will hate thee, and so will he be with thee always.—Hast thou heard a word against thy neighbour? let it die within thee, trusting that it will not burst thee.—At the hearing of a word the fool is in travail, as a woman groaning in the bringing forth a child.—As an arrow that sticketh in a man's thigh, so is a word in the heart of a fool.

## 31.—GOD FORBIDS CALUMNY AND FALSE

## TESTIMONY.

- Le* 19, 13 Thou shalt not calumniate thy neighbour. Be not witness without *Po* 24, 28-29 cause against thy neighbour; and deceive not any man with thy lips. Say not: I will do to him as he hath done to me: I will render to every one according to his work.
- Ex* 23, 1 Thou shalt not receive the voice of a lie; neither shalt thou join thy hand to bear false witness for a wicked person. Do violence to no man. *Lu* 3, 14 Neither calumniate any man.
- Ecl* 7, 13 Devise not a lie against thy brother, neither do the like against thy friend.

## 32.—MISCHIEF AND PUNISHMENT OF CALUMNY.

- Po* 23, 2 As a bird flying to other places, and a sparrow going here or there, so a curse uttered without cause shall come upon a man. not drawn the yoke thereof, and hath not been bound in its bands:—For its yoke is a yoke of iron, and its bands are bands of brass.—The death thereof is a most evil death, and hell is preferable to it.
- Ecl* 4, 26 Accept no person against thy own person, nor against thy soul a lie. Its continuance shall not be for a long time, but it shall possess the ways of the unjust: and the just shall not be burnt with its flame.—They that forsake God shall fall into it, and it shall burn in them, and shall not be quenched: and it shall be sent upon them as a lion, and as a leopard it shall tear them.
- Ecl* 7, 8 Oppression troubleth the wise, and shall destroy the strength of his heart. He shall save the children of the poor: and he shall humble the oppressor.
- Ecl* 26, 5-7 Of three things my heart hath been afraid.—The accusation of a city, and the gathering together of the people,—And a false calumny all are more grievous than death.
- Ecl* 23, 23-25 Blessed is he that is defended from a wicked tongue, that hath not passed into the wrath thereof, and that hath

### 33.—EFFECTS AND PUNISHMENT OF FALSE TESTIMONY.

- Pv* 25, 18 A man that beareth false witness against his neighbour is like a dart, and a sword, and a sharp arrow.
- Dt* 19, 16-21 If a lying witness stand against a man, accusing him of transgression,—Both of them between whom the controversy is shall stand before the Lord, in the sight of the priests and the judges that shall be in those days.—And when, after most diligent inquisition, they shall find that the false witness hath told a lie against his brother,—They shall render to him as he meant to do to his brother, and thou shalt take away the evil out of the midst of thee:—That others hearing may fear, and may not dare to do such things.—Thou shalt not pity him, but shalt require life for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot.
- A false witness shall not be unpunished, and he that speaketh lies shall not escape. *Pv* 19, 5

### 34.—EXAMPLES OF THE PUNISHMENT OF CALUMNY AND PERJURY.

- Pz* 26, 12 Unjust witnesses have risen up against Me.
- Pz* 37, 13-17 They that sought evils to me spoke vain things, and studied deceits all the day long.—But I, as a deaf man, heard not, and as a dumb man not opening his mouth.—And I became as a man that heareth not, and that hath no reproofs in his mouth.—For in Thee, O Lord, have I hoped: Thou wilt hear me, O Lord my God.—For I said: Lest at any time my enemies rejoice over me: and whilst my feet are moved they speak great things against me.
- Pz* 108, 2-3 The mouth of the wicked and the mouth of the deceitful man is opened against Me.—They have spoken against Me with deceitful tongues, and they have compassed Me about with words of hatred, and have fought against Me without cause.
- If they have called the good man of the house Beelzebub, how much more them of his household?
- This Man casteth not out devils but by Beelzebub, the prince of the devils.
- How came This Man by this wisdom and miracles?—Is not this the Carpenter's Son? Is not His Mother called Mary, and His brethren James and Joseph and Simon and Jude?—And His sisters, are they not all with us? Whence therefore hath He all these things?—And they were scandalised in His regard.
- The chief priests and the whole council sought false witness against Jesus, that they might put Him to death.—And they found not, where-as many false witnesses had come in.
- Thus saith the Lord: Thou shalt slay Naboth; *Mt* 10, 25 *Mt* 12, 24 *Mt* 13, 54-57 *Mt* 26, 59-60 *3K* 21, 19

moreover also thou hast taken possession [of his vineyard]. Lord: In this place, wherein the dogs have licked the blood of Naboth, they shall lick thy blood also.

### 35.—EJACULATIONS OF THE SOUL AGAINST CALUMNY.

- Ps* 118, 121 I have done judgment and justice: give me not up to them that slander me. Uphold Thy servant unto good. loose me from the band of this reproach, or else take me away from the earth. How long shall sinners, O *Ps* 93, 3-4
- Ps* 118, 134 Redeem me from the calumnies of men, that I may keep Thy Commandments. Lord, how long shall sinners glory?—Shall they utter and speak iniquity? shall all speak who work iniquity?
- Jb* 3, 15 I beg, O Lord, that Thou

### 36.—EFFECTS AND INJURY OF EVIL-SPEAKING TO THE EVIL.

- Pv* 22, 10 Cast out the scoffer, and contention shall go out with him, and quarrels and reproaches shall cease. Injuries and wrongs will waste riches. *Eci* 21, 5
- Pv* 10, 18 Lying lips hide hatred: he that uttereth reproach is foolish. As the vapour of a chimney and the smoke of the fire goeth up before the fire, so also injurious words and reproaches and threats before blood. *Eci* 22, 30
- Eci* 23, 20 The man that is accustomed to opprobrious words will never be corrected all the days of his life. Mockery and reproach are of the proud, and vengeance as a lion shall lie in wait for him. *Eci* 27, 31
- Ja* 3, 6 The tongue is a fire.

### 37.—EFFECTS AND INJURY OF EVIL-SPEAKING TO THE PERSON INJURED.

- Eci* 21, 27 A wise man will be grieved with the disgrace. he sit as a spy to entrap thee in thy words.
- Eci* 22, 24 He that pricketh the eye bringeth out tears; and he that pricketh the heart bringeth forth resentment. Examples of evil-speaking:
- Eci* 22, 25 He that flingeth a stone at birds shall drive them away; so he that upbraideth his friend breaketh friendship.
- Eci* 3, 14 Stand not against the face of an injurious person, lest
- (1) The Jews speak against our Lord. *Jn* 8, 48
  - (2) They speak against the Apostles. *Ac* 2, 13
  - (3) Laban's sons against Jacob. *Ge* 31, 1
  - (4) Putiphar's wife against Joseph. *Ge* 39, 14
  - (5) Mary and Aaron *Nu* 12, 1

	against Moses.	(9) Aman against the Jews.	<i>Ex</i> 3, 8
<i>Ex</i> 17, 1	(6) The Israelites against Moses.	(10) Eliphaz against Job.	<i>Jb</i> 4, 5
2 <i>K</i> 6, 20	(7) Michol against David.	(11) The Jews against Jeremias.	<i>Je</i> 18, 18
2 <i>K</i> 10, 1	(8) The Ammonite Princess against David.	(12) The Chaldeans against Daniel.	<i>Da</i> 6, 13

38.—RAILING FORBIDDEN BY GOD.

<i>Mt</i> 5, 22	Whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell-fire.	said: The Lord command thee. But these men blaspheme whatever things they know not.	
1 <i>Pt</i> 3, 8-9	Be ye all of one mind:—Not rendering evil for evil, nor railing for railing; but contrariwise, blessing: for unto this are you called, that you may inherit a blessing.	The things which thy eyes have seen utter not hastily in a quarrel; lest afterwards thou mayest not be able to make amends, when thou hast dishonoured thy friend.	<i>Po</i> 25, 8
<i>Jn</i> 9	When Michael the Archangel, disputing with the devil, contended about the body of Moses, he durst not bring against him the judgment of railing speech, but	If thou offer thy gift at the Altar, and there thou remember that thy brother hath anything against thee,—Leave there thy offering before the Altar, and go first to be reconciled to thy brother; and then coming, thou shalt offer thy gift.	<i>Mt</i> 5, 23-24

39.—SCORNERS—GOD PUNISHES THE SCORNER.

4 <i>K</i> 2, 23-24	As he [Eliseus] was going up by the way, little boys came out of the city, and mocked him, saying: Go up, thou bald-head; go up; thou bald-head. — And looking back, he saw them, and cursed them in the Name of the Lord; and there came forth two bears out of the forest, and tore of them two-and-forty boys.	kilns: so did he to all the cities of the children of Ammon. And David returned with all the army to Jerusalem.	
2 <i>K</i> 12, 23	Bringing forth the people thereof, he sawed them, and drove over them chariots armed with iron, and divided them with knives, and made them pass through brick-	The bow of the mighty is overcome, and the weak are girt with strength.—They that were full before have hired out themselves for bread, and the hungry are filled: so that the barren hath borne many, and she that had many children is weakened.	1 <i>K</i> 2, 4-5
		Wo is me, my mother! Why hast thou borne me a man of strife, a man of contention to all the earth? I	<i>Je</i> 15, 10

- have not lent on usury, neither hath any man lent to me on usury: yet all curse me.
- Jb* 12, 4 The simplicity of the just man is laughed to scorn.
- Pv* 18, 3 The wicked man when he is come into the depths of sins contemneth; but ignominy and reproach follow him.
- Pv* 3, 32 Every mocker is an abomination to the Lord.
- Pv* 11, 12 He that despiseth his friend is mean of heart.
- Pv* 15, 20 The foolish man despiseth his mother.
- Pv* 13, 15 In the way of scorners is a deep pit.
- Pv* 14, 21 He that despiseth his neighbour sinneth.
- Ecl* 7, 14 No man can correct whom he hath despised.
- Ecl* 7, 12 Laugh no man to scorn in the bitterness of his soul: for there is One Who humbleth and exalteth, God Who seeth all.
- He shall scorn the scorers. *Pv* 3, 34  
Despise not a just man that *Ecl* 10, 28  
is poor, and do not magnify a sinful man that is rich.
- Despise not a man that *Ecl* 8, 6-7  
turneth away from sin, nor reproach him therewith: remember that we are all worthy of reproof.—Despise not a man in his old age; for we shall also become old.
- God hath showed to me to *Ac* 10, 28  
call no man common or unclean.
- You, my dearly beloved, *Ju* 17-18  
be mindful of the words which have been spoken before by the Apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ;—Who told you that in the last time there should come mockers, walking according to their own desires in ungodliness.

## 40.—EJACULATIONS FOR AVERTING SCORNFUL

## ABUSE.

- 2 E* 4, 4-5 Hear Thou, our God, for we are despised: turn their reproach upon their own head, and give them to be despised in a land of captivity.—Cover not their iniquity, and let not their sin be blotted out from before Thy face, because they have mocked Thy builders.
- La* 3, 59-68 Thou hast seen, O Lord, their iniquity against me; judge Thou my judgment.—Thou hast seen all their fury and all their thoughts against me.—Thou hast heard their reproach, O Lord, all their imaginations against me:—The lips of them that rise up against me, and their devices
- against me all the day.—Behold their sitting down and their rising up, I am their song.—Thou shalt render them a recompense, O Lord, according to the works of their hands.—Thou shalt give them a buckler of heart Thy labour.—Thou shalt persecute them in anger, and shalt destroy them from under the heavens, O Lord.
- To Thee, O Lord, I turn *To* 3, 14-16  
my face, to Thee I direct my eyes.—I beg, O Lord, that Thou loose me from the bond of this reproach, or else take me away from the earth.—Thou knowest, O Lord, that I never coveted a husband,

and have kept my soul clean from all lust.

*Ps* 38, 1-3, I said: I will take heed to my ways, that I sin not with my tongue.—I have set a guard to my mouth when the sinner stood against me.—I was dumb, and was humbled, and kept silence from good things, and my sorrow was renewed.—I was dumb, and I opened not my mouth, because Thou hast done it. — Remove Thy scourges from me.

Owe no man anything. *Ro* 13, 8

#### 41.—EFFECTS, INJURY, AND PUNISHMENT OF TALEBEARING.

*Po* 26, 22 The words of a talebearer are as it were simple, but they reach to the innermost parts of the belly. *Eci* 28, 21-22 The stroke of a whip maketh a blue mark: but the stroke of the tongue will break the bones.—Many have fallen by the edge of the sword, but not so many as have perished by their own tongue.

*Eci* 28, 15-20 The whisperer and the double-tongued is accursed: for he hath troubled many that were at peace. — The tongue of a third person hath disquieted many, and scattered them from nation to nation.—It hath destroyed the strong cities of the rich, and hath overthrown the houses of great men.—It hath cut in pieces the forces of people, and undone strong nations. — The tongue of a third person hath cast out valiant women, and deprived them of their labours.—He that hearkeneth to it shall never have rest, neither shall he have a friend in whom he

The talebearer shall defile his own soul, and be hated by all: and he that shall abide with him shall be hateful: the silent and wise man shall be honoured. *Eci* 21, 31

I attended and hearkened: no man speaketh what is good. *Je* 8, 6

In many words shall be found folly. *Ecl* 5, 2

I heard the reproaches of many, and terror on every side: Persecute him, and let us persecute him. *Je* 20, 10

#### 42.—TALEBEARING FORBIDDEN BY GOD.

*1 Ty* 5, 13 Being idle they learn to go about from house to house, and are not only idle but tattlers also, and busybodies, speaking things which they ought not.

*Ti* 3, 2 Admonish them to speak evil of no man.

*1 Pt* 4, 15 Let none of you suffer as a railer.

*Eci* 5, 16-17 Be not called a whisperer, and be not taken in thy tongue, and confounded.—For confusion and repentance is upon a thief, and an evil mark of disgrace upon the double-tongued: but to the whisperer, hatred, and enmity, and reproach.

Detract not one another. *Ja* 4, 11

Every idle word that men shall speak they shall render an account for it in the day of judgment. *Mt* 12, 36

## PART VI.

### RELIGION AND OTHER VIRTUES CONNECTED WITH JUSTICE WHICH BIND LEGALLY.

---

RELIGION is "a Moral Virtue which disposes us to give to God the worship that is due to Him as the Supreme Lord of all." \* Religion does not reach the dignity of a Theological Virtue, since its immediate object is, not God Himself, but the worship due to God.† Nevertheless it is the highest of the Moral Virtues, since it has more direct relation to God than any other Moral Virtue.‡ The *Intrinsic* and Principal Acts of Religion are Devotion and Prayer. The *Extrinsic* and Secondary Acts of Religion are of three kinds: (1) Those by which the body is offered to God; Adoration (2), those by which some exterior thing is (a) offered or (b) promised to God; and these are (a) Sacrifices, Oblations, First-fruits, Tithes, (b) Vows. (3) Those by which something Divine—the Sacraments or the Name of God—is used by man. The Name of God is used by Religion (1) to confirm one's words; Oaths, (2) to move others; Adjuration, (3) in Invocation.

#### 1.—MAN'S DUTIES TO GOD.

*Ecc* 43, 29- We shall say much, and IS ALL.—What shall we  
35 yet shall want words: but be able to do to glorify Him?  
the sum of our words is, HE for the Almighty Himself is

---

\* S. Thomas, *quest. disp. de virt. card.*, a. 1.

† *Ibid.* q. 81. a. 6.

‡ *Sec. sec. q. 81. a. 5.*



above all His works.—The Lord is terrible and exceeding great, and His power is admirable. — Glorify the Lord as much as ever you can, for He will yet far exceed, and His magnificence is wonderful.—Blessing the Lord, exalt Him as much as you can: for He is above all praise. — When you exalt Him, put forth all your strength, and be not weary: for you can never go far enough. — Who shall see Him, and declare Him? and who shall magnify Him as He is from the beginning?

Ps 2, 11

Serve ye the Lord with

fear, and rejoice unto Him with trembling. Embrace discipline.

In all thy ways think on Him, and He will direct thy steps. Ps 3, 6

Remember thy Creator in the days of thy youth, before the time of affliction come, and the years draw nigh of which thou shalt say: They please me not. Eccl 12, 1

Religion pure and undefiled in the sight of God and the Father is this: to visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, and to keep ourselves unspotted from the world. Ja 1, 27

## 2.—PRAYER COMMANDED BY GOD. PREPARATION OF THE SOUL FOR PRAYER.

Is 29, 12-13 You shall call upon Me, and you shall go: and you shall pray to Me, and I will hear you.—You shall seek Me, and shall find Me, when you shall seek Me with all your heart.

Eccl 18, 23 Before prayer prepare thy soul, and be not as a man that tempteth God.

Is 33, 3 Cry to Me, and I will hear thee; and I will show thee great things, and sure things which thou knowest not.

1 Th 2, 8 I will that men pray in every place, lifting up pure hands without anger and contention.

1 P 16, 11, 35 Seek ye the Lord and His power, seek ye His Face evermore.—And say ye: Save us, O God our Saviour: and gather us together, and deliver us from the nations, that we may give glory to Thy Holy Name.

Ask what thou wilt that I should give thee. 3 K 3,

Seek ye the Lord while He may be found: call upon Him while He is near. Is 55, 6

Let us lift up our hearts with our hands to the Lord in the Heavens. La 3, 41

We ought always to pray, and not to faint. Lu 18, 1

The Spirit helpeth our infirmity. For we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit Himself asketh for us with unspeakable groanings. Ro 8, 26

Watch ye, and pray that ye enter not into temptation. Mt 26, 41

Thus shall you pray: Our Father Who art in Heaven. Mt 6, 9

Open thy mouth wide, and I will fill it. Ps 80, 10

Watch ye, and pray that you enter not into temptation. Mk 14, 38

The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.

B B

## 3.—HE WHO PRAYS IS TO BE IN THE GRACE OF GOD.

- La* 3, 44 Thou hast set a cloud | distress shall come upon  
before Thee, that our prayer | him?  
may not pass through. Now we know that God *Ja* 9, 31
- 1J* 3, 21-22 Dearly beloved, if our heart | doth not hear sinners: but  
do not reprehend us, we have | if a man be a server of God,  
confidence towards God.— | and doth His will, him He  
And whatsoever we shall ask | heareth.  
we shall receive of Him: be- | If you abide in Me, and *Ja* 15, 7  
cause we keep His Command- | My words abide in you, you  
ments, and do those things | shall ask whatever you will,  
which are pleasing in His | and it shall be done unto you.  
sight. He that turneth away his *Po* 28, 9
- Jb* 11, 13-15 Thou hast hardened thy | ears from hearing the law,  
heart, and hast spread thy | his prayer shall be an  
hands to Him.—If thou wilt | abomination.  
put away from thee the ini- | He that adoreth God with *Eci* 35, 20  
quity that is in thy hand, | joy shall be accepted, and  
and let not injustice remain | his prayer shall approach  
in thy tabernacle: — Then | even to the clouds.  
mayst thou lift up thy face | The Lord is far from the *Po* 15, 29  
without spot, and thou shalt | wicked, and He will hear the  
be steadfast, and shalt not | prayers of the just.  
fear. If I have looked at ini- *Po* 65, 18  
quity in my heart, the Lord
- Jb* 27, 8-9 What is the hope of the | will not hear me.  
hypocrite if through covetous- | He will do the will of them *Po* 144, 19  
ness he take by violence, and | that fear Him: and He will  
God deliver not his soul?— | hear their prayer.  
Will God hear his cry when

4.—CONFIDENCE IN THE LORD NECESSARY IN  
PRAYER

- W* 1, 1-2 Think of the Lord in | wavereth is like a wave of the  
goodness, and seek Him in | sea, which is moved and car-  
simplicity of heart:—For He | ried about by the wind.—  
is found by them who tempt | Therefore let not that man  
Him not; and He showeth | think that he shall receive  
Himself to them that have | anything of the Lord.  
faith in Him. All things whatsoever you *Mk* 11, 24
- 1a* 1, 5-7 If any of you want wisdom, | ask when ye pray believe  
let him ask of God, Who giv- | that you shall receive, and  
eth to all men abundantly, | they shall come unto you.  
and upbraideth not: and it | In Thee, O Lord, have I *Po* 37, 18  
shall be given him. But let | hoped: Thou wilt hear me, O  
him ask in faith, nothing | Lord my God.  
wavering. — For he that | Thou art my hope. *Je* 17, 17

5.—PRAYER TO BE HUMBLE, ATTENTIVE, AND PERSEVERING.

- Jd* 9, 16 Nor from the beginning have the proud been acceptable to Thee: but the prayer of the humble and the meek hath always pleased Thee.
- Eci* 35, 21 The prayer of him that humbleth himself shall pierce the clouds: and till it come nigh he will not be comforted: and he will not depart till the Most High behold.
- Mt* 6, 5-6 When ye pray, you shall not be as the hypocrites, that love to stand and pray in the synagogues and corners of the streets, that they may be seen by men. Amen I say to you, they have received their reward. — But when thou shalt pray, enter into thy chamber, and having shut the door, pray to thy Father in secret: and thy Father, Who seeth in secret, will repay thee.
- Mt* 15, 8 This people honoureth Me with their lips: but their heart is far from Me.
- 1 C* 14, 15 I will pray with the spirit: I will pray also with the understanding. I will sing with the spirit: I will sing also with the understanding. God is a Spirit, and they that adore Him must adore Him in spirit and in truth. Know ye that the Lord will hear your prayers, if you continue with fastings and prayers in the sight of the Lord. We ought always to pray, and not to faint. Let nothing hinder thee from praying always. Pray without ceasing. Be instant in prayer, watching in it in thanksgiving. Take unto you the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit (which is the Word of God).—By all prayer and supplication praying at all times in the spirit: and in the same watching with all instance and supplication for all the saints.—And for me that speech may be given me, that I may open my mouth with confidence, to make known the mystery of the Gospel.
- Jn* 4, 24
- Jd* 4, 11
- Lx* 18, 1
- Eci* 18, 22
- 1 T* 5, 17
- Ci* 4, 2
- Ep* 6, 17-19

6.—OBJECTS OF PRAYER; FOR WHOM WE SHOULD PRAY.

- Jn* 14, 13 Whatsoever you shall ask the Father in My Name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son.
- Jn* 16, 23-24 Amen, amen I say to you, if you ask the Father anything in My Name, He will give it you.—Hitherto you have not asked anything in My Name: ask, and you shall receive, that your joy may be full. This is the confidence which we have towards Him: that, whatsoever we shall ask according to His will, He heareth us. If you being evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much
- 1 J* 5, 14
- Lx* 11, 13

- more will your Father from, but the labourers are few.—  
 Heaven give the good Spirit Pray ye therefore the Lord  
 to them that ask Him? of the harvest that He send  
*Mt* 9, 37- He saith to His disciples: forth labourers into His har-  
 38 The harvest indeed is great, vest.

**7.—PRAYER TO BE OFFERED FOR ALL, ESPECIALLY  
 FOR KINGS, MAGISTRATES, AND FOR THE  
 HOUSEHOLD OF THE FAITH.**

- 1 Ti* 2, 1-2 I desire first of all that which also I am bound),—  
 supplications, prayers, in- That I may make it mani-  
 tercessions, and thanksgiv- fest as I ought to speak.  
 ings be made by men,—For He that knoweth his brother  
*kings*, and all that are in *1 J* 5, 16  
 high stations: that we may not to death, let him ask,  
 lead a quiet and a peaceable and life shall be given to  
 life in all piety and chastity. him who sinneth not to  
*Po* 21, 1 As the divisions of waters, death. There is a sin unto  
 so the heart of the king is death: for that I say not  
 in the hand of the Lord: that any man ask.  
 whithersoever He will He Pray for one another, that  
 shall turn it. *Ja* 5, 16  
*Cl* 4, 3-4 Praying withal for us also, you may be saved. For the  
 that God may open unto us continual prayer of a just  
 a door of speech to speak man availeth much.  
 the mystery of Christ (for Pray to the Lord for the  
*city*. *Je* 29, 7

**8.—PRAYER TO BE OFFERED ALWAYS, ESPECIALLY  
 IN THE MORNING, IN TIMES OF SADNESS AND  
 OF ADVERSITY, AND AT FIXED HOURS.**

- W* 16, 28 We ought to prevent the the watches pour out thy  
 sun to bless Thee, and adore heart like water before the  
 Thee at the dawning of the face of the Lord.  
 light. O God, my God, to Thee *Po* 62, 1-2  
*Po* 5, 5 In the morning I will do I watch at break of day.  
 stand before Thee, and will For Thee my soul hath  
 see, because Thou art not a thirsted; for Thee my flesh,  
 God that willest iniquity. O how many ways!  
*Ja* 5, 13 Is any of you sad? Let If I have remembered *Po* 62, 7-8  
 him pray. Is he cheerful in Thee upon my bed, I will  
 mind? Let him sing. meditate on Thee in the  
*Po* 49, 15 Call upon Me in the day morning, because Thou hast  
 of trouble. I will deliver been my helper.  
 thee, and thou shalt glorify I rose at midnight to give  
 Me. *Po* 118, 62  
*La* 2, 19 Arise, give praise in the praise to Thee, for the judg-  
 night; in the beginning of ments of thy justification.  
 Seven times a day I have *Po* 118, 164

given praise to Thee, for the judgments of Thy justice.

*De* 6, 10 When Daniel knew this, that is to say, that the law was made, he went into his house: and opening the windows in his upper chamber towards Jerusalem, he knelt down three times a day, and adored, and gave thanks before his God, as he had been accustomed to do before.

*Ac* 2, 42 They were persevering in the doctrine of the Apostles,

and in the communication of the Breaking of Bread, and in prayers.

Peter and John went up into the Temple at the ninth hour of prayer. *Ac* 3, 1

Peter went up to the higher parts of the house to pray about the sixth hour. *Ac* 10, 9

Prayer was made without ceasing by the Church unto God for him. *Ac* 12, 5

When he [Paul] had said these things, kneeling down, he prayed with them all. *Ac* 20, 36

### 9.—INDUCEMENTS TO PRAYER.

*He* 4, 16 Let us go with confidence to the Throne of Grace: that we may obtain mercy, and find grace in seasonable aid.

*Eci* 13, 18 Love God all thy life, and call upon Him for thy salvation.

*La* 2, 18-19 Let tears run down like a torrent day and night: give thyself no rest, and let not the apple of thy eye cease.—Arise, give praise in the night, in the beginning of the watches: pour out thy heart like water before the face of the Lord, lift up thy hands to Him.

*Pv* 16, 3 Lay open thy works to the Lord, and thy thoughts shall be directed.

*Pr* 36, 5 Commit thy way to the

Lord, and trust in Him, and He will do it.

Ask, and it shall be given unto you: seek, and you shall find: knock, and it shall be opened to you.—For every one that asketh, receiveth: and he that seeketh, findeth: and to him that knocketh it shall be opened. *Mt* 7, 7-8

Be nothing solicitous: but in everything, by prayer and supplication, with thanksgiving, let your petitions be made known to God. *Ph* 4, 6

Desire of Him to direct thy ways, and that all thy counsels may abide in Him. *Jb* 4, 20

Cry to Me, and I will hear thee: and I will show thee great things, and sure things which thou knowest not. *Je* 33, 3

### 10.—PETITION THE PRINCIPAL PART OF PRAYER.

*Is* 30, 19 Weeping thou shalt not weep. He will surely have pity on thee at the voice of thy cry: as soon as He shall hear, He will answer thee.

*Is* 65, 24 It shall come to pass that before they call I will hear: as they are yet speaking I will hear. Neither is there any other nation so great, that hath gods so nigh them, as our God is present to all our petitions. *De* 4, 7

- Eci* 2, 12 Who hath continued in His commandment, and hath been forsaken? or who hath called upon Him, and He despised him? are ascended for a memorial in the sight of God. Far from me be this sin *1 K* 12, 23 against the Lord, that I should cease to pray for you.
- Ac* 10, 4 Thy prayers and thy alms

### 11.—IMPEDIMENTS AND HELPS TO PRAYER OF PETITION.

- Ja* 4, 3 You ask, and receive not, because you ask amiss: that you may consume it on your concupiscences. their sins, and will heal their land. Then this wicked man *2 M* 9, 13 [Antiochus] prayed to the Lord, of Whom he was not to obtain mercy.
- Pv* 1, 28-29 Then shall they call upon Me, and I will not hear: they shall rise in the morning and shall not find Me:—Because they have hated instruction, and received not the fear of the Lord. You shall cry out in that day from the face of the king whom you have chosen to yourselves: and the Lord will not hear you in that day, because you desired unto yourselves a king. *1 K* 8, 18
- Pv* 21, 13 He that stoppeth his ear against the cry of the poor shall also cry himself, and shall not be heard. Then shall they cry to the Lord, and He will not hear them: and He will hide His face from them at that time, as they have behaved wickedly in their devices. *M* 3, 4
- Pv* 28, 9 He that turneth away his ears from hearing the law, his prayer shall be an abomination. Prayer is good with fasting and alms, more than to lay up treasures of gold.—For alms delivereth from death, and the same is that which purgeth away sins, and maketh to find mercy and Life Everlasting. *Jb* 12, 8-9
- Jb* 1, 6 Rise up, call upon thy God. My people, being converted, shall make supplication to Me, and seek out My face, and do penance from their most wicked ways: then I will hear from Heaven, and will forgive

### 12.—FRUITS OF PRAYER AS REGARDS THE INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL GOODS OF THE BODY AND MIND.

- Is* 57, 19 I created the fruit of the lips, peace, peace to him that is far off, and to him that is near, said the Lord, and I healed him. her way and ate, and her countenance was no more changed. I will restore to the people a chosen lip, that all may call upon the Name of the Lord, and may serve Him with one shoulder. *So* 3, 9
- 1 K* 1, 18 She [Anna] said: Would to God that Thy handmaid may find grace in Thy eyes! So the woman went on I will pour out upon the *Za* 12, 10

House of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the Spirit of grace and of prayers.

*Ex 34, 29* When Moses came down from the mount Sinai; he held the two tables of the testimony; and he knew not that his face was horned from the conversation of the Lord.

*Jb 12, 12, 14* When thou didst pray with tears, and didst bury the dead, and didst leave thy dinner, and hide the dead by day in thy house, and bury them by night, I offered thy prayer to the Lord. — And now the Lord hath sent me to heal thee, and to deliver Sara thy son's wife from the devil.

*Ge 25, 21* Isaac besought the Lord for his wife, because she was barren: and He heard him, and made Rebecca to conceive.

*Ge 32, 28-29* If thou hast been strong against God, how much more shalt thou prevail against men? — And he blessed him in the same place.

*2 M 14, 15* When the Jews heard of Nicanor's coming, and that the nations were assembled against them, they cast earth upon their heads, and made supplication to Him, Who chose His people, to keep them for ever, and Who protected His portion by evident signs.

*2 M 15, 26-27* Judas, and they that were with him, encountered them, calling upon God by prayers. — So fighting with their hands, but praying to the Lord with their hearts, they slew no less than five-and-thirty thousand, being great-

ly cheered with the Presence of God.

Fear not, Zachary, for thy prayer is heard; and thy wife Elizabeth shall bear thee a son, and thou shalt call his name John. *Lu 1, 13*

An Angel of God, Whose I am, and Whom I serve, stood by me this night, — Saying:

Fear not, Paul: thou must be brought before Cæsar: and behold, God hath given thee all them that sail with thee.

When they had prayed, the place was moved wherein they were assembled: and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spoke the Word of God with confidence. *Ac 27, 23-24*

At midnight, Paul and Silas praying, praised God. *Ac 16, 25*

And they that were in prison heard them. — And suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken. And immediately all the doors were opened, and the bands of all were loosed.

It happened that the father of Publius lay sick of a fever and of a bloody flux. To whom Paul entered in: and when he had prayed, and laid his hands on him, he healed him. *Ac 28, 8*

#### Examples of Prayer:

(1) Our Lord passed nights in Prayer. *Lu 6, 12*

(2) Mary, the Mother of Jesus. *Ac 1, 14*

(3) St. Peter. *Ac 9, 40*

(4) St. Paul. *Ac 28, 8*

(5) St. Stephen. *Ac 7, 59*

(6) St. Zachary. *Lu 1, 13*

(7) St. Ananias. *Ac 9, 10*

(8) St. Cornelius. *Ac 10, 4*

(9) St. Abraham. *Ge 15, 2*

<i>Ge</i> 25, 21	(10) St. Isaac.	(28) Manue.	<i>Jg</i> 13, 8
<i>Ez</i> 14, 15	(11) St. Moses.	(29) Samson.	<i>Jg</i> 15, 18
<i>Jg</i> 6, 30	(12) St. Gideon.	(30) Solomon.	3 <i>K</i> 3, 7
1 <i>K</i> 1, 10	(13) St. Anna.	(31) Banaïas.	3 <i>K</i> 1, 38
1 <i>K</i> 7, 5	(14) St. Samuel.	(32) Jabes.	1 <i>P</i> 4, 10
1 <i>K</i> 23, 10	(15) St. David.	(33) Abia's Army.	2 <i>P</i> 13, 14
3 <i>K</i> 18, 36	(16) St. Elias.	(34) Asa.	2 <i>P</i> 14, 11
4 <i>K</i> 6, 18	(17) St. Eliseus.	(35) Josaphat.	2 <i>P</i> 18, 31
4 <i>K</i> 20, 11	(18) St. Isaias.	(36) Joachaz.	4 <i>K</i> 13, 4
<i>Jb</i> 3, 1	(19) St. Tobias.	(37) Ezechias.	4 <i>K</i> 19, 15
2 <i>M</i> 15, 14	(20) St. Jeremias.	(38) Manasses.	2 <i>P</i> 33, 12
<i>Ba</i> 1, 17	(21) St. Baruch.	(39) Nehemias.	2 <i>E</i> 1, 4
<i>Da</i> 9, 3	(22) St. Daniel.	(40) Jesus, the son of	<i>Eci</i> 23, 1
<i>Da</i> 2, 18	(23) SS. Ananias, Misael, and Azarias.	Sirach.	
<i>Ha</i> 3, 1	(24) St. Habacuc.	(41) The Priests.	2 <i>P</i> 30, 27
<i>Ge</i> 19, 20	(25) Lot.	(42) The Children of	<i>Jg</i> 2, 23
<i>Ge</i> 24, 12	(26) Abraham's Servant.	Israel.	
<i>Ge</i> 32, 11	(27) Jacob.	(43) The Holy Catholic	<i>Ac</i> 12, 5
		Church.	

## 13.—EJACULATORY PRAYERS FOR PARDON OF SIN.

<i>Is</i> 44, 22	Blot out, O Lord, my iniquities as a cloud, and as a mist my sins.	And now, O Lord, think of me, and take not revenge of my sins, neither remember my offences, nor those of my parents.	<i>Jb</i> 3, 3
<i>Mi</i> 7, 19	Have mercy on us, O Lord, and put away our iniquities, and cast all our sins into the bottom of the sea.	Turn to me, O Lord, and deliver my soul: O save me for Thy mercy's sake.	<i>P</i> 6, 5
<i>Ap</i> 1, 5	Wash me from my sins in Thy Blood.	O forgive me, that I may be refreshed before I go hence and be no more.	<i>P</i> 38, 14
<i>Mt</i> 8, 2	Lord, if Thou wilt, Thou canst make me clean.	Evils without number have surrounded me; my iniquities have overtaken me, and I was not able to see. They are multiplied above the hairs of my head; and my heart hath forsaken me.—Be pleased, O Lord, to deliver me: look down, O Lord, to help me.	<i>P</i> 39, 13-14
<i>Is</i> 1, 25	Turn, O Lord, Thy hand to me, and clean purge away my dross, and take away all my tin.	I said: O Lord, be Thou merciful to me: heal my soul, for I have sinned against Thee.	<i>P</i> 40, 5
<i>P</i> 24, 11	For Thy Name's sake, O Lord, Thou wilt pardon my sin: for it is great.	Heal me, O Lord, and I shall be healed: save me, and I shall be saved.	<i>J</i> 17, 14
<i>P</i> 24, 18	See my abjection and my labour; and forgive me all my sins.		
<i>P</i> 129, 3	If Thou, O Lord, wilt mark iniquities: Lord, who shall stand it?		
<i>P</i> 102, 12	As far as the east is from the west, so far hath He removed our iniquities from us.		



## 14.—EJACULATIONS FOR TIMES OF ADVERSITY.

- Is* 63, 15-16 Look down from Heaven, and behold from Thy Holy Habitation and the Place of Thy glory: where is Thy zeal, and the strength, the multitude of Thy bowels, and of Thy mercies? They have held back themselves from me.—For Thou art our Father: Thou, O Lord, art our Father, our Redeemer, from Everlasting is Thy Name.
- Is* 64, 8-9 And now, O Lord, Thou art our Father, and we are clay: and Thou art our Maker, and we all are the works of Thy hands. — Be not very angry, O Lord, and remember no longer our iniquity: behold, see we are all Thy people.
- La* 1, 9 Behold, O Lord, my affliction, because the enemy is lifted up.
- Je* 18, 19 Give heed to me, O Lord, and hear the voice of my adversaries.
- Ps* 68, 2 Save me, O God: for the waters are come in even unto the soul.
- Ps* 68, 14-16 In the multitude of Thy mercy hear me.—Draw me out of the mire, that I may not stick fast: deliver me from them that hate me, and out of the deep waters. — Let not the tempest of water drown me, nor the deep swallow me up: and let not the pit shut her mouth upon me.
- Arise, why sleepest Thou, O Lord? Arise, and cast us not off to the end.
- Bow down Thy ear to me: make haste to deliver me. Be Thou unto me a God, a Protector, and a House of Refuge to save me.
- Lord, save us, we perish. Lord, save me. I am needy and poor; O God, help me. Thou art my Helper and my Deliverer: O Lord, make no delay.
- Lord, help me. Son of David, have mercy on me.
- Master, doth it not concern Thee that we perish? Lord, behold, he whom Thou lovest is sick.
- Our God is our Refuge and Strength: a Helper in troubles, which have come upon us heavily.
- Save me, O God, by Thy Name, and judge me in Thy strength.
- Turn not away Thy Face from me: in the day when I am in trouble, incline Thy ear to me. In what day soever I shall call upon Thee, hear me speedily.
- Ps* 43, 23  
*Ps* 33, 3  
*Mt* 8, 25  
*Mt* 14, 30  
*Ps* 69, 6  
*Mt* 15, 25  
*Mt* 20, 31  
*Mk* 4, 38  
*Jn* 11, 3  
*Ps* 45, 1  
*Ps* 53, 1  
*Ps* 101, 3

## 15.—EJACULATIONS OF THE SUPPLICANT IMPLORING TO BE HEARD.

- La* 3, 56 Thou hast heard my voice: turn not away Thy ear from my sighs and cries.
- Jd* 9, 16-17 The prayer of the humble and the meek hath always pleased Thee.—O God of the heavens, Creator of the waters, and Lord of the whole creation, hear me a poor wretch making supplication to Thee, and presuming on Thy mercy.

**Ps 5, 1-2** Give ear, O Lord, unto my words, understand my cry. Harken unto the voice of my prayer, O my King and my God.

**Ps 64, 6** Hear us, O God our Saviour, Who art the hope of all the ends of the earth, and in the sea afar off.

**Ps 68, 17-18** Hear me, O Lord, for Thy mercy is kind; look upon me according to the multitude of Thy tender mercies.—And turn not away Thy Face from Thy servant: for I am in trouble, O hear me speedily.

**Ps 140, 2** Let my prayer be directed as incense in Thy sight, and the lifting up of my hands as the evening sacrifice.

**Ps 142, 7** Hear me speedily, O Lord: my spirit hath fainted away. Turn not away Thy Face from me, lest I be like unto them that go down into the pit.

#### PRAYERS OF OUR LORD IN THE PSALMS.

**Ps 39, 7-10** 1. For His Work of Redemption:

Sacrifice and oblation Thou didst not desire; but Thou hast pierced ears for Me.

Burnt-offering and sin-offering Thou didst not require: then said

I, Behold, I come.

In the head of the Book it is written of Me that I should do Thy will: O My God, I have desired it, and Thy Law in the midst of My Heart.

I have declared Thy justice in a Great Church: lo, I will not restrain My lips: O Lord, Thou knowest it.

2. For His Church. **Ps 88**

3. For His Father's Protection. **Ps 139**

4. His Thanksgiving. **Ps 39 & 115**

5. For Patience in Afflictions. **Ps 140**

6. Under Persecution. **Ps 17**

7. Against His Persecutors. **Ps 34**

8. Under Sorrows. **Ps 56**

9. Under Sufferings. **Ps 30**

10. Under Calumny. **Ps 55**

11. Confidence in God **Ps 58**

under Trials.  
12. When betrayed by Judas. **Ps 108**

13. In His Agony in the Garden. **Ps 54**

14. On the Cross. **Ps 21**

15. In His Agony on the Cross. **Ps 87**

16. When Dying on the Cross. **Ps 68**

17. Of His Coming in Judgment. **Ps 74**

18. Of the Coming of the Kingdom of His Glory. **Ps 60**

#### 16.—MEDITATION AND CONTEMPLATION OF THE LAW, THE GLORY, AND THE WONDERFUL WORKS OF GOD.

**Ps 118, 148** Mine eyes have looked unto Thee before the morning, that I might think upon Thy words.

**Ps 118, 97** How have I loved Thy law, O Lord! it is my meditation all the day long.

I have lifted up mine eyes **Ps 120, 1** unto the Hills, from whence my help shall come.

That which is at present **2 C 4, 17-** momentary and light of our **18** tribulation worketh for us above measure exceedingly

an eternal weight of glory:—While we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen. For the things which are seen are temporal: but the things which are not seen are eternal.

*Ecl* 7, 14 Consider the works of God, that no man can correct whom he hath despised.

*Pz* 91, 5 Thou hast given me, O Lord, delight in Thy doings: and in the works of Thy hands shall I rejoice.

*Ecl* 3, 22 The things that God hath commanded thee, think on them always.

*Ecl* 7, 37 Let thy thoughts be upon the precepts of God, and meditate continually on His Commandments; and He will give thee a heart, and the desire of Wisdom shall be given to thee.

*W* 9, 15 The corruptible body is a load upon the soul, and the earthly habitation presseth down the mind that museth upon many things.

*Ag* 1, 5 Thus saith the Lord of Hosts: Set your hearts to consider your ways.

*Ecl* 14, 22 Blessed is the man that shall continue in wisdom and shall meditate in His justice, and in his mind shall think of the All-Seeing Eye of God.

*Dt* 6, 5-7 Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with thy whole heart, and with thy whole soul, and with thy whole strength.—And these words that I command thee this day shall be in thy heart.—And thou shalt tell them to thy children, and thou shalt meditate upon them sitting in thy house, and walking on

thy journey, sleeping and rising.

The Lord also said to *Num* 15, 37-39 Moses: Speak to the children of Israel, and thou shalt tell them to make to themselves fringes in the corners of their garments, putting in them ribbons of blue.—That when they shall see them they may remember all the Commandments of the Lord, and not follow their own thoughts and eyes, going astray after divers things.

I thought upon the days of old: and I had in my mind the eternal years. *Pz* 76, 6

I meditated on Thy Commandments, which I loved. *Pz* 118, 47

In all thy works remember thy last end, and thou shalt never sin. *Ecl* 7, 40

Remember the wrath that shall be at the last day, and the time of repaying when He shall turn away His face. *Ecl* 18, 24

For the rest, brethren, whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things are modest, whatsoever just, whatsoever holy, whatsoever lovely, whatsoever of good fame, if there be any virtue, if any praise of discipline, think on these things. *Ph* 4, 8

Trouble and anguish have found me; Thy Commandments are my meditation. *Pz* 118, 143

In all thy ways think on Him, and He will direct thy steps. *Pv* 3, 6

Evil men think not on judgment: but they that seek after the Lord take notice of all things. *Pz* 28, 5

I remembered the works of the Lord: for I will be mindful of Thy wonders from *Pz* 76, 12-13

the beginning.—And I will endure the Cross, despising the shame, and now sitteth on the right hand of the Throne of God.—For think diligently upon Him that endured such opposition from sinners against Himself: that you be not wearied, having joy set before Him, fainting in your minds.

*He 12, 2-3* Let us run by patience to the fight proposed to us;—Looking on Jesus, the Author and Finisher of faith, Who, that you be not wearied, having joy set before Him,

endured the Cross, despising the shame, and now sitteth on the right hand of the Throne of God.—For think diligently upon Him that endured such opposition from sinners against Himself: that you be not wearied, having joy set before Him, fainting in your minds.

### 17.—PEACE OF MIND AND PURITY OF HEART NECESSARY FOR MEDITATION AND CONTEMPLATION.

*Ps 45, 11* Be still, and see that I am God: I will be exalted among the nations, and I will be exalted in the earth.

*La 3, 28* He shall sit solitary and hold his peace, because he hath taken it upon himself.

*Mt 6, 6* When thou shalt pray, enter into thy chamber, and having shut the door, pray to thy Father in secret: and thy Father, Who seeth in secret, will repay thee.

*Ca 5, 2* I sleep, and my heart watcheth.

*Ps 54, 8* Lo, I have gone far off, fly-

ing away, and I remained in the wilderness.

Blessed are the clean of heart, for they shall see God. *Mt 5, 8*

Follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which no man shall see God. *He 12, 14*

A good man out of the good treasure of his heart bringeth forth that which is good: and an evil man out of the evil treasure bringeth forth that which is evil. For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh. *Lu 6, 45*

### 18.—EFFECTS AND FRUITS OF CONTEMPLATION OF DIVINE THINGS.

*W 6, 13, 16* Wisdom is glorious, and never fadeth away.—To think upon her is perfect understanding: and he that watcheth for her shall quickly be secure.

*Da 10, 16* O my Lord, at the sight of Thee my joints are loosed, and no strength hath remained in me.

*Ps 3, 20* Our conversation is in Heaven.

*Ps 1, 2-3* His will is in the Law of the Lord, and on His Law he shall meditate day and

night.—And he shall be like a tree which is planted near the running waters, which shall bring forth its fruit in due season. His leaf shall not fall off: and all whatsoever he shall do shall prosper.

Thou shalt hide them in the secret of Thy face from the disturbance of men: Thou shalt protect them in Thy Tabernacle from the strife of tongues. *Ps 30, 21*

We all, beholding the glory *2 C 3, 18*

of the Lord with open face, are transformed into the same image from glory to glory, as by the Spirit of the Lord.

*Jn* 5, 35 He was a burning and a shining light.

*Ps* 144, 7-8 They shall publish the memory of the abundance of Thy sweetness, and shall rejoice in Thy justice.—The Lord is gracious and merciful: patient, and plenteous in mercy.

Come, my beloved, let us go forth into the field, let us abide in the villages.—Let

us get up early to the vineyards, let us see if the vineyard flourish, if the flowers be ready to bring forth fruits, if the pomegranates flourish.

Blessed is the man that shall continue in wisdom, and that shall meditate in His justice, and in his mind shall think of the All-Seeing Eye of God. *Ca* 7, 11  
12  
*W* 14, 22

### 19.—PLACE AND CIRCUMSTANCES SUITABLE FOR MEDITATION AND PRAYER.

*Luk* 24, 53 They were always in the Temple, praising and blessing God.

*Ac* 2, 46 All they that believed weretogether,—And continuing daily with one accord in the Temple.

*Ge* 24, 62-63 At the same time Isaac was walking along the way to the well which is called Of the living and the seeing: for he dwelt in the south country.—And he was gone forth to meditate in the field, the day being now well spent.

*Nu* 16, 42-43 When there arose a sedition, and the tumult increased, Moses and Aaron fled to the Tabernacle of the Covenant.—And when they were gone into it, the cloud covered it, and the glory of the Lord appeared.

*Nu* 16, 45-46 As they were lying on the ground,—Moses said to Aaron: Take the censer, and putting fire in it from the Altar, put incense upon it, and go quickly to the people to pray for them: for already wrath is gone out from the Lord,

and the plague rageth.—When Aaron had done this, and had run to the midst of the multitude which the burning fire was now destroying, he offered the incense:—And standing between the dead and the living, he prayed for the people: and the plague ceased.

Let not the Book of this Law depart from thy mouth: but thou shalt meditate on it day and night, that thou mayst observe and do all things that are written in it: then shalt thou direct thy way, and understand it. *Js* 1, 8

O how have I loved Thy Law, O Lord! It is my meditation all the day. *Ps* 118, 97

My eyes to Thee have prevented the morning, that I might meditate on Thy words. *Ps* 118, 148

I meditated in the night with my own heart: and I was exercised, and I swept my spirit. *Ps* 76, 7

Teach your children that they meditate on them [the Commandments] when thou *Dt* 11, 19-20

- sittest in thy house, and when thou walkest on the way, and when thou liest down and risest up:—Thou shalt write them upon the posts and doors of thy house.
- Ps* 62, 3 In a desert land, and where there is no way and no water, so in the Sanctuary have I come before Thee, to see Thy power and Thy glory.
- Ac* 16, 13 Upon the sabbath-day we went forth without the gate by a riverside, where it seemed that there was prayer.
- Ps* 54, 18 Evening and morning and at noon I will speak and declare: and He shall hear my voice.
- 2 P* 7, 15-16 My eyes shall be open, and My ears to the prayer of him that shall pray in this place.
- For I have chosen and have sanctified this place, that My Name may be there for ever, and My Eyes and My Heart may remain there perpetually.
- Kneeling down, He prayed. *Lu* 22, 41  
He fell upon His Face, *Mt* 26, 39  
praying.
- Solomon stood before the 3 *K* 8, 22  
Altar of the Lord in the sight of the assembly of Israel, and spread forth His hands to Heaven.
- I will rejoice under the co- *Ps* 62, 8-9  
vert of Thy wings,—My soul hath stuck close to Thee: Thy right hand hath received me.
- Rising very early, going *Mt* 1, 35  
out, He went into a desert place: and there He prayed.
- He fell flat on the ground. *Mt* 14, 35

## 20.—EXAMPLES OF MEDITATION.

- Ps* 118, 15-16 I will meditate on Thy Commandments, and I will consider Thy ways.—I will think upon Thine ordinances: I will not forget Thy words.
- Ps* 118, 23 Princes did sit and speak against me: but Thy servant was occupied in Thy statutes.
- Ps* 118, 24 Thy testimonies are my meditation, and Thine ordinances are my counsel.
- Ps* 118, 47-48 I meditated on Thy Commandments, which I loved. And I lifted up my hands unto Thy Commandments, which I have loved: and I meditated on Thine ordinances.
- Because I have not known *Ps* 70, 16  
learning, I will go in to the powers of the Lord: O Lord, I will be mindful of Thy justice alone.
- Thou hast taught me, O *Ps* 70, 17-18  
God, from my youth: and till now I will declare Thy wondrous works, and unto old age and gray hairs.—O God, forsake me not, until I show forth Thine arm to all the generation that is to come.
- Thou hast given me, O *Ps* 91, 5  
Lord, delight in Thy doings: and in the works of Thy hands shall I rejoice.

## 21.—AN OATH LAWFUL UNDER THE PROPER CONDITIONS; ALL RASH OATHS FORBIDDEN.

- Je* 4, 2 Thou shalt swear: As the Lord liveth, in truth, and in judgment, and in justice: and the Gentiles shall bless Him, and shall praise Him.
- Men swear by One greater *He* 6, 16

than themselves: and an oath for confirmation is the end of all their controversy.

uttereth a lie.

*Ez* 23, 9-14

Let not thy mouth be accustomed to swearing: for in it there are many falls.—And let not the naming of God be usual in thy mouth, and meddle not with the names of saints, for thou shalt not escape free from them.—For as a slave daily put to the question is never without a blue mark, so every one that sweareth, and nameth, shall not be wholly pure from sin.

I say to you not to swear at all: neither by Heaven, for it is the Throne of God:—Nor by the earth, for it is His footstool: nor by Jerusalem, for it is the City of the Great King:—Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair white or black.—But let your speech be: Yea, yea: No, no: and that which is over and above these is of evil.

—A man that sweareth much shall be filled with iniquity, and a scourge shall not depart from his house.—And if he make it void, his sin shall be upon him: and if he dissemble it, he offendeth double:—And if he swear in vain, he shall not be justified, for his house shall be filled with his punishment.

He that sweareth by the Altar sweareth by it, and by all things that are upon it:—And whosoever shall swear by the Temple sweareth by it, and by Him that dwelleth in it:—And he that sweareth by Heaven sweareth by the Throne of God, and by Him that sitteth thereon.

*Pv* 25, 18

A man that beareth false witness against his neighbour is like a dart and a sword and a sharp sword.

Above all things, my brethren, swear not: neither by Heaven, nor by the earth, nor by any other oath. But let your speech be: Yea, yea: No, no: that you fall not under judgment.

*Pv* 14, 5

A faithful witness will not lie, but a deceitful witness

From the heart come forth false testimonies.

## 22.—PERJURY FORBIDDEN AND PUNISHED.

*De* 5, 20

Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour.

for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that shall take the Name of the Lord his God in vain.

*Ex* 33, 1

Thou shalt not receive the voice of a lie: neither shalt thou join thy hand to bear false witness for a wicked person.

The person that sweareth, that he would do either evil or good, and bindeth the

*Pv* 19, 9

A false witness shall not be unpunished: and he that speaketh lies shall perish.

same with an oath and his word, and having forgotten it afterwards, understandeth

*Ex* 20, 7

Thou shalt not take the Name of the Lord thy God

his offence,—Let him do penance for his sin.

- Le 19, 12** Thou shalt not swear falsely by My Name, nor profane the Name of thy God. I am the Lord.
- Pr 14, 5** He that sweareth to his neighbour, and deceiveth not, shall dwell in Thy Tabernacle.
- Pr 23, 3-4** Who shall ascend into the Mount of the Lord? or who shall stand in His Holy Place? He that hath clean hands and a pure heart: who hath not taken his soul in vain, nor sworn deceitfully to his neighbour.
- Za 8, 17** Let none of you imagine evil in your hearts against his friend, and love not a false oath: for all these are the things that I hate, saith the Lord.
- Za 5, 3** He said to me: This is the curse that goeth forth over the face of the earth: for every thief shall be judged as is there written: and every one that sweareth in like manner shall be judged by it.
- Faith is lost, and is taken away from their mouth.  
I will be a speedy witness against false swearers.
- Examples of False Witness and Deceit:**
- (1) Satan. *Ge 3, 4*
  - (2) Our Lord's accusers. *Mt 14, 56*
  - (3) Herod. *Mt 2, 8*
  - (4) The Roman soldiers. *Mt 23, 13*
  - (5) Ananias and Sapphira. *Ac 5, 1*
  - (6) St. Stephen's accusers. *Ac 6, 11*
  - (7) St. Paul's accusers. *Ac 16, 20*
  - (8) The Cretians. *Ti 1, 12*
  - (9) Cain. *Ge 4, 9*
  - (10) Joseph's brethren. *Ge 37, 31*
  - (11) Putiphar's wife. *Ge 39, 14*
  - (12) Magicians. *Ex 8, 19*
  - (13) Gabaonites. *Js 9, 9*
  - (14) Doeg. *1 K 22, 10*
  - (15) Jeroboam. *3 K 14, 2*
  - (16) The old Prophet. *1 K 13, 11*
  - (17) Giezi. *4 K 5, 21*
  - (18) Samaritans. *1 E 4, 12*
  - (19) The Jews. *Mt 11, 19*
  - (20) St. Jeremias's enemies. *Je 37, 13*

### 23.—VOWS MADE TO GOD BY NO MEANS TO BE RETRACTED.

- Dt 23, 21-23** When thou hast made a vow to the Lord thy God, thou shalt not delay to pay it, because the Lord thy God will require it.—And if thou delay, it shall be imputed to thee for a sin. If thou wilt not promise, thou shalt be without sin.—But that which is once gone out of thy lips thou shalt observe, and shalt do as thou hast promised to the Lord thy God, and hast spoken with thy own will and with thy own mouth.
- Pr 75, 12** Vow, and pay unto the Lord your God: bring presents, all ye that are round about Him.
- If thou hast vowed any thing to God, defer not to pay it; for an unfaithful and foolish promise displeaseth Him: but whatsoever thou hast vowed, pay it:—And it is much better not to vow, than after a vow not to perform the things promised.—Give not thy mouth to cause thy flesh to sin; and say not before the angel: There is no providence: lest God be



angry at thy words, and destroy all the works of thy hands.

1 *Ti* 5, 11- But the younger widows avoid. For when they have grown wanton in Christ, they will marry:—Having damnation, because they have made void their first faith. *P* 20, 25

24.—THE NECESSITY OF KEEPING VOWS MADE TO GOD.

*Ge* 28, 20- Jacob made a vow, saying: same will I offer a holocaust to the Lord.

22 If God shall be with me, and shall keep me in the way by which I walk, and shall give me bread to eat and raiment to put on,—And I shall return prosperously to my father's house, the Lord shall be my God:—And this stone, which I have set up for a title, shall be called the House of God: and of all things that thou shalt give to me, I will offer tithes to thee.

*Nu* 21, 2-3 Israel, binding himself by vow to the Lord, said: If Thou wilt deliver this people into my hand, I will utterly destroy their cities. — And the Lord heard the prayers of Israel, and delivered up the Chanaanite; and they cut them off and destroyed their cities: and they called the name of that place Horma, that is to say, Anathema.

*Jg* 11, 30- Jephthe made a vow to the Lord, saying: If Thou wilt deliver the children of Ammon into my hands,—Whosoever shall first come forth out of the doors of my house, and shall meet me when I return in peace from the children of Ammon, the

The things which his father had vowed, and he himself had vowed, he brought into the house of the Lord, gold and silver, and vessels of divers uses.

The people rejoiced when they promised their offerings willingly, because they offered them to the Lord with all their heart: and David the king rejoiced also with a great joy

The children of Israel and Juda, that dwelt in the cities of Juda, brought in the tithes of oxen and sheep, and the tithes of holy things, which they had vowed to the Lord their God: and carrying them all, made many heaps.

They cast Jonas into the sea.—And the men feared the Lord exceedingly, and sacrificed victims to the Lord, and made vows.

So Heliodorus after he had offered a sacrifice to God, and made great vows to Him, that had granted him life, and given thanks to Onias, taking his troops with him, returned to the king.

25.—TITHES AND OTHER OFFERINGS.

*Ma* 1, 8, 14 If you offer the blind for sick, is it not evil? Offer it sacrifice, is it not evil? and to thy prince, if he will be if you offer the lame and the pleased with it, or if he will

C C

regard thy face, saith the Lord of Hosts.—Cursed is the deceitful man, that hath in his flock a male, and making a vow offereth in sacrifice that which is feeble to the Lord: for I am a Great King, saith the Lord of Hosts, and My Name is dreadful among the Gentiles.

*Le 27, 30* Tithes of the land, whether of corn or of the fruits of trees, are the Lord's, and are sanctified to Him.

*Nu 18, 29* All the things that you shall offer of the tithes, and shall separate for the gifts of the Lord, shall be the best and choicest things.

*Le 27, 31-33* If any man will redeem his tithes, he shall add the fifth part of them.—Of all the tithes of oxen, and sheep, and goats that pass under the shepherd's rod, every tenth that cometh shall be sanctified to the Lord.—It shall not be chosen neither good nor bad, neither shall it be changed for another. If any man change it, both

that which was changed, and that for which it was changed, shall be sanctified to the Lord, and shall not be re-deemed.

Wo to you, Scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! because you tithe the mint, and anise, and cummin, and have left the weightier things of the Law. *Mt 23, 23*

I perceived that the portions of the Levites had not been given them. *2 E 13, 10*

Shall a man afflict God, for you afflict me? And you have said: Wherein do we afflict thee? in tithes and in first-fruits. *Ma 3, 8*

Bring all the tithes unto the storehouse, that there may be meat in My House, and try Me in this, saith the Lord: if I open not unto you the flood-gates of Heaven, and pour you out a blessing even to abundance. *Ma 3, 10*

Abram gave Melchisedech the tithes of all. *Ge 14, 20*

Of all things that thou shalt give to me, I will offer tithes to thee. *Ge 28, 22*

## 26.—OBSERVANCE OF FEAST DAYS. GREATER INDULGENCE ALLOWED ON THOSE DAYS, WITHIN BOUNDS OF MODERATION.

*Ex 20, 8* Remember that thou keep Day, and call the sabbath holy the sabbath-day. *Day, and call the sabbath delightful, and the Holy of the Lord glorious, and glorify Him, while thou dost not*

*Le 23, 3* Six days shall ye do work: the seventh day, because it is the rest of the sabbath, shall be called holy. You shall do no work on that day: it is the Sabbath of the Lord in all your habitations. *thy own ways, and thy own will is not found to speak a word:—Then shalt thou be delighted in the Lord, and I will lift thee up above the*

*Is 58, 13-14* If thou turn away thy foot from the sabbath, from doing thy own will in My Holy *high places of the earth, and will feed thee with the inheritance of Jacob thy father.*

For the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it.

*Je* 17, 21, 24-25 Take heed to your souls, and carry no burdens on the sabbath-day: and bring them not in by the gates of Jerusalem:—If you will hearken to Me, saith the Lord, to bring in no burdens by the gates of this City on the sabbath-day, and if you will sanctify the sabbath-day, to do no work therein:—Then shall there enter in by the gates of this City kings and princes, sitting upon the throne of David, and riding in chariots and on horses, they and their princes, the men of Juda, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem: and this City shall be inhabited for ever.

*Je* 17, 27 If you will not hearken to Me, to sanctify the sabbath-day, and not to carry burdens, and not to bring them in by the gates of Jerusalem on the sabbath-day, I will kindle a fire in the gates thereof, and it shall devour the houses of Jerusalem, and it shall not be quenched.

*2 Es* 10 Nehemias said to them: Go, eat fat meats, and drink sweet wine, and send portions to them that have not prepared for themselves: because it is the Holy Day of the Lord, and be not sad: for the joy of the Lord is our strength.

*To* 2, 1-2 When there was a festival of the Lord, and a good dinner was prepared in Tobias's house,—He said to his son: Go, and bring some of our tribe that fear God, to feast with us.

**Jewish Feasts and their figurative meaning.\***

**A.—DAILY.**

- (1) The Perpetual Sacrifice of a Lamb slain morning and evening, *figuring the Perpetuity of Christ's Presence in the Church.* (*He* 13, 8.) *Le* 23, 35

**B.—WEEKLY.**

- (2) The Solemnity of the Sabbath, *figuring our spiritual Rest through Christ.* (*He* 4, 4.) *Le* 23, 36

**C.—MONTHLY.**

- (3) Feast of the New Moon, *figuring the illumination of the early Church through Christ's ministry.* *Nu* 28, 14

**D.—YEARLY.**

- (4) Feast of the Pasch, *figuring the death of Christ for the redemption of the world.* (*1 Co* 5, 7.) *Ex* 12, 3
- (5) Feast of Pentecost, *figuring the Descent of the Holy Ghost.* *Dt* 16, 9
- (6) Feast of Trumpets, *figuring the preaching of the Apostles.* *Le* 23, 24
- (7) Feast of Expiation, *figuring the cleansing of the Christian People from sin.* *Le* 16, 30
- (8) Feast of Tabernacles, *figuring our journey through this life from virtue to virtue.* *L* 23, 43
- (9) Feast of Ingathering, *figuring the gathering* *Dt* 16, 13

\* See St. Thomas, P. I. quest. cii. art. iv.

*in of the faithful into  
our Heavenly Home.*

**B.—OTHER FEASTS AND  
CEREMONIES.**

- |           |   |   |           |
|-----------|---|---|-----------|
| 3 K8, 65  | (10) Feast of the Dedication of Solomon's Temple.   | (14) The Eating of the Paschal Lamb, <i>figuring the Sacrament of the Holy Eucharist.</i>                   | Ex 12, 8  |
| Es 9, 31  | (11) Feast of Lots.   | (15) The Purifications, <i>figuring the Sacrament of Penance.</i>   | Ex 30, 18 |
| Dt 31, 11 | (12) Reading of the Law aloud to the People every seventh year.                           | (16) Consecration of the Priests, <i>figuring the Sacrament of Holy Orders.</i>                             | Ex 28, 41 |
| Ge 17, 13 | (13) The Covenant of Circumcision, <i>figuring the Sacrament of Baptism.</i> (1 C 2, 11.) | (17) The Covenant Sacrifice offered once for all in the desert, <i>figuring the Sacrifice of the Cross.</i> | Ex 24, 8  |

**27.—GOD TO BE GLORIFIED AND PRAISED WITH ALL  
OUR STRENGTH : MAN CANNOT GO FAR ENOUGH.**

- |               |  |  |   |
|---------------|--|--|---|
| Eci 39, 19-21 | Send forth flowers as the lily, and yield a smell, and bring forth leaves in grace, and praise with canticles, and bless the Lord in His works.—Magnify His Name, and give glory to Him with the voice of your lips, and with the canticles of your mouths, and with harps: and in praising Him you shall say in this manner:—All the works of the Lord are exceeding good.  | You that are mindful of the Lord, give Him no silence till he establish Jerusalem.   | Is 62, 6  |
| Eci 17, 25-28 | Go to the side of the holy age, with them that live and give praise to God.—Tarry not in the error of the ungodly; give glory before death. Praise perisheth from the dead as nothing.—Give thanks whilst thou art living: whilst thou art alive and in health thou shalt give thanks, and shalt praise God, and shalt glory in His mercies.—How great is the mercy of the Lord, and His forgiveness to them that turn to Him! | Be ye filled with the Holy Spirit;—Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual canticles, singing and making melody in your hearts to the Lord.<br>Let the Word of Christ dwell in you abundantly, in all wisdom: teaching and admonishing one another in psalms, hymns, and spiritual canticles, singing in grace in your hearts to God.<br>By Him let us offer the sacrifice of praise always to God; that is to say, the fruit of lips confessing to His Name.<br>Is any of you sad? let him pray. Is he cheerful in mind? let him sing.<br>The Lord is great, and exceedingly to be praised: He is to be feared above all gods.<br>Who shall declare the powers of the Lord? who shall set forth all His praises? | Ep 5, 18-19<br>Cl 3, 16<br>He 13, 15<br>Ja 5, 13<br>Ps 95, 4<br>Ps 105, 2 |

28.—MEN TO BE PRAISED FOR VIRTUE ONLY  
AFTER DEATH.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><i>Eci</i> 44, 1 Let us now praise men of renown, and our fathers in their generation.</p> <p><i>Eci</i> 44, 15 Let the people show forth their wisdom, and the Church declare their praise.</p> <p><i>Eci</i> 21, 18 A man of sense will praise every wise word he shall hear, and will apply it to himself.</p> <p><i>Eci</i> 27, 8 Praise not a man before he speaketh, for this is the trial of men.</p> <p><i>Eci</i> 11, 30 Praise not any man before death, for a man is known</p> | <p>by his children.</p> <p>As silver is tried in the <i>Ps</i> 27, 21<br/>fining-pot, and gold in the furnace, so a man is tried by the mouth of him that praiseth.</p> <p>Give her of the fruit of <i>Ps</i> 31, 31<br/>her hands, and let her works praise her in the gates.</p> <p>Praise not a man for his <i>Eci</i> 11, 2-3<br/>beauty, neither despise a man for his look.—The bee is small among flying things, but her fruit hath the chiefest sweetness.</p> |
|--|--|

**29.—DIVINATIONS, AUGURIES, SOOTHSAYING  
FORBIDDEN BY GOD.**

- |                    |   |  |
|--------------------|---|--|
| <i>Eci</i> 34, 5-6 | Deceitful divinations, and lying omens, and the dreams of evildoers are vanity.—And the heart fancieth as that of a woman in travail: except it be a vision sent forth from the Most High, set not thy heart upon them. | them: I am the Lord your God.  |
| <i>Je</i> 10, 2    | Learn not according to the ways of the Gentiles; and be not afraid of the signs of heaven, which the heathens fear.   | Let there not be found among you any one that shall expiate his son or daughter, making them to pass through the fire; or that consulteth soothsayers, or observeth dreams and omens; neither let there be any wizard,—Nor charmer, nor any one that consulteth pythonic spirits or fortune-tellers, or that seeketh the truth from the dead.—For the Lord abhorreth all these things. |
| <i>Le</i> 19, 31   | Go not aside after wizards, neither ask anything of soothsayers, to be defiled by   | <i>De</i> 18, 10-12  |

### 30.—EFFECTS, EVILS, AND PUNISHMENTS OF SINS OPPOSED TO RELIGION.

- Is 47, 12-14** Stand now with thy enchanters, and with the multitude of thy sorceries, in which thou hast laboured from thy youth, if so be it may profit thee anything, or if thou mayest become stronger.—Thou hast failed in the multitude of thy counsels: let now the astrologers stand and save thee, they that gazed at the stars and counted the months, that from them they might tell

- the things that shall come to thee.—Behold, they are as stubble, fire hath burnt them; they shall not deliver themselves from the power of the flames: there are no coals wherewith they may be warmed, nor fire that they may sit thereat.
- Is* 44, 25 I am the Lord, that make void the tokens of diviners, and make the soothsayers mad.
- Ex* 22, 18 Wizards thou shalt not suffer to live.
- Le* 20, 6 The soul that shall go aside after magicians and soothsayers, and shall commit fornication with them, I will set My face against that soul, and destroy it out of the midst of its people.
- Is* 2, 6 Thou hast cast off Thy people, the House of Jacob, because they are filled as in times past, and have had soothsayers, as the Philistines.
- Sorcerers shall have their portion in the pool burning with fire and brimstone, which is the second death.
- Elias said to Ochozias: 4 *K* 1, 16 Thus saith the Lord: Because thou hast sent messengers to consult Beelzebub the god of Accaron, as though there were not a God in Israel of Whom thou mightest inquire the word, therefore from the bed on which thou art gone up thou shalt not come down, but thou shalt surely die.
- Many of them who had followed curious arts brought together their books, and burnt them before all; and counting the price of them, they found the money to be fifty thousand pieces of silver.

### 31.—EVILS OF BLASPHEMY; ITS PROHIBITION AND PUNISHMENTS.

- Mk* 3, 29-29 Amen I say to you, that all sins shall be forgiven unto the sons of men, and the blasphemies wherewith they shall blaspheme:—But he that shall blaspheme against the Holy Ghost shall never have forgiveness, but shall be guilty of an everlasting sin.
- Eci* 23, 15 There is also another speech opposite to death: let it not be found in the inheritance of Jacob.
- Le* 24, 15-16 The man that curseth his God shall bear his sin; and he that blasphemeth the Name of the Lord, dying let him die:—All the multitude shall stone him, whether he be a native or a stranger.
- Lay you all away anger, indignation, malice, blasphemy.
- Examples of Blasphemy:
- (1) Herod's Soldiers blaspheme Christ. *Lu* 22, 65
  - (2) The People blaspheme Christ on the Cross. *Lu* 23, 35
  - (3) The Impenitent Thief blasphemes Christ. *Lu* 23, 39
  - (4) The Blasphemy against the Holy Ghost. *Mk* 3, 29
  - (5) Hymeneus and Alexander. *1 T* 1, 20

- |                  |   |                          |                   |
|------------------|---|--------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Ac</i> 12, 22 | (6) Herod's Courtiers.                          | (11) Semei.              | <i>2 K</i> 16, 5  |
| <i>Ac</i> 13, 45 | (7) The Jews.                                   | (12) Rabsaces blasphemes | <i>2 K</i> 18, 22 |
| <i>Ac</i> 18, 6  | (8) The Jews at Corinth.                        | the Lord.                |                   |
| <i>Le</i> 24, 16 | (9) An Israelite stoned to death for Blasphemy. | (13) The forty-two Boys  | <i>4 K</i> 2, 23  |
|                  |   | devoured by two bears.   |                   |
| <i>2 K</i> 6, 31 | (10) Joram.                                     | (14) The Fool.           | <i>Po</i> 13, 1   |

32.—PARENTS TO BE HONOURED, OBEYED ; THEIR  
VIRTUES TO BE IMITATED.

- Po* 1, 8-9 My son, hear the instruction of thy father, and forsake not the law of thy mother:—That grace may be added to thy head, and a chain of gold to thy neck.
- Po* 23, 22 Harken to thy father that begot thee, and despise not thy mother when she is old.
- De* 5, 16 Honour thy father and mother, as the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, that thou mayest live a long time, and it may be well with thee in the land which the Lord thy God will give thee.
- Le* 19, 3 Let every one fear his father and his mother.
- Tb* 4, 3 Thou shalt honour thy mother all the days of her life.
- Po* 4, 1 Hear, ye children, the instruction of a father, and attend, that you may know prudence.
- Po* 10, 1 A wise son maketh the father glad; but a foolish son is the sorrow of his mother.
- Po* 7, 1 My son, keep My words, and lay up My precepts with thee.
- Po* 3, 1-2 My son, forget not My law, and let thy heart keep My Commandments.—For they shall add to thee length of days, and years of life and peace.
- Po* 6, 20 My son, keep the commandments of thy father, and forsake not the law of thy mother.
- A wise son maketh a father joyful; but the foolish man despiseth his mother.
- He that afflicteth his father, and chaseth away his mother, is infamous and unhappy.
- He that curseth his father and mother, his lamp shall be put out in the midst of darkness.
- No good shall come to the deceitful son.
- Children, hear the judgment of your father, and so do that you may be saved:—For God hath made the father honourable to the children: and seeking the judgment of the mothers, hath confirmed it upon the children.
- Children, obey your parents in the Lord: for this is just.
- Honour thy father and thy mother, that thou mayest be long-lived upon the land which the Lord thy God will give thee.
- Honour thy father, and forget not the groanings of thy mother:—Remember that thou hadst not been born but through them: and make a return to them as they have done for thee
- Po* 15, 20
- Po* 19, 26
- Po* 20, 20
- Po* 14, 15
- Eci* 3, 2-3
- Ep* 6, 1
- Ex* 20, 12
- Eci* 7, 29-30

- Eci* 3, 5-11 He that honoureth his mother is as one that layeth up a treasure. — He that honoureth his father shall have joy in his own children, and in the day of his prayer he shall be heard. — He that honoureth his father shall enjoy a long life: and he that obeyeth the father shall be a comfort to his mother. — He that feareth the Lord honoureth his parents, and will serve them as his masters that brought him into the world. — Honour thy father in word, and work, and all patience, — That a blessing may come upon thee from him, and his blessing may remain in the latter end. — The father's blessing establisheth the houses of the children: but the mother's curse rooteth up the foundation.
- Speak not so, — For we are the children of saints, and look for that life which God will give to those that never change their faith from Him. *Jb* 2, 17-18
- We are the children of saints, and we must not be joined together like heathens that know not God. *Jb* 8, 5

### 33.—PRACTICAL PIETY TOWARDS PARENTS; PUNISHMENTS OF ITS NEGLECT.

- Pv* 13, 1 A wise son heareth the doctrine of his father: but he that is a scorner heareth not when he is reprov'd. If a man have a stubborn and unruly son, who will not hear the commandments of his father or mother, and being corrected slighteth obedience: — They shall take him and bring him to the ancients of the city, and to the gate of judgment, — And shall say to them: This our son is rebellious and stubborn, he slighteth hearing our admonitions, he giveth himself to revelling, and to debauchery and banquetings: — The people of the city shall stone him: and he shall die, that you may take away the evil out of the midst of you, and all Israel hearing it may be afraid! *Dt* 21, 18-21
- Eci* 3, 12-13 Glory not in the dishonour of thy father, for his shame is no glory to thee: — For the glory of a man is from the honour of his father, and a father without honour is the disgrace of the son.
- Eci* 3, 14-17 Son, support the old age of thy father, and grieve him not in his life: — And if his understanding fail, have patience with him, and despise him not when thou art in thy strength: for the relieving of the father shall not be forgotten. — For good shall be repaid to thee for the sin of thy mother, — And in justice thou shalt be built up, and in the day of affliction thou shalt be remembered: and thy sins shall melt away as the ice in the fair warm weather.
- Of what an evil fame is he that forsaketh his father! and he is cursed of God that angereth his mother. *Eci* 2, 7
- The eye that mocketh at his father and that despiseth the labour of his mother in

*Pv* 30, 17



- bearing him, let the ravens of the brook pick it out, and the young eagles eat it.
- Eci* 22, 3-5 A son ill taught is the confusion of the father: and a foolish daughter shall be to his loss.—A wise daughter shall bring an inheritance to her husband: but she that confoundeth becometh a disgrace to her father.—She that is bold shameth both her father and her husband, and will not be inferior to the ungodly, and shall be disgraced by them both.
- Le* 20, 9 He that curseth his father or mother, dying let him die: he hath cursed his father and mother, let his blood be upon him.
- Examples of Pious and Dutiful Children:
- Lu* 2, 52 (1) The Divine Child Jesus.
- (2) St. John Baptist. *Lu* 1, 80
- (3) St. Timothy. *2 Ti* 3, 15
- (4) St. Samuel. *1 K* 2, 26
- (5) St. Job. *Jb* 29, 4
- (6) St. David. *Ps* 70, 5
- (7) Samson. *Jg* 13, 24
- (8) Solomon. *3 K* 3, 3
- (9) Abia. *3 K* 14, 13
- (10) Abdias. *3 K* 18, 12
- (11) Josaphat. *3 K* 22, 43
- (12) Josias, when yet a boy, sought the Lord. *2 P* 34, 3
- (13) The Children who praised God in the Temple. *Mt* 21, 15
- (14) The Children who averted the divine judgments. *2 P* 20, 13
- (15) The Children who rejoiced before the Lord. *Mt* 21, 15
- (16) The Children who prostrated before the Temple. *Jg* 4, 9

### 34.—DUTIES OF PARENTS TO CHILDREN.

- Ep* 6, 4 You fathers, provoke not your children to anger: but bring them up in the discipline and correction of the Lord.
- Dt* 31, 11-13 Thou shalt read the words of this law before all Israel, in their hearing.—Both men and women, children and strangers, that are within thy gates: that hearing they may learn, and fear the Lord their God, and keep and fulfil all the words of this law:—That their children also, who are now ignorant, may hear, and fear the Lord their God.
- Mk* 10, 14 Suffer the little children to come to Me, and forbid them not: for of such is the Kingdom of God.
- On a daughter that turneth not away herself set a strict watch: lest finding an opportunity, she abuse herself.—Take heed of the impudence of her eyes, and wonder not if she slight thee.—She will open her mouth as a thirsty traveller to the fountain, and will drink of every water near her, and will sit down by every hedge, and open her quiver against every arrow, until she fail.
- Nine things that are not to be imagined by the heart have I magnified, and the tenth I will utter to men with my tongue:—A man that hath joy of his children, and he that liveth, and seeth
- Eci* 26, 13-15
- Eci* 25, 9-10

the fall of his enemies.

*Eci* 16, 1-5 Rejoice not in ungodly children, if they be multiplied: neither be delighted in them, if the fear of God be not with them. — Trust not to their life, and respect not their labours. — For better is one that feareth God than a thousand ungodly children. — And it is better to die without children than to leave ungodly children. — By one that is wise a country shall be inhabited, the tribe of the ungodly shall become desolate.

*Eci* 33, 20-22 Give not to son or wife, brother or friend, power over thee while thou livest, and give not thy estate to an-

other: lest thou repent and thou entreat for the same. — As long as thou livest, and hast breath in thee, let no man change thee. — For it is better that thy children should ask of thee, than that thou look toward the hands of thy children.

The children of sinners become children of abominations, and they that converse near the houses of the ungodly. — The inheritance of the children of sinners shall perish, and with their posterity shall be a perpetual reproach. — The children will complain of an ungodly father, because for his sake they are in reproach.

*Eci* 41, 8-10

### 35.—LOVE OF GOD TO BE PREFERRED TO LOVE OF PARENTS OR CHILDREN.

*Mal* 1, 8, 14 If you offer the blind for sacrifice, is it not evil? and if you offer the lame and the sick, is it not evil? Offer it to thy prince, if he will be pleased with it, or if he will regard thy face, saith the Lord of Hosts. — Cursed is the deceitful man, that hath in his flock a male, and making a vow offereth in sacrifice that which is feeble to the Lord: for I am a great King, saith the Lord of Hosts, and My Name is dreadful among the Gentiles.

*Mt* 8, 21-22 Another of His disciples said to Him: Lord, suffer me first to go and bury my father. — But Jesus said to him: Follow Me, and let the dead bury their dead.

*Mt* 12, 47-50 One said unto Him: Behold, Thy mother and Thy brethren stand without, seek-

ing Thee. — But He answering him that told Him, said: Who is My Mother, and who are My brethren? — And stretching forth His hands towards His disciples, He said: Behold My Mother and My brethren. — For whosoever shall do the will of My Father that is in Heaven, he is My brother, and sister, and Mother.

His Mother said to Him: Son, why hast Thou done so to us? behold, Thy father and I have sought Thee sorrowing. — And He said to them: How is it that you sought Me? Did you not know that I must be about My Father's business?

To Levi also Moses said: Thy perfection and thy doctrine be to thy holy man whom thou hast proved in

*Lu* 2, 48-49

*Dt* 33, 9

the temptation, and judged at the waters of contradiction:—Who hath said to his father and to his mother: I do not know you; and to his brethren: I know you not: and their own children they have not known. These have kept Thy word and observed Thy covenant.

*Ps* 44, 11 Hearken, O daughter, and see, and incline thy ear, and forget thy people and thy father's house.

*Ge* 12, 1-2 The Lord said to Abram:

Go forth out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and out of thy father's house, and come into the land which I shall show thee: and I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and magnify thy name, and thou shalt be blessed.

If any man come to Me, *Lu* 14, 28 and hate not his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters, yea and his own life also, he cannot be My disciple.

### 36.—WE SHOULD CHOOSE OUR STATE OF LIFE SERIOUSLY, AND LIVE UP TO IT.

*Eci* 37, 30-31 My son, prove thy soul in thy life: and if it be wicked, give it no power:— For all things are not expedient for all, and every kind pleaseth not every soul.

*1 C* 7, 20 Let every man abide in the same calling in which he was called.

*Eci* 11, 21-22 Be steadfast in thy covenant, and be conversant therein, and grow old in the work of thy commandments.— Abide not in the works of sinners. But trust in God, and stay in thy place.

*Ap* 3, 11 Behold, I come quickly: hold fast that which thou hast, that no man take thy crown.

*Fv* 27, 8 As a bird that wandereth

from her nest, so is a man that leaveth his place.

Which of you having a *Lu* 14, 28-30 mind to build a tower doth not first sit down and reckon the charges that are necessary, whether he have wherewithal to finish it?— Lest after he hath laid the foundation, and is not able to finish it, all that see begin to mock him, — Saying: This man began to build, and was not able to finish.

This is my rest for ever *Ps* 131, 14 and ever: here will I dwell, for I have chosen it.

Simon Peter answered *Jn* 6, 69 Him: Lord, to whom shall we go? Thou hast the words of Eternal Life.

### 37.—PRAISES OF RELIGION AND OF THOSE WHO PRACTISE IT.—

*Is* 60, 21-22 Thy people shall be all just, they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of My planting, the work of My hand to glorify Me.—The least shall become a thou-

sand, and a little one a most strong nation: I the Lord will suddenly do this thing in its time.

This is the generation of *Ps* 23, 6 them that seek Him. of them

- that seek the Face of the Lord, for Thou wast angry with me: Thy wrath is turned away, and Thou hast comforted me.
- Eci 3, 1* The sons of wisdom are the Church of the just: and their generation obedience and love.
- Is 61, 9* All that shall see them shall know them, that these are the seed which the Lord hath blessed.
- Is 31, 7* Rejoice ye in the joy of Jacob, and neigh before the head of the Gentiles: shout ye, and sing, and say: Save, O Lord, Thy people, the remnant of Israel.
- Is 12, 1* Thou shalt say in that day: I will give thanks to Thee, O Lord, for Thou wast angry with me: Thy wrath is turned away, and Thou hast comforted me.
- Hell shall not confess to Thee.—The living, the living, he shall give praise to thee as I do this day.
- They lifted up their voice to God with one accord, and said: Lord, Thou art He that didst make Heaven and earth, the sea and all things that are in them.
- Give praise to our God, all ye His servants: and you that fear Him, little and great.
- Is 38, 13-19*
- Ac 4, 24*
- Ap 19, 5*

## 38.—BLESSING OF A DIVINE VOCATION.

- Ep 1, 3* Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who hath blessed us with spiritual blessings in heavenly places, in Christ.
- Ep 2, 10-13* We are His workmanship:—For which cause be mindful that you being heretofore Gentiles in the flesh who are called uncircumcision by that which is called circumcision in the flesh made by hands,—That you were at that time without Christ, being aliens from the conversation of Israel, and strangers to the testament, having no hope of the promise, and without God in this world.—But now in Christ Jesus, you, who sometime were afar off, are made nigh by the Blood of Christ.
- Ep 2, 19-20* Now you are no more strangers and foreigners: but you are fellow-citizens with the saints, and the domestics of God:—Built upon the foundation of the Apostles and Prophets, Jesus Christ Himself being the chief Corner-stone.
- You are a chosen generation, a kingly priesthood, a holy nation, a purchased people: that you may declare His virtues, Who hath called you out of darkness into His marvellous light.—Who in time past were not a people: but are now the people of God. Who had not obtained mercy: but now have obtained mercy.
- God is faithful: by Whom you are called unto the fellowship of His Son, Jesus Christ our Lord.
- Give thanks to God the Father, Who hath made us worthy to be partakers of the lot of the saints in light:—Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the Kingdom of the Son of His love.
- If you will hear My voice,
- 1 Pt 2, 9-10*
- 1 C 1, 9*
- Cl 1, 12-13*
- Ex 19, 5*

and keep My covenant, you shall be My peculiar possession above all people: for all the earth is Mine.

*Dt 32, 9*

The Lord's portion is His people: Jacob the lot of His inheritance.

*Ps 15, 5-6*

The Lord is the portion of my inheritance and of my cup: it is Thou that wilt restore my inheritance to me.—The lines are fallen unto me in goodly places, for my inheritance is goodly to me.

*Ps 106, 1-4*

Give glory to the Lord, for He is good, for His mercy endureth for ever.—Let them say so that have been redeemed by the Lord, whom He hath gathered from the hand of the enemy, and gathered out of the countries:—From the rising and from the setting of the sun, from the north and from the sea.—They wandered in a wilderness, in a place without water: they found not

the way of a city for their habitation.

He found him in a desert *Dt 32, 10*

land, in a place of horror and of vast wilderness: He led him about, and taught him: and He kept him as the apple of His Eye.

He gave them the lands of the Gentiles, and they possessed the labours of the people:—That they might observe His justifications, and seek after His law.

*Ps 104, 44-45*

I gave you a land in *Js 24, 13*

which you had not laboured, and cities to dwell in which you built not, vineyards and olive-yards which you planted not.

In this is the saying true: *Jn 4, 37-38*

that it is one man that soweth, and it is another that reapeth.—I have sent you to reap that in which you did not labour: others have laboured, and you have entered into their labours.

### 39.—OFFICES AND DUTIES OF A RELIGIOUS LIFE TO BE HIGHLY ESTEEMED.

*Mt 16, 24*

If any man will come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross and follow Me.

*Ja 1, 28*

If any man think himself to be religious, not bridling his tongue, but deceiving his own heart, this man's religion is vain.

*Ps 83, 5*

Blessed are they that dwell in Thy House, O Lord: they shall praise Thee for

ever and ever.

Blessed are Thy men, and *3 K 10, 8*

blessed are Thy servants, who stand before Thee always, and hear Thy wisdom.

Better is one day in Thy *Ps 83, 11*

Courts above thousands: I have chosen to be an abject in the House of my God, rather than to dwell in the tabernacles of sinners.

### 40.—MEN SHOULD LIVE WORTHILY OF THEIR VOCATION.

*Ep 4, 1-2*

I a prisoner in the Lord beseech you that you walk

worthily of the vocation in which you are called. With

all humility and mildness, with patience, supporting one another in charity.

*Eci* 39, 17-19 Hear me, ye divine offspring, and bud forth as the rose planted by the brooks of waters.—Give ye a sweet odour as frankincense.—Send forth flowers as the lily, and yield a smell, and bring forth leaves in grace, and praise with canticles, and bless the Lord in His works.

*Jn* 15, 16 I have chosen you: and

have appointed you, that you should go, and should bring forth fruit: and your fruit should remain.

Remember thy father and thy mother, for thou sittest in the midst of great men. *Eci* 23, 18

Look unto the rock whence you are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from which you are dug out.—Look unto Abraham your father, and to Sara that bore you: for I called him alone, and blessed him, and multiplied him. *Is* 51, 1-2

#### 41.—DEGENERACY OF THESE LATTER DAYS.

*Je* 2, 2, 5 I have remembered thee, pitying thy youth, and the love of thy espousals, when thou followdest Me in the desert, in a land that is not sown.—What iniquity have your fathers found in Me?

*Je* 2, 21 I planted thee a chosen vineyard, all true seed: how then art thou turned unto Me into that which is good for nothing, O strange vineyard?

*La* 1, 6 From the daughter of Sion all her beauty is departed: her princes are become like rams that find no pastures: and they are gone away without strength before the face of the pursuer.

*La* 4, 1-2 How is the gold become dim, the finest colour is changed, the stones of the Sanctuary are scattered in the top of every street?—The noble sons of Sion, and they that were clothed with the best gold, how are they esteemed as earthen vessels, the work of the potter's hands?

*La* 4, 5 They that were fed deli-

cately have died in the streets: they that were brought up in scarlet have embraced the dung.

What is the meaning that My beloved hath wrought much wickedness in My House? Shall the Holy Flesh take away from thee thy crimes, in which thou hast boasted? *Je* 11, 15

I have seen a horrible thing in the House of Israel: the fornications of Ephraim there: Israel is defiled. *Os* 6, 10

Shall not that which by nature is uncircumcision, if it fulfil the law, judge thee who by the letter and circumcision art a transgressor of the law?—For it is not he is a Jew that is so outwardly: nor is that circumcision which is outward in the flesh.—But he is a Jew that is one inwardly; and the circumcision is that of the heart, in the spirit, not in the letter: whose praise is not of men, but of God. *Ro* 2, 27-29

Bewatchful and strengthen the things that remain, which *Ap* 3, 2-3

are ready to die. For I find fore in what manner thou not thy works full before my hast received and heard: and God.—Have in mind there—observe and do penance.

#### 42.—WARNINGS AGAINST APOSTASY FROM RELIGION, AND EXHORTATION TO REPENTANCE.

- Je 2, 17* Hath not this been done to thee because thou hast forsaken the Lord thy God at that time when He led thee by the way?—Thy own wickedness shall reprove thee, and thy apostasy shall rebuke thee. Know thou and see that it is an evil and a bitter thing for thee to have left the Lord thy God, and that My fear is not with thee, saith the Lord the God of Hosts.
- 2 P 30, 6, 8* Ye children of Israel, turn again to the Lord, and He will return to the remnant of you. — Harden not your necks, as your fathers did: yield yourselves to the Lord and come to His Sanctuary: serve the Lord, and the wrath of His indignation shall be turned away from you.
- Ro 2, 4* Knowest thou not that the benignity of God leadeth thee to penance?
- Ge 19, 17, 26* Save thy life: look not back, neither stay thou in all the country about: but save thyself in the mountain, lest thou be also consumed.—And his wife, looking behind her, was turned into a statue of salt.
- Ge 26, 2* Go not down into Egypt, but stay in the land that I shall tell thee.
- Ecl 10, 4* If the spirit of him that hath power ascend upon thee, leave not thy place.
- Ecl 11, 22* Stay in thy place.
- Lu 9, 62* No man putting his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the Kingdom of God.
- Little children, it is the last hour: and as you have heard that Antichrist cometh, even now there are become many Antichrists: whereby we know that it is the last hour.—They went out from us; but they were not of us. —For if they had been of us, they would no doubt have remained with us: but that they may be manifest that they are not all of us.
- Be mindful from whence thou art fallen: and do penance, and do the first works. Or else I come to thee, and will move thy candlestick out of its place except thou do penance.
- Examples of Repentance:
- |   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| (1) St. Peter.                          | <i>Mk 14, 72</i>  |
| (2) St. Paul.                           | <i>Ac 9, 1</i>    |
| (3) St. Mary Magdalene.                 | <i>Lu 7, 37</i>   |
| (4) St. Dismas.                         | <i>Lu 23, 41</i>  |
| (5) St. David.                          | <i>2 K 12, 13</i> |
| (6) St. Aaron.                          | <i>Nu 12, 11</i>  |
| (7) Zacheus.                            | <i>Lu 19, 8</i>   |
| (8) The Publican.                       | <i>Lu 18, 13</i>  |
| (9) A Son.                              | <i>Mt 21, 29</i>  |
| (10) The Disciples of St. John Baptist. | <i>Mt 3, 6</i>    |
| (11) The Romans.                        | <i>Ro 6, 21</i>   |
| (12) The Ephesians.                     | <i>Ac 19, 18</i>  |
| (13) 3000 converted by St. Peter.       | <i>Ac 2, 37</i>   |
| (14) The Prodigal Son.                  | <i>Lu 15, 18</i>  |
| (15) The Groat found.                   | <i>Lu 15, 9</i>   |
| (16) The return of the Lost Sheep.      | <i>Mt 18, 12</i>  |
- Ap 2, 5*

<i>Ge</i> 42, 21	(17) Joseph's Brethren.	(24) The Ninivites.	<i>Jo</i> 3, 5
<i>3 K</i> 21, 27	(18) Achab.	(25) The Captives in Babylon.	<i>Ps</i> 136, 1
<i>4 K</i> 22, 11	(19) Josias.	(26) The Children of Israel.	<i>Jg</i> 10, 15
<i>2 P</i> 12, 6	(20) Joboam.	(27) The Resurrection of Dry Bones.	<i>Ez</i> 37, 5
<i>2 P</i> 32, 26	(21) Ezechias.		
<i>2 P</i> 33, 12	(22) Manasses.		
<i>Ez</i> 33, 4	(23) The Israelites.		

## 43.—PRAISES OF EVANGELICAL POVERTY.

<i>Mt</i> 19, 29	Every one that hath left house, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for My Name's sake, shall receive an hundredfold, and shall possess Life Everlasting.	also died, and he was buried in hell. Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven. The poor shall eat, and shall be filled: and they shall praise the Lord that seek Him, their hearts shall live for ever and ever.	<i>Mt</i> 5, 3
<i>Lu</i> 18, 29-30	Amen I say to you, there is no man that hath left house, or parents, or brethren, or wife, or children, for the Kingdom of God's sake,—Who shall not receive much more in this present time, and in the world to come Life Everlasting.	If thou wilt be perfect, go sell what thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in Heaven: and come, follow Me.	<i>Ps</i> 21, 27
<i>Lu</i> 16, 22	It came to pass that the beggar died, and was carried by the Angels into Abraham's bosom: and the rich man	Hath not God chosen the poor in this world, rich in faith, and heirs of the Kingdom which God hath promised to them that love Him?	<i>Mt</i> 19, 21

44.—THE POOR IN SPIRIT HIGHLY COMMENDED.  
PUNISHMENT OF BREAKING THE VOW OF POVERTY.

<i>Mt</i> 8, 20	The foxes have holes, and the birds of the air nests: but the Son of Man hath not where to lay His head.	hungry began to pluck the ears, and to eat. They answered Him: We have not here but five loaves and two fishes.	<i>Mt</i> 14, 17
<i>Mt</i> 10, 9-10	Do not possess gold, nor silver, nor money in your purses:—Nor scrip for your journey, nor two coats, nor shoes, nor a staff: for the workman is worthy of his meat.	She brought forth her First-born Son, and wrapped Him up in swaddling clothes, and laid Him in a manger, because there was no room for them in the inn.	<i>Lu</i> 2, 7
<i>Mt</i> 12, 1	At that time Jesus went through the corn on the sabbath: and His disciples being	[In a strange sepulchre He is buried, the winding-sheet and spices given by strangers.]	<i>Jn</i> 19, 39



- Ac* 2, 44-45 They had all things common:—Their possessions and goods they sold, and divided them to all, according as every one had need. cording as he had need. Silver and gold I have none. *Ac* 3, 6
- Ac* 4, 33-35 Great grace was in them all.—For neither was there any one needy among them. For as many as were owners of lands, or houses, sold them, and brought the price of the things they sold,—And laid it down before the feet of the Apostles. And distribution was made to every one ac- I have not coveted any man's silver, gold, or apparel, as— You yourselves know: for such things as were need- ful for me and them that are with me, these hands have furnished. [Ananias with Saphira his wife, on account of money retained secretly contrary to vow, perished by sudden death.] *Ac* 20, 33-34 *Ac* 5, 1

45.—PRAISES OF CHASTITY, EVANGELICAL CHASTITY  
ABOVE ALL.

- 1 Pt* 4, 1-2 O how beautiful is the chaste generation with glory! for the memory thereof is immortal, because it is known both with God and with men. —When it is present, they imitate it: and they desire it when it hath withdrawn itself, and it triumpheth crowned for ever, winning the reward of undefiled conflicts. their mind and their conscience are defiled. Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims to refrain yourselves from carnal desires, which war against the soul. I will understand in the unspotted way, when Thou shalt come to me. *1 Pt* 2, 11 *Pt* 100, 2
- 1 Pt* 6, 20 Incorruption bringeth near to God. The Lord knoweth the days of the undefiled; and their inheritance shall be for ever. *Pt* 36, 18
- Mt* 22, 30 In the resurrection they shall neither marry nor be married, but shall be as the Angels of God in Heaven. Never have I joined myself with them that play: neither have I made myself partaker with them that walk in lightness. *To* 3, 17
- Mt* 19, 12 There are eunuchs who were born so from their mother's womb: and there are eunuchs who were made so by men: and there are eunuchs who have made themselves eunuchs for the Kingdom of Heaven. He that can take, let him take it. Evil thoughts are an abomination to the Lord: and pure words most beautiful shall be confirmed by Him. *Pv* 15, 28
- 7 Pt* 1, 15 All things are clean to the clean: but to them that are defiled, and to unbelievers, nothing is clean: but both He that loveth cleanness of heart, for the grace of his lips shall have the King for his friend. Give not thy mouth to cause thy flesh to sin. *Pv* 22, 11 *Ecl* 5, 5 *Ecl* 11, 10

- heart, and put away evil from thy flesh. For youth and pleasure are vain.
- Eci* 26, 20 No price is worthy of a continent soul.
- W* 8, 21 As I knew that I could not otherwise be continent except God gave it, I went to the Lord, and besought Him.
- Mt* 5, 8 Blessed are the clean of heart: for they shall see God.
- Ro* 12, 1 I beseech you, brethren, by the mercy of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing to God, your reasonable service.
- Know you not that you are the Temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?—But if any one violate the Temple of God, him shall God destroy. For the Temple of God is holy: which you are.
- Or know you not that your members are the Temple of the Holy Ghost, Who is in you, Whom you have from God; and you are not your own?—For you are bought with a great price. Glorify and bear God in your body.
- 1 C* 3, 16-17
- 1 C* 6, 19-20

#### 46.—PRAISES, REWARDS, AND COUNSELS OF VIRGINITY.

- Ap* 14, 1-5 I beheld, and lo a Lamb stood upon Mount Sion, and with Him an hundred forty-four thousand having His Name and the Name of His Father written on their foreheads.—And I heard a voice from Heaven, as the noise of many waters, and as the voice of great thunder; and the voice which I heard was as the voice of harpers, harping on their harps.—And they sang as it were a new canticle, before the Throne, and before the four living creatures and the ancients; and no man could say the canticle but those hundred forty-four thousand, who were purchased from the earth.—These are they who were not defiled with women: for they are virgins. These follow the Lamb whithersoever He goeth. These were purchased from among men, the first-fruits to God and to the Lamb:—And in their mouth
- there was found no lie: for they are without spot before the Throne of God.
- I will give to them in My House, and within My walls, a place, and a name better than sons and daughters: I will give them an everlasting name, which shall never perish.
- Happy is the barren, and the undefiled that hath not known bed in sin: she shall have fruit in the visitation of holy souls:—And the eunuch that hath not wrought iniquity with his hands, nor thought wicked things against God: for the precious gift of faith shall be given to him, and a most acceptable lot in the Temple of God.
- I would that all men were even as myself: but every one hath his proper gift from God, one after this manner, and another after that.—But I say to the unmarried, and
- 1s* 56, 5
- W* 3, 13-14
- 1 C* 7, 7-8

to the widows: it is good for them if they so continue, even as I. sel, as having obtained mercy of the Lord to be faithful. —I think therefore that this is good for the present necessity, that it is good for a man so to be.

*C7, 25-26* Now concerning virgins I have no commandment of the Lord: but I give coun-

47.—OBEDIENCE AND DEFERENCE TO BE SHOWN  
TO GOD, PRELATES, AND SUPERIORS.

*Ac 4, 19-20* If it be just in the sight of God to hear you rather than God, judge ye:—For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard. resisteth the ordinance of God. And they that resist, purchase to themselves damnation.—For princes are not a terror to the good work, but to the evil. Wilt thou

*Ac 5, 29* We ought to obey God rather than men. then not be afraid of the power? Do that which is

*Ja 4, 7* Be subject to God: but resist the devil, and he will fly from you. good: and thou shalt have praise from the same. —Wherefore be subject of

*Mt 17, 5* This is My Beloved Son, in Whom I am well pleased: hear ye Him. necessity, not only for wrath, but also for conscience-sake.

*He 13, 11* Obey your prelates, and be subject to them. For they watch as being to render an account of your souls: that they may do this with joy, and not with grief: for this is not expedient for you. Admonish them to be sub-

*Mt 23, 2-3* The Scribes and the Pharisees have sitten on the chair of Moses.—All things therefore whatsoever they shall say to you, observe and do: but according to their works do ye not: for they say, and do not. Be ye subject to every human creature for God's sake: whether it be to the king as excelling:—Or to governors as sent by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of the good.—For so is the will of God, that by doing well you may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men:—As free, and not as making liberty a cloak for malice, but as the servants of God. —Honour all men. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honour the King. *1 Pt 2, 13-17*

*Lu 10, 16* He that heareth you, heareth Me: and he that despiseth you, despiseth Me. And he that despiseth Me, despiseth Him that sent Me. Servants, be subject to your masters with all fear, not only to the good and gentle, but also to the forward.

*Ro 13, 1-3* Let every soul be subject to higher powers: for there is no power but from God: and those that are, are ordained of God.—Therefore he that resisteth the power,

Servants, be obedient to

them that are your lords according to the flesh, with fear and trembling, in the simplicity of your heart, as to Christ:—Not serving to the eye, as it were pleasing to the men, but, as the servants of Christ, doing the will of God from the heart,—With a good will serving, as to the Lord, and not to men,—Knowing that whatsoever good thing any man shall do, the same shall he receive from the Lord, whether he be bond or free.

#### 48.—PERFECTION, PROMPTITUDE, AND FRUITS OF OBEDIENCE.

- Pv* 16, 10 Divination is in the lips of the king, his mouth shall not err in judgment. Every one that is of the Truth heareth My voice. *Jn* 18, 37
- 1 Pt* 1, 22 Purifying your souls in the obedience of charity, with a brotherly love, from a sincere heart love one another earnestly. Man liveth not by bread alone, but by every Word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God. *Mt* 4, 4
- Pv* 21, 28 An obedient man shall speak of victory. Whosoever heareth these My words, and doeth them, shall be likened to a wise man, who built his house upon a rock:—And the rain fell, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and they beat upon that house: and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock. *Mt* 7, 24-25
- Ecl* 4, 17 Much better is obedience than the victims of fools, who know not what evil they do. If you continue in My Word, you shall be My disciples indeed:—And you shall know the Truth, and the Truth shall make you free. *Jn* 8, 31-32, 51
- 1 K* 13, 22 Doth the Lord desire holocausts and victims, and not rather that the Voice of the Lord should be obeyed? For obedience is better than sacrifices, and to hearken rather than to offer the fat of rams. —Amen, amen I say to you: If any man keep My Word, he shall not see death for ever.
- Os* 6, 6 I desired mercy, and not sacrifice, and the knowledge of God more than holocausts. My sheep hear My Voice: and I know them, and they follow Me. *Jn* 10, 27
- Pv* 1, 33 He that shall hear Me shall rest without terror, and shall enjoy abundance, without fear of evils. He that despiseth Me, and receiveth not My words, hath One that judgeth him: the Word that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day.—For I have not spoken of Myself, but the Father Who sent Me; He gave Me commandment what I should say and what I
- Is* 55, 2-3 Hearken diligently to Me, and eat that which is good, and your soul shall be delighted in fatness.—Incline your ear, and come to Me: hear, and your soul shall live: and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, the faithful mercies of David. *Jn* 12, 48-50

should speak.—And I know that His Commandment is Life Everlasting. The things therefore that I speak, even as the Father said unto Me, so do I speak.

*Jn* 8, 47 He that is of God heareth the words of God.

*Jn* 14, 23 If any one love Me, he will keep My Word: and My Father will love him, and We will come to him, and will make Our abode with him.

*1 P* 1, 25 The Word of the Lord

endureth for ever; and this is the Word which by the Gospel hath been preached unto you.

The weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty to God, unto the pulling down of fortifications, destroying counsels,—And every height that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every understanding unto the obedience of Christ.

49.—GRAVITY AND PUNISHMENT OF DISOBEDIENCE;  
REWARDS OF OBEDIENCE.

*Ge* 3, 17 Because thou hast eaten of the tree whereof I commanded thee that thou shouldst not eat, cursed is the earth in thy work.

*3 K* 13, 21 Because thou hast not been obedient to the Lord,—Thy dead body shall not be brought into the sepulchre of thy fathers.

*Ro* 5, 19 By the disobedience of one man many were made sinners.

*He* 2, 2 Every disobedience received a just recompense of reward.

*1 K* 15, 23 It is like the sin of witchcraft to rebel; and like the crime of idolatry to refuse to obey. Forasmuch therefore as thou hast rejected the Word of the Lord, the Lord hath also rejected thee from being king.

*1 K* 8, 7 Harken to the voice of the people in all that they say to thee. For they have not rejected thee, but Me, that I should not reign over them.

*1 T* 4, 8 He that despiseth these

things despiseth not man, but God, Who also hath given His Holy Spirit in us.

Let not any man judge, and let not a man be rebuked: for the people are as they that contradict the priest.

Because I called, and you refused; I stretched out My hand, and there was none that regarded;—You have despised all My counsel, and have neglected My reprehensions:—I also will laugh in your destruction, and will mock when that shall come to you which you feared.

Behold, I set forth in your sight this day a blessing and

a curse:—A blessing, if you obey the Commandments of the Lord your God, which I command you this day:—A curse, if you obey not the Commandments of the Lord your God, but revolt from the way which now I show you, and walk after strange gods which you know not.

If you be willing, and will

*Os* 4, 4

*Pv* 1, 24-26

*De* 11, 26-28

*Is* 1, 19-20

- the good things of the land.—But if you will not, and will provoke Me to wrath, the sword shall devour you, because the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it.
- Po* 5, 12-14 Why have I hated instruction, and my heart consented
- not to reproof,—And have not heard the voice of them that taught me, and have not inclined my ear to masters?—I have almost been in all evil, in the midst of the Church and of the congregation.

### 50.—NOTABLE INSTANCES OF OBEDIENCE FROM THE OLD TESTAMENT.

- Ge* 11, 1-2, 4 Go forth out of thy country and from thy kindred, and out of thy father's house, and come into the land which I shall show thee.—And I will make of thee a great nation: and I will bless thee, and magnify thy name, and thou shalt be blessed.—So Abram went out, as the Lord had commanded him.
- Ge* 17, 23-24 Abraham took Ismael his son, and all that were born in his house, and all whom he had bought, every male among the men of his house; and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskin forthwith the very same day, as God had commanded him.—Abraham was ninety-and-nine years old when he circumcised the flesh of his foreskin.
- Ge* 22, 2-3, 9-10 Take thy only-begotten son Isaac, whom thou lovest, and go into the land of vision: and there thou shalt offer him for an holocaust upon one of the mountains which I will show thee.—So Abraham, rising up in the night, saddled his ass, and took with him two young men and Isaac his son. And when he had cut wood for the holocaust, he went his way to the place which God had commanded him.—And they came to the
- place which God had shown him, where he built an altar, and laid the wood in order upon it; and when he had bound Isaac his son, he laid him on the Altar upon the pile of wood.—And he put forth his hand, and took the sword, to sacrifice his son.
- They made answer to Josue, and said: All that thou hast commanded us we will do; and whithersoever thou shalt send us we will go.—As we obeyed Moses in all things, so will we obey thee also: only be the Lord thy God with thee, as He was with Moses.—He that shall gainsay thy mouth, and not obey all thy words that thou shalt command him, let him die: only take thou courage, and do manfully.
- As the Lord had commanded Moses His servant, so did Moses command Josue, and he accomplished all: he left not one thing undone of all the commandments which the Lord had commanded Moses.
- The Lord called Samuel. 1 *K* 3, 5 And he answered: Here am I.
- Heli called Samuel, and 1 *K* 3, 16 said: Samuel, my son. And he answered: Here am I.
- When the people came into 1 *K* 14, 26

the forest, behold the honey dropped, but no man put his hand to his mouth. For the people feared the oath.

*Ps* 39, 7 Sacrifice and oblation Thou didst not desire: but Thou hast pierced ears for me.

*Ps* 39, 8-9 Burnt-offering and sin-offering Thou didst not require: then said I: Behold, I come. In the head of the Book it is written of Me—That I should do Thy will: O My God, I have desired it, and Thy law in the midst of

My Heart.

By My own Self have I sworn, saith the Lord: because thou hast done this thing, and hast not spared thy only-begotten son for My sake,—I will bless thee, and I will multiply thy seed as the stars of Heaven, and as the sand that is by the seashore: thy seed shall possess the gates of their enemies.—And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed, because thou hast obeyed My Voice.

# 51.—NOTABLE INSTANCES OF OBEDIENCE FROM THE NEW TESTAMENT.

*Lu* 2, 4-5 Joseph also went up from Galilee out of the city of Nazareth into Judea, to the City of David, which is called Bethlehem, because he was of the House and Family of David,—To be enrolled with Mary his espoused wife, who was with Child.

*Mt* 2, 14 He arose, and took the Child and His Mother by night, and retired into Egypt.

*Lu* 2, 41-42 His parents went every year to Jerusalem, at the solemn day of the Pasch.—And when He was twelve years old, they [went] up into Jerusalem, according to the custom of the Feast.

*Lu* 2, 51 He went down with them and came to Nazareth, and was subject to them.

*Jn* 5, 30 I seek not My own will, but the will of Him Who sent Me.

*Jn* 4, 32 I have meat to eat which you know not.

*Jn* 4, 34 My meat is to do the will of Him Who sent Me.

Lord, what wilt Thou have me to do? *Ac* 9, 6

Being bound in the spirit, I go to Jerusalem, not knowing the things which shall befall me there.—Save that the Holy Ghost in every city witnesseth to me, saying that bands and afflictions wait for me at Jerusalem. *Ac* 20, 22-23

I fear none of these things, neither do I count my life more precious than myself, so that I may consummate my course, and the ministry of the Word which I received from the Lord Jesus to testify the Gospel of the grace of God. *Ac* 20, 24

Trusting in thy obedience, I have written to thee, knowing that thou wilt also do more than this. *Ph* 2, 8-11

He humbled Himself, becoming obedient unto death, even to the death of the Cross.—For which cause God also hath exalted Him, and given Him a Name which is above all names: that in the

Name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those that are in Heaven, on earth, and under the earth.—And that every tongue should confess that the Lord Jesus Christ is in the glory of God the Father.

Examples of Obedience :

<i>Lu</i> 2, 51	(1) Christ our Lord.
<i>Mt</i> 2, 14	(2) SS. Mary and Joseph.
<i>Mt</i> 3, 15	(3) St. John Baptist.
<i>Mt</i> 4, 22	(4) SS. Peter and Andrew.
<i>Mt</i> 4, 22	(5) SS. James and John.
<i>Mt</i> 1, 6	(6) SS. Zacharias and Elizabeth.
<i>Lu</i> 2, 25	(7) St. Simeon.
<i>Lu</i> 23, 50	(8) St. Joseph of Arimathea.
<i>Jn</i> 1, 46	(9) St. Bartholomew.
<i>Ac</i> 10, 2	(10) St. Cornelius.
<i>Ge</i> 22, 12	(11) St. Abraham.
<i>Ex</i> 7, 6	(12) SS. Moses and Aaron.
<i>Js</i> 10, 40	(13) St. Josue.
<i>Jg</i> 6, 25	(14) St. Gideon.

(15) St. David.	<i>3 K</i> 11, 34
(16) St. Eliseus.	<i>3 K</i> 19, 21
(17) St. Job.	<i>Jb</i> 1, 8
(18) St. Jeremias.	<i>Je</i> 1, 17
(19) St. Jonas.	<i>Jo</i> 3, 4
(20) Our Lord's Disciples.	<i>Mt</i> 21, 6
(21) The Roman Catholics.	<i>Ro</i> 16, 19
(22) Noe.	<i>Ge</i> 6, 22
(23) Jacob.	<i>Ge</i> 35, 1
(24) Caleb.	<i>Dt</i> 1, 36
(25) Ezechias.	<i>4 K</i> 18, 6
(26) Josias.	<i>4 K</i> 22, 2
(27) Asa.	<i>2 F</i> 14, 2
(28) Josaphat.	<i>2 P</i> 17, 4
(29) Joiada.	<i>2 P</i> 24, 16
(30) Ozias.	<i>2 P</i> 26, 4
(31) Jonathan.	<i>2 P</i> 23, 2
(32) Hananias.	<i>2 E</i> 7, 2
(33) Sara.	<i>1 P</i> 3, 6
(34) The Children of Israel.	<i>Ex</i> 12, 23
(35) The Rubenites and Gadites.	<i>Js</i> 22, 2
(36) The Jews in the time of Josias.	<i>2 P</i> 34, 33

## PART VII.

### OTHER VIRTUES CONNECTED WITH JUSTICE MORALLY BINDING.

#### 1.—FRUITS OF LIBERALITY.

<i>Pr</i> 21, 14	A secret present quencheth anger; and a gift in the bosom the greatest wrath.	the altar fat, and is an odour of sweetness in the sight of the Most High.—The Sacrifice of the just is acceptable: and the Lord will not forget the memory.—Give glory to God with a good heart: and diminish not the first-fruits of thy hands.—In every gift show a cheerful countenance, and sanctify thy tithes with joy.—Give to the Most High according to what He hath
<i>Pv</i> 28, 16	He that hateth covetousness shall prolong his days.	
<i>Ac</i> 20, 35	It is more blessed to give than to receive.	
<i>Eci</i> 35, 6-15	Thou shalt not appear empty in the sight of the Lord.—For all these things are to be done because of the commandment of God.—The oblation of the just maketh	



given to thee; and with a good eye do according to the ability of thy hands.—For the Lord maketh recompense, and will give thee seven times as much.—Do not offer wicked gifts, for such He will not receive.—And look not upon an unjust sacrifice: for the Lord is Judge: and there is not with Him respect of persons.

brother and thy friend: and hide it not under a stone to be lost.

Some distribute their own *Po 11, 24* goods, and grow richer: others take away what is not their own, and are always in want.

The lips of many shall *Eci 31, 28* bless him that is liberal of his bread.

God giveth to all men *Ja 1, 5* abundantly, and upbraideth not.

For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that being rich He become poor, for your sakes; that through His poverty you might be rich. *2 Co 8-9*

Charge the rich of this *1 T 6, 17* world not to trust in the uncertainty of riches, but in the Living God, Who giveth us abundantly all things to enjoy.

*Po 129, 7* With the Lord there is mercy: and with Him plentiful redemption.

*Po 3, 28* Say not to thy friend: Go, and come again: and tomorrow I will give to thee: when thou canst give at present.

*Eci 7, 20* Do not transgress against thy friend deferring money, nor despise thy dear brother for the sake of gold.

*Eci 29, 13* Lose thy money for thy

## 2—INSTANCES OF LIBERALITY.

*Ex 35, 20-21* All the multitude of the children of Israel going out from the presence of Moses, —Offered first-fruits to the Lord with a most ready and devout mind, to make the work of the Tabernacle of the Testimony.

*Ex 35, 4-7* The workmen being constrained to come, —Said to Moses: The people offereth more than is necessary.—Moses therefore commanded proclamation to be made by the crier's voice: Let neither man nor woman offer any more for the work of the Sanctuary. And so they ceased from offering gifts:—Because the things that were offered did suffice, and were

too much.

Then David came to Sicec *1 K 30, 28* leg, and sent presents of the prey to the ancients of Juda, his neighbours, saying: Receive a blessing of the prey of the enemies of the Lord.

He distributed to all the *2 K 6, 19* multitude of Israel, both men and women, to every one, a cake of bread, and a piece of roasted beef, and fine flour fried with oil: and all the people departed every one to his house.

When David was come to *2 K 17, 27-29* the camp, Sobi, the son of Naas of Rabbath of the children of Ammon, and Machir, the son of Lodabar.

and Berzellai, the Galaadite of Rogelim,—Brought him beds, and tapestry, and earthen vessels, and wheat, and barley, and meal, and parched corn, and beans, and lentils, and fried pulse,—

And honey, and butter, and sheep, and fat calves, and they gave to David and the people that were with him : for they suspected that the people were faint with hunger and thirst in the wilderness.

2 P 28, 15 The men rose up and took the captives, and with the spoils, clothed all them that were naked : and when they had clothed and shod them, and refreshed them with meat and drink, and anointed them because of their labour, and had taken care of them, they set such as could not walk, and were feeble, upon beasts, and brought them to Jericho, the city of palm-trees, to their brethren ; and they returned to Samaria.

Es 5, 3 The king said to her : What wilt thou, queen Esther ? what is thy request ? If thou shouldst even ask one half of the kingdom, it

shall be given to thee.

[See Alms-deeds.]

Examples of Liberality and Zeal :

(1) Jesus, Who pur-1 Pt 1, 18  
chased us with His  
Precious Blood.

(2) Mary Magdalene. Lu 8, 3

(3) The Poor Widow. Lu 21, 2

(4) Herod's Steward. Lu 8, 3

(5) Susanna. Lu 8, 3

(6) The Centurion. Lu 7, 5

(7) Christians in

A. Jerusalem. Ac 2, 45

B. Antioch. Ac 11, 29

C. Philippi. Ph 4, 18

D. Corinth. 1 C 9, 13

E. Macedonia. 2 C 8, 3

(8) Israelites. Ex 35, 21

(9) Samuel. 1 P 26, 27

(10) Saul. 1 P 26, 27

(11) Abner and Joab. 1 P 26, 27

(12) David. 2 K 7, 2

(13) Asa and Abiam. 3 K 15, 15

(14) Josaphat. 4 K 12, 18

(15) Joram. 4 K 12, 18

(16) Ochozias. 4 K 12, 18

(17) Joas and his people. 4 K 12, 4

(18) Ezechias. 2 P 29, 3

(19) Manasses. 2 P 33, 16

(20) Josias. 4 K 22, 3

(21) Cyrus. 1 E 3, 7

(22) Jews. 1 E 1, 6

(23) Artexerxes. 1 E 7, 13

(24) Darius. 1 E 6, 5

### 3.—AVARICE : HOW GREAT AND HOW COMMON A SIN.

1 T 6, 10 Covetousness is the root of all evils.

Cl 3, 5 Covetousness is the service of idols.

Eci 10, 9 Nothing is more wicked than the covetous man.

Eci 10, 10 There is not a more wicked thing than to love money, for such a one setteth his soul at stake because, while he liveth, he hath cast away his

bowels.

All have turned aside into their own way, every one after his own gain, from the first even to the last.

From the least even to the greatest, all are given to covetousness : and from the prophet even to the priest, all are guilty of deceit.

Surely man passeth as an P 38, 7

image : yea, and he is disquieted in vain. He storeth up : and he knoweth not for whom he shall gather these things.

*Pv* 10, 2 Treasures of wickedness shall profit nothing : but justice shall deliver from death.

*Pv* 61, 11 Trust not in iniquity, and covet not robberies.

*Pv* 21, 6 He that gathereth treasures by a lying tongue, is vain and foolish, and shall stumble upon the snares of death.

*Pv* 23, 5 Lift not up thy eye to riches which thou canst not have.

*Pv* 28, 8 He that heapeth together riches by usury and loan, gathereth them for him that will be bountiful to the poor.

*Eci* 4, 36 Let not thy hand be stretched out to receive, and shut when thou shouldst give.

*Eci* 5, 1 Set not thy heart upon unjust possessions, and say not : I have enough to live on : for it shall be of no service in the time of vengeance and darkness.

*Eci* 11, 18-20 There is one that is enriched by living sparingly, and this is the portion of his reward.—In that he saith : I have found me rest, and now I will eat of my goods alone :—And he knoweth not what time shall pass, and that death approacheth, and that he must leave all to others, and shall die.

*Eci* 14, 9 The eye of the covetous man is insatiable in his portion of iniquity : he will not be satisfied till he consume his own soul, drying it up.

*Lci* 31, 5-6 He that loveth gold, shall

not be justified ; and he that followeth after corruption shall be filled with it.—Many have been brought to fall for gold, and the beauty thereof hath been their ruin.

For the iniquity of his *Is* 57, 17 covetousness I was angry, and I struck him : I hid My face from thee, and was angry : and he went away wandering in his own heart.

Wo to him that gathereth *Ha* 2, 9 together an evil covetousness to his house, that his nest may be on high, and thinketh he may be delivered out of the hand of evil.

Labour not to be rich : but *Pv* 23, 4 set bounds to thy prudence ;

He that maketh haste to *Pv* 28, be rich shall not be innocent. 20, 22

—A man that maketh haste to be rich, and envieth others, is ignorant that poverty shall come upon him.

Substance got in haste *Pv* 13, 11 shall be diminished : but that which by little and little is gathered with the hand shall increase.

Set not thy heart upon *Eci* 5, 1, unjust possessions.—Be not 10 anxious for goods unjustly gotten : for they shall not profit thee in the day of calamity and revenge.

He that loveth gold shall *Eci* 31, 5, not be justified : and he that 7-8 followeth after corruption, shall be filled with it.—Gold is a stumbling-block to them that sacrifice to it : wo to them that eagerly follow after it.

Wo to you that devise that *Mt* 2, 1-2 which is unprofitable, and work evil in your beds : in the morning light they exe-

- cute it, because their hand is against God.—And they have coveted fields, and taken them by violence, and houses have they taken forcibly away : and oppressed a man and his house, a man and his inheritance.
- Mt 6, 24* No man can serve two masters. For either he will hate the one, and love the other : or he will sustain the one, and despise the other. You cannot serve God and Mammon.
- Mt 16, 26* What doth it profit a man, if he gain the whole world, and lose his own soul?
- Ph 2, 21* All seek the things that are their own ; not the things that are Jesus Christ's.
- 1 Ti 6, 4-6* He is proud, knowing nothing, but sick about questions and strifes of words, from which arise contentions,—Conflicts of men corrupted in mind, and who are destitute of the truth, esteeming gain to be piety.—But godliness with contentment is great gain.
- Lay not up for yourselves treasures on earth : where the rust and the moth consume, and where thieves dig through, and steal.—But lay up for yourselves treasures in Heaven : where neither the rust nor the moth doth consume, and where thieves do not dig through, nor steal.—For where thy treasure is, there is thy heart also.
- No servant can serve two masters, for either he will hate the one, and love the other : or he will hold to the one, and despise the other. You cannot serve God and Mammon.
- Covetousness, let it not so much as be named among you, as it becometh saints ;—For know ye this and understand, that no covetous person (which is a serving of idols) hath an inheritance in the Kingdom of Christ, and of God.
- Mt 6, 19-21*
- Lk 16, 13*
- Ep 5, 3-5*
- 4.—FROM AVARICE COMES ETERNAL DAMNATION ; THE CURSE OF NATIONS ; SORROW AND TROUBLE.**
- Is 5, 8* Wo to you that join house to house and lay field to field even to the end of the place : shall you alone dwell in the midst of the earth ?
- Ps 1, 9* The ways of every covetous man destroy the souls of the possessor.
- 1 C 6, 10* Neither thieves, nor the covetous, nor drunkards, nor railers, nor extortioners shall possess the Kingdom of God.
- Ps 11, 26* He that hideth up corn shall be cursed among the people : but a blessing upon the head of them that sell.
- What profit shall a man have of all his labour and vexation of spirit, with which he has been tormented under the sun ?—All his days are full of sorrows and miseries : even in the night he doth not rest in mind : and is not this vanity ?
- There is also another grievous evil which I have seen under the sun : riches kept to the hurt of the
- Ecl 2, 22-23*
- Ecl 5, 12-13*

owner.—For they are lost with very great affliction : he hath begotten a son who shall be in extremity of want.

*Ecl* 5, A most deplorable evil : as  
15-16 he came, so shall he return.

What then doth it profit him that he hath laboured for the wind ?—All the days of his life he eateth in darkness and in many cares, and in misery and in sorrow.

All things are vanity.

*Ecl* 12, 6

### 5.—AVARICE DARKENS THE MIND AND CORRUPTS THE HEART.

*W* 15, 12 They have counted our life a pastime, and the business of life to be gain, and that we must be getting every way even out of evil.

*Ecl* 31, 2 The thinking beforehand turneth away the understanding, and a grievous sickness maketh the soul sober.

*Ecl* 27, 1 He that seeketh to be enriched turneth away his eye.

1 *Ti* 6, They who would become  
9-10 rich fall into temptation and into the snare of the devil, and into many unprofitable and hurtful desires, which drown men in destruction and perdition.—For covetousness is the root of all evils : which some desiring have erred from the faith,

and have entangled themselves in many sorrows.

Examples of Covetousness :

- |                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| (1) Judas.              | <i>Mt</i> 26, 15  |
| (2) Money-changers.     | <i>Mt</i> 21, 12  |
| (3) The young man.      | <i>Mt</i> 19, 22  |
| (4) The unjust steward. | <i>Lu</i> 16, 1   |
| (5) Pharisees.          | <i>Lu</i> 16, 14  |
| (6) Simon Magus.        | <i>Ac</i> 8, 18   |
| (7) Sorcerers.          | <i>Ac</i> 16, 19  |
| (8) Demetrius.          | <i>Ac</i> 19, 24  |
| (9) Felix.              | <i>Ac</i> 24, 26  |
| (10) Demas.             | 2 <i>Ti</i> 4, 9  |
| (11) Balaam.            | 2 <i>Pt</i> 2, 15 |
| (12) Eve.               | <i>Ge</i> 3, 6    |
| (13) Achan.             | <i>Jo</i> 7, 21   |
| (14) Heli's sons.       | 1 <i>K</i> 2, 13  |
| (15) Achab.             | 3 <i>K</i> 21, 2  |
| (16) Giezi.             | 4 <i>K</i> 5, 20  |
| (17) The Jews.          | 2 <i>Es</i> 5, 2  |
| (18) The King of Tyre.  | <i>Ez</i> 28, 2   |
| (19) Priests.           | <i>Ma</i> 1, 10   |

### 6.—THE AVARICIOUS MAN : EVER LONGING BUT NEVER SATISFIED.

*Lci* 14, 9 The eye of the covetous man is insatiable in his portion of iniquity ; he will not be satisfied till he consume his own soul.

*Pt* 33, 11 The rich have wanted and have suffered hunger : but they that seek the Lord shall not be deprived of any good.

*Ecl* 6, 7 All the labour of man is for his mouth : but his soul shall not be filled.

*Ecl* 5, 9 A covetous man shall not

be satisfied with money.

Hell and destruction are never filled : so the eyes of men are never satisfied.

The horse-leech hath two daughters that say : Bring,

Bring. There are three things that are never satisfied ; and the fourth never saith : It is enough.—Hell, and the mouth of the womb, and the earth, which is not satisfied with water : and the fire never saith : It is enough.

### 7.—THE COVETOUS MAN WRONGS HIMSELF IN BODY AND SOUL, AND RUINS HIS OWN LIFE.

- Ecl* 6, 1-2 There is another evil which I have seen under the sun, and that frequent among men.—A man to whom God hath given riches and substance and honour, and his soul wanteth nothing of all that he desireth: yet God doth not give him power to eat thereof, but a stranger shall eat it up. This is vanity and a great misery.
- Ecl* 6, 3-4 If a man beget a hundred children and live many years, and attain to a great age, and his soul make no use of the goods of his substance, and he be without burial; of this man I pronounce that the untimely born is better than he.—For he came in vain, and goeth to darkness, and his name shall be wholly forgotten.
- Ecl* 5, 9 He that loveth riches shall reap no fruit from them: so this also is vanity.
- Ecl* 14, 4-5 He that gathereth together by wronging his own soul gathereth for others: and another will squander away his goods in rioting.—He that is evil to himself, to whom will he be good? and he shall not take pleasure in his goods.
- Ecl* 14, 6-8 There is none worse than he that envieth himself, and this is the reward of his wickedness.—And if he do good, he doeth it ignorantly and unwillingly; and at the last he discovereth his wickedness.—The eye of the envious is wicked; and he turneth away his face, and despiseth his own soul.
- An evil eye is towards evil *Ecl* 14, 10 things, and he shall not have his fill of bread, but shall be needy and pensive at his own table.
- Watching for riches consumeth the flesh: and the thought thereof driveth away sleep. *Ecl* 31, 1
- There is covetousness in the head of them all: and I will slay the last of them with the sword: there shall be no flight for them: they shall flee: and he that shall flee of them shall not be delivered. *Am* 9, 1
- He that is greedy of gain *Pv* 15, 27 troubleth his own house: but he that hates bribes shall live.
- God hath given to the sinner vexation and superfluous care, to heap up and to gather together, and to give to him that hath pleased God: but this also is vanity and a fruitless solicitude of the mind. *Ecl* 2, 26

### 8.—THE PRAISES OF A MAN WHO IS GENEROUS AND CONTENTED.

- He* 13, 5 Let your manners be without covetousness, contented with such things as you have: for He hath said: I will not leave thee, neither will I forsake thee.
- Pass not beyond the ancient bounds which thy *Pv* 22, 28

- fathers have set.
- Ep* 5, 3 Fornication and all uncleanness, or covetousness, let it not so much as be named among you, as it becometh saints.
- Eci* 14, 11 My son, if thou have anything, do good to thyself, and offer to God worthy offerings.
- Ecl* 2, 24 Is it not better to eat and drink and show his soul good things of his labours? and this is from the hand of God.
- Ecl* 5, 17-19 This therefore hath seemed good to me, that a man should eat and drink, and enjoy the fruit of his labour, wherewith he hath laboured under the sun all the days of his life, which God hath given him: and this is his portion.—And every man to whom God hath given riches and substance, and hath given him power to eat thereof, and to enjoy his portion, and to rejoice of his labour; this is the gift of God.—For he shall not much remember the days of his life, because God entertaineth his heart with delight.
- Better it is to see what thou mayst desire, than to desire that which thou canst not know. But this also is vanity and presumption of spirit. *Ecl* 6, 9

## 9.—EXAMPLES OF THE PUNISHMENT OF AVARICE.

- Mt* 23, 14 Wo to you, Scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites; because you devour the houses of widows, making long prayers: therefore you shall receive the greater judgment.
- Mt* 23, 15 What will you give me, and I will deliver Him unto you?
- Lk* 16, 14 The Pharisees, who were covetous, heard all these things and they derided Him.
- Ac* 16, 16 When Paul had cast the devil out of a certain girl, possessed with a pythonical spirit, who brought her masters much gain by divining, he was accused by them, together with Silas, of disturbing the city, and preaching a new and unlawful religion.
- Ac* 19, 23-29 At that time there arose no small disturbance about the way of the Lord.—For a certain man, named Demetrius, a silversmith who made silver temples for Diana, brought no small gain to the craftsmen:—Whom having called together, with workmen of like occupation, said: You men, you know that our gain is by this trade:—And you see and hear that this Paul, by persuasion, hath drawn away a great multitude, not only at Ephesus, but almost throughout all Asia, saying: that they are no gods which are made with hands.—So that not only this our craft is in danger to be vilified, but also the temple of the great Diana shall be thought nothing of; yea, and her majesty shall begin to be destroyed, whom all Asia and the world worshippeth.—Having heard these things, they were full of anger, and cried out, saying: Great is

Diana of the Ephesians.—And the whole city was filled with confusion, and having caught Gaius and Aristarchus, companions of Paul, they rushed with one accord into the theatre.

*Ac* 8, 20 Peter said to him : May the money perish with thee : because thou hast esteemed the gift of God to be purchased with money.

*Lu* 12, 16-20 He spoke a similitude to them, saying : The land of a certain rich man brought forth plenty of fruit :—And he thought within himself, saying : What shall I do, because I have not where to lay up together my fruits?—And he said : This will I do : I will pull down my barns, and will build greater : and into them will I gather all things that are grown to me, and my goods :—And I will say to my soul : Soul, thou hast much goods laid up for many years ; take thy rest, eat, drink, make good cheer.—But God said to him : Thou fool, this night do they require thy soul of thee : and whose shall those things be which thou hast provided ?

#### 10.—EXAMPLES, CONSEQUENCES, AND PUNISHMENTS OF AVARICE AND LUXURY.

*W* 2, 7 The wicked have said, reasoning with themselves, but not right : The time of our life is short and tedious.—Let us fill ourselves with costly wine and ointments : and let not the flower of the time pass by us.

*Eci* 11, 29 The affliction of an hour maketh one to forget great delights.

*Po* 11, 29 He that troubleth his own house shall inherit the winds : and the fool shall serve the wise.

*Lu* 6, 24-25 Wo to you rich, because you have your consolation. —Wo to you that are filled : for you shall hunger. Wo to you that laugh now, for you shall mourn and weep.

Aaron said to them : Take the golden earrings from the ears of your wives and your sons and daughters, and bring them to me.—And the people did what he had commanded, bringing the earrings to Aaron.

[Extravagances of the prodigal youth described in Luke chap. xv.]

#### 11.—GRATITUDE AND THANKSGIVING COMMENDED.

*Ph* 4, 6 In everything, by prayer and supplication, with thanksgiving, let your petitions be made known to God.

*Cl* 3, 17 All whatsoever you do in word or in work, do all in the Name of the Lord Jesus Christ, giving thanks to God and the Father by Him. Walk ye in Him,—Abounding in Him in thanksgiving. Be instant in prayer ; watching in it with thanksgiving.

We ought to give thanks always to God for you, brethren, as it is meet, because



- your faith increaseth exceedingly; and the charity of every one of you towards each other aboundeth.
- 1 Ti 2, 1 I desire, first of all, that supplications, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgivings be made for all men: for kings and all who are in high places.
- Cl 3, 15 Let the peace of Christ rejoice in your hearts wherein also you are called in one body; and be ye thankful.
- 1 Ti 4, 4 Nothing is to be rejected that is received with thanksgiving.
- Covetousness, let it not so much as be named among you, as it becometh saints:—But rather giving thanks.
- Be ye filled with the Holy Ghost:—Speaking to yourselves in Psalms and hymns, and spiritual Canticles, and making melody in your hearts to the Lord:—Giving thanks always for all things in the House of our Lord Jesus Christ to God and the Father.
- I give Him thanks. 1 Ti 1, 12

## 12.—NOTABLE INSTANCES OF GRATITUDE.

- Ge 8, 20 Noe built an Altar unto the Lord, and taking of all cattle and fowls that were clean, offered holocausts upon the Altar.
- Jn 11, 41 Jesus, lifting up His eyes, said: Father, I give Thee thanks that Thou hast heard Me.
- Ge 12, 7 The Lord appeared to Abram, and said to him: To thy seed will I give this land. And he built there an Altar to the Lord.
- Ge 35, 3 Arise, and let us go up to Bethel, that we may make there an Altar to God, Who heard me in the day of my affliction and accompanied me in my journey.
- Ge 35, 7 He built there an Altar and called the name of that place the House of God: for there God appeared to him when he fled from his brother.
- Ge 35, 14 He set up a monument of stone in the place where God had spoken to him, pouring drink-offerings upon it, and pouring oil thereon.
- Josue put Amalec and his people to flight by the edge of the sword.—And Moses built an Altar and called the name thereof, the Lord my Exaltation.
- There were with David seven choirs, and calves for victims: and when they that carried the Ark of the Lord had gone six paces, he sacrificed an ox and a ram.—And David danced with all his might before the Lord.
- When they [the Jews] came to Jesus, they besought Him earnestly, saying to Him: he is worthy that Thou shouldst do this for him.—For he loveth our nation and hath built us a Synagogue.
- I bear you witness, that if it could be done, you would have plucked out your own eyes, and would have given them to me.
- Daniel knelt down three times a day, and adored, and gave thanks before his God.
- Go into thy house to thy

friends; and tell them how great things the Lord hath done for thee, and hath had mercy on thee.—And he went his way and began to publish in Decapolis how great things Jesus had done for him: and all men wondered.		(10) Eve.	<i>Ge</i> 4, 25
		(11) Noe.	<i>Ge</i> 8, 20
		(12) Melchisedeck.	<i>Ge</i> 14, 20
		(13) Lot.	<i>Ge</i> 19, 19
		(14) Abraham's Servant.	<i>Ge</i> 24, 27
		(15) Laban and Bethuel.	<i>Ge</i> 24, 50
		(16) Isaac.	<i>Ge</i> 26, 22
		(17) Lia.	<i>Ge</i> 29, 32
		(18) Rachel.	<i>Ge</i> 30, 6
		(19) Jacob.	<i>Ge</i> 30, 42
		(20) Joseph.	<i>Ge</i> 50, 20
		(21) Moses.	<i>Ex</i> 18, 4
		(22) Jethro.	<i>Ex</i> 18, 10
		(23) Israel.	<i>Ex</i> 4, 31
		(24) Josue.	<i>Js</i> 4, 20
		(25) Debhora.	<i>Jg</i> 5, 1
		(26) Samson.	<i>Jg</i> 15, 18
		(27) Anna of Elcana.	<i>1 K</i> 1, 27
		(28) Samuel.	<i>1 K</i> 7, 12
		(29) David.	<i>2 K</i> 5, 20
		(30) Solomon.	<i>3 K</i> 3, 6
		(31) Queen of Saba.	<i>3 K</i> 10, 9
		(32) Hiram.	<i>2 P</i> 2, 12
		(33) Asa.	<i>2 P</i> 14, 7
		(34) Josaphat's Army.	<i>2 P</i> 20, 27
		(35) Cyrus.	<i>1 E</i> 1, 2
		(36) Levites.	<i>2 E</i> 9, 4
		(37) Nehemias.	<i>2 E</i> 2, 8
		(38) The Jews.	<i>2 E</i> 12, 43
<b>Examples of Gratitude:</b>			
<i>Jn</i> 11, 41	(1) Our Blessed Lord.		
<i>Ac</i> 12, 11	(2) S. Peter.		
<i>Lu</i> 2, 20	(3) The Shepherds.		
<i>Lu</i> 5, 25	(4) The Paralytic.		
<i>Lu</i> 8, 39	(5) The Demoniac.		
<i>Lu</i> 13, 13	(6) The Woman sick eighteen years.		
<i>Lu</i> 17, 16	(7) The Grateful Leper.		
<i>Lu</i> 18, 43	(8) Bartimeus.		
<i>Ac</i> 3, 8	(9) The Lame Man.		

### 13.—EJACULATORY ACTS OF THANKSGIVING FOR GENERAL AND PARTICULAR FAVOURS.

<i>Ep</i> 1, 3, 4	Blessed be the God and Father of Our Lord Jesus Christ, Who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places, in Christ,—As He hath chosen us in Him before the foundation of the world, that we should be unholy and unspotted in His sight, in Charity.	I will give praise to Thee, O Lord, with my whole heart: I will narrate all Thy wonders:—I will be glad and rejoice in Thee; I will sing to Thy Name, O Thou, Most High.—When my enemy shall be turned back, they shall be weakened and perish before Thy face.	<i>Ps</i> 9, 1-3
<i>Tb</i> 12, 6	I bless the God of Heaven and I give glory to Him in the sight of all that live, because He hath shown His mercy to me.	Thanks be to God, Who hath given us the victory through Our Lord Jesus Christ.	<i>1 C</i> 15, 57
<i>2 C</i> 9, 15	Thanks be to God for His unspeakable gift.	I will give thanks to Thee, O Lord, for Thou wast angry with me: Thy wrath is	<i>Is</i> 12, 1

- turned away, and Thou hast comforted me. *Ps 102, 2-4*
- Ps 65, 8, 9* O bless our God, ye Gentiles : and make the Voice of His praise to be heard :—Who hath set my soul to live. *Ps 102, 2-4*
- Ps 66, 6, 7* Let the people, O God, confess to Thee ; let all the people give praise to Thee :—The earth hath yielded her fruit. *Ps 15, 7*
- 1P 29, 13* We give thanks to Thee, our God, and we praise Thy glorious Name. *Ps 62, 4*
- Ps 94, 2* Let us come before His presence with thanksgiving. *Ps 34, 18*
- 1 T 1, 2* I will bless the Lord, Who hath given me understanding. Thy mercy is better than life : Thee my lips shall praise. I will give thanks to Thee in a great Church. We give thanks to God.

## 14.—EFFECTS OF INGRATITUDE.

- W 16, 29* The hope of the unthankful shall melt away as the winter's ice, and shall run off as unprofitable water.
- Pv 17, 13* He that rendereth evil for good, evil shall not depart from his house. *2 T 3, 1, 2*
- Ro 1, 21, 22* They are inexcusable—Because that, when they had known God, they have not glorified Him as God, nor gave thanks : but became vain in their thoughts ; and their foolish heart was darkened :—For professing themselves to be wise, they became fools. Know this, that in the last days, shall come dangerous times :—Men shall be lovers of themselves, covetous, haughty, proud, blasphemous, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, wicked.

## 15.—FORGETFULNESS OF GOD'S BENEFITS CONDEMNED.

- Ma 1, 6* The son honoureth the father, and the servant his master : If then I be a Father, where is My honour ? and if I be a Master, where is My fear ? saith the Lord of Hosts.
- Dt 32, 6* Is this the return thou makest to the Lord, O foolish and senseless people ? Is He not thy Father that hath possessed thee, and made thee, and created thee ? *Is 51, 13*
- Is 1, 2, 3* Hear, O ye heavens, and give ear. O earth ! for the Lord hath spoken : I have brought up children and exalted them : but they have despised Me.—The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master's crib : but Israel hath not known Me, and My people hath not understood. Thou hast forgotten the Lord thy Maker, who stretched out the heavens and founded the earth : and thou hast been afraid continually all the day, at the presence of His fury, who afflicted

thee, and had prepared Himself to destroy thee: where is now the fury of the oppressor?

*Ps 77, 42* They remembered not His hand in the day that He redeemed them from the hand of him that afflicted them.

*Ps 105, 21, 22* They forgot God, Who saved them, Who had done great things in Egypt;—Wonderous works in the land of Cham, terrible things in the Red Sea.

*Ez 4, 7, 8* You have provoked Him Who made you, the eternal God, offering sacrifices to devils and not to God.—For you have forgotten God Who brought you up, and you have grieved Jerusalem who nursed you.

*1 K 10, 19* You this day have rejected God, Who only have saved you out of all your evils and your tribulations.

*Je 2, 5* What iniquity have your fathers found in Me, that they are gone far from Me, and have walked after vanity and are become vain?

*Je 2, 6* They have not said: Where is the Lord that made us come up out of the land of Egypt?

*Os, 2, 8, 9* She did not know that I gave her corn and wine and oil, and multiplied her silver and gold, which they have used in the service of Baal.—Therefore will I return and take away My corn in its season, and My wine in its season, and I will set at liberty My wool and My flax, which covered her disgrace.

*Os 8, 14* Israel hath forgotten his Maker, and hath built tem-

ples: and Juda hath built many fenced cities: and I will send a fire upon his cities; and it shall devour the houses thereof.

Were there not ten made clean? and where are the nine?—There is no one found to return, and give glory to God, but this stranger.

Many good works I have shown to you from My Father: for which of those works do you stone Me?—My people hath forgotten Me days without number.

O, My people, what have I done to thee, or in what have I molested thee? Answer thou Me.

They shall say to Him: What are these wounds in the midst of Thy hands? And He shall say: With these I was wounded in the House of them that loved Me.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children, as the hen doth gather her chickens under her wings, and thou wouldest not!

Some of them went to the Pharisees, and told them the things that Jesus had done.—From that day, therefore, they devised to put Him to death.

You denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you.

Because thou didst not serve the Lord thy God with joy and gladness of heart,

for the abundance of all things:—Thou shalt serve thy enemy whom the Lord will send upon thee, in hunger, and thirst, and nakedness, and in want of all things: and he shall put an iron yoke upon thy neck, till he consume thee.

*Is* 30, 16 [You] have said: No, but we will flee to horses: therefore shall you flee. And we will mount upon swift ones: therefore shall they be swifter than shall pursue after you.

*Is* 5, 1, 2 My beloved had a Vineyard on a hill in a fruitful place.—And He fenced it in,

and picked the stones out of it, and planted it with the choicest wines, and built a tower in the midst thereof, and set up a winepress therein: and He looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

You made a ditch between the two walls for the water of the old pool: and you have not looked up to the Maker thereof, nor regarded Him even at a distance, that wrought it long ago.

Why then have my people said: We are revolted, we will come to Thee no more? *Je* 2, 31

### 16.—EXAMPLES OF INGRATITUDE.

*Ex* 1, 8-10 There arose a new king over Egypt that knew not Joseph.—And he said to his people: Behold, the people of the children of Israel are numerous and stronger than we.—Come, let us wisely oppress them lest they multiply, and if any war shall arise over against us, join with our enemies, and, having overcome us, depart out of the land.

*Ex* 32, 1, 6 The people, seeing that Moses delayed to come down from the mount, gathering together against Aaron, said: Arise, make us gods that may go before us; for, as to this Moses, the man that brought us out of the land of Egypt, we know not what has befallen him.—And, rising in the morning, they offered holocausts and peace-victims: and the people sat down to eat and drink, and they rose up to play.

He (Ezechias) did not render again according to the benefits he had received: for his heart was lifted up: and wrath was enkindled against him, and against Juda and Jerusalem.

Many have abused unto pride, the goodness of princes, and the honour that hath been bestowed upon them.—And not only endeavour to oppress the king's subjects, but not bearing the glory that is given them, take in hand to practise also against them that gave it.—Neither are they content not to return thanks for benefits received, and to violate in themselves the laws of humanity, but they think they can also escape the justice of God, Who seeth all things.

He falsified all whatsoever he had said, and alienated himself from Jonathan, and *1 M* 11, 53

did not reward him accord- received from him, but gave  
to the benefits he had him great trouble.

### 17.—AFFABILITY AND KINDNESS.

- Ga* 5, 22 The fruit of the Spirit is make no complaint, and  
charity, goodness, benignity. when thou givest anything,  
*W* 1, 6 The spirit of Wisdom is add not grief by an evil  
benevolent. word.  
*W* 7, 22 In wisdom is the spirit of Lo, is not a word better *Eci* 18, 17  
understanding, sweet, loving than a gift? But both are  
that which is good, bene- with a justified man.  
ficient. Put ye on, as the elect of *Cl* 3, 12  
*Eci* 18, 16 Shall not the dew assuage God, holy and beloved, the  
the heat? So also the good bowels of mercy, benignity.  
word is better than the gift. Be ye kind one to an- *Ep* 4, 32  
*Eci* 18, 15 My son, in thy good deeds other, merciful.

### 18.—THE RIGHT USE OF THE TONGUE.

- Ja* 3, 2 In many things we all his lips shall fill him.—Death  
offend. If any man offend and life are in the power of  
not in word, the same is the tongue; they that love  
a perfect man. He is able it shall eat the fruits  
also with a bridle to turn thereof.  
about the whole body. Behold, how small a fire *Ja* 3, 5-6  
*Eci* 14, 1 Blessed is the man that kindleth a great wood! And  
hath not slipt by a word out the tongue is a fire, a world  
of his mouth, and is not of iniquity.—The tongue is  
pricked with the remorse of placed among our members,  
sin. which defileth the whole  
*Eci* 19, 17 Who is there that hath not body, and setteth on fire the  
offended with his tongue? wheel of our nativity, being  
*Eci* 27, 28 Praise not a man before he set on fire by hell.  
speaketh; for this is the  
trial of men. Every kind of beast, and *Ja* 3, 7-8  
of birds, and of serpents, and  
*Eci* 27, 7 As the dressing of a tree of the rest is tamed and  
showeth the fruit thereof, so hath been tamed by man-  
a word out of the thought kind.—But the tongue no  
of the heart of man. man can tame: a restless  
evil, full of poison.  
*Mt* 12, 34-35 Out of the abundance of It is the part of man to *Pv* 16, 1  
the heart, the mouth prepare the soul, and of the  
speaketh.—A good man, out Lord to govern the tongue.  
of a good treasure, bringeth  
forth good things: and an Keep thy tongue from evil. *Pv* 33, 14  
evil man, out of an evil trea- Who is a wise man and *Ja* 3, 13  
sure, bringeth forth evil  
things. endowed with knowledge  
*Pv* 18, 20-21 Of the fruit of a man's among you? Let him show  
mouth shall his belly be by a good conversation his  
satisfied, and the offspring of work in the meekness of  
wisdom.

## 19.—ADVICE TO THOSE WHO SPEAK.

- Eci* 32, 4 Speak thou that art elder : for it becometh thee to speak the first word with careful knowledge.
- Eci* 9, 23 Let the thought of God be in thy mind, and all thy discourse on the Commandments of the Most High.
- Tt* 2, 1, 8 Speak thou the things that become sound doctrine.—Sound speech, unblameable, that he who is on the contrary part may be afraid, having no evil to say of us.
- Ca* 4, 3 The lips are as a scarlet lace, and thy speech sweet.
- Eci* 37, 12-14 Treat not with a man without religion concerning holiness ; nor with an unjust man concerning justice ; nor with a woman concerning her of whom she is jealous ; nor with a coward concerning war ; nor with a merchant concerning traffic ; nor with a buyer of selling ; nor with an envious man of giving thanks.—Nor with the ungodly of piety ; nor with the dishonest of honesty ; nor with the field-labourer of every work.—Nor with an idle servant of much business. Give not heed to these in any matter of counsel.
- He that despiseth his friend is mean of heart : but the wise man will hold his peace.
- Speak not in the ears of fools : because they will despise the instruction of thy speech.
- In the midst of the unwise, keep in the word till it is time ; but be continually among men that think.
- Where there is no hearing, pour not out words : and be not lifted up out of season with thy wisdom.
- If thou have understanding, answer thy neighbour ; but, if not, let thy hand be upon thy mouth, lest thou be surprised in an unskilful word, and be confounded.
- Watch over [thy lips].
- Pv* 11, 12
- Pv* 23, 9
- Eci* 27, 13
- Eci* 32, 6
- Eci* 5, 14
- Eci* 1, 38

## 20.—OF SPEAKING WITH PRUDENCE, MILDNESS, MODERATION, AND AT THE RIGHT TIME AND PLACE.

- Cl* 4, 6 Let your speech be always in grace, seasoned with salt, that you may know how you ought to answer any man.
- Pv* 15, 28 The mind of the just studieth obedience : the mouth of the wicked overfloweth with evils.
- Ca* 7, 8-9 Thy breasts shall be as the clusters of the vine : and the odour of thy mouth like apples.—Thy throat like the best wine, worthy for my beloved to drink, and for his lips and his teeth to ruminate.
- Make doors and bars to thy mouth.—Melt down my gold and silver, and make a balance for thy words, and a just bridle for thy mouth :—And take heed lest thou slip with thy tongue and fall in the sight of thy enemies who lie in wait for thee, and thy
- Eci* 28, 28-30

- fall be incurable unto death.
- Pv* 10, 19 In the multitude of words there shall not want sin : but he that refraineth his lips is most wise.
- Ja* 1, 19 Let every man be swift to hear : but slow to speak.
- Pv* 26, 4-5 Answer not a fool according to his folly, lest thou be made like him.—Answer a fool according to his folly, lest he imagine himself to be wise.
- Eci* 20, 5-6 There is one that holdeth his peace, that is found wise : and there is another that is hateful, that is bold in speech. — There is one that holdeth his peace, because he knoweth not what to say : and there is another that holdeth his peace, knowing the proper time.
- Eci* 3, 7 There is a time to keep silence, and a time to speak.
- Eci* 20, 7 A wise man will hold his
- his peace till he see opportunity : but a babbler and a fool will regard no time.
- Refrain not to speak in the time of salvation. Hide not thy wisdom in her beauty.— For by the tongue wisdom is discerned : and understanding, and knowledge, and learning, by the word of the wise, and steadfastness in the works of justice.
- He that setteth bounds to his words is knowing and wise : and the man of understanding is of a precious spirit.
- A parable coming out of a fool's mouth shall be rejected, for he doth not speak it in due season.
- Even a fool, if he will hold his peace, shall be accounted wise : and if he close his lips, a man of understanding.
- Be not hasty in thy tongue.

## 21.—FRUITS OF THE RIGHT USE OF THE TONGUE.

- Pv* 21, 23 He that keepeth his mouth and his tongue, keepeth his soul from distress.
- Ja* 3, 2-3 If any man offend not in word, the same is a perfect man. He is able also, with a bridle, to turn about the whole body.—For if we put bits into the mouths of horses that they may obey, we turn about their whole body.
- Pv* 15, 23 A man rejoiceth in the sentence of his mouth : and a word in due time is best.
- Pv* 12, 19 The lip of truth shall be steadfast for ever : but he that is a hasty witness frameth a lying tongue.
- Eci* 20, 29 A wise man shall advance himself with his words : and a prudent one shall please
- the great ones.
- He that loveth cleanness of heart, for the grace of his lips, shall have the king for his friend.
- To speak a word in due time is like apples of gold on beds of silver.
- The words of the mouth of a wise man are grace : but the lips of a fool shall throw him down headlong.
- By patience a prince shall be appeased, and a soft tongue shall break hardness.
- A sweet word multiplieth friends, and appeaseth enemies : and a gracious tongue in a good man aboundeth.
- The words of the wise are



as goads, and as nails deeply

fastened in, which, by the  
counsel of masters are given  
from one shepherd.

*Eci* 40, 21 The flute and the psaltery  
make a sweet melody : but a  
pleasant tongue is above

them both.

The tongue of the wise is *Pv* 12, 18  
health.

He that hateth chastise- *Eci* 19, 5

ment shall have less life :  
and he that hateth babbling  
extinguisheth evil.

## 22.—UNBRIDLED SPEECH MARKS THE FOOLISH MAN.

*Pv* 29, 11 A fool uttereth all his  
mind : a wise man deferreth,  
and keepeth it till after-  
wards.

*Ecl* 10, 14 A fool multiplieth words.

*Eci* 20, 8 He that useth many words  
shall hurt his own soul.

*Ecl* 5, 2 In many words shall be  
found folly.

*Pv* 29, 20 Hast thou seen a man  
hasty to speak? folly is  
rather to be looked for than  
his amendment,

*Ecl* 5, 6 Where there are many  
dreams, there are many  
vanities, and words without

number.

A man full of tongue is *Eci* 9, 25  
terrible in his city : and he  
that is rash in his word shall  
be hateful.

He is hateful, that is bold *Eci* 20, 5  
in speech.

A parable coming out of a *Eci* 20, 22  
fool's mouth shall be re-  
jected ; for he doth not  
speak it in due season.

In the multitude of words *Pv* 10, 19  
there shall not want sin.

A slippery mouth worketh *Pv* 26, 28  
ruin.

The tongue is a fire. *Ja* 3, 6

## 23.—INDISCREET USE OF THE TONGUE.

*Eci* 20, 21 A man without grace is as  
a vain fable : it shall be con-  
tinually in the mouth of the  
unwise.

*Pv* 15, 28 The mouth of the wicked  
overfloweth with evils.

*Pv* 25, 28 As a city that lieth open  
and is not compassed with  
walls, so is a man that can-  
not refrain his own spirit in  
speaking.

*Ecl* 10, 12-13 The lips of a fool shall  
throw him down headlong.  
—The beginning of his words  
is folly : and the end of his  
talk a mischievous error.

*W* 1, 8 He that speaketh unjust  
things cannot be hid, nei-  
ther shall the chastising  
judgment pass him by.

There is that promiseth *Pv* 12, 18,  
and is pricked as it were  
with a sword of conscience :  
but the tongue of the wise is  
health.

Many have fallen by the *Eci* 23, 22  
edge of the sword : but not  
so many as have perished by  
their own tongue.

The wicked man diggeth *Pv* 16, 27-  
evil, and in his lips is a burn- 29

ing fire.—A perverse man  
stirreth up quarrels : and  
one full of words separateth  
princes. — An unjust man  
allureth his friend : and  
leadeth him into a way that  
is not good.

A man that speaketh to *Pv* 29, 5  
his friend with flattering and

- dissembling words, spreadeth a net for his feet.
- Eci* 22, 6 A tale out of time, is like music in mourning.
- Eci* 27, 14 The discourse of sinners is hateful: and their laughter is at the pleasure of sin.
- Eci* 28, 16-21 The tongue of a third person hath disquieted many, and scattered them from nation to nation.—It hath destroyed the strong cities of the rich, and hath overthrown the houses of great men.—He hath cut in pieces the forces of people and undone nations.—The tongue of a third person hath cast out valiant women, and deprived them of their labours.—He that hearkeneth to it shall never have rest: neither shall he have a friend in whom he may repose.—The stroke of a whip maketh a blue mark: but the stroke of the tongue will break the bones.
- Blessed is he that is *Eci* 28, 23 defended from a wicked tongue, that hath not passed into the wrath thereof, and that hath not drawn the yoke thereof, and hath not been bound in its bands.
- They spoke vain things. *Ps* 37, 12

## 24.—ABUSE OF LIBERTY OF SPEECH.

- Ep* 4, 29 Let no evil speech proceed from your mouth: but that which is good, to the edification of faith, that it may afford grace to the hearers.
- repeat not the word in thy prayer.
- 1 Pt*, 3 10 He that will love life and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips, that they speak no guile.
- Be not hasty in thy tongue: *Eci* 4, 34 and slack and remiss in thy works.
- Eci* 23, 17 Let not thy mouth be accustomed to indiscreet speech: for therein is the word of sin.
- Fornication and all uncleanness, or covetousness, let it not so much as be named among you, as it becometh saints.—Nor obscenity, nor foolish talking, nor scurrility, which is to no purpose; but rather giving thanks.
- Ja* 1, 26 If any man think himself to be religious, not bridling his tongue, but deceiving his own heart, this man's religion is in vain.
- The tongue no man can tame.—By it we bless God and the Father; and by it we curse men who are made after the likeness of God.—Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing. My brethren, these things ought not so to be.—Doth a fountain send forth through the same passage sweet and bitter water?—Can the fig-tree, my brethren, bear grapes; or the vine, figs? So neither can the salt water yield sweet.
- Eci* 5, 1, 2 Speak not anything rashly, and let not thy heart be hasty to utter a word before God.—For God is in Heaven, and thou upon earth: therefore let thy words be few. Dreams follow many cares, and in many words shall be found folly.
- Eci* 7, 15 Be not full of words in a multitude of ancients, and Its yoke is a yoke of iron. *Eci* 28, 24

## 25.—CONTRASTS BETWEEN THE WORDS OF THE WISE AND THE FOOLISH MAN.

- Eci* 5, 15 Honour and glory is the word of the wise; but the tongue of the fool is his ruin. in their mouth, and the mouth of wise men is in their heart.
- Eci* 20, 7, 13 A wise man will hold his peace till he see opportunity, but a babbler and a fool will regard no time.—A man, wise in words, shall make himself beloved, but the graces of fools shall be poured out. Of the fruit of his own mouth shall a man be filled with good things; but the soul of transgressors is wicked.—He that keepeth his mouth, keepeth his soul; but he that hath no guard on his speech shall meet with evils. *Pv* 13, 2, 3
- Eci* 21, 19-21 The talking of the fool is like a burden in the way: but in the lips of the wise grace shall be found.—The mouth of the prudent is sought after in the church: and they will think upon his words in their hearts.—As a house that is destroyed, so is wisdom to a fool, and the knowledge of the unwise is as words without sense. In the mouth of a fool is the rod of pride; but the lips of the wise preserve them. *Pv* 14, 3
- Eci* 21, 28, 29 The lips of the unwise will be telling foolish things, but the words of the wise shall be weighed in a balance.—The heart of fools is A mild answer breaketh wrath; but a harsh word stirreth up fury.—The tongue of the wise adorneth knowledge; but the mouth of fools babbleth out folly. A peaceable tongue is a tree of life, but that which is immoderate shall crush the spirit.—The lips of the wise shall disperse knowledge: the heart of fools shall be unlike. *Pv* 15, 1, 2, 4, 7

## 26.—EXAMPLES OF WISE SPEECH.

- Pv* 38, 1 I said, I will take heed to my ways, that I sin not with my tongue. With great power did the Apostles give testimony of the Resurrection of Jesus Christ, Our Lord: and great grace was in them all. *Ac* 4, 33
- Pv* 38, 2 I have set a guard to my mouth, when the sinner stood against me: I was dumb and was humbled, and kept silence from good things. Let no man deceive himself: if any man among you seem to be wise in this world, let him become a fool that he may be wise.—For the wisdom of this world is foolishness with God. *1 C* 3, 18-19
- Ps* 118, 13 With my lips I have pronounced all the judgments of my mouth. Thy speech is sweet. *Ca* 4, 3
- Pv* 118, 46 I spoke of Thy testimonies before kings, and I was not ashamed. David prudent in his words. *1 K* 16, 18
- Jesus touched his tongue. *Mk* 7, 33

## 27.—EJACULATORY PRAYERS FOR WISDOM IN SPEECH.

- Ps* 140, 3, Set a watch, O Lord, before my mouth; and a door round about my lips:—  
*Ps* 119, 2, O Lord, deliver my soul from wicked lips, and a deceitful tongue.—What shall be given to thee, or what shall be added to thee, to a deceitful tongue?  
*Eci* 22, 33 Who will set a guard before my mouth, and a sure seal upon my lips, that I fall not by them, and that my tongue destroy me not?  
*Ps* 50, 17 O Lord, Thou wilt open my lips, and my mouth shall declare Thy praise.

(See *Prayer, Praise, Prudence.*)

## 28.—TRUTH AND FIDELITY; THE HEINOUSNESS OF A LIE.

- Pv* 1, 3, 4 Let not mercy and truth leave thee, put them about thy neck, and write them in the tables of thy heart:—  
*Eci* 20, 27 A thief is better than a man that is always lying: but both of them shall inherit destruction.  
*Pv* 12, 22 Lying lips are an abomination to the Lord: but they that deal faithfully please Him.  
*Jn* 8, 44 You are of your father, the devil, and the desires of your father you will do: He was a murderer from the beginning, and he stood not in the truth, because Truth is not in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own; for he is a liar and the father thereof.  
*Pv* 6, 19 A deceitful witness that uttereth lies, the Lord detesteth.  
*Pv* 14, 17 The crafty man is hateful.  
*Eci* 25, 3, 4 Three sorts my soul hateth, and I am greatly grieved at their life:—A poor man that is proud; a rich man that is a liar; an old man that is a fool and doting.

## 29.—THE EVIL CONSEQUENCES OF A LIE.

- Pv* 20, 17 The bread of lying is sweet to a man; but afterwards his mouth shall be filled with gravel.  
*Eci* 41, 21 Be ashamed of a lie before a governor and a man in power.  
*Pv* 13, 5 The just shall hate a lying word; but the wicked confoundeth and shall be confounded.  
*Pv* 5, 7 Thou wilt destroy all that speak a lie.  
*Pv* 19, 9 He that speaketh lies shall perish.  
*Pv* 21, 28 A lying witness shall perish.  
*Eci* 20, 20 The slipping of a false tongue is as one that falleth on the pavement: so the fall of the wicked shall come speedily.  
*W* 1, 11 The mouth that believeth, killeth the soul.

- Eci* 20, 26- A lie is a foul blot on a confusion is with them with-  
 28 man, and yet it will be con- out ceasing.  
 tinually in the mouth of men Accept no person against *Eci* 4, 26  
 without discipline. — The thy own person, nor against  
 manners of lying men are thy soul a lie.  
 without honour: and their Lie not one to another. *Cl* 3, 9

### 30.—TRUTH TO BE SPOKEN ; ALL LYING FORBIDDEN.

- Ep* 4, 25 Putting away lying, speak the lie of thy ignorance.—Be  
 ye the truth, every man to not ashamed to confess thy  
 his neighbour: for we are sins; but submit not thyself  
 members one of another. to every man for sin.—Resist  
*Cl* 3, 9 Lie not one to another, not against the face of the  
 stripping yourselves of the mighty, and do not strive  
 old man with his deeds. against the stream of the  
*Eci* 7, 14 Be not willing to make river.  
 any manner of lie. Just lips are the delight of *Pv* 16, 13  
*Le* 19, 11 You shall not lie, neither kings: he that speaketh  
 shall any man deceive his right things shall be loved.  
 neighbour. Love ye truth. *Za* 8, 19  
*Pv* 10, 4 He that trusteth to lies I shall not be foolish: for I *2 C* 12, 6  
 feedeth the winds: and the will say the truth.  
 same runneth after birds that Be not liars against the *Ja* 3, 14  
 fly away. truth.  
*Eci* 4, 30- In no wise speak against I say the truth in Christ: *Ro* 9, 1  
 32 the truth, but be ashamed of I lie not.

(See *Fraud, Guile, Calumny, Contumely.*)

### 31.—SINNERS CANNOT ESCAPE THE AVENGING JUSTICE OF GOD.

- Eci* 16, 7, In the congregation of sin- is a flame of fire.  
 8 ners a fire shall be kindled, Whithersoever they meant *Jg* 2, 15  
 and in an unbelieving nation to go, the hand of the Lord  
 wrath shall flame out.—The was upon them, as He had  
 ancient giants did not obtain said, and as He had sworn to  
 pardon for their sins, who them: and they were greatly  
 were destroyed, trusting in distressed.  
 their strength. Though for the present *2 M* 6, 23  
*Jb* 21, 30 The wicked man is re- time, I should be delivered  
 served to the day of destruc- from the punishments of  
 tion, and he shall be brought men, yet should I not escape  
 to the day of wrath. the hand of the Almighty,  
 neither alive nor dead.  
*2 M* 4, 17 Acting wickedly against Do not think that thou *2 M* 7, 49  
 the laws of God doth not shalt escape unpunished, for  
 pass unpunished. that thou hast attempted to  
*Eci* 21, 10 The congregation of sin- fight against God.  
 ners is like tow heaped to- Thou shalt fly lying. *Ex* 23, 7  
 gether; and the end of them

**32.—GOD LONG-SUFFERING, SLOW TO CHASTISE,  
PUNISHING, BUT NOT WITHOUT MERCY.**

*W*12, 8-10 Those ancient inhabitants of Thy Holy Land, it was Thy will to destroy by the hands of our parents.—Yet even those Thou sparedst as men, and didst send wasps forerunners of Thy host, to destroy them by little and little.—Not that Thou wast unable to bring the wicked under the just by war, or by cruel beasts, or with one rough word to destroy them at once:—But executing Thy judgments by degrees, Thou gavest them place for repentance, not being ignorant that they were a wicked generation, and their malice natural, and that their thought could never be changed.

*W*12, 1, 2 O how good and sweet is Thy Spirit, O Lord in all things!—And therefore Thou chastisest them that err, by little and little, and admonishest them, and speakest to them concerning the things wherein they offend; that, leaving their wickedness, they may believe in Thee, O Lord.

*Eci* 5, 2-4 Follow not in thy strength the desires of thy heart.—And say not: How mighty am I! and who shall bring

me under for my deeds?—For God will surely take revenge.—Say not: I have sinned, and what harm hath befallen me? for the Most High is a patient rewarder.

I have always held My peace; I have kept silence; I have been patient: I will speak now, as a woman in labour; I will destroy and swallow up at once.

Behold, it is written before Me: I will not be silent, but I will render and repay into their bosom.

It is a token of great goodness when sinners are not suffered to go on in their ways for a long time, but are presently punished.—For, not as with other nations, whom the Lord patiently expecteth, that when the day of judgment shall come He may punish them in the fulness of their sins,—Doth He also deal with us, so as to suffer our sins to come to their height, and then take vengeance on us.—And therefore he never withdraweth His mercy from us: but though He chastiseth His people with adversity, He forsaketh them not.

The Lord trieth the wicked.

*Ps* 10, 6

**33.—GOD'S JUSTICE VISITS THE GUILTY AND THE  
INNOCENT, BUT FOR DIFFERENT PURPOSES.**

*Ex* 18, 20 The soul that sinneth, the same shall die: the son shall not bear the iniquity of the father, and the father shall not bear the iniquity of the son: the justice of the just shall be

upon him, and the wickedness of the wicked shall be upon him.

He that hath sinned against Me, him will I strike out of My Book.

*Is* 42, 14

*Is* 65, 4

16

*Ex* 32, 33

- Ge* 18, 25 Far be it from Thee to do this thing and to slay the just with the wicked, and for the just to be in like case with the wicked; this is not becoming Thee: Thou who judgest all the earth, wilt not make this judgment.
- 12, 15 For so much then as Thou art just, Thou orderest all things justly: thinking it not agreeable to Thy power, to condemn him who deserveth not to be punished.
- Jb* 20, 18 He shall be punished for all that he did, and yet shall not be consumed: according to the multitude of his devices, so also shall he suffer.
- Jd* 8, 27 Esteeming these very punishments to be less than our sins deserve, let us believe that these scourges of the Lord, with which like servants we are chastised, have happened for our amendment, and not for our destruction.
- W* 11, 10, 11 When they were tried, and chastised with mercy, they knew how the wicked were judged with wrath and tormented.—For Thou didst admonish and try them as a father: but the others, as a severe king, Thou didst examine and condemn.
- I will visit their iniquities *Ps* 88, 33-34 with a rod, and their sins with stripes.—But My mercy I will not take away from him, nor will I suffer My truth to fail.
- I have wounded thee with *Je* 30, 14 the wound of an enemy, with a cruel chastisement: by reason of the multitude of thy iniquities, thy sins are hardened.
- To these the destroyed *W* 18, 25 gave place, and was afraid of them: for the proof only of wrath was enough.
- As to the wicked, even to *W* 19, 1 the end, there came upon them wrath without mercy. For He knew before also what they would do.

### 34.—SINNERS ARE PUNISHED IN AND THROUGH THEIR SINS.

- W* 11, 17 By what things a man sinneth, by the same also he is tormented.
- W* 12, 23 Thou hast greatly tormented them who in their life have lived foolishly and unjustly, by the same things which they worshipped.
- Eci* 39, 33-37 There are spirits that are created for vengeance, and in their fury they lay on grievous torments.—In the time of destruction they shall pour out their force; and they shall appease the wrath of Him that made them.—Fire, hail, famine, and death, all these were created for vengeance. — The teeth of beasts, and scorpions, and serpents, and the sword taking vengeance upon the ungodly unto destruction.—In His commandments they shall feast; and they shall be ready upon earth when need is: and when their time is come, they shall not transgress His Word.
- Such things [as trouble, *Eci* 40, 8-10 unquietness, the fear of death, &c.] happen to all flesh, from man even to beast, and upon sinners sevenfold more.

—Moreover, death, and bloodshed, and strife, and sword, oppressions, famine, and affliction and scourges.—All these things are created for the wicked, and for their sakes came the Flood.

Hast thou entered into the storehouses of the snow, or hast thou beheld the treasures of the hail?—Which I have prepared for the time of the enemy, against the day of battle and war?

**35.—VENGEANCE ON SINNERS, AND CORRECTION OF THE JUST; THE ENDS OF DIVINE PUNISHMENT.**

*W* 16, 11 They were examined for the remembrance of Thy words, and were quickly healed, lest falling into deep forgetfulness they might not be able to use Thy help.

*Is* 26, 9, 10 When Thou shalt do Thy judgments on the earth, the inhabitants of the world shall learn justice.—Let us have pity on the wicked, but he will not learn justice: in the land of the Saints he hath done wicked things, and he shall not see the glory of the Lord.

*Is* 26, 15, 16 Thou has been favourable to the nation, O Lord; Thou hast been favourable to the nation; art Thou glorified? Thou hast removed all the ends of the earth far off.—Lord, they have sought after Thee in distress; in the tribulation of murmuring, Thy instruction was with them.

A thousand men shall flee for fear of one; and for fear of five shall you flee, till you be left as the mast of a ship on the top of a mountain, and as an ensign upon a hill.

If Thou didst punish the enemies of Thy servants, and that deserved to die, with so great deliberation, giving them time and place, whereby they might be changed from their wickedness:—With what circumspection hast Thou judged Thy own children, to whose parents Thou hast sworn, and made covenants of good promises?—Therefore, whereas Thou chastiseth us, Thou scourgest our enemies very many ways, to the end that when we judge, we may think on Thy goodness: and when we are judged, we may hope for Thy mercy.

The Lord is a consuming fire.

**36.—UTILITY AND NECESSITY OF VINDICTIVE JUSTICE FROM A HUMAN POINT OF VIEW; PENALTY OF NEGLECTING IT; PUNISHMENT TO BE DULY ADMINISTERED.**

*Ps* 25, 4 Take away the rust from the silver, and there shall come forth a most pure vessel.

A whip for a horse, and a snaffle for an ass, and a rod for the back of fools.

They that remain shall



know that there is nothing better than the fear of God, and that there is nothing sweeter than to have regard to the Commandments of the Lord.

*Nu* 25, 4 Take all the princes of the people, and hang them up on gibbets against the sun : that My fury may be turned away from Israel.

*Pv* 19, 25 The wicked man being scourged, the fool shall be wiser ; but if thou rebuke a wise man, he will understand discipline.

*Pv* 21, 11 When a pestilent man is punished, the little one will be wiser ; and if he follow the wise, he will receive knowledge.

*Pv* 20, 30 The blueness of a wound shall wipe away evil ; and stripes in the more inward

parts of the belly.

Because sentence is not *Ecl* 8, 11 speedily pronounced against the evil, the children of men commit evils without any fear.

Because thou hast let go *3 K* 20, 42 out of thy hand a man worthy of death, thy life shall be for his life, and thy people for his people.

Thou hast taught Thy *W* 12, 19 people by such works that they must be just and humane, and hast made Thy children to be of good hope : because in judging Thou givest place for repentance for sins.

Be not over just : and be *Ecl* 7, 17 not more wise than is necessary, lest thou become stupid.

Persevere under discipline. *He* 12, 7

### 37.—EXAMPLES OF THE PUNISHMENT OF MEN BY MEANS OF THEIR SINS.

*Jg* 1, 6, 7 Adonibezec fled : and they pursued after him and took him, and cut off his fingers and toes.—And Adonibezec said : Seventy kings, having their fingers and toes cut off, gathered up the leavings of the meat under my table : As I have done, so hath God requited me. And they brought him to Jerusalem, and he died there.

*1 K* 15, 33 Samuel said to the king : Agag, as thy sword hath made women childless, so shall thy mother be childless among women. And Samuel hewed him in pieces before the Lord in Gailgal.

*2 K* 6, 24 By the king's commandment, those men were brought that had accused

Daniel, and they were cast into the lions' den, and they did not reach the bottom of of the den, before the lions caught them, and broke all their bones in pieces.

They rose up against the *Da* 13, 61, two elders (for Daniel had 62 had convicted them of falsehood by their own mouth), and they did to them as they had maliciously dealt with their neighbour,—To fulfil the law of Moses : and they put them to death : and innocent blood was saved in that day.

Being inflamed with anger, *2 M* 4, 38 Antiochus commanded Andronicus to be stripped of his purple, and to be led about through all the city :

F F

and in that same place where he had committed the impiety against Onias, the sacrilegious wretch should be put to death, the Lord repaying him his deserved punishment.

2 M 5, 9, He (the wicked Jason)  
10 that had driven many out of their country, perished in a strange land, going to Lacedemon, as if for kindred sake, he should have refuge there.—But he that had cast out many unburied, was himself cast forth unlamented and unburied, neither having foreign burial, nor being partaker of the sepulchre of his fathers.

2 M 9, 28 The murderer and blasphemer (Antiochus) being grievously struck, as himself had treated others, died a miserable death, in a strange country, among the mountains.

Es 7, 5-10 King Assuerus answered, and said: Who is this, and of what power, that he should do these things?—And Esther said: It is this Aman that is our adversary and most wicked enemy. Aman, hearing this, was forthwith astonished, not being able to bear the countenance of the king and queen.—But the king being angry rose up, and went from the place of the banquet into the garden set with trees. Aman also rose up to entreat Esther the queen for his life, for he understood that evil was prepared for him by the king.—And when the king came back out of the garden set with trees, and entered into the place of the

banquet, he found Aman was fallen upon the bed on which Esther lay, and he said: He will force the queen also in my presence, in my own house. The word was not yet gone out of the king's mouth, and immediately they covered his face.—And Harbona, one of the eunuchs that stood waiting on the king, said: Behold the gibbet, which he had prepared for Mardochoi, who spoke for the king, standeth in Aman's house, being fifty cubits high. And the king said to him: Hang him upon it.—So Aman was hanged on the gibbet which he had prepared for Mardochoi; and the king's wrath ceased.

Thou wicked servant, I Mt 18, 32-31 forgave thee all the debt because thou besoughtest me.—Should not thou then have had compassion also on thy fellow-servant, even as I had compassion on thee?—And his lord, being angry, delivered him to the torturers until he should pay all the debt.

The Lord scourged Pharaoh Ge 12, 17 and his house with most grievous stripes for Sarai, Abram's wife.

If they profane My just- Ps 83, 32-33 tices: and keep not My commandments:—I will visit their iniquities with a rod: and their sins with stripes.

The wicked that denied to W 16, 16 know Thee, were scourged by the strength of Thy arm.

He woundeth and cureth, Jb 5, 18 He striketh and His hands shall heal.

Anger kills the foolish.

Jb 5, 3

## PART VIII.

### TEMPERANCE AND THE VIRTUES CONNECTED WITH IT, AND THE CONTRARY VICES.

---

JUST as the office of *Fortitude* is to reduce *fear* to the control of Reason, by preventing unreasonable fear, on the one hand, and unreasonable insensibility to fear, on the other, so the office of *Temperance* is to reduce *pleasure* to the control of Reason, by excluding immoderate pleasure, on the one hand, and immoderate insensibility to pleasure, on the other. And just as *Fortitude* is primarily concerned with the regulation of the *most terrible* fear of all, the fear excited by danger to life, so *Temperance* is primarily concerned with the regulation of those pleasures which are the *most vehement* of all; and these pleasures, as S. Thomas shows,\* are the pleasures consequent upon those operations by which the individual man is preserved, or the human species propagated. And, as these pleasures are primarily pleasures of touch, it follows that the *primary* office of *Temperance* is to subjugate the pleasures of touch to the sway of Right Reason. The *secondary* office of *Fortitude* is to regulate the pleasures of the other senses, in so far as these pleasures, e.g., the pleasures of taste, conduce to the more delectable use of those necessary things which pertain to touch. The various *species* of *Temperance* are Abstinence, Sobriety, Chastity, and Modesty (*Pudicitia*). The potential parts of *Temperance*, or the virtues reducible to *Temperance*, inasmuch as, in a less arduous sphere, they imitate *Temperance*, are Continence, Clemency, Meekness, and Modesty. Modesty is subdivided into four species—Humility, Studiosity† (which regulates the love of Study), Modesty in bearing, and Modesty in dress.

---

\* Sum. Theol., sec. sec. q. 141. a. 4.

† Ibid q. 166. a. 2.

1.—NATURE CONTENT WITH A LITTLE ; TEMPERANCE  
COMMENDED.

- Eci* 29, 27 The chief thing for man's life is water and bread and clothing, and a house to cover shame. Wine drunken with excess *Eci* 31, 38, raiseth quarrels, and wrath, 39 and many ruins. — Wine drunken with excess is bitterness of the soul.
- Eci* 39, 31 The principal things necessary for the life of men are water, fire and iron, salt, milk, and bread of flour, and honey, and the cluster of the grape, and oil, and clothing. Be not desirous of his *Pv* 23, 3 meats, in which is the bread of deceit.
- Da* 1, 8 Daniel purposed\* in his heart that he would not be defiled with the king's table, nor with the wine which he drank : and he requested the master of the eunuchs that he might not be defiled. Be not greedy in any *Eci* 37, 32 feasting, and pour not out thyself upon any meat.
- Eci* 31, 22, 23 How sufficient is a little wine for a man well taught, and in sleeping thou shalt not be uneasy with it, and thou shalt feel no pain. — Watching, and choler, and gripes, are with an intemperate man. Better is the poor man's fare *Eci* 29, 28 under a roof of boards, than sumptuous cheer abroad in another man's house.
- Eci* 2, 3 I thought in my heart, to withdraw my flesh from wine, that I might avoid folly, till I might see what was profitable for the children of men ; and what they ought to do under the sun all the days of their life. It is better to be invited to *Pv* 15, 17 herbs with love, than to a fatted calf with hatred.

## 2.—REWARDS AND OTHER FRUITS OF TEMPERANCE.

- Eci* 10, 17 Blessed is the land, whose king is noble, and whose princes eat in due season for refreshments, and not for riotousness. wisdom : but to Daniel the understanding also of all visions and dreams.
- Dn* 1, 16-17 Malasar gave them pulse. — And to these children [Ananias, Misael, and Azarias] God gave knowledge, and understanding in every book, and He that is temperate shall *Eci* 37, 34 prolong life.
- Sound and wholesome *Eci* 31, 24 sleep is with a moderate man ; he shall sleep till morning, and his soul shall be delighted with him.

## 3.—INTEMPERANCE HARMFUL TO THE SOUL.

- Ph* 3, 18, 19 Many walk, of whom I have told you often (and now I tell you weeping), that they are enemies of the Cross of Christ ; — Whose end is destruction, whose god is their

- belly, and whose glory is in their shame: who mind earthly things.
- Ecl* 5, 5 Give not thy mouth to cause thy flesh to sin.
- Dt* 31, 20 When they have eaten, and are full and fat, they will turn away after strange gods, and will serve them; and will despise Me, and make void My Covenant.
- Pv* 27, 7 A soul that is full shall tread upon the honeycomb.
- Lu* 6, 25 Wo to you that are filled: for you shall hunger.
- Lu* 21, 24 Take heed to yourselves, lest perhaps your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting and drunkenness and the cares of this life; and that day come upon you suddenly.
- Jb* 20, 5, 14 The praise of the wicked is short:—His bread in his belly shall be turned into the gall of asps within him.
- Esau sold his first birth-right.—And so taking bread and the pottage of lentils, he eat and drank, and went his way; making little account of having sold his first birth-right.
- Follow holiness, looking diligently lest any man be wanting to the grace of God.—Lest there be any fornicator, or profane person as Esau: who for one mess sold his first birth-right.
- I beseech you to mark them who cause dissensions and offences contrary to the doctrine which you have learned, and to avoid them.—For they that are such serve not Christ Our Lord, but their own belly: and by pleasing speeches, and good words, seduce the hearts of the innocent.
- Ge* 25, 33-34  
*He* 12, 15-16  
*Ro* 16, 17-18

#### 4.—INTEMPERANCE INJURIOUS TO THE BODY, AND CAUSE OF EVIL FORTUNE.

- Eci* 37, 32-34 Be not greedy in any feasting, and pour not out thyself upon any meat:—For in many meats there will be sickness, and greediness will then turn to choler.—By surfeiting many have perished; but he that is temperate shall prolong life.
- Dt* 21, 20, 21 This our son is rebellious and stubborn, he slighteth hearing our admonitions, he giveth himself to revelling, and to debauchery and banquetings.—The people of the city shall stone him: and he shall die, that you may take away the evil out of the midst of you, and all Israel hearing it may be afraid.
- Ps* 77, 30, 31 As yet their meat was in their mouth: and the wrath of God came upon them.—And He slew the fat ones amongst them, and brought down the chosen men of Israel.
- Watching, and choler, and gripes are with an intemperate man.
- He that loveth good cheer, shall be in want: he that loveth wine, and fat things, shall not be rich.
- Be not in the feasts of great drinkers, nor in their revellings, who contribute flesh to eat:—Because they that give themselves to drinking, and that club together, shall be consumed; and drowsiness shall be
- Pv* 21, 17-21  
*Eci* 31, 23  
*Pv* 23, 20, 21

- clothed with rags. little and little.  
*Eci* 19, 1 A workman that is a He that is delighted in *Pv* 12, 11  
 drunkard shall not be rich : passing his time over wine,  
 and he that contemneth leaveth a reproach in his  
 small things shall fall by strongholds.

### 5.—WARNINGS AGAINST DRUNKENNESS AND GLUTTONY.

- Isa* 13, 13 Let us walk honestly, as in Neither fornicators, nor *1C* 6, 9, 10  
 14 the day, not in rioting and adulterers,—Nor drunkards  
 drunkenness.—But put ye shall possess the Kingdom of  
 on the Lord Jesus Christ, God.  
 and make not provision for Look not upon the wine *Pv* 23, 31,  
 the flesh in its concupis- when it is yellow, when the 32  
 cences. colour thereof shineth in the  
*Is* 5, 11, 12 Wo to you that rise up glass : it goeth in pleasantly.  
 early in the morning to fol- —But in the end, it will bite  
 low drunkenness, and to like a snake, and will spread  
 drink to the evening; to be abroad poison like a basi-  
 be inflamed with wine.—The lisk.  
 harp, and the lyre, and the Thy eyes shall behold *Pv* 23, 33-  
 timbrel, and the pipe, and strange women, and thy 35  
 wine are in your feasts : and heart shall utter perverse  
 the work of the Lord you things.—And thou shalt be  
 regard not, nor do you as one sleeping in the midst  
 consider the works of His of the sea, and as a pilot  
 Hands. fast asleep, when the stern is  
*Ep* 5, 18 Be not drunk with wine, lost.—And thou shalt say :  
 wherein is luxury. They have beaten me, but I  
*1C* 6, 13 Meat for the belly, and the was not sensible of pain :  
 belly for the meats : but God they drew me, and I felt not :  
 shall destroy both it and when shall I awake and find  
 them : but the body is not wine again ?  
 for fornication, but for the Wo to the crown of pride, *Is* 28, 1  
 Lord, and the Lord for the to the drunkards of Ephraim,  
 body. and to the fading flower, the  
*Pv* 31, 4, 5 Give not to kings, O Sam- glory of his joy, who were on  
 uel, give not wine to kings : the head of the fat valley,  
 because there is no secret staggering with wine.  
 where drunkenness reigneth : Eat not with an envious *Pv* 23, 6-  
 —And lest they drink, and man, and desire not his  
 forget judgments, and per- meats,—Because, like a sooth-  
 vert the cause of the children sayer and diviner, he think-  
 of the poor. eth that which he knoweth  
*Eci* 26, 11 A drunken woman is a not.—Eat and drink, will  
 great wrath : and her re- he say to thee : and his mind  
 proach and shame shall not is not with thee.—The meat  
 be hid. which thou hadst eaten, thou

shalt vomit up : and shalt  
lose thy beautiful words.

Examples of Drunkenness :

*Ge* 9, 21

(1) Noe.

*Ge* 19, 33

(2) Lot.

(3) Nabal.

(4) Ela.

(5) Benadad.

(6) Assuerus.

(7) Baltassar.

1 *K* 25, 36

3 *K* 16, 9

3 *K* 20, 16

*Es* 1, 10

*Da* 5, 1-6

## 6.—FRUITS OF INTEMPERANCE.

*Pv* 12, 11 He that is delighted in  
passing his time over wine  
leaveth a reproach in his  
strongholds.

*Is* 28, 7

These also have been  
ignorant through wine, and  
through drunkenness, have  
erred : the priest and the  
prophet have been ignorant  
through drunkenness, they  
are swallowed up with wine,  
they have gone astray in  
drunkenness, they have not  
known Him that seeth, they  
have been ignorant of judg-  
ment.

*Os* 4, 11

Fornication, and wine, and  
drunkenness take away the  
understanding.

Fire trieth hard iron : so *Eci* 31, 31  
wine drunk to excess shall  
rebuke the hearts of the  
proud.

Wine is a luxurious thing, *Pv* 20, 1  
and drunkenness riotous :  
whosoever is delighted there-  
with shall not be wise.

Who hath wo ? whose *Pv* 23, 29-  
father hath wo ? who hath 30  
contentions ? who falls into  
pits ? who hath wounds  
without cause ? who hath  
redness of eyes ?—Surely  
they that pass their time in  
wine, and study to drink off  
their cups.

Wine hath destroyed very *Eci* 31, 30  
many.

## 7.—ADVICE TO DINERS-OUT.

*Eci* 9, 22 Let just men be thy  
guests, and let thy glory be  
in the fear of God.

*Pv* 23, 20 Be not in the feasts of  
great-drinkers.

*Lu* 14, 8-

0

When thou art invited to  
a wedding, sit not down in  
the first place, lest perhaps  
one more honourable than  
thou be invited by him ;—  
And he that invited thee and  
him, come and say to thee,  
Give this man place : and  
then thou begin with shame  
to take the lowest place.—  
But when thou art invited,  
go, sit down in the lowest  
place : that when he who  
invited thee cometh, he may  
say to thee : Friend, go up

higher. Then shalt thou  
have glory before them that  
sit at table with thee.

Challenge not them that *Eci* 31, 30  
love wine : for wine hath  
destroyed very many.

Art thou set at a great ta- *Eci* 31, 12,  
ble ? be not the first to open 13  
thy mouth upon it.—Say not :  
There are many things which  
are upon it.

Remember that a wicked *Eci* 31, 14-  
eye is evil.—What is created 20  
more wicked than an eye ?  
therefore shall it weep over  
all the face when it shall see.  
—Stretch not out thy hand  
first, lest being disgraced  
with envy thou be put to  
confusion.—Be not hasty in

a feast.—Judge of the disposition of thy neighbour by thyself.—Use as a frugal man the things that are set before thee ; lest if thou eatest much, thou be hated.—Leave off first, for manners' sake : and exceed not, lest thou offend.

*Eci* 41, 42 Rebuke not thy neighbour in a banquet of wine : and despise him not in his mirth. Speak not to him words of reproach : and press him not in demanding again.

*Eci* 32, 7-9 A concert of music in a banquet of wine is as a carbuncle set in gold.—As a signet of an emerald in a work of gold : so is the melody of music with pleasant and moderate wine.—Hear in silence, and for thy reverence, good grace shall come to thee.

*Eci* 32, 1-3 Have they made thee ruler ? be not lifted up : be among them as one of them.—Have care of them, and so sit down, and when thou hast acquitted thyself of all thy charge, take thy place.—

That thou mayest rejoice for them, and receive a crown as an ornament of grace, and get the honour of the contribution.

And he said to him also : *Lu* 14, 12-14

When thou makest a dinner or a supper, call not thy friends, nor thy brethren, nor thy kinsmen, nor thy neighbours who are rich : lest perhaps they also invite thee again and a recompense be made to thee.—But when thou makest a feast, call the poor, the maimed, the lame, and the blind.—And thou shalt be blessed, because they have not wherewith to make thee recompense : for recompense shall be made thee at the resurrection of the just.

Be not greedy in any feast.—*Eci* 27, 32 ing, and pour not out yourself upon any meat.

Take heed to yourselves, *Lu* 21, 34 lest perhaps your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting and drunkenness and the cares of this life, and that day come upon you suddenly.

### 8.—EXAMPLES OF INTemperance.

*Ge* 9, 21 Noe drinking of the wine was made drunk.

*Da* 5, 1, 2 Baltassar the king made a great feast for a thousand of his nobles, and every one drank according to his age.—And being now drunk he commanded that they should bring the vessels of gold and silver which Nabuchodonosor his father had brought away out of the Temple, that was in Jerusalem, that the king, and his nobles, and his wives, and his concubines, might drink in them.

The Lord the God of *Is* 22, 12-14

Hosts in that day shall call to weeping, and to mourning, to baldness, and to girding with sackcloth :—And behold joy and gladness, killing calves, and slaying rams, eating flesh, and drinking wine : Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we shall die.—And the voice of the Lord of Hosts was revealed in my ears : Surely this iniquity shall not be forgiven you till you die, saith the Lord God of Hosts.



## 9.—ADVANTAGES AND EXAMPLES OF FASTING.

- To 12, 8, 9* Prayer is good with fasting and alms, more than to lay up treasures of gold :— For alms delivereth from death, and the same is that which purgeth away sins, and maketh to find mercy and Life Everlasting.
- Jl 2, 12* Be converted to Me with all your heart, in fasting, and in weeping, and in mourning.
- 2 C 6, 4* Let us exhibit ourselves as the ministers of God, in much patience, in fastings.
- Mt 6, 16-18* When you fast, be not as the hypocrites, sad, for they disfigure their faces, that they may appear unto men to fast. Amen I say to you, they have received their reward.— But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head and wash thy face.—That thou appear not to men to fast, but to thy Father Who is in secret : and thy Father Who seeth in secret will repay thee.
- Ps 34, 13* As for me, when they were troublesome to me, I was clothed with hair-cloth. I have humbled my soul with fasting ; and my prayer shall be turned into my bosom.
- Lc 13, 2, 3* As they were ministering to the Lord, and fasting, the Holy Ghost said to them : Separate me Saul and Barnabas, for the work whereunto I have taken them.—Then they, fasting and praying, and imposing their hands upon them, sent them away.
- Lc 14, 22* When they had ordained to them priests in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord, in Whom they believed.
- This kind is not cast out *Mt 17, 20* but by prayer and fasting.
- Bodily exercise is profitable to little : but godliness is profitable to all things, having promise of the life that now is, and of that which is to come.
- They ask of me the judgments of justice : they are willing to approach to God.—Why have we fasted, and Thou hast not regarded : have we humbled our souls, and Thou hast not taken notice ? Behold in the day of your fast your own will is found, and you exact of all your debtors.—Behold you fast for debates and strife, and strike with the fist wickedly.—Do not fast as you have done until this day, to make your cry to be heard on High.—Is this such a fast as I have chosen for a man to afflict his soul for a day ? Is this it, to wind his head about like a circle, and to spread sackcloth and ashes ? Wilt thou call this a fast, and a day acceptable to the Lord ?—Is not this rather the fast that I have chosen ? Loose the bands of wickedness, undo the bundles that oppress, let them that are broken go free, and break asunder every burden.—Deal thy bread to the hungry, and bring the needy and the harbourless into thy house : when thou shalt see one naked, cover him, and despise not thy own flesh.—Then shall thy light break

- forth as the morning.  
*Mt 4, 2* Christ fasted forty days and forty nights. years; who departed not from the Temple, by fastings and prayers serving night and day.  
*Luk 2, 37* She [Anna] was a widow until fourscore and four We fasted and prayed. 1 *Ex 23*, 23

## 10.—TEXTS FOR TOTAL ABSTAINERS.

- Ex 17, 3* The people were thirsty for want of water, and murmured against Moses, saying: Why didst thou make us go forth out of Egypt, to kill us and our children and our beasts with thirst? Moses, saying: Speak to the children of Israel, and thou shalt say to them: When a man or woman shall make a vow to be sanctified, and will consecrate themselves to the Lord:
- Ex 3, 5* And the Lord said to Moses: Go before the people, and take with thee of the ancients of Israel; and take in thy hand the rod wherewith thou didst strike the river, and go. They shall abstain from wine, and from every thing that may make a man drunk. They shall not drink vinegar of wine, or of any other drink, nor any thing that is pressed out of the grape; nor shall they eat grapes either fresh or dried. *Nu 1, 3*
- Ex 3, 6* Behold, I will stand then before thee upon the rock Horeb: and thou shalt strike the rock, and water shall come out of it, that the people may drink. Moses did so before the ancients of Israel. All the days that they are consecrated to the Lord by vow, they shall eat nothing that cometh from the vineyard, from the raisin even to the kernel. *Nu 1, 4*
- Le 10, 8* The Lord also said to Aaron: When they went from that place, the well appeared, whereof the Lord said to Moses: Gather the people together, and I will give them water: *Nu 21, 16*
- Le 10, 9* You shall not drink wine, nor any thing that may make drunk, thou nor thy sons, when you enter into the Tabernacle of the testimony, lest you die, because it is an everlasting precept through your generations. Then Israel sung this song: "Let the well spring up." They sung thereto: *Nu 21, 17*
- Le 10, 10* And that you may have knowledge to discern between holy and unholy, between unclean and clean. The well, which the princes dug, and the chiefs of the people prepared by the direction of the lawgiver, and with their staves. And they marched from the wilderness to Mathana. *Nu 21, 18*
- Le 10, 11* And may teach the children of Israel all My ordinances which the Lord hath spoken to them by the hand of Moses. You have not eaten bread, nor have you drunk wine or strong drink: that you might know that I am the *De 29, 6*
- Nu 1, 1-2* And the Lord spoke to

- Lord thy God.
- Jg 4, 19* He said to her : Give me, I beseech thee, a little water, for I am very thirsty. She opened a bottle of milk, and gave him to drink, and covered him.
- Jg 13, 7* But he answered thus : Behold, thou shalt conceive and bear a son : beware thou drink no wine, nor strong drink, nor eat any unclean thing : for the child shall be a Nazarite of God from his infancy, from his mother's womb until the day of his death.
- Jg 13, 13* And the Angel of the Lord said to Manne : From all the things I have spoken of to thy wife, let her refrain herself.
- Jg 15, 18* And being very thirsty, he cried to the Lord, and said : Thou hast given this very great deliverance and victory into the hand of Thy servant ; and behold I die for thirst, and shall fall into the hands of the uncircumcised.
- Jg 15, 19* Then the Lord opened a great tooth in the jaw of the ass, and waters issued out of it. And when he had drank them he refreshed his spirit, and recovered his strength. Therefore the name of that place was called, The spring of him that invoked from the jaw-bone, until this present day.
- 2 K 23, 15, 16* David longed, and said : O that some man would get me a drink of the water out of the cistern, that is in Bethlehem, that was by the gate.
- 2 K 23, 16* And the three valiant men broke through the camp of the Philistines, and drew
- water out of the cistern of Bethlehem, that was by the gate, and brought it to David : but he would not drink, but offered it to the Lord.
- He looked, and beheld *3 K 19, 6* there was at his head a hearth-cake, and a vessel of water : and he eat and drank, and he fell asleep again.
- He shall drink of the torrent in the way ; therefore shall he lift up the head. *Ps 109, 7,*
- Drink water out of thy own cistern, and the streams of thy own well. *Pv 5, 15*
- The needy and the poor *Is 41, 17* seek for waters, and there are none : their tongue hath been dry with thirst. I the Lord will hear them, I the God of Israel will not forsake them.
- I will open rivers in the high hills, and fountains in the midst of the plains : I will turn the desert into pools of waters, and the impassable land into streams of waters. *Is 41, 18*
- All you that thirst, come to the waters : and you that have no money, make haste, buy, and eat : come ye, buy wine and milk without money, and without any price. *Is 55, 1*
- They abode in the deserts. *Jd 5, 14-15* —There bitter fountains were made sweet for them to drink, and for forty years they received food from Heaven.
- For he shall be great before the Lord : and shall drink no wine nor strong drink : and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost even from his mother's womb. *Lu 1, 15*
- He cometh therefore to a city of Samaria which is called Sichar : near the *Jn 4, 5*

- land which Jacob gave to his son Joseph. Afterwards Jesus said : I Jn 19, 28-  
 Jn 4, 6 Now Jacob's well was there. Jesus therefore being wearied with His journey, sat thus on the well. It was about the sixth hour. Jesus therefore when He had taken the vinegar, said : It is consummated. And bowing His Head, He gave up the ghost. Jn 19, 30  
 Jn 4, 7 There cometh a woman of Samaria to draw water. Jesus saith to her : Give Me to drink.  
 Jn 19, 28 Afterwards, Jesus knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the Scripture might be fulfilled, said : I thirst. It is good not to eat flesh, and not to drink wine, nor any thing whereby thy brother is offended, or scandalised, or made weak. Ro 14, 21

### 11.—BENEFITS AND EXAMPLES OF CONTINENCE AND CHASTITY.

- Ge 39, 8, 9 Behold, my master [Pharao] hath delivered all things to me [Joseph].—Neither is there anything which is not in my power, or that he hath not delivered to me, but thee, who art his wife : how then can I do this wicked thing, and sin against my God ? blessed for ever. Thou knowest, O Lord [said Sara, the wife of young Tobias], that I never coveted a husband, and have kept my soul clean from all lust. To 3, 16  
 Jd 15, 11 Thou hast done manfully, and thy heart has been strengthened, because thou hast loved chastity, and after thy husband hast not know any other : therefore also the Hand of the Lord hath strengthened thee, and therefore thou shalt be As I knew that I could not otherwise be continent, except God gave it, and this also was a point of wisdom, to know whose gift it was : I went to the Lord, and besought Him, and said with my whole heart :—Give me wisdom, &c. W 8, 21  
 I made a covenant with my eyes, that I would not so much as think upon a virgin. W 9, 4  
 As for him that is pure, his work is right. Jb 31, 1  
 Ps 21, 8

(See *Chastity, Virginity.*)

### 12.—INCONTINENCE AND EVERY KIND OF LUST FORBIDDEN.

- 1 T 4, 3-5 This is the Will of God, your sanctification : that you should abstain from fornication.—That every one of you should know how to possess his vessel in sanctification and honour.—Not in the passion of lust, like the Gentiles that know not God. Marriage honourable in all, He 13, 4

and the bed undefiled. For fornicators and adulterers God will judge.

1 C 6, 13 The body is not for fornication, but for the Lord, and the Lord for the body.

1 C 6, 15-20 Know you not that your bodies are the members of Christ? Shall I then take the members of Christ, and make them the members of a harlot? God forbid.—Or know you not, that he who is joined to a harlot is made one body? “For they shall be,” saith He, “two in one flesh.”—But he who is joined to the Lord, is one spirit.—Fly fornication. Every sin that a man doth, is without the body: but he that committeth fornication, sinneth against his own body.—Or

know you not, that your members are the Temple of the Holy Ghost, Who is in you, Whom you have from God, and you are not your own?—For you are bought with a great price. Glorify and bear God in your body.

Why art thou seduced, my son, by a strange woman, and art cherished in the bosom of another? *Po 5, 20*

Thou shalt not commit adultery. *Ex 20, 14*

Neither shalt thou desire his wife. *Ex 20, 17*

Whosoever shall look on a woman to lust after her, hath already committed adultery with her in his heart. *Mt 5, 28*

How long shall hurtful thoughts abide in thee? *Je 4, 14*

**13.—EVEN THE GOOD ARE TEMPTED TO LUST;  
ONLY THE UNWARY AND UNWISE OVERCOME  
BY TEMPTATION.**

2 C 12, 7 Lest the greatness of the revelations should lift me up, there was given me a sting of my flesh, an Angel of satan to buffet me.

*Po 7, 6-9* I looked out of the window of my house through the lattice,—And I see little ones, I behold a foolish young man,—Who passeth through the street by the corner, and goeth nigh the way of her house,—In the dark, when it grows late, in the darkness

and obscurity of the night.

She entangled him with many words, and drew him away with the flattery of her lips.—Immediately he followeth her as an ox led to be a victim, and as a lamb playing the wanton, and not knowing he is drawn like a fool to bonds.—Till the arrow pierce his liver: as if a bird should make haste to the snare, and knoweth not that his life is in danger. *Po 7, 21-23*

**14.—LUST HURTFUL TO BOTH BODY AND SOUL.**

1 C 6, 9-10 Know you not that the unjust shall not possess the Kingdom of God? Do not err. Neither fornicators, nor idolators, nor adulterers,

—Nor the effeminate, nor liars with mankind, nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor railers, nor extortioners shall possess the

- Kingdom of God.
- Ep* 5, 5 Know ye this and understand that no fornicator, nor unclean, nor covetous person (which is a serving of idols) hath inheritance in the Kingdom of Christ and of God.
- Pv* 2, 18 Her house inclineth unto death, and her paths to hell.
- Pv* 31, 3 Give not thy substance to women, and thy riches to destroy kings.
- Jb* 31, 1-3 I made a covenant with my eyes, that I would not so much as think upon a virgin. —For what part should God from Above have in me, and what inheritance the Almighty from on High?—Is not destruction to the wicked and aversion to them that work iniquity?
- Pv* 5, 2-6 Mind not the deceit of a woman.—For the lips of a harlot are like a honeycomb dropping, and her throat is smoother than oil.—But her end is bitter as wormwood, and sharp as a two-edged sword.—Her feet go down into death, and her steps go in as far as hell.—They walk not by the path of life, her steps are wandering, and unaccountable.
- Let not thy mind be drawn away in her ways; neither be thou deceived with her paths.—For she hath cast down many wounded, and the strongest have been slain by her.—Her house is the way to hell, reaching even to the inner chambers of death.
- For a harlot is a deep ditch: and a strange woman is a narrow pit.—She lieth in wait in the way as a robber, and him whom she shall see unwary, she will kill.
- The woman catcheth the precious soul of a man.
- Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, to refrain yourselves from carnal desires which war against the soul.
- Flee youthful desires.
- Pv* 7, 25-27  
27  
*Pv* 23, 27-28  
28  
*Pt* 2, 11  
1  
*Pt* 2, 22  
2

### 15.—LUST PERVERTS THE UNDERSTANDING AND THE WILL.

- Os* 5, 4 They will not set their thoughts to return to their God: for the spirit of fornication is in the midst of them, and they have not known the Lord.
- Pv* 2, 19 None that go in unto her shall return again, neither shall they take hold of the paths of life.
- Pv* 6, 26 The price of a harlot is scarce one loaf.
- Eci* 23, 24 To a man that is a fornicator all bread is sweet; he will not be weary of sinning unto the end.
- Wine and women make wise men fall off, and shall rebuke the prudent.
- A man of sense will praise every wise word he shall hear, and will apply it to himself: the luxurious man hath heard it, and it shall displease him, and he will cast it behind his back.
- Wo to you that are wanton on your couches:—And are not concerned for the affliction of Joseph.
- Eci* 19, 2  
2  
*Eci* 21, 13  
13  
*Am* 6, 4, 6  
4, 6

### 16.—LUST ROBS MAN OF HEALTH, WEALTH, AND LIFE.

- Eci* 19, 3 He that joineth himself to harlots, will be wicked. Rottenness and worms shall inherit him, and he shall be lifted up for a greater example, and his soul shall be taken away out of the number.
- Ap* 2, 22, Behold, I will cast her into a bed; and they that commit adultery with her shall be in very great tribulation, except they do penance for their deeds:—And I will kill her children with death.
- Dt* 22, 20, If what he charged her with be true, and virginity be not found in the damsel:—They shall cast her out of the doors of her father's house, and the men of the city shall stone her to death, and she shall die: because she hath done a wicked thing in Israel, to play the whore in her father's house; and thou shalt take away the evil out of the midst of thee.
- Pv* 29, 3 He that maintaineth harlots, shall squander away his substance.
- Eci* 9, 6 Give not thy soul to harlots in any point: lest thou destroy thyself and thy inheritance.
- Lu* 15, 13 The younger son gathering all together, went abroad into a far country, and there wasted his substance, living riotously.

### 17.—LUST DESTROYS REPUTATION AND HONOUR.

- Eci* 41, 21 Be ashamed of fornication before father and mother.
- Pv* 5, 9-11 Give not thy honour to strangers, and thy years to the cruel.—Lest strangers be filled with thy strength, and thy labours be in another man's house.—And thou mourn at the last, when thou shalt have spent thy flesh and thy body.
- Ps* 37, 8 My loins are filled with illusions; and there is no health in my flesh.
- Act* 9, 10 Every woman that is a harlot shall be trodden upon as dung in the way.
- Many walk that are enemies of the Cross of Christ:—Whose end is destruction: whose god is their belly: and whose glory is in their shame.
- By thy body thou wast brought under subjection.—Thou hast stained thy glory.
- They changed the truth of God into a lie.—For this cause God delivered them up to shameful affections.—They are worthy of death.
- Ph* 3, 18, 19
- Eci* 47, 21, 22
- Ro* 1, 26, 32

### 18.—THE TEMPORAL AND ETERNAL PUNISHMENTS OF THE SINS OF LUST.

- Ge* 19, 24, The Lord rained upon Sodom and Gomorrah brimstone and fire from the Lord out of Heaven.—And He destroyed these cities, and all the country about, all the

inhabitants of the cities, and sand men.

all things that spring from the earth. The battle grew hot against the children of Benjamin : and they under-

*Ge 6, 3* God said : My Spirit shall not remain in man for ever, because he is flesh, and his days shall be a hundred and twenty years. stood not that present death threatened them on every side.—And the Lord defeated them before the children of

*Nu 25, 6-9* Behold, one of the children of Israel went in before them in that day five-and-his brethren to a harlot of twenty thousand, and one Madian, in the sight of hundred, all fighting men Moses, and of all the children and that drew the sword.

dren of Israel, who were I will destroy man whom I weeping before the door of have created, from the face of the Tabernacle.—And when of the earth, from man even Phinees, the son of Eleazar, to beasts, from the creeping the son of Aaron the priest, thing even to the fowls of saw it, he rose up from the the air.

midst of the multitude, and, Jacob called his sons, and taking a dagger,—Went in said to them : Reuben, my after the Israelite into the first-born, thou art my brothel-house, and thrust strength, and the beginning both of them through to of my sorrow, excelling in gether, to wit, the man and gifts, greater in command.— the woman, and the scourge Thou art poured out as water, ceased from the children of grow thou not : because thou Israel.—And there were wentest up to thy father's bed, slain four-and-twenty thou- and didst defile his couch.

## 19.—TRUE AND FALSE SHAME.

*Eci 4, 24,* 25 For thy soul be not ashamed to say the truth.—For there is a shame that bringeth sin, and there is a shame that bringeth glory and grace. Accept no person against thy own person, nor against thy soul a lie. — Reverence not thy neighbour in his fall :—And refrain not

*Eci 41, 19,* 20 Have a shame of these things I am now going to speak of.—For it is not good to keep all shamefacedness : and all things do not please all men in opinion. to speak in the time of salvation. Hide not thy wisdom in her beauty.—For by the tongue wisdom is discerned : and understanding, and knowledge, and learning by

*Eci 42, 1* Repeat not the word which thou hast heard, and disclose not the thing that is secret, so shalt thou be truly without confusion, and shalt find favour before all men. the word of the wise, and steadfastness in the works of justice.—In no wise speak against the truth, but be ashamed of the lie of thy ignorance.—Be not ashamed



to confess thy sins, but submit not thyself to every man for sin.—Resist not against the face of the mighty, and do not strive against the stream of the river.—Strive for justice for thy soul, and even unto death fight for justice, and God will overthrow thy enemies for thee.

*Eci*, 20, 24 There is that will destroy his own soul through shame-

facedness, and by occasion of an unwise person he will destroy it : and by respect of person he will destroy himself.

There is that for bashfulness promiseth to his friend, and maketh him his enemy for nothing. *Eci* 20, 25

Give me not over to a shameless and foolish mind. *Eci* 23, 6

Confusion shall cover thee. *Ab* 10

## 20.—ACTS OF HUMILITY.

*Pr* 21, 7 I am a worm, and no man: the reproach of men, and the outcast of the people.

*2 K* 6, 22 I will both play and make myself meaner than I have done : and I will be little in my own eyes ; and with the handmaids of whom thou speakest I shall appear more glorious.

*Ge* 18, 27 Seeing I have once begun, I will speak to my Lord, whereas I am dust and ashes.

*Mt* 3, 11 He that shall come after me is mightier than I, Whose shoe I am not worthy to bear.

*Mt* 8, 8 Lord, I am not worthy that Thou shouldst enter under my roof : but only say the word, and my servant shall be healed.

*Mt* 21, 5 Tell ye the daughter of Sion : Behold, thy King cometh to thee, meek, and sitting upon an ass, and a colt, the foal of her that is used to the yoke.

*Ap* 4, 10 The four - and - twenty ancients fell down before Him that sitteth on the Throne, and adored Him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the Throne.

Father, I have sinned against Heaven, and before Thee : I am now not worthy to be called Thy son : make me as one of Thy hired servants. *Lu* 15, 18, 19

Last of all, He was seen also by me, as by one born out of due time.—For I am the least of the Apostles, who am not worthy to be called an Apostle, because I persecuted the Church of God.—

But by the grace of God, I am what I am : and His grace in me hath not been void, but I have laboured more abundantly than all they ; yet not I, but the grace of God with me. *1 C* 15, 8-10

Would to God you could bear with some little of my folly : but do bear with me. We are fools for Christ's sake, but you are wise in Christ : we are weak, but you are strong ; you are honourable, but we without honour. *2 C* 11, 1

We are made as the refuse of this world, the off-scouring of all even until now. *1 C* 4, 13

To me, the least of all the Saints, is given this grace. Blessed are the poor in *Eph* 3, 8 *Mt* 5, 3

- spirit, for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.
- 2K6, 22 I will be little in my own eyes.
- Pv 17, 22 Thou wilt save the humble people; but wilt bring down the eyes of the proud.
- Jb 22, 29 He that hath been humbled shall be in glory: and he that shall bow down his eyes, he shall be saved.
- Pv 9, 4 Whosoever is a little one, let him come to Me.
- Pv 114, 6 The Lord is the Keeper of little ones: I was humbled, and He delivered me.
- Pv 101, 18 He hath had regard to the prayer of the humble: and He hath not despised their petition.
- Pv 11, 2 Where humility is, there also is wisdom.
- Eci 7, 4 Seek not of the Lord a pre-eminence, nor of the king the seat of honour.
- Eci 3, 20, 21 The greater thou art, the more humble thyself in all things, and thou shalt find grace before God.—For great is the power of God alone, and He is honoured by the humble.
- Amen I say to you, who-soever shall not receive the Kingdom of God as a little child, shall not enter into it.
- He that is the lesser among you all, he is the greater.
- He that is the greater among you, let him become as the younger: and he that is the leader, as he that serveth.—I am in the midst of you, as He that serveth.
- In that same hour he rejoiced in the Holy Ghost, and said: I confess to Thee, O Father, Lord of Heaven and earth, that Thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them to little ones. Yea, Father, for so it hath seemed good in Thy sight.
- Mk 10, 15
- Lu 9, 48
- Lu 22, 26, 27
- Lu 10, 21

## 21.—THE EFFECTS OF HUMILITY.

- Ju 9, 16 The prayer of the humble and the meek hath always pleased Thee.
- Is 57, 15 Thus saith the High and the Eminent, that inhabiteth Eternity: and His Name is Holy, Who dwelleth in the High and Holy Place, and with a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite.
- Mt 5, 3 Blessed are the poor in spirit; for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Mt 18, 3 Amen I say to you, unless you be converted, and become as little children, you shall not enter the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Heaven.
- He will save the humble of spirit.
- To whom shall I have respect but to him that is poor and little, and of a contrite heart, and that trembleth at My words?
- Who is as the Lord our God, Who dwelleth on High, and looketh down on the low things in heaven and on earth?
- The Lord is high, and looketh on the low, and the high He knoweth afar off.
- God resisteth the proud, but to the humble He giveth grace.
- Pv 33, 19
- Is 66, 2
- Pv 112, 5
- Pv 137, 6
- 1 Pt 5, 5
- Ja 4, 6

## 22.—HUMILITY THE PATH TO GLORY.

- 1 Pt 5, 6 Be you humbled under the mighty Hand of God, that He may exalt you in the time of visitation.
- 1 v 15, 33 Humility goeth before glory.
- 1 v 29, 23 Glory shall uphold the humble of spirit.
- 6 22, 29 He that hath been humbled shall be in glory: and he that shall bow down his eyes, he shall be saved.
- 1 K 2, 8 He raiseth up the needy from the dust, and lifteth up the poor from the dung-hill: that he may sit with princes, and hold the throne of glory.
- Eci 10, 17 God hath overturned the thrones of proud princes, and hath set up the meek in their stead.
- The wisdom of the humble shall exalt his head, and shall make him sit in the midst of great men. Eci 11, 1
- He hath regarded the humility of His handmaid: for behold from henceforth all generations shall call me blessed. Lu 1, 48
- Whosoever, therefore, shall humble himself as this little child, he is the greater in the Kingdom of Heaven. Mt 18, 4
- He hath put down the mighty from their seat, and hath exalted the humble. Lu 1, 52
- Let the poor see and rejoice. Ps 68, 33

## 23.—HUMILITY THE SCIENCE OF THE SAINTS.

- Pv 11, 2 Where humility is, there also is wisdom.
- Ps 118, 130 The declaration of Thy words giveth light: and giveth understanding to little ones.
- Mt 11, 25, I confess to Thee, O Father, Lord of Heaven and earth, because Thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them to little ones.—
- Yea, Father, for so hath it seemed good in Thy sight.
- The fruit of humility is the fear of the Lord, riches and glory and life. Ps 22, 4
- John stayed Him, saying: I ought to be baptised by Thee, and comest Thou to me?—And Jesus answering, said to him: Suffer it to be so now, for so it becometh us to fulfil all justice. Mt 3, 14, 15

## 24.—EXHORTATIONS TO HUMILITY.

- 1 C 3, 18, Let no man deceive himself: if any man among you seem to be wise in this world, let him become a fool that he may be wise.—For the wisdom of this world is foolishness with God.
- than themselves.
- Let the brother of low condition glory in his exaltation. Ja 1, 9
- Be humbled in the sight of the Lord, and He will exalt you. Ja 4, 10
- Let nothing be done through contention, neither by vain-glory: but in humility, let each esteem others better
- Be subject to God.—Draw nigh to God, and He will draw nigh to you. Ja 4, 7, 8
- Ye young men, be subject 1 Pt 5, 5

- to the ancients. And do you all insinuate humility one to another, for God resisteth the proud, but to the humble He giveth grace.
- Mr 11, 29** Learn of Me, because I am meek, and humble of heart, and you shall find rest to your souls.
- Ro 12, 16** Not minding high things, but consenting to the humble. Be not wise in your own conceits.
- Ph 2, 5, 6** Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus:—Who being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: but debased Himself, taking the form of a servant.
- Eci 7, 19** Humble thy spirit very much: for the vengeance on the flesh of the ungodly is fire and worms.
- Eci 13, 9** Humble thyself to God,
- and wait for His hands. Beware that thou be not deceived into folly, and be humbled.
- The greater thou art, the more humble thyself in all things, and thou shalt find grace before God:—For great is the power of God alone, and He is honoured by the humble.
- When thou art invited, go, sit down in the lowest place: that when he who invited thee cometh, he may say to thee: Friend, go up higher. Then shalt thou have glory before them that sit at table with thee.
- Thou standest by faith: be not high-minded, but fear.
- Put ye on, as the elect of God, holy, and beloved, the bowels of mercy, humility. Humble yourselves.
- Eci 3, 20, 21**
- Lm 14, 10**
- Re 11, 20**
- Ci 3, 12**
- Je 13, 18**

## 25.—INSTANCES OF HUMILITY; PRAYERS FOR THE SAME.

- Ge 32, 10** O God, I am not worthy of the least of all Thy mercies, and of Thy truth which Thou hast fulfilled to Thy servant.
- Ex 3, 11** Moses said to God: Who am I that I should go to Pharaoh, and should bring forth the children of Israel out of Egypt?
- Ex 4, 10** I beseech Thee, Lord, I am not eloquent from yesterday and the day before: and since Thou hast spoken to Thy servant, I have more impediment and slowness of tongue.
- 1 K 18, 18, 23** David said to Saul: Who am I, or what is my life, or my father's family in Israel, that I should be son-in-law of the king?—And David said: Doth it seem to you a small matter to be the king's son-in-law? But I am a poor man, and of small ability.
- David bowing himself down again to the ground, worshipped. After whom dost thou come out, O king of Israel?—After whom dost thou pursue? after a dead dog, after a flea?
- David said: Wherefore doth my Lord persecute His servant? What have I done? or what evil is there in my hand?
- He would not have the Ark of the Lord brought in to himself in the City of
- 1 K 24, 9, 15**
- 1 K 26, 18**
- 2 K 6, 10**

David : but he caused it to be carried into the house of Obbededom the Gethite.

2 K 7, 18, David went in, and sat before the Lord, and said : Who am I, O Lord God, and what is my house, that Thou hast brought me thus far?—But yet this hath seemed little in Thy sight, O Lord God, unless Thou didst also speak of the house of Thy servant for a long time to come.

Jn 5, 13 Jesus having cured the paralytic man, retired from the crowd.

Jn 5, 41 I receive not glory from men.

2 C 10, 1 I, Paul, myself beseech you, by the mildness and modesty of Christ, who in presence indeed am lowly among you, but being absent am bold toward you.

It is not good to take the bread of the children, and cast it to the dogs.—But she said : Yea, Lord, for the whelps also eat of the crumbs that fall from the table of their masters.

O Lord, for I am Thy servant : I am Thy servant, and the son of Thy handmaid.

#### Examples of Humility.

- |                        |            |
|------------------------|------------|
| (1) Christ our Lord.   | Ph 2, 7    |
| (2) The Mother of God. | Lu 1, 48   |
| (3) St. Peter.         | Lu 5, 8    |
| (4) St. Paul.          | Ro 16, 7   |
| (5) St. Cornelius.     | Ac 10, 33  |
| (6) St. Elizabeth.     | Lu 1, 43   |
| (7) St. Moses.         | Ex 18, 24  |
| (8) St. Gideon.        | Jg 6, 15   |
| (9) St. David.         | 1 K 18, 18 |
| (10) St. Jeremias.     | Je 1, 6    |
| (11) Ruth.             | Ru 2, 10   |
| (12) Saul.             | 1 K 9, 21  |
| (13) Eliu.             | Jb 32, 6   |

### 26.—PRIDE HATEFUL BOTH TO GOD AND MAN.

Eci 10, 7 Pride is hateful before God and men : and all iniquity of nations is execrable.

Eci 25, 3-4 Three sorts my soul hateth, and I am greatly grieved at their life :—A poor man that is proud.

Is 16, 6 We have heard of the pride of Moab ; he is exceeding proud : his pride and his arrogancy, and his indignation is more than his

strength.

Never suffer pride to reign in thy mind or in thy words : for from it all perdition took its beginning.

Be not wise in thy own conceit : fear God, and depart from evil.

Not minding high things, but consenting to the humble.

I hate arrogance and pride.

### 27.—MAN MUST NOT PRIDE HIMSELF IN THE GIFTS OF GRACE OR OF NATURE ; MAN HIMSELF BUT DUST AND ASHES.

Ro 11, 19<sup>o</sup> Thou wilt say then : The branches were broken off, that I might be grafted in.—Well, because of unbelief,

they were broken off. But thou standest by faith : be not high-minded, but fear.—For if God hath not spared

the natural branches: fear, lest perhaps He also spare not thee.

*Ro 12, 3* I say, through the grace that is given me, to all that are among you, not to be more wise than it behoveth to be wise, but to be wise unto sobriety, and according as God hath divided to every one the measure of faith.

*1 C 4, 7* Who distinguisheth thee? Or what hast thou that thou hast not received? And if thou hast received: why dost thou glory, as if thou hadst not received it?

*Ga 6, 3-4* If any man thinketh himself to be something, whereas he is nothing, he deceiveth himself.—But let every one prove his own work, and so he shall have glory in himself only, and not in another.

*Je 9, 23-24* Let not the wise man glory in his wisdom, and let not the strong man glory in his strength, and let not the rich man glory in his riches: but let him that glorieth glory in this, that he understandeth and knoweth Me.—For I am the Lord that exercise mercy, and judgment, and justice in the earth: for these things

please Me, saith the Lord.

Praise not a man for his beauty, neither despise a man for his look.—The bee is small among flying things, but her fruit hath the chiefest sweetness.

Glory not in apparel at any time, and be not exalted in the day of thy honour: for the works of the Highest only are wonderful, and His works are glorious, and secret, and hidden.—Many tyrants have sat on the throne, and he whom no man could think on, hath worn the crown.—Many mighty men have been greatly brought down, and the glorious have been delivered into the hand of others.

Shall the axe boast itself against him that cutteth with it? or shall the saw exalt itself against him by whom it is drawn? as if a rod should lift itself up against him that lifteth it up, and a staff exalt itself, which is but wood?

Why is earth and ashes proud?—When a man shall die, he shall inherit serpents, and beasts, and worms.

## 28.—PRIDE INJURIOUS BOTH TO SOUL AND BODY.

*Am 6, 1* Wo to you that are wealthy in Sion, and to you that have confidence in the mountain of Samaria: ye great men, heads of the people, that go in with state into the House of Israel.

*Is 28, 1-4* Wo to the crown of pride, to the drunkards of Ephraim, and to the fading flower, the glory of his joy, who were on the head of the

fat valley, staggering with wine.—Behold, the Lord is mighty and strong, as a storm of hail: a destroying whirlwind, as the violence of many waters overflowing, and sent forth upon a spacious land.—The crown of pride of the drunkards of Ephraim shall be trodden under feet.—And the fading flower of the glory of his

joy, who is on the head of in your own conceits.

the fat valley, shall be as a The Lord hath sworn by *Am* 6, 8-9  
hasty fruit before the ripe- His own Soul, saith the Lord  
ness of autumn; which when the God of Hosts: I detest  
he that seeth it shall behold, the pride of Jacob, and I  
as soon as he taketh it in hate his houses, and I will  
his hand, he will eat it up. deliver up the city, with the  
inhabitants thereof.—And if  
there remain ten men in one  
house, they also shall die.

*Pv* 16, 5 Every proud man is an  
abomination to the Lord:  
though hand should be  
joined to hand, he is not  
innocent.

*Eci* 3, 30 The congregation of the  
proud shall not be healed:  
for the plant of wickedness  
shall take root in them, and  
it shall not be perceived.

*Eci* 6, 2-3 Extol not thyself in the  
thoughts of thy soul like a  
bull: lest thy strength be  
quashed by folly,—And it  
eat up thy leaves, and de-  
stroy thy fruit, and thou be  
left as a dry tree in the  
wilderness.

*Is* 5, 21 Wo to you that are wise in  
your own eyes, and prudent

Thy heart is lifted up with *Ez* 28, 5-6  
thy strength.—Therefore,  
thus saith the Lord God:  
Because thy heart is lifted  
up as the Heart of God:—  
Therefore, behold, I will  
bring upon thee strangers,  
the strongest of the nations:  
and they shall draw their  
swords against the beauty of  
thy wisdom, and they shall  
defile thy beauty.—They  
shall kill thee, and bring  
thee down: and thou shalt  
die the death of them that  
are slain in the heart of the  
sea.

## 29.—EFFECTS OF PRIDE IN THE UNDERSTANDING AND WILL.

*Is* 47, 10 Thou hast said: There is  
none that seeth me. Thy  
wisdom, and thy knowledge,  
this hath deceived thee.  
And thou hast said in thy  
heart: I am, and besides me  
there is no other.

*Ro* 1, 21- When they knew God,  
22 they have not glorified Him  
as God, or given thanks: but  
became vain in their thoughts,  
and their foolish heart was  
darkened.—For professing  
themselves to be wise, they  
became fools.

*Ez* 28, 17 Thy heart was lifted up  
with thy beauty: thou hast  
lost thy wisdom in thy  
beauty, I have cast thee to

the ground: I have set thee  
before the face of kings, that  
they might behold thee.

For judgment I am come *Jn* 9, 39  
into this world: that they  
who see not, may see: and  
they who see, may become  
blind.

Hast thou seen a man wise *Pv* 26, 12  
in his own conceit? there  
shall be more hope of a fool  
than of him.

How can you believe, who *Jn* 5, 44  
receive glory one from  
another; and the glory  
which is from God alone  
you do not seek?

Many of the chief men *Jn* 12, 42  
also believed in Him: but

because of the Pharisees they did not confess Him, that they might not be cast out of the synagogue.

*Eci* 10, 14-15 The beginning of the pride of man, is to fall off from God : because his heart is departed from Him that made him :—For pride is the beginning of all sin : he that holdeth it shall be filled with maledictions, and it shall ruin him in the end.

Where pride is, there also shall be reproach : but where humility is, there also is wisdom.

Among the proud there are always contentions : but they that do all things with counsel, are ruled by wisdom.

Haughtiness of the eyes is the enlarging of the heart : the lamp of the wicked is sin.

He is proud knowing nothing.

### 30.—EFFECTS OF PRIDE AS TO REPUTATION, HONOUR, AND DIGNITY.

*Is* 2, 11-12 The lofty eyes of man are humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be made to stoop : and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day. —Because the day of the Lord of Hosts shall be upon every one that is proud and high-minded, and upon every one that is arrogant, and he shall be humbled.

be cut down, and the lofty shall be humbled.—And the thickets of the forest shall be cut down with iron, and Libanus with its high ones shall fall.

The Lord of Hosts hath designed it to pull down the pride of all glory, and bring to disgrace all the glorious ones of the earth.

*Is* 3, 16-17 The Lord said : Because the daughters of Sion are haughty, and have walked with stretched-out necks, and wanton glances of their eyes, and made a noise as they walked with their feet, and moved in a set pace :—The Lord will make bald the crown of the head of the daughters of Sion, and the Lord will discover their hair.

He shall bring down them that dwell on high, the high city he shall lay low.

Thus saith the Lord God : Because he was exalted in height, and shot up his top green and thick, and his heart was lifted up in his height :—I have delivered him into the hands of the Mighty One of the nations.

*Is* 3, 25-26 Thy fairest men also shall fall by the sword, and thy valiant ones in battle.—And her gates shall lament and mourn, and she shall sit desolate on the ground.

He shall deal with him : I have cast him out according to his wickedness.

Scatter the proud in Thy indignation, and behold every arrogant man, and humble him.—Look on all that are proud, and confound them, and crush the wicked in their place.—Hide them in the dust together, and plunge

*Is* 10, 33-34 Behold the Sovereign Lord of Hosts shall break the earthen vessel with terror, and the tall of stature shall



- their faces into the pit.
- JJ* 24, 24 They are lifted up for a little while, and shall not stand, and shall be brought down as all things, and shall be taken away, and as the tops of the ears of corn they shall be broken.
- Eci* 10, 21 God hath abolished the memory of the proud, and hath preserved the memory of them that are humble in mind.
- Lu* 1, 52 He hath put down the mighty from their seat, and hath exalted the humble.
- Ab* 4, 5 The pride of thy heart hath lifted thee up, who dwellest in the clefts of the rocks, and settest up thy throne on high: who sayest in thy heart: Who shall bring me down to the ground? Though thou be exalted as an eagle, and though thou set thy nest among the stars: thence will I bring thee down, saith the Lord.
- The proud and the arrogant is called ignorant, who in anger worketh pride. *Pv* 21, 24
- Whosoever shall exalt himself, shall be humbled: and he that shall humble himself, shall be exalted. *Mt* 23, 12
- The proud one shall fall. *Je* 50, 32

### 31.—EFFECTS OF PRIDE ON PROSPERITY AND OFFSPRING.

- Is* 10, 12-13, 16 I will visit the fruit of the proud heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of the haughtiness of his eyes.—For he hath said: By the strength of my own hand I have done it, and by my own wisdom I have understood: and I have removed the bounds of the people, and have taken the spoils of their princes, and as a mighty man have pulled down them that sat on high.—Therefore the Sovereign Lord the Lord of Hosts shall send leanness among His fat ones: and under His glory shall be kindled a burning as it were the burning of a fire.
- Is* 13, 19 That Babylon, glorious among the kingdoms, the famous pride of the Chaldeans, shall be even as the Lord destroyed Sodom and Gomorrha.
- Je* 11, 15-16 What is the meaning that My beloved hath wrought much wickedness in My House? Shall the Holy Flesh take away from thee thy crimes, in which thou hast boasted?—The Lord called thy name, a plentiful olive-tree, fair, fruitful, and beautiful: at the noise of a word, a great fire was kindled in it, and the branches thereof are burnt.
- The Lord will destroy the house of the proud: and will strengthen the borders of the widow. *Pv* 15, 25
- As for Ephraim, their glory hath flown away like a bird from the birth, and from the womb, and from the conception.—And though they should bring up their children, I will make them without children among men: yea, and wo to them, when I shall depart from them.—Give them, O Lord. What wilt Thou give them? Give
- Os* 9, 11-12, 14

them a womb without children, and dry breasts.

*Is 47, 89* Hear these things, thou that art delicate, and dwellest confidently, that sayest in thy heart: I am, and there is none else besides me: I

shall not sit as a widow, and I shall not know barrenness. These two things shall come upon thee suddenly in one day, barrenness and widowhood.  
God resisteth the proud.

*Ja 4, 6*

### 32.—EXAMPLES OF THE PUNISHMENT OF PRIDE.

*Ge 3, 5* The serpent said to the woman: God doth know that in what day soever you shall eat thereof [the tree of knowledge], your eyes shall be opened, and you shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.

*Ex 5, 2* Pharaoh answered: Who is the Lord, that I should hear His voice, and let Israel go? I know not the Lord, neither will I let Israel go.

*2 M 5, 21* When Antiochus had taken away out of the Temple a thousand and eight hundred talents, he went back in all haste to Antioch, thinking, through pride, that he might now make the land navigable, and the sea passable on foot: such was the haughtiness of his mind.

*Ge 11, 3-4* Each one said to his neighbour: Come, let us make brick, and bake them with fire. And they had brick instead of stones, and slime instead of mortar.—And they said: Come, let us make a city, and a tower, the top whereof may reach to Heaven: and let us make our name famous before we be scattered abroad into all lands.

*2 K 17, 23* Achitophel, seeing that his counsel was not followed, saddled his ass, and arose, and went home to his house,

and to his city; and putting his house in order, hanged himself and was buried in the sepulchre of his father.

He did not render again *2 P 32, 25-* according to the benefits *26* which he had received, for his heart was lifted up, and wrath was enkindled against him, and against Juda and Jerusalem.—And he humbled himself afterwards, because his heart had been lifted up, both he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem: and therefore the wrath of the Lord came not upon them in the days of Ezechias.

Upon a day appointed, *Ac 12, 21-* Herod, being arrayed in *23* kingly apparel, sat in the judgment seat, and made an oration to them.—And the people made acclamation, saying: It is the voice of a god, and not of a man.—And forthwith an Angel of the Lord struck him, because he had not given the honour to God; and being eaten up by worms, he gave up the ghost.

#### Examples of Pride:

- |                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| (1) Herod.             | <i>Ac 12, 21</i> |
| (2) Pharisees.         | <i>Lu 18, 11</i> |
| (3) Jews.              | <i>Mt 13, 55</i> |
| (4) Eve.               | <i>Ge 3, 5</i>   |
| (5) Builders of Babel. | <i>Ge 11, 4</i>  |
| (6) Agar.              | <i>Ge 16, 4</i>  |

<i>Ex</i> 5, 2	(7) Pharaoh.	(16) Naaman.	4 <i>K</i> 5, 11
<i>Nu</i> 12, 2	(8) Mary and Aaron.	(17) Amasias.	4 <i>K</i> 14, 8
<i>Nu</i> 16, 3	(9) Core, and Dathan, Abiron, and Hon.	(18) Sennacherib.	4 <i>K</i> 18, 19
<i>Jg</i> 9, 1	(10) Abimelech.	(19) Ezechias.	4 <i>K</i> 20, 3
1 <i>K</i> 17, 42	(11) Goliath.	(20) Ozias.	2 <i>P</i> 26, 16
2 <i>K</i> 15, 4	(12) Absalom.	(21) Aman.	<i>Es</i> 3, 5
2 <i>K</i> 17, 4	(13) Achitophel.	(22) Azarias and Joha- nan.	<i>Je</i> 43, 2
3 <i>K</i> 1, 5	(14) Adonias.	(23) Nabuchodonosor.	<i>Da</i> 4, 30
3 <i>K</i> 20, 3	(15) Benadad.	(24) Baltassar.	<i>Da</i> 5, 23

### 33.—PRAYERS OF THE SOUL ASKING DELIVERANCE FROM PRIDE.

- Ps* 35, 12-13 Let not the foot of pride come to me, and let not the hand of the sinner move me. —There the workers of iniquity are fallen: they are cast out, and could not stand.
- Eci* 23, 5 Give me not haughtiness of my eyes.
- 1 *P* 29, 11, 14 Thine, O Lord, is magnificence, and power, and glory, and victory. All things are
- Thine.—And we have given Thee what we received of Thy hand.
- Who am I, O Lord God, and what is my house, that Thou hast brought me thus far?
- I will learn of Thee, O Lord, because Thou art meek and humble of heart, that I may find rest to my soul.

(See *Humility*.)

### 34.—CAUSES AND PUNISHMENTS OF AMBITION AND ARROGANCE.

- Mt* 20, 22 You know not what you ask. Can you drink the chalice that I shall drink? They say to Him: We can.
- Ha* 2, 9-10, 12, 5 Wo to him that gathereth together an evil covetousness to his house, that his nest may be on high, and thinketh he may be delivered out of the hand of evil.—Thou hast devised confusion to thy house, thou hast cut off many people, and thy soul hath sinned.—Wo to him that buildeth a town with blood, and prepareth a city by iniquity.—As wine deceiveth him that drinketh it: so shall the proud man be, and he shall not be honoured: who hath enlarged his desire like hell: and is himself like death, and he is never satisfied: but will gather together unto him all nations, and heap together unto him all people.
- They have coveted fields, and taken them by violence: and houses they have forcibly taken away: and oppressed a man and his house, a man and his inheritance.—Therefore thus saith the Lord: Behold, I devise an evil against his family: from which you shall not withdraw your necks, and you

- shall not walk haughtily, for this is a very evil time.
- Lu* 22, 25- He said to them: The kings of the Gentiles lord it over them; and they that have power over them are called beneficent.—But you not so; but he who is the greatest among you, let him be as the least: and he that is the leader, as he that serveth.—I am in the midst of you, as He Who serveth.
- 1 C* 13, 5 Charity is not ambitious.
- Pv* 30, 16 The fire never saith: It is enough.
- Jn* 5, 44 How can you believe, who receive glory one from another: and the glory which is from God alone, you do not seek?
- Jn* 12, 42- Because of the Pharisees they did not confess Him, that they might not be cast out of the Synagogue.—For they loved the glory of men, more than the glory of God.
- Eci* 7, 4 Seek not of the Lord a pre-eminence, nor of the king the seat of honour.
- Seek not to be made a judge, unless thou have strength enough to extirpate iniquities: lest thou fear the person of the powerful, and lay a stumbling-block for thy integrity.
- Neither doth any man take the honour to himself, but he that is called by God, as Aaron was.
- Whosoever will be the greater among you, let him be your minister.—And he that will be first among you, shall be your servant.
- If his pride mount up even to heaven, and his head touch the clouds:—In the end he shall be destroyed like a dunghill, and they that had seen him, shall say: Where is he?—As a dream that fleeth away he shall not be found, he shall pass as a vision of the night.
- They shall leave their riches to strangers.
- Eci* 7, 6
- He* 5, 4
- Mt* 20, 26- 27
- Jb* 20, 6-8
- Pv* 48, 11

## 35.—EFFECTS OF BOASTING AND PRESUMPTION.

- Pv* 23, 25 He that boasteth, and puffeth up himself, stirreth up quarrels: but he that trusteth in the Lord, shall be healed.
- Pv* 11, 4 May the Lord destroy all deceitful lips, and the tongue that speaketh proud things.
- So* 3, 11 I will take away out of the midst of thee thy proud boasters, and thou shalt no more be lifted up because of My Holy Mountain.
- Ro* 1, 22 Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools.
- 1 K* 2, 3 Do not multiply to speak lofty things, boasting: let old matters depart from your mouth.
- Let another praise thee, and not thy own mouth: a stranger, and not thy own lips.
- The Pharisee standing, prayed thus with himself: O God, I give Thee thanks that I am not as the rest of men, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, as also is this publican.—I fast twice in the week; I give tithes of all that I possess.
- I say to you, this man went down into his house justified rather than the other.
- Say not, how mighty am I?
- Pv* 27, 2
- Lu* 18, 11- 12
- Lu* 18, 14
- Eci* 5, 3

### 36.—MEEKNESS ENJOINED AND PRAISED; ITS FRUITS MOST EXCELLENT.

- Ga* 6, 1 Brethren, if a man be overtaken in any fault, you, who are spiritual, instruct such a one in the spirit of meekness, considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted.
- Mt* 5, 4 Blessed are the meek, for they shall possess the land.
- 1 P* 15, 1 A mild answer breaketh wrath: but a harsh word stirreth up fury.
- Mt* 11, 29 Learn of Me, for I am meek, and humble of Heart, and you shall find rest to your souls.
- Ja* 1, 21 Casting away all uncleanness, and abundance of naughtiness, with meekness receive the ingrafted Word, which is able to save your souls.
- 1 Ti* 3, 2 Admonish them not to be litigious, but gentle: showing all mildness to all men.
- 2 Ti* 2, 24 The servant of the Lord must not wrangle: but be mild towards all men, apt to teach, patient.
- Ep* 4, 1 I, a prisoner in the Lord, beseech you, that you walk worthy of the vocation in which you are called, with all humility and meekness.
- Eci* 3, 19 My son, do thy works in meekness, and thou shalt be beloved above the glory of men.
- My son, keep thy soul in meekness, and give it honour according to its desert.—Who will justify him that sinneth against his own soul? and who will honour him that dishonoureth his own soul?
- Pursue justice, piety, faith, 1 *Th* 6, 11 charity, patience, meekness.
- To the meek He will give *Pv* 3, 34 grace.
- It is better to be humbled *Pv* 16, 19 with the meek, than to divide the spoils with the proud.
- Seek the Lord, all ye meek of the earth, you that have wrought His judgment: seek the just, seek the meek: if by any means you may be hid in the day of the Lord's indignation.
- When God arose in judgment, to save all the meek of the earth. *Pv* 75, 10
- The meek shall increase their joy in the Lord, and the poor men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel. *Is* 29, 19
- Now I Paul myself beseech you, by the meekness and gentleness of Christ. *2 Co* 10, 1
- He will exalt the meek. *Pv* 149, 4

### 37.—EXAMPLES OF MEEKNESS.

- Ge* 50, 19-21 Fear not: can we resist the will of God?—You thought evil against me [Joseph]: but God turned it into good, that He might exalt me, as at present you see, and might save many people.
- Fear not, I will feed you and your children.
- Moses was a man exceeding meek above all men that dwelt on earth. *Num* 12, 3
- Jesbahi sitting in the chair was the wisest chief among *2 K* 23, 8

the three, he was like the most tender little worm of the wood, who killed eight hundred men at one onset.		<b>Examples of Meekness :</b>	
Lu 15, 1-2	The publicans and sinners drew near unto Him to hear Him. — And the Pharisees and the Scribes murmured, saying : This man receiveth sinners and eateth with them.	(1)	Christ our Lord. Mt 11, 23
		(2)	Abraham. Ge 13, 8
Mt 21, 5	Behold, thy King cometh to thee, meek.	(3)	Isaac. Ge 26, 22
		(4)	Moses. Ex 2, 13
		(5)	Gedeon. Jg 8, 2
		(6)	Anna. 1 K 1, 16
		(7)	Saul. 1 K 10, 27
		(8)	David. 1 K 17, 29
		(9)	Jeremias. Je 11, 19
		(10)	Paul. Ac 21, 20
		(11)	Job. Ja 5, 11

(See words *Benignity* and *Vindictive Justice*.)

### 38.—HATEFULNESS AND GRIEVOUSNESS OF ANGER.

Eci 10, 22	Pride was not made for men, nor wrath for the race of women.	pardon for his sins?—Remember thy last things, and let enmity cease.	
Eci 27, 33	Anger and fury are both of them abominable, and the sinful man shall be subject to them.	Be not as a lion in thy house, terrifying them of thy household, and oppressing them that are under thee.	Eci 4, 35
Eci 28, 12	As the wood of the forest is, so the fire burneth ; and as a man's strength is, so shall his anger be, and according to his riches he shall increase his anger.	Be not quickly angry : for anger resteth in the bosom of a fool.	Eci 7, 10
Pv 15, 4	A peaceable tongue is a tree of life : but that which is immoderate, shall crush the spirit.	A hot soul is a burning fire, it will never be quenched, till it devour something.	Eci 23, 22
Pv 18, 14	A spirit that is easily angered, who can bear ?	He that provoketh wrath, bringeth forth strife.	Pv 30, 33
Pv 19, 19	He that is impatient shall suffer damage.	Hast thou seen a man hasty to speak ? folly is rather to be looked for than his amendment.—A passionate man provoketh quarrels.	Pv 29, 20, 22
Pv 21, 19	It is better to dwell in a wilderness, than with a quarrelsome and passionate woman.	Cease from anger, and leave rage.	Pv 36, 8
Eci 28, 3-6	Man to man reserveth anger, and doth he seek remedy of God?—He hath no mercy on a man like himself, and doth he entreat for his own sins?—He that is but flesh, nourisheth anger, and doth he ask forgiveness of God ? who shall obtain	He that is impatient, exalteth his folly.	Pv 14, 29
		If thou blow the spark, it shall burn as a fire : and if thou spit upon it, it shall be quenched : both come out of the mouth.	Eci 28, 14
		A stone is heavy, and sand weighty ; but the anger of a fool is heavier than them both.—Anger hath no mercy,	Pv 27, 3-4

- nor fury when it breaketh forth : and who can bear the violence of one provoked ?  
*Pv 12, 16* A fool immediately sheweth his anger : but he that dissembleth injuries is wise. A fool uttereth all his mind : a wise man deferreth, and keepeth it till afterwards.

### 39.—EFFECTS OF ANGER IN BODY AND SOUL, AND ON OUR NEIGHBOUR.

- Eci 1, 28* The wrath of high spirits bring in debate in the midst is his ruin. of them that are at peace.  
*Pv 29, 22* He that is easily stirred up to wrath, shall be more prone to sin. A passionate man stirreth up strifes : he that is patient appeaseth those that are stirred up.  
*Pv 57, 9* Fire hath fallen on them, and they shall not see the sun. He that strongly squeezeth the paps to bring out milk, straineth out butter : and he that violently bloweth his nose, bringeth out blood : and he that provoketh wrath, bringeth forth strife.  
*Eci 30, 26* Envy and anger shorten a man's days, and pensiveness will bring old age before the time.  
*Jb 5, 2* Anger indeed killeth the foolish.  
*Eci 28, 11* A passionate man kindleth strife, and a sinful man will trouble his friends, and As coals are to burning coals, and wood to fire, so an angry man stirreth up strife.

### 40.—WRONGFUL ANGER FORBIDDEN.

- Mt 5, 22* Whosoever is angry with his brother, shall be in danger of the judgment.  
*Ep 4, 31* Let all bitterness, and anger, and indignation, and clamour, and blasphemy be put away from you, with all malice.

#### Examples of Wrongful Anger :

- |   |                      |                   |
|---|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Eci 11, 10</i> Remove anger from thy heart, and put away evil from thy flesh. For youth and pleasure are vain. | (1) Pharaoh.         | <i>Ex 10, 28</i>  |
|   | (2) Balaam.          | <i>Nu 20, 10</i>  |
|   | (3) Balac.           | <i>Nu 24, 10</i>  |
|   | (4) Saul.            | <i>1 K 20, 30</i> |
|   | (5) Achab.           | <i>3 K 21, 4</i>  |
|   | (6) Naaman.          | <i>4 K 5, 12</i>  |
|   | (7) Asa.             | <i>2 P 16, 10</i> |
|   | (8) Ozias.           | <i>2 P 26, 19</i> |
|   | (9) Assuerus.        | <i>Es 1, 12</i>   |
|   | (10) Aman.           | <i>Es 3, 5</i>    |
|   | (11) Moab.           | <i>Is 16, 6</i>   |
|   | (12) Nabuchodonosor. | <i>Da 3, 13</i>   |
|   | (13) Herod.          | <i>Mt 2, 16</i>   |
|   | (14) Men of Nazareth | <i>Lu 4, 28</i>   |
- Jas 1, 19-20* Let every man be slow to speak and slow to anger.—For the anger of man worketh not the justice of God.  
*Ep 4, 26* Be angry, and sin not. Let not the sun go down upon your anger.  
*Eci 28, 8-9* Remember the fear of God, and be not angry with thy

# 41.—A MILD ANSWER TURNETH AWAY WRATH. ON SILENCE AND SUBMISSION.

- Po 15, 1** A mild answer breaketh wrath; but a harsh word stirreth up fury.
- Po 26, 10** Judgment determineth causes: and he that putteth a fool to silence, appeaseth anger.
- Mt 10, 23** When they shall persecute you in this city, flee into another.
- Lu 4, 29-30** They brought Him to the brow of the hill, whereon their city was built, that they might cast Him down headlong. — But He passing through the midst of them, went His way.
- They took up stones to throw at Him. But Jesus hid Himself, and went out of the Temple.
- See thou be quiet. **Is 7, 4**
- Rest and be still. **Je 47, 6**
- Peace, be still. **Mk 4, 39**
- (See *Contention, Wrath, Discord.*)

# 42.—EXAMPLES OF RIGHT AND WRONG KIND OF ANGER.

## PRAYERS FOR AVERTING THE DIVINE ANGER.

- Jo 4, 7-9** God prepared a worm when the morning arose on the following day, and it struck the ivy and it withered. — And when the sun was risen, the Lord commanded a hot and burning wind: and the sun beat upon the head of Jonas, and he broiled with the heat: and he desired for his soul that he might die, and said: It is better for me to die than to live. — And the Lord said to Jonas; Dost thou think thou hast reason to be angry, for the ivy? And he said: I am angry with reason even unto death.
- Ex 11, 9** He [Moses] went out from Pharaoh exceedingly angry.
- De 1, 37** The Lord was angry with me also on your account.
- Mk 3, 5** Looking round about on them, with anger, being grieved for the blindness of their hearts, He saith to the man: Stretch forth thy hand. And he stretched it forth; and his hand was restored unto him.
- O Lord, rebuke me not in Thy indignation, nor chastise me in Thy wrath. **Po 8, 1**
- Convert us, O God our Saviour, and turn off Thy anger from us. — Wilt Thou be angry with us for ever: or wilt Thou extend Thy wrath from generation to generation? **Po 84, 5-6**
- Examples of Zeal for God's Glory:
- (1) Jesus Christ our Lord. **Jn 2, 17**
  - (2) St. Peter. **Ac 2, 14**
  - (3) St. John Baptist. **Lu 1, 17**
  - (4) SS. Paul and Barnabas. **Ac 14, 14**
  - (5) SS. Andrew and Philip. **Jn 1, 41**
  - (6) St. Thomas (Didymus). **Jn 11, 16**
  - (7) St. Anne the Prophetess. **Pro-Lu 2, 37**
  - (8) SS. Prisca and Aquila. **Ro 16, 3**
  - (9) St. Moses. **Ex 11, 8**



<i>Js</i> 7, 6	(10) St. Josue.	(19) St. Phebe.	<i>Ro</i> 16, 1
<i>Pz</i> 39, 9	(11) St. David.	(20) Ezechias.	<i>Is</i> 37, 1
1 <i>K</i> 15, 11	(12) St. Samuel.	(21) Asa.	2 <i>P</i> 14, 1
3 <i>K</i> 19, 10	(13) St. Elias.	(22) Josaphat.	2 <i>P</i> 17, 7
4 <i>K</i> 8, 11	(14) St. Eliseus.	(23) Josias.	4 <i>K</i> 23, 2
<i>Je</i> 20, 9	(15) St. Jeremias.	(24) Priests.	1 <i>P</i> 9, 13
<i>Is</i> 62, 1	(16) St. Isaïas.	(25) Shepherds.	<i>Lu</i> 2, 17
1 <i>E</i> 9, 3	(17) St. Esdras.	(26) Samaritan woman.	<i>Jn</i> 4, 28
2 <i>E</i> 4, 5	(18) St. Nehemias.	(27) Ephesians.	<i>Ap</i> 2, 2

## 43.—EXAMPLES OF ZEAL FOR THE HONOUR OF GOD.

- Ge* 24, 33 I will not eat till I tell my message.
- Nu* 25, 12- Behold, I give Phinees the peace of My Covenant.—13 And the Covenant of the Priesthood for ever shall be both to him, and his seed, because he hath been zealous for his God, and hath made atonement for the wickedness of the children of Israel.
- Ex* 32, 19- When he came nigh to the camp, he saw the calf, and the dances : and being very angry, he threw the Tables out of his hand, and broke them at the foot of the mount.—And laying hold of the calf which they had made, he burnt it, and beat it to powder, which he strowed into water, and gave thereof to the children of Israel to drink.
- Ex* 32, 26- Standing in the gate of the camp, he said : If any man be on the Lord's side, let him join with me. And all the sons of Levi gathered themselves together unto him.—And he said to them : Thus saith the Lord God of Israel : Put every man his sword upon his thigh : go and return from gate to gate through the midst of the camp, and let every man kill his brother, and friend, and neighbour.—And the sons of Levi did according to the words of Moses, and there were slain that day about three-and-twenty thousand men.—And Moses said : You have consecrated your hand this day to the Lord, every man in his son, and in his brother, that a blessing may be given to you.
- My Lord God, what shall I say, seeing Israel turning their backs to their enemies ? —The Chanaanites, and all the inhabitants of the land will hear of it, and being gathered together will surround us and cut off our name from the earth : and what wilt Thou do to Thy great Name ?
- Samuel said : As thy sword hath made women childless, so shall thy mother be childless among women. And Samuel hewed him in pieces before the Lord in Galgal.
- Elias said to them : Take the prophets of Baal, and let not one of them escape. And when they had taken them, Elias brought them down to the torrent Cison, and killed them there.
- With zeal have I been zealous for the Lord of Hosts :

- because the children of Israel have forsaken Thy Covenant : They have destroyed Thy Altars, they have slain Thy Prophets with the sword, and I alone am left, and they seek my life to take it away.
- 1 E 9, 3, 5 When I had heard this word I rent my mantle and my coat, and plucked off the hairs of my head and my beard, and I sat down mourning.—And at the Evening Sacrifice I rose up from my affliction, and having rent my mantle and my garment, I fell upon my knees, and spread out my hands to the Lord my God.
- Mt 21, 12-13 Jesus went into the Temple of God, and cast out all them that sold and bought in the Temple, and overthrew the tables of the money-changers, and the chairs of them that sold doves :—And He said to them : It is written : My House shall be called a House of Prayer, but you have made it a den of thieves.
- Lk 9, 54-56 When His disciples James and John had seen this, they said : Lord, wilt Thou that we command fire to come down from Heaven and consume them ?—And turning, He rebuked them, saying : You know not of what spirit you are.—The Son of Man came not to destroy souls, but to save.
- 1 Pt 3, 13 Who is he that can hurt you, if you be zealous of good ?
- 2 Ty 2, 10 I endure all things for the sake of the elect, that they also may obtain the Salvation which is in Christ Jesus with Heavenly glory.
- Lk 12, 50 I have a baptism where-
- with I am to be baptised : and how am I straitened until it be accomplished ?
- If you have bitter zeal, and Ja 3, 14-15 there be contentions in your hearts : glory not, and be not liars against the truth.—For this is not wisdom, descending from Above ; but is earthly, sensual, diabolical.
- I know thy works, that Ap 3, 15-16, 19 thou art neither cold, nor hot. I would thou wert cold, or hot :—But because thou art lukewarm, and neither cold, nor hot, I will begin to vomit thee out of My mouth.—Those whom I love, I rebuke and chastise. Be zealous therefore, and do penance.
- Be zealous for that which Ga 4, 18 is good in a good thing always.
- Whereas I was free as to 1 C 9, 19-20, 22-24 all, I made myself the servant of all : that I might gain the more.—And I became to the Jews a Jew, that I might gain the Jews.—To the weak I became weak, that I might gain the weak. I became all things to all men, that I might save all.—And I do all things for the Gospel's sake : that I may be made partaker Thereof.—Know you not that they that run in the race all run indeed, but one receiveth the prize ? So run that you may obtain.
- The Pasch of the Jews was Jn 2, 13-17 at hand, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem :—And He found in the Temple those that sold oxen and sheep and doves, and the changers of money sitting.—And when He had made as it were a scourge of little cords, He

drove them all out of the Temple, the sheep also and the oxen, and He poured out the changers' money: and the tables He overthrew.—And He said to them that sold doves: Take these things hence: and make not the House of My Father a house of traffic.—And His disciples remembered that it was written: The zeal of Thy House hath eaten Me up.

#### 44.—EXAMPLES OF INDISCREET ZEAL; LUKEWARMNESS.

*Ac* 19, 13-14 Then were little children presented to Him, that He should impose hands on them and pray. And the disciples rebuked them.—But Jesus said to them: Suffer the little children, and forbid them not to come to Me: for the Kingdom of Heaven is for such.

*Mt* 26, 8-9 The disciples seeing [the pouring of so much ointment on the Head of Christ], had indignation, saying: To what purpose is this waste? For this might have been sold for much, and given to the poor.

*Lu* 9, 49-50 John answering, said: Master, we saw a certain man casting out devils in Thy Name, and we forbade him, because he followeth not with us.—And Jesus said to him: Forbid him not: for he that is not against you is for you.

*Ac* 5, 16-18 There came together to Jerusalem a multitude out of the neighbouring cities, bringing sick persons, and such as were troubled with unclean spirits, who were all healed.—Then the High-

Priest rising up, and all they that were with him, were filled with envy:—And they laid hands on the Apostles, and put them in the common prison.

The next Sabbath day the whole City almost came together to hear the Word of God.—And the Jews, seeing the multitudes, were filled with envy, and contradicted those things which were said by Paul, blaspheming.

Examples of Lukewarmness and Indecision:

- |  |                   |
|--|-------------------|
| (1) Solomon.   | 3 <i>K</i> 2, 3   |
| (2) Asa.   | 3 <i>K</i> 15, 14 |
| (3) Joram.   | 4 <i>K</i> 3, 2   |
| (4) Naaman.  | 4 <i>K</i> 5, 18  |
| (5) Jehu.  | 4 <i>K</i> 10, 16 |
| (6) Samaritans.  | 4 <i>K</i> 17, 33 |
| (7) Levites.   | 2 <i>P</i> 24, 5  |
| (8) Amasias.   | 4 <i>K</i> 14, 4  |
| (9) Thecunites, "who did not put their necks to the work of their Lord."         | 2 <i>E</i> 3, 5   |
| (10) Hearers of Christ.  | <i>Jn</i> 6, 67   |
| (11) Felix.  | <i>Ac</i> 24, 25  |
| (12) The Church of Laodicea, representing these latter days of the world's ruin. | <i>Ap</i> 3, 16   |

#### 45.—PRAYERS FOR THE GIFT OF ZEAL AND FOR THE POWER OF EXERCISING IT.

*Ps* 63, 10 The zeal of Thy House hath eaten me up, O Lord. A fainting hath taken hold of me, because of the

	wicked that forsake Thy law.	As smoke vanisheth, so let them vanish away; as wax melteth before the fire, so let the wicked perish at the Presence of God.	<i>Ps 67, 3</i>
<i>Ps 118,</i>	My zeal hath made me pine away: because my enemies forgot Thy words.		
<i>Is 1, 23</i>	He shall destroy the wicked, and the sinners together; and they that have forsaken the Lord shall be consumed.	Thy arrows are sharp; under Thee shall people fall, into the hearts of the King's enemies.	<i>Ps 44, 6</i>
<i>Ps 54, 16</i>	Let death come upon them, and let them go down alive into hell: for there is wickedness in their dwellings, in the midst of them,	O hear my prayer: all flesh shall come to Thee.	<i>Ps 64,</i>
<i>Ps 103, 35</i>	Let sinners be consumed out of the earth, and the unjust, so that they be no more.	Zeal in punishing sin :	
<i>Ga 5, 12</i>	I would they were even cut off who trouble you.	(1) Christ our Lord.	<i>Jn 2, 15</i>
<i>Ca 2, 15</i>	Catch us the little foxes that destroy the vines.	(2) Moses and Levites.	<i>Ex 32, 20</i>
		(3) Phinees,	<i>Nu 25, 11</i>
		(4) Israelites.	<i>Jo 22, 4</i>
		(5) Samuel.	<i>1 K 15, 33</i>
		(6) David.	<i>2 K 1, 14</i>
		(7) Elias.	<i>3 K 18, 40</i>
		(8) Jehu.	<i>4 K 10, 15</i>
		(9) Jehoiada.	<i>4 K 11, 18</i>
		(10) Josias.	<i>4 K 23, 20</i>

#### 46.—PRAISE AND FRUITS OF MODESTY; THE EVILS AND PUNISHMENTS OF IMMODESTY IN DRESS.

<i>Ps 4, 5</i>	Let your modesty be known to all men.	A fool will peep through the window into the house, but he that is well taught will stand without.	<i>Eci 21, 26</i>
<i>Eci 19, 26-27</i>	A man is known by his look, and a wise man when thou meetest him is known by his countenance.—The attire of the body, and the laughter of the teeth, and the gait of the man show what he is.	Look not round about thee in the ways of the city, nor wander up and down in the streets thereof.—Turn away thy face from a woman dressed up, and gaze not upon another's beauty.	<i>Eci 9, 7-8</i>
<i>Pv 22, 4</i>	The fruit of modesty is the fear of the Lord, riches, and glory, and life.	Let another praise thee, and not thy own mouth: a stranger, and not thy own lips.	<i>Pv 27, 2</i>
<i>Am 6, 1</i>	Wo to you that are wealthy in Sion, and to you that have confidence in the mountain of Samaria: Ye great men, heads of the people, that go in with state into the House of Israel.	There is a shame that bringeth glory and grace.	<i>Eci 4, 25</i>
<i>Pv 17, 24</i>	Wisdom shineth in the face of the wise: the eyes of fools are in the ends of the earth.	A holy and shame-faced woman is grace upon grace.	<i>Eci 26, 19</i>
		It is the folly of a man to hearken at the door, and a wise man will be grieved	<i>Eci 21, 26</i>

- with the disgrace.
- Is* 3, 16-17 Because the daughters of Sion are haughty and have walked with stretched-out necks, and wanton glances of their eyes, and made a noise as they walked with their feet, and moved in a set pace,—The Lord will make bald the crown of the head of the daughter of Sion, and the Lord will discover their hair.
- 1Ti* 6, 8 Having food and where-with to be covered, with these we are content.
- Mt* 11, 8 Behold, they that are clothed in soft garments are in the houses of kings.
- There was a certain rich man who was clothed in purple and fine linen: and feasted sumptuously every day.—The rich man died, and he was buried in hell.
- They have turned the ornament of their jewels into pride, and have made of it the images of their abominations and idols: therefore I have made it an uncleanness to them.—And I will give it into the hands of strangers for spoil, and to the wicked of the earth for a prey, and they shall defile it.
- Be strengthened in the Lord.
- Lx* 16, 19, 22  
*Ez* 7, 20-21  
*Ep* 6, 10

(See *Prodigality* and *Luxury*.)

## PART IX.

### FORTITUDE AND THE VIRTUES CONNECTED WITH IT, AND THE CONTRARY VICES.

“It pertains to virtue to make man good and to make his conduct be in accordance with Reason. Now this can be brought about in three ways. Either (1) the Reason itself is rectified—and this is the work of the *Intellectual Virtues*; or (2) Right Reason is carried out in social life—and this is the work of *Justice*; or (3) the impediments, which would prevent the carrying out of Right Reason, are removed. Now the human will can be impeded from carrying out Right Reason in two ways. Either (1) the will is drawn by sensible pleasure to what is prohibited by Reason—and this impediment is removed by *Temperance*; or (2) the will is repelled, from what Reason requires, by the difficulties that attend it—and this impediment is removed by *Fortitude*.”\* The difficulties, which would prevent

\* Sum. Theol., sec. sec. q. 123. a. 1.

the carrying out of Right Reason, may be (1) evils which we are called upon to *endure*, or (2) evils which we are called upon to *attack*. Since Virtue lies in the golden mean, Fortitude not only *provides* the courage needed to endure, but also *tempers* the courage needed for onslaught, lest it degenerate into rashness. Fortitude prevents the will from suffering *any* evils, be they *great* or be they *trifling*, to divert it from Right Reason. Nevertheless, since, as Aristotle says, "Virtue is to be measured by *perfect acts*," Fortitude *proper* exists only where there is a readiness to encounter the *greatest* evils rather than deflect from Right Reason. And thus, since the greatest of physical evils is *death*, Fortitude is *primarily* concerned with the risks of *death*, and only *secondarily* with inferior risks. The potential parts and *secondary* forms of Fortitude, or the Virtue which act in the face of *inferior* evils as Fortitude does in the face of *death*, are Magnanimity, Magnificence, Patience, and Perseverance. Just as Fortitude surrenders *life*, so Magnanimity surrenders *honour*, and Magnificence \* surrenders *wealth*, rather than fall short of the demands of Reason. Patience triumphs over the sadness which Misfortune, even when incurred in the pursuit of Virtue, would naturally produce; and Perseverance keeps the field no matter how long the difficulties which attend Virtue may endure.

### 1.—FORTITUDE ILLUSTRATED BY EXAMPLES.

*Da* 3,17-18 Behold our God, Whom | thee, O king, that we will  
we worship, is able to save us | not worship thy gods, nor  
from the furnace of burning | adore the golden statue  
fire, and to deliver us out of | which thou hast set up.  
thy hands, O king.—But if | It is better for me [*said Da* 13,23  
He will not, be it known to | *Susanna*] to fall into your

---

\* The "magnificent" man is, according to Cicero, the man who is not afraid to spend money freely in a good cause; and Aristotle says that the noblest expenditure is that which is made in the Divine Service. May the heavens open and the clouds rain down a few magnificent men!

hands without doing it than ready to break through not to sin in the sight of the only men, but also the Lord.

1 *M* 9, 9-10 They dissuaded him [Judas Machabeus], saying: We shall not be able, but let us save our lives now, and return to our brethren, and then we will fight against them; for we are but few.—Then Judas said: God forbid we should do this thing, and flee away from them: but if our time be come, let us die manfully for our brethren, and let us not stain our glory.

2 *Ma* 11, 9-11 Then they all together blessed the merciful Lord, and took great courage, being

the fiercest beasts, and walls of iron.—So they went on courageously, having a Helper from Heaven, and the Lord Who showed mercy to them.—And rushing violently upon the enemy, like lions, they slew of them eleven thousand footmen and one thousand six hundred horsemen.

Joseph of Arimathea, a *Mk* 15, 43 noble counsellor, who was also himself looking for the Kingdom of God, came and went in boldly to Pilate, and begged the Body of Jesus.

Take courage and be valiant. *Dt* 31, 7

## 2.—CONSTANCY OF THE MARTYRS.

*Is* 44, 5 One shall say: I am the Lord's, and another shall call himself by the name of Jacob, and another shall subscribe with his hand to the Lord, and surname himself by the name of Israel.

2 *M* 7, 2 What wouldst thou ask, or learn of us? We are ready to die rather than to transgress the laws of God, received from our fathers.

*Je* 28, 14-15 Behold, I am in your hands: do with me what is good and right in your eyes:—But know ye, and understand, that if ye put me to death, you will shed innocent blood against your own selves and against this City, and the inhabitants thereof. For in truth the Lord sent me to you, to speak all these words in your hearing.

*Ap* 6, 9-10 I saw under the Altar the souls of them that were

slain for the Word of God, and for the testimony which they held.—And they cried with a loud voice, saying: How long, O Lord (Holy and True), dost Thou not judge and revenge our blood on them that dwell on the earth?

Thy dead men shall live, *Je* 28, 19 my slain shall rise again: awake, and give praise, ye that dwell in the dust: for thy dew is the dew of the light: and the land of the giants thou shalt pull down into ruin.

Whosoever shall confess *Lu* 12, 8-9 Me before men, him shall the Son of Man also confess before the Angels of God.—But he that shall deny Me before men, shall be denied before the Angels of God.

Amen, amen, I say to you, *Jn* 12, 24-25 unless the grain of wheat falling into the ground, die,

itself remaineth alone.—But if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit. He that loveth his life shall lose it; and he that hateth his life in this world, keepeth it unto Life Eternal.

W 3, 4-5 Though in the sight of men they suffered torments,

their hope is full of immortality. — Afflicted in few things, in many they shall be well rewarded.

These are they who are Ap 7, 14 come out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and have made them white in the Blood of the Lamb.

### 3.—WORDS OF THE SEVEN MACHABEAN BROTHERS TO ANTIOCHUS: THEIR MOTHER'S WORDS OF ENCOURAGEMENT.

#### 1.—ST. MACHABEE.

2 M 7, 2, 6 What wouldst thou ask or learn of us? We are ready to die rather than to transgress the laws of God received from our fathers.—The Lord God will look upon the truth, and will take pleasure in us, as Moses declared in the profession of the Canticle: and in His servants He will take pleasure.

thee, thou shalt have no Resurrection unto Life.

#### 5.—ST. ACHAZ.

Whereas thou hast power 2 M 7, 16 among men, though thou art corruptible, thou dost what thou wilt: but think not that our nation is forsaken by God.—But stay patiently a while, and thou shalt see His great power, in what manner He will torment thee and thy seed.

#### 2.—ST. ABEL.

2 M 7, 2-9 I will not do it.—Thou indeed, O most wicked man, destroyest us out of this present life: but the King of the world will raise us up, who die for His laws, in the Resurrection of Eternal Life.

#### 6.—ST. ARETH.

Be not deceived with- 2 M 7, 18-29 out cause: for we suffer these things for ourselves, having sinned against our God, and things worthy of admiration are done to us.—But do not think that thou shalt escape unpunished, for that thou hast attempted to fight against God.

#### 3.—ST. MACHIR.

2 M 7, 11 These [tongue and hands] I have from Heaven, but for the laws of God I now despise them: because I hope to receive them again from Him.

#### 7.—ST. JACOB.

For whom do you stay? 12 M 7, 30-38 will not obey the commandment of the king, but the commandment of the law, which was given us by Moses.—But thou that hast been the author of all mischief

#### 4.—ST. JUDAS.

2 M 7, 14 It is better being put to death by men, to look for hope from God, to be raised up again by Him: for as to



against the Hebrews shalt not escape the hand of God.

—For we suffer thus for our sins.—And though the Lord our God is angry with us a little while for our chastisement and correction: yet He will be reconciled again to His servants.—But thou, O wicked, and of all men most flagitious, be not lifted up without cause with vain hopes, whilst thou art raging against His servants.—For thou hast not yet escaped the judgment of the Almighty God, Who beholdeth all things.—For my brethren, having now undergone a short pain, are under the Covenant of Eternal Life: but thou by the judgment of God shalt receive just punishment for thy pride.—But I, like my brethren, offer up my life and my body for the laws of our fathers, calling upon God to be speedily merciful to our nation, and that thou by torments and stripes mayst confess that He alone is God.—But in me and in my brethren the wrath of the Almighty, which hath justly been brought upon all our nation, shall cease.

8.—ST. SALOME.

(1) *Her words to her seven sons.*

I know not how you were formed in my womb, for I neither gave you breath, nor soul, nor life, neither did I frame the limbs of every one of you.—But the Creator of the world, that formed the nativity of man, and that found out the origin of all, He will restore to you again in His mercy, both breath and life, as now you despise yourselves for the sake of His laws.

(2) *Her words to Jacob, her youngest son.*

My son, have pity upon me, that bore thee nine months in my womb, and gave thee suck three years, and nourished thee, and brought thee up unto this age.—I beseech thee, my son, look upon heaven and earth, and all that is in them: and consider that God made them out of nothing, and mankind also:—So thou shalt not fear this tormentor, but being made a worthy partner with thy brethren, receive death, that in that mercy I may receive thee again with thy brethren.

#### 4.—FORTITUDE AND CHARITY; ROOTS OF

##### CHARITY WHICH SPRING UP UNDER ADVERSITY.

*Po* 16, 32 The patient man is better than the valiant: and he that ruleth his spirit, than he that taketh cities.

*1 C* 13, 4 Charity is patient.  
*Ja* 1, 3 [Know] that the trying of your faith worketh patience.

*Ro* 5, 3 Tribulation worketh patience.

No man should be moved in these tribulations: for yourselves know, that we are appointed thereunto.

All that will live godly in Christ Jesus, shall suffer persecution.

Dearly beloved, think not strange the burning heat

which is to try you, as if upon you.—But let none of you suffer as a murderer, or a thief, or a railer, or a coveter of other men's things.

- 1 Pt 4, 13-17 If you partake of the sufferings of Christ, rejoice that when His glory shall be revealed, you may also be glad with exceeding joy.—If you be reproached for the Name of Christ, you shall be blessed: for that which is of the honour, glory, and power of God, and that which is His Spirit, resteth upon you.—But if as a Christian, let him not be ashamed; but let him glorify God in that name.—For the time is that judgment should begin at the House of God. And if first at us, what shall be the end of them that believe not the Gospel of God? Shew thyself a man. 3 K 2, 2

### 5.—TO SUFFER FOR CHRIST A GREAT HAPPINESS.

- 1 Pt 2, 19-21 This is thanks-worthy, if for conscience towards God, a man endure sorrows, suffering wrongfully.—For what glory is it, if committing sin, and being buffeted for it, you endure? But if doing well you suffer patiently; this is thanks-worthy before God.—For unto this are you called: because Christ also suffered for us, leaving you an example that you should follow His steps.
- He 11, 24-26 By faith Moses, when he was grown up, denied himself to be the son of Pharaoh's daughter;—Rather choosing to be afflicted with the people of God, than to have the pleasure of sin for a time,—Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasure of the Egyptians. For he looked unto the reward.
- Ja 1, 29-30 Unto you it is given for Christ, not only to believe in Him, but also to suffer for Him.—Having the same conflict as that which you have seen in me, and now have heard of me.
- 1 Pt 3, 14 If you suffer anything for justice' sake, blessed are ye.
- Mt 5, 10-12 Blessed are they that suffer persecution for justice' sake; for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.—Blessed are ye when they shall revile you, and persecute you, and speak all that is evil against you, untruly, for My sake:—Be glad and rejoice, for your reward is very great in Heaven; for so they persecuted the Prophets that were before you.
- Ja 15, 18-21 If the world hate you, know ye that it hath hated Me before you.—If you had been of the world, the world would love its own; but because you are not of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, therefore the world hateth you.—Remember My word that I said to you: The servant is not greater than his master. If they have persecuted Me, they will also persecute you: if they have kept My word they will keep yours also.—

But all these things they will do to you for My Name's Sake: because they know not Him that sent Me. bearing His reproach. Christ having suffered in the flesh, be you also armed with the same thought: for he that hath suffered in the flesh, hath ceased from sins. 1 Pt 4, 1

*He 13, 13* Let us go forth therefore to Him without the camp,

### 6.—ETERNAL LIFE, JOY OF SOUL, HEALTH OF BODY, WEALTH AND HONOURS, THE REWARDS OF PATIENCE.

- He 10, 36* Patience is necessary for you: that doing the will of God, you may receive the promise. fect and entire, failing in nothing.
- Ro 8, 16-17* We are the sons of God.—And if sons, heirs also: heirs indeed of God, and joint-heirs with Christ: yet so, if we suffer with Him, that we may be also glorified with Him. God hath regenerated us into an inheritance incorruptible,—Wherein you shall greatly rejoice, if now you must be for a little time made sorrowful in divers temptations:—That the trial of your faith [much more precious than gold, which is tried by the fire] may be found unto praise, and glory, and honour, at the appearing of Jesus Christ. 1 Pt 1, 4 6-7
- Pt 9, 19* The patience of the poor shall not perish for ever. Patience [worketh] trial, and trial hope:—And hope confoundeth not. Ro 5, 4-5
- Eci 1, 29* A patient man shall bear for a time, and afterwards joy shall be restored to him. The Lord gave Job twice as much as he had before. Job 42, 10
- Ap 3, 10* Because thou hast kept the word of My patience, I will also keep thee from the hour of temptation, which shall come upon the whole world to try them that dwell upon the earth. A passionate man stirreth up strifes: he that is patient appeaseth those that are stirred up. Pv 15, 18
- Lu 8, 15* That on the good ground are they who, in a good and very good heart, hearing the Word, keep it, and bring forth fruit in patience. By patience a prince shall be appeased, and a soft tongue shall break hardness. Pv 25, 15
- Lu 21, 19* In your patience you shall possess your souls. The learning of a man is known by patience: and his glory is to pass over wrongs. Pv 19, 11
- Ja 1, 4* Patience hath a perfect work: that you may be perfect. The fruit of the Spirit is charity, joy, peace, patience. Ga 5, 22

### 7.—EXHORTATIONS TO PATIENCE.

- Eci 2, 2-6* Humble thy heart and endure: incline thine ear, and receive the words of understanding: and make not haste in the time of clouds.—Wait on God with

patience : join thyself to God, and endure, that thy life may be increased in the latter end.—Take all that shall be brought upon thee : and in thy sorrow endure, and in thy humiliation keep patience:—For gold and silver are tried in the fire, but acceptable men in the furnace of humiliation.

*Ja* 29, 11 I know the thoughts that I think towards you, saith the Lord, thoughts of peace, and not of affliction, to give you an end and patience.

*Pb* 3, 11-12 My son, reject not the correction of the Lord : and do not faint when thou art chastised by Him.—For whom the Lord loveth, He chastiseth : and as a father in the son He pleaseth Himself.

*Am* 5, 39 I say to you not to resist evil : but if one strike thee on thy right cheek, turn to him also the other.

*Ro* 12, 12 Rejoicing in hope. Patient in tribulation. Instant in prayer.

*Ep* 4, 1-2 I beseech you, that you walk worthy of the vocation in which you are called,—With all humility and mildness, with patience, supporting one another in charity.

*1 Ti* 5, 14 We beseech you, brethren, be patient towards all men.

*Ro* 15, 4 What things soever were written, were written for our learning : that through patience and the comfort of the Scriptures, we might have hope.

*1 Ti* 6, 11 Thou, O man of God, fly these things : and pursue justice, godliness, faith, charity, patience, mildness.

*He* 12, 1-4 We also having so great a cloud of witnesses over our

head, laying aside every weight and sin which surrounds us, let us run by patience to the fight proposed to us :—Looking on Jesus, the Author and Finisher of Faith, Who, having joy set before Him, endured the Cross, despising the shame, and now sitteth on the right hand of the Throne of God.—For I think diligently upon Him that endured such opposition from sinners against Himself : that you be not wearied, fainting in your minds.—For you have not yet resisted unto blood, striving against sin.

Be patient, brethren, until *Ja* 5, 7-11 the coming of the Lord. Behold the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth : patiently bearing till he receive the early and latter rain.—Be you, therefore, also patient, and strengthen your hearts : for the coming of the Lord is at hand.—Grudge not, brethren, one against another, that you may not be judged. Behold, the judge standeth before the door.—Take, my brethren, for an example of suffering evil, of labour and patience, the Prophets, who spoke in the Name of the Lord.—Behold, we count them blessed who have endured. You have heard of the patience of Job, and you have seen the end of the Lord, that the Lord is merciful and compassionate.

Here is the patience of *Ap* 14, 12 the Saints, who keep the commandments of God and the Faith of Jesus.

I know thy works, and thy labour, and thy patience, and how thou canst not

bear them that are evil: and hast not fa'nted.

And thou hast patience, and Thou art my patience, O Ps 70, 5  
hast endured for My Name, Lord.

### 8.—NOTABLE EXAMPLES AND REWARDS OF PATIENCE.

1 K 3, 18 It is the Lord: let Him do bless God and die.—And he  
what is good in His sight. said to her: Thou hast spoken

2 K 16, 10-12 Let him alone and let like one of the foolish women:  
him curse: for the Lord hath if we have received good  
bid him curse David: and things at the hand of God,  
who is he that shall dare why should we not receive  
say, Why hath he done so?— evil? In all these things Job  
Let him alone that he may did not sin with his lips.

curse as the Lord hath bidden We make known unto you, 2 C 8, 1-2  
him.—Perhaps the Lord may brethren, the grace of God,  
look upon my affliction, and that hath been given in the  
the Lord may render me good Churches of Macedonia.—  
for the cursing of this day. That in much experience of

Jb 1, 20-21 Then Job rose up, and tribulation, they have had  
rent his garments, and abundance of joy.

having shaven his head, Because thou hast kept Ap 3, 10  
fell down upon the ground the word of My patience, I  
and worshipped,—And said: will also keep thee from the  
Naked came I out of my hour of temptation, which  
mother's womb, and naked shall come upon the whole  
shall I return thither: the world to try them that dwell  
Lord gave, and the Lord hath upon the earth.

taken away: as it hath The Lord blessed the lat- Jb 42, 12-  
pleased the Lord, so is it ter end of Job more than his  
done: Blessed be the Name 13, 16  
of the Lord.

Jb 2, 7-10 Satan went forth from the Presence of the Lord, and  
struck Job with a very grievous ulcer, from the sole of  
the foot even to the top of his head:—And he took a  
potsherd and scraped the corrupt matter, sitting on a  
dunghill.—And his wife said to him: Dost thou still  
continue in thy simplicity? thousand camels, and a thou-  
sand yoke of oxen, and a  
thousand she-asses.—And he  
had seven sons and three  
daughters.—And Job lived  
after these things a hundred  
and forty years, and he saw  
his children, and his children's  
children, unto the fourth  
generation, and he died an  
old man, and full of days.

### 9.—ASPIRATIONS OF THE SOUL SIGHING FOR PATIENCE. (*In Paraphrase.*)

Ps 70, 5 Thou art my patience, O because of the darkness that  
Lord. hangs over me, nor let the

Jb 23, 17 Grant that I may not perish mist cover my face.

- Ps* 61, 1 Be thou, O my soul, subject to God, for from Him is my salvation.
- Ps* 28, 14 Expect the Lord, do manfully, and let thy heart take courage, and wait thou for the Lord.
- Blessed art Thou, O Lord ; *Ps* 118, 12 teach me Thy justifications.
- Princes sat, and spoke *Ps* 118, 23 against me ; but Thy servant was employed in Thy justifications. For Thy testimonies are my meditation.

## 10.—PENALTIES OF IMPATIENCE ; MURMURING.

- Ecl* 1, 28 He that is without fear, cannot be justified : for the wrath of his high spirits is his ruin.
- Ecl* 2, 16-17 Wo to them that have lost patience, and that have forsaken the right ways, and have gone aside into crooked ways.—And what will they do, when the Lord shall begin to examine ?
- Jb* 18, 4 Thou that destroyeth thy soul in thy fury, shall the earth be forsaken for thee, and shall rocks be removed out of their place ?
- Pv* 14, 17 The impatient man shall work folly.
- Pv* 19, 19 He that is impatient shall suffer damage : and when he shall take away he shall add another thing.
- Jd* 8, 24-25 They that did not receive the trials with the fear of the Lord, but uttered their impatience and the reproach of their murmuring against the Lord, — Were destroyed by the destroyer, and perished by serpents.
- Jb* 4, 3-6 Behold thou hast taught many, and thou hast strengthened the weary hands :—Thy words have confirmed them that were staggering, and thou hast strengthened the trembling knees :—But now the scourge is come upon thee, and thou faintest : it hath touched thee, and thou art troubled.—Where is thy fear, thy fortitude, thy patience, and the perfection of thy ways ?
- He hath heard your murmurings with which you have murmured against Him, for what are we ? Your murmuring is not against us, but against the Lord.
- This is the thing in which thou art not justified : I will answer thee that God is greater than man. — Dost thou strive against Him, because He hath not answered thee to all words ?
- Say not : What thinkest thou is the cause that former times were better than they are now ? for this manner of question is foolish.
- Why hath a living man murmured, man suffering for his sins ?
- Do not murmur : as some of them murmured and were destroyed by the destroyer.
- Examples of Murmuring
- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| (1) Cain.       | <i>Ge</i> 4, 13  |
| (2) Rachel.     | <i>Ge</i> 30, 1  |
| (3) Israelites. | <i>Ex</i> 5, 21  |
| (4) Core, &c.   | <i>Nu</i> 16, 19 |
| (5) Asaph.      | <i>Ps</i> 72, 3  |
| (6) Solomon.    | <i>Ecl</i> 2, 17 |
| (7) Ezechias.   | <i>Is</i> 38, 10 |
| (8) Jonas.      | <i>Jo</i> 4, 8   |

# 11. —CONSTANCY AND PERSEVERANCE NECESSARY FOR SALVATION.

- Eci* 27, 12 A holy man continueth in wisdom as the sun : but a fool is changed as the moon.
- Mt* 10, 22 He that shall persevere unto the end, he shall be saved.
- Lu* 9, 62 No man putting his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the Kingdom of God.
- Jn* 15, 9-10 Abide in My love.—If you keep My commandments, you shall abide in My love : as I also have kept My Father's commandments, and do abide in His love.
- 1 C* 15, 58 My beloved brethren, be y steadfast and unmoveable : always abounding in the work of the Lord, knowing that your labour is not vain in the Lord.
- Ga* 6, 9-10 In doing good, let us not fail. For in due time we shall reap, not failing.—Therefore whilst we have time, let us work good to all men, but especially to those who are of the Household of the Faith.
- Ph* 4, 1 My dearly beloved brethren, and most desired, my joy and my crown : so stand fast in the Lord, my dearly beloved.
- Ap* 2, 10, 26-27 Be thou faithful until death, and I will give thee the Crown of Life.—And he that shall overcome and keep My works unto the end, I will give him power over the nations.—And he shall rule them with a rod of iron, and as the vessel of a potter, they shall be broken.
- 4p* 3, 11-12, 21 Behold I come quickly : hold fast that which thou hast, that no man take thy crown.—He that shall overcome, I will make him a pillar in the Temple of My God : and he shall go out no more ; and I will write upon him the Name of My God, and the name of the City of My God, the new Jerusalem, which cometh down out of Heaven from My God, and My new Name.—To him that shall overcome, I will give to sit with Me in My Throne : as I also have overcome, and am sit down with My Father in His Throne.
- Brethren, be not weary in well-doing. We desire that every one of you show forth the same carefulness to the accomplishing of hope unto the end :—That you become not slothful, but followers of them, who through faith and patience shall inherit the promises.
- Be steadfast in thy covenant, and be conversant therein, and grow old in the work of thy commandments.—Abide not in the works of sinners, but trust in God, and stay in thy place.
- In that hour he that shall be on the housetop, and his goods in the house, let him not go down to take them away, and he that shall be in the field, in like manner, let him not return back.
- Remember Lot's wife. Know the justices and judgments of God, and stand firm in the lot set before thee, and in prayer to the
- 2 T* 3, 13  
*He* 6, 11-12  
*Eci* 11, 21-22  
*Lu* 17, 31  
*Lu* 17, 32  
*Eci* 17, 24

Most High God. strengthened; seek His face  
*Ps* 104, 4 Seek ye the Lord, and be evermore.

## 12.—EXHORTATIONS TO PERSEVERANCE.

- Ep* 4, 14 Henceforth let us be no doctrine of Christ, hath not more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine by the wickedness of men, by cunning craftiness, by which they lie in wait to deceive. *God.* He that continueth in the doctrine, the same hath both the Father and the Son.
- He* 13, 8-9 Jesus Christ, yesterday and to-day: and the same for ever.—Be not led away with various and strange doctrines. For it is best that the heart be established with grace, not with meats: which have not profited those that walk in them. Perfect the same which *Ps* 79, 16 Thy right hand hath planted: and upon the son of man whom Thou hast confirmed for Thyself.
- 2 Pt* 3, 17 You, brethren, knowing these things before, take heed, lest being led aside by the error of the unwise, you fall from your own steadfastness. The just man shall hold on his way, and he that hath clean hands shall be stronger and stronger. *Jb* 17, 9
- Jn* 3, 20-21 Dearly beloved, taking all care to write unto you concerning your common salvation, I was under a necessity to write unto you: to beseech you to contend earnestly for the Faith once delivered to the Saints.—But you, my beloved, building yourselves upon your Most Holy Faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,—Keep yourselves in the love of God, waiting for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto Life Everlasting. Be steadfast in the way of the Lord and in the truth of thy judgment, and in knowledge, and let the word of peace and justice keep with thee. *Ecc* 5, 12
- If you continue in My Word, you shall be My disciples indeed. *Jn* 8, 31
- Being confident of this very thing, that He Who hath begun a good work in you, will perfect it unto the day of Christ Jesus. *Pk* 1, 6
- Persevere under chastisement. God dealeth with you as with His sons. *He* 12, 7
- Look to yourselves that you lose not the things which you have wrought: but that you may receive a full reward. *2 J* 8
- He that shall overcome, shall thus be clothed in white garments, and I will not blot out his name out of the Book of Life, and I will confess his name before My Father, and before His Angels. *Ap* 3, 5
- 2 J* 8-9 Look to yourselves, that you lose not the things which you have wrought: but that you may receive a full reward.—Whosoever revolteth, and continueth not in the



## 13.—CENSURES ON THOSE WHO DO NOT

## PERSEVERE.

- Jb* 4, 5 Now the scourge is come upon thee, and thou faintest : it hath touched thee, and thou art troubled. He shall be blasted as a vine when its grapes are in the first flower, and as an olive-tree that casteth its flowers. *Jb* 15, 33
- Ga* 3, 3-4 Are you so foolish, that whereas you began in the Spirit, you would now be made perfect by the flesh ?—Have you suffered so great things in vain ? If it be yet in vain. The inhabitants of them were weak of hand, they trembled, and were confounded : they became like the grass of the field, and the herb of the pasture, and like the grass of the house-tops, which withered before it was ripe. *Is* 37, 27
- Ga* 5, 7-8 You did run well : who hath hindered you that you should not obey the truth ?—This persuasion is not from Him that calleth you. This man began to build, and was not able to finish. *Lu* 14, 30
- Ap* 2, 5 Be mindful from whence thou art fallen : and do penance, and do the first works. He that contemneth small things, shall fall by little and little. *Eci* 19, 1
- Or else I come to thee, and will move thy candlestick out of its place, except thou do penance. Waters wear away the stones, and with inundation the ground by little and little is washed away. *Jb* 14, 19

14.—THE CRIES OF A SOUL CRAVING FOR  
PERSEVERANCE ; EXAMPLES. (*In Paraphrase.*)

- Ps* 16, 5 Perfect Thou my goings in Thy paths : that my footsteps be not moved. [those] who believe for a while, and in time of temptation, fall away. *Ps* 89, 3
- Ps* 50, 13 Cast me not away from Thy face ; and take not Thy Holy Spirit from me. Turn me not away to be brought low : and Thou hast said : Be converted, O ye sons of men. *Ps* 89, 3
- Ps* 50, 14 Restore unto me the joy of Thy Salvation, and strengthen me with a perfect Spirit. My justification, which I have begun to hold, I will not forsake. *Jb* 27, 6
- Ps* 67, 29 Command Thy strength, O God : confirm, O God, what Thou hast wrought in us. Who shall separate me from the love of Christ ? Shall tribulation ? or distress, or famine ? or nakedness ? or the sword. *Ro* 8, 35
- Jn* 15, 4 Abide in Me, and I in you : As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, unless it abide in the vine, neither can you unless you abide in Me. Perfect the same which Thy right hand hath planted : and upon the son of man whom Thou hast confirmed for Thyself. *Ps* 79, 16
- Lu* 8, 13 [Let me not be, O Good Jesus, of the number of

## 15.—INCONSTANCY OF SINNERS.

- Eci* 33, 5 The heart of a fool is as a wheel of a cart : and his thoughts are like a rolling axle-tree.      The wicked are like the raging sea, which cannot rest, and the waves thereof cast up dirt and mire. *Is* 57, 20
- Eci* 27, 12 A holy man continueth in wisdom as the sun : but the fool is changed as the moon.      Your mercy is as a morning cloud, and as the dew that goeth away in the morning. *Os* 6, 4
- Pv* 27, 8 As a bird that wandereth from her nest, so is a man that leaveth his place.      What went you out into the desert to see ? a reed shaken with the wind ? *Mt* 11, 7

## 16.—INCONSTANCY FOUND EVEN IN THE ANGELS.

- Jb* 4, 18 Behold they that serve Him are not steadfast, and in His Angels He found wickedness.      He hath reserved under darkness in everlasting chains, unto the judgment of the great day.
- Jn* 8, 44 He was a murderer from the beginning, and he stood not in the Truth.      How art thou fallen from Heaven, O Lucifer, who didst rise in the morning ? *Is* 14, 12
- Ju* 6 The Angels who kept not their principality, but forsook their own habitation      thou art fallen to the earth, that didst wound the nations.

17.—INCONSTANCY A CONSEQUENCE OF SIN ;  
FORBIDDEN AND PUNISHED BY GOD.

- La* 1, 8 Jerusalem hath grievously sinned, therefore is she become unstable.      ties, and visit their sins.      Winnow not with every wind, and go not into every way : for so is every sinner proved by a double tongue. *Eci* 5, 11-12
- Ja* 1, 8 A double-minded man is inconstant in all his ways.      —Be steadfast in the way of the Lord, and in the truth of thy judgment, and in knowledge, and let the word of peace and justice keep with thee.
- Je* 14, 10 Thus saith the Lord to this people, that have loved to move their feet, and have not rested, and have not pleased the Lord : He will now remember their iniquities.

## 18.—EXAMPLES OF INCONSTANCY.

- Jd* 7, 17 We call to witness [said the Bethulians] this day Heaven and earth, and the God of our fathers, Who taketh vengeance upon us according to our sins, con-juring you to deliver now the city into the hand of the army of Holofernes, that our end many be short by the edge of the sword, which is made longer by the drought of thirst.      They quickly forsook the *Jg* 2, 17-19

way in which their fathers had walked : and hearing the commandments of the Lord, they did all things contrary.—And when the Lord raised them up judges, in their days He was moved to mercy, and heard the groanings of the afflicted, and delivered them from the slaughter of the oppressors.—But after the judge was dead, they returned, and did much worse things than their fathers had done, following strange gods, serving

them and adoring them. They left not their own inventions, and the stubborn way, by which they were accustomed to walk.

Demas hath left me, loving 2 *Th* 4, 9 this world, and is gone to Thessalónica.

Alexander the coppersmith 2 *Th* 14, 15 hath done me much evil : the Lord will reward him according to his works ; whom do thou also avoid, for he hath greatly withstood our words.

### 19.—TRIBULATION SENT BY GOD ; AND THE CONSEQUENCES OF SIN.

*Je* 30, 11 I will chastise thee in judgment that thou mayst not seem to thyself innocent.

*Jb* 10, 17 Thou renewest Thy witnesses against me, and multiplieth Thy wrath upon me, and pains war against me.

*Jb* 32, 13 [This I say] lest you should say : We have found wisdom, God hath cast him down, not man.

*Ecc* 11, 14 Good things and evil, life and death, poverty and riches, are from God.

*Ba* 22, 29 As it was your mind to go astray from God, so when you return again you shall seek Him ten times as much.—For He that hath brought evils upon you, shall bring you everlasting joy again with your salvation.

*Eccl* 7, 15 In the good day enjoy good things, and beware beforehand of the evil day : for God hath made both the one and the other, that man may not find against Him any just complaint.

*Ecc* 7, 1-3 Do no evils, and no evils shall lay hold of thee.—De-

part from the unjust, and evils shall depart from thee.

—My son, sow not evils in the furrows of injustice, and thou shalt not reap them sevenfold.

Wo is me for my destruction, my wound is very grievous. But I said : Truly this is my own evil, and I will bear it.

#### Examples of Persecutors :

- (1) Chief Priests and *Mt* 27, 20 Ancients.
- (2) Satan, the angel of *Ap* 9, 11 the bottomless pit.
- (3) Pharaoh. *Ex* 1, 22
- (4) Amalec. *Dt* 25, 18
- (5) Jeroboam. *3 K* 13, 4
- (6) Jezebel. *3 K* 18, 4
- (7) Achab. *3 K* 21, 20
- (8) Jews. *2 P* 36, 16
- (9) Aman. *Es* 3, 6
- (10) Sennacherib. *Is* 37, 36
- (11) Ammonites. *Ez* 25, 3
- (12) Nabuchodonosor. *Je* 25, 12
- (13) Edom. *Ez* 25, 12
- (14) Sidon. *Ez* 28, 24
- (15) Moab. *Ez* 25, 8
- (16) Enemies of Jeremias. *Je* 11, 19

# 484 FORTITUDE AND THE VIRTUES CONNECTED WITH IT,

<i>Da</i> 3, 22	(17) Enemies of Sidrach.	(22) Ravaging Lions.	<i>Je</i> 2, 30
<i>Da</i> 6, 24	(18) Enemies of Daniel.	(23) Wolves in sheep's clothing.	<i>Mt</i> 10, 16
<i>Am</i> 7, 12	(19) Enemies of Amos.	(24) The Dragon.	<i>Ap</i> 12, 17
<i>Ac</i> 9, 23	(20) Enemies of Paul.	(25) False Brethren.	<i>2 C</i> 11, 26
<i>2 M</i> 6, 1	(21) Antiochus.		

## 20.—NOT ALL TRIBULATION SENT ON ACCOUNT OF SIN.

<i>Jb</i> 3, 26	Have I not dissembled? have I not kept silence? have I not been quiet, and indignation is come upon me?	He shall crush me in a whirlwind, and multiply my wounds even without cause (without any crime of mine).	<i>Jb</i> 9, 17
<i>Jb</i> 6, 2-3	O that my sins, whereby I have deserved wrath, and the calamity that I suffer, were weighed in a balance!—As the sand of the sea this would appear heavier: therefore my words are full of sorrow.	Rabbi, who hath sinned, this man, or his parents, that he should be born blind?—Jesus answered: Neither hath this man sinned, nor his parents: but that the works of God should be made manifest in him.	<i>Jn</i> 9, 2-3

## 21.—TRIBULATION SENT BY GOD FOR THE TRIAL AND PERFECTION OF MEN.

<i>Je</i> 31, 18	Thou hast chastised me, and I was instructed as a young bullock unaccustomed to the yoke.	Tribulation worketh patience, and patience trial.	<i>Ro</i> 5, 3-4
<i>To</i> 12, 13	Because thou wast acceptable to God, it was necessary that temptation should prove thee.	Behold, the devil will cast some of you into prison, that you may be tried.	<i>Ap</i> 2, 10
<i>Jd</i> 8, 21	Our fathers were tempted that they might be proved, whether they worshipped their God truly.	The furnace trieth the potter's vessels, and the trial of affliction just men.	<i>Eci</i> 27, 6
<i>Je</i> 31, 16	Thus saith the Lord: Let thy voice cease from weeping, and thine eyes from tears, for there is a reward for thy work.	As silver is tried by fire, and gold in the furnace, so the Lord trieth the hearts.	<i>Po</i> 17, 3
<i>Jg</i> 2, 21-22	I will not destroy the nations which Josue left when he died: that through them I may try Israel, whether they will keep the way of the Lord and walk in it, as their fathers kept it, or no.	He that shall come after me, is mightier than I. —Whose fan is in His hand, and He will thoroughly cleanse His floor, and gather His wheat into the barn; but the chaff He will burn with unquenchable fire.	<i>Mt</i> 3, 11-12
		Every branch in me, that beareth not fruit, He will take away: and every one that beareth fruit, He will purge it, that it may bring forth more fruit.	<i>Jn</i> 15, 2

2. *1/6, 12-* I beseech those that shall  
 16 read this book that they be not shocked at these calamities, but that they consider the things that happened not as being for the destruction, but for the correction of our nation.—For it is a token of great goodness when sinners are not suffered to go on in their ways for a long time, but are presently punished.—For, not as with other nations (whom the Lord patiently expecteth, that when the day of judgment shall come He may punish them in the fulness of their sins),—Doth He also deal with us, so as to suffer our sins to come to their height, and then take vengeance on us.—And therefore He never withdraweth His mercy from us: but though He chastise His people with adversity, He forsaketh them not.

## 22.—OF THOSE WHO DO NOT PROFIT BY TRIBULATION.

- Po 27, 22* Though thou shouldst bray a fool in the mortar, as when a pestle striketh upon sodden barley, his folly would not be taken from him. All these princes go out of *Je 6, 28-30* the way, they walk deceitfully: they are brass and iron; they are all corrupted.—The bellows have failed, the lead is consumed in the fire, the founder hath melted in vain: for their wicked deeds are not consumed.—Call them reprobate silver, for the Lord hath rejected them.
- Ex 24, 12-* Great pains have been  
 13 taken, and the great rust thereof is not gone out, not even by fire.—Thy uncleanness is execrable: because I desired to cleanse thee, and thou art not cleansed from thy filthiness: neither shalt thou be cleansed, before I cause My indignation to rest in thee. Whatsoever shall befall *Po 12, 21* the just man, it shall not make him sad: but the wicked shall be filled with mischief.

## 23.—TRIBULATION COMMON TO THE GOOD AND THE BAD; MAKES THOSE WHO BEAR IT PATIENTLY FRIENDS OF GOD.

- Jb 9, 22* One thing there is that I have spoken, both the innocent and the wicked He consumeth. turning Thou tormentest me wonderfully.
- Jb 10, 15-* If I be wicked, wo unto  
 16 me: and if just, I shall not lift up my head, being filled with affliction and misery.—And for pride Thou wilt take me as a lioness, and re- If I be washed as it were *Jb 9, 30-31* with snow-waters, and my hands shall shine ever so clean:—Yet Thou shalt plunge me in filth, and my garments shall abhor me. They must remember how *Jb 8, 22-23* our father Abraham was

tempted, and being proved by many tribulations was made the friend of God.—

So Isaac, so Jacob, so Moses, and all that have pleased God, passed through many tribulations, remaining faithful.

2 Ti 3, 12 All that will live godly in

Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution.

Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and so to enter into His glory?

Gold and silver are tried in the fire, but acceptable men in the furnace of humiliation.

Eci 2, 5

## 24.—JOY AND SORROW OBTAINED FOR GOD'S GLORY.

Jb 7, 18 Thou visitest him early in the morning, and Thou provest him suddenly.

Jb 5, 18-20 He woundeth and cureth : He striketh, and His hands shall heal.—In six troubles He shall deliver thee, and in the seventh, evil shall not touch thee.—In famine He shall deliver thee from death ; and in battle, from the hand of the sword.

Is 1, 27 Sion shall be redeemed in judgment, and they shall bring her back in justice.

Is 51, 22-23 Behold I have taken out of thy hand the cup of dead sleep, the dregs of the cup of My indignation, thou shalt not drink it again any more.—And I will put it in the hand of them that have oppressed thee.

Pr 24, 16 A just man shall fall seven times, and shall rise again : but the wicked shall fall down into evil.

Os 11, 4 I will be to them as one that taketh off the yoke on their jaws, and I put his meat to him that he might eat.

Za 1, 16-17 Thus saith the Lord : I will return to Jerusalem in mercies : My House shall be built in it, saith the Lord of

Hosts : and the building-line shall be stretched forth upon Jerusalem.—Cry yet, saying : Thus saith the Lord of Hosts : My cities shall yet flow with good things : and the Lord will yet comfort Sion, and He will yet choose Jerusalem.

Fear not, Sion : Let not thy hands be weakened. The Lord thy God in the midst of thee is mighty, He will save :—He will rejoice over thee with gladness, He will be silent in His love, He will be joyful over thee in praise.

The Lord will not cast off for ever.—For if He hath cast off, He will also have mercy, according to the multitude of His mercies.

The Mercy of God is beautiful in the time of affliction, as a cloud of rain in the time of drought.

This sickness is not unto death, but for the glory of God : that the Son of God may be glorified by it.

We are filled in the morning with Thy mercy : and we have rejoiced, and are delighted all our days.

Lu 24, 26

So 3, 16-17

La 3, 31-32

Eci 36, 26

Jn 11, 4

Pr 89, 14

25.—TRIBULATION PROMISED BY 'GOD AS A  
GREAT BLESSING; COVETED BY THE JUST.

- Za* 13, 9 I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined: and I will try them as gold is tried. Amen I say to you, there *Mk* 10, 29-30 is no man who hath left house, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or children, or lands for My sake and for the Gospel,— Who shall not receive an hundred times as much, now in this time; houses, and brethren, and sisters, and mothers, and children, and lands with persecutions: and in the world to come Life Everlasting.
- Je* 46, 28 Thou, My servant Jacob, fear not, saith the Lord: because I am with thee, for I will consume all the nations to which I have cast thee out: but thee I will not consume, but I will correct thee in judgment, neither will I spare thee as if thou wert innocent. Correct me, O Lord, but *Je* 10, 24 yet with judgment: and not in Thy fury, lest Thou bring me to nothing.
- Ma* 3, 2-3 He is like a refining fire, and like the fuller's herb:— And He shall sit refining and cleansing the silver, and He shall purify the sons of Levi, and shall refine them as gold, and as silver, and they shall offer sacrifices to the Lord in justice. Let rottenness enter into *Ha* 3, 16, 18 my bones, and swarm under me. That I may rest in the day of tribulation: that I may go up to our people that are girded.—And I will joy in God my Jesus.

26.—TRIBULATION OF THIS LIFE IS LIGHT  
IN COMPARISON WITH THE GLORY TO COME.

- 2 M* 5, 17 Antiochus going astray in mind, did not consider that God was angry for a while, because of the sins of the inhabitants of the city: and therefore this contempt had happened to the place. Temple, the sheep also and the oxen, and the money of changers he poured out, and the tables He overthrew.
- W* 3, 5 Afflicted in few things, in many they shall be well rewarded: because God hath tried them, and found them worthy of Himself. The God of all grace, Who *1 Pt* 5, 10 hath called us unto His Eternal Glory in Christ Jesus, after you have suffered a little, will Himself perfect you, and confirm you and establish you. To Him be glory and empire for ever and ever.
- Jb* 35, 15 He doth not now bring on His fury, neither doth He revenge wickedness exceedingly. I reckon that the sufferings *Ro* 8, 18 of this time are not worthy to be compared with the glory to come, that shall be revealed in us.
- Jn* 2, 15 When He had made, as it were, a scourge of little cords, He drove them all out of the That which is at present *2 Co* 4, 17-18

momentary and light of our tribulation, worketh for us above measure exceedingly an eternal weight of glory.—

While we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen.

## 27.—FRUITS OF TRIBULATION STEADFASTLY BORNE.

- Ps* 125, 5-7 They that sow in tears shall reap in joy.—Going they went and wept, casting their seeds.—But coming they shall come with joyfulness, carrying their sheaves.
- Jb* 5, 17 Blessed is the man whom God correcteth: refuse not therefore the chastising of the Lord.
- Ro* 8, 28 We know that to them that love God, all things work together unto good, to such as, according to His purpose, are called to be saints.
- Ja* 1, 12 Blessed is the man that endureth temptation; for when he hath been proved, he shall receive the Crown of Life, which God hath promised to them that love Him.
- Mt* 5, 10 Blessed are they that suffer persecution for justice' sake: for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Ac* 14, 21 Paul and Barnabas returned to Antioch,—Confirming the souls of the disciples, and exhorting them to continue in the Faith: and that through many tribulations we must enter into the Kingdom of God.
- He* 12, 11-13 Now all chastisement for the present indeed seemeth not to bring with it joy, but sorrow: but afterwards it will yield, to them that are exercised by it, the most peaceable fruit of justice.—Wherefore lift up the hands
- which hang down, and the feeble knees,—And make straight steps with your feet; that no one, halting, may go out of the way; but rather be healed.
- He that taketh not up his cross and followeth Me, is not worthy of Me.
- Vexation alone shall make you understand what you hear.
- The blueness of a wound shall wipe away evils: and stripes in the more inward parts of the belly.
- As the sufferings of Christ abound in us, so also by Christ doth our comfort abound.—That our hope for you may be steadfast: knowing that as you are partakers of the sufferings, so shall you be also of the consolation.
- I am filled with comfort: I exceedingly abound with joy in all our tribulation.
- In all things we suffer tribulation, but are not distressed: we are straitened, but are not destitute:—We suffer persecution, but are not forsaken: we are cast down, but we perish not.—For which cause we faint not: but though our outward man is corrupted, yet the inward man is renewed day by day.
- He saith to me: My grace is sufficient for thee: for power is made perfect in in-
- Mt* 10, 38  
*Ja* 28, 19  
*Ps* 20, 30  
*2 C* 1, 5, 7  
*2 C* 7, 4  
*2 C* 4, 8-9, 16  
*2 C* 12, 9



firmity. Gladly therefore will I glory in my infirmities, that the power of Christ may dwell in me.

*1.u* 24, 25- He said to them : O foolish and slow of heart to believe in all things which the Prophets have spoken.—Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and so to enter into His glory ?

*1<sup>st</sup>* 2, 5-11 Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus :—Who being in the form of God, thought it not robbery, to be equal with God :—But debased Himself, taking the form of a

servant, being made in the likeness of men, and in habit found as a man.—He humbled Himself, becoming obedient unto death, even the death of the Cross.—For which cause God also hath exalted Him, and hath given Him a Name, which is above every name.—That in the Name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those that are in Heaven, on earth, and under the earth.—And that every tongue should confess that the Lord Jesus Christ is in the glory of God the Father.

## 28.—TRIBULATION AROUSES THE SOUL TO SEEK AFTER GOD.

*Os* 6, 1 In their tribulation they will rise early to Me: Come and let us return to the Lord.

*Ps* 31, 4 For day and night Thy hand was heavy upon me : I am turned in my anguish whilst the thorn is fastened.

*Ps* 31, 9 With bit and bridle bind

fast their jaws, who come not near unto Thee.

When He slew them, then they sought Him : and they returned and came to Him early in the morning.

Fill their faces with shame: and they shall seek Thy Name, O Lord.

## 29.—THE LAMENT OF GOD OVER SOULS THAT WILL NOT BE CONVERTED BY TRIBULATION.

*Am* 4, 6 I have given you dulness of teeth in all your cities, and want of bread in all your places: yet you have not returned to Me, saith the Lord.

*Je* 5, 3 Thou hast struck them, and they have not grieved: Thou hast bruised them, and they have refused to receive correction: they have made their faces harder than the rock, and they have refused to return.

*Je* 15, 7 I will scatter them with a fan in the gates of the land:

I have killed and destroyed My people, and yet they are not returned from their ways.

In vain have I struck your children, they have not received correction: your sword hath devoured your prophets, your generation is like a ravaging lion.

They have not cried to Me with their heart, but they howled in their beds: they have thought upon wheat and wine, and are departed from Me.

*Je* 2, 30

*Os* 7, 14

*Jb* 35, 9-12 By reason of the multitude of oppressors they shall cry out : and shall wail for the violence of the arm of tyrants. —And he hath not said : Where is God Who made me, Who hath given songs in the night ?—Who teacheth us more than the beasts of the earth, and instructeth us more than the fowls of the air.—There shall they cry, and He will not hear be-  
cause of the pride of evil men.  
Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the Prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered together thy children, as the hen doth gather her chickens under her wings, and thou wouldst not ?—Behold your House shall be left to you desolate.

### 30.—REWARDS OF PATIENTLY ENDURING TRIBULATION ; PENALTIES OF CHAFING UNDER THEM.

*Jb* 12, 5 The lamp despised in the thoughts of the rich, is ready for the time appointed.  
*He* 12, 6-8 Whom the Lord loveth, He chastiseth ; and He scourgeth every son whom He receiveth. — Persevere under discipline. God dealeth with you as with His sons ; for what son is there, whom the father doth not correct ? — But if you be without chastisement, whereof all are made partakers, then are you bastards, and not sons.  
Whom the Lord loveth, He chastiseth ; and as a father in the son He pleaseth Himself.  
Such as I love, I rebuke and chastise.  
He that loveth correction, loveth knowledge : but he that hateth reproof is foolish.

### 31.—TRIBULATION TO BE WELCOMED JOYFULLY AND ESTEEMED AS GAIN.

*Eci* 11, 27-28 In the day of evils be not unmindful of good things :—For it is easy before God in the day of death to reward every one according to his ways.  
*Ap* 2, 11 He that shall overcome, shall not be hurt by the second death.  
*Pv* 24, 10 If thou lose hope being weary in the day of distress, thy strength shall be diminished.  
*Mt* 7, 9 I will bear the wrath of the Lord, because I have sinned against Him ; until He judge my cause and execute judgment for me : He will bring me forth into the light, I shall behold His Justice.  
My brethren, count it all joy, when you shall fall into divers temptations ;—Knowing that the trying of your faith worketh patience.  
Thy words were found, and I did eat them, and Thy Word was to me a joy and gladness of my heart : for Thy Name is called upon me,

- O Lord God of Hosts.  
 2 C 11, 30 If I must needs glory, I infirmities, that the power of Christ may dwell in me.  
 I will glory of the things that To me, to live is Christ: Ph 1, 21  
 concern my infirmity. and to die is gain.  
 2 C 12, 9 Gladly will I glory in my We glory in tribulations. Ro 5, 3

32.—HE WHO HELPS THE SUFFERING HAS  
 REASON FOR CONFIDENCE IN GOD.

- Ph 4, 13 I can do all things in Him all will the Lord deliver  
 Who strengtheneth me. them. — The Lord keepeth  
 Is 25, 4 Thou hast been a strength all their bones; not one of  
 to the poor, a strength to the them shall be broken.  
 needy in his distress: a re- He shall cry to Me, and I Ps 90, 15  
 fuge from the whirlwind, will hear him: I am with  
 a shadow from the heat. him in tribulation, I will de-  
 For the blast of the mighty liver him, and I will glorify  
 is like a whirlwind beating him.  
 against a wall. As yet the vision is far off, Ha 2, 3  
 Ps 33, 18- The just cried, and the and it shall appear at the  
 21 Lord heard them: and de- end, and shall not lie; if it  
 livered them out of all their make any delay, wait for it:  
 troubles.—The Lord is nigh for it shall surely come, and  
 unto them that are of a con- it shall not be slack.  
 trite heart: and He will Expect the Lord, do man- Ps 26, 14  
 save the humble of spirit.— fully, and let thy heart take  
 Many are the afflictions of courage, and wait thou for  
 the just: but out of them the Lord.

33.—EXAMPLES OF ENDURANCE UNDER  
 SUFFERING.

- 2 C 1, 8-9 We would not have you were made a gazing stock;  
 ignorant, brethren, of our tri- and on the other, became  
 bulation, which came to us in companions of them that  
 Asia, that we were pressed were used in such sort.—For  
 out of measure above our you both had compassion on  
 strength, so that we were them that were in bands,  
 weary even of life.—But we and took with joy the being  
 had within ourselves the stripped of your own goods,  
 answer of death, that we knowing that you have a  
 should not trust in ourselves, better and a lasting sub-  
 but in God Who raiseth the stance.  
 dead. This trial [of blindness] To 2, 12-18  
 He 10, 32- Call to mind the former the Lord permitted to  
 34 days, wherein, being illu- happen to him, that an ex-  
 minated, you endured a great ample might be given to  
 fight of afflictions.—And on posterity of his patience,  
 the one hand indeed, by re- as also of holy Job.—For  
 proaches and tribulations whereas he had always feared

God from his infancy, and kept His commandments, he repined not against God because the evil of blindness had befallen him,—But continued immovable in the fear of God, giving thanks to God all the days of his life.—For as the kings insulted over holy Job: so his relations and kinsmen mocked at his life, saying: Where is thy hope, for which thou gavest alms, and buriedst the dead?—For we are the children of saints, and look for that life which God will give to those that never change their faith from Him.

2 K 9, 27 In the time of their tribulation, they cried to Thee, and Thou heardest from Heaven, and according to the multitude of Thy tender mercies, Thou gavest them saviours, to save them from the hands of their enemies.

Ap 2, 9-10 I know thy tribulation, and thy poverty, but thou art rich: and thou art blasphemed by them that say they are Jews and are not, but are the Synagogue of satan.—Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer. Behold, the devil will cast some of you into prison that you may be tried. Be thou faithful unto death: and I will give thee the Crown of Life.

He 11, 32-34 What shall I yet say? For the time would fail me to tell of Gedeon, Barac, Samson, Jephthe, David, Samuel, and the Prophets:—Who by faith conquered kingdoms, wrought justice, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions,—Quenched the vio-

lence of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, recovered strength from weakness, became valiant in war, put to flight the armies of foreigners.

Surely He hath borne our infirmities, and carried our sorrows: and we have thought Him as it were a leper, and as one struck by God and afflicted. — But He was wounded for our iniquities, He was bruised for our sins: the chastisement of our peace was upon Him, and by His bruises we are healed.—All we like sheep have gone astray, every one hath turned aside into his own way: and the Lord hath laid on Him the iniquity of us all.

Examples of persons persecuted:

- (1) Jesus persecuted Mt 27, 31  
unto death by the Jews.
- (2) St. John Baptist persecuted by Herod. Mt 14, 3
- (3) St. Peter by Herod. Ac 12, 1
- (4) St. Paul by the Ac 16, 22  
Philippians.
- (5) St. Stephen by the Ac 6, 9  
Libertines.
- (6) St. Lazarus by the Jn 12, 10  
Chief Priests.
- (7) St. Timothy. He 13, 23
- (8) St. Jeremias by Je 38, 6  
Phassur.
- (9) Urias by Joakim. Je 26, 21
- (10) Moses by Pharaoh. Ex 2, 15
- (11) Elias by Jezabel. 3 K 19, 2
- (12) Micheas by Achab. 3 K 22, 26
- (13) Eliseus by Benadad. 4 K 6, 31
- (14) Hanani by Asa. 2 P 18, 10
- (15) Zacharias by King 2 P 24, 21  
Joas.
- (16) St. Antipas by the Ap 2, 13  
Emperor Domitian

### 34.—CRIES OF A SOUL FLYING TO GOD IN THE DAY OF TRIBULATION.

- Je* 16, 19 O Lord, my Might, and my Strength, and my Refuge in the day of tribulation !
- Ps* 22, 4 Thy rod and Thy staff they have comforted me.
- Ps* 22, 5 Thou hast prepared a table before me against them that afflict me.
- Jb* 2, 10 If we have received good things at the Hand of God, why should we not receive evil ?
- Jb* 1, 22 The Lord gave, and the Lord hath taken away : as it hath pleased the Lord so is it done : Blessed be the Name of the Lord.
- 1 K* 3, 18 It is the Lord : let Him do what is good in His sight.
- The fig-tree shall not blossom : and there shall be no spring in the vines. The labour of the olive-tree shall fail : and the fields shall yield no food ; the flock shall be cut off from the fold ; and there shall be no herd in the stalls.—But I will rejoice in the Lord : and I will joy in God my Jesus.
- I please myself in my infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in persecutions, in distresses, for Christ. For when I am weak, then am I powerful.
- Ha* 3, 17-1  
*2 C* 12, 10

### 35.—PRAYERS ADDRESSED BY OUR LORD, AS MAN, TO THE ETERNAL FATHER.

- (1) *In Persecution.*
- Ps* 70, 3-8 Be Thou unto me a God, a protector, and a place of strength : that Thou mayst make me safe. For Thou art my firmament and my refuge.—Deliver me, O my God, out of the hand of the sinner, and out of the hand of the transgressor of the law and of the unjust.—For Thou art my patience, O Lord : my hope, O Lord, from my youth.—By Thee have I been confirmed from the womb : from my mother's womb Thou art my protector. Of Thee shall I continually sing : I am become unto many as a wonder, but Thou art a strong helper.—Let my mouth be filled with praise, that I may sing Thy glory ; Thy greatness all the day long.
- (2) *In Sorrow.*
- Ps* 17, 2-7 I will love Thee, O Lord, my strength :—The Lord is my firmament, my refuge, and my deliverer.—My God is my helper, and in Him will I put my trust. My protector and the horn of my salvation, and my support.—Praising I will call upon the Lord : and I shall be saved from my enemies.—The sorrows of death surrounded me : and the torrents of iniquity troubled me.—The sorrows of hell encompassed me : and the snares of death prevented me.—In my affliction I called upon the Lord : and I cried to my God : and He heard my voice from His Holy Temple : and my cry before Him came into His ears.
- (3) *In His Betrayal.*
- O God, be Thou not silent in my praise : for the mouth of the wicked
- Ps* 108, 2-5

and the mouth of the deceitful man is opened against me.—They have spoken against me with deceitful tongues: and they have compassed me about with words of hatred; and have fought against me without cause.—Instead of making me a return of love, they detracted me: but I gave myself to prayer.—And they repaid me evil for good: and hatred for my love.

(4) *In His Agony in the Garden.*

*Ps 54, 13-17* If my enemy had reviled me, I would verily have borne with it. And if he that hated me had spoken great things against me: I would perhaps have hidden myself from him.—But thou a man of one mind, my guide, and my familiar.—Who didst take sweet meats together with me: in the House of God we walked with consent.—Let death come upon them, and let them go down alive into hell. For there is wickedness in their dwellings: in the midst of them.—But I have cried to God: and the Lord will save me.

(5) *In Abandonment.*

*Ps 30, 12-16* They that saw me fled without from me.—I am forgotten as one dead from the heart. I am become as a vessel that is destroyed.—For I have heard the blame of many that dwell round about. While they assembled together against me, they consulted to take away my life.—But I have put my trust in Thee, O Lord: I said: Thou art my God.—

My lots are in Thy Hands. Deliver me out of the hands of my enemies; and from them that persecute me.

(6) *On the Cross.*

Many calves have surrounded me: fat bulls have besieged me.—They have opened their mouths against me, as a lion ravening and roaring.—I am poured out like water; and all my bones are scattered. My heart is become like wax melting in the midst of my bowels.—My strength is dried up like a potsherd, and my tongue hath cleaved to my jaws: and Thou hast brought me down into the dust of death.—For many dogs have encompassed me: the council of the malignant hath besieged me. They have dug my hands and feet.—They have numbered all my bones. And they have looked and stared upon me.—They parted my garments amongst them; and upon my vesture they cast lots.

(7) *In Death.*

Save me, O God: for the waters are come in even unto my soul.—I am come into the depth of the sea: and a tempest hath overwhelmed me.—I have laboured with crying; my jaws are become hoarse: my eyes have failed, whilst I hope in my God.—They are multiplied above the hairs of my head, who hate me without cause.—They gave Me gall for My food.—The zeal of Thy House hath eaten me up: and the reproaches of them that reproached Thee are fallen upon me.

## BOOK IV.

### ON THE WORD OF GOD.

THE "Word of God" in its first and original sense is the personal and proper name of the Second Person of the Blessed Trinity—the Art and Wisdom of the Father. In a secondary sense the "Word of God" signifies every external manifestation of the wisdom of God. Thus ancient Greek writers call creation "the external generation of the Word." By generation they mean manifestation. God's wisdom is so manifest throughout creation that they who fail to perceive it are condemned by the "Wise Man" as "vain" and by S. Paul as "inexcusable." But God deigned to make a yet fuller manifestation of Himself. He had destined man for a higher vision of Himself than that which is "through a glass, in a dark manner." Man was to see Him "face to face" and "as He is." Such was to be the end and beatitude of man—a supernatural end and beatitude. The manifestation of God by the light of Nature could convey no knowledge of this supernatural end. Yet the end must be known. Man must press onward to that end, direct all his actions to it. So God manifested this design of His wisdom and goodness by that fuller manifestation of Himself which is by the light of Faith. The "Word of God" in the sense in which we here employ the term is the manifestation of God which is by Faith. The truths of Faith are contained equally in the Sacred Scriptures and in Divine Tradition. The difference between the Sacred Scriptures and Divine Tradition is not a difference of substance, but only a difference of mode. The Sacred Scriptures are the written word of God; the truths contained in Divine Tradition are the unwritten word of God.

## PART I.

## ON THE WORD OF GOD.

## 1.—THE WORD OF GOD IN GENERAL.

- De* 8, 3 Not in bread alone doth man live, but in every word that proceedeth from the mouth of God. whatsoever I please, and shall prosper in the things for which I sent it.
- He* 4, 12 The word of God is living and effectual, and more piercing than any two-edged sword; and reaching unto the division of the soul and the marrow, and is a discernor of the thoughts and intents of the heart. I have manifested Thy Name to men whom Thou hast given me out of the world. Thine they were, and to Me Thou gavest them. And they have kept Thy word.—I have given them Thy word.—Sanctify them in truth. Thy word is truth. *Jn* 17, 6, 14, 17
- Je* 23, 29 Are not My words as a fire? saith the Lord; and as a hammer that breaketh the rock in pieces? Be strengthened in the Lord and in the might of His power,—In all things taking the shield of faith, wherewith you may be able to extinguish all the fiery darts of the most wicked one. *Ep* 6, 10, 16-17
- Is* 55, 10-11 As the rain and the snow comedown from Heaven, and return no more thither, but soak the earth, and water it, and make it to spring, and give seed to the sower, and bread to the eater:—So shall My word be, which shall go forth from My Mouth; it shall not return to Me void, but it shall do and hearing by the word of Christ. Thy words is truth. *Ro* 10, 17 *Ps* 118, 160

## 2.—THE UNWRITTEN WORD OF GOD.

- 2 Ti* 1, 13-14 Hold the form of sound words which thou hast heard of me in faith and in the love which is in Christ Jesus.—Keep the good thing committed to thy trust by the Holy Ghost, Who dwelleth in us. took bread.—And the rest I will put in order when I come. [Pray] withal for us also that God may open unto us a door to speak the mystery of Christ, for which also I am bound, that I may make it manifest, as I ought to speak. *Ci* 4, 3-4
- 1 C* 11, 23-24 I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, that the Lord Jesus, the same night in which He was betrayed, Remove not the ancient landmarks which thy fathers set. *Pe* 23, 28



- Mt* 20, 19 Going, teach ye all nations.  
*Mt* 15, 16 Goe into the whole world, and preach the Gospel to every creature.  
*2 T* 2, 14 Brethren, stand fast : and hold the traditions which you have learned, whether by word or by our Epistle.  
*1 C* 11, 2 Now I praise you, brethren, that in all things you are mindful of Me : and keep My ordinances as I have delivered them unto you.  
*1 C* 11, 16 If any man seem to be contentious : he hath no such custom, nor the Church of God.  
*2 T* 2, 5-6 Remember you not that when I was yet with you I told you these things?—And now you know what withholdeth, that He may be revealed in His time.  
*1 T* 4, 6, 20 O Timothy, keep that which is committed to thy trust, avoiding the profane novelties of words, and oppositions of knowledge falsely so-called.  
*2 T* 2, 2 The things which thou hast heard of Me by many witnesses, the same commend to faithful men, who shall be fit to teach others also.  
*Lu* 11, 28 Blessed are they who hear the Word of God and keep it.  
*Mt* 18, 18 Whatsoever you shall bind upon earth, shall be bound also in Heaven : and what-
- soever you shall loose upon earth, shall be loosed also in Heaven.  
 He that heareth you heareth Me : and he that despiseth you despiseth Me.  
 It is not you that speak, but the Spirit of your Father that speaketh in you.  
 Some coming down from Judea [to Antioch] taught the brethren : that except you be circumcised after the manner of Moses you cannot be saved.—Then it pleased the Apostles and ancients with the whole Church to choose men of their own company, and to send them to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas. — Writing by their hands:—It hath seemed good to the Holy Ghost and to us, to lay no further burden upon you than these necessary things :—That you abstain from things strangled and from fornication.—And he [Paul] went through Syria and Cilicia, confirming the Churches, commanding them to keep the precepts of the Apostles and the ancients.  
 I have yet many things to say to you ; but you cannot bear them now.—But when He, the Spirit of Truth, is come, He will teach you all truth.
- Lu* 10, 16  
*Mt* 10, 20  
*Ac* 15, 1, 22-23, 28-29, 41  
*Jn* 16, 12-13  
*Ex* 17, 14

### 3.—THE WRITTEN WORD OF GOD ; ITS ORIGIN ; WHERE PRESERVED.

- Ex* 24, 12 The Lord said to Moses : Come up to Me into the Mount and be there ; and I will give thee tables of stone, and the law and the com-
- mandments which I have written : that thou mayst teach them.  
 The Lord said to Moses : Write this for a memorial in

K K

a Book, and deliver it to the ears of Josue.

*Ex 34, 27* The Lord said to Moses : Write thee these words, by which I have made a covenant, both with thee and with Israel.

*Dt 17, 18* Taking the copy of the Law from the Priests of the Levitical tribe, he [the king] shall have it with him, and shall read it all the days of his life, that he may learn to fear the Lord, and keep His words and ceremonies that are commanded in the Law.

*Dt 10, 1-5* At that time the Lord said to me : Hew the two tables of stone like the former, and come up to Me unto the Mount : and thou shalt make an Ark of wood.—And I will write on the tables the words that were in them, which thou brokest before, and thou shalt put them in the Ark.—And I made an Ark of setim-wood. And when I had hewn two tables of stone like the former, I went up into the Mount, having them in my hands.—And he wrote in the tables, according as he had written before, the ten words, which the Lord spoke to you in the Mount from the midst of the fire, when the people were assembled : and he gave them to me.—And returning from the Mount, I came down and put the tables into the Ark that I had made, and they are there till this present, as the Lord commanded me.

*Dt 9, 10-11* The Lord gave me two tables of stone written with the finger of God, and con-

taining all the words that He spoke to you in the Mount from the midst of the fire, when the people were assembled together. — And when forty days were passed, and as many nights, the Lord gave me the two tables of stone, the tables of the covenant.

You came to the foot of the Mount, which burned even unto Heaven, and there was darkness and a cloud and obscurity in it.—And the Lord spoke to you from the midst of the fire. You heard the voice of His words, but you saw not any form at all.—And He showed you His Covenant, which He commanded you to do, and the Ten Words that He wrote in two tables of stone.—And He commanded me at that time that I should teach you the ceremonies and judgments which you shall do in the land that you shall possess.

These words the Lord spoke to all the multitude of you in the mountain, out of the midst of the fire and the cloud, and the darkness, with a loud voice, adding nothing more : and He wrote them in two tables of stone, which He delivered unto me.

Moses returned from the Mount, carrying the two tables of the testimony in his hand, written on both sides.—And made by the work of God : the writing of God was also graven in the tables.—And when he came nigh to the camp he saw the calf and the dances : and being very angry, he threw

*Dt 4, 11-14*

*Dt 5, 22*

*Dt 32, 15-16, 19*

the tables out of his hand, and broke them at the foot of the Mount.

3 K, 8-9 In the Ark there was nothing else but the two tables of stone, which Moses put there at Horeb, when the Lord made a Covenant with the children of Israel, when they came out of the land of Egypt.

2 P 5, 10 There was nothing else in the Ark but the two tables which Moses put there at Horeb when the Lord gave the Law to the children of Israel at their coming out of Egypt.

Je 51, 60-61 Jeremias wrote in one Book all the evil that was to come upon Babylon: all these words that were written against Babylon.—And Jeremias said to Saraias: When thou shalt come into Babylon and shalt see and shalt read all these words, thou shalt say, &c.

Je 43, 1 The word that Jeremias the Prophet spoke to Baruch, the son of Nerias, when he had written these words in a Book, out of the mouth of Jeremias, in the fourth year of Joakim, the son of Josias, king of Juda, saying.

14 31, 9 Moses wrote this law, and delivered it to the Priests, the sons of Levi, who carried

the Ark of the Covenant of the Lord, and to all the ancients of Israel.

Go in, and write for them upon box, and write it diligently in a Book, and it shall be in the latter days for a testimony for ever.

After Moses had wrote the words of this law in a Volume, and finished it:—

He commanded the Levites, who carried the Ark of the Covenant of the Lord, saying:—Take this Book and put in the side of the Ark of the Covenant of the Lord your God, that it may be there for a testimony against thee.—For I know thy obstinacy and thy most stiff neck. While I am yet living, and going in with you, you have always been rebellious against the Lord: how much more when I shall be dead?

The Lord spoke to Moses, saying. [*These words occur ninety-three times in the Pentateuch.*]

The Word of the Lord came to me, saying. [*These words occur forty times in the Book of St. Jeremias.*]

The Word of the Lord came to me, saying. [*These words occur forty-six times in the Book of Ezechiel.*]

#### 4.—THE BOOKS OF HOLY SCRIPTURE.

##### The Old Testament.

###### I.—Legal Books

	Chap.
(1) GENESIS . . . .	50
(2) EXODUS . . . .	40
(3) LEVITICUS . . . .	27
(4) NUMBERS . . . .	36
(5) DEUTERONOMY . .	34

###### II.—Historical Books.

	Chap
(1) JOSUE . . . .	24
(2) JUDGES . . . .	21
(3) RUTH . . . .	4
(4) I. KINGS. . . .	31
(5) II. KINGS . . . .	24

	Chap.		Chap.
(6) III. KINGS . . . . .	22	(4) BARUCH . . . . .	6
(7) IV. KINGS . . . . .	25	(5) EZECHIEL . . . . .	48
(8) I. PARALIPOMENON . . . . .	29	(6) DANIEL . . . . .	14
(9) II. PARALIPOMENON . . . . .	36	(7) OSEE . . . . .	14
(10) I. ESDRAS . . . . .	10	(8) JOEL . . . . .	3
(11) II. ESDRAS . . . . .	13	(9) AMOS . . . . .	9
(12) TOBIAS . . . . .	14	(10) ABDIAS . . . . .	1
(13) JUDITH . . . . .	16	(11) JONAS . . . . .	4
(14) ESTHER . . . . .	16	(12) MICHEAS . . . . .	7
(15) JOB . . . . .	42	(13) NAHUM . . . . .	3
(16) I. MACHABEES . . . . .	16	(14) HABACUC . . . . .	3
(17) II. MACHABEES . . . . .	16	(15) SOPHONIAS . . . . .	3
		(16) AGGEUS . . . . .	2
		(17) ZACHARIAS . . . . .	14
		(18) MALACHIAS . . . . .	4

### III.—*Sapiential Books.*

	Ps.
(1) PSALMS . . . . .	150
	Chap.
(2) PROVERBS . . . . .	31
(3) ECCLESIASTES . . . . .	12
(4) CANTICLE OF CANTICLES . . . . .	8
(5) WISDOM . . . . .	19
(6) ECCLESIASTICUS . . . . .	51

### IV.—*Prophetical Books.*

(1) ISAIAH . . . . .	66
(2) JEREMIAS . . . . .	52
(3) LAMENTATIONS . . . . .	5

### *Lost Books.*

1. The Book of the J<sup>s</sup> 10, 13 Just.
2. The Book of the Nu 31, 14 Wars of the Lord.
3. Annals of the Kings 3 K 14, 19 of Israel.
4. Solomon's Parables. 3 K 4, 32
5. The Lamentations of 2 P 35, 25 Jeremias on the Death of Josias.

## The New Testament.

### I.—*Legal Books.*

	Chap.
(1) ST. MATTHEW . . . . .	28
(2) ST. MARK . . . . .	16
(3) ST. LUKE . . . . .	24

Judea  
Rome  
Greece

	Chap.
(4) ST. JOHN . . . . .	21 Asia Min.

### II.—*Historical Book.*

	Chap.
THE ACTS . . . . .	28 Greece

### *Apocryphal Books.*

(1) III. Esdras.	tians.
(2) IV. Esdras.	(12) The Gospels according to SS. Peter, Paul, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, Andrew, Philip, Thaddeus, Barnabas, and Nicodemus.
(3) III. Machabees.	(13) The Gospels of Basilides, Apelles, and Tatianus.
(4) IV. Machabees.	(14) The Acts of SS. Andrew, Philip, and Thomas.
(5) The Psalms of Adam and Eve.	(15) The Epistle of Jesus Christ to Abgar.
(6) The Book of the Generations of Adam.	(16) The Acts of St. Paul and St. Thecla.
(7) The Gospel of Eve.	(17) The Epistle of St. Barnabas.
(8) The Ascension and Assumption of Moses.	(18) The Book of Hermas, &c.
(9) The Minor Genesis.	
(10) The Testament of the Twelve Patriarchs.	
(11) The Gospel according to the Hebrews and the Egypt-	

III.—*Sapiential Books.*

	<i>Epistles of St. Paul.</i>	Chap.
Corinth	(1) ROMANS . . . . .	15
Ephesus	(2) I. CORINTHIANS . . . . .	16
Macedonia	(3) II. CORINTHIANS . . . . .	13
Macedonia	(4) GALATIANS . . . . .	6
Rome	(5) EPHESIANS . . . . .	6
	(6) PHILIPPIANS . . . . .	4
Rome	(7) COLOSSIANS . . . . .	4
Corinth	(8) I. THESSALONIANS . . . . .	5
Corinth	(9) II. THESSALONIANS . . . . .	3
Macedonia	(10) I. TIMOTHY . . . . .	6
Rome	(11) II. TIMOTHY . . . . .	4
Macedonia	(12) TITUS . . . . .	3

	Chap.
(13) PHILEMON . . . . .	1 Rome
(14) HEBREWS . . . . .	13 Rome

*Catholic or General Epistles.*

(15) ST. JAMES . . . . .	5 Jerusalem
(16) I. ST. PETER . . . . .	5 Rome
(17) II. ST. PETER . . . . .	3 Rome
(18) I. ST. JOHN . . . . .	6 Judea
(19) II. ST. JOHN . . . . .	1 Ephesus
(20) III. ST. JOHN . . . . .	1 Ephesus
(21) ST. JUDE . . . . .	1 Unknown

IV.—*Prophetical Books.*

APOCALYPSE . . . . .	22 Patmos
----------------------	-----------

## 5.—HOLY SCRIPTURES DIVINELY INSPIRED.

1 C 2, 3-5 I was with you in weakness, without ceasing: because  
 13 and in fear, and in much that when you had received  
 trembling:—And my speech of us the word of the hear-  
 and my preaching was not ing of God, you received it  
 in the persuasive words of not as the word of men,  
 human wisdom, but in the but (as it is indeed) the Word  
 showing of the Spirit and of God, Who worketh in you  
 power:—That your faith that have believed.

Of which salvation the Pt1, 10-12  
 Prophets have inquired and  
 diligently searched, who  
 prophesied of the grace to  
 come in you.—Searching  
 what or what manner of  
 time the Spirit of Christ in  
 them did signify: when it  
 foretold those sufferings that  
 are in Christ, and the glories  
 that should follow:—To  
 whom it was revealed, that  
 not to themselves, but to you  
 they ministered those things  
 which are now declared to  
 you by them that have  
 preached the Gospel to you,  
 the Holy Ghost being sent  
 down from Heaven, on whom  
 the Angels desire to look.

1 C 14, 36- Or did the word of God  
 37 come out from you? or came  
 it only unto you?—If any  
 seem to be a prophet, or  
 spiritual, let him know the  
 things that I write to you,  
 that they are the command-  
 ments of the Lord.

Gal 1, 11- I give you to understand,  
 12 brethren, that the Gospel  
 which was preached by me  
 is not according to man.—  
 For neither did I receive it  
 of man, nor did I learn it:  
 but by the revelation of  
 Jesus Christ.

1 T 2, 13 We give thanks to God

Thou camest down also to 2 E 9, 13-  
 Mount Sinai, and didst speak 14  
 with them from Heaven, and  
 Thou gavest them right judg-  
 ments, and the law of truth,

- ceremonies, and good precepts.—Thou madest known to them Thy holy Sabbath, and didst prescribe to them commandments, and ceremonies, and the law by the hand of Moses Thy servant.
- 2 K 23, 1-2** Now these are David's last words. David the son of Isai said: The man to whom it was appointed concerning the Christ of the God of Jacob, the excellent Psalmist of Israel said:—The Spirit of the Lord hath spoken by me and His word by my tongue.
- Nu 23, 19** God is not as man, that He should lie.
- Mt 21, 35** Heaven and earth shall pass away, but My words shall not pass.
- Ju 10, 35** The Scripture cannot be broken.
- Ba 4, 1** This is the Book of the Commandments of God and the law that is for ever: all they that keep it shall come to life, but they that have forsaken it to death.
- Pv 30, 5** Every word of God is fire-tried.
- 2 Pt 1, 21** Prophecy came not by the will of man at any time: but the holy men of God spoke, inspired by the Holy Ghost.
- 1 C 12, 8-10** To one indeed, by the Spirit, is given the word of wisdom: to another, the word of knowledge:—To another, interpretation of speeches.
- Ro 11, 34** Who hath known the Mind of the Lord? or who hath been His counsellor?
- Je 59, 21** This is My Covenant with them, saith the Lord: My Spirit that is in thee, and My words that I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth and for ever.
- They made their heart as the adamant stone, lest they should hear the law, and the words which the Lord of Hosts sent in His Spirit by the hand of the former Prophets.
- Do not think that I am come to destroy the law, or the Prophets. I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil.—For amen I say unto you, till heaven and earth pass, one jot, or one tittle shall not pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.
- The law and the Prophets were until John; from that time the Kingdom of God is preached, and every one useth violence towards it.—And it is easier for Heaven and earth to pass than one tittle of the law to fall.
- The Scriptures must needs be fulfilled which the Holy Ghost spoke before by the mouth of David.
- Well did the Holy Ghost speak to our Fathers by Isaia's the Prophet.
- Wherefore, as the Holy Ghost saith: To-day if you shall hear His Voice.
- The Holy Ghost signifying this, that the way into the Holies was not yet made manifest.
- The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto Him to make known to His servants the things which must shortly come to pass: and signified, sending by His Angel to His servant John.
- Za 7, 12**
- Mt 5, 17-18**
- Lk 16, 16-17**
- Ac 1, 16**
- Ac 28, 25**
- He 3, 7**
- He 9, 8**
- Ap 1, 1-2, 19**

—Who hath given testimony to the Word of God, and the testimony of Jesus Christ, what things soever he hath seen.—Write therefore the things which thou hast seen, and which are, and which must be done hereafter.

*Dt 29, 29* Secret things to the Lord

our God: things that are manifest, to us and to our children for ever, that we may do all the words of this law.

The Word of the Lord endureth for ever, and this is the Word which hath been preached unto you.

## 6.—THE CHURCH THE DIVINE INTERPRETER OF HOLY SCRIPTURE.

*Lt 17, 8* If thou perceive that there be among you a hard and doubtful matter in judgment between blood and blood, cause and cause, leprosy and leprosy: and that thou see that the words of the judges within thy gates do vary: arise, and go up to the place, which the Lord thy God shall choose.

*Mt 2, 4* Assembling together all the Chief Priests and the Scribes of the people, he inquired of them where Christ should be born.

*Mt 18, 17* If he will not hear the Church, let him be to thee as the heathen and publican.

*Ex 44, 24* When there shall be a controversy the priests shall stand in My judgments and shall judge.—They shall keep My law and My ordinances in all My solemnities and sanctify My Sabbaths.

*Dt 17, 10-12* Thou shalt do whatsoever they shall say, that preside in the place, which the Lord shall choose, and what they shall teach thee,—According to His Law: and thou shalt follow their sentence: neither shalt thou decline to the right hand nor to the left hand.—But he that will be proud, and refuse to obey the

commandment of the priest, who ministereth at that time to the Lord thy God, and the decree of the judge, that man shall die.

The Scribes and the Pharisees have sitten on the chair of Moses.—All things therefore whatsoever they shall say to you, observe and do: but according to their works do ye not: for they say and do not.

He that knoweth God, *1 Jn 4, 6* heareth us. He that is not of God, heareth us not. By this we know the Spirit of Truth, and the spirit of error.

Then He opened their understanding that they might understand the Scriptures. *Lu 24, 45*

I saw in the right Hand of Him that sat on the Throne a Book written within and without, sealed with seven seals. *Ap 5, 1*

Wo to you lawyers, for you have taken away the key of knowledge: you yourselves have not entered in, and those that were entering in you have hindered. *Lu 11, 52*

Beginning at Moses and all the Prophets, He expounded to them in all the Scriptures *Lu 24, 27*

- the things that were concerning Him.
- Ac* 8, 26-32, 34-35 An Angel of the Lord spoke to Philip, saying: Arise, go towards the south.—And rising up he went. And behold a man of Ethiopia, an eunuch, had come to Jerusalem to adore.—And he was returning sitting in his chariot, and reading *Isaia*s the Prophet.—And the Spirit said to Philip: Go near and join thyself to this chariot.—And Philip, running thither, heard him reading the Prophet *Isaia*s, and he said: Thinkest thou that thou understandest what thou readeest?—Who said: And how can I unless some man show me? And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him.—And the place of the Scripture which he was reading was this: He was led like a sheep to the slaughter.—And the eunuch said: I beseech thee of whom doth the Prophet speak this?—Then Philip, opening his mouth and beginning at this Scripture, preached unto him Jesus.
- I charge thee before God *2Ti* 4, 1-2, and Jesus Christ, Who shall judge the living and the dead, by His coming and His Kingdom: — Preach the Word: be instant in season, out of season: reprove, entreat, rebuke in all patience and doctrine.—Do the work of an evangelist.

**7.—THE HOLY SCRIPTURE THE TEXT-BOOK OF PRIESTS. TO BE READ TO THE PEOPLE. ITS READING AND MEDITATION ENCOURAGED.**

- 2Ti* 3, 16-17 All Scripture, inspired of God, is profitable to teach, to reprove, to correct, to instruct in justice.—That the man of God may be perfect furnished to every good work.
- Is* 34, 16 Search ye diligently in the Book of the Lord and read.
- 2Pt* 17, 9 They taught the people in *Juda*, having with them the Book of the Law of the Lord.
- 4K* 23, 2 He read all the words of the Book of the Covenant.
- Lu* 16, 29 They have *Moses* and the Prophets, let them hear them.
- Jn* 8, 47 He that is of God, heareth the Words of God.
- Lu* 11, 28 Blessed are they who hear the Word of God, and keep it.
- Ro* 2, 13 Not the hearers of the law are just before God: but the doers of the law shall be justified.
- It had been better for them not to have known the way of justice, than after they have known it, to turn back from that holy commandment which was delivered to them.—For, that of the true proverb has happened to them. The dog is returned to his vomit: and, the sow that was washed to her wallowing in the mire.
- Be ye doers of the Word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.—For if a man be a hearer of the Word and not a doer: he shall be compared to a man beholding his own countenance in a glass.—For he be-



held himself, and went his way and presently forgot what manner of man he was.

*Ha 2, 2* The Lord answered me, and said : Write the vision, and make it plain upon tables : that he that readeth it may run over it.

*Dt 6, 6-9* These words which I command thee this day, shall be in thy heart :—And thou shalt tell them to thy children, and thou shalt meditate upon them sitting in thy house, and walking on thy journey, sleeping, and rising.—And thou shalt bind them as a sign on thy hand, and they shall be and shall move between thy eyes.—And thou shalt write them in the entry, and on the doors of thy house.

*Dt 30, 11-14* This commandment, that I command thee this day is not above thee, nor far off from thee :—Nor is it in Heaven that thou shouldst say : Which of us can go up to Heaven to bring it unto us, and we may hear and fulfil it in work ?—Nor is it beyond the sea : that thou mayst excuse thyself, and say : Which of us can cross the sea, and bring it unto us : that we may hear, and do that which is commanded ?—But the Word is very nigh unto thee, in thy mouth and in thy heart, that thou mayst do it.

*Dt 17, 18-19* After he is raised to the throne of his kingdom, he shall copy out to himself the Deuteronomy of this law in a volume, taking the copy of the Priests of the Levitical tribe.—And he shall have it

with him, and shall read it all the days of his life, that he may learn to fear the Lord his God, and keep his words and ceremonies, that are commanded in the law.

He said to me : Son of man, eat all that thou shalt find : eat this Book, and go speak to the children of Israel.—And I opened my mouth, and he caused me to eat that Book :—And he said to me : Son of man, thy belly shall eat, and thy bowels shall be filled with this Book, which I give thee. And I did eat it : and it was sweet as honey in my mouth.—And he said to me : Son of man, go to the House of Israel, and thou shalt speak My words to them.—For thou art not sent to a people, of a profound speech, and of an unknown tongue, *but* to the House of Israel :

When all Israel come together, to appear in the sight of the Lord thy God in the place which the Lord shall choose, thou shalt read the words of this law before all Israel, in their hearing.—And the people being all assembled together, both men and women, children and strangers, that are within thy gates : that hearing they may learn, and fear the Lord your God, and keep, and fulfil all the words of this law :—That their children also, who now are ignorant, may hear and fear the Lord their God, all the days that they live in the land whither you are going over the Jordan to possess it :—Now therefore write you this

*Ex 3, 1-6*

*Dt 31, 11-13, 19, 21*

- canticle, and teach the children of Israel: that they may know it by heart, and sing it by mouth, and this song may be unto Me for a testimony among the children of Israel.—And after many evils and afflictions shall have come upon them, this canticle shall answer them for a testimony, which no oblivion shall take away out of the mouth of their seed. For I know their thoughts and what they are about to do this day, before that I bring them into the land which I have promised them.
- Js 1, 7-8* Take courage, and be very valiant that thou mayst observe and do all the law, which Moses My servant hath commanded thee; turn not from it to the right hand or to the left, that thou mayst understand all things which thou dost.—Let not the Book of this law depart from thy mouth: but thou shalt meditate on it day and night, that thou mayst observe and do all things that are written in it: then thou shalt direct thy way, and understand it.
- Pv 6, 21-23* Bind them in thy heart continually, and put them about thy neck.—When thou walkest, let them go with thee: when thou sleepest, let them keep thee, and when thou awakest talk with them.—Because the commandment is a lamp, and the law a light, and reproofs of instruction are the way of life.
- Dt 31, 30* Moses spoke, in the hearing of the whole assembly of Israel, the words of this canticle, and finished it even to the end.
- Set your hearts on all the words which I testify to you this day: which you shall command your children to observe and to do, and to fulfil all that is written in the law.—For they are not commanded you in vain, but that every one should live in them.
- Come hither and hear the word of the Lord your God.
- Remember for ever His Covenant: the word which He commanded to a thousand generations.
- Receive the law of His Mouth, and lay up His words in thy heart.
- Go thou in, and read out of the Volume which thou hast written from My mouth, the words of the Lord in the hearing of all the people in the House of the Lord on the fasting day.
- I charge you by the Lord that this Epistle be read to all the holy brethren.
- Blessed is he, that readeth and heareth the words of this Prophecy: and keepeth those things which are written in it. For the time is at hand.
- He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith to the Churches.
- Behold the sower went forth to sow.
- Behold the sower went out to sow.
- The sower went out to sow his seed.
- I heard a voice from Heaven again speaking to me, saying: Go, and take the Book that is open, from
- Dt 32, 45-47*
- Js 3, 9*
- P 16, 15*
- Jb 22, 22*
- Js 36, 6*
- 1 T 5, 27*
- Ap 1, 3*
- Ap 2, 29*
- Mt 13, 3*
- Mk 4, 3*
- Lk 8, 5*
- Ap 10, 8-10*

the hand of the Angel who standeth upon the sea, and upon the earth.—And I went to the Angel, saying unto him, that he should give me the Book. And he said to me : Take the Book and eat it up : and it shall make thy belly bitter, but in thy mouth it shall be sweet as honey.—And I took the Book from the hand of the Angel, and ate it up : and it was in my mouth sweet as honey : and when I had eaten it my belly was bitter.

Thou, O son of man, hear all that I say to thee : and do thou not provoke Me, as that house provoketh Me : open thy mouth and eat what I give thee.—And I looked, and behold, a hand was sent to me wherein was a Book rolled up : and he spread it before me, and it was written within and without : and there were written in it lamentations, and canticles, and wo.

Take the Book and eat it up. *Ez 2, 8-9* *Ap 10, 9*

8.—HOLY SCRIPTURE TO BE STUDIED WITH  
HUMILITY, FAITH, LOVE, AND PRAYER.  
CERTAIN TEXTS HARD TO BE UNDERSTOOD.

2 Pt 3, 16 Our most dear brother Paul, according to the wisdom given him, hath written to you :—As also in all his Epistles, speaking in them of these things, in which are certain things hard to be understood, which the unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also other Scriptures, to their own destruction.

If you will not believe, you shall not continue. *Is 7, 9*

If any man will do the will of Him, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself. *Jn 7, 17*

To you it is given to know the mystery of the Kingdom of God : but to the rest in parables, that seeing they may not see, and hearing

Versions of the Bible in the vernacular tongue, which are approved of by the Apostolic See, or published with notes drawn from the Holy Fathers of the Church, or from learned Catholic men, are permitted.—*Decree of Benedict XIV., 1757.*

“At a time when a vast number of bad books, which grossly attack the Catholic religion, are circulated even among the unlearned, to the great destruction of souls, you judge exceedingly well that the faithful should be excited to the reading of the Holy Scriptures ; for these are the most abundant sources which ought to be left open to every one to draw from them purity of morals and of doctrine, and to eradicate the errors which are so widely spread in these corrupt times. This you have seasonably effected by publishing the Sacred Writings in the language of your country suitably to every one’s capacity.”—*Brief from Pius VI. to Martiné, Archbishop of Florence.*

“If the Bible be Catholic, and contain explanatory notes, everything has been done which the Church prescribes, and every person, as far as the Church is concerned, is at liberty to read modern and vernacular translations.”—*Father Waterworth.*

- may not understand.
- P<sup>s</sup> 118, 66,* Teach me goodness, and  
*104* discipline, and knowledge,  
 O Lord; for I have believed  
 Thy commandments.—By  
 Thy commandments I have  
 had understanding: there-  
 fore have I hated every way  
 of iniquity.
- Da 12, 10* The wicked shall deal  
 wickedly, and none of the  
 wicked shall understand, but  
 the learned shall understand.
- 2 C<sup>4</sup>, 3-4* If our Gospel be also hid,  
 it is hid to them that are lost.  
 —In whom the God of this  
 world hath blinded the minds  
 of unbelievers, that the light  
 of the Gospel of the glory of  
 Christ, Who is the Image of  
 God, should not shine unto  
 them.
- J<sup>s</sup> 1, 8* Let not the Book of the  
 Law depart from thy mouth,  
 but thou shalt meditate  
 upon it day and night that  
 thou mayst observe, and do  
 all things that are written in  
 it: then shalt thou direct  
 thy way and understand it.
- Ecc<sup>i</sup> 32, 19* He that seeketh the Law  
 shall be filled with it, and  
 he that dealeth deceitfully  
 shall meet with a stumbling-  
 block therein.
- Ecc<sup>i</sup> 5, 13* Be meek to hear the Word  
 that thou mayst understand  
 and return a true answer  
 with wisdom.
- 2 C<sup>3</sup>, 6* The letter killeth: but the  
 spirit quickeneth.
- J<sup>n</sup> 5, 39* Search the Scriptures, for  
 you think in them to have  
 Life Everlasting, and the  
 same are they that give tes-  
 timony of Me.
- D<sup>t</sup> 4, 1* Now, O Israel, hear the  
 commandments and judg-  
 ments which I teach thee:  
 that doing them, thou mayst
- live, and entering in mayst  
 possess the land which the  
 Lord the God of your fathers  
 will give you.
- My son, hearken to my *P<sup>s</sup> 4, 20-22*  
 words, and incline thy ear to  
 my sayings.—Let them not  
 depart from thy eyes, keep  
 them in the midst of thy  
 heart.—For they are life to  
 those that find them, and  
 health to all flesh.
- Moses called all Israel, and *D<sup>t</sup> 5, 1*  
 said to them: Hear, O Israel,  
 the ceremonies and judg-  
 ments which I speak in your  
 ears t is day: learn them,  
 and fulfil them in work.
- These are the precepts, *D<sup>t</sup> 6, 1-3*  
 and ceremonies, and judg-  
 ments, which the Lord your  
 God commanded that I  
 should teach you, and that  
 you should do them in the  
 land into which you pass  
 over to possess it.—That  
 thou mayst fear the Lord thy  
 God, and keep all His com-  
 mandments and precepts,  
 which I command thee, and  
 thy sons, and thy grand-  
 sons, all the days of thy  
 life, that thy days may be  
 prolonged.—Hear, O Israel,  
 and observe to do the things  
 which the Lord hath com-  
 manded thee, that it may be  
 well with thee, and thou  
 mayst be greatly multiplied,  
 as the Lord the God of thy  
 fathers hath promised thee a  
 land flowing with milk and  
 honey.
- I have not departed from *J<sup>b</sup> 23, 12*  
 the commandments of His  
 lips, and the words of His  
 mouth I have hid in my  
 bosom.
- I meditated also on Thy *P<sup>s</sup> 118, 47-*  
 commandments, which I 49

loved.—And I lifted up my hands to Thy commandments, which I loved : and I was exercised in Thy justification.—Be thou mindful of Thy word to Thy servant, in which Thou hast given me hope.

*Lvs*, 31-33 Stand thou here with Me and I will speak to thee all My commandments, and ceremonies, and judgments: which thou shalt teach them, that they may do them in the land which I will give them for a possession.—Keep, therefore, and do the things which the Lord God hath commanded you. You shall not go aside, neither to the right hand nor to the left.—But you shall walk in the way that the Lord your God hath commanded, that you

may live, and it may be well with you, and your days may be long in the land of your possession.

Examples of the lovers of the Word of God :

- |                                       |                   |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| (1) Our Blessed Lord.                 | <i>Jn</i> 4, 34   |
| (2) Jeremias.                         | <i>Je</i> 15, 16  |
| (3) Esdras.                           | <i>1 E</i> 7, 10  |
| (4) Gamarias, Elnathan, and Balaias.  | <i>Je</i> 36, 25  |
| (5) Timothy.                          | <i>2 Ti</i> 3, 15 |
| (6) Eunuch.                           | <i>Ac</i> 8, 28   |
| (7) Cornelius.                        | <i>Ac</i> 10, 33  |
| (8) Apollo, mighty in the Scriptures. | <i>Ac</i> 18, 24  |
| (9) The children of Israel.           | <i>2 E</i> 8, 1   |
| (10) Ephesians.                       | <i>Ac</i> 19, 20  |
| (11) Antiochians.                     | <i>Ac</i> 13, 42  |
| (12) Athenians.                       | <i>Ac</i> 17, 34  |
| (13) Bereans.                         | <i>Ac</i> 17, 4   |
| (14) Philippians.                     | <i>Ph</i> 1, 5    |
| (15) Jews.                            | <i>Ma</i> 12, 37  |

### 9.—EXCELLENCE, ADVANTAGES, AND FRUITS OF HOLY SCRIPTURE.

- 2 Pt* 1, 19 We have the more firm Prophetical Word: whereunto you do well to attend, as to a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day-star arise in your hearts.
- 10*, 4-5 The weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty to God, unto the pulling down of fortifications, destroying counsels.—And every height that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every understanding unto the obedience of Christ.
- Jn* 20, 31 These are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ the Son of God : and believing you may have life in His Name.
- Thy Words were found, and I did eat them, and Thy Word was to me a joy and gladness of my heart.
- My little children, these things I write to you that you may not sin.
- Thy Words have I hidden in my heart that I may not sin against Thee.
- Thy Word is a lamp to my feet, and a light to my paths.
- I will rejoice at Thy Words as one that hath found great spoil.
- The declaration of Thy Words giveth light ; and giveth understanding to little ones.
- Eat honey, my son, because it is good, and the honey-

comb most sweet to thy throat.—So is the doctrine of wisdom to thy soul.

*Ps* 118, 103 How sweet are Thy words to my palate, more than honey to my mouth.

*Ro* 15, 4 What things soever were written, were written for our learning, that through patience and the comfort of the Scriptures we may have hope.

*1 Ma* 12, 9 We, though we needed none of these things, having for our comfort the Holy Books that are in our hands, chose rather to send to you to renew the Brotherhood and friendship, lest we should become strangers to you altogether.

*Dt* 4, 6 This is your wisdom and understanding in the sight of nations, that hearing all these precepts they may say: Behold, a wise and understanding people, a great nation.

*2 Ti* 3, 15-16 Continue thou in those things which thou hast learned, and which have been committed to thee: knowing of whom thou hast learned them.—And because from thy infancy thou hast known the Holy Scriptures, which can instruct thee to salvation through the faith which is in Christ Jesus.—All Scripture inspired of God is profitable to teach, to reprove, to correct, to instruct in justice.—That the man of God may be perfect, furnished to every good work.

*Ps* 11, The words of the Lord are pure words: as silver tried by the fire, purged from the earth, refined seven times.

*Mt* 7, 24-25 Every one that heareth

these My words, and doth them, shall be likened to a wise man that built his house upon a rock.—And the rain fell, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and they beat upon that house, and it fell not, for it was founded on a rock.

These things we write to you that you may rejoice, and your joy may be full.

These things I write to you that you may know that you have Eternal Life, you who believe in the Name of the Son of God.

These words are most faithful and true.

Jesus said to those Jews who believed Him: If you continue in My Word, you shall be My disciples indeed.—And you shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.

Hear, O ye Heavens, the things I speak, let the earth give ear to the words of My mouth.—Let My doctrine gather as the rain, let My speech distil as the dew, as a shower upon the herb, and as drops upon the grass.

The parables of Solomon:—To know wisdom and instruction:—To understand the words of prudence: and to receive the instruction of doctrine, justice, and judgment, and equity.—To give subtilty to little ones, to the young man knowledge and understanding.

The law of the Lord is unspotted, converting souls: the Testimony of the Lord is faithful, giving wisdom to little ones.—The justices of

the Lord are right, rejoicing hearts: the commandment of the Lord is lightsome, enlightening the eyes—More to be desired than gold and many precious stones: and sweeter than honey and the honey-comb.—For thy servant keepeth them, and in keeping them there is a great reward.

Behold, this second Epistle 2 Pt 3, 1-2 I write to you, my dearly beloved, in which I stir up by way of admonition your sincere mind.—That you may be mindful of those words which I told you before from the holy Prophets, and of your Apostles, of the precepts of the Lord and Saviour.

*Ju* 3

Dearly beloved, taking all care to write unto you concerning your common salvation, I was under a necessity to write unto you: to beseech you to contend earnestly for the Faith once delivered to the Saints.

*Names and Emblems of Holy Scripture.*

*Ac* 20, 32

I commend you to God, and to the Word of His grace, Who is able to build up, and to give an inheritance among all the sanctified.

*Pv* 6, 23

The Law is a light.

*Pv* 22, 17-21

Incline thy ear, and hear the words of the wise: and apply thy heart to My doctrine:—Which shall be beautiful for thee if thou keep it in thy bowels, and it shall flow in thy lips:—That thy trust may be in the Lord, wherefore I have also shown it to thee this day.—Behold, I have described it to thee three manner of ways, in thoughts and knowledge.—That I might show thee the certainty, and the words of truth, to answer out of these to them that sent thee.

*Ac* 15, 30-31

They being dismissed went down to Antioch: and gathering together the multitude, delivered the Epistle:—Which when they had read, they rejoiced for the consolation.

1. The Book or Bible. *He* 10, 7  
*βιβλος*.

2. The Holy Books. *1 M* 12, 9

3. The Book of Life. *Ap* 20, 12

4. The Book of the Lord.

5. The Book written within and without. *Ap* 5, 1

6. The Sacerdotal Book. *1 Ti* 4, 13

7. The Holy Scriptures. *Ro* 1, 2

8. Scriptures. *Mt* 22, 29

9. The Scriptures of the Prophets. *Mt* 26, 56

10. Scripture. *Ro* 4, 3

11. Writings. *Jn* 5, 47

12. The Flying Volume. *Za* 5, 1

13. The Word of God. *Ep* 6, 17

14. The Word of Truth. *2 Ti* 2, 15

15. The Words of God. *Ro* 3, 2

16. The Words of Life. *Ac* 7, 38

17. The Prophetical Word. *1 Pt* 1, 19

18. The Law. *Ro* 13, 8

19. The Law of Moses and the Prophets. *Ac* 6, 16

20. The Law and the Prophets. *Mt* 22, 40

21. The Prophets and the Law. *Mt* 11, 13

22. The Testimony. *4 K* 11, 12

23. The Testimony of the Lord. *Ps* 18, 8

24. The Old Testament. *2 C* 3, 14

25. The New Testament. *He* 12, 24

26. The Will of God. *Mt* 7, 21

27. The Lantern shining in a dark place. *2 Pt* 1, 19

<i>Ex</i> 8, 19	28. The Finger of God.	49. A Land of Brooks and Fountains.	<i>Dt</i> 8, 7
<i>Ep</i> 6, 16	29. The Rule of Life.	50. A Land of Wheat and Vineyards.	<i>Dt</i> 8, 8
<i>Ex</i> 25, 20	30. The Oracle.	51. The Tree of Life.	<i>Ex</i> 47, 12
<i>W</i> 6, 23	31. The Light of Wisdom.	52. The Sword of the Spirit.	<i>Ep</i> 6, 17
<i>Pv</i> 9, 5	32. The Bread of God.	53. The Golden Sword.	<i>2 M</i> 15, 16
<i>Ap</i> 2, 17	33. The Hidden Manna.	54. The Golden Chain.	<i>Ca</i> 1, 10
<i>Ap</i> 6, 6	34. The Two Pounds of Wheat.	55. The Treasure.	<i>Pv</i> 21, 20
<i>Ca</i> 4, 11	35. The Honeycomb.	56. An Infinite Treasure to Men.	<i>W</i> 7, 14
<i>He</i> 9, 4	36. The Golden Pot.	57. Inexhaustible Riches.	<i>W</i> 8, 18
<i>Pv</i> 9, 2	37. The Table of the Soul.	58. Unspotted Mirror.	<i>W</i> 7, 28
<i>Ca</i> 4, 4	38. The Divine Armory.	59. A Comfort in cares and grief.	<i>W</i> 8, 9
<i>Ez</i> 47, 12	39. Holy Waters of the Sanctuary.	60. A Company without tediousness.	<i>W</i> 8, 16
<i>Ps</i> 35, 10	40. The Fountain of Life.	61. The Ark of the Testament.	<i>2 K</i> 6, 2
<i>Ja</i> 3, 11	41. The Fountain sending forth sweet waters.	62. The Sea of Glass.	<i>Ap</i> 4, 6
<i>Ge</i> 7, 11	42. The Fountains of the Great Deep.	63. Shield against Temptation.	<i>Ep</i> 6, 16
<i>Jn</i> 7, 38	43. Rivers of Living Waters.	64. Hollow Places of the Wall.	<i>Ca</i> 2, 14
<i>Jn</i> 4, 6	44. Jacob's Well.	65. Mercury (God's Messenger).	<i>Pv</i> 26, 8
<i>Ca</i> 4, 15	45. The Well of Living Waters.	66. A Measuring Reed.	<i>Ez</i> 40, 3
<i>Ca</i> 4, 15	46. The Fountain of Gardens.	67. A Hammer breaking the Rocks in pieces.	<i>Je</i> 23, 29
<i>Pv</i> 5, 15	47. The Cistern.	68. Samgar's Plough-share.	<i>Jg</i> 3, 31
<i>Ge</i> 2, 8	48. A Paradise of Pleasure.		

# 10.—DENIAL, ALTERATION, MISINTERPRETATION, OF HOLY SCRIPTURE. PENALTIES.

<i>2 C</i> 4, 34	The God of this world hath blinded the minds of unbelievers, that the light of the Gospel of the glory of Christ, Who is the Image of God, should not shine unto them.	a derision all the day.
<i>Os</i> 8, 12	I shall write to him my manifold laws which have been accounted as foreign.	Understanding this first, <i>2 Pt</i> 1, 20—that no prophecy of Scripture is made by private interpretation.—For prophecy came not by the will of man at any time: but the holy men of God spoke, inspired by the Holy Ghost.
<i>Ps</i> 118, 115	They that persecute me have drawn nigh to iniquity: but they are gone far off from Thy Law.	You shall not add to the word that I speak to you, neither shall you take away from it: keep the commandments of the Lord your God which I command you.
<i>Je</i> 20, 8	The Word of the Lord is made a reproach to me, and	



- Dt* 42, 2     What I command thee, that only do thou to the Lord: neither add anything nor diminish.
- Je* 8, 8-9     How do you say: We are wise, and the law of the Lord is with us? Indeed the lying pen of the Scribes hath wrought falsehood. — The wise men are confounded, they are dismayed and taken: for they have cast away the Word of the Lord, and there is no wisdom in them.
- Pt* 30, 6     Add not anything to His words, lest thou be reproved and found a liar.
- Je* 36, 11-13     When Micheas the son of Gamarias the son of Saphan had heard out of the book all the words of the Lord, — He went down into the king's house to the secretary's chamber; and behold all the princes sat there, Elisama the scribe, and Dalaïas the son of Semeias, and Elnathan the son of Achobor, and Gamarias the son of Saphan, and Sedecias the son of Hananias, and all the princes. — And Micheas told them all the words that he had heard when Baruch read out of the volume in the hearing of the people.
- Je* 36, 16     And when they had heard all the words, they looked upon one another with astonishment, and they said to Baruch: We must tell the king all these words.
- Je* 36, 20     And they went in to the king into the court: but they laid up the Volume in the chamber of Elisama the scribe: and they told all the words in the hearing of the king.
- And when Judi had read *Je* 36, 23, three or four pages, he cut it with the penknife, and he cast it into the fire, that was upon the hearth, till all the volume was consumed with the fire that was on the hearth. — But yet Elnathan, and Dalaïas, and Gamarias spoke to the king, not to burn the Book: and he heard them not.
- The Word of the Lord *Je* 28, 13 shall be to them: Command, command again, command, command again: expect, expect again; expect, expect again: a little there, a little there: that they may go, and fall backward, and be broken, and snared, and taken.
- Account the long-suffering *2 Pt* 3, 15-16 of our Lord, salvation, as also of our most dear brother Paul, according to the wisdom given him, hath written to you: — As also in all his Epistles, speaking in them of these things: in which are certain things hard to be understood, which the unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other Scriptures, to their own destruction.
- If this people, or the *Je* 23, 33-34 Prophet, or the Priest shall ask thee, saying: What is the burden of the Lord? thou shalt say to them: You are the burden: for I will cast you away, saith the Lord. — And as for the Prophet, and the Priest, and the people that shall say: The burden of the Lord: I will visit upon that man, and upon his house. — Thus shall you say every one to his

L L

neighbour, and to his brother: What hath the Lord answered? and what hath the Lord spoken?—And the burden of the Lord shall be mentioned no more, for every man's word shall be his burden: for you have perverted the words of the Living God, of the Lord of Hosts our God.—Thus shalt thou say to the Prophet: What hath the Lord answered thee? and what hath the Lord spoken?—But if you shall say: The burden of the Lord: therefore thus saith the Lord: Because you have said this word: The burden of the Lord: and I have sent to you, saying: Say not, The burden of the Lord:—Therefore behold I will take you away carrying you, and will forsake you, and the city which I gave to you, and to your fathers, out of My Presence.—And I will bring an everlasting reproach upon you, and a perpetual shame which shall never be forgotten.

*Je* 38, 29-31

Thou shalt say to Joakim the king of Juda: Thus saith the Lord: Thou hast burnt that volume, saying: Why hast thou written therein, and said: The king of Babylon shall come speedily, and shall lay waste this land: and shall cause to cease from thence man and beast?—Therefore thus saith the Lord against Joakim the king of Juda: He shall have none to sit upon the throne of David: and his dead body shall be cast out to the heat by day, and to the frost by night.—And I will punish him and

his seed and his servants for their iniquities: and I will bring upon them, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and upon the men of Juda all the evil that I have pronounced against them, but they have not heard.

I testify to every one that *Ap* 22, 18-19  
heareth the words of the prophecy of this Book: If

any man shall add to these things, God shall add unto him the plagues written in this Book.—And if any man shall take away from the words of the Book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the Book of Life, and out of the Holy City, and from these things that are written in this Book.

Do ye not therefore err, *Mk* 12, 24  
because you know not the Scriptures, nor the power of God.

Every one that heareth *Mt* 7, 26-27  
these My words, and doth them not, shall be like a foolish man that built his house upon the sand,—And the rain fell, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and they beat upon that house, and it fell, and great was the fall thereof.

As the tongue of the fire *Is* 5, 24-25  
devoureth the stubble, and the heat of the flame consumeth it: so shall their root be as ashes, and their bud shall go up as dust: for they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and have blasphemed the Word of the Holy One of Israel.—Therefore is the wrath of the Lord kindled against His people, and He hath stretched out His Hand upon them, and

struck them : For all this His anger is not turned away, but His Hand is stretched out still.

*Is* 30, 9-11 It is a people that provoketh to wrath, and lying children, children that will not hear the law of God.—Who say to the seers : See not : and to them that behold : Behold not for us those things that are right : speak unto us pleasant things, see errors for us.—Take away from me the way, turn away the path from me, let the Holy One of Israel cease from before us.

*2 Ti* 4, 3-4 There shall be a time, when they will not endure sound doctrine : but according to their own desires they will heap to themselves

teachers, having itching ears, —And will indeed turn away their hearing from the truth, but will be turned unto fables.

To whom shall I speak ? and to whom shall I testify, that he may hear ? Behold, their ears are uncircumcised, and they cannot hear : behold the Word of the Lord is become unto them a reproach : and they will not receive it.

Examples of Unbelievers in God's Word :

- |                                   |                   |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| (1) Joakim.                       | <i>Je</i> 36, 23  |
| (2) Amasias.                      | <i>Am</i> 7, 12   |
| (3) Jews.                         | <i>Ac</i> 13, 45  |
| (4) Alexander.                    | <i>2 Ti</i> 4, 15 |
| (5) Some of our Lord's Disciples. | <i>Jn</i> 6, 67   |

# 11.—THE SOUL'S ENTREATIES FOR LIGHT TO UNDERSTAND AND OBEY THE HOLY SCRIPTURES.

*Ps* 118, 18 Open Thou my eyes, and I will consider the wondrous things of Thy law.

*Ps* 118, 19 I am a sojourner on the earth : hide not Thy commandments from me.

*Ps* 118, 125 I am Thy servant : give me understanding that I may know Thy testimonies.

*Ps* 118, 144 Thy testimonies are justice

for ever : give me understanding, and I shall live.

Give me understanding, *Ps* 118, 34 and I will search Thy law : and I will keep it with my whole heart.

Direct my steps according *Ps* 118, 133 to Thy Word, and let no iniquity have dominion over me.

## Books rejected by the so-called reformers :

- |                   |           |           |                  |          |           |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------|------------------|----------|-----------|
| 1. Tobias         | chaps. 14 | vers. 297 | 5. Baruch        | chaps. 6 | vers. 213 |
| 2. Judith         | " 16      | " 347     | 6. I. Machabees  | " 16     | " 929     |
| 3. Wisdom         | " 49      | " 439     | 7. II. Machabees | " 15     | " 558     |
| 4. Ecclesiasticus | " 51      | " 1552    |                  |          |           |

## Books mutilated by them :

1. Daniel, *i.e.*

- A. The Prayer of Azarias.
- B. The Canticle of the Three Children.
- C. The History of Susanna.

D. The History of Bel and the Dragon.

- 2. Esther. The last seven chapters. From chapter 10 (verse 4) to chapter 16 (to verse 24).

Ps 118, 73 Thy hands have made me and formed me: give me understanding, and I will learn Thy commandments. Ps 118, 135 Make Thy face to shine	upon Thy servant: and teach me Thy justifications. Give bountifully to Thy servant; enliven me, and I shall keep Thy Words.	Ps 118, 17
---	---	------------

## PART II.

### ON THE CHURCH.

THE Church, in its widest sense, may be defined "The Faithful united, under the Headship of Christ, in the true worship of God." Considered more in detail, the Church is either militant on earth, suffering in Purgatory, or triumphant in Heaven. The Church militant consists of body and soul. The body of the Church is identical with the Church considered as an external visible society, or, in other words, is the external union of the Faithful with their Head by bonds which are visible. These bonds are the profession of the same Faith, the participation of the same Sacraments, and subjection to the Holy See, the Vicar and visible Representative of Christ on earth. The soul of the Church is the internal union of the Faithful with their Head by bonds which are invisible. These bonds are Faith, Hope, Charity, the virtues and the gifts of the Holy Spirit by means of which the members of the Church participate in the life of their Head. Many are saved who, without fault of theirs, have never belonged to the body of the Church. Nevertheless the visible Church is the Divinely appointed organisation for saving the souls of men. It ought, then, to be clearly recognisable; and it is made so by four notes—Unity, Sanctity, Catholicity, Apostolicity. These four notes are visible properties or characteristics of the true Church. Where these four notes are found, *there* is the Church of Christ; without them, there is no true Church of Christ.

The Church militant, the Church suffering, and the Church triumphant are in communion with each other, for they are all parts of one family, one kingdom, one body of Christ, one Church, the various members of which are united with Christ as members with their Head, and are united with each other by the bonds of Charity, which are "stronger than death." We honour the Blessed in Heaven, and they intercede for us before God. What our brethren in Heaven do for us we do for our brethren in Purgatory, and we add to our prayers of intercession works of satisfaction.

**1.—CHRIST THE BUILDER, THE INVISIBLE  
HEAD OF THE CHURCH, AND THE INVISIBLE  
ROCK ON WHICH THE CHURCH IS BUILT.**

1 C 3, 9	You are God's building.	Is not this the carpenter's Son?	<i>Mt 13, 55</i>
1 C 3, 11	Other foundation no man can lay but that which is laid, which is Christ Jesus.	Wisdom hath built herself a House.	<i>W 9, 1</i>
<i>Ps 88, 1</i>	The foundations thereof are in the Holy Mountains.	As clay is in the hands of the potter, so are you in My hands, O house of Israel.	<i>Je 18, 6</i>
<i>Is 45, 13</i>	He shall build My City.	I am the Beginning and the End.	<i>Ap 1, 8</i>
<i>Ps 117, 22</i>	The Stone which the builders rejected the same is become the Head of the Corner.	[The flood] could not shake it, for it was founded on a Rock.	<i>Lu 6, 49</i>
<i>Lu 6, 48</i>	He laid the foundation upon a Rock.	A Son is given to us, and the government is upon His shoulders.	<i>Is 9, 6</i>
1 C 10, 4	They drank of the Spiritual Rock that followed them, and the Rock was Christ.	Behold, I do new things.	<i>Is 43, 19</i>
<i>Ps 77, 69</i>	He built His Sanctuary as of the unicorns [firm and strong].	O poor little one, tossed with tempest, without all comfort, behold I will lay thy stones in order, and will lay thy foundations with sapphires.—And I will make thy bulwarks of jasper: and thy gates of graven stones, and all thy borders of desirable stones.	<i>Is 54, 11-12</i>
<i>Jn 15, 5</i>	I am the Vine, you the branches.	Mountains are about Jerusalem, so the Lord is round about His people, from hence-	<i>Ps 124, 2</i>
<i>s 14, 32</i>	What shall be answered to the messengers of the nations? That the Lord hath founded Zion.		
<i>Ps 88, 5</i>	The Highest Himself hath founded her.		
<i>Ci 1, 16</i>	All things were created by Him.		

- forth, now, and for ever.
- Js 6, 28* In His First-born may He lay the foundation thereof.
- Ep 1, 22-23* He hath made Him Head over all the Church,—Which is His Body.
- Ep 4, 15* Doing the truth in charity, we may in all things grow up in Him Who is the Head, even Christ.
- Ep 4, 16* From whom the whole body, being compacted, and fitly joined together, by what every joint supplieth, according to the operation in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the Body unto the edifying of itself in charity.
- The husband is the head of the wife, as Christ is the Head of the Church. He is the Saviour of His Body.
- You are the Body of 1 *C 12, 27* Christ, and members of member.
- I [John] saw the Holy *Ap 21, 2* City, the New Jerusalem, coming down out of Heaven from God, prepared as a Bride adorned for her Husband. (*See page 79.*)

## 2.—CHRIST BUILDS HIS CHURCH UPON THE FOUNDATION OF THE (1) APOSTLES AND (2) PROPHETS.

### I.—THE FOUNDATION OF THE APOSTLES.

*From St. Matthew.*

Having called His twelve disciples together, He gave them power over unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of diseases, and all manner of infirmities.—And the names of the twelve Apostles are these:

1. The first, Simon who is called PETER,
- Mt 10, 1-2* 2. And ANDREW his brother.
3. JAMES the son of Zebedee,
4. And JOHN his brother,
5. PHILIP
6. And BARTHOLOMEW,
7. THOMAS
8. And MATTHEW the publican.
9. And JAMES the son of Alphaeus,
- Mt 10, 3* 10. And THADDEUS.
11. SIMON the Canaan,

12. And Judas Iscariot, *Mt 10, 4* who also betrayed Him.

*From St. Mark.*

Going up into a mountain, *Mt 3, 13-14* He called unto Him Whom He would Himself: and they came to Him.—And He made that twelve should be with Him, and that He might send them to preach.

1. And to Simon He gave *Mt 3, 16* the name Peter,
2. And James the son of Zebedee.
3. And John the brother *Mt 3, 17* of James, and He named them Boanerges, which is, the sons of thunder.
4. And Andrew
5. And Philip,
6. And Bartholomew
7. And Matthew,
8. And Thomas
9. And James of Alphaeus,
10. And Thaddeus,
11. And Simon the Cana- *Mt 3, 18* neau.

*Mk* 3, 19    12. And Judas Iscariot, who also betrayed Him.

*From St. Luke.*

*Lu* 6, 12-13    It came to pass in those days, that He went out into a mountain to pray, and He passed the whole night in the prayer of God.—And when day was come, He called unto Him His disciples; and He chose twelve of them (whom also He named Apostles):

*Lu* 6, 14    1. Simon whom He surnamed Peter,  
2. And Andrew his brother,

3. James  
4. And John,  
5. Philip  
*Lu* 6, 15    6. And Bartholomew,  
7. Matthew

8. And Thomas,  
9. James the son of Alphaeus,  
10. And Simon who is called Zelotes,

*Lu* 6, 16    11. And Jude the brother of James,  
12. And Judas Iscariot, who was the traitor.

*From the Acts.*

*Ac* 1, 12-13    They returned to Jerusalem, from the mount that is called Olivet, which is nigh Jerusalem, within a Sabbath day's journey.—And when they were come in, they went up into an Upper Room, where abode

1. Peter
2. And John,
3. James
4. And Andrew,
5. Philip
6. And Thomas,
7. Bartholomew
8. And Matthew,

9. James of Alphaeus  
10. And Simon Zelotes,  
11. And Jude the brother of James.

And they appointed two, *Ac* 1, 23-28 Joseph, called Barsabas, who was surnamed Justus, and Matthias.—And praying they said: Thou, Lord, Who knowest the hearts of all men, shew whether of these two Thou hast chosen,—To take the place of this Ministry and Apostleship, from which Judas hath by transgression fallen, that he might go to his own place.—And they gave them lots, and the lot fell upon

12. Matthias, and he was numbered with the eleven Apostles.

*From St. John.*

Jesus answered them: Have *Jn* 6, 71 not I chosen you twelve?

Thomas, one of the twelve, *Jn* 20, 24 was not with them when Jesus came.

*The Four Evangelists.*

ST. MATTHEW . . .	<i>Man</i>	<i>Ap</i> 4, 7
ST. MARK . . .	<i>Lion</i>	<i>Mk</i> 1, 3
ST. LUKE . . .	<i>Calf</i>	<i>Lu</i> 1, 5
ST. JOHN . . .	<i>Eagle</i>	<i>Jn</i> 1, 1

II.—THE FOUNDATION OF THE PROPHETS.

I.—Under the law of Nature.

- |             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| 1. ADAM.    | <i>Ge</i> 2, 21  |
| 2. ABEL.    | <i>He</i> 11, 4  |
| 3. ENOCH.   | <i>Ju</i> 14     |
| 4. NOE.     | <i>Ge</i> 6, 14  |
| 5. ABRAHAM. | <i>Ge</i> 12, 1  |
| 6. ISAAC.   | <i>Ge</i> 26, 4  |
| 7. JACOB.   | <i>Ge</i> 27, 27 |

II.—Mosaic Prophets.

- |            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| 1. MOSES.  | <i>Dt</i> 18, 15 |
| 2. AARON.  | <i>Ex</i> 7, 1   |
| 3. JOSUE.  | <i>Js</i> 1, 5   |
| 4. SAMUEL. | <i>Ac</i> 13, 20 |

- Ac 2, 30 5. DAVID.  
Ma 4, 5 6. ELIAS.  
4 K 6, 12 7. ELISEUS.

III.—*Prophets of the Old Law in order of time.*

BEFORE THE CAPTIVITY.

- Je 1, 1 1. JONAS, son of Amathi,  
B.C. 840-795.  
Jl 1, 1 2. JOEL, son of Phatuel,  
B.C. 810-780.  
Am 1, 1 3. AMOS, the Herdsman,  
B.C. 790.  
Os 1, 1 4. OSEE, son of Beerī,  
B.C. 800-740.  
Is 21, 8 5. ISAIAS, Lion, B.C. 763-713.  
Mi 1, 1 6. MICHAEL, the Moras-  
hite, B.C. 759-699.  
Na 1, 1 7. NAHUM, the Elcesite,

B.C. 720-698.

8. SOPHONIAS, the Watch-  
man, B.C. 642-611. So 1, 1

DURING THE CAPTIVITY.

9. JEREMIAS, Ox (*Alluph. Je 11, 19*  
i.e. Bos), B.C. 628-585.

10. HABACUC, of Bezoecher Ha 1, 1  
B.C. 610-598.

11. DANIEL, Eagle, B.C. Ez 28,  
606-534.

12. EZECHIEL, Man, B.C. Ez 2, 1  
595-574.

13. ABDIAS, B.C. 568-583. Ab 1, 1

AFTER THE CAPTIVITY.

14. AGGEUS, B.C. 520-518. Ag 1, 1

15. ZACHARIAS, son of Barachias, B.C. 520-518. Za 1, 1

16. MALACHIAS, the Mes-  
senger, B.C. 436-397. Ma 1, 1

3.—THE TWELVE APOSTLES FORESHADOWED.

Ge 35, 22 The sons of Jacob were  
twelve.

*The Twelve Patriarchs.*

- Ge 35, 23 1. Ruben the first-born,  
2. Simeon,  
3. Levi,  
4. Juda,  
5. Issachar,  
6. Zabulon.  
Ge 35, 24 7. Joseph,  
8. Benjamin.  
Ge 35, 25 9. Dan,  
10. Nephtali.  
Ge 35, 26 11. Gad,  
12. Aser.

Nu 12, 16 These are the most noble  
Princes of the multitude.

Ge 42, 13 We Thy servants are  
twelve brethren.

Ge 49, 28 All these are the twelve  
tribes of Israel.

Ex 15, 27 The children of Israel came  
into Elim where there were  
Twelve Fountains of Water,  
and they encamped by the  
waters.

Moses rising in the morn-  
ing, built an Altar at the  
foot of the Mount, and  
twelve titles [that is, pil-  
lars], according to the twelve  
tribes of Israel.

They shall make the Ephod  
Ex 28, 6  
of gold, and violet, and pur-  
ple, and scarlet twice dyed,  
and fine twisted linen, em-  
broidered with divers colours.

And thou shalt take two  
Ex 28, 9-  
onyx stones, and shalt grave  
10  
on them the names of the  
children of Israel:—Six names  
on one stone, and the other  
six on the other.

Thou shalt make the Ra-  
Ex 28, 15,  
tional of Judgment with em-  
17  
broidered work of—divers  
colours,—And thou shalt set  
in it four rows of stones:

(1) The first row shall be:

1. A Sardius stone,
2. And a Topaz,
3. And an Emerald.

(2) In the second: Ex 28, 18



4. A Carbuncle,  
5. A Sapphire,  
6. And a Jasper.  
*Ex* 28, 19 (3) In the third.  
7. A Ligurius,  
8. An Agate,  
9. And an Amethyst.  
*Kr* 23, 20 (4) In the fourth :  
10. A Chrysolite,  
11. An Onyx,  
12. And a Beryl.  
*Ex* 28, 20-21 They shall be set in gold  
by their rows.—And they  
shall have the names of the  
children of Israel: with  
twelve names shall they be  
engraved, each stone with  
the name of one according to  
the twelve Tribes.  
*Nu* 7, 84 Twelve dishes of silver.  
*Nu* 7, 84 Twelve silver bowls.  
*Nu* 7, 86 Twelve little mortars of  
gold, full of incense.  
*Nu* 7, 87 Twelve oxen out of the  
herd for a holocaust.  
*Nu* 7, 87 Twelve rams.  
*Nu* 7, 87 Twelve lambs of a year  
old, and their libations.  
*Nu* 7, 87 Twelve buck-goats for sin.  
*Nu* 17, 1-2 The Lord spoke to Moses,  
saying:—Speak to the chil-  
dren of Israel, and take of  
every one of them a rod by  
their kindreds, of all the  
Princes of the Tribes, twelve  
rods, and write the name of  
every man upon his rod.  
*Js* 4, 1-9 When they were passed  
over, the Lord said to Josue :  
—Choose twelve men, one of  
every tribe:—And command  
them to take out of the  
midst of the Jordan, where  
the feet of the Priests stood,  
twelve very hard stones,  
which you shall set in the  
place of the camp, where you  
shall pitch your tents this  
night.—And Josue called  
Twelve Men, whom he had

chosen out of the children  
of Israel, one out of every  
tribe.—And he said to them :  
Go before the Ark of the  
Lord your God to the midst  
of the Jordan, and carry  
from thence every man a  
stone on your shoulders,  
according to the number of  
the children of Israel.—That  
it may be a sign among  
you : and when your chil-  
dren shall ask you to-  
morrow, saying : What mean  
these stones?—You shall  
answer them: The waters  
of the Jordan ran off  
before the Ark of the Cove-  
nant of the Lord, when it  
passed over the same : there-  
fore were these stones set for  
a Monument of the children  
of Israel for ever.—The  
children of Israel therefore  
did as Josue commanded  
them, carrying out of the  
channel of the Jordan Twelve  
Stones, as the Lord had com-  
manded him, according to the  
number of the children of Is-  
rael, unto the place wherein  
they camped, and there they  
set them. — And Josue put  
other Twelve Stones in the  
midst of the channel of the  
Jordan, where the Priests  
stood that carried the Ark of  
the Covenant : and they are  
there until this present day.

#### *The Twelve Judges.*

Othoniel, son of Caleb.	<i>Jg</i> 3, 9
Aod, son of Gera.	<i>Jg</i> 3, 15
Samgar, son of Anath.	<i>Jg</i> 3, 31
Barac, son of Abinoem.	<i>Jg</i> 4, 6
Gedeon, son of Joas.	<i>Jg</i> 6, 11
Jair, the Galaadite.	<i>Jg</i> 10, 3
Jephte, the Galaadite.	<i>Jg</i> 11, 1
Abesan, of Bethlehem.	<i>Jg</i> 12, 8
Abialon, a Zabulonite.	<i>Jg</i> 12, 11

- Jg* 12, 13 Abdon, *son of Illel*.  
*Jg* 13, 24 Samson, *son of Manue*.  
*1 K* 1, 20 Samuel, *son of Anna*.  
*3 K* 4, 7 Solomon had twelve governors over all Israel, who provided victuals for the king and for his household. And these are their names:  
*3 K* 4, 8 1. Benhur.  
*3 K* 4, 9 2. Bendecar.  
*3 K* 4, 10 3. Benhesed.  
*3 K* 4, 11 4. Benabinadab.  
*3 K* 4, 12 5. Bana.  
*3 K* 4, 13 6. Bengaber.  
*3 K* 4, 14 7. Ahinadab.  
*3 K* 4, 15 8. Achimaas.  
*3 K* 4, 16 9. Baana.  
*3 K* 4, 17 10. Josaphat.  
*3 K* 4, 18 11. Semei.  
*3 K* 4, 19 12. Gaber.  
*3 K* 10, 20 King Solomon made a great throne of ivory. And twelve little lions stood upon the six steps on the one side and on the other.  
*3 K* 18, 31-32 Elias took twelve stones.— And he built with the stones an altar to the Name of the Lord.  
*1 E* 8, 25 I separated twelve of the chief of the Priests, and I weighed unto them the silver and gold, and the vessels consecrated for the House of our God.  
*Mt* 19, 28 You shall sit on twelve seats, judging the twelve Tribes of Israel.  
*Ac* 7, 8 Jacob begot the twelve Patriarchs.  
*Ap* 12, 1 A great sign appeared in Heaven: a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon
- under her feet, and on her head a crown of Twelve Stars. [The Holy City, Jerusalem] *Ap* 21, 12-14 had a wall great and high, having twelve gates, and in the gates twelve Angels, and names written thereon, which are the names of the twelve Tribes of the children of Israel.—And the wall of the City had twelve foundations, and in them the twelve names of the twelve Apostles of the Lamb.  
And the foundations of the wall of the City were adorned with all manner of precious stones.  
The first foundation was Jasper.  
The second, Sapphire.  
The third, a Chalcedony.  
The fourth, an Emerald. *Ap* 21, 20  
The fifth, Sardonix.  
The sixth, Sardius.  
The seventh, Chrysolite.  
The eighth, Beryl.  
The ninth, a Topaz.  
The tenth, a Chrysoprasus.  
The eleventh, a Jacinth.  
The twelfth, an Amethyst.  
The twelve gates are *Ap* 21, 21 twelve pearls, one to each: and every several gate was of one several pearl.  
In the midst of the street thereof and on both sides of the river, was the Tree of Life, bearing twelve fruits, yielding its fruits every month, and the leaves of the Tree were for the healing of the nations. *Ap* 22, 2

#### 4.—CHRIST'S COMMANDS TO HIS TWELVE APOSTLES. HE GIVES THEM WONDERFUL POWERS.

##### I.

- Mt* 10, 5-10 These twelve Jesus sent: commanding them, saying: Go ye not into the way of the Gentiles, and into the cities of the Samaritans enter ye

not.—But go ye rather to the lost sheep of the House of Israel.—And going, preach, saying: The Kingdom of Heaven is at hand.—Heal the sick, raise the dead, cleanse the lepers, cast out devils: freely have you received, freely give.—Do not possess gold, nor silver, nor money in your purses:—Nor scrip for your journey, nor two coats, nor shoes, nor a staff: for the workman is worthy of his meat.

*Mt* 18, 17-20 If he will not hear them: tell the Church. And if he will not hear the Church, let him be to thee as the heathen and publican.—Amen I say to you, whatsoever you shall bind upon earth, shall be bound also in Heaven: and whatsoever you shall loose upon earth, shall be loosed also in Heaven.—Again I say to you, that if two of you shall consent upon earth, concerning any thing whatsoever they shall ask, it shall be done to them by My Father Who is in Heaven.—For where there are two or three gathered together in My Name, there am I in the midst of them.

*Mt* 23, 18-20 Jesus coming spoke to them, saying: All power is given to Me in Heaven and in earth.—Going therefore teach ye all nations: baptising them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost,—Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and behold I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world. (*For rest, see p. 527*)

## II.

Do This for a commemoration of Me. *Lu* 22, 19

Calling together the twelve Apostles, He gave them power and authority over all devils, and to cure diseases.—And He sent them to preach the Kingdom of God and to heal the sick.—And He said to them: Take nothing for your journey, neither staff, nor scrip, nor bread, nor money, neither have two coats.—And whatsoever house you shall enter into, abide there, and depart not from thence.—And whosoever will not receive you, when ye go out of that city, shake off even the dust of your feet for a testimony against them.—And going out they went about through the towns, preaching the Gospel and healing everywhere.

Behold I have given you power to tread upon serpents and scorpions, and upon all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall hurt you.—But yet rejoice not in this that spirits are subject unto you: but rejoice in this, that your names are written in Heaven.

You are witnesses of these things. *Lu* 24, 48

## III.

He called the twelve and began to send them two and two, and gave them power over unclean spirits.—And He commanded them that they should take nothing for the way, but a staff only: no scrip, no bread, nor money in their purse.—But to be shod with sandals, and that they should not put on two

coats.—And He said to them : Whosoever you shall enter into a house, there abide till you depart from that place.—And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear you, going forth from thence, shake off the dust from your feet for a testimony to them.

*Mk* 16, 15-20 He said to them : Go ye into the whole world and preach the Gospel to every creature.—He that believeth and is baptised, shall be saved : but he that believeth not, shall be condemned.—And these signs shall follow them that believe : In My Name they shall cast out devils : they shall speak with new tongues,—They shall take up serpents : and if they shall drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them : they shall lay their hands upon the sick, and they shall recover.—And the Lord Jesus, after He had spoken to them,

was taken up into Heaven, and sitteth on the right hand of God.—But they going forth preached everywhere : the Lord working withal, and confirming the Word with signs that followed.

## IV.

He said therefore to them *Jn* 20, 21-23 again : Peace be to you. As the Father hath sent Me, I also send you.—When He had said this, He breathed on them ; and He said to them : Receive ye the Holy Ghost.—Whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them : and whose sins you shall retain they are retained.

Amen, amen, I say to you, *Jn* 13, 20 he that receiveth whomsoever I send, receiveth Me : and he that receiveth Me, receiveth Him that sent Me.

You shall give testimony *Jn* 15, 27 because you are with Me from the beginning.

### 5. — CHRIST (1) APPOINTS SEVENTY-TWO DISCIPLES. (2) HIS INSTRUCTIONS TO THEM.

## I.

*Lk* 10, 1-16 After these things the Lord appointed also other seventy-two : and He sent them two and two before His face into every city and place whither He Himself was to come.

## II.

And He said to them : The Harvest indeed is great, but the labourers are few. Pray ye therefore the Lord of the Harvest, that He send labourers into His Harvest.—Go : Behold I send you as lambs among wolves.—Carry

neither purse nor scrip, nor shoes : and salute no man by the way.—Into whatsoever house you enter, first say : Peace be to this house :—And if the son of Peace be there, your peace shall rest upon him : but if not, it shall return to you.—And in the same house remain, eating and drinking such things as they have. For the labourer is worthy of his hire. Remove not from house to house.—And into what city soever you enter, and they receive you, eat such things

as are set before you :—And if in Tyre and Sidon had heal the sick that are therein, and say to them : The Kingdom of God is come nigh unto you.—But into whatsoever city you enter, and they receive you not, going forth into the streets thereof, say :—Even the very dust of your city that cleaveth to us we wipe off against you. You know this : that the Kingdom of God is at hand.—I say to you, it shall be more tolerable at that day for Sodom, than for that city.—Wo to thee, Corozain, wo to thee, Bethsaida. For

been wrought the mighty works that have been wrought in you, they would have done penance long ago, sitting in sack-cloth and ashes.—But it shall be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment, than for you.—And thou, Capharnaum, which art exalted unto Heaven : thou shalt be thrust down to hell.—He that heareth you, heareth Me : and he that despiseth you, despiseth Me. And he that despiseth Me, despiseth Him that sent Me.

## 6.—THE SCRIPTURE-LIFE OF ST. PETER, PRINCE OF THE APOSTLES, AND THE VISIBLE ROCK ON WHICH CHRIST BUILT HIS CHURCH.

1. SIMON, A FISHERMAN OF BETHSAIDA. PHILIP BRINGS HIM TO JESUS, WHO ANNOUNCES THAT HE WILL CHANGE HIS NAME TO PETER.

JESUS PREACHES FROM PETER'S BOAT. AT JESUS' WORD PETER CATCHES A MIRACULOUS DRAUGHT OF FISHES. HE FALLS DOWN AT THE FEET OF JESUS. HIS CALL. HE LEAVES ALL THINGS TO FOLLOW JESUS.

*Mt* 1, 41-44 He findeth first his brother Simon, and saith to him : We have found the Messiah, which is, being interpreted, the Christ.—And he brought him to Jesus. And Jesus looking upon him, said : Thou art Simon the son of Jona : thou shalt be called Cephas, which is interpreted Peter.—On the following day He would go forth into Galilee, and He findeth Philip. And Jesus saith to him : Follow Me.—Now Philip was of Bethsaida, the city of Andrew and Peter.

And it came to pass, that *Lk* 5, 1-11 when the multitudes pressed upon Him to hear the Word of God, He stood by the lake of Genesareth.—And He saw two ships standing by the lake : but the fishermen were gone out of them, and were washing their nets.—And going into one of the ships that was Simon's, He desired him to draw back a little from the land. And sitting He taught the multitudes out of the ship.—Now when He had ceased to speak, He said to Simon :

2. PETER TRANSFERS HIS DWELLING TO CAPHARNAUM.

Launch out into the deep, and let down your nets for a draught. — And Simon answering, said to Him: Master, we have laboured all the night, and have taken nothing: but at Thy word I will let down the net. — And when they had done this, they enclosed a very great multitude of fishes, and their net broke. — And they beckoned to their partners that were in the other ship, that they should come and help them. And they came, and filled both the ships, so that they were almost sinking. — Which when Simon Peter saw, he fell down at Jesus's knees, saying: Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, O Lord. — For he was wholly astonished, and all that were with him, at the draught of the fishes which they had taken. — And so were also James and John the sons of Zebedee, who were Simon's partners. And Jesus saith to Simon: Fear not: from henceforth thou shalt catch men. — And having brought their ships to land, leaving all things, they followed Him.

*Mt* 4, 18-20

Jesus walking by the sea of Galilee, saw two brethren, Simon who is called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea (for they were fishers). — And He saith to them: Come ye after Me, and I will make you to be fishers of men. — And they immediately leaving their nets, followed Him.

3. JESUS VISITS PETER AT CAPHARNAUM, WHERE HE CURES PETER'S MOTHER-IN-

LAW OF A FEVER.

When Jesus was come into Peter's house, He saw his wife's mother lying, and sick of a fever: — And He touched her hand, and the fever left her, and she arose and ministered to them.

They enter into Capharnaum, and forthwith upon the Sabbath days going into the Synagogue, he taught them. — And immediately going out of the Synagogue they came into the house of Simon and Andrew with James and John. — And Simon's wife's mother lay in a fit of a fever: and forthwith they tell Him of her. — And coming to Her He lifted her up, taking her by the hand, and immediately the fever left her, and she ministered unto them.

Rising very early, going out He went into a desert place: and there He prayed. — And Simon and they that were with him followed after Him. — And when they had found Him, they said to Him: All seek for Thee. — And He saith to them: Let us go into the neighbouring towns and cities, that I may preach there also; for to this purpose am I come. — And He was preaching in their Synagogues, and in all Galilee, and casting out devils.

4. JESUS'S DISCOURSE TO PETER AND THE REST. JESUS CHANGES HIS NAME TO PETER. MAKES HIM THE ROCK OF HIS CHURCH, THE BEARER OF THE KEYS. OTHER TEXTS, POINTING TO THE DOCTRINE OF PAPAL INFALLIBILITY. PETER SPEAKS IN THE NAME OF ALL.

**Mat 10, 1-42** Having called His twelve Disciples together, He gave them power over unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of diseases, and all manner of infirmities.—And the names of the twelve Apostles are these: The first, Simon, who is called Peter, and Andrew, his brother.—James, the son of Zebedee, and John, his brother, Philip and Bartholomew, Thomas and Matthew, the publican, and James, the son of Alphaeus, and Thaddeus.—Simon, the Cananean, and Judas Iscariot, who also betrayed Him.—These twelve Jesus sent, commanding them saying: Go ye not into the way of the Gentiles, and into the cities of the Samaritans enter ye not.—But go ye rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.—And going, preach, saying: the Kingdom of Heaven is at hand.—Heal the sick, raise the dead, cleanse the lepers, cast out devils: freely have you received, freely give.—Do not possess gold, nor silver, nor money in your purses:—Nor scrip for your journey, nor two coats, nor shoes, nor a staff; for the workman is worthy of his meat.—And into whatsoever city or town you shall enter, inquire who in it is worthy, and there abide till you go thence.—And when you come into a house, salute it, saying: Peace be to this house.—And if that house be worthy, your peace shall come upon it; and if it be not worthy, your peace shall return to you.—And whosoever shall not receive you nor hear your words: going forth out of that house or city shake off the dust from your feet.—Amen I say to you, it shall be more tolerable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah in the day of judgment than for that city.—Behold, I send you as sheep in the midst of wolves. Be ye therefore wise as serpents and simple as doves.—But beware of men, for they will deliver you up in councils, and they will scourge you in their synagogues.—And you shall be brought before governors and before kings for My sake, for a testimony to them and to the Gentiles.—But when they shall deliver you up, take no thought how or what to speak: for it shall be given you in that hour what to speak.—For it is not you that speak, but the Spirit of your Father that speaketh in you.—The brother also shall deliver up the brother to death, and the father the son: and the children shall rise up against their parents, and shall put them to death.—And you shall be hated by all men for My Name's sake: but he that shall persevere unto the end, he shall be saved.—And when they shall persecute you in this city, flee into another. Amen I say to you, you shall not finish all the cities of Israel till the Son of Man come.—The disciple is not above the Master, nor the servant above his lord.—It is enough for the disciple that he be as his Master, and

the servant as his Lord.—If they have called the good man of the house Beelzebub, how much more them of his household?—Therefore, fear them not. For nothing is covered that shall not be revealed: nor hid, that shall not be known.—That which I tell you in the dark, speak ye in the light: and that which you hear in the ear, preach ye upon the house-tops.—And fear ye not them that kill the body, and are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear Him that can destroy both soul and body into hell.—Are not two sparrows sold for a farthing? and not one of them shall fall on the ground without your Father.—But the very hairs of your head are all numbered.—Fear not, therefore: better are you than many sparrows.—Everyone, therefore, that shall confess Me before men, I will also confess him before My Father, Who is in Heaven.—But he that shall deny Me before men, I will also deny him before My Father, Who is in Heaven.—Do not think that I came to send peace upon earth: I came not to send peace, but the sword.—For I came to set a man at variance against his father, and the daughter against her mother, and the daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law.—And a man's enemies shall be those of his own household.—He that loveth father or mother more than Me, is not worthy of Me: and He that loveth son or daughter more than Me, is not worthy of Me.—And he that taketh not up his cross, and followeth Me, is not worthy of Me.—He that findeth his life shall lose it: and He that shall lose his life for Me, shall find it.—He that receiveth you, receiveth Me: and he that receiveth Me, receiveth Him that sent Me.—He that receiveth a prophet in the name of a prophet, shall receive the reward of a prophet: and he that receiveth a just man in the name of a just man, shall receive the reward of a just man.—And whosoever shall give to drink to one of those little ones a cup of cold water only in the name of a disciple, amen I say to you, he shall not lose his reward.

To Simon He gave the name Peter. *Mk 3, 16*

Jesus saith to them: But whom do you say that I am? *Mt 16*

—Simon Peter answered and said: Thou art Christ, the Son of the Living God.—And Jesus answering, said to him: Blessed art thou, Simon Bar-Jona; because flesh and blood hath not revealed it to thee, but My Father, Who is in Heaven.—And I say to thee: That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build My Church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.—And I will give to thee the keys of the Kingdom of Heaven. And whatsoever thou shalt bind upon earth, it shall be bound also in Heaven; and whatsoever thou shalt loose upon earth, it shall be loosed



also in Heaven.

*Mt* 16, 15-19 Jesus saith to them : But whom do you say that I am ?

—Simon Peter answered and said : Thou art Christ, the Son of the Living God.—And Jesus answering, said to him : Blessed art thou, Simon Bar-Jona, because flesh and blood hath not revealed it to thee, but My Father, Who is in Heaven.—And I say to thee that thou art Peter ; and upon this Rock I will build My Church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.—And I will give to thee the Keys of the Kingdom of Heaven. And whatsoever thou shalt bind upon earth it shall be bound also in Heaven : and whatsoever thou shalt loose upon earth it shall be loosed also in Heaven.

*Mt* 3, 16 To Simon He gave the name Peter.

*Lk* 6, 13-16 When day was come He called unto Him His Disciples ; and He chose twelve of them (whom also He named Apostles) : — Simon (whom He surnamed Peter, and Andrew his brother, James and John, Philip and Bartholomew,—Matthew and Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, and Simon who is called Zelotes,—And Jude the brother of James, and Judas Iscariot who was the traitor.

*Lk* 12, 41 Peter said to Him, Lord, dost Thou speak this parable to us, or likewise to all ?

*Lk* 8, 45 Jesus said : Who is it that touched Me ? And all denying, Peter and they that were with Him, said : Master, the multitudes throng and press

Thee, and dost Thou say, Who touched Me ?

The Lord said : Simon, *Lk* 22, 31-32 Simon, behold Satan hath desired to have you that he may sift you as wheat.—But I have prayed for thee that thy faith fail not : and thou being once converted, confirm thy brethren.

5. PETER WEEPS FOR THE DEAD. WITNESSES THE RAISING OF JAIRUS' DAUGHTER. WALKS UPON THE WATERS. SINKS. HIS PRAYER. HIS FURTHER CONFESSIONS OF JESUS. OF THE BLESSED SACRAMENT.

He admitted not any man to follow Him [to witness the raising of Jairus' daughter] but Peter, James, and John the brother of James. *Mt* 5, 37

All wept and mourned for her. But He said : Weep not, the maid is not dead, but sleepeth. *Lk* 8, 52

The boat in the midst of the sea was tossed with the waves, for the wind was contrary.—And in the fourth watch of the night He came to them, walking upon the sea.—And they seeing Him walking upon the sea were troubled, saying : It is an apparition. And they cried out for fear.—And immediately Jesus spoke to them, saying : Be of good heart : it is I, fear ye not.—And Peter making answer, said : Lord, if it be Thou, bid me come to Thee upon the waters.—And He said : Come. And Peter going down out of the boat, walked upon the waters to come to Jesus.—And seeing the wind

M M

strong, he was afraid : and when he began to sink, he cried out saying: Lord, save me.—And immediately Jesus stretching forth His hand took hold of him, and said to him : O thou of little faith, why didst thou doubt ? —And when they were come up into the boat the wind ceased.—And they that were in the boat came and adored Him, saying : Indeed Thou art the Son of God.

*Mt* 8, 29 Whom do you say that I am ? Peter answering, said to Him : Thou art the Christ.

*Lu* 9, 20 Whom do you say that I am ? Simon Peter answering said : The Christ of God.

*Jn* 6, 68-70 Jesus said to the twelve : Will you also go away ? —And Simon Peter answered him : Lord, to whom shall we go ? Thou hast the words of Eternal Life.—And we have believed and have known that Thou art the Christ, the Son of God.

6. JESUS REBUKES PETER FOR DISSUADING HIM FROM SUFFERING. EYE-WITNESS OF THE TRANSFIGURATION. REFERS TO IT IN HIS EPISTLE. FINDS THE TRIBUTE-MONEY IN THE FISH'S MOUTH.

*Mt* 16, 20-23 He commanded His disciples, that they should tell no one that He was Jesus the Christ.—From that time Jesus began to shew His disciples that He must go to Jerusalem, and suffer many things from the ancients and Scribes and Chief Priests, and be put to death, and the third day rise again.—And Peter taking Him, began to rebuke Him, saying : Lord, be it far

from Thee, this shall not be unto Thee.—Who turning said to Peter : Go behind Me, Satan, thou art a scandal unto Me : because thou savourest not the things that are of God, but the things that are of men.

After six days Jesus taketh *Mt* 17, 1-3 unto Him Peter and James, and John his brother, and bringeth them up into a high mountain apart :—And He was transfigured before them. And His face did shine as the sun : and His garments became white as snow.—And behold there appeared to them Moses and Elias talking with Him.—And Peter answering said to Jesus : Lord, it is good for us to be here : if Thou wilt, let us make here three tabernacles, one for Thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elias.—And as He was yet speaking, behold a bright cloud overshadowed them. And lo a Voice out of the cloud, saying : This is My Beloved Son, in Whom I am well pleased : hear ye Him.—And the disciples hearing, fell upon their face, and were very much afraid.—And Jesus came and touched them : and said to them : Arise, and fear not.—And they lifting up their eyes saw no one, but only Jesus.—And as they came down from the mountain, Jesus charged them, saying : Tell the vision to no man till the Son of Man be risen from the dead.

We have not followed cunningly devised fables, when we made known to you the power and Presence of our

Lord Jesus Christ: but have been made eye-witness of His Majesty.—For He received from God the Father honour and glory: this Voice coming down to Him from the excellent glory: This is My beloved Son, in Whom I have pleased Myself: hear ye Him:—And this Voice we heard brought from Heaven when we were with Him in the Holy Mount.

*Mt* 17, 23-26 When they were come to Capharnaum, they that received the didrachmas, came to Peter, and said to him: Doth not your Master pay the didrachmas?—He said: Yes. And when he was come into the House, Jesus prevented him, saying: What is thy opinion, Simon? The kings of the earth, of whom do they receive tribute or custom? of their own children or of strangers?—And he said: Of strangers. Jesus said to him: Then the children are free.—But that we may not scandalise them, go to the sea, and cast in a hook: and that fish which shall first come up, take: and when thou hast opened its mouth, thou shalt find a stater: Take that, and give it to them for Me and thee.

7. PETER QUESTIONS OUR LORD ABOUT FORGIVENESS. PARABLES. LEAVES ALL THINGS. CHRIST'S PROMISE OF TEMPORAL AND ETERNAL REWARD. SHOWS JESUS THE WITHERED FIG-TREE. INQUIRES ABOUT HIS SECOND COMING. CHRIST'S DISCOURSES ON THE SUBJECT.

Then came Peter unto *Mt* 18, 21. Him, and said: Lord, how often shall my brother offend against me, and I forgive him? till seven times?—Jesus saith to him: I say not to thee, till seven times; but till seventy times seven times.

Peter answering, said to *Mt* 19, 27. Him: Behold we have left all things, and have followed Thee: what therefore shall we have?—And Jesus said to them: Amen I say to you, that you, who have followed Me, in the regeneration, when the Son of Man shall sit on the seat of His Majesty, you also shall sit on twelve seats judging the twelve Tribes of Israel.—And every one that hath left house, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands for My Name's sake: shall receive an hundred fold, and shall possess Life Everlasting.—And many that are first shall be last: and the last shall be first.

Peter began to say unto *Mt* 10, 28. Him: Behold, we have left all things, and have followed Thee. — Jesus answering, said: Amen I say to you, there is no man who hath left house, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or children, or lands for My sake and for the Gospel—Who shall not receive an hundred times as much, now in this time; houses, and brethren, and sisters, and mothers, and children, and lands, with persecutions: and in the world to come Life Everlasting. — But many that are

first, shall be last : and the last, first.

*Mk* 11, 19- When evening was come,

23 He went forth out of the City.—And when they passed by in the morning, they saw the fig-tree dried up from the roots.—And Peter remembering, said to Him: Rabbi, behold the fig-tree, which Thou didst curse, is withered away.—And Jesus answering, saith to them: Have the faith of God.—Amen I say to you, that whosoever shall say to this mountain, Be thou removed and be cast into the sea, and shall not stagger in his heart, but believe, that whatsoever he saith shall be done: it shall be done unto him.

*Mk* 13, 3-

12

As He sat on the mount of Olivet over against the Temple, Peter and James, and John and Andrew asked Him apart:—Tell us, when shall these things be? and what shall be the sign when all these things shall begin to be fulfilled?—And Jesus answering, began to say to them, Take heed lest any man deceive you.—For many shall come in My Name, saying, I am He; and they shall deceive many. — And when you shall hear of wars and rumours of wars, fear ye not. For such things must needs be, but the end is not yet.—For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom, and there shall be earthquakes, in divers places, and famines. These things are the beginning of sorrows.—But look to yourselves. For they shall deliver you up

to councils, and in the Synagogues you shall be beaten, and you shall stand before governors and kings for My sake, for a testimony unto them.—And unto all nations the Gospel must first be preached.—And when they shall lead you and deliver you up, be not thoughtful beforehand what you shall speak; but whatsoever shall be given you in that hour, that speak ye. For it is not you that speak, but the Holy Ghost.—And the brother shall betray his brother unto death, and the father his son; and children shall rise up against the parents, and shall work their death.

And you shall be hated by *Mk* 13, 13-

37

all men for My Name's sake. But he that shall endure unto the end, he shall be saved.—And when you shall see the abomination of desolation, standing where it ought not: let him that readeth understand: then let them that are in Judea, flee unto the mountains:—And let him that is on the housetop, not go down into the house nor enter therein to take anything out of his house:—And let him that shall be in the field, not return back to take up his garment.—And wo to them that are with child, and that give suck in those days.—But pray ye, that these things happen not in winter.—For in those days shall be such tribulations, as were not from the beginning of the Creation which God created until now, neither shall be.—And unless the

Lord had shortened the days, no flesh should be saved : but for the sake of the elect whom He hath chosen, He hath shortened the days.—And then if any man shall say to you, Lo, here is Christ : lo, He is here : do not believe.—For there will rise up false christs and false prophets, and they shall show signs and wonders, to seduce (if it were possible) even the elect.—Take ye heed therefore ; behold I have foretold you all things.—But in those days, after that tribulation, the sun shall be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light.—And the stars of Heaven shall be falling down, and the powers, that are in Heaven, shall be moved.—And then shall they see the Son of Man coming in the clouds, with great power and glory.—And then shall He send His Angels, and shall gather together His elect from the four winds, from the uttermost part of the earth to the uttermost part of Heaven.—Now of the fig-tree learn ye a parable. When the branch thereof is now tender, and the leaves are come forth, you know that summer is very near.—So you also when you shall see these things come to pass, know ye that it is very nigh, even at the doors.—Amen I say to you, that this generation shall not pass, until all these things be done.—Heaven and earth shall pass away, but My Words shall not pass away.—But of that day or hour no man knoweth, neither the Angels in Heaven nor the

Son, but the Father.—Take ye heed, watch and pray. For ye know not when the time is.—Even as a man who going into a far country, left his house ; and gave authority to his servants over every work, and commanded the porter to watch.—Watch ye therefore (for you know not when the lord of the house cometh : at even, or at midnight, or at the cock-crowing, or in the morning).—Lest coming on a sudden, he find you sleeping.—And what I say to you I say to all : Watch.

8. SENT BY JESUS TO PREPARE A GUEST - CHAMBER WHEREIN TO INSTITUTE THE BLESSED SACRAMENT. JESUS WASHES HIS FEET, NOTWITHSTANDING HIS HUMBLE PROTEST. INQUIRES WHO IS CHRIST'S BETRAYER. HIS SELF - CONFIDENCE. JESUS FORETELLS HIS FALL.

He sent Peter and John, saying : Go and prepare for us the Pasch, that we may eat.—But they said : Where wilt Thou that we prepare?—And He said to them : Behold as you go into the City, there shall meet you a man carrying a pitcher of water : Follow him into the house where he entereth in.—And you shall say to the good man of the house : The Master saith to thee : Where is the guest-chamber where I may eat the Pasch with My disciples?—And he will show you a large dining-room furnished, and there prepare.—And they going found as He had said to them and made

Lu 22, 8  
13

ready the Pasch.

*Jn* 13, 4-11 He riseth from supper, and layeth aside His garments, and having taken a towel, girded Himself.—After that He putteth water into a basin, and began to wash the feet of the disciples, and to wipe them with the towel, wherewith He was girded.—He cometh therefore to Simon Peter. And Peter saith to Him: Lord, dost Thou wash my feet?—Jesus answered and said to him: What I do, thou knowest not now, but thou shalt know hereafter.—Peter saith to Him: Thou shalt never wash my feet. Jesus answered him: If I wash thee not, thou shalt have no part with Me.—Simon Peter saith to Him: Lord, not only my feet, but also my hands and my head.—Jesus saith to him: He that is washed, needeth not but to wash his feet, but is clean wholly. And you are clean, but not all.—For He knew who he was that would betray Him; therefore He said: You are not all clean.

*Jn* 13, 21-27 When Jesus had said these things, He was troubled in spirit, and He testified, and said: Amen, amen, I say to you, one of you shall betray Me.—The Disciples therefore looked one upon another, doubting of whom He spoke.—Now there was leaning on Jesus's bosom one of His Disciples, whom Jesus loved.—Simon Peter therefore beckoned to him, and said to him: Who is it of whom He speaketh?—He therefore

leaning on the breast of Jesus saith to him: Lord, who is it?—Jesus answered: He it is to whom I shall reach Bread dipped. And when he had dipped the Bread, he gave it to Judas Iscariot, the son of Simon.—And after the morsel, satan entered into him. And Jesus said to him: That which thou dost, do quickly.

A hymn being said, they *Mt* 26, 30-35 went out unto Mount Olivet.

—Then Jesus saith to them: All you shall be scandalised in Me this night. For it is written: I will strike the Shepherd, and the sheep of the flock shall be dispersed.—But after I shall be risen again, I will go before you into Galilee.—And Peter answering, said to Him: Although all shall be scandalised in Thee, I will never be scandalised.—Jesus said to Him: Amen I say to thee, that in this night before the cock crow, thou wilt deny Me thrice.—Peter saith to Him: Yea, though I should die with Thee, I will not deny Thee. And in like manner said all the disciples.

When they had said a *Mk* 14, 26-31 hymn, they went forth to the Mount of Olives.—And Jesus saith to them: You will all be scandalised in My regard this night: for it is written, I will strike the Shepherd, and the sheep shall be dispersed.—But after I shall be risen again, I will go before you into Galilee.—But Peter saith to Him: Although all shall be scandalised in Thee, yet not I.—

And Jesus saith to him : Amen I say to thee, to-day even in this night, before the cock crow twice, thou shalt deny Me thrice.—But he spoke the more vehemently : Although I should die together with Thee, I will not deny Thee. And in like manner also said they all.

*Lu* 22, 30- He said to Him : Lord, I  
31 am ready to go with Thee both into prison and to death.—And He said : I say to thee, Peter, the cock shall not crow this day, till thou thrice deniest that thou knowest Me.

*Jn* 13, 36- Simon Peter saith to  
38 Him : Lord, whither goest Thou ? Jesus answered : Whither I go, thou canst not follow Me now, but thou shalt follow hereafter.—Peter saith to Him : Why cannot I follow Thee now ? I will lay my life for Thee.—Jesus answered him : Wilt thou lay down thy life for Me ? Amen, Amen, I say to thee, the cock shall not crow, till thou deny Me thrice.

9. ACCOMPANIES JESUS IN THE GARDEN OF GETHSEMANI. CUTS OFF THE EAR OF MALCHUS. CHRIST'S WORDS TO HIM. FOLLOWS CHRIST AFAR TO THE HOUSE OF CAIPHAS. HIS DENIAL. HIS SPEEDY AND PERFECT REPENTANCE. "HE WEPT BITTERLY."

*Mt* 26, 36- Then Jesus came with  
46 them into a country place, which is called Gethsemani : and He said to His disciples : Sit you here till I

go yonder and pray.—And taking with Him Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, He began to grow sorrowful and to be sad.—Then He saith to them : My Soul is sorrowful even unto death : Stay you here, and watch with Me.—And going a little farther, He fell upon His Face, praying, and saying : My Father, if it be possible, let this chalice pass from Me. Nevertheless, not as I will, but as Thou wilt.—And He cometh to His Disciples, and findeth them asleep ; and He saith to Peter : What ? Could you not watch one hour with Me ?—Watch ye, and pray that ye enter not into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh weak.—Again the second time He went and prayed, saying : My Father, if this chalice may not pass away but I must drink it, Thy will be done.—And He cometh again and findeth them sleeping : for their eyes were heavy.—And leaving them, He went again, and prayed a third time, saying the self-same words.—Then He cometh to His Disciples, and saith to them : Sleep ye now, and take your rest. Behold, the hour is at hand, and the Son of Man shall be betrayed into the hands of sinners.—Rise, let us go ; behold, he is at hand that will betray Me.

They come to a farm,<sup>*Mt* 14, 32.</sup>  
called Gethsemani. And He  
42 saith to His Disciples : Sit you here while I pray.—And He taketh Peter and James and John with Him : and He began to fear and to be heavy.

—And He saith to them: My Soul is sorrowful, even unto death. Stay you here, and watch.—And when He was gone forward a little He fell flat on the ground, and He prayed that if it might be, the hour might pass from Him.—And He saith: Abba, Father, all things are possible to Thee: remove this chalice from Me, but not what I will, but what Thou wilt.—And He cometh and findeth them sleeping. And He said to Peter: Simon, sleepest thou? Couldst thou not watch one hour?—Watch ye, and pray that you enter not into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.—And going away again, He prayed, saying the same words.—And when He returned He found them again asleep (for their eyes were heavy); and they knew not what to answer Him.—And He cometh the third time, and saith to them: Sleep ye now, and take your rest. It is enough: the hour is come: behold the Son of Man shall be betrayed into the hands of sinners.—Rise up, let us go. Behold, he that will betray Me is at hand.

Lx 22, 39-  
46

Going out, He went according to His custom to the Mount of Olives. And His Disciples also followed Him.—And when He was come to the place, He said to them: Pray, lest ye enter into temptation.—And He was withdrawn away from them a stone's cast: and kneeling down he prayed:—Saying: Father, if Thou wilt, remove

this chalice from Me: but yet not My will but Thine be done.—And there appeared to Him an Angel from Heaven, strengthening Him. And being in an agony, He prayed the longer.—And His sweat became as drops of blood trickling down upon the ground.—And when He rose up from prayer, and was come to His disciples, He found them sleeping for sorrow.—And He said to them: Why sleep you? Arise, pray, lest you enter into temptation.

Simon Peter, having a Jn 18, 10- sword, drew it, and struck 11 the servant of the High Priest, and cut off his right ear. And the name of the servant was Malchus.—Jesus therefore said to Peter: Put up thy sword into the scabbard. The chalice which My Father hath given Me, shall I not drink it?

All that take the sword Mt 26, 52- shall perish with the sword.— 53

Thinkest thou that I cannot ask My Father, and He will give me presently more than twelve Legions of Angels?

Apprehending Him, they Lx 22, 54- led Him to the High Priest's 62

house. But Peter followed afar off.—And when they had kindled a fire in the midst of the hall, and were sitting about it, Peter was in the midst of them.—Whom when a certain servant-maid had seen sitting at the light, and had earnestly beheld him, she said: This man also was with Him.—But he denied Him, saying: Woman, I know Him not.—And after a little while, another seeing



him, said : Thou also art one of them. But Peter said : O man, I am not.—And after the space, as it were, of one hour, another certain man affirmed, saying : Of a truth, this man was also with Him : for He is also a Galilean.—And Peter said : Man, I know not what thou sayest. And immediately as he was yet speaking, the cock crew.—And the Lord turning, looked on Peter. And Peter remembered the word of the Lord, as He had said : Before the cock crow, thou shalt deny Me thrice.—And Peter going out, wept bitterly.

*Mt 26, 57-* They, holding Jesus, led  
58 Him to Caiphas, the High Priest, where the Scribes and the Ancients were assembled.—And Peter followed Him afar off, even to the court of the High Priest. And going in, he sat with the servants, that he might see the end.

*Mk 14, 54* He sat with the servants at the fire, and warmed himself.

*Jn 18, 15-* Simon Peter followed Jesus,  
18 and so did another Disciple. And that Disciple was known to the High Priest, and went in with Jesus, into the court of the High Priest. — But Peter stood at the door without. The other Disciple, therefore, who was known to the High Priest, went out and spoke to the portress, and brought in Peter.—The maid therefore that was portress, saith to Peter : Art not thou also one of this Man's Disciples ? He saith : I am not.—Now the ser-

vants and ministers stood at a fire of coals, because it was cold, and warmed themselves. And with them was Peter also standing, and warming himself.

Now when Peter was in the *Mk 14, 66-*  
72 court below there cometh one of the maidservants of the High Priest.—And when she had seen Peter warming himself, looking on him, she saith : Thou also wast with Jesus of Nazareth.—But he denied, saying : I neither know nor understand what thou sayest. And he went forth before the court, and the cock crew.—And again a maidservant seeing him, began to say to the standers-by : This is one of them.—But he denied again. And after awhile they that stood by said again to Peter : Surely thou art one of them : for thou art also a Galilean.—But he began to curse and to swear, saying : I know not this Man of whom you speak. — And immediately the cock crew again. And Peter remembered the word that Jesus had said unto him : Before the cock crow twice, thou shalt thrice deny Me. And he began to weep.

But Peter sat without in *Mt 26, 69-*  
75 the court, and there came to him a servant-maid, saying : Thou also wast with Jesus the Galilean.—But he denied before them all, saying : I know not what thou sayest.—And as he went out of the gate another maid saw him, and she saith to them that were there : This man also was with Jesus of Nazareth.

—And again he denied with an oath: That I know not the Man.—And after a little while they came that stood by, and said to Peter: Surely thou also art one of them: for even thy speech doth discover thee.—Then he began to curse and to swear that he knew not the Man. And immediately the cock crew.—And Peter remembered the word of Jesus which He had said: Before the cock crow, thou wilt deny Me thrice. And going forth, he wept bitterly.

10. PETER THE FIRST TO ENTER THE HOLY SEPULCHRE. THE RISEN CHRIST SENDS HIM A MESSAGE. THE FIRST APOSTLE TO WHOM CHRIST APPEARS. PETER'S TRANSPORT OF JOY AT SEEING JESUS ON THE SHORE. CASTS HIMSELF INTO THE SEA AFTER HIM. PETER'S SECOND MIRACULOUS DRAUGHT OF FISHES. JESUS INVITES HIM TO DINE WITH HIM ON THE SHORE.

*Lu* 24, 12

Peter rising up ran to the Sepulchre: and stooping down he saw the linen clothes laid by themselves, and went away wondering in himself at that which was come to pass.

1-10 On the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene cometh early, when it was yet dark, unto the Sepulchre: and she saw the stone taken away from the Sepulchre.—She ran therefore, and cometh to Simon Peter, and to the other disciple whom Jesus loved, and saith to them: They have taken away the Lord out of the Sepulchre,

and we know not where they have laid Him.—Peter therefore went out, and that other Disciple, and they came to the Sepulchre.—And they both ran together, and that other Disciple did out-run Peter, and came first to the Sepulchre.—And when he stooped down, he saw the linen cloths lying: but yet he went not in.—Then cometh Simon Peter, following him, and went into the Sepulchre, and saw the linen cloths lying.—And the napkin that had been about his head, not lying with the linen cloths, but apart, wrapt up into one place.—Then that other Disciple also went in, who came first to the Sepulchre: and he saw, and believed.—For as yet they knew not the Scripture that He must rise again from the dead.—The Disciples therefore departed again to their home.

Go, tell His Disciples and Peter that He goeth before you into Galilee: there you shall see Him as He told you. *Mk* 16, 7

The Lord hath risen indeed, *Lu* 24, 34 and hath appeared to Simon.

He was seen by Cephas; *1 C* 15, 5 and after that by the eleven.

After this Jesus showed Himself again to the Disciples at the Sea of Tiberias. And He showed Himself after this manner.—There were together Simon Peter, and Thomas who is called Didymus, and Nathanael who was of Cana of Galilee, and the sons of Zebedee, and two others of His Disciples.—Simon Peter saith to them:

I go a fishing. They say to him: We also come with thee. And they went forth and entered into the ship: and that night they caught nothing. — But when the morning was come, Jesus stood on the shore: yet the Disciples knew not that it was Jesus.—Jesus therefore said to them: Children, have you any meat? They answered Him: No.—He saith to them: Cast the net on the right side of the ship; and you shall find. They cast therefore: and now they were not able to draw it for the multitude of fishes.—That disciple therefore whom Jesus loved, said to Peter: It is the Lord. Simon Peter, when he heard that it was the Lord, girt his coat about him (for he was naked) and cast himself into the sea.—But the other Disciples came in the ship (for they were not far from the land, but as it were two hundred cubits) dragging the net with fishes.—As soon then as they came to land, they saw hot coals lying, and a fish laid thereon, and bread.—Jesus saith to them: Bring hither of the fishes which you have now caught.—Simon Peter went up, and drew the net to land, full of great fishes, one hundred fifty three. And although there were so many the net was not broken.—Jesus saith to them: Come, and dine. And none of them who were at meat, durst ask Him: Who art Thou? knowing that it was the Lord.—And Jesus cometh and taketh bread, and giveth them,

and fish in like manner.—This is now the third time that Jesus was manifested to His Disciples, after He was risen from the dead.

11. HIS THREE DECLARATIONS OF LOVE OF JESUS, WHEREUPON HE IS COMMISSIONED TO FEED AND SHEPHERD HIS SHEEP AND HIS LAMBS, *i.e.*, THE WHOLE FLOCK. HIS CURIOSITY ABOUT JOHN CHECKED, AND HIS MARTYRDOM ON THE CROSS FORETOLD BY JESUS.

When they had dined, *Jn 21, 15-*  
 Jesus saith to Simon Peter: 16  
 Simon son of John, lovest thou Me more than these? He saith to Him: Yea, Lord, Thou knowest that I love Thee. He saith to Him: Feed My lambs.—He saith to him again: Simon son of John, lovest thou Me? He saith to Him: Yea, Lord, Thou knowest that I love Thee. He saith to him: Feed My lambs.—He said to Him the third time: Simon son of John, lovest thou Me? Peter was grieved, because He said to him the third time, Lovest thou Me? And he said to Him; Lord, Thou knowest all things: Thou knowest that I love Thee. He said to him: Feed My sheep.—Amen, amen, I say to thee: when thou wast younger, thou didst gird thyself, and didst walk where thou wouldst. But when thou shalt be old, thou shalt stretch forth thy hands, and another shall gird thee, and lead thee whither thou wouldst not.—And this He

said, signifying by what death he should glorify God. And when He had said this, He saith to him: Follow Me. —Peter turning about, saw that disciple whom Jesus loved following, who also leaned on His Breast at supper, and said: Lord, who is he that shall betray Thee?—Him therefore when Peter had seen, he saith to Jesus: Lord, and what shall this man do?—Jesus saith to him: So I will have him to remain till I come, what is it to thee? follow thou Me. —This saying therefore went abroad among the brethren, that that Disciple should not die. And Jesus did not say to him: He should not die; but, So I will have him to remain till I come, what is it to thee? —This is that Disciple who giveth testimony of these things, and hath written these things: and we know that his testimony is true. —But there are also many other things which Jesus did: which if they were written every one, the world itself, I think, would not be able to contain the books that should be written.

12. HIS RETIREMENT AND PRAYER "IN THE UPPER ROOM," WAITING FOR THE HOLY GHOST. PETER AS HEAD OF THE CHURCH PROPOSES THE ELECTION OF A NEW APOSTLE IN JUDAS' PLACE.

Act 1, 12-23

They returned to Jerusalem, from the Mount that is called Olivet, which is nigh Jerusalem, within a Sabbath-day's journey. —And when they were come in, they went up into an Upper Room, where abode Peter and John, James and Andrew, Philip and Thomas, Bartholomew and Matthew, James of Alphaeus and Simon Zelotes, and Jude the brother of James.—All these were persevering with one mind in prayer with the women, and Mary the Mother of Jesus, and with His brethren.—In those days Peter rising up in the midst of the brethren, said (now the number of persons together was about an hundred and twenty):—Men brethren, the Scripture must needs be fulfilled, which the Holy Ghost spoke before by the mouth of David concerning Judas, who was the leader of them that apprehended Jesus:—Who was numbered with us, and had obtained part of this ministry.—And he indeed had possessed a field of the reward of iniquity, and being hanged burst asunder in the midst: and all his bowels gushed out.—And it became known to all the inhabitants of Jerusalem: so that the same field was called in their tongue Haceldama, that is to say, The field of blood.—For it is written in the Book of Psalms: Let their habitation become desolate, and let there be none to dwell therein. And his bishopric let another take.—Wherefore of these men who have companied with us, all the time that the Lord Jesus came in, and went out among us,—Beginning from

the baptism of John, until the day wherein He was taken up from us, one of these must be made a witness with us of His Resurrection.—And they appointed two, Joseph called Barsabas, who was surnamed Justus, and Matthias.

13. HIS FIRST PASTORAL DISCOURSE. CONVERTS 3,000. CURES THE CRIPPLE. HIS SECOND PASTORAL DISCOURSE. CONVERTS 5,000. IN ENVY IS SEIZED, IMPRISONED, BROUGHT BEFORE THE SANHEDRIM. HIS INTREPID DEFENCE. HIS DISCHARGE.

Act 2, 14-41

Peter standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and spoke to them : Ye men of Judea, and all you that dwell in Jerusalem, be this known to you, and with your ears receive my words.—For these are not drunk, as you suppose, seeing it is but the third hour of the day.—But this is that which was spoken of by the Prophet Joel :—And it shall come to pass in the last days (saith the Lord), I will pour out of My Spirit upon all flesh : and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams.—And upon My servants indeed, and upon My handmaids will I pour out in those days of My Spirit, and they shall prophesy.—And I will shew wonders in the Heaven above, and signs on the earth beneath ; blood and fire, and vapour of smoke. — The sun shall be turned into

darkness, and the moon into blood, before The Great and Manifest Day of the Lord come.—And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call upon the Name of the Lord shall be saved.—Ye men of Israel, hear these words : Jesus of Nazareth, a Man approved of God among you, by miracles and wonders and signs which God did by Him in the midst of you, as you also know :—The same being delivered up by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, you by the hands of wicked men have crucified and slain.—Whom God hath raised up, having loosed the sorrows of hell, as it was impossible that He should be holden by it.—For David saith concerning Him : I foresaw the Lord before my face always : because He is at my right hand, that I may not be moved.—For this my heart hath been glad, and my tongue hath rejoiced : Moreover, my flesh also shall rest in hope.—Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, nor suffer Thy Holy One to see corruption.—Thou hast made known to me the ways of life : and Thou shalt make me full of joy with Thy countenance.—Ye men, brethren, let me freely speak to you of the Patriarch David : that he died and was buried : and his sepulchre is with us at the present day.—Whereas therefore he was a Prophet, and knew that God had sworn to him with an oath that of the fruit of his loins One should sit upon His

throne.—Foreseeing this, he spoke of the Resurrection of Christ. For neither was He left in hell, neither did His Flesh see corruption.—This Jesus hath God raised again, whereof all we are witnesses.—Being exalted therefore by the right hand of God, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, He hath poured forth this which you see and hear.—For David ascended not into Heaven, but He Himself said: The Lord said to my Lord: Sit Thou on My right hand—Until I make Thy enemies Thy footstool.—Therefore let all the House of Israel know most certainly that God hath made both Lord and Christ this same Jesus, Whom you have crucified.—Now when they had heard these things they had compunction in their heart, and said to Peter and to the rest of the Apostles: What shall we do, men and brethren?—But Peter said to them: Do penance, and be baptised every one of you in the Name of Jesus Christ, for the remission of your sins: and you shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.—For the promise is to you and to your children, and to all that are afar off, whomsoever the Lord our God shall call.—And with very many words did he testify and exhort them, saying: Save yourselves from this perverse generation.—They therefore that received His words were baptised, and there were added in that

day about three thousand souls.

Now Peter and John went *Ac 3, 1-26* up into the Temple, at the ninth hour of prayer.—And a certain man who was lame from his mother's womb, was carried; whom they laid every day at the gate of the Temple, which is called Beautiful, that he might ask alms of them that went into the Temple.—He, when he had seen Peter and John about to go into the Temple, asked to receive an alms.—But Peter with John fastening his eyes upon him, said: Look upon us.—But he looked earnestly upon them, hoping that he should receive something of them.—But Peter said: Silver and gold I have none: but what I have, I give thee: In the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, arise, and walk.—And taking him by the right hand, he lifted him up, and forthwith his feet and soles received strength.—And he leaping up stood, and walked and went in with them into the Temple, walking, and leaping, and praising God.—And all the people saw him walking and praising God.—And they knew him that it was he who sat begging alms at the Beautiful gate of the Temple; and they were filled with wonder and amazement at that which had happened to him.—And as he held Peter and John, all the people ran to them to the Porch which is called Solomon's, wondering.—But Peter seeing, made answer to the people: Ye men of Israel,

why wonder you at this? or why look you upon us, as if by our virtue or power we had made this man to walk? —The God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, the God of our fathers, hath glorified His Son Jesus, Whom you indeed delivered up and denied before the face of Pilate, when he judged He should be released. — But you denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you. — But the Author of life you killed, Whom God hath raised from the dead, of which we are witnesses. — And in the Faith of His Name, this man whom you have seen and known, hath his name strengthened; and the faith which is by Him, hath given this perfect soundness in the sight of you all. — And now, brethren, I know that you did it through ignorance, as did also your rulers. — But those things which God before had showed by the mouth of all the Prophets, that His Christ should suffer, He hath so fulfilled. — Be penitent, therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out. — That when the times of refreshment shall come from the Presence of the Lord, and He shall send Him Who hath been preached unto you, Jesus Christ, — Whom Heaven indeed must receive until the times of the restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of His holy Prophets from the beginning of the world. — For Moses said: A Prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me: Him you shall hear according to all things whatsoever He shall speak to you. — And it shall be, that every soul which will not hear that Prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people. — And all the Prophets from Samuel and afterwards, who have spoken, have told of these days. — You are the children of the Prophets and of the testament which God made to our fathers, saying to Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed. — To you first God raising up His Son, hath sent Him to bless you: that every one may convert himself from his wickedness.

As they were speaking to the people, the Priests and the officer of the Temple and the Sadducees came upon them, — Being grieved that they taught the people, and preached in Jesus the resurrection from the dead: — And they laid hands upon them, and put them in hold till the next day: for it was now evening. — But many of them who had heard the Word, believed: and the number of the men was made five thousand. — And it came to pass on the morrow, that their princes, and ancients, and scribes were gathered together in Jerusalem: — And Annas the High Priest, and Caiphas, and John, and Alexander, and as many as were of the kindred of the High Priest. — And setting them in the midst, they asked: By what

Ac 4, 1-37

power, or by what name have you done this?—Then Peter, filled with the Holy Ghost, said to them: Ye princes of the people and ancients, hear:—If we this day are examined concerning the good deed done to the infirm man, by what means he hath been made whole,—Be it known to you all, and to all the people of Israel, that by the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ of Nazareth, Whom you crucified, Whom God hath raised from the dead, even by Him this man standeth here before you whole.—This is the Stone which was rejected by you the builders; Which is become the head of the corner.—Neither is there Salvation in any other.—For there is no other name under Heaven given to men, whereby we must be saved:—Now seeing the constancy of Peter and of John, understanding that they were illiterate and ignorant men, they wondered; and they knew them that they had been with Jesus.—Seeing the man also who had been healed, standing with them, they could say nothing against it.—But they commanded them to go aside out of the council: and they conferred among themselves.—Saying: What shall we do to these men? for indeed a known miracle hath been done by them, to all the inhabitants of Jerusalem: it is manifest, and we cannot deny it.—But that it may be no farther spread among the people, let us threaten them, that they speak no more in this Name to any man.—And calling them, they charged them not to speak at all, nor teach in the Name of Jesus.—But Peter and John answering, said to them: If it be just in the sight of God, to hear you rather than God, judge ye.—For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard.—But they threatening, sent them away: not finding how they might punish them, because of the people; for all men glorified what had been done, in that which had come to pass.—For the man was above forty years old, in whom that miraculous cure had been wrought.—And being let go they came to their own company, and related all that the chief priests and ancients had said to them.—Who having heard it, with one accord lifted up their voice to God, and said: Lord, Thou art He that didst make Heaven and earth, the sea, and all things that are in them.—Who by the Holy Ghost, by the mouth of our father David Thy servant, hast said: Why have the Gentiles raged, and the people meditated vain things?—The kings of the earth stood up, and the princes assembled together against the Lord, and against His Christ.—For of a truth there assembled together in this city against Thy Holy Child Jesus Whom Thou hast anointed, Herod, and Pontius Pilate, with the Gentiles and the people of Israel.—To do what Thy Hand and Thy counsel decreed to be done.—And now, Lord, be-



hold their threatenings, and grant unto Thy servants, that with all confidence they may speak Thy Word, — By stretching forth Thy Hand to cures and signs and wonders, to be done by the Name of Thy Holy Son Jesus.— And when they had prayed, the place was moved wherein they were assembled : and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spoke the Word of God with confidence.—And the multitude of believers had but one heart and one soul : neither did any one say that aught of the things which he possessed was his own, but all things were common unto them.—And with great power did the Apostles give testimony of the Resurrection of Jesus Christ our Lord : and great grace was in them all.—For neither was there any one needy among them. For as many as were owners of lands or houses sold them, and brought the price of the things they sold,—And laid it down before the feet of the Apostles. And distribution was made to every one according as he had need.—And Joseph, who by the Apostles was surnamed Barnabas (which is by interpretation, a Levite, a Cyprian born,—Having land, sold it, and brought the price, and laid it at the feet of the Apostles.

14. REPROVES ANANIAS AND SAPHIRA FOR AVARICE. THEY FALL DEAD AT HIS FEET. HIS SHADOW CURES THE SICK AND DEMONIAOS. HE IS

THROWN INTO A COMMON PRISON. RELEASED BY AN ANGEL. HIS BRAVE DEFENCE. GAMALIEL'S INTERVENTION. PETER IS SCOURGED AND DISMISSED.

A certain man named Ananias, with Saphira his wife, sold a piece of land.—And by fraud kept back part of the price of the land, his wife being privy thereunto : and bringing a certain part of it, laid it at the feet of the Apostles.—And Peter said : Ananias, why hath satan tempted thy heart, that thou shouldst lie to the Holy Ghost, and by fraud keep part of the price of the land? —Whilst it remained, did it not remain to thee? and after it was sold, was it not in thy power? Why hast thou conceived this thing in thy heart? Thou hast not lied to men, but to God.—And Ananias hearing these words fell down, and gave up the ghost. And there came great fear upon all that heard it.—And the young men rising up, removed him, and carrying him out buried him.—And it was about the space of three hours after, when his wife, not knowing what had happened, came in.—And Peter said to her : Tell me, woman, whether you sold the land for so much? and she said : Yea, for so much.—And Peter said unto her : Why have you agreed together to tempt the Spirit of the Lord? Behold the feet of them who have buried thy husband are at the door, and they shall carry thee out.—Imme-

N N

diately she fell down before his feet, and gave up the ghost. And the young men coming in, found her dead: and carried her out, and buried her by her husband. —And there came great fear upon the whole Church, and upon all that heard these things. —And by the hands of the Apostles were many signs and wonders wrought among the people. And they were all with one accord, in Solomon's porch. —But of the rest no man durst join himself unto them: but the people magnified them.

**Ac5, 13-16** And the multitude of men and women who believed in the Lord was more increased: —Insomuch that they brought forth the sick into the streets, and laid them on beds and couches, that when Peter came, his shadow at the least might overshadow any of them, and they might be delivered from their infirmities. —And there came also together to Jerusalem a multitude out of the neighbouring cities, bringing sick persons, and such as were troubled with unclean spirits, who were all healed.

**Ac5, 17-18** Then the High Priest rising up, and all that were with him (which is the heresy of the Sadducees), were filled with envy. —And they laid hands on the Apostles, and put them in the common prison.

**Ac5, 19-28** But an Angel of the Lord by night opening the doors of the prison, and leading them out, said: —Go, and standing speak in the Tem-

ple to the people all the words of this life. —Who having heard this, early in the morning, entered into the Temple, and taught. And the High Priest coming, and they that were with him, called together the council, and all the ancients of the children of Israel, and they sent to the prison to have them brought. —But when the ministers came, and having opened the prison, found them not; they returned and told, —Saying: The prison indeed we found shut, with all diligence, and the keepers standing before the doors: but opening it, we found no man within. —Now when the magistrate of the Temple, and the chief Priests heard these words, they were in doubt concerning them, what would come to pass. —But one came and told them: Behold the men whom you put in prison, are in the Temple standing, and teaching the people. —Then went the magistrate with the ministers, and brought them without violence: for they feared the people, lest they should be stoned. —And when they had brought them, they set them before the council. And the High Priest asked them, —Saying: Commanding we commanded you that you should not teach in this Name: and behold you have filled Jerusalem with your doctrine, and you have a mind to bring the Blood of this Man upon us.

But Peter and the Apostles answering, said: We **Ac 5, 29-**

ought to obey God rather than men.—The God of our fathers hath raised up Jesus, Whom you put to death, hanging him upon a Tree.—Him hath God exalted with His right hand, to be Prince and Saviour, to give repentance to Israel, and remission of sins.—And we are witnesses of these things, and the Holy Ghost, Whom God hath given to all that obey Him.—When they had heard these things, they were cut to the heart, and they thought to put them to death.

Ac 5, 34-  
39

But one in the council rising up, a Pharisee, named Gamaliel, a doctor of the law, respected by all the people, commanded the men to be put forth a little while.—And he said to them: Ye men of Israel, take heed to yourselves what you intend to do, as touching these men.—For before these days rose up Theodas, affirming himself to be somebody, to whom a number of men, about four hundred, joined themselves: who was slain: and all that believed him were scattered and brought to nothing.—After this man rose up Judas of Galilee in the days of the enrolling, and drew away the people after him: he also perished; and all, even as many as consented to him, were dispersed.—And now therefore I say to you, refrain from these men, and let them alone: for if this counsel or this work be of men, it will come to nought.—But if it be of God, you cannot over-

throw it; lest perhaps you be found even to fight against God. And they consented to him.

And calling in the Apostles, after they had scourged them, they charged them that they should not speak at all in the Name of Jesus, and they dismissed them.—And they indeed went from the presence of the council rejoicing, that they were accounted worthy to suffer reproach for the Name of Jesus.—And every day they ceased not, in the Temple, and from house to house, to teach and preach Christ Jesus.

Ac 5, 40-  
42

15. HE CONFIRMS CONVERTS IN SAMARIA. DENOUNCES SIMON MAGUS. RETURNS TO JERUSALEM, WHERE HE RECEIVES A FORTNIGHT'S VISIT FROM ST. PAUL. IS NAMED THE APOSTLE OF THE CIRCUMCISION. GOES TO LYDDA. CURES THERE ENNEAS. RAISES TABITHA TO LIFE AT JAFFA.

Then the Apostles who were in Jerusalem, had heard that Samaria had received the Word of God: they sent unto them Peter and John.—Who when they were come, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Ghost.—For He was not as yet come upon any of them: but they were only baptised in the Name of the Lord Jesus.—Then they laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost.

Ac 8, 14-  
17

And when Simon saw that by the imposition of the hand of the Apostles the

Ac 8, 18-  
24

Holy Ghost was given, he offered them money.—Saying: Give me also this power, that on whomsoever I shall lay my hands, he may receive the Holy Ghost. But Peter said to him:—Keep thy money to thyself to perish with thee, because thou hast thought that the gift of God may be purchased with money.—Thou hast no part nor lot in this matter. For thy heart is not right in the sight of God.—Do penance therefore from this thy wickedness: and pray to God, if perhaps this thought of thy heart may be forgiven thee.—For I see thou art in the gall of bitterness, and in the bonds of iniquity.—Then Simon answering, said: Pray you for me to the Lord, that none of these things which you have spoken may come upon me.

Ac 8, 25

And they indeed having testified and preached the Word of the Lord: returned to Jerusalem, and preached the Gospel to many countries of the Samaritans.

Ga 1, 18-19

After three years I went to Jerusalem to see Peter, and I tarried with him fifteen days.—But other of the Apostles I saw none: saving James the brother of the Lord.

Ga 2, 7-9

When they had seen that to me was committed the Gospel of the uncircumcised, as to Peter was that of the circumcision.—(For He Who wrought in Peter to the Apostleship of the circumcision, wrought in me also among the Gentiles.)—And when they had known the

grace that was given to me, James and Cephas and John, who seemed to be pillars, gave to me and Barnabas the right hands of fellowship: that we should go unto the Gentiles, and they unto the circumcision.

And it came to pass, that Peter, as he passed through, visiting all, came to the saints who dwelt at Lydda. Ac 9, 32

And he found there a certain man named Eneas, who had kept his bed for eight years, who was ill of the palsy.—And Peter said to him: Eneas, the Lord Jesus Christ healeth thee: arise, and make thy bed. And immediately he arose.—And all that dwelt at Lydda and Saron saw him: who were converted to the Lord. Ac 9, 33-35

And in Joppe there was a certain disciple named Tabitha, which by interpretation is called Dorcas. This woman was full of good works and alms-deeds which she did.—And it came to pass in those days that she was sick and died. Whom when they had washed, they laid her in an upper chamber.—And forasmuch as Lydda was nigh to Joppe, the disciples hearing that Peter was there, sent unto him two men, desiring him that he would not be slack to come unto them.—And Peter rising up went with them. And when he was come, they brought him into the upper chamber: and all the widows stood about him weeping, and showing him the coats and garments which Dorcas made them.—And they all

being put forth: Peter kneeling down prayed, and turning to the body he said: Tabitha, arise. And she opened her eyes: and seeing Peter, she sat up.—And giving her his hand he lifted her up. And when he had called the saints and the widows, he presented her alive.—And it was made known throughout all Joppe: and many believed in the Lord.—And it came to pass that he abode many days in Joppe, with one Simon a tanner.

16. HIS MIDDAY PRAYER. HIS ECSTASY OF MIND. HIS VISION OF OLEAN AND UN-OLEAN BEASTS. GOES TO CESAREA, WARNED BY AN ANGEL TO BAPTISE CORNELIUS. HIS DISCOURSE ON THE OCCASION. HE DEFENDS THE RECEPTION OF GENTILES INTO THE CHURCH.

*Ac 10, 1-8* Now there was a certain man in Cesarea, named Cornelius, a centurion of that which is called the Italian band,—A religious man, and fearing God with all his house, giving much alms to the people, and always praying to God.—This man saw in a vision manifestly, about the ninth hour of the day, an Angel of God coming in unto him, and saying to him: Cornelius.—And he beholding him, being seized with fear, said: What is it, Lord? And He said to him: Thy prayers and thy alms are ascended for a memorial in the sight of God.—And now send men to Joppe, and call hither one Simon, who is surnamed

Peter:—He lodgeth with one Simon a tanner, whose house is by the seaside: he will tell thee what thou must do.—And when the Angel who spoke to him was departed, he called two of his household servants, and a soldier who feared the Lord, of them that were under him:—To whom when he had related all, he sent them to Joppe.

And on the next day *Ac 10, 9-10* whilst they were going on their journey, and drawing nigh to the city, Peter went up to the higher parts of the house, to pray about the sixth hour.—And being hungry, he was desirous to taste somewhat. And as they were preparing there came upon him an ecstasy of mind.

And he saw the Heaven *Ac 10, 9-33* opened, and a certain vessel descending, as it were a great linen sheet let down by the four corners from Heaven to the earth.—Wherein were all manner of four-footed beasts, and creeping things of the earth, and fowls of the air.—And there came a voice to him: Arise, Peter, kill, and eat.—And Peter said: Far be it from me, Lord; for I never did eat anything that is common and unclean.—And the voice spoke to him again the second time. That which God hath cleansed, do not thou call common.—And this was done thrice: and presently the vessel was taken up into Heaven.—Now whilst Peter was doubting within himself, what the vision that he had

seen should mean: behold the men who were sent from Cornelius, inquiring for Simon's house, stood at the gate.—And when they had called, they asked, if Simon, who is surnamed Peter, were lodged there?—And as Peter was thinking of the vision, the Spirit said to him: Behold, three men seek thee.—Arise, therefore, get thee down and go with them, doubting nothing: for I sent them.—Then Peter going down to the men, said: Behold I am he whom you seek: what is the cause for which you are come?—Who said: Cornelius a centurion, a just man and one that feareth God, and having good testimony from all the nation of the Jews, received an answer of an holy Angel, to send for thee into his house, and to hear words of thee.—Then bringing them in, he lodged them. And the day following he arose and went with them: and some of the brethren from Joppe accompanied them.—And the morrow after he entered into Cesarea. Now Cornelius waited for them, having called together his kinsmen and special friends.—And it came to pass, that when Peter was come in, Cornelius came to meet him, and falling at his feet adored.—But Peter lifted him up, saying: Arise, I myself also am a man.—And talking with him, he went in, and found many that were come together.—And he said to them: You know how abominable it is for a man that is a Jew, to

keep company or to come unto one of another nation: but God hath showed to me, to call no man common or unclean.—For which cause, making no doubt, I came when I was sent for. I ask therefore, for what cause you have sent for me?—And Cornelius said: Four days ago, till this hour, I was praying in my house, at the ninth hour, and behold a man stood before me in white apparel, and said:—Cornelius, thy prayer is heard, and thy alms are had in remembrance, in the sight of God.—Send therefore to Joppe, and call hither Simon, who is surnamed Peter: he lodgeth in the house of Simon a tanner by the seaside.—Immediately therefore I sent to thee: and thou hast done well in coming. Now therefore all we are present in thy sight, to hear all things whatsoever are commanded thee by the Lord.

And Peter opening his mouth, said: In very deed I perceive that God is not a respecter of persons.—But in every nation, he that feareth Him, and worketh justice, is acceptable to Him.—God sent the Word to the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ (He is Lord of all).—You know the Word which hath been published through all Judea: for it began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached, —Jesus of Nazareth: how God anointed Him with the Holy Ghost, and with power, Who went about doing good, and healing all that were

Ac 10, 34-48

oppressed by the devil, for God was with Him.—And we are witnesses of all things that He did in the land of the Jews and in Jerusalem, Whom they killed, hanging Him upon a Tree.—Him God raised up the third day, and gave Him to be made manifest.—Not to all the people, but to witnesses pre-ordained by God, even to us, who did eat and drink with Him after He rose again from the dead :—And He commanded us to preach to the people, and to testify that it is He Who was appointed by God to be Judge of the living and of the dead.—To Him all the Prophets give testimony, that through His Name all receive remission of sins, who believe in Him.—While Peter was yet speaking these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them that heard the Word.—And the faithful of the circumcision, who came with Peter, were astonished, for that the grace of the Holy Ghost was poured out upon the Gentiles also.—For they heard them speaking with tongues, and magnifying God.—Then Peter answered : Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptised who have received the Holy Ghost as well as we ?—And he commanded them to be baptised in the Name of the Lord Jesus Christ. Then they desired him to tarry with them some days.

Act 11, 1-18 And the Apostles and brethren, who were in Judea, heard that the Gentiles also had received the Word of God.—And when Peter was

come up to Jerusalem they that were of the circumcision contended with him.—Saying : Why didst thou go in to men uncircumcised, and didst eat with them ?—But Peter began and declared to them the matter in order, saying :—I was in the city of Joppe praying, and I saw in an ecstasy of mind a vision, a certain vessel descending, as it were a great sheet let down from Heaven by four corners, and it came even unto me.—Into which looking, I considered, and saw four-footed creatures of the earth, and beasts, and creeping things, and fowls of the air :—And I heard also a voice saying unto me : Arise, Peter, kill, and eat.—And I said : Not so, Lord : for nothing common or unclean hath ever entered into my mouth.—And the voice answered again from Heaven : What the Lord hath made clean, do not thou call common.—And this was done three times : and all were taken up again into Heaven.—And behold, immediately there were three men come to the house wherein I was, sent to me from Cesarea.—And the Spirit said to me, that I should go with them, nothing doubting. And these six brethren went with me, also : and we entered into the man's house.—And he told us, how he had seen an Angel in his house, standing and saying to him : Send to Joppe, and call hither Simon, who is surnamed Peter,—Who shall speak to thee words, whereby thou shalt be

saved, and all thy house.—And when I had begun to speak, the Holy Ghost fell upon them, as upon us also in the beginning.—And I remembered the word of the Lord, how that He said: John indeed baptised with water, but you shall be baptised with the Holy Ghost.—If then God gave them the same grace, as to us also who have believed in the Lord Jesus Christ: who was I, that could withstand God?—Having heard these things, they held their peace, and glorified God, saying: God then hath also to the Gentiles given repentance unto life.

17. CAST BY HEROD INTO PRISON: PRAYED FOR BY THE CHURCH: RELEASED BY AN ANGEL. PETER'S DISCOURSE AT THE GENERAL COUNCIL OF JERUSALEM. A DECREE PASSED THAT GENTILE CONVERTS WERE NOT TO BE HELD TO JEWISH CEREMONIES. SOME CALLED THEMSELVES BY HIS NAME.

*Ac 12, 1-4* At the same time Herod the king stretched forth his hands, to afflict some of the Church.—And he killed James the brother of John with the sword.—And seeing that it pleased the Jews, he proceeded to take up Peter also. Now it was in the days of the Azymes.—And when he had apprehended him, he cast him into prison, delivering him to four files of soldiers to be kept, intending after the Pasch to bring him forth to the people.

*Ac 12, 5-19* Peter therefore was kept in prison. But prayer was

made without ceasing by the Church unto God for him.—And when Herod would have brought him forth, the same night Peter was sleeping between two soldiers, bound with two chains: and the keepers before the door, kept the prison.—And behold an Angel of the Lord stood by him: and a light shined in the room: and he striking Peter on the side, raised him up, saying: Arise quickly. And the chains fell off from his hands.—And the Angel said to him: Gird thyself, and put on thy sandals. And he did so. And he said to him: Cast thy garment about thee, and follow me.—And going out he followed him, and he knew not that it was true which was done by the Angel: but thought he saw a vision.—And passing through the first and the second ward, they came to the iron gate that leadeth to the city, which of itself opened to them. And going out, they passed on through one street: and immediately the Angel departed from him.—And Peter coming to himself, said: Now I know in very deed that the Lord hath sent His Angel, and hath delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and from all the expectation of the people of the Jews.—And considering, he came to the house of Mary the mother of John, who was surnamed Mark, where many were gathered together and praying.—And when he knocked at the door of the gate, a dam-



ael came to hearken, whose name was Rhode.—And as soon as she knew Peter's voice, she opened not the gate for joy, but running in she told that Peter stood before the gate.—But they said to her: Thou art mad. But she affirmed that it was so. Then said they: It is his Angel.—But Peter continued knocking. And when they had opened, they saw him, and were astonished.—But he beckoning to them with his hand to hold their peace, told how the Lord had brought him out of prison, and he said: Tell these things to James and to the brethren. And going out he went into another place.—Now when day was come, there was no small stir among the soldiers, what was become of Peter.—And when Herod had sought for him, and found him not: having examined the keepers, he commanded they should be put to death: and going down from Judea to Cesarea, he abode there.

Ac 15, 1-  
11

Some coming down from Judea, taught the brethren: That except you be circumcised after the manner of Moses, you cannot be saved.—And when Paul and Barnabas had no small contest with them, they determined that Paul and Barnabas, and certain others of the other side, should go up to the Apostles and priests to Jerusalem, about this question. — They therefore being brought on their way by the Church, passed through Phenice and Samaria, relating the conversion of the Gentiles: and they caused great joy to all the brethren.—And when they were come to Jerusalem, they were received by the Church and by the Apostles and ancients, declaring how great things God had done with them.—But there arose some of the sect of the Pharisees that believed, saying: They must be circumcised, and be commanded to observe the Law of Moses.—And the Apostles and ancients assembled to consider of this matter.—And when there had been much disputing, Peter rising up said to them: Men brethren, you know that in former days God made choice among us, that by my mouth the Gentiles should hear the Word of the Gospel, and believe.—And God Who knoweth the hearts gave testimony, giving unto them the Holy Ghost as well as to us,—And put no difference between us and them, purifying their hearts by faith.—Now therefore why tempt you God, to put a yoke upon the necks of the disciples, which neither our fathers nor we have been able to bear?—But by the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we believe to be saved, in like manner as they also.

Every one of you saith: I indeed am of Paul: and I am of Apollo: and I of Cephas: and I of Christ. 1 C1, 12

18. REVISITS ANTIOCH, HIS FIRST SEE. HE IS CORRECTED BY S. PAUL. HIS HUMILITY UNDER IT. HE PRAISES S.

PAUL : TESTIFIES TO THE INSPIRATION OF HIS WRITINGS. HIS WARNINGS AGAINST PRIVATE INTERPRETATION OF HOLY SCRIPTURE.

Ga 2, 11-16

When Cephas was come to Antioch, I withstood him to the face, because he was to be blamed.—For before that some came from James, he did eat with the Gentiles: but when they were come, he withdrew and separated himself, fearing them who were of the circumcision.—And to his dissimulation the rest of the Jews consented, so that Barnabas also was led by them into that dissimulation.—But when I saw that they walked not uprightly unto the truth of the Gospel, I said to Cephas before them all: If thou being a Jew, livest after the manner of the Gentiles, and not as the Jews do, how dost thou compel the Gentiles to live as do the Jews?—We by nature are Jews, and not of the Gentiles sinners.—

But knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the Law, but by the Faith of Jesus Christ; we also believe in Christ Jesus, that we may be justified by the Faith of Christ, and not by the works of the Law: because by the works of the Law no flesh shall be justified.

Be diligent that ye may 2 Pt 3, 14-15  
be found undefiled and unspotted to Him in peace:—And account the long-suffering of our Lord salvation, as also our most dear brother Paul according to the wisdom given him, hath written to you.

In [his Epistles] are certain things hard to be understood, which the unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other Scriptures, to their own destruction.—You therefore, brethren, knowing these things before, take heed, lest being led aside by the error of the unwise, you fall from your own steadfastness. 17

## 7.—THE CHURCH THE MYSTICAL BODY OF CHRIST.

Cl 1, 18

He is the Head of the Body the Church.

Ep 4, 4

(1) One Body.

(2) One Spirit.

(3) One Lord.

(4) One Faith.

Ep 4, 5

(5) One Baptism.

Ep 4, 6

(6) One God and Father of all, Who is above all, and through all, and in us all.

Ep 4, 11

To everyone of us is given grace according to the measure of the giving of Christ. He gave

(1) Some Apostles.

(2) And some Prophets.

(3) And other some Evangelists.

(4) And other some Pastors.

(5) And Doctors.

For the perfecting of the Ep 4, 12-16  
Saints, for the work of the Ministry, for the edifying of the Body of Christ:—Until we all meet into the unity of faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the

measure of the age of the fulness of Christ:—That henceforth we be no more children tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine by the wickedness of men, by cunning craftiness by which they lie in wait to deceive.—But doing the truth in charity, we may in all things grow up in Him Who is the Head, even Christ:—From Whom the whole Body being compacted and fitly joined together, by what every joint supplieth, according to the operation in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the Body unto the edifying of itself in charity.

1 C 10, 17 We, being many, are one bread, One Body, all that partake of One Bread.

C 13, 15 Let the peace of Christ rejoice in your hearts, wherein also you are called in One Body.

1 C 12, 4-7 There are diversities of graces, but the same Spirit;—And there are diversities of ministries, but the same Lord.—And there are diversities of operations, but the same God, Who worketh all in all.—But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man unto profit.

1 C 12, 8 To one, indeed, by the Spirit is given

(1) The Word of Wisdom.

(2) To another the Word of Knowledge.

(3) To another Faith.

1 C 12, 9 (4) To another the grace of Healing.

(5) To another the working of Miracles.

(6) To another Prophecy.

(7) To another the Dis-

cerning of Spirits.

(8) To another diverse kinds of tongues.

(9) To another Interpretation of speeches.

But all these things One 1 C 12, 11-13 and the same Spirit worketh, dividing to every one according as He will.—For as the body is one, and hath many members; and all the members of the body, whereas they are many, yet are one body, so also is Christ.—For in One Spirit were we all baptised in One Body, whether Jews, or Gentiles, whether bond, or free: and in One Spirit we have all been made to drink.

For the body also is not 1 C 12, 14-28 one member, but many.—If the foot should say, because I am not the hand, I am not of the body: is it therefore not of the body?—And if the ear should say, because I am not the eye, I am not of the body: is it therefore not of the body?—If the whole body were the eye: where would be the hearing? If the whole were hearing: where would be the smelling?—But now God hath set the member, every one of them in the body as it hath pleased Him.—And if they all were one member, where would be the body?—But now there are many members indeed, yet one body.—And the eye cannot say to the hand: I need not thy help; nor again the head to the feet: I have no need of you.—Yea much more those that seem to be the more feeble members of the body, are more necessary.—

And such as we think to be the less honourable members of the body, about these we put more abundant honour: and those that are our uncomely parts, have more abundant comeliness.—But our comely parts have no need: but God hath tempered the body together, giving to that which wanted the more abundant honour. — That there might be no schism in the body, but the members might be mutually careful one for another.—And if one member suffer any thing, all the members suffer with it: or, if one member glory, all the members rejoice with it.—Now you are the Body of Christ, and members of member.—And God indeed hath set some in the Church

- (1) First Apostles.
- (2) Secondly Prophets.
- (3) Thirdly Doctors.
- (4) After that miracles.
- (5) Then the graces of healings.
- (6) Helps.
- (7) Governments.
- (8) Kinds of tongues.
- (9) Interpretations of speeches.

Are all Apostles? Are all 1 C 12,29-31  
Prophets? Are all Doctors? 31

—Are all workers of miracles? Have all the grace of healing? Do all speak with tongues? Do all interpret? —But be zealous for the better gifts. And I shew unto you a yet more excellent way.

I Paul . . . rejoice in my sufferings for you, and fill up those things that are wanting of the sufferings of Christ, in my flesh for His Body, which is the Church. C 11, 24

As in one body we have Ro 12,4-8 many members, but all the members have not the same office:—So we being many, are One Body in Christ, and every one members one of another.—And having different gifts, according to the grace that is given us, whether Prophecy, to be used according to the proportion of faith;—Or Ministry, in ministering: or he that teacheth, in doctrine,—He that exhorteth in exhorting, he that giveth with simplicity, he that ruleth with carefulness, he that sheweth mercy with cheerfulness.

## 8.—THE HOLY SPIRIT IN HIS RELATION TO THE CHURCH.

### 1. ANNOUNCED BY THE PROPHETS.

Is 59, 19-21 They from the west shall fear the Name of the Lord: and they from the rising of the sun, His Glory: when He shall come as a violent stream, which the Spirit of the Lord driveth on:—And there shall come a Redeemer to Sion, and to them that

return from iniquity in Jacob, saith the Lord.—This is My Covenant with them, saith the Lord: My Spirit that is in Thee, and My words that I have put in thy mouth shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from hence-

forth and for ever.

*Is* 32, 14-  
18

The House is forsaken, the multitude of the City is left, darkness and obscurity are come upon its dens for ever. A joy of wild asses, the pastures of flocks,—Until the Spirit be poured upon us from on High: and the desert shall be as a Charnel, and Charnel shall be counted for a forest.—And judgment shall dwell in the wilderness, and Justice shall sit in Charnel.—And the work of Justice shall be peace, and the service of Justice quietness, and security for ever.—And My people shall sit in the Beauty of Peace, and in the Tabernacles of confidence, and in wealthy rest.

*Is* 44, 1-4

Now, hear, O Jacob, My servant, and Israel whom I have chosen.—Thus saith the Lord that made and formed thee, thy Helper from the womb: Fear not, O My servant Jacob, and thou most righteous whom I have chosen.—For I will pour out waters upon the thirsty ground, and streams upon the dry land: I will pour out My Spirit upon thy seed, and My blessing upon thy stock.—And they shall spring up among the herbs, as willows beside the running waters.

*Is* 2, 28-29

It shall come to pass after this, that I will pour out My Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy: your old men shall dream dreams, and your young men shall see visions.—Moreover upon My servants and hand-maids in those days I will pour forth My Spirit.

I will pour out upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the Spirit of grace, and of prayers: and they shall look upon Me, Whom they have pierced.

## 2. PROMISED BY OUR LORD.

I will ask the Father, and *Jn* 14, 16-17 He shall give you another Paraclete, that He may abide with you for ever.—The Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth Him not, nor knoweth Him: but you shall know Him, because He shall abide with you, and shall be in you.

I tell you the truth: it is *Jn* 16, 7-14 expedient to you that I go: for if I go not, the Paraclete will not come to you: but if I go, I will send Him to you.—And when He is come, He will convince the world of sin, and of justice, and of judgment.—Of sin: because they believed not in Me.—And of justice: because I go to the Father; and you shall see Me no longer.—And of judgment: because the prince of this world is already judged.—I have yet many things to say to you: but you cannot bear them now.—But when He, the Spirit of truth, is come, He will teach you all truth. For He shall not speak of Himself: but what things soever He shall hear, He shall speak, and the things that are to come He shall shew you.—He shall glorify Me: because He shall receive of Mine, and shall shew it to you.

When the Paraclete com- *Jn* 15, 26-27 eth Whom I will send you

from the Father, the Spirit of Truth, Who proceedeth from the Father, He shall give testimony of Me.

*Jn 7, 37-39*

On the last and great day of the Festivity, Jesus stood and cried, saying : If any man thirst, let him come to Me, and drink.—He that believeth in Me, as the Scripture saith, Out of his belly shall flow rivers of Living Water.—Now this He said of the Spirit which they should receive who believed in Him : for as yet the Spirit was not given, because Jesus was not yet glorified.

(3) DESCENDS UPON THE CHURCH TO ABIDE WITH HER UNCONDITIONALLY FOR EVER.

*Ac 2, 1-18*

When the days of the Pentecost were accomplished, they were all together in one place :—And suddenly there came a sound from Heaven, as of a mighty wind coming, and it filled the whole house where they were sitting.—And there appeared to them parted Tongues as it were of fire, and it sat upon every one of them :—And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they began to speak with divers tongues, according as the Holy Ghost gave them to speak.—Now there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men out of every nation under Heaven.—And when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded in mind, because that every man heard them speak in his own tongue.—And they were all amazed and wondered, saying : Be-

hold, are not all these, that speak, Galileans ?—And how have we heard, every man our own tongue wherein we were born ?—Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and inhabitants of Mesopotamia, Judea, and Cappadocia, Pontus and Asia,—Phrygia, and Pamphilia, Egypt, and the parts of Lybia about Cyrene, and strangers of Rome,—Jews also, and proselytes, Cretes, and Arabians : we have heard them speak in our own tongues the wonderful works of God.—And they were all astonished, and wondered, saying one to another : What meaneth this ?—But others mocking said : These men are full of new wine.—But Peter standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and spoke to them : Ye men of Judea, and all you that dwell in Jerusalem, be this known to you, and with your ears receive my words.—For these are not drunk, as you suppose, seeing it is but the third hour of the day ;—But this is that which was spoken of by the Prophet Joel :—And it shall come to pass, in the last days (saith the Lord), I will pour out of My Spirit upon all flesh : and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams.—And upon My servants indeed, and upon My handmaids will I pour out in those days of My Spirit, and they shall prophesy.

God hath not given us the Spirit of fear : but of power, and of love, and of sobriety. *2 Ti 1, 7*

- 2 T 1, 14 Keep the good thing committed to thy trust by the Holy Ghost, Who dwelleth in us.
- 1 T 1, 5-6 For our Gospel hath not been unto you in word only, but in power also, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much fulness, as you know what manner of men we have been among you for your sakes.—And you became followers of us, and of the Lord : receiving the Word in much tribulation, with joy of the Holy Ghost.
- It is the Spirit which testifieth that Christ is the Truth.—For there are three Who give testimony in Heaven,  
 (1) The Father,  
 (2) The Word,  
 (3) And the Holy Ghost, and these Three are One.  
 And there are three that give testimony on earth :  
 (1) The Spirit,  
 (2) And the Water,  
 (3) And the Blood, and these Three are One.  
 The Holy Ghost is in you.
- 1 Jn 5, 6-7  
 1 Jn 5, 8  
 1 C 6, 19

## 9.—ROME THE NEW JERUSALEM OF THE NEW LAW.\*

1. NAMES OF THE HOLY CITY.
- 2 K 5, 6-9 The King and all the men that were with him went to Jerusalem, to the Jebusites, the inhabitants of the land : and they said to David : Thou shalt not come in hither unless thou take away the blind and the lame that say : David shall not come in hither.—But David took the Castle of Sion, the same is the City of David.—For David had offered that day a reward to whosoever should strike the Jebusites and get up to the gutters of the tops of the houses, and take away the blind and the lame that hated the soul of David : therefore it is said in the proverb : The blind and the lame shall not come into the Temple.—And David
- went into the Castle, and called it, The City of David : and built round about from Mello and inwards.  
 The stream of the river maketh the City of God joyful ; the Most High hath sanctified His Own Tabernacle.  
 Look upon Sion, the City of our Solemnity : thy eyes shall see Jerusalem, a rich Habitation, a Tabernacle that cannot be removed ; neither shall the nails thereof be taken away for ever, neither shall any of the cords thereof be broken.  
 The Princes of the people dwelt at Jerusalem : but the rest of the people cast lots, to take one part in ten to dwell in Jerusalem, the Holy City, and nine parts in the other cities.
- Ps 45, 5  
 Is 33, 20  
 2 E 11, 1

\* Just as the Old Law was but a mere shadow of the New, so Jerusalem the Chief City of the old dispensation is but a shadow of Rome, the Central City of the New ; consequently the spiritual prerogatives ascribed in the Holy Scriptures to Jerusalem belong in even greater fulness to Rome.

3 K 8, 1 All the ancients of Israel, with the Princes of the Tribes and the heads of the families of the children of Israel were assembled to King Solomon in Jerusalem, that they might carry the Ark of the Covenant of the Lord out of the City of David, that is, out of Zion.

P 47, 3 With the joy of the whole earth is Mount Zion founded, on the sides of the north the City of the Great King.

P 75, 2-3 In Judea God is known: His Name is great in Israel. —And His place is in peace: and His Abode is in Zion.

#### 2. CHOSEN AND BELOVED BY GOD.

2 K 7, 10 I will appoint a Place for My people Israel, and I will plant them, and they shall dwell therein, and shall be disturbed no more: neither shall the children of iniquity afflict them any more as they did before.

2 P 6, 5-6 From the day that I brought My people out of the land of Egypt, I chose no city among all the tribes of Israel, for a House to be built in it to My Name: neither chose I any other man to be a ruler of My people Israel. —But I chose Jerusalem, that My Name might be there: and I chose David to set him over My people Israel.

4 K 19, 34-35 I will protect this City, and will save it for My Own sake, and for David, My servant's sake. —And it came to pass that night that an Angel of the Lord came and slew in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred and

eighty-five thousand. And when he arose early in the morning, he saw all the bodies of the dead.

#### 3. THE ABODE OF THE HIGH PRIEST.

The Heads of the Levites, 1 P 9, 34 Princes in their families, abode in Jerusalem.

That Disciple was known J 18, 15 to the High Priest.

#### 4. BELOVED BY GOD'S PEOPLE.

I rejoiced at the things P 121, 1-9 that were said to me: We shall go into the House of the Lord. —Our feet were standing in Thy Courts, O Jerusalem. — Jerusalem, which is built as a City, which is compact together. —For thither did the tribes go up, the tribes of the Lord: the testimony of Israel, to praise the Name of the Lord. —Because their seats have sat in judgment, seats upon the House of David. —Pray ye for the things that are for the peace of Jerusalem: and abundance for them that love thee. —Let peace be in thy strength: and abundance in thy towers. —For the sake of my brethren and of my neighbours, I spoke peace of thee. —Because of the House of the Lord our God, I have sought good things for thee.

Upon the rivers of Baby- P 136, 1-6 lon, there we sat and wept: when we remembered Zion. —On the willows in the midst thereof we hung up our instruments. —For there they that led us into captivity, required of us the words of



songs.—And they that carried us away said : Sing ye to us a hymn of the songs of Sion,—How shall we sing the song of the Lord in a strange land?—If I forget thee, O Jerusalem, let my right hand be forgotten.—Let my tongue cleave to my jaws if I do not remember thee,—If I make not Jerusalem the beginning of my joy.

Is 62 1-7 For Sion's sake I will not hold my peace, and for the sake of Jerusalem, I will not rest till her Just One come forth as brightness, and her Saviour be lighted as a lamp.—And the Gentiles shall see Thy Just One and all kings Thy Glorious One: and thou shalt be called by a new name, which the Mouth of the Lord shall name.—And thou shalt be a crown of glory in the Hand of the Lord and a royal diadem in the Hand of thy God.—Thou shalt no more be called Forsaken: and thy land shall no more be called Desolate: but thou shalt be called My pleasure in her, and thy land inhabited. Because the Lord hath been well pleased with thee; and thy land shall be inhabited.—For the young man shall dwell with the virgin, and thy children shall dwell in thee. And the bridegroom shall rejoice over the bride, and thy God shall rejoice over thee.—Upon thy walls, O Jerusalem, I have appointed watchmen all the day, and all the night, they shall never hold their peace. You that are mindful of the Lord, hold not your peace.—And give Him

no silence till He establish, and till He make Jerusalem a praise in the earth.

#### 5. BELOVED EVEN BY THE HEATHEN.

Artaxerxes kings of kings 1 E 7, 12-28  
to Esdras the Priest, the most learned Scribe of the law of the God of Heaven, greeting.—It is decreed by me, that all they of the people of Israel, and of the Priests, and of the Levites, thereof in my realm, that are minded to go into Jerusalem, should go with thee.—For thou art sent from before the king, and his seven counsellors to visit Judea and Jerusalem according to the law of thy God, which is in thy hand.—And to carry the silver and gold, which the king and his counsellors have freely offered to the God of Israel, whose Tabernacle is in Jerusalem.—And all the silver and gold that thou shalt find in all the province of Babylon, and that the people is willing to offer, and that the Priests shall offer of their own accord to the House of their God, which is in Jerusalem,—Take freely, and buy diligently with this money, calves, rams, lambs, with the sacrifices and libations of them, and offer them upon the Altar of the Temple of your God, that is in Jerusalem.—And if it seem good to thee, and to thy brethren to do anything with the rest of the silver and gold, do it according to the will of your God.—The vessels also, that are given thee for the ser-

O O

vice of the House of thy God, deliver thou in the sight of God in Jerusalem.—And whatsoever more there shall be need of for the House of thy God, how much soever thou shalt have occasion to spend, it shall be given out of the Treasury, and the king's exchequer, and by me.—I, Artaxerxes the king, have ordered and decreed to all the keepers of the public chest, that are beyond the river, that whatsoever Esdras the Priest, the Scribe of the law of the God of Heaven, shall require of you, you give it without delay,—Unto a hundred talents of silver, and unto a hundred cores of wheat, and unto a hundred bates of wine, and unto a hundred bates of oil, and salt without measure.—All that belongeth to the rites of the God of Heaven, let it be given diligently in the House of the God of Heaven: lest His wrath should be enkindled against the realm of the king, and of his sons.—We give you also to understand concerning all the Priests, and the Levites, and the singers, and the porters, and the Nathinites, and ministers of the House of this God, that you have no authority to impose toll or tribute, or custom upon them.—And thou, Esdras, according to the wisdom of thy God, which is in thy hand, appoint judges and magistrates, that may judge all the people, that is beyond the river, that is, for them who know the law of thy God, yea, and the ignorant teach ye freely.—And whosoever will not do the law of thy God, and the law of the king diligently, judgment shall be executed upon him, either unto death or unto banishment, or to the confiscation of goods, or at least to prison.—Blessed be the Lord the God of our fathers, Who hath put this in the king's heart, to glorify the House of the Lord, which is in Jerusalem.

## 10.—THE DOCTRINE OF PAPAL INFALLIBILITY.

### THE DEFINITION OF THE VATICAN COUNCIL.\*

#### I.

Lx 22, 31- The Lord said: Simon, sired to have you that he may  
32 Simon, behold satan hath de- sired you as wheat.—But I have  
prayed for THEE that THY

---

\* "Wherefore, faithfully adhering to the tradition received from the beginning of the Christian Faith, for the glory of God our Saviour, the exaltation of the Catholic Religion, and the salvation of the Christian people, we the Sacred Council approving, teach and define that it is a dogma divinely revealed, that the Roman Pontiff, WHEN HE SPEAKS EX CATHEDRA—that is, when discharging the office of Pastor and Teacher of all Christians, by reason of his supreme Apostolic authority, he defines a doctrine regarding faith or morals to be held by the whole Church, he by the Divine

faith fail not : and THOU being once converted, confirm thy brethren.

shall be bound also in Heaven : and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth, it shall be loosed also in Heaven.

## II.

*Mt* 16, 15- Jesus saith to them, But  
19 whom do you say that I am ?  
—Simon Peter answered and said : Thou art Christ, the Son of the Living God.— And Jesus answering, said to him :

1. Blessed art thou, Simon Bar-Jona : because flesh and blood hath not revealed it to thee, but My Father Who is in Heaven :

2. And I say to thee that thou art Peter [or Rock] ;

3. And on this Rock I will build My Church ;

4. And the gates of hell shall not prevail against it ;

5. And to thee I will give the Keys of the Kingdom of Heaven ;

6. And whatsoever thou shalt bind upon earth, it

## III.

Jesus said to Simon Peter : *Jn* 21, 15-  
Simon son of John, lovest thou Me more than these ? 17

He saith to Him : Yea, Lord,

Thou knowest that I love Thee. He saith to Him :

Feed My lambs.—He saith to Him again : Simon son of

John, lovest thou Me ? He saith to Him : Yea, Lord,

Thou knowest that I love Thee. He saith to him : Feed

My lambs.—He saith to him the third time : Simon son of

John, lovest thou Me ? Peter was grieved, because He said

to Him the third time, Lovest thou Me ? And He

said to Him : Lord, Thou knowest all things ; Thou

knowest that I love Thee. He said to Him : Feed My

sheep.

## 11.—ECCLÉSIASTICAL HIERARCHY.

*Ag* 2, 12 Thus saith the Lord of Hosts : Ask the Priests of the Law.

*Ma* 2, 7 The lips of the Priest shall keep knowledge, and they shall seek the Law at his mouth ; because he is the Angel of the Lord of Hosts.

*Nu* 27, 21 If anything be to be done, Eleazar the Priest shall con-

sult the Lord for him. He, and all the children of Israel with him, and the rest of the multitude, shall go out and go in at his word.

It doth not belong to thee, *2 P* 26, 18 Ozias, to burn incense to the Lord, but to the Priests, that is, to the sons of Aaron, who are consecrated for this min-

assistance promised to him in Blessed Peter, possesses that infallibility with which the Divine Redeemer willed that His Church should be endowed in defining doctrine regarding Faith or Morals, and that therefore such definitions of the said Roman Pontiff are of themselves unalterable and not from the consent of the Church."—*Sess. 4th, July 18, 1870.*

- istry.
- 1 C 12, 4 There are diversities of  
6 graces, but the same Spirit ;  
—And there are diversities  
of ministeries, but the same  
Lord ;—And there are diver-  
sities of operations, but the  
same God Who worketh all  
in all.
- 1 C 12, 28 God indeed hath set some  
in the Church : first Apostles,  
secondly Prophets, thirdly  
Doctors ; after that miracles ;  
then the graces of healings,  
helps, governments, kinds of  
tongues, interpretations of  
speeches.
- Mt 10, 2 The names of the twelve  
Apostles are these : the first,  
Simon who is called Peter.
- Mt 16, 19 I will give to thee the Keys
- of the Kingdom of Heaven.  
Feed My lambs, feed My  
sheep.  
Feed the flock of God  
which is among you, taking  
care of it not by constraint,  
but willingly, according to  
God : not for filthy lucre's  
sake, but voluntarily.—  
Neither as lording it over  
the clergy, but being made a  
pattern of the flock from the  
heart.  
When the Prince of pastors  
shall appear, you shall re-  
ceive a never-fading crown of  
glory.  
The Church that is in  
Babylon elected together  
with you, saluteth you, and  
so doth my son Mark.
- Jn 21, 17  
1 Pt 5, 2-3  
1 Pt 5, 4  
1 Pt 5, 13

## 12.—THE PASTORS OF THE CHURCH DERIVE THEIR MISSION FROM GOD.

- Jn 3, 15 I will give you pastors,  
according to My own Heart,  
and they shall feed you with  
knowledge and doctrine.
- Mt 9, 38 Pray ye the Lord of the  
harvest, that He send forth  
labourers into His harvest,
- Jn 7, 16 My doctrine is not Mine,  
but His that sent Me.
- 2 C 5, 18 All things are of God, Who  
hath reconciled us to Him-  
self by Christ ; and hath  
given to us the ministry of  
reconciliation.
- 2 C 5, 20 For Christ we are am-  
bassadors, God, as it were,  
exhorting by us.
- 1 C 4, 1-2 Let a man so account of us  
as of the ministers of Christ,  
and the dispensers of the  
mysteries of God.—Here now  
it is required among the dis-  
pensers, that a man be found  
faithful.
- Wo is unto me if I preach  
not the Gospel.  
For this cause I left thee  
in Crete, that thou shouldest  
set in order the things that  
are wanting, and shouldest  
ordain Priests in every city.  
What I forgave, if I have  
forgiven anything, for your  
sakes have I done it in the  
Person of Christ.  
[You] received me as an  
Angel of God, even as Christ  
Jesus.  
Blessed is he whom Thou  
hast chosen and taken to  
Thee : he shall dwell in Thy  
Courts.  
Blessed be he that cometh  
in the Name of the Lord.  
How beautiful upon the  
mountains are the feet of  
him that bringeth Good  
Tidings, and that preacheth
- 1 C 9, 16  
Tt 1, 5  
2 C 2, 10  
Ga 4, 11  
Ps 64, 5  
Ps 117, 26  
Is 52, 7-8

peace: of him that sheweth forth good, that preacheth Salvation, that saith to Sion: Thy God shall reign!—The voice of thy watchmen: they have lifted up their voice, they shall praise together: for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall convert Sion.

*Ez 33, 7* Thou, O son of man, I have made thee a watchman to the House of Israel: therefore thou shalt hear the Word from My Mouth, and shalt tell it them from Me.

*Mt 4, 19* Jesus saith to them: Come ye after Me, and I will make you to be fishers of men.

*Dt 33, 8-9* To Levi he said: Thy perfection, and thy doctrine be to thy holy man, whom thou hast proved in the temptation, and judged at the waters of contradiction.—Who hath said to his father, and to his mother: I do not know you; and to his brethren: I know you not, and their own children they have not known. These have kept Thy Word, and observed Thy Covenant.

*Mt 10, 40* He that receiveth you, receiveth Me: and he that receiveth Me, receiveth Him that sent Me.

*Le 21, 6, 10* They shall be holy to their God, and shall not profane His Name: for they offer the burnt-offering of the Lord, and the bread of their God, and therefore they shall be holy.—The High-Priest, that is to say, the Priest, that is the greatest among his brethren, upon whose head the oil of unction hath been poured, and whose hands have been consecrated for the Priesthood,

and who hath been vested with the holy vestments, shall not uncover his head, he shall not rend his garments.

He said to [His Apostles]: *Mt 16, 16* Go ye into the whole world, and preach the Gospel to every creature.

Go: Behold I send you as *Lu 10, 3* lambs among wolves.—Into *5-6, 16*

whatsoever house you enter, first say: Peace be to this house:—And if the son of peace be there, your peace shall rest upon him: but if not, it shall return to you.—He that heareth you, heareth Me: and he that despiseth you, despiseth Me. And he that despiseth Me, despiseth Him that sent Me.

We will give ourselves continually to prayer, and to the ministry of the Word. *Ac 6, 4*

We are God's coadjutors: *1 C 3, 9* you are God's husbandry, you are God's building.

As we were approved of *1 T 2, 4* God, that the Gospel should be committed to us; even so we speak, not as pleasing men, but God, Who proveth our hearts.

If also I should boast *2 C 10, 8* somewhat more of our power, which the Lord hath given us unto edification, and not for your destruction; I should not be ashamed.

The eleven Disciples went *Mt 28, 16* into Galilee, unto the mountain where Jesus had appointed them.—And Jesus

coming, spoke to them, saying: All power is given Me in Heaven and in earth.—Go ye, therefore, and teach all nations; baptising them

(1) In the Name of the Father,

(2) And of the Son,

(3) And of the Holy Ghost.—

Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you; and behold, I am with you all days, even to the consummation of

the world.

You shall receive the power *Ac* 1, 8 of the Holy Ghost coming upon you, and you shall be witnesses unto Me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea, and Samaria, and even to the uttermost parts of the earth.

### 13.—LEGISLATIVE POWER.

*He* 13, 17 Obey your Prelates, and be subject to them. For they watch, as being to render an account of your souls.

*Jn* 20, 21 As the Father hath sent Me, so I also send you.

*Ac* 15, 28-29 For it hath seemed good to the Holy Ghost and to us, to lay no farther burden upon you than these necessary things.—That you abstain from things sacrificed to idols, and from blood and from fornication.

*Ac* 15, 41 He went through Syria and Cilicia, confirming the churches; commanding them to keep the precepts of the Apostles and the Ancients.

*2 C* 13, 10 I write these things being absent, that, being present, I may not deal more severely, according to the power which the Lord hath given me unto edification, and not unto destruction.

*1 C* 4, 21 What will you? shall I come to you with a rod, or in charity, and in the spirit of meekness?

*1 C* 5, 3-5 I indeed absent in body, but present in spirit, have already judged as though I were present, him that hath so done.—In the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, you being gathered together and my spirit, with the power of our Lord Jesus;—To deliver

such a one to satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ.

Names and types of the Priests of the Church:

1. Priests. *Lu* 17, 4
2. Priest of the Most High God. *Ge* 14, 18
3. A Priest for ever. *He* 5, 6
4. A Priest according to the order of Melchisedech. *He* 7, 17
5. Priests of God and of Christ. *Ap* 20, 6
6. Priests of the Church. *Ja* 5, 14
7. Sacrificing Priests. *Lu* 22, 19
8. Ministers of the Altar. *Jl* 1, 13
9. Ministers of Christ. *1 C* 4, 1
10. Dispensers of the Mysteries of God. *1 C* 4, 1
11. The Seat of the Lord. *Jn* 20, 21
12. The Chosen of our Lord. *Jn* 15, 16
13. The Representatives of Christ. *Lu* 10, 16
14. Judges. *Mt* 19, 28
15. The Absolvers of Sin. *Jn* 20, 23
16. Spiritual Fathers. *1 C* 4, 15
17. Princes of God. *1 P* 24, 5
18. Princes of the Sanctuary. *Eci* 45, 30
19. Mediators. *Eci* 45, 29
20. The Anointed Ones. *Nu* 3, 3
21. An Appeaser of God for Israel. *Eci* 45, 29
22. The Walls of Jerusalem. *Ap* 21, 18

<i>Ca</i> 3, 3	23. The Keepers of the City.	41. Pastors of the Flock. 1 <i>Pt</i> 5, 2-4
<i>Ex</i> 3, 17	24. Watchman.	42. Husbandmen. <i>Jl</i> 1, 11
<i>La</i> 4, 1	25. The Stones of the Sanctuary.	43. Labourers. <i>Mt</i> 9, 37
2 <i>C</i> 5, 20	26. Ambassadors.	44. Ploughers. 1 <i>C</i> 9, 10
1 <i>C</i> 3, 9	27. God's Coadjutors.	45. Sowers. <i>Mk</i> 4, 14
<i>Ag</i> 1, 13	28. Messengers of the Lord.	46. Planters. <i>Je</i> 31, 5
<i>Ro</i> 10, 13-15	29. Preachers of the Gospel.	47. Vine-dressers. <i>Jl</i> 1, 11
<i>Is</i> 52, 7	30. Preachers of Salvation.	48. Grape-gatherers. <i>Je</i> 49, 9
<i>Is</i> 52, 7	31. Preachers of Peace.	49. Reapers. <i>Jn</i> 4, 38
<i>Mk</i> 16, 15	32. Preachers of the Gospel.	50. The Builders. <i>Is</i> 49, 17
<i>Mt</i> 28, 19	33. Teachers of all nations.	51. Hunters. <i>Je</i> 16, 16
<i>Ma</i> 2, 7	34. Keepers and Teachers of Knowledge.	52. Soldiers to God. 2 <i>Ti</i> 2, 4
<i>Is</i> 40, 9	35. Bringers of Good Tidings.	53. Sailors. 3 <i>K</i> 9, 27
<i>Mk</i> 1, 3	36. A Voice crying in the Desert.	54. Serpents, wise as. <i>Mt</i> 10, 16
<i>Je</i> 16, 16	37. Fishermen.	55. Doves, simple as. <i>Mt</i> 10, 16
<i>Mk</i> 1, 17	38. Fishers of Men.	56. Lambs among wolves. <i>Lu</i> 10, 3
<i>Ez</i> 34, 23	39. Shepherds.	57. The Ancients (four-and-twenty). <i>Ap</i> 4, 10
<i>Je</i> 3, 15	40. Pastors.	58. Prelates. <i>He</i> 13, 7
		59. The Angel of the Lord of Hosts. <i>Ma</i> 2, 7
		60. A Ring on God's Right Hand. <i>Je</i> 22, 24
		61. Seraphim. <i>Is</i> 6, 2
		62. The Host of Heaven. <i>Is</i> 24, 21
		63. The Salt of the Earth. <i>Mt</i> 5, 13
		64. The Light of the World. <i>Mt</i> 5, 14

## 14.—THE CHURCH ONE.

<i>Ga</i> 3, 28	You are all one in Christ Jesus.	one faith, one baptism.—One God and Father of all.
<i>Jn</i> 10, 16	Other sheep I have that are not of this Fold: them also I must bring, and there shall be One Fold and One Shepherd.	Not the God of dissension, 1 <i>C</i> 14, 33 but of peace.
1 <i>C</i> 10, 17	We being many are one body.	Holy Father, keep them in Thy Name, whom Thou hast given Me: that they may be one, as We also are. <i>Jn</i> 17, 11
<i>Ep</i> 4, 4-6	One body and one Spirit: as you are called in one hope of your calling.—One Lord,	One is my dove, my perfect one is but one, she is the only one of her mother, the chosen of her that bore her. <i>Ca</i> 6, 8

## 15.—THE CHURCH HOLY.

1 <i>Pt</i> 2, 9	You are a chosen generation, a kingly priesthood, a holy nation, a purchased people.	Thou hast redeemed us to God, in Thy Blood, out of every tribe, and tongue, and people, and nation,—And <i>Ap</i> 5, 9-10
------------------	--	---

hast made us to our God a Kingdom and Priests.

*Ep* 5, 25-27 Christ loved the Church, and delivered Himself up for it.—That He might sanctify it, cleansing it by the laver of water in the Word of Life.—That He might present it to Himself a glorious Church not having spot or wrinkle, or any such thing, but that it should be holy and without blemish.

*Ca* 4, 7 Thou art all fair, O my love, and there is not a spot in thee.

*Ge* 7, 23 He destroyed all the substance that was upon the earth, from man even to beast, and the creeping things and fowls of the air: and Noe only remained, and they that were with him in the Ark.

*Ju* 18-21 In the last time there should come mockers, walking according to their own desires in ungodliness.—These are they who separate themselves, sensual men, having not the Spirit.—But you, my beloved, building yourselves upon your Most Holy Faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,—Keep yourselves in the love of God.

*Ep* 2, 19 You are no more strangers and foreigners; but you are fellow citizens with the Saints, and the domestics of God.

*He* 12, 22 You are come to Mount Sion, and to the City of the Living God, the Heavenly Jerusalem, and to the company of many thousands of Angels, and to the Church of the first-born, who are written in the Heavens.

*Ap* 21, 14 The wall of the City had

twelve foundations, and in them, the twelve names of the twelve Apostles of the Lamb.

Holiness becometh Thy House, O Lord. *Ps* 92, 5

That being delivered from the hand of our enemies, we may serve Him without fear, —In holiness and justice before Him, all our days. *Lu* 1, 74-75

Sanctify them in Truth. Thy Word is Truth.—And for them do I sanctify Myself: that they also may be sanctified in Truth. *Jn* 17, 17, 19

He chose us in Him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and unspotted in His sight in charity. *Ep* 1, 4

In [Christ] all the building, being framed together, groweth up into a Holy Temple in the Lord. *Ep* 2, 21

Christ gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from all iniquity, and might cleanse to Himself a people acceptable, a pursuer of good works. *Ti* 2, 14

These signs shall follow them that believe: In My Name they shall cast out devils: They shall speak with new tongues.—They shall take up serpents: and if they shall drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them: they shall lay their hands on the sick, and they shall recover. *Mk* 16, 17-18

Amen, amen, I say to you, he that believeth in Me, the works that I do, he also shall do, and greater than these shall he do.

To one indeed, by the Spirit, is given the word of wisdom: and to another,

*Jn* 14, 12 *1 Co* 12, 8-11



the word of knowledge, according to the same Spirit:—To another, faith in the same Spirit: to another, the grace of healing in one spirit.—To another, the working of miracles: to another, prophecy; to another, the discerning of spirits: to another, diverse kinds of tongues: to another, interpretations of speeches.—But all these things one and the same Spirit worketh, dividing to every one according as He will.

By their fruits you shall know them.—Every good tree bringeth forth good fruit. *Mt 7, 16-17*

I, John, saw the Holy City, the new Jerusalem, coming down out of Heaven from God, prepared as a Bride adorned for her Husband. *Ap 21, 2*

God is faithful: by Whom you are called unto the fellowship of His Son Jesus Christ our Lord. *1 C 1, 9*

The House of our Holiness. *Is 64, 11*

## 16.—THE CHURCH CATHOLIC.

- Da 2, 44* In the days of these kingdoms, the God of Heaven will set up a Kingdom that shall never be destroyed. —For the nation and the kingdom that will not serve Thee shall perish.
- Da 9, 24* Seventy weeks are shortened upon thy people, and upon thy Holy City, that transgression may be finished and sin may have an end, and iniquity may be abolished: and everlasting justice may be brought, and vision and prophecy may be fulfilled: and the Saint of Saints may be anointed. With the joy of the whole earth is Mount Sion founded: on the sides of the north, the City of the great King. *Ps 47, 3*
- Is 59, 21* My Spirit is in thee: and My words that I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth and for ever. As we have heard, so have we seen in the City of the Lord of Hosts, in the City of our God: God hath founded it for ever. *Ps 47, 9*
- Is 61, 8* I will make a perpetual Covenant with them. I have made a covenant with My elect: I have sworn to David My servant: Thy seed will I settle for ever.—And I will build up thy throne unto generation and generation. *Ps 88, 4-5*
- Is 60, 11-12* Thy gates shall be open continually: they shall not be shut day nor night, that the strength of the Gentiles may be brought to Thee, and their kings may be brought. His empire shall be multiplied, and there shall be no end of peace: he shall sit upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom: to establish it, to strengthen it with judgment, and with justice, from henceforth and for ever: the zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this. *Is 9, 7*
- In thy seed [which is in Christ, as expounded by S. Paul to the Galatians, 3, 8]. *Ge 22, 18*

- shall all the nations of the earth be blessed.
- Pz 2, 8* Ask of Me, and I will give thee the Gentiles for thy inheritance: and the utmost parts of the earth for thy possession.
- Pz 21, 28* All the ends of the earth shall remember, and shall be converted to the Lord.
- Ma 1, 11* From the rising of the sun even to the going down, My Name is great among the Gentiles, and in every place there is Sacrifice, and there is offered to My Name a clean Oblation.
- Mt 24, 14* This Gospel of the Kingdom shall be preached in the whole world.
- Cl 1, 6* The Gospel is come unto you, as also it is in the whole world.
- Lu 1, 31-33* Behold thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and shalt bring forth a Son; and thou shalt call His Name Jesus.—He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Most High; and the Lord God shall give unto the Throne of David His Father: and He shall reign in the House of Jacob for ever.—And of His Kingdom there shall be no end.
- Ap 19, 16* He hath on His garment and on His thigh written: King of kings, and Lord of lords.
- Mt 28, 18-19* All power is given to Me in Heaven and in earth.—Going therefore, teach ye all nations; baptising them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.
- Ro 10, 13* Their sound hath gone forth into all the earth, and their words unto the ends of the whole world.
- In the last days the mountain of the House of the Lord shall be prepared on the top of mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.
- Come and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the House of the God of Jacob.
- The Lord will roar from Sion, and utter His Voice from Jerusalem.
- A City seated on a mountain cannot be hid.
- Neither do men light a candle and put it under a bushel, but upon a candlestick, that it may shine to all that are in the house.
- Be blameless without reproach in the midst of a crooked and perverse generation; among whom you shine as lights in the world,—Holding forth the Word of Life.
- They going forth preached everywhere; the Lord working withal, and confirming the Word with signs that followed.
- If he will not hear them: tell the Church.
- So let your light shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father Who is in Heaven.
- Look upon Sion the City of our solemnity: thy eyes shall see Jerusalem, a rich Habitation, a Tabernacle that cannot be removed: neither shall the nails thereof be taken away for ever, neither shall any of the cords thereof be broken:—Because only there our Lord is magnificent: a place of rivers, very
- Is 2, 2*
- Is 2, 3*
- Am 1, 2*
- Mt 5, 14*
- Mt 5, 15*
- Pz 2, 15-16*
- Mt 16, 20*
- Mt 18, 17*
- Mt 5, 16*
- Is 33, 20-21*

- Is* 60, 1-5 broad and spacious streams. Arise, be enlightened, O Jerusalem, for thy Light is come, and the glory of the Lord is risen upon thee.—For behold darkness shall cover the earth, and a mist the people: but the Lord shall arise upon thee, and His glory shall be seen upon thee.—And the Gentiles shall walk in thy Light, and kings in the brightness of thy rising.—Lift up thy eyes round about, and see: all these are gathered together, they are come to thee: thy sons shall come from afar, and thy daughters shall rise up at thy side.—Then shalt thou see and abound, and thy heart shall wonder and be enlarged, when the multitude of the sea shall be converted to thee, the strength of the Gentiles shall come to thee.
- Is* 61, 9-11 They shall know their seed among the Gentiles, and their offspring in the midst of peoples: all that shall see them, shall know them, that these are the seed which the Lord hath blessed.—I will greatly rejoice in the Lord, and my soul shall be joyful in my God: for He hath clothed me with the garments of Salvation: and with the robe of justice He hath covered me, as a Bridegroom decked with a Crown, and as a Bride adorned with her jewels.—For as the earth bringeth forth her bud, and as the garden causeth her seed to shoot forth: so shall the Lord God make justice to spring forth, and praise before all the nations.
- He shall rule from sea to sea, and from the river unto the ends of the earth. *Ps* 71, 8
- Fear not, for I am with thee: I will bring thy seed from the east, and gather thee from the west.—I will say to the north: Give up: and to the south: Keep not back: bring My sons from afar, and My daughters from the ends of the earth. *Is* 43, 5-6
- Behold I have given thee to be the light of the Gentiles, that thou mayest be My Salvation even to the farthest part of the earth. *Is* 49, 6
- The earth shall be filled, that men may know the glory of the Lord, as waters covering the sea. *Ha* 2, 14
- Many peoples, and strong nations shall come to seek the Lord of Hosts in Jerusalem, and to entreat the Face of the Lord. *Za* 8, 22
- I saw another Angel flying through the midst of Heaven, having the Eternal Gospel, to preach unto them that sit upon the earth. *Ap* 14, 6

## 17.—THE CHURCH APOSTOLIC.

- Mt* 16, 18 Thou art Peter, and upon this Rock I will build My Church. Christ Himself being the Chief Corner-Stone.
- Ep* 2, 19-20 You are fellow-citizens with the Saints,—Built upon the foundation of the Apostles and Prophets, Jesus He gave some Apostles and some Prophets.—For the perfecting of the Saints, for the work of the Ministry, for the edifying of the Body *Ep* 4, 11-14

of Christ:—Until we all meet into the unity of faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the age of the fulness of Christ.—That henceforth we be no more children tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine by the wickedness of men, by cunning craftiness by which they lie in wait to deceive. Ye shall give testimony. *Jn 15, 27*

### 18.—THE CHURCH INFALLIBLE.

- Is 35, 8* A path and a way shall be there, and it shall be called the Holy Way: the unclean shall not pass over it, and this shall be unto you a straight way, so that fools shall not err thereon. *Za 8, 3* It shall be called the City of Truth.
- Is 54, 11-14* Q poor little one, tossed with tempest, without all comfort, behold I will lay thy stones in order, and will lay thy foundations with sapphires.—And I will make thy bulwarks of jasper: and thy gates of graven stones, and all thy borders of desirable stones.—All thy children shall be taught of the Lord: and great shall be the peace of thy children.—And thou shalt be founded in justice. *Mt 16, 18* The gates of hell shall not prevail against it.
- Ps 118, 2* His mercy is confirmed upon us: and the truth of the Lord remaineth for ever. *Jn 8, 31-32* If you continue in My Word you shall be My disciples indeed.—And you shall know the truth, and the truth shall make thee free.
- Ps 88, 6* The heavens shall confess Thy wonders, O Lord: and Thy Truth in the Church of the Saints. *Jn 10, 4-5* The sheep hear His voice, and the sheep follow Him because they know His voice.—But a stranger they follow not, but fly from him: because they know not the voice of strangers.
- Is 59, 21* This is My Covenant with them, saith the Lord: My Spirit that is in thee, and My words that I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth and for ever. *Jn 14, 16-17* I will ask the Father and He shall give you another Paraclete, that He may abide with you for ever.—The Spirit of Truth, Whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth Him not, nor knoweth Him: but you shall know Him, because He shall abide with you, and shall be in you.
- Jn 16, 13* The Spirit of Truth will teach you all Truth. *1 Th 3, 15* The House of God, which is the Church of the Living God, the pillar and ground of the truth.
- Jn 2, 28* These things have I written to you concerning them that seduce you.—And as for you, let the unction which you have received from Him abide in you. And you have no need that

any man teach you : but as His unction teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie.

- Jn* 17, 20-21 I pray also for them who through their word shall believe in Me.—That they all may be one as Thou, Father, in Me, and I in Thee, that they also may be one in Us that the world may believe that Thou hast sent Me.
- Mt* 28, 20 Behold I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world.
- Every one that heareth *Mt* 7, 24-25 My words and doeth them, shall be likened to a wise man that built his house upon a rock,—And the rain fell, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and they beat upon that house, and it fell not, for it was founded on a rock.
- We have the mind of Christ. *1C* 2, 16

### 19.—THE CHURCH IMPREGNABLE.

- Mt* 16, 18 Upon this Rock I will build My Church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.
- 1Ti* 3, 15 The Church of the Living God [is] the pillar and ground of the truth.
- Is* 62, 4 Thou shalt no more be called forsaken : and thy land shall no more be called desolate.
- 1Pt* 1, 25 The Word of the Lord endureth for ever.
- Jn* 14, 16 I will ask the Father, and He shall give you another Paraclete, that He may abide with you for ever.
- When He, the Spirit of Truth, is come, He will teach you all truth.
- He gave some Apostles, and some Prophets, and other some Evangelists, and other some pastors and doctors,—For the perfecting of the Saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the Body of Christ :—Until we all meet into the unity of faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the age of the fulness of Christ.
- Jn* 16, 13  
*Ep* 4, 11-13

### 20.—NAMES AND CHARACTERISTICS OF THE CHURCH. HER GLORIES AND PRIVILEGES.

- I.
- 1Jn* 3, 2 Dearly beloved, we are now the sons of God : and it hath not yet appeared what we shall be.
- Jn* 1, 12 As many as received Him, He gave them power to be made the sons of God, to them that believe in His Name.
- Ro* 8, 14 Whosoever are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.
- Do ye all things without murmurings and hesitations :—That you may be blameless, and sincere children of God.
- God sent His Son, that He might redeem them who were under the law ; that we might receive the adoption of sons.—And because you are sons, God hath sent the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying :
- Ph* 2, 14  
*Ga* 4, 5-6

- Abba, Father.
- He 2, 10* It became Him, for Whom are all things, and by Whom are all things, Who had brought many children into glory, to perfect the Author of their Salvation, by His Passion.
- He 12, 7-8* Persevere under discipline. God dealeth with you as with His sons: for what son is there whom the father does not correct?—But if you be without chastisement, whereof all are made partakers; then you are bastards, and not sons.
- Os 1, 10* The number of the children of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea, that is without measure, and shall not be numbered. And it shall be in the place where it shall be said to them. You are not my people: It shall be said to them: Ye are the sons of the Living God.
- 2 C 6, 18* I will be a Father to you: and you shall be My sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty.
- Mt 5, 9* Blessed are the peace-makers: for they shall be called the children of God.
- Jn 11, 51-52* Being the High Priest of that year, he [Caiphas] prophesied that Jesus should die for the nation.—And not only for the nation, but to gather together in one the children of God, that were dispersed.
- Ro 8, 19-21* The expectation of the creature waiteth for the revelation of the sons of God.—For the creature was made subject to vanity, not willingly, but by reason of him that made it subject, in hope;—Because the creature also itself shall be delivered from the servitude of corruption, into the liberty of the glory of the children of God.
- Whosoever is born of God, *1 Jn 3, 9-10* committeth not sin: for His seed abideth in him and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.—In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil.
- You are not in the flesh, *Ro 8, 9* but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of His.
- It shall be, in the place *Ro 9, 26* where it was said unto them, you are not My people: there they shall be called sons of the Living God.
- You are all children of *Ga 3, 26* God by faith, in Christ Jesus.
- Be ye followers of God, *Eph 5, 1* as most dear children.
- Trust perfectly in the *1 Pt 1, 13-14* grace which is offered you in the revelation of Jesus Christ.—As children of obedience, not fashioned according to the former desires of your ignorance.
- The Spirit Himself giveth *Ro 8, 16-17* testimony to our spirit, that we are the sons of God.—And if sons, heirs also; heirs indeed of God, and joint heirs with Christ.
- If you be Christ's, then *Ga 3, 29* are you the seed of Abraham, heirs according to the promise.
- Now he is not a servant, *Ga 4, 7* but a son. And if a son, an

- heir through God.
- He* 1, 14. Are the Angels not all ministering spirits, sent to minister for them, who shall receive the inheritance of Salvation?
- 2 Pt* 1, 2, 4. Grace to you and peace be accomplished in the knowledge of God, and of Christ Jesus our Lord:—By Whom He hath given us most great and precious promises: that by these you may be made partakers of the Divine nature.
- 1 Jn* 5, 1, 18. Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ, is born of God.—We know that whosoever is born of God, sinneth not: but the generation of God preserveth him, and the wicked one toucheth him not.
- 1 Pt* 1, 3. Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who according to His great mercy hath regenerated us unto a lively hope, by the Resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead.
- 1 Pt* 1, 22-23. With a brotherly love, from a sincere heart love one another earnestly:—Being born again not of corruptible seed, but incorruptible, by the Word of God Who liveth and remaineth for ever.
- Jn* 3, 5-6. Amen, amen I say to thee, unless a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God.—That which is born of the flesh, is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit, is spirit.
- Jn* 1, 12-13. As many as received Him, He gave them power to be made the sons of God, to them that believe in His Name.—Who are born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.
- Whosoever is born of God *1 Jn* 3, 9
- Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ, is born of God.
- Dearly beloved, let us love one another: for charity is of God. And every one that loveth is born of God, and knoweth God.
- Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ, is born of God.
- Whatsoever is born of God, overcometh the world. And this is the victory which overcometh the world, our faith.
- We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not: but the generation of God preserveth him, and the wicked one toucheth him not.
- If you know that He is just; know ye, that every one also, who doth justice, is born of Him.
- As new-born babes, desire the rational milk without guile, that thereby you may grow unto Salvation.
- Of him are you in Christ Jesus, Who of God is made unto us wisdom, and justice, and sanctification, and redemption.
- I have said: You are gods, and all of you the sons of the Most High.
- Thou being a man, makest Thyself God.—
- Jn* 10, 33-36. Jesus answered them: Is it not written in your law: I said, you are gods?—If He

called them gods, to whom the Word of God was spoken, and the Scripture cannot be broken;—Do you say of Him, Whom the Father hath sanctified and sent into the world: Thou blasphemest, because I said, I am the Son of God?

*Ge* 1, 27 God created man to His own image: to the image of God He created him.

*1 C* 11, 7 The man indeed ought not to cover his head, because he is the image and glory of God: but the woman is the glory of the man.

*2 Pt* 2, 9 The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly from temptation, but to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be tormented.

*Jn* 17, 21 I pray that they all may be one, as Thou, Father, in Me, and I in Thee: that they also may be one in Us: that the world may believe that Thou hast sent Me.

*Jn* 17, 22 The glory which Thou hast given Me, I have given to them: that they may be one, as We also are One.

*Jn* 17, 24 Father, I will, that where I am, they also whom Thou hast given Me may be with Me: that they may see My glory which Thou hast given Me.

## II.

*Je* 33, 16 In those days shall Juda be saved, and Jerusalem shall dwell securely: and this is the Name that they shall call Him, The Lord our Just One.

*Is* 61, 10 I will greatly rejoice in the Lord, and my soul shall be joyful in my God: for He hath clothed me with

the garments of salvation: and with the robe of justice He hath covered me, as a bridegroom decked with a crown, and as a bride adorned with her jewels.

The marriage of the *Ap* 19, 7-8 Lamb is come, and His wife hath prepared herself. —And it is granted to her that she should clothe herself with fine linen, glittering and white. For the fine linen are the justifications of Saints.

Round about the Throne *Ap* 4, 4 were four-and-twenty seats: and upon the seats, four-and-twenty ancients sitting, clothed in white garments, and on their heads were crowns of gold.

The eyes of the Lord are *Pt* 33, 16 upon the just, and His ears unto their prayers.

Him, that knew no sin, for *2 C* 5, 21 us He hath made [*Himself a Victim for*] sin, that we might be made The Justice of God in Him.

They shall see His face: *Ap* 22, 4 and His Name shall be on their foreheads.

I beheld, and lo a Lamb *Ap* 14, 1 stood upon Mount Sion, and with Him an hundred forty-four thousand having His Name, and the Name of His Father written on their foreheads.

It was commanded them *Ap* 9, 4 that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, nor any green thing, nor any tree; but only the men who have not the sign of God on their foreheads.

The Gentiles shall see *Is* 62, 2 Thy Just One, and all kings Thy Glorious One, and thou



- shalt be called by a **New Name**, which the mouth of the Lord shall name.
- Is* 62, 12 They shall call them, The holy people, the redeemed of the Lord. But thou shalt be called: **A City sought after, and not forsaken.**
- Is* 65, 15 You shall leave your name for an execration to My elect: and the Lord God shall slay thee, and call **His servants by another name.**
- Ac* 11, 26 They taught a great multitude, so that at Antioch the disciples were first named Christians.
- Ja* 2, 6-7 Do not the rich oppress you by might?—Do not they blaspheme the **good Name** that is invoked upon you?
- Ac* 15, 16-17 After these things I will return, and will rebuild the Tabernacle of David.—That the residue of men may seek after the Lord, and all nations upon whom **My Name** is invoked, saith the Lord Who doth these things.
- Ps* 68, 36-37 God will save Sion, and the cities of Juda shall be built up. And they shall dwell there, and acquire it by inheritance.—And the seed of His servants shall possess it: and they that love **His Name** shall dwell therein.
- Ci* 1, 16 In Him were all things created in Heaven, and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones, or dominations, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by Him, and in Him.
- Ap* 4, 11 Thou art worthy, O Lord our God, to receive glory,
- and honour, and power: because Thou hast created all things, and for Thy will they were, and have been created.
- The Spirit of God made me, and the breath of the **Almighty** gave me life.
- O bless our God, ye Gen- *Ps* 65, 8-9 tiles: and make the voice of His praise to be heard.—Who hath set my soul to live: and hath not suffered my feet to be moved.
- Fight the good fight of *1Ti* 6, 12 faith: lay hold on **Eternal Life** whereunto thou art called.
- Behold how good and *Ps* 132, 1, 3 how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity:—As the dew of Hermon, which descendeth upon Mount Sion. For there the Lord hath commanded blessing, and life for evermore.
- We are **His workmanship**, *Ep* 2, 10 created in Christ Jesus in good works, which God hath prepared that we should walk in them.
- Put on the new man, who *Ep* 4, 24 according to God, is created in justice, and holiness of truth.
- Mortify your members *Ci* 3, 5, 9-10 which are upon the earth,—Stripping yourselves of the old man with his deeds.—And putting on the new, him who is renewed unto knowledge, according to the image of Him that created him.
- To me is given this grace, *Ep* 3, 8-9 —To enlighten all men: that they may see what is the dispensation of the Mystery which hath been

hidden from eternity in God, Who created all things.

2 C5, 17 If then any be in Christ a new creature: the old things are passed away, behold all things are made new.

Ga 6, 15 In Christ Jesus neither circumcision availeth anything, nor uncircumcision, but a new creature.

2 C3, 5-6 Our sufficiency is from God;—Who also hath made us fit ministers of the New Testament, not in the letter, but in the Spirit. For the letter killeth: but the Spirit quickeneth.

Jn 3, 5-8 Jesus answered: Amen, amen I say to thee, unless a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God.—That which is born of the flesh, is flesh: and that which is born of the Spirit, is spirit.—Wonder not that I said to thee, you must be born again.—The Spirit breatheth where He will; and thou hearest His Voice, but thou knowest not whence He cometh and whither He goeth: so is every one that is born of the Spirit.

2 Ti 1, 1 Paul an Apostle of Jesus Christ by the will of God, according to the promise of life, which is in Christ Jesus.

2 C4, 10 Always [bear] about in our body the mortification of Jesus, that the life also of Jesus may be made manifest in our bodies.

Jn 20, 31 These things are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son

of God: and that believing, you may have life in His Name.

You are dead: and your life is hid with Christ in God.—When Christ shall appear, Who is your Life: then you also shall appear with Him in glory.

Let them be blotted out of the Book of the Living; and with the just let them not be written.

I live, now not I: but Christ liveth in Me. And that I live now in the flesh: I live in the faith of the Son of God, Who loved me, and delivered Himself for me.

Such as is the earthly, such also are the earthly: and such as is the heavenly, such also are they that are heavenly.—Therefore as we have borne the image of the earthly, let us bear also the image of the heavenly.

### III.

From a sincere heart love one another earnestly:—Being born again not of corruptible seed, but incorruptible, by the Word of God Who liveth and remaineth for ever.

Of His own will hath He begotten us by the Word of Truth, that we might be some beginning of His creature.

This hath comforteth me in my humiliation: because Thy Word hath enlivened me.

Amen, amen, I say to you that he who heareth My word, and believeth Him that sent Me, hath Life

- Everlasting; and cometh not into judgment, but is passed from death to life.**
- Dt 8, 3* He afflicted thee with want, and gave thee manna for thy food, which neither thou nor thy fathers knew: to show that not in bread alone doth man live, but in every word that proceedeth from the mouth of God.
- Lu 4, 4* Jesus answered him: It is written: That man liveth not by bread alone, but by every word of God.
- Ep 5, 25-26* Husbands, love your wives; as Christ also loved the Church, and delivered Himself up for it:—That He might sanctify it, cleansing it by the laver of water in the Word of Life.
- Jn 15, 3* Now you are clean by reason of the Word, which I have spoken to you.
- Ga 6, 6* Let him that is instructed in the Word, communicate to him, that instructeth him, in all good things.
- Ac 17, 11* The Jews of Berea were more noble than those in Thessalonica, who received the Word with all eagerness, daily searching the Scriptures, whether these things were so.
- Dt 30, 14* The Word is very nigh unto thee, in thy mouth and in thy heart, that thou mayst do it.
- Ro 10, 8* What saith the Scripture? The Word is nigh thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart. This is the Word of Faith, which we preach.
- Jn 8, 31* Jesus said to those Jews who believed Him: If you continue in My Word, you shall be My disciples indeed.
- Lu 8, 21* My Mother and My brethren, are they who hear the Word of God and do it.
- Be ye doers of the Word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves. *Ja 1, 22*
- A Bishop must be without crime. Embracing that faithful Word which is according to doctrine, that he may be able to exhort in sound doctrine, and to convince the gainsayers. *Tt 1, 7-9*
- I have manifested Thy Name to the men whom Thou hast given Me out of the world. Thine they were, and to Me Thou gavest them: and they have kept Thy Word. *Jn 17, 6*
- The multitude of men and women who believed in the Lord was more increased. *Ac 5, 14*
- Let no man despise thy youth: but be thou an example of the faithful, in word, in conversation, in charity, in faith, in chastity. *1 Ti 4, 12*
- Whom He foreknew, He also predestinated to be made conformable to the image of His Son: that He might be the First-born amongst many brethren. *Ro 8, 29*
- I beseech you, brethren, by the mercy of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing unto God, your reasonable service. *Ro 12, 1*
- Both He that sanctifieth, and they who are sanctified, are all of one. For which cause He is not ashamed to call them brethren, saying:—I will declare Thy Name to My brethren: in the midst of the Church I will praise Thee. *He 2, 11-12*
- It behoved Him in all things to be made like *He 2, 17*

unto His brethren, that He might become a merciful and faithful High Priest before God, that He might be a propitiation for the sins of the people.

2 C 4, 7 We have this treasure in earthen vessels, that the excellency may be of the power of God, and not of us.

He 2, 14 Because the children are partakers of flesh and blood, He also Himself in like manner hath been partaker of the same: that through death He might destroy him who had the empire of death, that is to say, the devil.

C 13, 8-10 Lay you all away anger and indignation,—Stripping yourselves of the old man with his deeds,—And putting on the new, him who is renewed unto knowledge, according to the image of Him that created him.

Ep 4, 11, 13 He gave some Apostles, and some Prophets,—Until we all meet into the unity of faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the age of the fulness of Christ.

2 C 4, 16 Though our outward man is corrupted: yet the inward man is renewed day by day.

Ps 102, 2, 5 Bless the Lord,—Who satisfieth thy desire with good things: thy youth shall be renewed like the eagle's.

Ph 3, 20-21 Our conversation is in Heaven: from whence we look for the Saviour, our Lord Jesus Christ.—Who will reform the body of our lowliness, made like to the

Body of His Glory, according to the operation whereby also He is able to subdue all things unto Himself.

Dearly beloved, we are now the sons of God; and it hath not yet appeared what we shall be. We know that, when He shall appear, we shall be like to Him: because we shall see Him as He is. 1 Jn 3, 2

I will appear before Thy sight in justice: I shall be satisfied when Thy Glory shall appear. Ps 16, 15

All these died according to faith not having received the promises, but beholding them afar off, and saluting them, and confessing that they are pilgrims and strangers on the earth. He 11, 13

I am a sojourner on the earth: hide not Thy commandments from me. Ps 118, 19

#### IV.

He that is called in the Lord, being a bondman, is the freeman of the Lord. Likewise he that is called, being free, is the bondman of Christ. 1 C 7, 22

Upon My servants indeed, and upon My handmaids will I pour out in those days of My Spirit, and they shall prophesy. Ac 2, 18

I will bring forth a seed out of Jacob, and out of Juda a possessor of My Mountains: and My elect shall inherit it, and My servants shall dwell there. Is 65, 9

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold My servants shall eat, and you shall be hungry: behold My servants shall drink, and you shall 14

- be thirsty.—Behold **My servants** shall rejoice, and you shall be confounded : behold **My servants** shall praise for joyfulness of heart, and you shall cry for sorrow of heart, and shall howl for grief of spirit.
- Jn 18, 36* Jesus answered : **My Kingdom** is not of this world. If **My Kingdom** were of this world, **My servants** would certainly strive that I should not be delivered to the Jews : but now **My Kingdom** is not from hence.
- Ap 2, 20* I have against thee a few things : because thou sufferest the woman Jezabel, who calleth herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce **My servants**.
- Ac 4, 29* And now, Lord, behold their threatenings, and grant unto **Thy servants**, that with all confidence they may speak **Thy Word**.
- 1 Pt 2, 15-16* For so is the will of God, that by doing well you may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men :—As free, and not making liberty a cloak for malice, but as the **servants of God**.
- 4p 7, 3* Hurt not the earth, nor the sea, nor the trees, till we sign the **servants of our God** in their foreheads.
- Ps 34, 27* Let them say always : The Lord be magnified, Who delights in the peace of **His servant**.
- Cl 3, 24* Serve ye the Lord Christ.
- Ac 16, 17* These men are the **servants of the Most High God**, who preach unto you the way of Salvation.
- 4 K 9, 7* Thou shalt cut off the house of Achab thy mas-
- ter, and I will revenge the blood of **My servants the Prophets**, and the blood of all the servants of the Lord at the hand of Jezabel.
- I have sent to you all **My servants the Prophets** from day to day, rising up early and sending.
- Je 7, 25*
- I sent to you all **My servants the Prophets**, rising early, and sending, and saying : Do not commit this abominable thing, which I hate.
- Je 44, 4*
- For requiring their blood He hath remembered them : He hath not forgotten the cry of the poor.
- Ps 9, 13*
- In the Lord shall my soul be praised ; let the meek hear and rejoice.
- Ps 33, 2*
- His Name is Holy, Who dwelleth in the High and Holy Place, and with a contrite and humble spirit : to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite.
- Is 57, 15*
- The Lord is high and looketh on the low : and the high He knoweth afar off.
- Ps 137, 6*
- He shall scorn the scorn-ers : and to the meek He will give grace.
- Pv 3, 34*
- The poor shall eat and shall be filled : and they shall praise the Lord that seek Him : their hearts shall live for ever and ever.
- Ps 21, 27*
- He will guide the mild in judgment : He will teach the meek His ways.
- Ps 24, 9*
- The meek shall inherit the Land, and shall delight in abundance of peace.
- Ps 36, 11*
- The Lord is well pleased with His people : He will exalt the meek unto Salva-
- Ps 149, 4*

- Is* 11, 4 He shall judge the poor with justice, and shall reprove with equity for the meek of the earth.
- Ac* 1, 1 The Spirit of the Lord is upon Me, because the Lord hath anointed Me: He hath sent Me to preach to the meek, to heal the contrite of heart, and to preach a release to the captives, and deliverance to them that are shut up.
- Mt* 5, 4 Blessed are the meek: for they shall possess the Land.
- Mt* 5, 3 Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Is* 66, 2 To whom shall I have respect, but to him that is poor and little, and of a contrite spirit, and that trembleth at My words?
- Jn* 12, 26 If any man minister to Me, him will My Father honour.
- Jn* 6, 45 It is written in the Prophets: And they shall all be taught of God. Every one that hath heard of the Father, and hath learned, cometh to Me.
- Is* 54, 13 All thy children shall be taught of the Lord: and great shall be the peace of thy children.
- 1 *T* 4, 9 As touching the charity of brotherhood, we have no need to write to you: for yourselves have learned of God to love one another.
- 1 *Jn* 2, 27 As for you, let the unction, which you have received from Him, abide in you. And you have no need that any man teach you: but as His unction teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie. And as it hath taught you, abide in Him.
- Ac* 9, 1 Saul as yet breathing out threatenings and slaughter against the Disciples of the Lord, went to the High Priest.
- When he was come into *Ac* 9, 26 Jerusalem, he essayed to join himself to the Disciples, and they were all afraid of him, not believing that he was a Disciple.
- They conversed there in *Ac* 11, 26 the Church a whole year; and they taught a great multitude, so that at Antioch the Disciples were first named Christians.
- It came to pass while *Ac* 19, 1 Apollo was at Corinth, that Paul, having passed through the upper coasts, came to Ephesus, and found certain Disciples.
- When Paul would have *Ac* 19, 30 entered in unto the people, the Disciples suffered him not.
- After the tumult was *Ac* 20, 1 ceased, Paul, calling to him the Disciples, and exhorting them, took his leave, and set forward to go into Macedonia.
- God indeed hath set *1 C* 12, 28 some in the Church, first Apostles. secondly Prophets, thirdly doctors, after that miracles, then the graces of healing, helps, governments, kinds of tongues, interpretations of speeches.
- He gave some Apostles, *Ep* 4, 11 and some Prophets, and other some evangelists, and other some pastors and doctors.
- Touch ye not My anointed; *Ps* 104, 15 and do no evil to My Prophets.
- Rejoice over her, thou *Ap* 18, 20 Heaven, and ye Holy

**Apostles and Prophets:** for God hath judged your judgment on her.

*He 1, 14*

Are not the Angels ministering Spirits, sent to minister for them, who shall receive the inheritance of Salvation?

*2 T 2, 13*

He hath called you by our Gospel, unto the purchasing of the glory of our Lord Jesus Christ.

*1 T 5, 9*

God hath not appointed us unto wrath, but unto the purchasing of Salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ.

*Is 61, 10*

He hath clothed me with the garments of Salvation; and with the robe of justice He hath covered me, as a bridegroom decked with a crown, and as a bride adorned with her jewels.

*Is 43, 1*

Thus saith the Lord that created thee, O Jacob, and formed thee, O Israel: Fear not, for I have redeemed thee, and called thee by thy name; thou art Mine.

*Is 43, 7*

Every one that calleth upon My Name I have created him for My glory, I have formed him, and made him.

*Ps 39, 17*

Let all that seek Thee be joyful and glad in Thee; and let such as love Thy Salvation say always: the Lord be magnified.

*1 Jn 2, 27*

As for you, let the unction which you have received from Him, abide in you. And you have no need that any man teach you; but as His unction teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie. And as it hath taught you, abide in Him.

*2 T 1, 9*

He hath delivered us and called us by His Holy call-

ing, not according to our works, but according to His own purpose and grace which was given us in Christ Jesus before the times of the world.

I give thanks to my God always for you for the grace of God that is given you in Christ Jesus.

*1 C 1, 4*

Not as the offence, so also the gift. For if by the offence of one many died; much more the grace of God, and the gift, by the grace of one Man, Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto many.

*Ro 5, 15*

Not as though I had already attained, or were already perfect; but I follow after, if I may by any means apprehend wherein I am also apprehended by Jesus Christ. — Brethren, I do not count myself to have apprehended. But one thing I do: forgetting the things that are behind, and stretching forth myself to those things that are before, — I press towards the mark, to the prize of the supernal vocation of God in Christ Jesus.

*Ph 3, 12-14*

Christ died for all: that they also who live, may not now live to themselves, but unto Him Who died for them and rose again.

*2 C 5, 15*

God indeed was in Christ, reconciling the world to Himself, not imputing to them their sins, and He hath placed in us the Word of reconciliation.

*2 C 5, 19*

There is now no condemnation to those that are in Christ Jesus, who walk not according to the flesh.

*Ro 8, 1*

- Ep 4, 32* Be ye kind one to another : merciful, forgiving one another, even as God hath forgiven you in Christ.
- Ga 2, 16* Know that man is not justified by the works of the Law, but by the Faith of Jesus Christ; we also believe in Christ Jesus, that we may be justified by the Faith of Christ, and not by the works of the Law, because by the works of the Law no flesh shall be justified.
- Mk 9, 40* Whosoever shall give you to drink a cup of water in My Name, because you belong to Christ; Amen I say to you, he shall not lose his reward.
- 1 C 3, 23* You are Christ's, and Christ is God's.
- Ro 7, 4* My brethren, you are become dead to the Law, by the Body of Christ; that you may belong to Another, Who is risen from the dead, that we may bring forth fruit to God.
- Ga 5, 13* You, brethren have been called unto liberty; only make not liberty an occasion to the flesh, but by charity of the Spirit serve one another.
- 1 C 7, 22* He that is called in the Lord, being a bondman, is the freeman of the Lord. Likewise he that is called, being free, is the bondman of Christ.
- Ju 1, 1-2* To them that are beloved in God the Father, and preserved in Jesus Christ, and called,—Peace and charity be fulfilled.
- Ep 2, 6* He hath raised us up together, and hath made us sit together in the heavenly places, through Jesus Christ.
- I live, now not I; but Christ liveth in me.
- Know you not your own selves, that Christ Jesus is in you, unless, perhaps, you be reprobates?
- The husband is the head of the wife, as Christ is the Head of the Church. He is the Saviour of His Body.
- Receive one another, as Christ also hath received you unto the honour of God.
- They that are of faith shall be blessed with faithful Abraham.
- If you be Christ's, then are you the seed of Abraham, heirs according to the Promise.
- God commendeth His charity towards us : because when as yet we were sinners, according to the time,—Christ died for us : much more therefore, being now justified by His Blood, shall we be saved from wrath through Him.
- v.**
- There came one of the seven Angels, who had the vials full of the seven last plagues, and spoke with me, saying : Come and I will show thee the Bride, the Wife of the Lamb.
- Let us be glad and rejoice, and give glory to Him ; for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and His Wife hath prepared herself.
- He that hath the Bride is the Bridegroom ; but the friend of the Bridegroom, who standeth and heareth Him, rejoiceth with joy be-
- Ga 2, 20*
- 2 C 13, 5*
- Ep 5, 23*
- Ro 15, 9*
- Ga 3, 9*
- Ga 3, 29*
- Ro 5, 8-9*
- Ap 21, 9*
- Ap 19, 7*
- Ju 3, 29*



- cause of the Bridegroom's Voice. This my joy therefore is fulfilled.
- Ap 21, 2* I, John, saw the Holy City, the New Jerusalem, coming down out of Heaven from God, prepared as a Bride adorned for her Husband.
- Is 61, 10* I will greatly rejoice in the Lord, and my soul shall be joyful in my God; for He hath clothed me with the garments of Salvation; and with the robe of justice He has covered me, as a Bridegroom decked with a crown, and as a Bride adorned with her jewels.
- Ez 16, 8* I passed by thee, and saw thee; and behold thy time was the time of lovers; and I spread My garments over thee and covered thy ignominy; and I swore to thee, and I entered into a Covenant with thee, saith the Lord God, and thou becamest Mine.
- Ez 16, 14* Thy renown went forth among the nations for thy beauty: for thou wast perfect through My Beauty, which I had put upon Thee, saith the Lord God.
- Ca 4, 7* Thou art all fair, O My love, and there is not a spot in thee.
- Ca 1, 4* I am black but beautiful, O ye daughters of Jerusalem, as the tents of Cedar, as the curtains of Solomon.
- Ca 1, 7* If thou know not thyself, O fairest among women, go forth, and follow after the steps of the flocks, and feed thy kids beside the tents of the shepherds.
- Ca 5, 9* What manner of one is thy Beloved of the Beloved, O
- thou most beautiful among women? What manner of One is thy Beloved of the Beloved, that thou hast so adjoined us?
- My Beloved is gone down into His garden, to the bed of aromatical spices, to feed in the gardens, and to gather lilies.
- As the Lily among thorns, so is My Love among the daughters.
- I am jealous of you with the jealousy of God. For I have espoused you to One Husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.
- I will build thee again, and thou shalt be built, O virgin of Israel; thou shalt again be adorned with thy timbrels, and shalt go forth to the dances of them that make merry.
- These are they who were not defiled with women; for they are virgins. These follow the Lamb whithersoever He goeth; these were purchased from among men, the first-fruits to God and to the Lamb.
- They shall walk with Me in white, because they are worthy.—He that shall overcome shall thus be clothed in white garments, and I will not blot out his name out of the Book of Life, and I will confess his name before My Father, and before His Angels.
- These are they who are come out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes and have made them white in the Blood of the Lamb.
- Ca 6, 1*
- Ca 2, 2*
- 2 C 11, 2*
- Je 31, 4*
- Ap 14, 4*
- Ap 3, 4-5*
- Ap 7, 14*



- Son of God, Who loved me, and delivered Himself for me
- Ep* 5, 29 No man ever hated his own flesh, but nourisheth and cherisheth it, as also Christ doth the Church.
- Ca* 8, 5 Who is this that cometh up from the desert, flowing with delights, leaning upon her Beloved?
- Ep* 5, 24 As the Church is subject to Christ, so also let the wives be to their husbands in all things.
- Cl* 1, 24 I fill up those things that are wanting of the sufferings of Christ, in my flesh, for His Body, which is the Church.
- Ro* 1, 7 To all that are at Rome the Beloved of God, called to be Saints. Grace to you, and peace from God our Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ.
- Ps* 59, 6 Thou hast given a warning to them that fear Thee; that they may flee from before the bow: That Thy beloved may be delivered.
- 1 C* 1, 2 To the Church of God that is at Corinth, to them that are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be Saints, with all that invoke the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, in every place of theirs and ours.
- Ac* 20, 28 Take heed to yourselves, and to the whole flock, wherein the Holy Ghost hath placed you Bishops, to rule the Church of God, which He hath purchased with His own Blood.
- Ep* 5, 27 That He might present it to Himself a glorious Church, not having spot or wrinkle or any such thing;
- but that it should be holy and without blemish.
- All the glory of the King's daughter is within in golden borders; clothed round about with varieties.
- Thou shalt no more be called Forsaken, and thy land shall no more be called Desolate: but thou shalt be called My pleasure in her, and thy land inhabited. Because the Lord hath been well pleased with thee, and thy land inhabited.
- They shall call them The holy people, the Redeemed of the Lord. But thou shalt be called, A City sought after, and not forsaken.
- Thou shalt be called the City of the Just, a faithful City.
- Thus saith the Lord of Hosts: I am returned to Sion, and I will dwell in the midst of Jerusalem; and Jerusalem shall be called the City of Truth, and the Mountain of the Lord of Hosts, the sanctified Mountain.
- The Name of the City from that day was, The Lord is there.
- He took me up in spirit to a great and high mountain; and He showed me the Holy City Jerusalem coming down out of Heaven from God.
- You are come to Mount Sion, and to the City of the Living God, the Heavenly Jerusalem, and to the company of many thousands of Angels.
- The City hath no need of the sun, nor of the moon, to shine in it. For the glory

of God hath enlightened it, and the Lamb is the Lamp thereof.

*Ap 7, 9* I saw a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and tribes, and peoples, and tongues, standing before the Throne, and in sight of the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands.

*He 12, 23* You are come to Mount Sion. And to the Church of the first-born, who are written in the Heavens, and to God the Judge of all, and to the Spirits of the Just made perfect.

*Ac 7, 38* This is he that was in the Church in the wilderness, with the Angel who spoke to him on Mount Sina, and with our fathers; who received the words of Life to give unto us.

*Ps 149, 1* Sing ye to the Lord a new Canticle: Let His praise be in the Church of the Saints.

*Cl 3, 15* Let the Peace of Christ rejoice in your hearts, wherein also you are called in One Body; and be ye thankful.

*Ca 4, 12-15* My Sister, My Spouse is a garden enclosed, a garden enclosed, a fountain sealed up.—The fountain of gardens: the well of living waters, which run with a strong stream from Libanus.

*Is 5, 1* I will sing to My Beloved the canticle of my cousin concerning His Vineyard. My Beloved had a Vineyard on a hill, in a high place.

*Is 27, 2-3* In that day there shall be singing to the Vineyard of pure wine.—I am the Lord that keep it, I will suddenly give it drink; lest any hurt

come to it, I keep it day and night.

Feed the Flock of God, *1 Pt 5, 2-3* which is among you, taking care of it, not by constraint, but willingly, according to God; not for filthy lucre's sake, but voluntarily.—Neither as lording it over the clergy, but being made a pattern of the Flock from the heart.

I am the Good Shepherd, *Jn 10, 14-* and I know Mine, and Mine *15* know Me.—As the Father knoweth Me, and I know the Father; and I lay down My Life for My sheep.

Take heed to yourselves, *Ac 20, 28* and to the whole flock, wherein the Holy Ghost hath placed you Bishops, to rule the Church of God, which He hath purchased with His own Blood.

The Lord their God will *Za 9, 16* serve them in that day, as the flock of His People; for holy stones shall be lifted up over His land.

You My flocks, the flocks *Ez 34, 31* of My Pasture are men; and I am the Lord your God, saith the Lord God.

Fear not, little flock, for *Lu 12, 32* it hath pleased your Father to give you a Kingdom.

You, by the Power of God, *1 Pt 1, 5* are kept by Faith unto Salvation, ready to be revealed in the last time.

Thou hast conducted Thy *Ps 76, 21* people like sheep, by the hand of Moses and Aaron.

They skipped like lambs, *W 19, 6* praising Thee, O Lord, Who hadst delivered them.

Give ear, O Thou that *Ps 79, 1* rulest Israel, Thou that leadest Joseph like a sheep.

- Ps* 77, 52 He took away His own people as sheep, and guided them in the wilderness like a flock.
- Jn* 10, 11 I am the Good Shepherd. The Good Shepherd giveth His Life for His sheep.
- Ps* 73, 1 O God, why hast Thou cast us off unto the end; why is Thy wrath enkindled against the sheep of Thy Pasture?
- Ps* 79, 13 We Thy people, and the sheep of Thy Pasture, will give thanks to Thee for ever.
- Je* 23, 1 Wo to the Pastors, that destroy and tear the sheep of My Pasture, saith the Lord.
- Ez* 34, 11 Thus saith the Lord God: Behold I Myself will seek My sheep, and will visit them.
- Jn* 10, 26 You do not believe because you are not My sheep.
- Jn* 21, 16-17 Jesus saith to him again: Simon son of John, lovest thou Me more than these? He saith to Him: Yea, Lord, Thou knowest that I love Thee. He saith to him: Feed My lambs.—He said to him the third time: Simon son of John, lovest thou Me? Peter was grieved, because He had said to him the third time: Lovest thou Me? And he said to Him: Lord, Thou knowest all things; Thou knowest that I love Thee. He said to him: Feed My sheep.
- Mt* 26, 31 I will strike the Shepherd, and the sheep shall be dispersed.
- Mt* 25, 33 He shall set the sheep on His right hand, but the goats on His left.
- Jn* 10, 2 He that entereth in by the doer is the Shepherd of the sheep.
- May the God of Peace, *He* 13, 20 Who brought again from the dead the Great Pastor of the sheep, our Lord Jesus Christ, in the Blood of the Everlasting Testament, fit you in all goodness, that you may do His Will.
- Go ye rather to the lost sheep of the House of Israel. Jesus answering said: I was not sent but to the sheep that are lost of the House of Israel.
- What man of you that hath an hundred sheep; and if he shall lose one of them, doth he not leave the ninety-nine in the desert, and go after that which was lost, until he find it?—And coming home call together his friends and neighbours, saying to them: Rejoice with me because I have found my sheep that was lost.
- All we like sheep have gone astray, every one hath turned aside into his own way; and the Lord hath laid on Him the iniquity of us all.
- My people hath been a lost flock, their shepherds have caused them to go astray, and have made them wander in the mountains; they have gone from mountain to hill, they have forgotten their resting places.
- You were as sheep going astray; but you are now converted to the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.
- For Thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are counted as sheep for the slaughter.
- Behold I send you as sheep
- Mt* 10, 6
- Mt* 10, 6
- Je* 50, 6
- 1 Pt* 2, 25
- Ps* 43, 22
- Mt* 10, 16

in the midst of wolves. fruitful, and beautiful.

—Be ye therefore wise as serpents and gentle as doves.

*Ps* 22, 2-3 He hath brought me up on the water of refreshment.—He hath converted my soul. He hath led me on the paths of justice for His own Name's sake.

*Ps* 22, 2 He hath set me in a Place of Pasture.

*Ps* 94, 7 He is the Lord our God; and we are the people of His Pasture, and the sheep of His Hand.

*Ps* 99, 3 Know ye that the Lord He is God; He made us, and not we ourselves. We are His people and the sheep of His Pasture.

*Is* 40, 11 He shall feed His flock like a shepherd; He shall gather together the lambs with His arm, and shall take them up in His bosom, and He Himself shall carry them that are with young.

*Za* 13, 7 I will turn My hand to the little ones.

*Jn* 21, 15 When they had dined, Jesus saith to Simon Peter: Simon son of John, lovest thou Me more than these? He saith to Him: Yea, Lord, Thou knowest that I love Thee. He saith to him: Feed My lambs.

#### VI.

*Ps* 91, 13 The just shall flourish like the Palm-tree; he shall grow up like the Cedar of Libanus.

*Nu* 24, 5-6 How beautiful are thy tents, O Israel!—As Tabernacles which the Lord hath pitched, as Cedars by the water-side.

*Jc* 11, 16 The Lord called thy name, a plentiful Olive-tree, fair,

They shall be called in Sion the mighty ones of justice, the planting of the Lord to glorify Him.

*Is* 61, 3

I said to Him: What are the two Olive-branches, that are by the two golden beaks, in which are the funnels of gold?

*Za* 4, 12

If the first-fruit be holy so is the lump also; and if

*Ro* 11, 16-18

the root be holy so are the branches.—And if some of the branches be broken, and thou, being a wild olive, art ingrafted in them, and art made partaker of the root, and of the fatness of the olive-tree, — Boast not against the branches. But if thou boast, thou bearest not the root, but the root thee.

Thy people shall be all just, they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of My planting, the work of My Hand to glorify Me.

*Is* 60, 21

Every branch in Me, that beareth not fruit, My Father

*Jn* 15, 2, 4, 6

will take away; and every one that beareth fruit, He will purge it, that it may bring forth more fruit.—Abide in Me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, unless it abide in the Vine, so neither can you, unless you abide in Me.—If any one abide not in Me, he shall be cast forth as a branch and shall wither, and they shall gather him up, and cast him into the fire, and he burneth.

He hath laid My Vineyard waste, he hath peeled off the bark of My fig-tree; he hath stripped it bare, and,

*Jl* 1, 7

- cast it away : the branches thereof are made white.
- Ct* 1, 9-10 We cease not to pray for you. — That you may walk worthy of God, in all things pleasing; being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God.
- Ga* 5, 22-23 The Fruit of the Spirit is charity, joy, peace, patience, benignity, goodness, longanimity, — Mildness, faith, modesty, continency, chastity. Against such there is no law.
- Ja* 1, 18 Of His own Will hath He begotten us by the Word of Truth, that we might be some beginning of His creature.
- *Ps* 91, 14 They that are planted in the House of the Lord shall flourish in the Courts of the Lord.
- Ps* 79, 15-16 Turn again, O God of Hosts, look down from Heaven, and see, and visit this Vineyard; — And perfect the same which Thy right Hand hath planted.
- Mt* 15, 13 Every plant which My Heavenly Father hath not planted, shall be rooted up.
- Ps* 1, 3 He shall be like a tree which is planted near the running waters, which shall bring forth its fruit in due season.
- Ja* 17, 8 He shall be as a tree that is planted by the waters, that spreadeth out its roots towards moisture, and it shall not fear when the heat cometh. And the leaf thereof shall be green, and in the time of drought it shall not be solicitous, neither shall it cease at any time to bring forth fruit.
- They that are planted in *Ps* 91, 14 the House of the Lord shall flourish in the Courts of the House of our God.
- The trees of the field *Ps* 103, 16 shall be filled, and the cedars of Libanus which He hath planted.
- If we have been planted *Ro* 6, 5 together in the likeness of His Death, we shall be also in the likeness of His Resurrection.
- His fan is in His Hand, *Lu* 3, 17 and He will purge His floor, and will gather the wheat into His barn; but the chaff He will burn with unquenchable fire.
- O My thrashing, and the *Is* 21, 10 children of My floor, that which I have heard of the Lord of Hosts, the God of Israel, I have declared unto you.
- We, being many, are one *1 C* 10, 17 bread, one Body, all that partake of one Bread.
- Our fathers did eat *Jn* 6, 31 manna in the desert, as it is written: He gave them bread from Heaven to eat.
- The Lord commended the *Lu* 18, 6 unjust steward, for as much as he had done wisely; for the children of this world are wiser in their generation than the children of Light.
- Whilst you have the *Jn* 12, 36 Light, believe in the Light, that you may be the children of Light.
- You were heretofore darkness, *Ep* 5, 8 but now light in the Lord. Walk then as children of the Light.
- You are a chosen generation, *1 P* 2, 9 a kingly priesthood, a holy nation, a purchased people; that you may declare

His virtues, Who hath called you out of darkness, into His marvellous Light.

1 T 5, 5 All you are children of the Light, and children of the day : we are not of the night, nor of darkness.

Ca 6, 10 Who is she that cometh forth as the morning rising, fair as the moon, bright as the sun, terrible as an army set in array?

Ap 12, 1 A great sign appeared in Heaven : a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and on her head a crown of twelve stars.

Mt 5, 14 You are the Light of the world. A City seated on a mountain cannot be hid.

Ph 2, 14-15 Do ye all things without hesitation,—That you may be blameless and sincere children of God, without reproof, in the midst of a crooked and perverse generation ; among whom you shine as lights in the world.

Mt 5, 16 So let your light shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father Who is in Heaven.

Po 4, 18 The path of the just, as a shining light, goeth forwards and increaseth even to perfection day.

2 C 3, 18 We all beholding the glory of the Lord, with open face, are transformed into the same image from glory to glory, as by the Spirit of the Lord.

Ap 21, 10-11 He showed me the Holy City Jerusalem coming down out of Heaven from God ; —Having the glory of God, and the light thereof was like a precious stone, as to the jasper stone, even as

crystal.

Then shall the Kingdom

Mt 25, 1-12 of Heaven be like to the virgins, who taking their lamps, went out to meet the Bridegroom and the bride.—And five of them were foolish, and five wise.—And the five foolish, having taken their lamps, did not take oil with them ; —But the wise took oil in their vessels with the lamps.—And the Bridegroom tarrying they all slumbered and slept.—And at midnight there was a cry made : Behold the Bridegroom cometh, go ye forth to meet Him.—

Then all those virgins arose and trimmed their lamps.—And the foolish said to the wise : Give us of your oil, for our lamps are gone out.—The wise answered, saying : Lest perhaps there be not enough for us and for you, go ye rather to them that sell and buy for yourselves.—Now, whilst they went to buy, the Bridegroom came ; and they that were ready, went in with Him to the marriage, and the door was shut ; — But at last came also the other virgins, saying : Lord, Lord, open to us.—But He answering said : Amen I say to you, I know you not.

They that are learned shall shine as the brightness of the firmament ; and they that instruct many to justice, as stars for all Eternity.

Da 12, 3 One is the glory of the sun, another the glory of the moon, and another the glory of the stars. For star differeth from star in glory.

The mystery which hath



- been hidden from ages and generations is now being made manifest to His Saints. To whom God would make known the riches of the glory of this Mystery among the Gentiles, which is Christ, in you the hope of glory.
- Tt 3, 27* The Holy Ghost, He hath poured forth upon us abundantly, through Jesus Christ our Saviour. That being justified by His grace, we may be heirs, according to hope of Life Everlasting.
- 1 Pt 1, 3* Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who according to His great mercy hath regenerated us unto a lively hope by the Resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead.
- Ep 4, 4* One Body, and one Spirit, as you are called in one hope of your calling.
- Ro 8, 21* The creature also itself shall be delivered from the servitude of corruption, into the liberty of the glory of the children of God.
- Ro 12, 12* Rejoicing in hope. Patient in tribulation. Instant in prayer.
- Ro 5, 2* By Him we have access through faith unto this grace, wherein we stand, and glory in the hope of the glory of the sons of God.
- Ro 5, 5* Hope confoundeth not; because the Charity of God is poured forth in our hearts, by the Holy Ghost, Who is given to us.
- Pt 83, 5* Blessed are they that dwell in Thy House, O Lord; they shall praise Thee for ever and ever.
- Ep 6, 10* Be strengthened in the Lord, and in the might of His Power.
- Behold, God is my Saviour, I will deal confidently, and will not fear: because the Lord is my strength, and my praise, and He is become my Salvation.
- As I live, saith the Lord: Every knee shall bow to Me, and every tongue shall confess to God.
- The Lord is my strength and my praise, and He is become my Salvation.
- I will love thee, O Lord, my strength.
- The Lord is my Helper, and my Protection: in Him hath my heart confided, and I have been helped.
- God hath girded me with strength, and made my way perfect.
- I write unto you, babes, because you have known the Father. I write unto you, young men, because you are strong, and the Word of God abideth in you, and you have overcome the wicked one.
- He said to me: My grace is sufficient for thee: for power is made perfect in infirmity. Gladly therefore will I glory in my infirmities, that the power of Christ may dwell in me.—For which cause I please myself in my infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in persecutions, in distresses, for Christ. For when I am weak, then I am powerful.
- Time would fail me to tell of those who by faith have conquered kingdoms, wrought justice, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions, —Quenched the violence of fire, escaped the edge of the

- sword, recovered strength from weakness, became valiant in battle, put to flight the armies of foreigners.
- De 33, 25-27* His shoe shall be iron and brass. As the days of thy youth, so also shall thy old age be.—There is no other God like the God of the righteous: He that is mounted upon the Heavens is thy Helper. By His Magnificence the clouds run hither and thither.—His dwelling is above, and underneath are the Everlasting Arms; He shall cast out the enemy from before thee, and shall say: Be thou brought to nought.
- He 6, 17-18* God interposed an oath, that by two immutable things, in which it is impossible for God to lie, we may have the strongest comfort, who have fled for refuge to hold fast the hope set before us.
- Ps 30, 13, 15* I am forgotten as one dead from the heart.—But I have put my trust in Thee, O Lord; I said: Thou art my God.
- Ps 45, 1* Our God is our Refuge and Strength, a Helper in troubles, which have found us exceedingly.
- Ps 26, 1* The Lord is my Light and my Salvation, whom shall I fear?
- Ps 61, 6-8* Be thou, O my soul, subject to God; for from Him is my patience.—For He is my God and my Saviour: He is my Helper, I shall not be moved.—In God is my Salvation and my glory; He is the God of my help, and my hope is in Him.
- VII.
- We are God's coadjutors; 1 *C* 3, 9  
you are God's husbandry;  
you are God's building.
- Built upon the foundation of the Apostles and Prophets, Jesus Christ Himself being the Chief Cornerstone.—
- In Him all the building, *Ep* 21, 22  
being framed together, groweth up into an holy Temple in the Lord. In Him you are built together, into an habitation of God in the Spirit.
- Walk ye in Him, rooted and built up in Him, and confirmed in the faith, as also you have learned, abounding in Him in thanksgiving. *Cl* 2, 7
- Iniquity shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction in thy borders, and Salvation shall possess thy walls, and praise thy gates. *Is* 60, 18
- In that day shall this canticle be sung in the land of Juda. Sion the City of our strength a Saviour, a wall and a bulwark shall be set therein. *Is* 26, 1
- It had a wall great and high, having twelve gates, and in the gates twelve Angels, and names written thereon, which are the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel. *Ap* 21, 12
- Be you as living stones built up, a spiritual house, a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ. 1 *Pt* 2, 5
- To Thee, O God, I will sing a new canticle. . . . Whose sons are as new plants in their youth; their daugh-
- Ps* 143, 12

- ters decked out, adorned round about after the similitude of a temple.
- 1 *Tr* 3, 15 Know how thou oughtest to behave thyself in the House of God, which is the Church of the Living God, the pillar and ground of Truth.
- Ep* 2, 19 You are no more strangers and foreigners; but you are fellow-citizens with the Saints, and the domestics of God.
- Ph* 3, 20-21 Our conversation is in Heaven, from whence also we look for the Saviour, our Lord Jesus Christ,—Who will reform the body of our lowliness, made like to the body of His glory, according to the operation whereby also He is able to subdue all things unto Himself.
- 1 *C* 3, 17 If any man violate the Temple of God, him will God destroy. For the Temple of God is holy, which you are.
- 1 *C* 3, 16 Know you not, that you are the Temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?
- 1 *C* 6, 19 Know you not, that your members are the Temple of the Holy Ghost, Who is in you, Whom you have from God; and you are not your own?
- Ep* 2, 22 In Him you are built together, into an habitation of God in the Spirit.
- 1 *Pt* 2, 5 Be you as living stones built up, a spiritual house, a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual exercises, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.
- Ap* 1, 6 He hath made us a Kingdom, and priests to God and His Father, to Him be glory and empire for ever. Amen.
- Thou, O Lord, hath made us to our God a Kingdom and priests, and we shall reign on the earth.
- Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection. In these the second death hath no power: but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with Him a thousand years.
- You are a chosen generation, a kingly priesthood, a holy nation, a purchased people; that you may declare His virtues, Who hath called you out of darkness into His marvellous light.
- The Lord's portion is His people, Jacob the lot of His inheritance.
- I cease not [to pray that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of Glory, may enlighten the eyes of your heart] that you may know what the hope is of His calling, and what are the riches of the glory of His inheritance in the Saints.
- I beseech you, brethren, by the mercy of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing unto God, your reasonable service.
- The law having a shadow of the good things to come, not the very image of the things; by the self-same sacrifices which they offer continually every year, can never make the comers thereunto perfect:—For then they would have ceased to be offered; because the worshippers once cleansed should have no conscience of sin any longer.
- The hour cometh and now
- Ap* 5, 10
- Ap* 20, 6
- 2 *Pt* 2, 9
- Dt* 32, 9
- Ep* 1, 18
- Ro* 12, 1
- He* 10, 1-2
- Jn* 4, 23

is when the true adorers shall adore the Father in spirit and in Truth. For the Father seeketh such to adore Him.

## VIII.

*Mt 24, 22* Unless those days had been shortened, no flesh should be saved; but for the sake of the elect those days shall be shortened.

*1 P 1, 2* According to the foreknowledge of God the Father, unto the sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the Blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you and peace be multiplied.

*Mk 13, 20* Unless the Lord had shortened the days, no flesh should be saved; but for the sake of the elect which He hath chosen, He hath shortened the days.

*Mk 13, 27* He shall send His Angels, and shall gather together His elect from the four winds, from the uttermost part of the earth to the uttermost part of heaven.

*Is 45, 4* For the sake of My servant Jacob, and Israel My elect, I have even called thee by thy name; I have made a likeness of thee, and thou hast not known Me,

*Is 65, 9* I will bring forth a seed out of Jacob, and out of Judah, a possessor of My mountains; and My elect shall inherit it, and My servants shall dwell there.

*Is 65, 22* They shall not build, and another inhabit; they shall not plant, and another eat; for as the days of a tree, so shall be the days of My people, and the works of their hands shall be of long continuance.

Will not God revenge His elect, who cry to Him day and night; and will He have patience in their regard?

*Lu 18, 7*

If you had been of the world, the world would love its own; but because you are not of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, therefore the world hateth you.

*Jn 15, 19*

You are a chosen generation.

*1 Pt 2, 9*

Now I am not in the world, and these are in the world, and I come to Thee. Holy Father, keep them in Thy Name whom Thou hast given Me; that they may be one, as We also are.

*Jn 17, 11*

While I was with them, I kept them in Thy Name. Those whom Thou gavest Me have I kept; and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition, that the Scripture may be fulfilled.

*Jn 17, 12*

Who shall accuse against the elect of God? God that justifieth.

*Ro 8, 33*

Paul, a servant of God, and an Apostle of Jesus Christ, according to the faith of the elect of God, and the acknowledging of the truth, which is according to godliness.

*Tt 1, 1*

Put ye on as the elect of God, holy, and beloved, the bowels of mercy, benignity, humility, modesty, patience.

*Cl 3, 12*

When the children were not yet born, nor had done any good or evil (that the purpose of God according to election might stand).—It was said to her [Rebecca]: The elder shall serve the younger.

*Ro 9, 11-*

*12*

- Ro 11, 5** Even so at this present time also, there is a remnant saved according to the election of grace.
- Ap 17, 14** These shall fight with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them, because He is Lord of Lords, and King of kings, and they that are with Him are called, and elect, and faithful.
- Ro 1, 7** To all that are at Rome, the beloved of God, called to be saints. Grace to you, and peace from God our Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ.
- 1 C 1, 2-3** To the Church of God that is at Corinth, to them that are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be Saints, with all that invoke the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, in every place of theirs and ours.—Grace to you, and peace from God our Father and from the Lord Jesus Christ.
- Ro 8, 28** We know that to them, that love God, all things work together unto good, to such as, according to His purpose, are called to be Saints.
- 2 Pt 1, 3** All things of His Divine Power which appertain to life and godliness, are given us, through the knowledge of Him Who hath called us by His own proper glory and virtue.
- 1 Pt 3, 9** The Lord delayeth not His promise, as some imagine, but dealeth patiently for your sake, not willing that any should perish, but that all should return to penance.
- 1 Pt 2, 9** The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly from temptation, but to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be tormented.
- You, brethren, have been called unto liberty: only make not liberty an occasion to the flesh, but by charity of the Spirit serve one another.
- God is faithful; by Whom you are called unto the fellowship of His Son Jesus Christ our Lord.
- By Him we have received grace and apostleship for obedience to the faith in all nations for His Name.—Among whom are you also the called of Jesus Christ.
- He is faithful Who hath called you, Who also will do it.
- Whom He predestinated, them He also called. And whom He called, them He also justified. And whom He justified, them He also glorified.
- Hearken to Me, O Jacob, and thou Israel whom I call; I am He, I am the First, and I am the Last.
- God hath not cast away His people, which He foreknew. Know you not what the Scripture saith of Elias, how he calleth on God against Israel?
- That which Israel sought, he hath not obtained; but the election hath obtained it; and the rest have been blinded.
- Blessed are they that dwell in Thy House, O Lord: they shall praise Thee for ever and ever.
- Hast thou not dried up the sea, the water of the mighty deep, Who madest
- Ga 5, 13**
- 1 C 1, 9**
- Ro 1, 5-6**
- 1 T 5, 14**
- Ro 8, 30**
- Is 48, 12**
- Ro 11, 2**
- Ro 11, 7**
- Ps 83, 5**
- Is 51, 10-11**

- the depth of the sea a way, that the delivered might pass through?—And now they that are redeemed by the Lord shall return, and shall come into Sion, singing praises, and joy everlasting shall be upon their heads, they shall obtain joy and gladness, sorrow and mourning shall flee away.
- Is* 42, 12 They shall give glory to the Lord, and shall declare His praise in the islands.
- Ps* 65, 4 Let all the earth adore Thee, and sing to Thee: let it sing a psalm to Thy Name.
- Mt* 5, 3-11 Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.—Blessed are the meek: for they shall possess the land.—Blessed are they that mourn: for they shall be comforted.—Blessed are they that hunger and thirst after justice: for they shall have their fill.—Blessed are the merciful: for they shall obtain mercy.—Blessed are the clean of heart: for they shall see God.—Blessed are the peacemakers: for they shall be called the children of God.—Blessed are they that suffer persecution for justice' sake: for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.—Blessed are ye when they shall revile you, and persecute you, and speak all that is evil against you, untruly, for My sake.
- Ps* 113, 15 Blessed be you of the Lord Who made Heaven and earth.
- Mt* 25, 34 Then shall the King say to them that shall be on His right hand: Come, ye blessed of My Father, possess you the Kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.
- Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered.—Blessed is the man to whom the Lord hath not imputed sin, and in whose spirit there is no guile.
- Blessed is he that shall not be scandalised in Me. *Mt* 11, 6
- Jesus saith to him: Because thou hast seen Me, Thomas, thou hast believed; blessed are they that have not seen, and have believed. *Jn* 20, 29
- Blessed is the man whose help is from Thee: in his heart he hath disposed to ascend by steps. *Ps* 83, 6
- Blessed are they who hear the Word of God, and keep it. *Lu* 11, 28
- Thus saith the Lord: Keep ye judgment and do justice: for My Salvation is sure to come, and My justice to be revealed.—Blessed is the man that doth this, and the son of that man shall lay hold on this; that keepeth the Sabbath from profaning it, and keepeth his hands from doing any evil. *Is* 56, 1-2
- Blessed is the man that heareth Me, and that watcheth daily at My gates, and waiteth at the posts of My doors. *Ps* 8, 34
- Blessed is he that readeth and heareth the words of this prophecy; and keepeth those things which are written in it; for the time is at hand. *Ap* 1, 3
- Behold I come quickly. Blessed is he that keepeth the words of the prophecy of this Book. *Ap* 22, 7
- Blessed is the man who *Ps* 1, 1-3

hath not walked in the counsel of the ungodly, nor stood in the way of sinners, nor sat in the chair of pestilence.—But his will is in the Law of the Lord, and on His Law he shall meditate day and night.—And he shall be like a tree, which is planted near the running waters, which shall bring forth its fruit in due season.

*Ps* 118, 2 Blessed are they that search His testimonies; that seek Him with their whole heart.

*Ps* 105, 3 Blessed are they that keep judgment, and do justice at all times.

*Ps* 31, 1 Blessed is the nation whose God is the Lord; the people whom He hath chosen for His inheritance.

*Je* 17, 7 Blessed is the man that trusteth in the Lord, and the Lord shall be his Confidence.

*Ps* 145, 5 Blessed is he who hath the God of Jacob for his Helper, whose hope is in the Lord his God.

*Ep* 1, 3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who hath blessed us with spiritual blessings in Heavenly places in Christ.

*Ps* 127, 1 Blessed are all they that fear the Lord; and walk in His ways.

*Ps* 111, 1 Blessed is the man that feareth the Lord; he shall delight exceedingly in His Commandments.

*Ps* 118, 1 Blessed are the undefiled in the way, who walk in the Law of the Lord.

*Ps* 40, 2 Blessed is he that understandeth concerning the needy and poor; the Lord will deliver him in the evil day.

When thou makest a feast, *Lu* 14, 13—call the poor, the maimed, 15

the lame, and the blind.—And thou shalt be blessed, because they have not wherewith to make thee recompense; for recompense shall be made to thee at the resurrection of the just.—When one of them that sat at table with Him, and heard these things, He said to him: Blessed is he that shall eat Bread in the Kingdom of God.

He that hath looked into the perfect law of liberty, *Ja* 1, 25, 27

and hath continued therein, not becoming a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work; this man shall be blessed in his deed.—Religion clean and undefiled before God and the Father, is this: to visit the fatherless and widows in their tribulation; and to keep ourself unspotted from this world.

Blessed is that servant, *Mt* 24, 46 whom when his Lord shall come He shall find so doing.

They that are of faith, *Ga* 3, 9 shall be blessed with faithful Abraham.

Blessed is the man whom *Ps* 93, 12 Thou shalt instruct, O Lord and shalt teach him out of Thy Law.

Blessed is the man that *Ja* 1, 12 endureth temptation; for when he hath been proved, he shall receive the Crown of Life, which God hath promised to them that love Him.

Behold, I come as a thief. *Ap* 16, 15 Blessed is he that watcheth, and keepeth his garments.

I heard a Voice from Hea- *Ap* 14, 13

- ven, saying to me: Write: **Blessed are the dead, who die in the Lord.** From henceforth now, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours, for their works follow them.
- Pv 10, 6-7* **The blessing of the Lord is upon the head of the just; but iniquity covereth the mouth of the wicked.—The memory of the just is with praises; and the name of the wicked shall rot.**
- Ap 19, 9* He said to me: Write: **Blessed are they that are called to the Marriage-Supper of the Lamb.** And He saith to me: These words of God are true.
- Ap 20, 6* **Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection.** In these the second death hath no power; but they shall be Priests of God and of Christ; and shall reign with Him a thousand years:
- 1 P 17, 27* Thou hast begun to bless the House of Thy servant that it may be always before Thee; for seeing Thou blessest it, O Lord, it shall be blessed for ever.
- IX.
- Is 62, 2* **The Gentiles shall see Thy Just One, and all kings Thy Glorious One, and Thou shalt be called by a new Name, which the Mouth of the Lord shall name.**
- P 111, 2* His seed shall be mighty upon earth; the generation of the righteous shall be blessed.
- P 96, 11* Light is risen to the just, and joy to the right of heart.
- P 124, 4* Do good, O Lord, to those that are good, and to the upright of heart.
- He that is mocked by his friends as I, shall call upon God and He will hear him, for the simplicity of the just man is laughed to scorn.
- He 10, 38* **My just man liveth by faith; but if he withdraw himself, he shall not please my soul.**
- Pv 4, 18* **The path of the just, as a shining light, goeth forwards and increaseth even to perfect day.**
- Jb 1, 1, 8* There was a man in the land of Hus, whose name was Job, and that man was simple and upright, and fearing God and avoiding evil.—And the Lord said to satan: Hast thou considered My servant Job, that there is none like him in the earth, a simple and upright man, and fearing God and avoiding evil?
- P 10, 6* **The Lord trieth the just and the wicked; but he that loveth iniquity hateth his own soul.**
- P 17, 25* **The Lord will reward me according to my justice, and will repay me according to the cleanness of my hands.**
- P 32, 1* **Rejoice in the Lord, O ye just; praise becometh the upright.**
- P 110, 1* **I will praise Thee, O Lord, with my whole heart; in the counsel of the just, and in the congregation.**
- Pv 2, 21* **They that are upright, shall dwell in the earth, and the simple shall continue in it.**
- P 10, 29* **The strength of the upright is the way of the**



- Lord ; and fear to them that work evil.
- Pv 11, 3, 6* The simplicity of the just shall guide them ; and the deceitfulness of the wicked shall destroy them. — The justice of the righteous shall deliver them ; and the unjust shall be caught in their own snares.
- Pv 11, 20* A perverse heart is abominable to the Lord ; and His Will is in them that walk sincerely.
- Pv 12, 6* The words of the wicked lie in wait for blood ; the mouth of the just shall deliver them.
- Pv 13, 6* Justice keepeth the way of the innocent ; but wickedness overthroweth the sinner.
- Pv 14, 11* The house of the wicked shall be destroyed ; but the Tabernacles of the just shall flourish.
- Pv 16, 17* The path of the just departeth from evils ; he that keepeth his soul, keepeth his way.
- Pv 21, 18* The wicked is delivered up for the just ; and the unjust for the righteous.
- Pv 21, 29* The wicked man impudently hardeneth his face : but he that is righteous, correcteth his way.
- Pv 28, 10* He that deceiveth the just in a wicked way, shall fall in his own destruction ; and the upright shall possess his goods.
- Pv 15, 8* The victims of the wicked are abominable to the Lord ; the vows of the just are acceptable.
- Ps 111, 4* To the righteous a Light is risen up in darkness ; He is merciful, and compassionate, and just.
- Ca 1, 3* We will be glad and rejoice
- in Thee, the righteous love Thee.
- To the saints and faithful brethren in Christ Jesus who are at Colossae : — Grace be to you and peace from God.
- Paul, an Apostle of Jesus Christ by the will of God, to the faithful in Christ Jesus. Grace be to you and peace.
- His Lord said to him : *Mt 25, 21* Well done, good and faithful servant, because thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will place thee over many things : enter thou into the joy of thy Lord.
- You are come to Mount Sion, and to the Church of the first-born, who are written in the Heavens, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of the just made perfect.
- X.
- I commend you to God and to the Word of His grace, Who is able to build up, and to give an inheritance among all the sanctified.
- By One Oblation He hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.
- Both He that sanctifieth, and they who are sanctified, are all of one. For which cause He is not ashamed to call them brethren.
- Then said I, Behold I come to do Thy Will, O God. — In the which will we are sanctified by the Oblation of the Body of Jesus Christ once.
- Paul . . . — To the Church of God that is at Corinth, to them that are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be saints, with all that invoke the Name of our Lord Jesus
- Cl 1, 2-3*
- Ep 1, 1*
- He 12, 23*
- Ac 20, 32*
- He 10, 14*
- He 2, 11*
- He 10, 9-10*
- Cl 1, 2-3*

- Christ, in every place of theirs and ours.
- Ro 15, 15-16* I have written to you, brethren, because of the grace which is given me from God:—That I should be the minister of Christ Jesus among the Gentiles: sanctifying the Gospel of God, that the oblation of the Gentiles may be made acceptable and sanctified in the Holy Ghost.
- Ac 26, 16-18* To this end have I appeared to thee, that I may make thee a minister of those things which thou hast seen,—Delivering thee from the people, and from the nations to which I now send thee,—To open their eyes, that they may be converted from darkness to light, and from the power of satan to God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and a lot among the saints by the faith that is in me.
- Ju 1, 1* Jude the servant of Jesus Christ, and brother of James: to them that are beloved in God the Father, and preserved in Jesus Christ.
- Jn 17, 19* For them do I sanctify Myself: that they also may be sanctified in truth.
- He 10, 29* How much more do you think he deserveth worst punishments, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath esteemed the Blood of the Testament unclean, by which he was sanctified, and hath offered an affront to the Spirit of grace?
- 1 Co 6, 11* But you are washed, but you are sanctified, but you are justified in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the Spirit of our God.
- If any man shall cleanse himself from these, he shall be a vessel unto honour, sanctified and profitable to the Lord, prepared unto every good work.
- He chose us in Him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and unspotted in His sight in charity.
- They shall call them The holy people, the redeemed of the Lord.
- Brethren, if a man be overtaken in any fault, you, who are spiritual, instruct such a one in the spirit of meekness, considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted.
- [Look] for the blessed hope and coming of the glory of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ,—Who gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from all iniquity, and might cleanse to Himself a people acceptable, a pursuer of good works.
- I have said to the Lord, Thou art my God, for Thou hast no need of my goods.—To the saints, who are in His land, He hath made wonderful all my desires in them.
- Prophecy came not by the will of man at any time: but the holy men of God spoke, inspired by the Holy Ghost.
- Sing ye to the Lord a new canticle: let His praise be in the Church of His saints.
- Communicating to the necessities of the saints. Pursuing hospitality.
- It hath pleased them of Macedonia and Achaia to make a contribution for the poor of the saints that are in Jerusalem.
- 2 Ti 2, 21*
- Ep 1, 4*
- Is 62, 12*
- Ga 6, 1*
- Ti 2, 13-14*
- Ps 15, 2-3*
- 2 Pt 1, 21*
- Ps 149, 1*
- Ro 12, 13*
- Ro 15, 26*

- Ro* 15, 30- I beseech you, brethren, **the saints.**
- 31* that you help me in your prayers for me to God,—That God is glorified in the *Ps* 88, 8  
 I may be delivered from the assembly of **the saints**:  
 the unbelievers that are in Judea, great and terrible above all  
 and that the oblation of my them that are about Him.  
 service may be acceptable in **The saints** shall rejoice in *Ps* 149, 5  
 Jerusalem to the saints. glory: they shall be joyful  
 in their beds.
- Ci* 1, 1-2 Paul an Apostle of Jesus I beheld, and lo, that horn *Da* 7, 21  
 Christ.—To the saints and made war against the saints,  
 faithful brethren in Christ and prevailed over them.  
 Jesus who are at Colossa. Ephraim hath compassed *Os* 11, 12
- Ph* 4-5 I give thanks to my God. Me about with denials, and  
 —Hearing of thy charity and the House of Israel with  
 faith which thou hast in the deceit: but Juda went down  
 Lord Jesus, and towards all as a witness with God, and  
 the saints. is faithful with the saints.
- Ap* 8, 3 There was given to him You shall flee as you fled *Za* 14, 5  
 much incense, that he should from the face of the earth-  
 offer of the prayers of all quake in the days of Ozias  
 saints upon the Golden Altar, king of Juda; and the Lord  
 which is before the Throne of my God shall come, and all  
 God, the saints with Him.
- Ep* 3, 8 To me, the least of all the The graves were opened: *Mt* 27, 52  
 saints, is given this grace, to many bodies of the saints  
 preach among the Gentiles that had slept arose.
- Ep* 3, 18 I pray that you may be It came to pass, that *Ac* 9, 32  
 able to comprehend, with all Peter, as he passed through  
 the saints, what is the visiting all, came to the  
 breadth, and length, and saints who dwelt at Lydda.  
 height, and depth [of] the Giving her [Tabitha] his *Ac* 9, 41  
 charity of Christ. hand, he lifted her up. And  
 when he had called the saints  
 and the widows, he presented  
 her alive.
- Ep* 5, 3 Fornication and all un- Indeed I did formerly *Ac* 26, 9-  
 cleanness, or covetousness, think that I ought to do 10  
 let it not so much as be many things contrary to the  
 named among you, as Name of Jesus of Nazareth.  
 becometh saints. —Which also I did at Jeru-  
 salem, and many of the  
 saints did I shut up in  
 prison.
- Ph* 1, 1 Paul and Timothy, the We give thanks to God.— *Ci* 1, 3-4  
 servants of Jesus Christ; to Hearing your faith in Christ  
 all the saints in Christ Jesus, Jesus, and the love which  
 who are at Philippi, with the you have towards all the  
 Bishops and deacons. saints.
- Jb* 5, 1 Call now if there be any Let a widow be chosen.— *1* *Ti* 5, 9-  
 that will answer thee, and Having testimony for her 10  
 turn to some of the saints.
- Ps* 88, 6 The Heavens shall confess Thy wonder, O Lord; and  
 Thy Truth in the Church of

- good works, if she have brought up children, if she have received to harbour, if she have washed the saints' feet.
- Ph* 7 I have had great joy and consolation in thy charity, because the bowels of the saints have been refreshed by thee, brother.
- He* 6, 10 God is not unjust, that He should forget your work and the love which you have shown in His Name, you who have ministered, and do minister to the saints.
- Ju* 3 I was under a necessity to write unto you : to beseech you to contend earnestly for the faith once delivered to the saints.
- Ap* 8, 4 The smoke of the incense of the prayers of the saints ascended up before God, from the hand of the Angel.
- Ap* 13, 7 It was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them.
- Ap* 13, 10 He that shall kill by the sword, must be killed by the sword. Here is the patience and the faith of the saints.
- Ap* 14, 12 Here is the patience of the saints, who keep the Commandments of God, and the Faith of Jesus.
- Ap* 16, 6 They have shed the blood of saints and Prophets, and Thou hast given them blood to drink : for they are worthy.
- Ap* 17, 6 I saw the woman drunk with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus.
- Ap* 18, 24 In her was found the blood of Prophets and of saints, and of all that were slain upon the earth.
- Ap* 19, 8 It is granted to her that she should clothe herself with fine linen glittering and white. For the fine linen are the justifications of saints.
- They came upon the breadth of the earth, and encompassed the camp of the saints, and the Beloved City.
- Concerning the ministry, that is done towards the saints, it is superfluous for me to write unto you.
- The administration of this office doth not only supply the wants of the saints, but aboundeth also by many thanksgivings in the Lord.
- Salute one another in a holy kiss. All the saints salute you.
- The brethren who are with me salute you. All the saints salute you : especially they that are of Caesar's household.
- Paul an Apostle of Jesus Christ by the will of God, to all the saints who are at Ephesus, and to the faithful in Christ Jesus.—Grace be to you and peace from God the Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ.
- I also hearing of your faith that is in the Lord Jesus, and of your love towards all the saints ; cease not to give thanks for you.
- You are no more strangers and foreigners : but you are fellow-citizens with the saints and the domestics of God.
- He gave some Apostles and other some pastors and doctors.—For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the
- Ap* 20, 8
- 2 *C* 9, 1
- 2 *C* 9, 12
- 2 *C* 13, 12
- Ph* 4, 22
- Ep* 1, 1-2
- Ep* 1, 15
- Ep* 2, 19
- Ep* 4, 11-12

- edifying of the Body of Christ.
- Ro 8, 27* He that searcheth the hearts, knoweth what the Spirit desireth: because He asketh for the saints according to God.
- Ro 15, 25* I shall go to Jerusalem, to minister unto the saints.
- Ro 16, 15* Salute Philologus and Julia, Nereus and his sister, and Olympias; and all the saints that are with them.
- He 13, 24* Salute all your prelates, and all the saints.
- 1 C 6, 1* Dare any of you, having a matter against another, go to be judged, before the unjust, and not before the saints?
- 1 C 6, 2* Know you not that the saints shall judge this world?
- 2 P 6, 41* Let Thy Priests, O Lord God, put on Salvation, and Thy saints rejoice in good things.
- P 51, 11* I will wait on Thy Name, for it is good in the sight of Thy saints.
- P 131, 9* Let Thy Priests be clothed with justice: and let Thy saints rejoice.
- P 144, 9* Let all Thy works, O Lord, praise Thee: and let Thy saints bless Thee.
- Ac 9, 13* Ananias answered: Lord, I have heard by many of this man, how much evil he hath done to Thy saints in Jerusalem.
- 1 K 2, 9* He will keep the feet of His saints, and the wicked shall be silent in darkness, because no man shall prevail by his own strength.
- Is 15, 15* Behold among His saints none is unchangeable, and the heavens are not pure in His sight.
- O love the Lord, all ye His saints: for the Lord will require truth, and will repay them abundantly that act proudly.
- The Lord loveth judgment, and will not forsake His saints: they shall be preserved for ever.
- You that love the Lord, hate evil: the Lord preserveth the souls of His saints.
- Precious in the sight of the Lord, is the death of His saints.
- A hymn to all His saints: to the children of Israel, a people approaching to Him.
- This glory is to all His saints.
- The Lord will protect them that walk in simplicity.—Keeping the paths of justice, and guarding the ways of saints.
- The Mystery which hath been hidden from ages and generations, now is manifested to His saints.
- May the Lord make you abound in charity towards one another,—To confirm your hearts without blame, in holiness, before God and our Father, at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ with all His saints.
- To you who are troubled, rest with us when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from Heaven with the Angels of His power,—When He shall come to be glorified in His saints, and to be made wonderful in all them who have believed: because our testimony was believed upon you in that day.
- Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied, saying:

Behold the Lord cometh with thousands of His saints.

*Da 7, 18* The saints of the Most High God shall take the Kingdom: and they shall possess the Kingdom for ever and ever.

*Da 7, 21-22* I beheld, and lo, that horn made war against the saints, and prevailed over them, —Till the Ancient of days came and gave judgment to the saints of the Most High, and the time came, and the saints obtained the Kingdom.

*Da 7, 24-25* Another [king] shall rise up after them.—And he shall speak words against the High One, and shall crush the saints of the Most High.

*Da 7, 26-27* Judgment shall sit, that his power may be taken away.—And that the kingdom, and power, and the greatness of the kingdom, under the whole Heaven, may be given to the people of the saints of the Most High: whose Kingdom is an Everlasting Kingdom, and all kings shall serve Him, and shall obey Him.

*Pr 49, 5* Gather ye together His saints to Him: who set His Covenant before sacrifices.

*Pr 29, 5* Sing to the Lord, O you His saints: and give praise to the memory of His Holiness.

*C11, 12* Giving thanks to God the Father, Who hath made us worthy to be partakers of the lot of the saints in Light.

*Ju 24* To Him Who is able to preserve you without sin, and to present you spotless

before the Presence of His Glory with exceeding joy in the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, be glory and magnificence.

# XL

You are come to Mount Sion.—And to the Church of the First-born, who are written in the Heavens, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of the just made perfect.

I will declare Thy Name to My brethren: in the midst of the Church I will praise Thee.

He answering him that told Him, said: Who is My mother, and who are My brethren? —And stretching forth His hand towards His disciples, He said: Behold My mother and My brethren.

Answering them, He said: Who is My mother and My brethren? —And looking round about on them who sat about Him, He saith: Behold My mother and My brethren.

The King answering, shall say to them: Amen I say to you, as long as you did it to one of these My least brethren, you did it to Me.

Jesus saith to them: Fear not. Go, tell My brethren that they go into Galilee, there they shall see Me.

My mother and My brethren, are they who hear the Word of God, and do it.

Jesus saith to her: Do not touch Me, for I am not yet ascended to My Father: but go to My brethren, and say to them; I ascend to My

- Father and to your Father, to My God and your God.
- He 2, 17* It behoved Him in all things to be made like unto His brethren, that He might become a merciful and faithful High Priest before God, that He might be a propitiation for the sins of the people.
- Ep 3, 14-15* I bow my knees to the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ.—Of whom all paternity in Heaven and earth is named.
- Ga 6, 16* Whosoever shall follow this rule, peace on them, and mercy, and upon the Israel of God.
- Lu 20, 36* They are equal to the Angels, and are the children of God, being the children of the Resurrection.
- 1 Pt 1, 3* Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who according to His great mercy hath regenerated us unto a lively hope, by the Resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead.
- Ep 1, 22-23* He hath subjected all things under His feet: and hath made Him Head over all the Church,—Which is His Body, and the fulness of Him, Who is filled all in all.
- Ep 4, 12* He gave some Apostles and other some pastors and doctors: for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the Body of Christ.
- Cl 1, 23-24* I, Paul, am made a minister,—Who now rejoice in my sufferings for you, and fill up those things that are wanting of the sufferings of Christ, in my flesh for His Body, which is the Church.
- 1 C 12, 27* You are the Body of Christ, and members of member.
- [Be] careful to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace. **One Body and one Spirit:** as you are called in one hope of your calling.
- No man ever hated his own flesh: but nourisheth and cherisheth it, as also Christ doth the Church:—Because we are members of His Body, of His Flesh, and of His Bones.
- In one Spirit were we all baptised into one body, whether Jews, or Gentiles, whether bond, or free: and in one Spirit we have all been made to drink.
- Know you not, that your bodies are the members of Christ? Shall I then take the members of Christ, and make them the members of an harlot? God forbid.
- You are filled in Him, Who is the Head of all principality and power.
- Labour as a good soldier of Christ Jesus,
- No man, being a soldier to God, entangleth himself with secular businesses: that he may please Him to Whom he hath engaged himself.
- This precept I commend to thee, O son Timothy: according to the prophecies going on before thee, that thou war in them a good warfare.
- Though we walk in the flesh, we do not war according to the flesh.
- Our wrestling is not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, and powers, against the rulers of

- the world of darkness, against the spirits of wickedness in the high places.
- Ge* 32, 24-25 Jacob remained alone : and behold a man wrestled with him till morning.—And when he saw that he could not overcome him, he touched the sinew of his thigh, and forthwith it shrank.
- Ca* 6, 9 Who is she that cometh forth as the morning rising, fair as the moon, bright as the sun, terrible as an army set in array?
- Ca* 7, 1 What shalt thou see in the Sulamites but the companies of camps?
- He* 11, 32-33 The time would fail me to tell of Gedeon and the prophets:—Who by faith conquered kingdoms, wrought justice, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions.
- 1 Ti* 6, 12 Fight the good fight of faith : lay hold on eternal life, whereunto thou art called, and hast confessed a good confession before many witnesses.
- Dt* 1, 42 The Lord said to me : Say to them : Go not up, and fight not, for I am not with you : lest you fall before your enemies.
- Dt* 1, 43-45 I spoke, and you hearkened not : but resisting the commandment of the Lord, and swelling with pride, you went up into the mountain.—And the Amorhite that dwelt in the mountains coming out, and meeting you, chased you, as bees do : and made slaughter of you from Seir as far as Harma.—And when you returned and wept before the Lord, He heard you not, neither would He yield to your voice.
- I say to you : Refrain from these men, and let them alone : for if this counsel or this work be of men, it will come to nought.—But if it be of God, ye cannot overthrow it ; lest perhaps you be found even to fight against God.
- Some of the Pharisees rising up, strove, saying : We find no evil in this man. What if a spirit hath spoken to him, or an Angel?
- After this the children of Moab, and the children of Ammon, and with them of the Ammonites, were gathered together to fight against Josaphat. — And Jahaziel was there, upon whom the Spirit of the Lord came in the midst of the multitude,—And he said : Attend ye, all Juda, and you that dwell in Jerusalem, and thou king Josaphat : Thus saith the Lord to you : Fear ye not, and be not dismayed at this multitude : for the battle is not yours, but God's.—It shall not be you that shall fight, but only stand with confidence, and you shall see the help of the Lord over you, O Juda, and Jerusalem : fear ye not, nor be you dismayed : to-morrow you shall go out against them, and the Lord will be with you.—And every man of Juda, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem returned, and Josaphat at their head, into Jerusalem with great joy, because the Lord had made them rejoice over their enemies.—And the fear of the Lord fell upon all the

*Ac* 5, 38-39*Ac* 23, 9*2 P* 20, 1, 14-15, 17, 27, 29



kingdoms of the lands when they heard that the Lord had fought against the enemies of Israel.

**Za 10, 5** They shall be as mighty men, treading under foot the mire of the ways in battle: and they shall fight, because the Lord is with them: and the riders of horses shall be confounded.

**4 K 6, 15-17** The servant of the man of God rising early, went out, and saw an army round about the city, and horses and chariots: and he told him, saying: Alas, alas, alas, my lord, what shall we do? —But he answered: Fear not: for there are more with us than with them.—And Eliseus prayed, and said: Lord, open his eyes that he may see. And the Lord opened the eyes of the servant, and he saw; and behold the mountain was full of horses, and chariots of fire round about Eliseus.

**Ps 33, 8** The Angel of the Lord shall encamp round about them that fear Him: and shall deliver them.

**Ge 32, 1-2** Jacob went on the journey he had begun: and the Angels of God met him.—And when he saw them, he said: These are the camps of God, and he called the name of that place Mahanaim, that is, Camps.

**Da 10, 5, 12, 15, 18-19** I [Daniel] lifted up my eyes, and I saw: and behold a man clothed in linen, and his loins were girded with the finest gold.—And he said to me: Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thy heart to understand, to afflict thyself

in the sight of thy God, thy words have been heard: and I am come for thy words.—And when he was speaking such words to me, I cast down my countenance to the ground, and held my peace.—Therefore he that looked like a man touched me again, and strengthened me.—And he said: Fear not, O man of desires, peace be to thee: take courage and be strong. And when he spoke to me I grew strong.

At that time shall Michael rise up, the great Prince, who standeth for the children of Thy people: and a time shall come such as never was from the time that nations began even until that time. And at that time shall thy people be saved, every one that shall be found written in the Book.

Put you on the armour of God, that you may be able to stand against the deceits of the devil.—For our wrestling is not against flesh and blood: but against principalities and powers, against the rulers of the world of this darkness, against the spirits of wickedness in the high places.—Therefore take unto you the armour of God, that you may be able to resist in the evil day, and to stand in all things perfect.—Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with Truth, and having on the breastplate of Justice,—And your feet shod with the preparation of the Gospel of peace:—In all things taking the shield of Faith, wherewith you may be able to extinguish all the

**Da 12, 1**

**Ep 6, 11-17**

R R

fiery darts of the most wicked one.—And take unto you the helmet of Salvation : and the sword of the Spirit (which is the Word of God).

1 T 5, 8

Let us, who are of the day, be sober, having on the breastplate of Faith and Charity, and for a helmet, the hope of Salvation.

He 12, 1-2

Let us run by patience to the fight proposed to us :—**Looking on Jesus**, the Author and Finisher of Faith, Who having joy set before Him, endured the Cross, despising the shame, and now sitteth on the right hand of the Throne of God.

1 C 9, 26-

27

I so run, not as at an uncertainty ; I so fight not as one beating the air :—But I chastise my body, and bring it into subjection.

Mt 4, 1

Jesus was led by the Spirit into the desert, to be tempted by the devil.

Ps 17, 35

Who is God but our God, who teacheth thy hands to war !

Ez 33, 2-4,

6-7

Son of man, speak to the children of thy people, and say to them : When I bring the sword upon a land, if the people of the land take a man, one of their meanest, and make him a watchman over them :—And he see the sword coming upon the land, and sound the trumpet, and tell the people :—Then he that heareth the trumpet, whosoever he be, and doth not look to himself, if the sword come, and cut him off : his blood shall be upon his own head.—And if the watchman see the sword coming, and sound not the trumpet : and the people look not to

themselves, and the sword come, and cut off a soul from among them : he indeed is taken away in his iniquity, but I will require his blood at the hand of the watchman.—So thou, O son of man, I have made thee a watchman to the House of Israel.

Thus hath the Lord said Is 21, 6-8

to me : Go, and set a watchman : and whatsoever he shall see, let him tell.—And he saw a chariot with two horsemen. . . . And he beheld them diligently with much heed.—And [as] a lion [he] cried out : I am upon the watch-tower of the Lord, standing continually by day : and I am upon my ward, standing whole nights.

The voice of Thy watchmen : they have lifted up their voice, they shall praise together : for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall convert Zion.

Is 52, 8

Upon thy walls, O Jerusalem, I have appointed watchmen all the day, and all the night, they shall never hold their peace. You that are mindful of the Lord, hold not your peace.

Is 62, 6

Watch ye, because you know not what hour your Lord will come.

In all these things we overcome because of Him that hath loved us.

Ro 8, 37

Thanks be to God, Who hath given us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.

Blessed be the Lord my God, Who teacheth my hands to fight, and my fingers to war.—My Mercy,

Ps 143, 1-2

and my Refuge: my Support, and my Deliverer: my Protector, and I have hoped in Him: Who subdueth my people under me.

## XII.

*Ap 12, 1* A great sign appeared in Heaven: A woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and on her head a crown of twelve stars.

*Ez 16, 12* I put a jewel upon thy forehead, and earrings in thy ears, and a beautiful crown upon thy head.

*Ap 4, 4, 10* Round about the Throne were four-and-twenty seats: and upon the seats, four-and-twenty Ancients sitting, clothed in white garments, and on their heads were crowns of gold.—The four-and-twenty Ancients fell down before Him that sitteth on the Throne, and adored Him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the Throne.

*Ap 1, 5-8* Jesus Christ Who is the faithful Witness, Who hath washed us from our sins in His own Blood,—And hath made us a Kingdom and Priests to God and His Father, to Him be glory and empire for ever and ever. Amen.

*Ap 5, 10* Thou hast made us to our God a Kingdom and Priests, and we shall reign on the earth.

*Cl 1, 9, 13* We cease not to pray for you,—Giving thanks to God the Father, Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the

Kingdom of the Son of His Love.

The children of the Kingdom shall be cast out into the exterior darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. *Mt 8, 12*

The field is the world. *Mt 13, 38*  
And the good seed are the children of the Kingdom.

Fear not, little flock, for it hath pleased your Father to give you a Kingdom. *Lk 12, 32*

Hearken, my dearest brethren: hath not God chosen the poor in this world, rich in faith, and heirs of the Kingdom which God hath promised to them that love Him? *Ja 2, 5*

We ourselves also glory in you for your patience, and faith, and in all your persecutions, and tribulations which you endure,—For an example of the just judgment of God, that you may be counted worthy of the Kingdom of God, for which also you suffer. *2 T 1, 4-5*

We testified to every one of you that you would walk worthy of God, Who hath called you unto His Kingdom and glory. *1 T 2, 12*

It came to pass afterwards, that He travelled through the cities and towns, preaching and evangelising the Kingdom of God; and the twelve with Him. *Lu 8, 1*

He sent them to preach the Kingdom of God, and to heal the sick. *Lu 9, 2*

He said to them: To you it is given to know the mystery of the Kingdom of God: but to them that are without, all things are done in parables. *Mt 4, 11*

- Jn 3, 3-5** Jesus answered and said to him: Amen, amen I say to thee, unless a man be born again, he cannot see the Kingdom of God.—Nicodemus saith to Him: How can a man be born when he is old? can he enter a second time into his mother's womb, and be born again?—Jesus answered: Amen, amen I say to thee, unless a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God.
- Mt 7, 21** Not every one that saith to Me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven: but he that doth the will of My Father Who is in Heaven, he shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven.
- 1 C 1, 3** Grace to you, and peace from God our Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ.
- Ph 4, 7** The peace of God which surpasseth all understanding, keep your hearts and minds in Christ Jesus.
- Ro 15, 13** The God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing; that you may abound in hope, and in the power of the Holy Ghost.
- Ro 15, 33** The God of peace be with you all. Amen.
- Gal 5, 22-23** The fruit of the Spirit is charity, joy, peace, patience, benignity, goodness, longanimity,—Mildness, faith, modesty, continency, chastity. Against such there is no law.
- Ap 1, 4** Grace be unto you and peace from Him that is, and that was, and that is to come, and from the seven spirits which are before His Throne.
- Being justified by faith, let us have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.
- These things I have spoken to you, that in Me you may have peace. In the world you shall have distress: but have confidence, I have overcome the world.
- Peace I leave with you, My peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, do I give unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, nor let it be afraid.
- If the unbeliever depart, let him depart. For a brother or sister is not under servitude in such cases. But God hath called us in peace.
- The God of all grace, Who hath called us unto His Eternal Glory in Christ Jesus, after you have suffered a little, will Himself perfect you, and confirm you, and establish you.
- The grace of God our Saviour hath appeared to all men,—Instructing us that we should live godly in this world.—Looking for the blessed hope and coming of the glory of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.
- The Spirit Himself giveth testimony to our spirit, that we are the sons of God.—And if sons, heirs also: heirs indeed of God, and joint heirs with Christ: yet so if we suffer with Him, that we may be also glorified with Him.
- When Christ shall appear, Who is your life: then you also shall appear with Him
- Ro 5, 1**
- Jn 16, 33**
- Jn 14, 27**
- 1 C 7, 15**
- 1 Pt 5, 10**
- Tt 2, 11-13**
- Ro 8, 16-17**
- Cl 3, 4**

- in glory.**  
*Ch* 11, 27 The Mystery is Christ, in you the hope of glory.  
*2 T* 1, 10 He shall come to be glorified in His saints, and to be made wonderful in all them who have believed.  
*W* 8, 30 Whom He predestinated : them He also called. And whom He called : them He also justified. And whom He justified : them He also glorified.  
*Ps* 83, 12 God loveth mercy and truth : the Lord will give grace and glory.  
*Ro* 5, 1-2 Being justified by faith, let us have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.—By Whom also we have access through faith into this grace, wherein we stand, and glory in the hope of the glory of the sons of God.  
*1 Pt* 5, 1 I am myself also a witness of the sufferings of Christ : as also a partaker of that glory which is to be revealed in time to come.  
*Rp* 3, 21 To Him be glory in the Church and in Christ Jesus unto all generations, world without end. Amen.  
*C* 6, 2-3 Know you not that the saints shall judge this world? And if the world shall be judged by you : are you unworthy to judge the smallest matters? — Know you not that we shall judge Angels? How much more things of this world?  
*Mt* 19, 23 Jesus said to them : Amen I say to you, that you who have followed Me in the generation, when the Son of Man shall sit on the seat of His Majesty : you also shall sit on twelve seats, judging the twelve Tribes of Israel.  
I dispose to you, as My Father hath disposed to Me, a Kingdom :—That you may eat and drink at My table in My Kingdom : and may sit upon thrones judging the twelve Tribes of Israel.  
But thou, why judgest thou thy brother? or thou, why dost thou despise thy brother? For we shall all stand before the Judgment Seat of Christ.  
We must all be manifested before the Judgment Seat of Christ, that every one may receive the proper things of the body, according as he hath done, whether it be good or evil.  
To me it is a very small thing to be judged by you, or by men's day, but neither do I judge my own self.—For I am not conscious to myself of anything, yet am I not hereby justified : but He that judgeth me is the Lord.—Therefore judge not before the time : until the Lord come, Who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts : and then shall every man have praise from God.  
A high and glorious Throne from the beginning is the place of our sanctification.  
God shall come manifestly : our God shall come, and shall not keep silence.—A fire shall burn before Him : and a mighty tempest shall be round about Him.—He shall call Heaven from above, and the earth to judge His

people.—Gather ye together His saints to Him: who set His Covenant before sacrifices.—And the heavens shall declare His justice, for God is Judge.

## 21.—ST. MICHAEL THE ARCHANGEL, GUARDIAN GENERAL OF THE CHURCH.

**I.**  
*Js 5, 13-16* When Josue was in the field of the city of Jericho, he lifted up his eyes and saw a man standing over against him, holding a drawn sword, and he went to him, and said: Art thou one of ours, or of our adversaries?—And he answered: No: but I am Prince of the Host of the Lord, and now I am come.—Josue fell on his face to the ground. And worshipping, said: What saith my lord to his servant? — Loose, saith he, thy shoes from off thy feet: for the Place whereon thou standest is holy. And Josue did as was commanded him.

**II.**  
*Ds 12, 1* At that time Michael shall rise up, the great Prince, who standeth for the children of Thy people; and a time shall come such as never was from the time that nations began even until that time. And at that time shall Thy people be saved: every one that shall be found written in the Book.

*Ds 10, 1-21* In the third year of Cyrus, king of the Persians, a Word was revealed to Daniel, surnamed Baltassar, and a True Word, and great strength: and he understood the Word: for there is need of understanding in a Vision.—In those days I, Daniel, mourned the days of three weeks.—I ate no desirable bread, and neither flesh nor wine entered into my mouth, neither was I anointed with ointment: till the days of three weeks were accomplished.—And in the fourth-and-twentieth day of the first month I was by the great river, which is the Tigris.—And I lifted up my eyes, and I saw: and behold a man clothed in linen, and his loins were girded with the finest gold.—And his body was like the chrysolite, and his face as the appearance of lightning, and his eyes as the burning lamp: and his arms, and all downward even to the feet, like in appearance to glittering brass: and the voice of his Word like the voice of a multitude.—And I, Daniel, alone saw the Vision; for the men that were with me saw it not: but an exceeding great terror fell upon them, and they fled away, and hid themselves.—And I being left alone saw this great Vision: and there remained no strength in me, and the appearance of my countenance was changed in me: and I fainted away, and retained no strength.—And I heard the voice of his words: and when I heard, I lay in consternation upon my face, and my face was close to the ground.—And behold a hand touched me, and lifted me

up upon my knees and upon the joints of my hands.—And he said to me : Daniel, thou man of desires, understand the words that I speak to thee, and stand upright : for I am sent now to thee. And when he had said this word to me I stood trembling.—And he said to me : Fear not, Daniel : for from the first day that thou didst set thy heart to understand, to afflict thyself in the sight of thy God, thy words have been heard : and I am come for thy words.—But the Prince of the kingdom of the Persians resisted me one-and-twenty days ; and behold Michael, one of the chief Princes, came to help me, and I remained there by the king of the Persians.—But I am come to teach thee what things shall befall thy people in the latter days, for as yet the Vision is for days.—And when he was speaking such words to me, I cast down my countenance to the ground, and held my peace.—And behold as it were the likeness of a son of man touched my lips : then I opened my mouth and spoke, and said to him that stood before me : O my lord, at the sight of thee my joints are loosed, and no strength hath remained in me.—And how can the servant of my lord speak with my lord ? for no strength remaineth in me, moreover my breath is stopped. Therefore he that looked like a man touched me again, and strengthened me.—And he said : Fear not, O man of desires, peace be to thee :

take courage, and be strong. And when he spoke to me, I grew strong. And I said : Speak, O my lord, for thou hast strengthened me.—And he said : Dost thou know wherefore I am come to thee ? and now I will return to fight against the Prince of the Persians. When I went forth there appeared the Prince of the Greeks coming.—But I will tell thee what is set down in the Scripture of Truth : and none is my helper in all these things, but Michael your Prince.

## III.

When Michael the Archangel, disputing with the devil, contended about the body of Moses, he durst not bring against him the judgment of reviling, but said : The Lord command thee.

Ju 9

## IV.

There was a great battle in Heaven, Michael and his Angels fought with the dragon, and the dragon fought and his angels :—And they prevailed not, neither was their place found any more in Heaven.

Ap 12, 7-8

God signified the things which must shortly come to pass, sending by His Angel to His servant John,—Who hath given testimony to the Word of God, and the testimony of Jesus Christ, what things soever he hath seen.—Blessed is he that readeth and heareth the words of this Prophecy : and keepeth those things which are written in it. For the time is at hand.—John to the Seven

Ap 1, 1-5

Churches, which are in Asia. Grace be unto you and peace from Him that is, and that was, and that is to come, and from the Seven Spirits which are before His Throne,—And from Jesus Christ, Who is the Faithful Witness, the First Begotten of the dead, and the Prince of the king of the earth, Who hath loved us, and washed us from our sins, in His Own Blood. (*Epistle read on his Feast.*) At that time, etc. (*Gospel read on his Feast.*) *Mt* 18, 1-10.

## 22.—ST. GABRIEL, THE ANGEL OF THE INCARNATE WORD.

*Da* 9, 20-27      I. Now while I was yet speaking, and praying, and confessing my sins, and the sins of my people of Israel, and presenting my supplications in the sight of my God, for the Holy Mountain of my God :—As I was yet speaking in prayer, behold the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the Vision at the beginning, flying swiftly touched me at the time of the Evening Sacrifice. —And he instructed me, and spoke to me, and said : O Daniel, I am now come forth to teach thee, and that thou mightest understand.—From the beginning of thy prayers the Word came forth : and I am come to show it to thee, because thou art a man of desires : therefore do thou mark the word, and understand the Vision.—Seventy weeks are shortened upon thy people, and upon thy Holy City, that transgression may be finished, and sin may have an end, and iniquity may be abolished ; and Everlasting Justice may be brought ; and Vision and Prophecy may be fulfilled ; and the Saint of saints may be anointed.—Know thou therefore, and take notice : that from the going forth of the Word to build up Jerusalem again, unto Christ the Prince, there shall be seven weeks, and sixty-two weeks : and the street shall be built again, and the walls in the straitness of times.—And after sixty-two weeks Christ shall be slain : and the people that shall deny Him shall not be His. And a people with their leader that shall come, shall destroy the City and the Sanctuary : and the end thereof shall be waste, and after the end of the war the appointed desolation.—And He shall confirm the Covenant with many, in one week : and in the half of the week the Victim and the Sacrifice shall fail : and there shall be in the Temple the abomination of desolation : and the desolation shall continue even to the consummation, and to the end.

II.  
In the sixth month, the Angel Gabriel was sent from God into a city of Galilee, called Nazareth,—To a Virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, of the house of David : and the Virgin's name was Mary.— *Lu* 1, 26-38



And the Angel being come in, said unto her: Hail, full of grace, the Lord is with thee: Blessed art thou among women.—Who having heard, was troubled at his saying, and thought with herself what manner of salutation this should be.—And the Angel said to her: Fear not, Mary, for thou hast found grace with God.—Behold thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and shalt bring forth a Son; and thou shalt call His Name Jesus.—He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Most High: and the Lord God shall give unto Him the Throne of David His father; and He shall reign in the House of Jacob for ever,—And of His Kingdom there shall be no end.—And Mary said to the Angel: How shall this be done, because I know not man? And the Angel answering, said to her: The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Most High shall overshadow thee: And therefore also the Holy which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.—And behold thy cousin Elizabeth, she also hath conceived a son in her old age: and this is the sixth month with her that is called barren:—Because no word shall be impossible with God.—And Mary said: Behold the handmaid of the Lord; be it done to me according to thy Word. And the Angel departed.

### 23.—ST. RAPHAEL, THE GUIDE OF THOSE WHO HAVE LOST THEIR WAY.

1. ST. RAPHAEL APPEARS TO YOUNG TOBIAS AS A BEAUTIFUL YOUNG MAN: ASSUMES THE NAME OF AZARIAS: GUIDES YOUNG TOBIAS ON HIS JOURNEY TO MEDSA.

Tob 5, 1-22 Then Tobias answered his father, and said: I will do all things, father, which thou hast commanded me.—But how I shall get this money, I cannot tell; he knoweth not me, and I know not him: what token shall I give him? nor did I ever know the way which leadeth thither.—Then his father answered him, and said: I have a note of his hand with me, which when thou shalt show him, he will presently pay it.—But go now, and seek thee out some faithful man, to go with thee for his hire: that thou mayst receive it while I yet live.—Then Tobias going forth, found a beautiful young man, standing girded, and as it were ready to walk.—And not knowing that he was an Angel of God, he saluted him, and said: From whence art thou, good young man?—But he answered: *Of the children of Israel.* And Tobias said to him: Knowest thou the way that leadeth to the country of the Medes?—And he answered: *I know it; and I have often walked through all the ways thereof, and I have abode with Gabelus our brother, who dwelleth at Rages a city of the Medes,*

*which is situate in the Mount of Ecbatana.*—And Tobias said to him: Stay for me, I beseech thee, till I tell these same things to my father.—Then Tobias going in told all these things to his father. Upon which his father being in admiration, desired that he would come in unto him.—So going in he saluted him, and said: *Joy be to thee always*—And Tobias said: What manner of joy shall be to me, who sit in darkness, and see not the light of Heaven?—And the young man said to him: *Be of good courage, thy cure from God is at hand.*—And Tobias said to him: Canst thou conduct my son to Gabelus at Rages, a city of the Medes? and when thou shalt return, I will pay thee thy hire.—And the Angel said to him: *I will conduct him thither, and bring him back to thee.*—And Tobias said to him: I pray thee, tell me, of what family, or what tribe art thou?—And Raphael the Angel answered: *Dest thou seek the family of him thou hirest, or the hired servant himself to go with thy son?—But lest I should make thee uneasy, I am Azarias the son of the great Ananias.*—And Tobias answered: Thou art of a great family. But I pray thee be not angry that I desired to know thy family.—And the Angel said to him: *I will lead thy son safe, and bring him to thee again safe.*—And Tobias answering said: May you have a good journey, and God be with you in your way, and

His Angel accompany you.—Then all things being ready, that were to be carried in their journey, Tobias bid his father and his mother farewell, and they set out both together.

2. THE ANGEL BIDS TOBIAS TO CATCH A MONSTROUS FISH: AND TO TAKE OUT ITS HEART, GALL, AND LIVER FOR MEDICINES.

And Tobias went forward To 6, 1, 9 and the dog followed him, and he lodged the first night by the river of Tigris.—And he went out to wash his feet, and behold a monstrous fish came up to devour him.—And Tobias being afraid of him, cried out with a loud voice, saying: Sir, he cometh upon me.—And the Angel said to him: *Take him by the gill, and draw him to thee.* And when he had done so, he drew him out upon the land: and he began to pant before his feet.—Then the Angel said to him: *Take out the entrails of this fish, and lay up his heart, and his gall, and his liver for thee: for these are necessary for useful medicines.*—And when had done so, he roasted the flesh thereof, and they took it with them in the way: the rest they salted as much as might serve them till they came to Rages the city of the Medes.—Then Tobias asked the Angel, and said to him: I beseech thee, brother Azarias, tell me what remedies are these things good for, which thou hast bid me keep of the fish?—And the Angel, answering, said to him: *If*

*thou put a little piece of its heart upon coals, the smoke thereof driveth away all kind of devils, either from man or from woman, so that they come no more to them.—And the gall is good for anointing the eyes, in which there is a white speck, and they shall be cured.*

**3. THE ANGEL AND TOBIAS LODGE WITH RAGUEL. THE ANGEL BIDS TOBIAS TO MARRY SARA: TEACHES HOW TO DRIVE THE WICKED SPIRIT AWAY: DISCOURSES ON MARRIAGE.**

To 6, 10-17

And Tobias said to him: Where wilt thou that we lodge?—And the Angel, answering, said: *Here is one whose name is Raguel, a near kinsman of thy tribe, and he hath a daughter named Sara, but he hath neither a son nor any other daughter beside her.—All his substance is due to thee, and thou must take her to wife.—Ask her therefore of her father, and he will give her thee to wife.*—Then Tobias answered, and said: I hear that she hath been given to seven husbands, and they all died: moreover I have heard that a devil killed them.—Now I am afraid, lest the same thing should happen to me also: and whereas I am the only child of my parents, I should bring down their old age with sorrow to hell.—Then the Angel Raphael said to him: *Hear me, and I will show thee who they are, over whom the devil can prevail.—For they who in such manner receive matrimony, as to shut*

*out God from themselves, and from their mind, and to give themselves to their lust, as the horse and mule, which have not understanding, over them the devil hath power.*

*But thou when thou shalt take her, go into the chamber, and for three days keep thyself continent from her, and give thyself to nothing else but to prayers with her.—And on that night lay the liver of the fish on the fire, and the devil shall be driven away.—But the second night thou shalt be admitted into the society of the holy Patriarchs.—And the third night thou shalt obtain a blessing that sound children may be born of you.—And when the third night is past, thou shalt take the virgin with the fear of the Lord, moved rather for love of children than for lust, that in the seed of Abraham thou mayst obtain a blessing in children.*

To 6, 18-22

**4. THE ANGEL AND TOBIAS ARE ENTERTAINED BY RAGUEL. THE ANGEL'S REASSURING WORDS TO RAGUEL: HE CHAINS UP ASMODEUS THE DEVIL IN UPPER EGYPT.**

And they went into Raguel, and Raguel received them with joy.—And Raguel looking upon Tobias, said to Anna his wife: How like is this young man to my cousin?—And when he had spoken these words, he said: Whence are ye young men our brethren?—But they said: We are of the tribe of Nephthali, of the captivity of Ninive.—And Raguel said to them: Do you know

To 7, 1-20

Tobias my brother ? And they said : We know him.— And when he was speaking many good things of him, the Angel said to Raguel : *Tobias concerning whom thou inquirest is this young man's father.*—And Raguel went to him, and kissed him with tears, and weeping upon his neck, said : A blessing be upon thee, my son, because thou art the son of a good and most virtuous man.— And Anna his wife, and Sara their daughter wept.—And after they had spoken, Raguel commanded a sheep to be killed, and a feast to be prepared. And when he desired them to sit down to dinner, — Tobias said : I will not eat nor drink here this day, unless thou first grant me my petition : and promise to give me Sara thy daughter.— Now when Raguel heard this he was afraid, knowing what had happened to those seven husbands, that went in unto her : and he began to fear lest it might happen to him also in like manner : and as he was in suspense, and gave no answer to his petition,—The Angel said to him : *Be not afraid to give her to this man, for to him who feareth God is thy daughter due to be his wife : therefore another could not have her.*—Then Raguel said : I doubt not but God hath regarded my prayers and tears in His sight.—And I believe He hath therefore made you come to me, that this maid might be married to one of her own kindred, according to the law of Moses : and now doubt not but I will give her to thee.—And taking the right hand of his daughter, he gave it into the right hand of Tobias, saying : The God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob be with you, and may He join you together, and fulfil His blessing in you.— And taking paper they made a writing of the marriage.— And afterwards they made merry, blessing God.—And Raguel called to him Anna his wife, and bid her prepare another chamber.—And she brought Sara her daughter in thither, and she wept.— And she said to her : Be of good cheer, my daughter : the Lord of Heaven give thee joy for the trouble thou hast undergone.

And after they had supped, they brought in the young man to her.—And Tobias remembering the Angel's word, took out of his bag part of the liver, and laid it upon burning coals.—Then the Angel Raphael took the devil, and bound him in the desert of Upper Egypt.

5. THE ANGEL GOES TO GABELUS : RECOVERS THE MONEY : AND BRINGS HIM TO THE WEDDING.

Then Tobias called the Angel to him, whom he took to be a man, and said to him : Brother Azarias, I pray thee hearken to my words :—If I should give myself to be thy servant I should not make a worthy return for thy care :—However, I beseech thee, to take

To 8, 1-3

To 9, 1-7

with thee beasts and servants, and to go to Gabelus to Rages the city of the Medes: and to restore to him his note of hand, and receive of him the money, and desire him to come to my wedding.—For thou knowest that my father numbereth the days: and if I stay one day more, his soul will be afflicted.—And indeed thou seest how Raguel hath adjured me, whose adjuring I cannot despise.—Then Raphael took four of Raguel's servants, and two camels, and went to Rages the city of the Medes: and finding Gabelus, gave him his note of hand, and received of him all the money.—And he told him concerning Tobias the son of Tobias, all that had been done: and made him come with him to the wedding.

6. THE ANGEL CONDUCTS TOBIAS BACK TO NINIVE: RIDS HIM TO ADORE GOD, AND TO GIVE HIM THANKS FOR HIS SAFE RETURN HOME: GIVES SIGHT TO THE BLIND TOBIAS.

To 10, 1-8 And as they were returning they came to Charan, which is in the midway to Ninive, the eleventh day.—And the Angel said: *Brother Tobias, thou knowest how thou didst leave thy father.—If it please thee therefore, let us go before, and let the family follow softly after us, together with thy wife, and with the beasts.*—And as this their going pleased him Raphael said to Tobias: *Take with thee of the gall of the fish, for it will be necessary.* So

Tobias took some of that gall and departed.—But Anna sat beside the way daily, on the top of a hill, from whence she might see afar off.—And while she watched his coming from that place, she saw him afar off, and presently perceived it was her son coming: and returning she told her husband, saying: Behold thy son cometh.—And Raphael said to Tobias: *As soon as thou shalt come into thy house, forthwith adore the Lord thy God: and giving thanks to Him, go to thy father, and kiss him.*—*And immediately anoint his eyes with this gall of the fish, which thou carriest with thee. For be assured that his eyes shall be presently opened, and thy father shall see the light of heaven, and shall rejoice in the sight of thee.*

7. TOBIAS OFFERS HALF OF ALL HE HAS TO ST. RAPHAEL FOR HIS PAINS. ST. RAPHAEL MAKES HIMSELF KNOWN: HIS PARTING WORDS OF ADVICE. VANISHES OUT OF SIGHT.

Then Tobias called to him To 12, 1-23 his son, and said to him: What can we give to this holy man, that is come with thee?—Tobias, answering, said to his father: Father, what wages shall we give him? or what can be worthy of his benefits?—He conducted me and brought me safe again, he received the money from Gabelus, he caused me to have my wife, and he chased from her the evil spirit. he gave joy to her parents, myself he delivered from being

devoured by the fish, thee also he hath made to see the light of heaven, and we are filled with all good things through him. What can we give him sufficient for these things?—But I beseech thee, my father, to desire him, that he would vouchsafe to accept of one half of all things that have been brought.—So the father and the son, calling him, took him aside: and began to desire him that he would vouchsafe to accept of half of all things that they had brought.—Then he said to them secretly: *Bless ye the God of Heaven, give glory to Him in the sight of all that live, because He hath shown His mercy to you.*—For it is good to hide the secret of a king: but honourable to reveal and confess the works of God.—Prayer is good with fasting and alms, more than to lay up treasures of gold:—For alms delivereth from death, and the same is that which purgeth away sins, and maketh to find mercy and Life Everlasting.—But they that commit sin and iniquity, are enemies to their own soul.—I discover then the truth unto you, and I will not hide the secret from you.—When thou didst pray with tears, and didst bury the dead, and didst leave thy dinner, and hide the dead by day in thy house, and bury them by night, I offered thy prayer to the Lord.—And because thou wast acceptable to God, it was necessary that temptation should prove thee.—And now the Lord hath sent me to heal thee, and to deliver Sara thy son's wife from the devil.—For I am the Angel Raphael, one of the seven who stand before the Lord.\*—And when they had heard these things, they were troubled, and being seized with fear they fell upon the ground on their face.—And the Angel said to them: Peace be to you, fear not.—For when I was with you I was there by the Will of God: bless ye Him, and sing praises to Him.—I seemed indeed to eat and drink with you: but I use an invisible meat and drink, which cannot be seen by men.—It is time therefore that I return to Him that sent me: but bless ye God, and publish all His wonderful works.—And when he had said these things, he was taken from their sight, and they could

\* These are the seven Eyes of the Lord that run to and fro through the whole earth. *Za 4, 10*

I saw seven Angels standing in the Presence of God. *Ap 8, 2*

The seven Angels came out of the Temple, having the seven plagues. *Ap 16, 6*

- |                   |                             |                        |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. St. Michael.   | <i>Who is like to God.</i>  | <i>Ap 12, 7</i>        |
| 2. St. Gabriel.   | <i>The Strength of God.</i> | <i>Da 9, 21</i>        |
| 3. St. Raphael.   | <i>The Medicine of God.</i> | <i>To 12, 15</i>       |
| 4. St. Uriel.     | <i>The Light of God.</i>    | <i>3 E (Apos. Bk.)</i> |
| 5. St. Sealtiel.  | <i>The Prayer of God.</i>   | <i>Ge 16</i>           |
| 6. St. Jehudiel.  | <i>The Praise of God.</i>   | <i>Ex 23</i>           |
| 7. St. Barachiel. | <i>The Blessing of God.</i> | <i>Ge 18</i>           |

see him no more.—Then they lying prostrate for three hours upon their face, blessed God: and rising up, they told all His wonderful works.

#### THE PRAYER OF TOBIAS.

##### I.

To 13, 1-23 Thou art great, O Lord, for ever, and Thy Kingdom is unto all ages. For Thou scourgest, and Thou savest: Thou leadest down into hell, and bringest up again: and there is none that can escape Thy hand.—Give glory to the Lord, ye children of Israel, and praise Him in the sight of the Gentiles:—Because He hath therefore scattered you among the Gentiles, who know not Him, that you may declare His wonderful works, and make them know that there is no other Almighty God besides Him.—

##### II.

He hath chastised us for our iniquities: and He will save us for His own mercy.—See, then, what He hath done with us, and with fear and trembling give ye glory to Him: and extol the Eternal King of worlds in your works.—As for me, I will praise Him in the land of my captivity: because He hath shown His Majesty toward a sinful nation.—Be converted therefore, ye sinners, and do justice before God, believing that He will show His mercy to you.—And I and my soul will rejoice in Him.—

##### III.

Bless ye the Lord, all His elect, keep days of joy, and give glory to Him.—Jerusalem, City of God, the Lord hath chastised thee for the works of thy hands.—Give glory to the Lord for thy good things, and bless the God Eternal, that He may rebuild His Tabernacle in thee, and may call back all the captives to thee, and thou mayst rejoice for ever and ever.—

##### IV.

Thou shalt shine with a glorious light: and all the ends of the earth shall worship Thee.—Nations from afar shall come to thee: and shall bring gifts, and shall adore the Lord in thee, and shall esteem thy land as holy.—For they shall call upon the great Name in thee.—

##### V.

They shall be cursed that shall despise thee: and they shall be condemned that shall blaspheme thee: and blessed shall they be that shall build thee up.—But thou shalt rejoice in thy children, because they shall all be blessed, and shall be gathered together to the Lord.—

##### VI.

Blessed are all they that love thee, and that rejoice in thy peace.—My soul, bless thou the Lord, because the Lord our God hath delivered Jerusalem His City from all her troubles.—Happy shall I be if there shall remain of my

seed, to see the glory of Jerusalem.—

# VII.

The gates of Jerusalem shall be built of sapphire, and of emerald, and all the walls thereof round about

of precious stones.—All its streets shall be paved with white and clean stones : and Alleluia shall be sung in its streets.—Blessed be the Lord, Who hath exalted it, and may He reign over it for ever and ever. Amen.

## LITANY OF THE HOLY ANGELS.

### SUNDAY.

- Ma* 10, 13 St. Michael, Prince of the Heavenly Host,  
*Ap* 12, 7 Who didst fight a great battle in Heaven with the dragon,  
*Ap* 12, 9 Who didst cast forth out of Heaven the dragon with his rebellious angels,  
*Ju* 9 Who, disputing with the devil, didst contend about the body of Moses,

### MONDAY.

- Da* 9, 21 St. Gabriel, who didst explain to Daniel the Heavenly Vision,  
*Da* 3, 49 Who didst go down into the furnace with Azarias and his companions, and drive out the flame of fire,  
*Lx* 1, 11 Who didst foretell to Zacharias the birth and ministry of John,  
*Lx* 1, 28 Who wast sent by God to Mary at Nazareth, to announce the Incarnation of the Word of God,

### TUESDAY.

- Tb* 12, 15 St. Raphael, one of the seven Spirits that stand before the Lord, our special Patron,  
*Tb* 5, 15 Who, as a faithful fellow-traveller, didst conduct safely the younger Tobias,  
*Tb* 8, 3 Who didst deliver Sara from the devil,  
*Tb* 11, 8 Who didst restore his sight to the elder Tobias,

### WEDNESDAY.

- Is* 6, 6 Holy Seraph, who, with a coal of fire, didst purify the lips of Isaias,  
*Ge* 3, 24 Holy Cherub, who wast set to keep the way of the Tree of Life,  
*Is* 6, 2 Holy Seraphims and Cherubims, who stand upon the high and elevated Throne of God,  
*Is* 6, 3 Who sing continually to God, Holy, Holy, Holy, and are our models in the work of the Perpetual Adoration,

### THURSDAY.

- Ge* 18, 2 Holy Angels who were hospitably received by Abraham in the guise of strangers,  
*Ge* 19, 11 Who struck the Sodomites with blindness

*Pray for us.*



- Ge* 19, 16 Who brought out Lot and his family from the midst of the  
ungodly,  
*Ge* 22, 11 Who, having proved his obedience, didst recall Abraham  
from the sacrifice of his only son,  
*Ge* 28, 12 Who ascended and descended on the Ladder of Jacob,  
*Ge* 32, 24 Who didst wrestle with Jacob, and touch him on the thigh,  
*Ge* 48, 16 Who didst deliver Jacob from all evils,  
*Ex* 12, 12 Who, passing over the houses of the Israelites, didst  
strike the first-born of the Egyptians,  
*Ex* 14, 19 Who leddest the Israelites out of Egypt by the Red Sea  
and the desert into the Land of Promise,  
*Ac* 7, 38 Who gavest the Law of God to Moses,  
*Nu* 22, 31 Who didst withstand Balaam with his ass, as he was  
going to curse the Israelites,

## FRIDAY.

- Jo* 5, 13 Prince of the Host of the Lord, who wast sent to the aid  
of Josue,  
*2 K* 24, 16 Who, for the sin of David, didst strike seventy thousand  
men of the people with pestilence,  
*Da* 14, 35 Who broughtest food to Daniel into the den of lions,  
*4 K* 19, 35 Who in one night didst slay, in the camp of the Assyrians,  
a hundred and eighty-five thousand;  
*2 M* 3, 25 Who severely punished Heliodorus when he would have  
plundered the treasures of the Temple,  
*Mt* 1, 20 Who didst encourage Joseph, when afraid to marry the  
Virgin Mary,  
*Lu* 2, 10 Who didst announce the Birth of Christ to the shepherds,  
*Lu* 2, 14 Who sang with joy at our Saviour's Birth, Glory to God  
and peace to men,  
*Mt* 2, 13 Who didst forewarn Joseph to fly into Egypt with the  
Child Jesus and His Mother,  
*Mt* 4, 11 Who ministered to Christ in the desert, when He had put  
the tempter to flight,  
*Lu* 22, 43 Who didst comfort Christ in His Agony,  
*Mt* 28, 2 Who didst roll back the stone from the Sepulchre of  
Christ,  
*Jn* 20, 12 Who, sitting in white at the Sepulchre of Christ, didst  
proclaim to the women that Christ was risen,  
*Ac* 1, 10 Who appeared to the Disciples when Christ ascended to  
Heaven,  
*Ac* 5, 19 Who didst lead the Apostles out of prison, and set them  
publicly in the Temple,  
*Ac* 12, 7 Who didst wonderfully deliver Peter from chains, and  
from the hand of Herod,  
*Ac* 12, 23 Who didst strike Herod in the act of arrogating Divine  
honours,  
*Lu* 16, 22 Who carried Lazarus into Abraham's bosom,  
*1's* 90, 11 Who have received from God the care and custody of  
men,

Pray for us.

*Mt* 18, 10 Who always see the Face of the Father Who is in Heaven,  
*Lu* 15, 10 Who rejoice over one sinner doing penance,

## SATURDAY.

*He* 1, 7 Ministering Spirits, sent to minister for those who shall receive the Inheritance of Salvation,  
*Ps* 102, 20 Ministers of God, who do His Will,  
*Ac* 10, 22 Who, by Peter, didst procure for Cornelius the centurion the precepts of Salvation,  
*To* 12, 12 Who offer to God the prayers of them that pray,  
*Mt* 25, 31 Who will come with Christ in His Majesty to Judgment,  
*1 T* 4, 15 Who will summon the whole world to the last Judgment with the trumpet,  
*Mt* 24, 31 Who will gather together the elect at the end of the world,  
*Mt* 13, 41 Who will take away all scandals out of Christ's Kingdom,  
*Mt* 13, 49 Who will separate the wicked from among the just,

Pray for us.

## 24.—DUTIES OF THE FAITHFUL TOWARDS THEIR PASTORS.

<p><i>Dt</i> 17, 12 He that will be proud, and refuse to obey the commandment of the Priest, who ministereth at that time to the Lord thy God, and the decree of the judge, that man shall die, and thou shalt take away the evil from Israel.</p> <p><i>2 P</i> 31, 4 He commanded the people that dwelt in Jerusalem, to give to the Priests, and the Levites their portion, that they might attend to the law of the Lord.</p> <p><i>Ex</i> 35, 20-21 All the multitude of the children of Israel going out from the presence of Moses, —Offered first fruits to the Lord with a most ready and devout mind, to make the work of the Tabernacle of the Testimony. Whatsoever was necessary to the service, and to the holy vestments.</p> <p><i>1 P</i> 29, 9, 13-14 The people rejoiced, when they promised their offerings willingly: because they offered them to the Lord with all their heart.—Now, there-</p>	<p>fore, our God, we give thanks to Thee, and we praise Thy glorious Name.—All things are Thine: and, we have given Thee what we received of Thy Hand.</p> <p>The lips of the Priest shall keep knowledge, and they shall seek the law at his mouth: because he is the Angel of the Lord of Hosts.</p> <p>With all thy soul fear the Lord, and reverence His Priests.—With all thy strength love Him that made thee: and forsake not His ministers.—Honour God with all thy soul, and give honour to the Priests.—Give them thy portion, as it is commanded thee.</p> <p>Give to the Most High according to what He hath given to thee, and with a good eye do according to the ability of thy hands.</p> <p>Keep thy foot, when thou goest into the House of God, and draw near to hear. For</p>
--	---

*Ma* 2, 7

*Eci* 7, 31-34

*Eci* 35, 12

*Eccl* 4, 17

- much better is obedience, than the victims of fools, who know not what evil they do.
- 13, 20 Amen, amen, I say to you, he that receiveth whomsoever I send, receiveth Me: and he that receiveth Me, receiveth Him that sent Me.
- 49, 37-38 The harvest, indeed, is great, but the labourers are few.—Pray ye, therefore, the Lord of the harvest, that He send forth labourers into His harvest.
- Lu 17, 14 Go, show yourselves to the Priests. And it came to pass, that as they went, they were made clean.
- Mt 18, 15-17 If thy brother shall offend against thee, go and reprove him between thee and him alone. If he shall hear thee, thou shalt gain thy brother.—But if he will not hear thee, take with thee one or two more, that in the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may stand.—And if he will not hear them, tell the Church. And if he will not hear the Church, let him be to thee as the heathen and the publican.
- Ga 6, 6 Let him who is instructed in the Word, communicate to him, who instructeth him,
- in all good things.
- If we have shewn unto you spiritual things, is it a great matter if we reap your carnal things?—So also the Lord ordained that they who preach the Gospel, should live of the Gospel.
- You have done well, in communicating to my tribulation.—Not that I seek the gift: but I seek the fruit that may abound to your account.—The things you sent, an odour of sweetness, an acceptable sacrifice, pleasing to God.
- We beseech you, brethren, to know them who labour among you, and are over you in the Lord, and admonish you:—That you esteem them more abundantly in charity for their work's sake. Have peace with them.
- That you also be subject to such, and to every one that worketh with us, and laboureth.
- Let the Priests who rule well be esteemed worthy of double honour: especially they who labour in the Word and doctrine.
- Be ye followers of me, as I also am of Christ.
- Obedy your Prelates.
- Ph 4, 14, 17-18
- 1 Th 5, 12-13
- 1 C 16, 16
- 1 T 5, 17
- 1 C 11, 1
- He 13, 17
- 25.—HONOUR, INVOCATION, AND INTERCESSION OF THE SAINTS. COMMUNION WITH THEM.
- Ge 48, 16 The Angel that delivereth me from all evils, bless these boys.
- 7b 3, 3 O Lord, think of me.
- 1b 5, 1 Call now if there be any that will answer thee, and turn to some of the saints.
- 11, 33, 23-24 If there shall be an Angel speaking for him, one among thousands, to declare man's uprightness,—He shall have mercy on him.
- They shall be as the Angels of God.
- There shall be joy before the Angels of God upon one sinner doing penance.
- Cease not to cry to the
- Mt 22, 30
- Lu 15, 10
- No 15, 30

- Lord our God for us, that He may save us out of the hand of the Philistines.
- Ro 15, 30* I beseech you, brethren, that you help me in your prayers for me to God.
- Cl 4, 3* Pray withal for us also, that God may open unto us a door of speech to speak the mysteries of Christ.
- 1 C 13, 8* Charity never falleth away.
- 2 Pt 1, 15* I will do my endeavour, that after my decease also, you may often have whereby you may keep a memory of these things.
- Ja 5, 16* Confess your sins one to another: and pray one for another, that you may be saved. For the continual prayer of a just man availeth much.
- He 1, 14* Are they all ministering spirits, sent to minister for them, who shall receive the inheritance of Salvation?
- Mt 18, 10* Their Angels in Heaven always see the face of My Father Who is in Heaven.
- Ex 23, 20* Behold I will send My Angel, who shall go before thee, and keep thee in thy journey, and bring thee into the place that I have prepared.
- 2 M 10, 30* Two Angels took Machabeus between them, and covered him on every side with their arms, and kept him safe: but cast darts and fire-balls against the enemy, so that they fell down, being both confounded with blindness and filled with trouble.
- Ja 5, 14* I am Prince of the Host of the Lord, and now I am come.
- Da 10, 13* Behold Michael, one of the chief Princes, came to help me
- If Moses and Samuel shall stand before Me, My Soul is not towards this people.
- If any man minister to Me, him will My Father honour.
- To me Thy friends, O God, *Ps 138, 17* are made exceedingly honourable: their principality is exceedingly strengthened.
- In His sight the malignant *Ps 14, 4* are brought to nothing: but He glorifieth them that fear the Lord.
- The Angel of the Lord answered and said: O Lord of Hosts, how long wilt Thou not have mercy on Jerusalem?
- When thou didst pray with tears, and didst bury the dead, I offered thy prayer to the Lord.
- When Moses lifted up his hands, Israel overcame, but if he let them down a little, Amalec overcame.
- We give thanks to God *1 Pt 1, 2* always for you all, making mention of you\* all in our prayers without ceasing.
- Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all instance and supplication for all the saints:—And for me, that speech may be given unto me.
- The Lord said to Moses: *Ex 32, 9-14* I see that this people is stiff-necked:—Let Me alone, that My wrath may be kindled against them, and that I may destroy them, and I will make of thee a great nation.—But Moses besought the Lord his God, saying: Why, O Lord, is Thy indignation enkindled against Thy people, whom Thou hast brought

out of the land of Egypt, with great power, and with a mighty hand?—Let not the Egyptians say, I beseech Thee: He craftily brought them out, that He might kill them in the mountains, and destroy them from the earth: let Thy anger cease, and be appeased upon the wickedness of Thy people. — Remember Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, Thy servants, to whom Thou sworeest by Thy Ownself, saying: I will multiply your seed as the stars of Heaven: and this whole land that I have spoken of, I will give to your seed, and you shall possess it forever.—And the Lord was appeased from doing the evil which He had spoken against His people.

*Nu* 16, 44-43 The Lord said to Moses:

—Get ye out from the midst of this multitude, this moment will I destroy them. And as they were lying on the ground,—Moses said to Aaron: Take the censer, and putting fire in it from the Altar, put incense upon it, and go quickly to the people to pray for them: for already wrath is gone out from the Lord, and the plague rageth.—When Aaron had done this, and had run to the midst of the multitude which the burning fire was now destroying, he offered the incense:—And standing between the dead and the living, he prayed for the people, and the plague ceased.

*2 M* 15, 12-14 Now the vision was in this manner: Onias, who had been High Priest, a good and virtuous man, modest in his

looks, gentle in his manners, and graceful in his speech, and who from a child was exercised in virtues, holding up his hands, prayed for all the people of the Jews:—After this there appeared also another man, admirable for age and glory, and environed with great beauty and majesty.—Then Onias answering, said: This is a lover of his brethren, and of the people of Israel: this is he that prayeth much for the people, and for all the Holy City, Jeremias the Prophet of God.

I desire first of all that *1 Ti* 2, 1-5 supplications, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgivings be made for all men:—For kings, and for all that are in high stations: that we may lead a quiet and a peaceable life in all piety and chastity.—For this is good and acceptable in the sight of God our Saviour,—Who will have all men to be saved, and to come to the knowledge of the Truth.—For there is One God, and One Mediator of God and men, the Man Christ Jesus.

John to the seven Churches *Ap* 1, 4-5 which are in Asia. Grace be unto you and peace from Him that is, and that was, and that is to come, and from the seven Spirits which are before His Throne,—And from Jesus Christ, Who is the Faithful Witness, the First-Begotten of the dead, and the Prince of the kings of the earth, Who hath loved us, and washed us from our sins, in His Own Blood.

- Ap* 5, 8 When he had opened the book, the four living creatures, and the four-and-twenty Ancients fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints.
- Ap* 6, 9-11 When he had opened the fifth seal, I saw under the Altar the souls of them that were slain for the Word of God, and for the Testimony which they held.—And they cried with a loud voice, saying: How long, O Lord (Holy and True), dost Thou not judge and revenge our blood on them that dwell on the earth?—And white robes were given to every one of them one: and it was said to them that they should rest yet for a little time, till their fellow-servants, and their brethren, who are to be slain, even as they, should be filled up.
- Ap* 8, 3 Another Angel came, and stood before the Altar, having a gold censer; and there was given to him much incense, that he should offer of the prayers of all saints upon the Golden Altar, which is before the Throne of God.
- 1 C* 10, 17 Because the Bread is one, *(Greek reading)* all we, being many, are one body, who partake of that one Bread.
- Ga* 3, 28 There is neither Jew, nor Greek: there is neither bond, nor free: there is neither male, nor female. For you are all one in Christ Jesus.
- Ep* 4, 11-13, 18 And some, indeed, He gave to be Apostles, and some Prophets, and others Evangelists, and others Pastors and Teachers,—For the perfection of the Saints, for the work of the ministry, unto the edification of the Body of Christ:—Till we all meet in the unity of faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the age of the fulness of Christ.—From whom the whole body, compacted and fitly joined together by what every joint supplieth, according to the operation in the measure of every part, making increase of the body, unto the edifying of itself in charity.
- You are come to Mount *He* 12, 22-24 Sion, and to the City of the Living God, the Heavenly Jerusalem, and to the Company of many thousands of Angels.—And to the Church of the First-born, who are written in Heaven, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of the just made perfect,—And to Jesus the Mediator of the New Testament.
- That which we have seen *1 Jn* 1, 3 and have heard, we declare unto you; that you also may have fellowship with us, and our fellowship may be with the Father, and with His Son Jesus Christ.
- Holy Father, keep them in *Jn* 17, 11, Thy Name, whom Thou hast given Me: that they may be one, as We also are.—That they all may be one, as Thou, Father, in Me, and I in Thee: that they also may be one in Us: that the world may believe that Thou hast sent Me.—And the glory which Thou hast given Me, I have given to them: that

they may be one, as We also are One.

and in One Spirit we have all been made to drink.

Ro 12, 5 So we being many, are one body in Christ, and each one members one of another.

—For the body also is not one member, but many.—But now there are many members indeed, yet one body.—

1 C 12, 12- For as the body is one, and hath many members : and all

And if one member suffer anything, all the members suffer with it : or if one member glory, all the members rejoice with it.—Now

27 the members of the body, whereas they are many, yet are one body : so also is Christ.—For in One Spirit were we all baptised into one body, whether Jews or Gentiles, whether bond or free :

and members of member. Help in prayer for us.

2 C 1, 11

## 26.—HOLY IMAGES ; RELICS ; MIRACLES WORKED BY MEANS OF THEM.

Ex 25, 18- Thou shalt make two  
20 cherubim of beaten gold, on the two sides of the Oracle.

made in them cherubim and palm-trees, and divers representations as it were standing out, and coming forth from the wall.

—Let one cherub be on the one side, and the other on the other.—Let them cover both sides of the Propitiatory, spreading their wings, and covering the Oracle, and let them look one towards the other, their faces being turned towards the Propitiatory wherewith the Ark is to be covered.

He made in the entrance 3 K 6, 33-  
35 of the Temple posts of olive-tree four-square :—And two doors of fir-tree, one of each side ; and each door was double, and so opened with folding leaves. — And he carved cherubim, and palm-trees, and carved work

Nu 21, 8- The Lord said to him :  
9 Make a brazen serpent, and set it up for a sign : whosoever being struck shall look on it, shall live. — Moses

standing very much out : and he overlaid all with gold plates in square work by rule.

therefore made a brazen serpent, and set it up for a sign : which when they that were bitten looked upon, they were healed.

God forbid that I should glory save in the Cross of our Lord Jesus Christ ; by Whom the world is crucified to me, and I to the world.

3 K 6, 23 He made in the Oracle two cherubims of olive-tree, of ten cubits in height.

Come not nigh hither, put off thy shoes from thy feet : for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground.

Ex 3, 6

3 K 6, 28- He overlaid the cherubim  
29 with gold. — And all the walls of the Temple round about he carved with divers figures and carvings : and he

Josue rent his garments, and fell flat on the ground before the Ark of the Lord until the evening, both he and all the Ancients of Israel.

Js 7, 6

- 11, 10 His Sepulchre shall be glorious.  
 Mt 9, 21 If I shall touch only His garment, I shall be healed. And the woman was made whole from that hour.  
 4 K 2, 14 He struck the waters with the mantle of Elias, and they were divided hither and thither, and Eliseus passed over.  
 4 K 13, 21 When it had touched the bones of Eliseus, the man came to life.  
 Ac 5, 15 They brought forth the sick into the streets, and laid
- them on beds and couches, that when Peter came his shadow at the least might overshadow any of them, and they might be delivered from their infirmities.  
 God wrought by the hand of Paul more than common miracles.—So that even there were brought from his body [Paul] to the sick handkerchiefs and aprons, and the diseases departed from them, and the wicked spirits went out of them.
- Ac 19, 11-12

## 27.—CALENDAR OF SCRIPTURE SAINTS:

## January.

- |    |   |           |
|----|---|-----------|
| 4  | ST. TITUS, Bishop of Crete. <i>Crete.</i>                             | Ti 1, 4   |
| 6  | ST. BALTHASAR.  | Mt 2, 1   |
| 8  | ST. SEMEI, Prophet.   | Lu 3, 26  |
| 10 | ST. NICANOR, one of the Seven Deacons. <i>Cyprus.</i>                 | Ac 6, 5   |
| 14 | ST. MALACHIAS, the Prophet. <i>Judea.</i>                             | Ma 1, 1   |
|    | ST. ABDIAS.   | Ab 1, 1   |
| 15 | ST. HABACUC, the Prophet. <i>Judea.</i>                               | Ha 1, 1   |
|    | ST. MICHEAS, the Prophet. <i>Judea.</i>                               | Mi 1, 1   |
| 23 | ST. PARMENAS, one of the Seven Deacons. <i>Philippi in Macedonia.</i> | Ac 6, 5   |
| 24 | ST. TIMOTHY, Bishop of Ephesus. <i>Ephesus.</i>                       | 1 Ti 1, 2 |
| 25 | CONVERSION OF ST. PAUL.   | Ac 9, 1   |

## February.

- |    |  |           |
|----|--|-----------|
| 2  | ST. CORNELIUS, the Centurion, Bishop of <i>Cæsarea.</i> <i>Cæsarea in Palestine.</i> | Ac 10, 1  |
| 7  | ST. ZACHARIAS, High Priest.  | Mt 23, 35 |
| 10 | ST. ELIZABETH, Mother of St. John Baptist. <i>Judea.</i>                             | Lu 1, 36  |
| 13 | ST. AGABUS, Prophet. <i>Antioch.</i>   | Ac 11, 28 |
| 16 | ST. ONESIMUS, M., Bishop of Ephesus. <i>Ephesus.</i>                                 | Cl 4, 9   |
| 22 | ST. ARISTION of Salamis, one of the 72 Disciples. <i>Cyprus.</i>                     | Lu 10, 1  |
| 24 | ST. MATTHEIAS, Apostle, M. <i>Judea.</i>   | Ac 1, 28  |

## March.

- |    |   |           |
|----|---|-----------|
| 15 | ST. LONGINUS. <i>Cæsarea in Cappadocia.</i> | Jn 19, 34 |
| 17 | ST. JOSEPH of Arimathea. <i>Jerusalem.</i>  | Jn 19, 38 |
| 18 | ST. GABRIEL the Archangel.                  | Lu 1, 19  |
| 19 | ST. JOSEPH, Foster Father of Jesus.         | Mt 1, 16  |



20	ST. JOACHIM, Father of B.V.M. <i>Judea.</i>	<i>Lu 3, 23</i>
	ST. ARCHIPPUS, the fellow-soldier of St. Paul. <i>Asia.</i>	<i>Cl 4, 17</i>
22	ST. PAUL, Bishop of Narbonne. Sergius Paulus the Proconsul. <i>Asia.</i>	<i>Ac 13, 7</i>
	ST. EPAPHRODITUS, Bishop of Terracina. <i>Terracina.</i>	<i>Ph 2, 25</i>
25	ANNUNCIATION OF B.V.M.	<i>Lu 1, 26</i>
	ST. DISMAS, the Good Thief. <i>Jerusalem.</i>	<i>Lu 23, 43</i>
27	ST. NICODEMUS.	<i>Jn 3, 1</i>
31	ST. AMOS, the Prophet. <i>Thecua in Palestine.</i>	<i>Am 1, 1</i>

## April.

2	ST. ASYNCRITUS.	<i>Ro 16, 14</i>
9	ST. PROCHORUS, M., one of the Seven Deacons. <i>Antioch.</i>	<i>Ac 6, 5</i>
	ST. MARY OF CLEOPHAS, Sister of B.V.M. <i>Judea.</i>	<i>Jn 19, 25</i>
10	ST. EZECHIEL, M., The Prophet. <i>Babylonia.</i>	<i>Ez 1, 3</i>
11	ST. ANTIPAS, M., Bp. of Pergamus.	<i>Ap 2, 13</i>
14	ST. TROPHIMUS.	<i>Ac 20, 4</i>
22	ST. APELLES, Disciple of Christ.	<i>Ro 16, 10</i>
25	ST. MARK, The Evangelist, M. <i>Alexandria.</i>	<i>2 Pt 5, 13</i>
29	ST. TYCHICUS. <i>Paphos in Cyprus.</i>	<i>2 Ti 4, 12</i>

## May.

1	ST. PHILIP, M., Ap. <i>Hierapolis in Asia.</i>	<i>Mt 10, 3</i>
	ST. JAMES, Ap. M. <i>Jerusalem.</i>	<i>Mt 10, 3</i>
6	ST. JOHN, ad Portam Latinam.	<i>Mt 10, 3</i>
	ST. LUCIUS, Bp. <i>Cyrene in Egypt.</i>	<i>Ac 13, 1</i>
8	APPARITION OF ST. MICHAEL.	<i>Js 5, 13</i>
10	ST. JOB, the Prophet. <i>Land of Hus.</i>	<i>Jb 1, 1</i>
10	TRANSLATION OF THE BODY OF ST. STEPHEN.	<i>Ac 6, 8</i>
12	SS. NEREUS AND ACHILLES, baptised by S. Peter.	<i>Brev. Rom.</i>
13	ST. JEREMIAS, the Prophet, M. (transferred from the 1st of May). <i>Taphnæ in Egypt.</i>	<i>2 Ma 15, 13</i>
17	ST. TORPES, M. <i>Pisa</i> (by inference).	<i>Ph 4, 22</i>
	ST. EPAPHRODITUS.	<i>Ph 2, 25</i>
24	ST. MANAHEN, Foster-Brother of Herod. <i>Antioch.</i>	<i>Ac 13, 1</i>
	ST. JOANNA, wife of Chuza.	<i>Lu 24, 10</i>
26	ST. QUADRATUS, Disciple of St. Paul. <i>Athens</i> (by inference).	<i>Ac 19, 30</i>
	ST. ALPHEUS, Father of SS. Matthew and James.	<i>Mk 3, 18</i>
31	ST. PETRONILLA, V., Disciple of St. Peter.	<i>Brev. Rom.</i>

## June.

6	ST. PHILIP, one of the Seven Deacons. <i>Cæsarea in Palestine.</i>	<i>Ac 6, 5</i>
11	ST. BARNABAS, Ap., M. <i>Cyprus.</i>	<i>Ac 15, 35</i>
14	ST. ELISEUS, The Prophet. <i>Samaria.</i>	<i>4 K 2, 1</i>
17	OUR LADY OF SORROWS.	<i>Jn 19, 25</i>
19	ST. JUDE, one of the seventy-two Disciples.	<i>Lu 10, 1</i>
21	ST. TERTIUS, Secretary of St. Paul.	<i>Ro 16, 22</i>

24	ST. JOHN BAPTIST, NATIVITY OF.	<i>Lu</i> 1, 57
25	ST. SOSPATER, Disciple of St. Paul.	<i>Ro</i> 16, 21
27	ST. CRESCENT, Disciple of St. Paul.	<i>2 Ti</i> 4, 10
29	ST. PETER. <i>Rome.</i>	<i>1 Pt</i> 1, 1
	ST. PAUL. <i>Rome.</i>	<i>Ro</i> 1, 1

## July.

1	ST. AARON, BURIAL OF. <i>Mount Hor.</i>	<i>Di</i> 32, 50
	ST. PHINEES, son of Eleazar.	<i>Js</i> 22, 31
	ST. ELEAZAR, P. Son of Aaron.	<i>Js</i> 22, 31
2	VISITATION OF THE B.V. TO ST. ELIZABETH.	<i>Lu</i> 1, 29
4	ST. OSEE, Prophet.	<i>Os</i> 1, 1
	ST. AGGEUS, Prophet.	<i>Ag</i> 1, 1
6	ST. ISAIAS, the Prophet, M. <i>Judea.</i>	<i>Is</i> 1, 1
8	ST. AQUILA. <i>Asia Minor.</i>	<i>1 C</i> 16, 19
	ST. PRISCILLA. <i>Asia Minor.</i>	<i>1 C</i> 16, 19
12	ST. JASON, Disciple of Christ.	<i>Ro</i> 16, 21
13	ST. JOEL, The Prophet.	<i>Jl</i> 1, 1
	ST. ESDRAS, Prophet.	<i>1 E</i> 10, 1
	ST. SILAS. <i>Macedonia.</i>	<i>Ac</i> 16, 25
19	ST. EPAPHRAS, OF EPAPHRODITUS, M., Bp., of Colossæ.	<i>Col</i> 1, 7
20	ST. ELIAS, the Prophet. <i>Mount Carmel.</i>	<i>3 K</i> 17, 1
21	ST. DANIEL, the Prophet. <i>Babylon.</i>	<i>Da</i> 1, 6
22	ST. MARY MAGDALEN. <i>Marseilles.</i>	<i>Lu</i> 7, 37
	ST. SYNTYCHE. <i>Philippi.</i>	<i>Ph</i> 4, 2
25	ST. JAMES, Ap., M.	<i>Mt</i> 10, 3
26	ST. ANN, Mother of B.V.M. (by inference).	<i>Lu</i> 3, 23
29	ST. MARTHA, sister of Lazarus. <i>Tarascon in Narbonne.</i>	<i>Jn</i> 11, 5
	ST. MARY, Sister of Lazarus.	<i>Jn</i> 11, 1
	ST. MARCELLA, Servant of St. Martha (by inference).	<i>Jn</i> 11, 1

## August.

1	THE SEVEN MACHABEAN BROTHERS. <i>Antioch.</i>	<i>2 M</i> 7, 1
2	FINDING OF THE BODY OF ST. STEPHEN, PROTOMARTYR.	<i>Ac</i> 6, 8
	<i>Jerusalem.</i>	
	ST. LYDIA, the seller of purple. <i>Philippi in Macedonia.</i>	<i>Ac</i> 16, 14
4	ST. ARISTARCHUS, Bp. of Thessalonica. <i>Thessalonica.</i>	<i>Cl</i> 4, 10
10	ST. JUDAS, the fourth of the seven Machabean Brothers.	<i>2 M</i> 7, 14
20	ST. SAMUEL, the Prophet. <i>Judea.</i>	<i>1 K</i> 3, 1
24	ST. BARTHOLOMEW, Ap., M. <i>Armenia.</i>	<i>Mt</i> 10, 3
25	ST. ELEAZAR, M.	<i>2 M</i> 6, 80
29	BENEDICTING OF ST. JOHN BAPTIST.	<i>Mt</i> 14, 10

## September.

1	ST. JOSUE. <i>Palestine.</i>	<i>Js</i> 1, 1
	ST. GEDRON. <i>Palestine.</i>	<i>Jg</i> 7, 1
	ST. ANNA, the Prophetess. <i>Jerusalem.</i>	<i>Lu</i> 2, 36
	S. SEXTUS, Disciple of St. Peter.	<i>Ac</i> 10, 45

3	ST. PHOEBE. <i>Corinth.</i>	<i>Ro</i> 16, 1
4	ST. MOSES, Lawgiver and Prophet. <i>Mount Nebo.</i>	<i>Mk</i> 9, 3
5	ST. ZACHARY, Priest and Prophet. Father of St. Baptist.	<i>John</i> Lu 1, 5
6	ST. ZACHARIAS, the Prophet.	<i>Za</i> 1, 1
8	ST. ONESIPHORUS, Disciple of St. Paul.	<i>2 Ti</i> 1, 16
	NAIVITY OF THE B. V. M.	<i>Ge</i> 3, 15
12	ST. TOBIAS (Father).	<i>To</i> 1, 1
17	ST. ZENAS, Lawyer, Disciple of St. Paul.	<i>Ti</i> 3, 13
19	ST. TOBIAS (Son). Honoured at <i>Pavia</i> .	<i>To</i> 4, 1
21	ST. MATTHEW, Ap., M. <i>Ethiopia</i> .	<i>Mk</i> 3, 18
	ST. JONAS, Prophet. <i>Land of Saar (Tyre).</i>	<i>Jc</i> 1, 1
25	ST. CLEOPHAS, Disciple of our Lord.	<i>Lu</i> 24, 18
27	ST. CAIUS, Disciple of St. Barnabas.	<i>Ro</i> 16, 23
	ST. MARK, Disciple of the Apostles.	<i>Ct</i> 4, 10
28	ST. BARUCH, Prophet.	<i>Ba</i> 1, 1
29	ST. MICHAEL the Archangel.	<i>Ap</i> 12, 7

## October.

1	ST. ANANIAS, who baptised St. Paul. <i>Damascus.</i>	<i>Ac</i> 9, 10
3	ST. ANNA OF ELQANA, Mother of Saul.	<i>1 K</i> 1, 2
4	ST. HIEROTHEUS, Disciple of St. Paul. <i>Athens.</i>	<i>Ac</i> 19, 30
9	ST. DIONYSIUS, the Areopagite, M. <i>Paris.</i>	<i>Ac</i> 17, 34
	ST. ABRAHAM, the Patriarch and Father of the Faithful.	<i>Ge</i> 22, 1
	ST. ZENAIMDES, Disciple of St. Paul.	<i>Ac</i> 19, 30
18	ST. LUKE, Evangelist. <i>Bithynia.</i>	<i>Ct</i> 4, 14
22	ST. MARIA SALOME. <i>Jerusalem.</i>	<i>Mk</i> 15, 40
24	ST. RAPHAEL the Archangel.	<i>To</i> 12, 15
28	ST. SIMON. <i>Egypt.</i>	<i>Mt</i> 10, 4
	ST. THADDEUS, M. <i>Mesopotamia.</i>	<i>Mt</i> 10, 3
	ST. JUDE, Ap.	<i>Ju</i> 1, 1
31	ST. STACHYS, Disciple of St. Paul.	<i>Ro</i> 16, 9
	ST. URBANUS of Rome. <i>Rome.</i>	<i>Ro</i> 16, 9

## November.

3	ST. QUARTUS, Disciple of St. Paul.	<i>Ro</i> 16, 23
4	ST. PHILOLOGUS, Disciple of St. Paul.	<i>Ro</i> 16, 15
10	SS. TRYPHENA and TRYPHOSA. <i>Iconium in Lyconia.</i>	<i>Ro</i> 16, 12
19	ST. ABDIAS, the Prophet. <i>Samaria.</i>	<i>Ab</i> 1, 1
22	ST. PHILEMON, Disciple of St. Paul. <i>Colossæ in Phrygia.</i>	<i>Ph</i> 1, 1
	ST. APPIA. <i>Colossæ in Phrygia.</i>	<i>Ph</i> 1, 2
23	ST. CLEMENT, Pope and M. <i>Rome.</i>	<i>Ph</i> 4, 3
28	ST. SOSTHENES, Disciple of St. Paul. <i>Corinth.</i>	<i>1 C</i> 1, 1
30	ST. ANDREW, Ap. and M. <i>Patras in Achaia.</i>	<i>Mt</i> 10, 2

## December.

1	ST. NAHUM, the Prophet. <i>Begabar.</i>	<i>Na</i> 1, 1
3	ST. SOPHONIAS, the Prophet. <i>Judea.</i>	<i>So</i> 1, 1

8	THE IMMACULATE CONCEPTION OF THE B.V.M.	Ge 3, 15
16	ST. ANANIAS, ST. AZARIAS, and ST. MISAEŁ. <i>Babylonia.</i>	Da 1, 6
17	ST. LAZARUS, Bp. <i>Marseilles.</i>	Jn 11, 1
18	ST. ABIBON, son of Gamaliel.	Ac 5, 34
21	ST. THOMAS, Apostle.	Lu 6, 15
26	ST. STEPHEN, Protomartyr. <i>Jerusalem.</i>	Ac 6, 5
27	ST. JOHN, Ap. <i>Ephesus.</i>	Mt 10, 3
	JUDITH of Bethulia. Venble. <i>Bethulia.</i>	Jd 8, 1
28	THE HOLY INNOCENTS. <i>Bethlehem.</i>	Mt 2, 16
29	ST. DAVID, King and Prophet. <i>Jerusalem.</i>	1 K 16, 13
	ST. TROPHIMUS, Bp. <i>Arles.</i>	2 Ti 4, 20

## LITANY OF ALL THE SAINTS.

Lu 1, 48 Holy Mary, the chosen Mother of God, called blessed among women, and throughout all generations,  
 Mt 1, 20 St. Joseph, Foster-Father of Jesus, and Patron of the Church,  
 Ge 59, 14 All ye holy Patriarchs and Prophets, who with many prayers and sighs desired the Coming of the Messias.

## I. ALL YE HOLY APOSTLES AND DISCIPLES OF THE LORD,

Mt 4, 20 Who have left all things and followed Christ,  
 Ps 44, 17 Who are made Princes over all the earth, born to be sons instead of fathers, patriarchs, and prophets,  
 Ps 18, 5 Who spread the sound of the Gospel over all the earth,  
 Mt 10, 6 Who were sent to the lost sheep of the House of Israel,  
 Mt 10, 22 Who were hated by all men for the Name of Christ,  
 Ac 5, 41 Who rejoiced that you were counted worthy to suffer reproach for the Name of Jesus,  
 Mt 10, 16 Who were sent as sheep in the midst of wolves,  
 Lu 22, 46 Who continued with Christ in His temptations,  
 Ac 2, 32 Who were witnesses of all the actions of Christ, and privy to His secrets,  
 1 C 1, 23 Who, being weak and ignoble according to the flesh, were chosen by Christ to confound the power and wisdom of the world,  
 Lu 24, 49 Who, when endued with power from on High, and strengthened by the Holy Ghost, boldly confessed Christ,  
 Ac 5, 29 Who obeyed God rather than men,  
 Ac 4, 33 Who, with great power, gave testimony of the Resurrection of our Lord Jesus Christ,  
 Ac 4, 13 Who, being illiterate and ignorant men, amazed the Council of the Jews,  
 Mt 19, 28 Who shall sit on twelve seats, judging the twelve Tribes of Israel,

## II. ALL YE HOLY MARTYRS,

2 Ti 3, 12 Who suffered persecution for living holy in the world,  
 Ga 6, 14 Who gloried in the Cross of our Lord,  
 Lu 21, 19 Who in your patience possessed your souls,

Pray for us

- Jn* 12, 25 Who hated your lives in this world, and kept them to Life Eternal,  
*He* 11, 33 Who by faith conquered kingdoms, wrought justice, obtained promises,  
*He* 11, 36 Who had trials of mockeries and stripes, bands and prisons, were stoned, cut asunder, and variously tempted,  
*Ap* 7, 14 Who are come out of great tribulation, and have washed your robes in the Blood of the Lamb,  
*Mt* 5, 10 Who have suffered persecution for justice' sake, and now safely possess the Kingdom of Heaven,  
*Ro* 8, 38 Who shall stand with great constancy against those who have afflicted you,  
*Ro* 8, 39 Whom not force, nor fraud, nor death itself could separate from the love of Christ,

## III. ALL YE HOLY CONFESSORS,

- Ca* 1, 5 Who were made keepers in the Lord's Vineyard,  
*He* 5, 4 Who took not the honour to yourselves, but were called by God, as Aaron was,  
*2 Ti* 2, 4 Who, being soldiers to God, did not entangle yourselves with secular businesses,  
*Ac* 20, 28 Who were placed by the Holy Ghost to rule the Church of God,  
*Mt* 24, 21 Who, as faithful and wise servants, were appointed over the Lord's family,  
*Mt* 20, 12 Who, in the Lord's Vineyard, have borne the burden and heat of the day,  
*Gal* 6, 1 Who, like spiritual men, corrected them that erred in the spirit of gentleness and meekness,  
*Jn* 10, 11 Who, like good shepherds, laid down your lives for your sheep,  
*Ex* 34, 2 Who faithfully fed, not yourselves, but the Lord's flock,  
*He* 13, 17 Who watched for your sheep, as those that must render an account of them,  
*Ac* 2, 46 Who nourished them with the Bread of Eternal Life.  
*Ro* 11, 13 Who honoured your Ministry by your modesty, earnestness, and holiness of life,  
*Mt* 25, 20 Who returned with interest the talents you had received from God,  
*1 Co* 9, 19 Who became all things to all men, that you might gain all men to God,  
*Ex* 13, 5 Who went up to face the enemy, and set yourselves up as a wall to defend the House of God,  
*1 Co* 4, 1 Who were faithful Ministers of Christ, and Dispensers of the Mysteries of God,  
*Da* 12, 3 Who were learned, and instructed many to justice, and now shine as the brightness of the firmament, and as stars for all Eternity,

Pray for us.

## IV. ALL YE HOLY MONKS AND HERMITES,

- Mt* 11, 29 Who cheerfully bore the sweet yoke and light burden of Christ,  
*Mt* 16, 24 Who took up your cross, and followed Christ,  
*2 C* 4, 10 Who always bore about in your body the mortification of Christ's Cross,  
*Ga* 5, 24 Who crucified your flesh, with its vices and concupiscences,  
*Ga* 6, 14 Who were crucified to the world,  
*Mt* 19, 12 Who made yourselves eunuchs for the Kingdom of Heaven,  
*Lu* 9, 62 Who, when once you had put your hand to the plough, looked not back,  
*Ep* 6, 11 Who put on the armour of God, and bravely stood against the deceits of the devil,  
*Ph* 4, 12 Who learned both to be full and to be hungry, both to abound and to suffer need,  
*Ep* 4, 1 Who walked worthy of the vocation in which you were called,  
*Ep* 4, 3 Who were careful to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace,  
*Cl* 3, 3 Whose life, as dead to the world, was hid with Christ in God,

## V. ALL YE HOLY MEN AND WOMEN,

- Ph* 3, 13 Who never counted yourselves to have apprehended, but stretched yourselves forth ever to the things that were before you,  
*Ph* 3, 8 Who counted all things to be but loss, that you might gain Christ,  
*Cl* 3, 2 Who minded the things that are Above, not those that are upon the earth,  
*2 C* 2, 15 Who were the good odour of Christ,  
*2 C* 6, 1 Who received not the grace of God in vain,  
*Lu* 18, 14 Who humbled yourselves in this world, and are therefore exalted in Heaven,  
*Mt* 25, 34 Blessed of the Eternal Father, who possess the Kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world,  
*1 C* 9, 27 Who chastised your body, and brought it into subjection,  
*Ph* 2, 12 Who with fear and trembling worked out your Salvation,  
*1 C* 7, 31 Who used this world as if you used it not,  
*1 C* 6, 20 Who glorified and bore God in your body,  
*Mt* 5, 44 Who loved your enemies, and did good to them that hated you,  
*Ph* 4, 13 Who could do all things in Him Who strengthened you,  
*Mt* 6, 20 Who laid up to yourselves treasures, not on earth, but in Heaven,  
*Mt* 6, 33 Who sought first the Kingdom of God, and His Justice,  
*Mt* 7, 13 Who strove to enter in at the narrow gate, and the strait way, that leadeth to Life,  
*Mt* 5, 8 Who by the love of your pure hearts advanced to the sight of God,

Pray for us.

- Mt* 5, 9 Who, because you were lovers of peace, rejoice in the name and inheritance of the children of God,  
*Mt* 5, 7 Who now, by mercy to your neighbour, have obtained abundant mercy,  
*Ap* 7, 16 Who hunger and thirst no more, neither does the sun, nor any heat, fall upon you,  
*Mt* 10, 22 Who are saved, because you persevered to the end,  
*1 C* 9, 24 Who so ran in the race, that you have now received the prize,  
*Ac* 14, 21 Who through many tribulations are entered into the Kingdom of Heaven,  
*Ps* 65, 12 Who passed through fire and water, and are now brought out into your refreshment,  
*Mt* 11, 12 Who bore away Heaven by force,  
*Mt* 5, 3 Who merited, by poverty of spirit, to possess the Kingdom of Heaven,  
*Mt* 5, 5 Who were sorrowful and mournful in this life, but now are comforted,  
*Mt* 5, 4 Who, for your meekness and patience under injuries, possess the Land of the living,  
*Mt* 5, 6 Who, for hungering and thirsting after justice, are now filled with the joys of Heaven,  
*Ps* 35, 9 Who are inebriated with the plenty of God's House, and drink of the torrent of His pleasure,  
*Ps* 91, 13 Who flourish like palm-trees in the House of the Lord, and are grown up like the cedars of Libanus,  
*Js* 9, 3 Who rejoice before the Lord as they that rejoice in the harvest, as conquerors after taking a prey, when they divide the spoils,  
*Ps* 125, 7 Who sowed your seeds weeping, and, reaping with joy, now carry your sheaves,  
*Ps* 149, 5 Who rejoice in glory, and are joyful in your beds,  
*Ps* 83, 5 Who dwell in the House of the Lord, and praise Him for ever and ever.

## 28.—FALSE MISSION OF SECTARIAN TEACHERS.

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <p><i>Mt</i> 7, 15 Beware of false prophets, who come to you in the clothing of sheep, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.</p> <p><i>Ro</i> 10, 15 How shall they preach unless they be sent?</p> <p><i>He</i> 5, 4 Neither doth any man take the honour to himself, but he that is called by God, as Aaron was.</p> <p><i>Jn</i> 10, 1 He that entereth not by the door into the sheepfold,</p> | <p>but climbeth up another way, the same is a thief and a robber.</p> <p>By their fruits you shall know them. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?</p> <p>He that speaketh of himself, seeketh his own glory: but He that seeketh the glory of Him that sent Him, He is true.</p> <p>If I glorify Myself, My</p> | <p><i>Mt</i> 7, 16</p> <p><i>Jn</i> 7, 18</p> <p><i>Jn</i> 8, 4</p> |
|---|--|---|

- glory is nothing. It is My Father that glorifieth Me.
- Jn 8, 13* Thou givest testimony of thyself: thy testimony is not true.
- Jn 5, 43* I am come in the Name of My Father, and you receive Me not: if another shall come in his own name, him you shall receive.
- Je 23, 21* I did not send prophets, yet they ran; I have not spoken to them, yet they prophesied.
- Je 23, 31-33* Behold I am against the prophets, saith the Lord: who use their tongues, and say: The Lord saith it.—Behold I am against the prophets that have lying dreams, saith the Lord: and tell them, and cause My people to err by their lying, and by their wonders: when I sent them not, nor commanded them, who have not profited this people at all, saith the Lord:—If therefore this people, or the prophet, or the priest, shall ask thee, saying: What is the burden of the Lord? thou shalt say to them: You are the burden: for I will cast you away, saith the Lord.
- Je 14, 14* The Lord said to me: The prophets prophesy falsely in My Name: I sent them not, neither have I commanded them, nor have I spoken to them: they prophesy unto you a lying vision, and divination and deceit, and the seduction of their own heart.
- Je 8, 8-9* How do you say: We are wise, and the Law of the Lord is with us? Indeed the lying pen of the Scribes hath wrought falsehood.—The wise men are confounded, they are dismayed, and taken: for they have cast away the Word of the Lord, and there is no wisdom in them.
- There were false prophets *2 Pt 2, 1-2* among the people, even as there shall be among you lying teachers, who shall bring in sects of perdition, and deny the Lord Who bought them: bringing upon themselves swift destruction.—And many shall follow their luxuries, through whom the way of Truth shall be evil spoken of.—And through covetousness shall they with feigned words make merchandise of you. Whose judgment now of a long time lingereth not, and their perdition slumbereth not.
- Such false apostles are *2 C 11, 13-15* deceitful workmen, transforming themselves into the Apostles of Christ.—And no wonder: for satan himself transformeth himself into an angel of light.—Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers be transformed as the ministers of justice: whose end shall be according to their works.
- Many false prophets shall *Mt 24, 11* rise, and shall seduce many.
- There will arise up false *Mt 13, 22-* prophets, and they shall show signs and wonders, to seduce (if it were possible) even the elect.—Take you heed therefore; Behold I have foretold you all things.



## 29.—A PICTURE OF THE MORAL STATE OF THE WORLD IN THESE LATTER DAYS.

*Is 1, 2-4* Hear, O ye Heavens, and give ear, O earth, for the Lord hath spoken. I have brought up children, and exalted them: but they have despised Me.—The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master's crib; but Israel hath not known Me, and My people hath not understood.—Wo to the sinful nation, a people laden with iniquity, a wicked seed, ungracious children; they have forsaken the Lord, they have blasphemed the Holy One of Israel, they are gone away backwards.

*Is 1, 5-8* For what shall I strike you any more, you that increase transgression? the whole head is sick, and the whole heart is sad.—From the sole of the foot unto the top of the head, there is no soundness therein: wounds and bruises and swelling sores: they are not bound up, nor dressed, nor fomented with oil.—Your land is desolate, your cities are burnt with fire: your country strangers devour before your face, and it shall be desolate as when wasted by enemies.—And the daughter of Sion shall be left as a covert in a vineyard, and as a lodge in a garden of cucumbers, and as a city that is laid waste.

### *Signs of the latter days.*

*2 Tt 3, 1-5* In the last days shall come on dangerous times. Men shall be:

1. Lovers of themselves,

2. Covetous,
3. Haughty,
4. Proud,
5. Blasphemers,
6. Disobedient to parents,
7. Ungrateful,
8. Wicked,
9. Without affection,
10. Without peace,
11. Slanderers,
12. Incontinent,
13. Unmerciful,
14. Without kindness,
15. Traitors,
16. Stubborn,
17. Puffed up,
18. And lovers of pleasures more than of God:
19. Having an appearance indeed of godliness, but denying the power thereof.

Now these avoid.

Now the Spirit manifestly *1 Tt 4, 1-3* saith in the last times some shall:

1. Depart from the truth,
2. Giving heed to spirits of error,
3. And doctrines of devils,
4. Speaking lies in hypocrisy,
5. And having their conscience seared.

The Lord shall enter into judgment with the inhabitants of the land, for:

1. There is no truth,
2. And there is no mercy.
3. And there is no knowledge of God in the land.

T T

- |                      |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 4. Cursing,          | overflowed,              |
| 5. And lying,        | 9. And blood hath        |
| 6. And killing,      | touched blood,           |
| 7. And theft,        | Therefore shall the land |
| 8. And adultery have | mourn.                   |

## 30.—PERSECUTION OF ANTICHRIST.

- 2 T2, 3-10 Let no man deceive you by any means: for unless there come a revolt first, and the man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition,—Who opposeth, and is lifted up above all that is called God, or that is worshipped, so that he sitteth in the Temple of God, showing himself as if he were God.—Remember you not, that when I was yet with you, I told you these things?—And now you know what withholdeth, that he may be revealed in his time.—For the mystery of iniquity already worketh: only that he who now holdeth, do hold, until he be taken out of the way.—And then that wicked one shall be revealed, whom the Lord Jesus shall kill with the Spirit of His mouth: and shall destroy with the brightness of His Coming: him,—Whose coming is according to the working of satan, in all power, and signs, and lying wonders.—And in all seduction of iniquity to them that perish: because they received not the love of the Truth that they might be saved. Therefore God shall send them the operation of error, to believe lying.
- 1 J2, 22 Who is a liar, but he who denieth that Jesus is Christ?
- Mt 24, 10-12 Then shall many be scandalised: and shall betray one another: and shall hate one another.—And many false prophets shall arise, and shall seduce many.—And because iniquity hath abounded, the charity of many shall grow cold.
- There shall be then great tribulation, such as hath not been from the beginning of the world until now.
- It was given unto him to make war with the Saints, and to overcome them. And power was given him over every tribe, and people, and tongue, and nation.—And all that dwell upon the earth adored him, whose names are not written in the Book of Life.
- It was given him to give life to the image of the beast, and that the image of the beast should speak: and should cause, that whosoever will not adore the image of the beast, should be slain.
- Immediately after the tribulation of those days, the sun shall be darkened.
- For the sake of the elect those days shall be shortened.
- I will give unto My two witnesses, and they shall prophesy a thousand two hundred sixty days, clothed in sackcloth.
- How art thou fallen from Heaven, O Lucifer, who didst rise in the morning?
- Mt 24, 21
- Ap 13, 7-8
- Ap 13, 15
- Mt 24, 29
- Mt 24, 22
- Ap 11, 3
- Is 14, 12-15

now art thou fallen to the earth, that didst wound the nations?—And thou saidst in thy heart: I will ascend into Heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God, I will sit in the Mountain of the Covenant, in the sides of the north.—I will ascend above the height of the clouds, I will be like the Most High.—And yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, into the depth of the pit.

Ex 22, 1-10

The Word of the Lord came to me, saying: Son of man, say to the Prince of Tyre: Thus saith the Lord God: Because thy heart is lifted up, and thou hast said: I am God, and I sit in the Chair of God in the heart of the sea: whereas thou art a man, and not God: and hast set thy heart as if it were the Heart of God.—Behold thou art wiser than Daniel: no secret is hid from thee.—In thy wisdom and thy understanding thou hast made thyself strong: and hast gotten gold, and silver into thy treasures.—By the greatness of thy wisdom, and by thy traffic thou hast increased thy strength: and thy heart is lifted up with thy strength.—Therefore, thus saith the Lord God: Because thy heart is lifted up as the Heart of God:—Therefore behold, I will bring upon thee strangers the strongest of the nations: and they shall draw their swords against the beauty of thy wisdom, and they shall defile thy beauty.—They shall kill thee, and

bring thee down: and thou shalt die the death of them that are slain in the heart of the sea.—Wilt thou yet say before them that slay thee: I am God; whereas thou art a man, and not God, in the hand of them that slay thee?—Thou shalt die the death of the uncircumcised by the hand of strangers: for I have spoken it, saith the Lord God.

The he-goat became exceeding great: and when he

was grown, the great horn was broken, and there came up four horns under it towards the four winds of heaven.—And out of one of them came forth a little horn: and it became great against the south, and against the east, and against the strength.—And it was magnified even unto the strength of heaven: and it threw down of the strength, and of the stars, and trod upon them.—And it was magnified even to the prince of the strength: and it took away from him the Continual Sacrifice, and cast down the Place of his Sanctuary.—And strength was given him against the Continual Sacrifice because of sins: and Truth shall be cast down on the ground, and he shall do and shall prosper.—And I heard one of the Saints speaking, and one Saint said to another, I know not to whom that was speaking: How long shall be the vision concerning the Continual Sacrifice, and the sin of the desolation that is made: and the Sanctuary, and the strength be trodden

*Da* 8, 23-  
27

under foot?—And he said to him : Unto evening and morning two thousand three hundred days : and the Sanctuary shall be cleansed.

When iniquities shall be grown up, there shall arise a king of a shameless face, and understanding dark sentences.—And his power shall be strengthened, but not by his own force : and he shall lay all things waste, and shall prosper, and do more than can be believed. And he shall destroy the mighty and the people of the Saints, —According to his will, and craft shall be successful in his hand : and his heart shall be puffed up, and in the abundance of all things he shall kill many : and he shall rise up against the Prince of princes, and shall be broken without hand.—And the vision of the evening and the morning, which was told, is true : thou therefore seal up the vision, because it shall come to pass after many days.—And I Daniel languished, and was sick for some days : and when I was risen up, I did the king's business, and I was astonished at the vision, and there was none that could interpret it.

*Da* 11, 36-  
38

The king shall do according to his will, and he shall be lifted up, and shall magnify himself against every god : and he shall speak great things against the God of gods, and shall prosper till the wrath be accomplished. For the determination is made.—And he shall make no account of the God

of his fathers : and he shall follow the lust of women, and he shall not regard any gods : for he shall rise up against all things,—But he shall worship the god Maozim in his place : and a god whom his fathers knew not, he shall worship with gold, and silver, and precious stones, and things of great price.

THE COMING OF HENOCHE AND ELIAS. — WONDERFUL POWERS GIVEN TO THEM.— THEY ARE SLAIN BY THE BEAST, RISE AGAIN, ARE TAKEN UP TO HEAVEN.

I will give unto My two *Ap* 11, 3-6 witnesses, and they shall prophesy a thousand two hundred sixty days, clothed in sackcloth.—These are the two olive-trees, and the two candlesticks, that stand before the Lord of the earth.—And if any man will hurt them fire shall come out of their mouths, and shall devour their enemies. And if any man will hurt them, in this manner must he be slain.—These have power to shut Heaven, that it rain not in the days of their prophecy : and they have power over waters to turn them into blood, and to strike the earth with all plagues as often as they will.

And when they shall have *Ap* 11, 7-10 finished their testimony, the beast that ascendeth out of the abyss shall make war against them, and shall overcome them, and kill them.—And their bodies shall lie in the streets of the Great City, which is called spiritu-

ally Sodom and Egypt, where their Lord also was crucified.—And they of the tribes, and peoples, and tongues, and nations, shall see their bodies for three days and a half: and they shall not suffer their bodies to be laid in sepulchres.—And they that dwell upon the earth shall rejoice over them and make merry: and shall send gifts one to another, because these two Pro-

phets tormented them that dwelt upon the earth.

And after three days and a half, the Spirit of Life from God entered into them. And they stood upon their feet, and great fear fell upon them that saw them.—And they heard a great voice from Heaven, saying to them: Come up hither. And they went up to Heaven in a cloud: and their enemies saw them. *Ap 11, 11-12*

### 31.—FINAL TRIUMPH OF THE CHURCH.

*Ap 12, 10* Now is come Salvation and strength, and the Kingdom of our God, and the power of His Christ.

*C 15, 24* Afterwards shall come the end, when He shall have delivered up the Kingdom to God and the Father.

*Mt 24, 13* He that shall persevere to the end he shall be saved.

*Is 9, 7* His Empire shall be multiplied, and there shall be no end of peace: He shall sit upon the Throne of David. and upon His Kingdom: to establish it and strengthen it with judgment and with justice, from henceforth and for ever: the zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.

*Da 7, 13-14* I beheld therefore in the vision of the night, and lo, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of Heaven, and He came even to the Ancient of days: and they presented Him before Him.—And He gave Him power, and glory, and a Kingdom: and all peoples, tribes, and tongues shall serve Him; His power is an everlasting power that shall

not be taken away: and His Kingdom, that shall not be destroyed.

The Saints of the Most High God shall take the Kingdom: and they shall possess the Kingdom for ever and ever. *Da 7, 18*

Behold, I create New Heavens, and a New Earth: *Is 66, 17-19*

and the former things shall not be in remembrance, and they shall not come upon the heart.—But you shall be glad and rejoice for ever in these things which I create: for behold I create Jerusalem a rejoicing, and the people thereof joy.—And I will rejoice in Jerusalem and joy in My people, and the voice of weeping shall no more be heard in her, nor the voice of crying.

You shall go out with joy, and be led forth with peace: the mountains and the hills shall sing praise before you, and all the trees of the country shall clap their hands.—Instead of the shrub shall come up the fir-tree, and instead of the nettle shall come

up the myrtle-tree; and the Lord shall be named for an Everlasting Sign, that shall not be taken away.

*Je 33, 6-11* Behold I will close their wounds and give them health, and I will cure them: and I will reveal to them the prayer of peace and truth.—And I will bring back the captivity of Juda, and the captivity of Jerusalem: and I will build them up from the beginning.—And I will cleanse them from their iniquity, whereby they have sinned against Me: and I will forgive all their iniquities, whereby they have sinned against Me.—And it shall be to Me a name, and a joy, and a praise, and a gladness before all the nations of the earth, that shall hear of all the good things which I will do to them; and they shall fear and be troubled for all the good things, and for all the peace that I will make for them.—Thus saith the Lord: There shall be heard again in this place—The voice of joy and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom and the voice of the bride, the voice of them that shall say: Give ye glory to the Lord of Hosts, for the Lord is good, for His Mercy endureth for ever: and of them that shall bring their vows into the House of the Lord: for I will bring back the captivity of the land, as at the first, saith the Lord.

*Ap 10, 13-16* The sixth Angel sounded the trumpet: and I heard a voice from the four horns of the Golden Altar, which is

before the eyes of God,—Saying to the sixth Angel, who had the trumpet: Loose the four Angels who are bound in the great River Euphrates.—And the four Angels were loosed, who were prepared for an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year: for to kill the third part of men.

After these things I heard *Ap 19, 1-9* as it were the voice of many multitudes in Heaven, saying: Alleluia. Salvation, and glory, and power is to our God.—For true and just are His judgments, Who hath judged the great harlot which corrupted the earth with her fornications, and hath revenged the blood of His servants at her hands.—And again they said: Alleluia. And her smoke ascendeth for ever and ever.—And the four-and-twenty Ancients, and the four living Creatures fell down and adored God that sitteth upon the Throne, saying: Amen, Alleluia.—And a voice came out from the Throne, saying: Give praise to our God, all ye His servants: and you that fear him, little and great.—And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of great thunders, saying, Alleluia: for the Lord our God the Almighty hath reigned.—Let us be glad and rejoice, and give glory to Him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and His Wife hath prepared Herself. — And it is granted to Her that she

should clothe Herself in fine linen, glittering and white. For the fine linen are the justifications of Saints.—And he said to me: Write: Blessed are they that are called to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb.

*1 P 29, 11-12* Thine, O Lord, is magnificence, and power, and glory, and victory: and to thee is praise: for all that is in Heaven, and in earth, is thine: thine is the Kingdom, O Lord, and thou art above all Princes.—Thine are riches, and thine is glory; Thou hast dominion over all, in Thy Hand is power and might: in Thy Hand greatness, and the empire of all things.

*Ps 21, 28-30* All the ends of the earth shall remember, and shall be converted to the Lord:—And all the kindreds of the Gentiles shall adore in His sight.—For the Kingdom is

the Lord's: and He shall have dominion over the nations.—All the fat ones of the earth have eaten and have adored: all they that go down to the earth shall fall before Him.

They shall speak of the *Ps 144, 11-13* glory of Thy Kingdom: and shall tell of Thy power:—To make Thy might known to the sons of men: and the glory of the magnificence of Thy Kingdom.—Thy Kingdom is a Kingdom of all ages: and Thy dominion endureth throughout all generations.

In the days of those kingdoms the God of Heaven will set up a Kingdom that shall never be destroyed, and His Kingdom shall not be delivered up to another people, and it shall break in pieces and shall consume all these kingdoms, and Itself shall stand for ever. *Da 2, 44*

### 32.—THE CHURCH SUFFERING IN PURGATORY.

*Ap 21, 27* There shall not enter into it [The City of God] anything defiled.

*1 K 2, 6* The Lord killeth and maketh alive; He bringeth down to hell, and He exalteth.

*Ap 5, 3* No man was able, neither in Heaven, nor on earth, nor under the earth, to open the Book, nor to look into it.

*Ap 5, 13* Every creature which is in Heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them: I heard all saying: To Him that sitteth on the Throne, and to the Lamb, benediction and

honour and glory and power for ever and ever.

Rejoice not, thou my *Mt 7, 8-9* enemy, over me, because I am fallen. I shall arise, when I sit in darkness, the Lord is my light.—I will bear the wrath of the Lord, because I have sinned against Him; until He judge my cause and execute judgment for me: He will bring me forth into the light, I shall behold His justice.

He shall sit refining and *Ma 3, 3* cleansing the silver.

Thou by the Blood of Thy *Za 9, 11* Testament hast sent forth Thy prisoners out of the pit

- wherein is no water.
- To 4, 18* Lay out thy bread and thy wine upon the burial of a just man, and do not eat and drink thereof with the wicked.
- 1 C 3, 13, 15* The fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is.—If any man's work burn, he shall suffer loss; but he himself shall be saved, yet so as by fire.
- Ph 2, 10* In the Name of Jesus, every knee should bow, of those that are in Heaven, on earth, and under the earth.
- Eci 7, 37* Restrain not grace from the dead.
- Lu 12, 47-48* That servant who knew the will of his Lord, and hath not prepared, and did not according to His will, shall be beaten with many stripes.—But he that knew not, and did things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few stripes.
- Mt 5, 25-26* Make an agreement with thy adversary quickly, whilst thou art in the way with him; lest, perhaps, the adversary deliver thee to the judge, and the judge deliver thee to the officer, and thou be cast into Prison.—Amen I say to thee, thou shalt not go out from thence, till thou pay the last farthing.
- Mt 12, 36-32* I say unto you, that every idle word that men shall speak, they shall render an account for it in the Day of Judgment.—He that shall speak against the Holy Ghost it shall not be forgiven him neither in this world, nor in the world to come.\*
- Christ died once for our sins, the Just for the unjust; that He might offer us to God, being put to death indeed in the flesh, but enlivened in the Spirit.—In which also coming He preached to those spirits who were in Prison.
- He that descended is the same also that ascended above all the heavens, that He might fill all things.
- As silver is tried by fire, and gold in the furnace: so the Lord trieth the heart.
- What shall they do that are baptised for the dead, if the dead rise not at all? Why are they then baptised for them?
- THE JEWS BELIEVED IN PURGATORY.**
- The most valiant Judas exhorted the people to keep themselves from sin, forasmuch as they saw before their eyes what had happened, because of the sins of those that were slain.—And making a gathering, he sent twelve thousand drachms of silver to Jerusalem for sacrifice to be offered for the sins of the dead, thinking well and religiously concerning the Resurrection.—(For if he had not hoped that they that were slain should rise again, it would have seemed superfluous and vain to pray for the dead.)—And because he considered that they who had fallen asleep with godliness, had

\* St. Augustine and St. Gregory gather from these words that some sins may be remitted in the world to come; and consequently that there is a Purgatory.



great grace laid up for them.  
—It is therefore a holy and wholesome thought to pray for the dead, that they may be loosed from sins.

*Names and figures of Purgatory:*

1 Pt 3, 19 1. The Prison.

2. The Pit. *Za 9, 11*

3. The Cleansing Fire. *1 C 3, 15*

4. The Place under the Earth. *Ph 2, 10*

5. The Refining Pot. *Po 17, 3*

6. The Furnace for Purification. *Po 17, 3*

7. The Prison House. *Is 42, 7*

### 33.—THE CHURCH TRIUMPHANT IN HEAVEN.

*Pz 88, 3* Glorious things are said of thee, O City of God.

*1 C 5, 1* We know, if this earthly house of this habitation be dissolved that we have a building of God, a House not made with hands, Eternal in Heaven.

*Ep 4, 8, 10* Christ ascending on High, led Captivity Captive.—He that descended is the same also that ascended above all the heavens.

*2 C 5, 6, 8* While we are in the body, we are absent from the Lord.—But we are confident, and have a good will to be absent rather from the body and to be present with the Lord.

*Ph 1, 23-24* I am straitened between two; having a desire to be dissolved and to be with Christ, a thing by far the better.—But to abide still in the flesh, is needful for you.

*Ph 1, 21* For to me to live is Christ; and to die is gain.

*Ap 7, 14-15* These are they who are come out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the Blood of the Lamb.—Therefore they are before the Throne of God, and they serve him day and night.

*Mt 22, 32* I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. He is not the God of the dead, but

of the living.

This day thou shalt be with me in Paradise. *Lu 23, 43*

From the beginning of the world they have not heard, nor perceived with the ears: the eye hath not seen, O God, besides Thee, what things thou hast prepared for them that wait for Thee.

Thy Kingdom is a Kingdom of all ages: and Thy dominion endureth throughout all generations. *Pz 144, 13*

Lift up your eyes to Heaven, and look down to the earth beneath: for the heavens shall vanish like smoke, and the earth shall be worn away like a garment, and the inhabitants thereof shall perish in like manner: but My Salvation shall be for ever, and My Justice shall not fail. *Is 51, 6*

The redeemed of the Lord shall return, and shall come into Sion with praise, and everlasting joy shall be upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and mourning shall flee away. *Is 35, 10*

Behold, I create New Heavens, and a New Earth; and the former things shall not be in remembrance, and they shall not come upon the heart.—But you *Is 65, 17-19*

shall be glad and rejoice for ever in these things, which I create: for behold I create Jerusalem rejoicing, and the people thereof joy.—And I will rejoice in Jerusalem, and joy in My people, and the voice of weeping shall no more be heard in her, nor the voice of crying.

*Is* 60, 19-22

Thou shalt no more have the sun for thy light by day, neither shall the brightness of the moon enlighten thee: but the Lord shall be unto thee for an Everlasting Light, and thy God for thy glory.—Thy sun shall go down no more, and thy moon shall not decrease: for the Lord shall be unto thee for an Everlast-

ing Light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended.—And thy people shall be all just, they shall inherit The Land for ever, the branch of My planting, the work of My hand to glorify Me.—The least shall become a thousand, and a little one a most strong nation: I the Lord will suddenly do this thing in its time.

Fear not, little flock, for it hath pleased your Father to give you a Kingdom. *Lk* 12, 32

In My Father's House there are many mansions. If not, I would have told you, because I go to prepare a place for you. *Jn* 14, 2

(See page 9.)

### 34.—A PRAYER FOR THE CHURCH OF GOD.

#### I.

*Ecc* 38, 1-19

Have mercy upon us, O God of all, and behold us, and show us the light of Thy mercies:

And send Thy fear upon the nations, that have not sought after Thee: that they may know that there is no God beside Thee, and that they may show forth Thy wonders.

#### II.

Lift up Thy Hand over the strange nations, that they may see Thy Power.

For as Thou hast been sanctified in us in their sight, so Thou shalt be magnified among them in our presence,

That they may know Thee, as we also have known Thee, that there is no God beside Thee, O Lord.

#### III.

Renew Thy signs, and work new miracles.

Glorify Thy Hand, and Thy Right Arm.

Raise up indignation, and pour out wrath.

Take away the adversary, and crush the enemy.

#### IV.

Hasten the time, and remember the end, that they may declare Thy wonderful works.

Let him that escapeth be consumed by the rage of the fire: and let them perish that oppress Thy people.

Crush the head of the Princes of the enemies that say: There is no other beside us.

#### V.

Gather together all the

Tribes of Jacob: that they may know that there is no God besides Thee, and may declare Thy great works: and Thou shalt inherit them as from the beginning.

Have mercy on Thy people, upon whom Thy Name is invoked; and upon Israel, whom Thou hast raised up to be Thy first-born.

## VI.

Have mercy on Jerusalem, the City which Thou hast sanctified, the City of Thy Rest.

Fill Simon with Thy unspeakable Words, and Thy people with Thy glory.

Give testimony to them that are Thy creatures from the beginning, and raise up the prophetes which the former Prophets spoke in Thy Name.

## VII.

Reward them that patiently wait for Thee, that Thy Prophets may be found faithful; and hear the prayers of Thy servants,

According to the blessing of Aaron over Thy people, and direct us into the way of justice, and let all know that dwell upon the earth, that Thou art God the Beholder of all ages.

### 35.—PRAYERS FOR THE CONVERSION OF OUR COUNTRY.\*

#### Sunday.

*Ps* 68, 2-3 Save me, O God: for the waters are come in even unto my soul.

I stick fast in the mire of the deep: and there is no sure standing.

*Ps* 68, 9-10 I am become a stranger to my brethren, and an alien to the sons of my mother.

For the zeal of Thy House hath eaten me up: and the reproaches of them that reproached Thee are fallen upon me.

*Ps* 70, 20-21 How great troubles hast Thou shown me, many and grievous; and turning Thou hast brought me to life, and hast brought me back again from the depths of the earth: Thou hast multiplied Thy

magnificence; and turning to me Thou hast comforted me.

I will praise the Name of God with a canticle: and I will magnify Him with praise.

For God will save Sion, and the cities of Juda shall be built up. And they shall dwell there, and acquire it by inheritance.

And the seed of His servants shall possess it; and they that love His Name shall dwell therein.

#### Monday.

O God, why hast Thou cast us off unto the end: why is Thy wrath enkindled against the sheep of Thy pasture?

\* 1. Three hundred days' Indulgence is granted to all who pray for the conversion of England. (Rescript of May 9, 1850.)

2. See "Preces pro Conversione Angliæ." Londini: Anno 1839.

Remember Thy congregation, which Thou hast possessed from the beginning. The sceptre of Thy inheritance which Thou hast redeemed: Mount Sion in which Thou hast dwelt.

*Ps* 101, 14-19 Thou shalt arise and have mercy on Sion: for it is time to have mercy on it, for the time is come.

For the stones thereof have pleased Thy servants: and they shall have pity on the earth thereof.

And the Gentiles shall fear Thy Name, O Lord, and all the kings of the earth Thy glory.

For the Lord hath built up Sion and He shall be seen in His glory.

He hath had regard to the prayer of the humble: and He hath not despised their petition.

Let these things be written unto another generation: and the people that shall be created shall praise the Lord.

*Ps* 101, 23, 29 When the people assembled together, and kings to serve the Lord,

The children of Thy servants shall continue, and their seed shall be directed for ever.

### Tuesday.

*Ps* 79, 2-6 Give ear, O Thou that rulest Israel: Thou that leadest Joseph like a sheep.

Stir up Thy might, and come to save us.

Convert us, O God: and show us Thy face, and we shall be saved.

O Lord God of Hosts, how long wilt Thou be angry

against the prayer of Thy servant?

How long wilt thou feed us with the bread of tears: and give us for our drink tears in measure?

O God of Hosts, convert us: and show Thy face, and we shall be saved.

Thou hast brought a vineyard out of Egypt: thou hast cast out the Gentiles and planted it.

Why hast Thou broken down the hedge thereof; so that all they who pass by the way do pluck it?

Turn again, O God of Hosts, look down from Heaven, and see, and visit this vineyard:

And perfect the same which Thy Right Hand hath planted.

And we depart not from Thee, and we will call upon Thy Name.

O Lord God of Hosts, convert us: and show Thy face, and we shall be saved.

### Wednesday.

Lord, Thou hast blessed Thy Land: Thou hast turned away the captivity of Jacob.

Thou hast forgiven the iniquity of Thy people: Thou hast covered all their sins.

Thou hast mitigated all Thy anger: Thou hast turned away from the wrath of Thy indignation.

Convert us, O God our Saviour: and turn off Thy anger from us.

Wilt Thou be angry with us for ever: or wilt Thou extend Thy wrath from generation to generation?

Thou wilt turn, O God,

and bring us to life : and thy people shall rejoice in Thee. and we have rejoiced, and are delighted all our days.

Show us, O Lord, Thy mercy; and grant us Thy salvation. We have rejoiced for the days in which Thou hast humbled us : for the years in which we have seen evils.

I will hear what the Lord God will speak in me : for He will speak peace unto His people : Look upon Thy servants and upon their works : and direct their children.

And unto His Saints : And let the brightness of the Lord our God be upon us : and direct Thou the works of our hands over us ;

Surely His salvation is near to them that fear Him : yea, the work of our hands that glory may dwell in our land. do Thou direct.

*Ps 84, 13* For the Lord will give goodness : and our earth shall yield her fruit.

### Thursday.

*Ps 89, 1-4* Lord, Thou hast been our refuge from generation to generation.

Before the mountains were made, or the earth and the world were formed : from Eternity and to Eternity Thou art God.

Turn not man away to be brought low : and Thou hast said : Be converted, O ye sons of men.

For a thousand years in Thy sight are as yesterday, which is past.

*Ps 89, 7-9* For in Thy wrath we have fainted away : and are troubled in Thy indignation.

Thou hast set our iniquities before Thy eyes : our life in the light of Thy countenance.

For all our days are spent : and in Thy wrath we have fainted away.

*Ps 89, 13-17* Return, O Lord, how long ? and be entreated in favour of Thy servants.

We were filled in the morning with Thy mercy :

### Friday.

I cried to the Lord with *Ps 76, 2-3* my voice ; to God with my voice, and He gave ear to me.

In the day of my trouble I sought God, with my hand lifted up to Him in the night, and I was not deceived.

I thought upon the days of old : and I had in my mind the Eternal years. *Ps 76, 6*

Will God then cast off for *Ps 76, 8-11* ever ? or will He never be more favourable again ?

Or will He cut off His mercy for ever, from generation to generation ?

Or will God forget to show mercy ? or will He in His anger shut up His mercies ?

And I said : Now have I begun : this is the change of the right hand of the Most High.

Remember not our former iniquities : let Thy mercies speedily prevent us, for we are become exceeding poor. *Ps 78, 8-9*

Help us, O God, our Saviour : and for the glory of Thy Name, O Lord, deliver us : and forgive us our sins for Thy Name's sake.

- Ps 78, 13** But we Thy people, and the sheep of Thy pasture, will give thanks to Thee for ever. We will show forth Thy praise, unto generation and generation.
- Saturday.**
- Ps 88, 2-5** The mercies of the Lord I will sing for ever. I will show forth Thy truth with my mouth to generation and generation.
- For Thou hast said: Mercy shall be built up for ever in the heavens: Thy truth shall be prepared in them.
- I have made a covenant with My elect, I have sworn to David My servant:
- Thy seed will I settle for ever.
- Ps 88, 31** And if his children forsake My law, and walk not in My judgments:
- Ps 88, 33-34** I will visit their iniquities with a rod; and their sins with stripes.
- But My mercy I will not take away from him: nor will I suffer My truth to fail.
- But thou hast rejected and despised: thou hast been angry with thy Anointed.
- Thou hast overthrown the covenant of thy Servant: thou hast profaned His Sanctuary on the earth.
- Thou hast broken down all His hedges: thou hast made His strength fear. He has become a reproach.
- Thou hast set up the right hand of them that oppress Him: thou hast made all His enemies to rejoice.
- Lord, where are Thy ancient mercies, according to what Thou didst swear to David in Thy truth?
- Be mindful, O Lord, of the reproach of Thy servants (which I have held in my bosom) of many nations.
- Blessed be the Lord for evermore. So be it, so be it.

---

## PART III.

### THE SACRAMENTS OF THE CHURCH.

*Decree of the Council of Florence, "pro instructione Armenorum."*

"THERE are seven Sacraments of the New Law—Baptism, Confirmation, the Eucharist, Penance, Extreme Unction, Order, and Matrimony. The Sacraments are very different from the Sacraments of the Old Law. The Sacraments of the Old Law did not cause grace, but only represented that grace was to be given by the Passion of Christ. Of the Sacraments of the New Law the first five are ordained to the spiritual perfection of each man in himself; the last

two are ordained to the government and multiplication of the entire Church. By Baptism we are spiritually born again; by Confirmation we are increased in grace and strengthened in faith; we are nourished by the Divine Food of the Eucharist. If by sin we fall into sickness of soul we are spiritually healed by Penance; spiritually and, so far as it is expedient for the soul, corporally too by Extreme Unction; by Order the Church is governed and spiritually multiplied; by Matrimony the Church is corporally increased. All these Sacraments are perfected by three elements—by things which are the matter, by words which are the form, and by the person of the minister conferring the Sacrament, with the intention of doing what the Church does. If any one of these three elements be wanting there is no Sacrament. Of these Sacraments, three, Baptism, Confirmation, and Order, impress on the soul a character; that is, a spiritual, distinguishing sign which is indelible. Consequently these Sacraments are not repeated in the same person. But the four others do not impress a character, and may be repeated."

### 1.—SACRAMENTS IN GENERAL.

<i>Mt</i> 23, 19	1. BAPTISM. <i>The birth.</i>	gled her wine, and set forth
<i>Ac</i> 8, 17	2. CONFIRMATION. <i>The growth.</i>	her Table.—She hath sent
<i>Mt</i> 26, 28	3. HOLY EUCHARIST. <i>The nourishment.</i>	her maids to invite to the
<i>Jn</i> 20, 23	4. PENANCE. <i>The medicine.</i>	tower, and to the walls of
<i>Ja</i> 5, 14	5. EXTREME UNCTION. <i>The journey of the soul.</i>	the City:—Whosoever is a
<i>Lu</i> 22, 19	6. HOLY ORDER. <i>The Christian Priesthood.</i>	little one, let him come to
<i>Mt</i> 19, 6	7. MATRIMONY. <i>The Christian Family.</i>	Me. And to the unwise she
<i>Pv</i> 9, 1-5	Wisdom hath built herself a House. She hath hewn her out Seven Pillars.—She hath slain her victims, min-	said:—Come, eat My Bread, and drink the Wine which I have mingled for you.
		The Lord ruleth me: <i>Pv</i> 22, 1-6
		and I shall want nothing.—
		He hath set me in a place
		of Pasture. He hath
		brought me up, on the water

of refreshment:—He hath converted my soul. He hath led me on the paths of justice, for His Own Name's sake.—For though I should walk in the midst of the shadow of death, I will fear no evils, for Thou art with me. Thy rod and Thy staff, they have comforted me.—Thou hast prepared a Table before me, against them that afflict me. Thou hast anointed my head with oil: and my chalice which inebrieth me, how goodly is it!—And Thy mercy will follow me all the days of my life. And that I may dwell in the House of the Lord unto length of days.

*Ge* 41, 1-2, He thought he stood by  
4-5 the river,—Out of which came up seven kine, very beautiful and fat. . . .—So Pharaoh awoke.—He slept again and dreamed another dream: seven ears of corn came up upon one stalk full and fair.

*Ez* 40, 22 They went up to the gate [of the Temple] by Seven Steps.

*De* 28, 7-12 The Lord shall cause thy enemies, that rise up against thee, to fall down before thy face: one way shall they come out against thee, and seven ways shall they flee before thee.—The Lord will send forth a blessing upon thy storehouses, and upon all the works of thy hands: and will bless thee in the land that thou shalt receive.—The Lord will raise thee up to be a holy people to Himself, as He swore to thee: if thou keep the commandments of the Lord thy God, and walk in His ways.

—And all the people of the earth shall see that the Name of the Lord is invocated upon thee, and they shall fear thee.—The Lord will make thee abound with all goods.—The Lord will open His excellent Treasure, the Heaven, that it may give rain in due season.

The Angel that spoke in *Za* 4, 1-2 me came again; and he waked me, as a man that is wakened out of his sleep.—And he said to me: What seest thou? And I said: I have looked, and behold a candlestick all of gold, and its lamp upon the top of it: and the Seven Lights thereof upon it: and Seven Funnels for the lights that were upon the top thereof.

In those days when there *Mt* 8, 1-6, 8-9 was a great multitude, and they had nothing to eat; calling His Disciples together, He said to them:—I have compassion on the multitude, for behold they have now been with Me, three days, and have nothing to eat.—And if I shall send them away fasting to their home, they will faint in the way, for some of them came from afar off.—And His Disciples answered Him: From whence can any one fill them here with bread in the wilderness?—And He asked them: How many loaves have ye? Who said: Seven.—And taking the Seven Loaves, giving thanks, He broke, and gave to His Disciples to set before them, and they set them before the people.—And they did eat and were filled, and they



took up that which was left of the fragments, seven baskets.—And they that had eaten were about four thousand: and He sent them away.

*4p 1, 12-13* I turned to see the voice that spoke with me And being turned, I saw Seven Golden Candlesticks:—And in the midst of the Seven Golden Candlesticks, One like to the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the feet.

*4p 5, 6* I saw: and behold in the midst of the throne, a Lamb standing as it were slain, having Seven Horns.

*Is 30, 26* The light of the sun shall be sevenfold as the light of Seven Days: in the day that the Lord shall bind up the wound of His people, and shall heal the stroke of their wound.

*Ge 49, 25* The God of thy father shall be thy Helper, and the Almighty shall bless thee with the blessings of Heaven above, with the blessings of the deep that lieth beneath.

*Ep 1, 3-10* Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in Heavenly places, in Christ.—As he chose us in Him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and unspotted in His sight in charity.—Who had predestinated us unto the adoption of children through Jesus Christ unto Himself: according to the purpose of His will.—Unto the praise of the glory of His grace, in which He hath graced us in His Beloved Son.—In Whom

we have redemption through His Blood, the remission of sins, according to the riches of His grace,—Which hath super-abounded in us in all wisdom and prudence,—That He might make known unto us the Mystery of His will, according to His good pleasure which He hath purposed in Him,—In the dispensation of the fulness of times, to re-establish all things in Christ, that are in Heaven and on earth, in Him.

To Zabulon he said: *Dt 33, 18-19* Rejoice, O Zabulon, in thy going out: and Issachar in thy Tabernacles.—They shall call the people to the mountain: there shall they sacrifice the victims of justice. Who shall suck as milk the abundance of the sea, and the Hidden Treasures of the sands.

With Me are riches and glory, glorious riches, and justice.—For My fruit is better than gold and the precious stones, and My blossoms than choice silver. *Pv 8, 18*

How great are thy works. *Ps 103, 24* O Lord! Thou hast made all things in wisdom. The earth is filled with Thy riches.

Glory and wealth shall be in His house. *Ps 111, 3*

I will give thee Hidden Treasures, and the Concealed Riches of secret places: that thou mayst know that I am the Lord Who call thee by thy name, the God of Israel. *Is 45, 3*

O the depth of the riches of the wisdom and of the knowledge of God! *Ro 11, 33*

Waters are broken out in the desert and streams in *Is 35, 6*

U U

	the wilderness.	3. Seven Streams.	<i>Is</i> 12, 15
<i>Za</i> 14, 8	It shall come to pass in that day, that Living Waters shall go out from Jerusalem; half of them to the east sea, and half of them to the last sea: they shall be in summer and in winter.	4. Seven Steps.	<i>Ex</i> 40, 22
		5. Seven Loaves.	<i>Mt</i> 15, 36
		6. Seven Lights.	<i>Za</i> 4, 2
		7. Seven Golden Candlesticks.	<i>Ap</i> 1, 12
		8. Seven Lamps.	<i>Nu</i> 8, 2
<i>Dt</i> 29, 29	Secret Things to the Lord our God: things that are manifest to us and to our children for ever, that we may do all the words of this Law.	9. Sevenfold light of the sun.	<i>Is</i> 30, 26
		10. Seven Horns.	<i>Ap</i> 5, 6
		11. Seven Pillars.	<i>Po</i> 9, 1
		12. Seven Pyramids.	<i>1 M</i> 13, 28
		13. The Treasures of the Temple.	<i>2 P</i> 36, 18
		14. Hidden Treasures.	<i>Is</i> 45, 3
		15. Riches of Grace.	<i>Ep</i> 1, 7
<i>1 C</i> 3, 1	1. Mysteries or Sacraments.	16. Concealed Riches.	<i>Is</i> 45, 3
<i>Ge</i> 41, 5	2. Seven Ears of Corn.	17. Unsearchable Riches of Christ.	<i>Ep</i> 3, 8

*Types of the Holy Sacraments:*

## 2.—THE SACRAMENT OF BAPTISM.

<i>Mt</i> 28, 19	Going therefore teach ye all nations: baptising them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.	of the like form, now saveth you also: not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the examination of a good conscience towards God by the Resurrection of Jesus Christ.	
<i>Jn</i> 3, 5	Unless a man be born again of water and of the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God.	When they believed Philip preaching of the Kingdom of God, in the Name of Jesus Christ they were baptised both men and women.	<i>Ac</i> 8, 12
<i>Ac</i> 10, 47-48	Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptised who have received the Holy Ghost as well as we? — And he commanded them to be baptised in the Name of the Lord Jesus Christ.	He commanded the chariot to stand still; and they went down into the water, both Philip and the eunuch, and he baptised him.	<i>Ac</i> 8, 38
<i>Ep</i> 5, 25-26	Christ loved the Church, and delivered Himself up for it, that He might sanctify it: — Cleansing it by the laver of water in the Word of Life.	Immediately there fell from his eyes as it were scales, and he received his sight; and rising up he was baptised.	<i>Ac</i> 9, 18
<i>Mk</i> 16, 16	He that believeth and is baptised shall be saved.	Know you not that all we who are baptised in Christ Jesus are baptised in His death?	<i>Ro</i> 6, 3
<i>1 Pt</i> 3, 20-21	[In the Ark] eight souls were saved by water. — Whereunto Baptism being	I will pour out waters upon the thirsty ground, and	<i>Is</i> 44, 3

streams upon the dry land: I will pour out My Spirit upon thy seed, and My Blessing upon thy stock.

**Za 13, 1** In that day there shall be a Fountain open to the House of David, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem: for the washing of the sinner.

**Es 36, 25** I will pour upon you clean water, and you shall be cleansed from all your filthiness.

**Ac 22, 16** Rise up and be baptised, and wash away thy sins.

**Ac 2, 38** Do penance, and be baptised every one of you, for the remission of your sins.

**Tt 3, 5** He saved us by the laver of regeneration and renovation of the Holy Ghost, Whom He hath poured forth upon us abundantly.

**Ac 19, 2-5** He said to them: Have you received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? But they said to him: We have not so much as heard whether there be a Holy Ghost.—And he said: In what then were you baptised? Who said: In John's baptism.—Then Paul said: John baptised the people with the baptism

of penance, saying: That they should believe in Him Who was to come after him, that is to say, in Jesus.—Having heard these things they were baptised in the Name of the Lord Jesus.

I would not have you **1C10, 1-2** ignorant, brethren, that our fathers were all under the cloud, and all passed through the sea.—And all in Moses were baptised, in the cloud, and in the sea.

Now this I say, that every **1C1, 12-17** one of you saith: I indeed am of Paul: and I am of Apollo: and I of Cephas: and I of Christ.—Is Christ divided? Was Paul then crucified for you? or were you baptised in the name of Paul?—I give God thanks, that I baptised none of you, but Crispus and Caius:—Lest any should say that you were baptised in my name.—And I baptised also the household of Stephanas: besides, I know not whether I baptised any other.—For Christ sent me not to baptise, but to preach the Gospel.

There is one Baptism. **Ep 4, 5**

### 3.—CIRCUMCISION A TYPE OF BAPTISM.

**Ge 17, 9-14** Again God said to Abraham: And thou therefore shalt keep My Covenant, and thy seed after thee in thy generations.—This is My Covenant which you shall observe, between Me and you, and thy seed after thee: All the male kind of you shall be circumcised.—And you shall circumcise the flesh of your foreskin, that it may be for a sign of the Covenant

between Me and you.—An infant of eight days old shall be circumcised among you, every man child in your generations; he that is born in the house, as well as the bought servant shall be circumcised, and whosoever is not of your stock.—And My Covenant shall be in your flesh for a perpetual covenant.—The male, whose flesh of the foreskin shall not be

circumcised, that soul shall be destroyed out of his people: because he hath broken My Covenant.

*Le* 5, 2-9

At that time the Lord said to Josue; Make thee knives of stone, and circumcise the second time the children of Israel.—He did what the Lord had commanded, and he circumcised the children of Israel in the Hill of the Foreskins.—Now this is the cause of the second circumcision: All the people that came out of Egypt that were males, all the men fit for war, died in the desert, during the time of the long going about in the way.—Now these were all circumcised. But the people that were born in the desert,—During the forty years of the journey in the wide wilderness were uncircumcised: till all they were consumed that had not heard the voice of the Lord, and to whom He had sworn before, that He would not show them the land flowing with milk and honey.—The children of these succeeded in the place of their fathers, and were circumcised by Josue: for they were uncircumcised even as they were born, and no one had circumcised them in the way.—Now after they were all circumcised, they remained in the same place of the camp, until they were healed.—And the Lord said to Josue: This day have I taken away from you the reproach of Egypt. And the name of that place was called Galgal, until this present day.

*Ex* 28, 10

Thou shalt die the death of

the uncircumcised by the hand of strangers: for I have spoken it, saith the Lord God.

Whom dost thou excel in beauty? Go down and sleep with the uncircumcised. *Ex* 32, 19

Christ Jesus was Minister of the circumcision for the Truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers. *Ro* 15, 8

Abraham took Ismael his son, and all that were born in his house: and all whom he had bought, every male among the men of his house: and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskin forthwith the very same day, as God had commanded him.—Abraham was ninety-and-nine years old, when he circumcised the flesh of his foreskin. *Ge* 17, 23-27

—And Ismael his son was full thirteen years old at the time of his circumcision.—The self-same day was Abraham circumcised and Ismael his son.—And all the men of his house, as well they that were born in his house, as the bought servants and strangers, were circumcised with him.

Abraham circumcised his son Isaac the eighth day, as God had commanded him. *Ge* 21, 4

Abraham gave him the Covenant of circumcision, and so he begot Isaac, and circumcised him the eighth day. *Ac* 7, 8

Circumcision profiteth indeed, if thou keep the law: but if thou be a transgressor of the law, thy circumcision is made uncircumcision.—If then the uncircumcised keep the justices of the law, shall *Ro* 2, 25-27

not his uncircumcision be counted for circumcision?—And shall not that which by nature is uncircumcision, if it fulfil the law, judge thee who by the letter and circumcision art a transgressor of the law?

*Ro 4, 9-12* This blessedness then doth it abide in the circumcision only, or in the uncircumcision also? For we say that unto Abraham faith was reputed to justice.—How then was it reputed? When he was in circumcision or uncircumcision? Not in circumcision, but in uncircumcision.—And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the justice of the faith which he had being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all them that believe being uncircumcised, that unto them also it may be reputed to justice:—And might be the father of circumcision, not to them only that are of the circumcision, but to them also that follow the steps of the faith that is in the uncircumcision of our father Abraham.

*Ph 3, 2-3* Beware of dogs, beware of evil workers, beware of the concision.—For we are the circumcision who in spirit serve God: and glory in Christ Jesus, not having confidence in the flesh.

*Dt 10, 16* Circumcise the foreskins of your heart, and stiffen your neck no more.

*Dt 30, 6* The Lord thy God will circumcise thy heart, and the heart of thy seed: that thou mayst love the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul, that

thou mayst live.

Thus saith the Lord to the men of Juda and Jerusalem: Break up anew your fallow ground, and sow not upon thorns:—Be circumcised to the Lord, and take away the foreskins of your hearts, ye men of Juda, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem: lest My indignation come forth like fire, and burn, and there be none that can quench it: because of the wickedness of your thoughts.

To whom shall I speak? *Je 6, 10-19* and to whom shall I testify, that he may hear? Behold, their ears are uncircumcised, and they cannot hear: behold the Word of the Lord is become unto them a reproach: and they will not receive it.—Therefore am I full of the fury of the Lord, I am weary with holding on: pour it out upon the child abroad, and upon the council of the young men together: for man and woman shall be taken, the ancient and he that is full of days.—And their houses shall be turned over to others, with their lands and their wives together: for I will stretch forth My hand upon the inhabitants of the land, saith the Lord.

Behold, the days come, *Je 9, 25-28* saith the Lord, and I will visit upon every one that hath the foreskin circumcised,—Upon Egypt, and upon Juda, and upon Edom, and upon the children of Ammon, and upon Moab, and upon all that have their hair polled round, that dwell in the desert: for all the nations

are uncircumcised in the flesh : but all the House of Israel are uncircumcised in the heart.

*Ro 2, 28-29* It is not he is a Jew, that is so outwardly : nor is that circumcision which is outward in the flesh,—But he is a Jew that is one inwardly : and the circumcision is that of the heart, in the spirit, not in the letter : whose praise is not of men, but of God.

*C12, 10-13* You are filled in Him, Who is the Head of all principality and power ;—In

Whom also you are circumcised with circumcision not made by hand in the despoiling of the body of the flesh, but in the circumcision of Christ :—Buried with Him in Baptism, in Whom also you are risen again by the faith of the operation of God, Who hath raised Him up from the dead.—And you, when you were dead in your sins, and the uncircumcision of your flesh : He hath quickened together with Him ; forgiving you all offences

#### 4.—THE BAPTISM OF ST. JOHN.

*Mt 1, 4-5* John was in the desert baptising and preaching the Baptism of penance unto remission of sins.—And there went out to him all the country of Judea, and all they of Jerusalem, and were baptised by him in the river of Jordan, confessing their sins.

*Ac 18, 25* This man was instructed in the way of the Lord : and being fervent in spirit spoke, and taught diligently the things that are of Jesus, knowing only the Baptism of John.

*Mt 3, 22-23* After these things Jesus and His Disciples came into the land of Judea : and there He abode with them, and baptised.—And John also was baptising in Aenon near Salim ; because there was much water there, and they came and were baptised.

*Jn 4, 1-2* When Jesus understood that the Pharisees had heard that Jesus maketh more

Disciples, and baptised more than John—(Though Jesus Himself did not baptise, but His Disciples),—He left Judea, and went again into Galilee.

John indeed baptised with water, but you shall be baptised with the Holy Ghost not many days hence.

Then went out to Him *Mt 3, 5-6, 11-12* Jerusalem and all Judea, and all the country about Jordan :—And were baptised by him in the Jordan, confessing their sins.—I indeed baptise you in water unto penance, but He that shall come after me, is mightier than I, Whose shoes I am not worthy to bear ; He shall baptise you in the Holy Ghost and fire.—Whose fan is in His hand, and He will thoroughly cleanse His floor : and gather His wheat into the Barn, but the chaff He will burn with unquenchable fire.

*Ac 1, 5*

ST. JOHN BAPTISES OUR  
BLESSED LORD.

*Mt* 3, 13-17 Then cometh Jesus from Galilee to the Jordan, unto John, to be baptised by him.—But John stayed Him, saying: I ought to be baptised by Thee, and comest Thou to me?—And Jesus answering, said to him: Suffer it to be so now. For so it becometh us to fulfil all justice. Then he suffered Him.—And Jesus being baptised, forthwith came out of the water: and lo, the heavens were opened to Him: and He saw the Spirit of God descending as a Dove, and coming upon Him.—And behold a Voice

from Heaven, saying: This is My Beloved Son, in Whom I am well pleased.

And John preached, saying: *Mt* 1, 8-11 I have baptised you with water: but He shall baptise you with the Holy Ghost.—And it came to pass, in those days Jesus came from Nazareth of Galilee; and was baptised by John in the Jordan.—And forthwith coming up out of the water, He saw the heavens opened, and the Spirit as a Dove descending and remaining on Him.—And there came a Voice from Heaven: Thou art My Beloved Son, in Thee I am well pleased.

### 5.—THE SPIRITUAL SIGNIFICANCE OF BAPTISM.

*Jn* 1, 12-13 As many as received Him, He gave them power to be made the sons of God, to them that believe in His Name.—Who are born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.

*Ro* 6, 3-6 Know you not that all we, who are baptised in Christ Jesus, are baptised in His Death?—For we are buried together with Him by Baptism unto death; that as Christ is risen from the dead by the glory of the Father, so we also may walk in newness of life.—For if we have been planted together in the likeness of His Death, we shall also be in the likeness of His Resurrection.—Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with Him, that the body of sin may be destroyed, and that we may serve sin no

longer.

In One Spirit were we all *1 C* 12, 13 baptised into one body, whether Jews or Gentiles, whether bond or free: and in One Spirit we have all been made to drink.

You are all the children of God by faith, in Christ Jesus. *Ga* 3, 27 —For as many of you as have been baptised in Christ, have put on Christ.

[You are] buried with Him *Ci* 2, 12 in Baptism, in Whom also you are risen again by the faith of the operation of God, Who hath raised Him up from the dead.

Christ died once for our *1 P* 3, 18-21 sins, the Just for the unjust: that He might offer us to God, being put to death indeed in the flesh, but enlivened in the spirit.—In which also coming He preached to those spirits that were in

prison:—Which had been not enter the Kingdom of some time incredulous, when God.—That which is born of they had waited for the the flesh, is flesh: and that patience of God in the days which is born of the Spirit, of Noe, when the Ark was a is spirit.—Wonder not that I building: wherein a few, say to thee, You must be that is, eight souls, were born again.

saved by water.—Whereunto Not by the works of jus- *Tt 3, 5-6*  
Baptism being of the like tice, which we have done,  
form, now saveth you also: but according to His mercy  
not the putting away of the He saved us, by the laver of  
filth of the flesh, but the ex- regeneration, and renovation  
amination of a good con- of the Holy Ghost.—Whom  
science towards God by the He hath poured forth upon  
Resurrection of Jesus Christ. us abundantly through Jesus  
Christ our Saviour.

*Lk 17, 20-* Being asked by the Phari- *1 Jn 4, 7*  
*21* sees: when the Kingdom of Every one that loveth is  
God should come? He born of God, and knoweth  
answered them and said: God.

The Kingdom of God cometh Being born again not of *1 Pt 1, 23*  
not with observation:— corruptible seed, but incor-  
Neither shall they say: Be- ruptible, by the Word of God,  
hold here, or behold there. Who liveth and remaineth for  
For lo, the Kingdom of God ever.

*He 10, 32* Call to mind the former If you know that He is *1 Jn 2, 29*  
days, wherein being illum- just; know ye, that every  
inated, you endured a great one also, who doth justice,  
fight of afflictions. is born of Him.

*1 Jn 5, 8* There are three that give The Lord thy God will *Dt 30, 6*  
testimony on earth: the heart, and the  
Spirit, and the Water, and heart of thy seed: that thou  
the Blood. mayst love the Lord thy God  
with all thy heart and with

*Ct 3, 2-3* Mind the things that are all thy soul, that thou mayst  
above, not the things that live.

are upon the earth.—For you I will give you a new heart, *Er 36, 26*  
are dead; and your life is and put a new spirit within  
hid with Christ in God. you: and I will take away

*1 Jn 4, 13* In this we know that we the stony heart out of your  
abide in Him, and He in us; flesh, and will give you a  
because He hath given us of heart of flesh.

*Jn 3, 3, 5-* Jesus answered and said to He is a Jew that is one *Ro 2, 29*  
him: Amen, amen I say to inwardly; and the circum-  
thee, unless a man be born- cision is that of the heart, in  
again, he cannot see the the spirit, not in the letter:  
Kingdom of God.—Amen, whose praise is not of men,  
amen I say to thee, unless a but of God.

man be born again of water For in Christ Jesus neither *Ga 6, 15*  
and the Holy Ghost, he can- circumcision availeth any-  
thing, nor uncircumcision



- but a new creature.
- 2 C 5, 17 If then any be in Christ a new creature : the old things are passed away, behold all things are made new.
- Ep 4, 21-24 If so be that you have heard Him, and have been taught in Him, as the truth is in Jesus.—To put off, according to former conversation, the old man, who is corrupted according to the desire of error.—And be renewed in the spirit of your mind :—And put on the new man, who according to God, is created in justice, and holiness of truth.
- 1 C 15, 47, 49 The first man was of the earth, earthly : the second Man from Heaven, Heavenly.—As we have borne the image of the earthly, let us bear also the Image of the Heavenly.
- C 13, 1, 9-11 If you be risen with Christ, seek the things that are above ; where Christ is sitting at the right hand of God :—Stripping yourselves of the old man with his deeds, —And putting on the new, him who is renewed unto knowledge, according to the image of Him that created him.—Where there is neither Gentile nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, barbarian nor Scythian, bond nor free : but Christ is all, and in all.
- Jn 14, 19-20 Yet a little while : and the world seeth Me no more. But you see Me : because I live, and you shall live.—In that day you shall know that I am in My Father, and you in Me and I in you.
- Ro 8, 1-2, 9-10 There is now therefore no condemnation to them that are in Jesus Christ, who walk not according to the flesh.—For the law of the Spirit of Life, in Christ Jesus, hath delivered me from the law of sin and of death.—Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of His.—And if Christ be in you ; the body indeed is dead because of sin, but the spirit liveth because of justification.
- That I may live to God : Ga 2, 19-20 with Christ I am nailed to the Cross.—And I live, now not I : but Christ liveth in me. And that I live now in the flesh : I live in the faith of the Son of God, Who loved me, and delivered Himself for me.
- Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall live also together with Christ. Ro 6, 8
- A faithful saying. For if 2 Ti 2, 11 we be dead with Him, we shall live also with Him.
- As therefore you have C 12, 6-7, received Jesus Christ the Lord, walk ye in Him.—Rooted and built up in Him, and confirmed in the faith, as also you have learned, abounding in Him in thanksgiving.
- He, who is joined to the 1 C 6, 17 Lord, is one spirit.
- Know you not your own 2 C 13, 5 selves, that Jesus Christ is in you ? unless perhaps you be reprobates.
- The Mystery, which hath C 11, 26-27 been hidden from ages and generations, but now is made manifest to His Saints,—To whom God would make known the riches of the glory of this Mystery among the Gentiles, which is Christ,

- in you the hope of glory.  
*Cl* 3, 4 When Christ shall appear,  
 Who is your life; then shall  
 you also appear with Him in  
 glory.  
*1 Pt* 3, 15 Sanctify the Lord Christ  
 in your hearts.  
*1 Jn* 4, 9 By this hath the charity of  
 God appeared towards us,  
 because God hath sent His  
 Only Begotten Son into the  
 world, that we may live by  
 Him.  
 Whosoever keepeth His *1 Jn* 2, 5-6  
 Word, the charity of God is  
 truly perfect in him; and by  
 this we know that we are in  
 Him.—He that saith he  
 abideth in Him ought him-  
 self also to walk, even as He  
 walked.  
 Lay hold on Eternal Life. *1 Ti* 6, 12

## 6.—NAMES AND TYPES OF BAPTISM.

- |                   |   |                                   |                    |
|-------------------|---|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Ro</i> 6, 4    | 1. Baptism.                                   | 19. Resurrection by Faith.        | <i>Cl</i> 2, 12    |
| <i>Mt</i> 3, 11   | 2. Baptism of the Holy Ghost.                 | 20. A Seal of Faith.              | <i>Ro</i> 4, 11    |
| <i>Mt</i> 3, 11   | 3. Baptism of Fire.                           | 21. A New Birth.                  | <i>Jn</i> 1, 13    |
| <i>Jn</i> 3, 5    | 4. Baptism of Water.                          | 22. Newness of Life.              | <i>Ro</i> 6, 5     |
| <i>Ep</i> 5, 28   | 5. The Laver of Water.                        | 23. Ephpheta.                     | <i>Mk</i> 7, 34    |
| <i>Ti</i> 3, 5    | 6. The Laver of Regeneration.                 | 24. Illumination.                 | <i>He</i> 10, 32   |
| <i>Jn</i> 3, 5    | 7. The Sacrament of Regeneration.             | 25. A Planting.                   | <i>Ro</i> 6, 5     |
| <i>1 Pt</i> 3, 21 | 8. Cleansing Waters                           | 26. A Putting on Christ.          | <i>Gal</i> 3, 27   |
| <i>Ex</i> 36, 25  | 9. Clean Water.                               | 27. Grafting into the Olive-Tree. | <i>Ro</i> 11, 24   |
| <i>Za</i> 13, 1   | 10. A Fountain for the washing of the sinner. | 28. The Cross of Christ.          | <i>1 Cl</i> 1, 17  |
| <i>Ex</i> 47, 1   | 11. Holy Waters issuing from the Sanctuary.   | 29. Fellowship with Christ.       | <i>1 Jn</i> 1, 3   |
| <i>4 K</i> 5, 10  | 12. The Waters of the Jordan.                 | 30. Circumcision of the heart.    | <i>Ro</i> 2, 29    |
| <i>Jn</i> 9, 7    | 13. The Pool of Siloe.                        | 31. Signed by the Holy Ghost.     | <i>Ep</i> 1, 13    |
| <i>Jn</i> 5, 2    | 14. The Sheep-pond.                           | 32. The Door into the Church.     | <i>1 Cl</i> 12, 13 |
| <i>Ac</i> 2, 38   | 15. Remission of Sins.                        | 33. A Perpetual Covenant.         | <i>Gal</i> 17, 13  |
| <i>1 Cl</i> 5, 7  | 16. Purgation.                                | 34. The White Garment.            | <i>Ap</i> 3, 5     |
| <i>Ro</i> 6, 4    | 17. A Burial.                                 | 35. The Wedding Garment.          | <i>Mt</i> 22, 11   |
| <i>Ep</i> 3, 17   | 18. Faith dwelling in us.                     | 36. Supernal Vocation.            | <i>Ph</i> 3, 14    |
|                   |   | 37. The Key of Heaven.            | <i>Mk</i> 1, 10    |
|                   |   | 38. The Gate of Heaven.           | <i>Jn</i> 3, 5     |

## 7.—THE CEREMONIES OF BAPTISM.

1. THE BREATHING.  
*Ge* 2, 7 The Lord God formed man of the slime of the earth: and breathed into his face the breath of life, and man became a living soul.  
 Say to the Spirit: Thus saith the Lord God: Come, Spirit, from the four winds, and blow upon these slain, and let them live again.  
 He breathed on them. *Jn* 20, 22

## 2. THE SIGN OF THE CROSS.

*Ex* 9, 4 Mark **THAU\*** upon the foreheads.

*Ap* 7, 2 The sign of the 'Living God.

*Gal* 6, 14 God forbid that I should glory, save in the Cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by Whom the world is crucified to me, and I to the world.

## 3. THE SALT.

*Le* 2, 13 Whatsoever sacrifice thou offerest thou shalt season it with salt, neither shalt thou take away the salt of the Covenant of thy God from thy sacrifice. In all thy oblations thou shalt offer salt.

*Mk* 9, 48 Every one shall be salted with fire: and every victim shall be salted with salt.

*Mk* 9, 49 Have salt in you.

## 4. EXORCISMS.

*Mk* 3, 15 He gave them power to cast out devils.

*Mt* 10, 1 He gave them power over unclean spirits, to cast them out.

*Lk* 9, 1 He gave them power and authority over all devils.

*Mk* 7, 32-35 They bring to Him one deaf and dumb: and they besought Him that He would lay His hand upon him.—And taking him from the multitude apart, He put His fingers into his ears, and spitting, He touched his tongue.—And looking up to Heaven, He groaned, and said to him: Ephpheta, which

is, Be thou opened.—And immediately his ears were opened, and the string of his tongue was loosed, and he spoke right.

## 5. HOLY OIL OF CHRISM.

The Lord spoke to Moses, *Ex* 30, 22-33

—Saying: Take spices, of principal and chosen myrrh five hundred sicles, and of cinnamon half so much, that is, two hundred and fifty sicles, of calamus in like manner two hundred and fifty.—And of cassia five hundred sicles by the weight of the Sanctuary, of oil of olives the measure hin.—And thou shalt make the Holy Oil of Unction, an ointment compounded after the art of the perfumer.—And therewith thou shalt anoint the Tabernacle of the Testimony, and the Ark of the Testament,—And the table with the vessels thereof, the candlestick and furniture thereof, the Altars of incense,—And of holocaust, and all the furniture that belongeth to the service of them,—And thou shalt sanctify all, and they shall be most holy: he that shall touch them shall be sanctified.—Thou shalt anoint Aaron and his sons, and shalt sanctify them, that they may do the office of Priesthood unto Me.—And thou shalt say to the children of Israel: This Oil of Unction shall be

\* The last letter of the Hebrew alphabet was in the form of the letter *Thau* (T), which in the ancient Hebrew character was, according to St. Jerome and others, in the form of a cross. This is the distinguishing mark of "The Confraternity of the Divine Expiation."

holy unto me throughout your generations.—The flesh of man shall not be anointed therewith, and you shall make none other of the same composition, because it is sanctified, and shall be holy unto you.—What man soever shall compound such, and shall give thereof to a stranger, he shall be cut off from his people.

*Le* 40, 11 Thou shalt consecrate all with the Oil of Unction that they may be most holy.

*Je* 8, 22 Is there no balm in Galaad? or is there no Physician there? Why then is not the wound of the daughter of My people closed?

*Ac* 10, 38 God anointed Him with the Holy Ghost.

*1 Jn* 2, 20 You have the Unction from the Holy One, and know all things.

#### 6. THE WHITE GARMENT.

*Ecl* 9, 8 At all times let thy garments be white.

*Ap* 3, 4-6 Thou hast a few names in Sardis, which have not defiled their garments; and they shall walk with Me in white, because they are worthy.—He that shall overcome, shall thus be clothed in white garments, and I will not blot out his name out of the Book of Life, and I will confess his name before My Father, and before His Angels.—He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith to the Churches.

*Mt* 22, 12-13 The King said to him: Friend, how comest thou hither not having a wedding garment? But he was

silent.—Then the King said to the waiters: Bind his hands and feet, and cast him into the exterior darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

#### 7. THE LIGHTED TORCH.

You are the light of the world. A city seated on a mountain cannot be hid.—*Mt* 5, 1-16

Neither do men light a candle and put it under a bushel, but upon a candlestick, that it may shine to all that are in the house.—So let your light shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father Who is in Heaven.

Through the bowels of the mercy of our God, in which the Orient, from on High, hath visited us.—To enlighten them that sit in darkness, and in the shadow of death: to direct their feet into the way of peace. *Lut* 1, 78-79

Jesus answered: Are there not twelve hours of the day? *Jn* 11, 9-10

If a man walk in the day, he seeth the light of this world:—But if he walk in the night he stumbleth, because the light is not in him.

Jesus spoke to them, saying: I am Light of the world: he that followeth Me, walketh not in darkness, but shall have the Light of life. *Jn* 8, 12

Jesus said to them: Yet a little while, the Light is among you. Walk whilst you have the Light, that the darkness overtake you not. And he that walketh in darkness knoweth not whither he goeth.—Whilst you have the Light, believe in the Light, *Jn* 12, 35-36

- that you may be the children of Light.
- 2 K 23, 4 [He shall be] as the light of the morning when the sun riseth, shining in the morning without clouds.
- Ecl 11, 7 The light is sweet, and it is delightful for the eyes to see the sun.
- Jn 5, 35 He was a burning and a shining light, and you were willing for a time to rejoice in his light.
- 1 T 5, 5 You are all the children of Light, and children of the day: we are not of the night nor of darkness.
- I the Lord have called thee in justice, and taken thee by the hand, and preserved thee. And I have given thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles.—That thou mightest open the eyes of the blind, and bring forth the prisoner out of prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison-house.
- God is Light. 1 Jn 1, 5

## 8.—NAMES AND TITLES OF THE BAPTISED.

- |            |                                       |   |           |
|------------|---------------------------------------|---|-----------|
| Ac 11, 26  | 1. Christians.                        | 18. Fellow-citizens with the Saints.                | Ep 2, 19  |
| 2 C 13, 5  | 2. Christ-bearers.                    | 19. Domestics of God.                               | Ep 2, 19  |
| He 2, 11   | 3. Brethren of Christ.                | 20. Living Stones.                                  | 1 Pt 2, 5 |
| He 3, 14   | 4. Partakers of Christ.               | 21. A New Creature.                                 | 2 C 5, 17 |
| Ep 5, 30   | 5. Members of the Body of Christ.     | 22. A Holy Priesthood.                              | 1 Pt 2, 5 |
| 1 Jn 5, 1  | 6. The Born of God.                   | 23. A Chosen Generation.                            | 1 Pt 2, 9 |
| 1 Jn 3, 10 | 7. Children of God.                   | 24. A Kingly Priesthood.                            | 1 Pt 2, 9 |
| 1 T 5, 5   | 8. Children of Light.                 | 25. A Holy Nation.                                  | 1 Pt 2, 9 |
| 1 T 5, 5   | 9. Children of the Day.               | 26. A Purchased People.                             | 1 Pt 2, 9 |
| Ga 4, 28   | 10. Children of Promise.              | 27. A Spiritual House.                              | 1 Pt 2, 5 |
| 1 Jn 3, 1  | 11. Sons of God.                      | 28. The Habitation of God.                          | Ep 2, 22  |
| Ga 4, 5    | 12. Adopted Sons of God.              | 29. The Temple of God.                              | 1 C 3, 17 |
| Ep 4, 24   | 13. The New Man.                      | 30. The Temple of the Holy Ghost.                   | 1 C 6, 19 |
| 2 Pt 1, 4  | 14. Partakers of the Divine Nature.   | 31. The Temple of the Living God.                   | 2 C 6, 16 |
| He 3, 1    | 15. Partakers of a Heavenly Vocation. | 32. My Sons and Daughters, saith the Lord Almighty. | 2 C 6, 18 |
| 1 Pt 3, 22 | 16. Heirs of Life Everlasting.        | 33. Children of the Kingdom.                        |           |
| Ac 9, 32   | 17. Saints.                           |   |           |

## 9.—PSALMS SAID IN THE BAPTISM OF ADULTS.\*

1.  
Ps 8, 1-10 O Lord our Lord, how admirable is Thy Name in the whole earth!  
For Thy magnificence is elevated above the heavens.  
Out of the mouth of infants and of sucklings Thou hast perfected praise, because of Thy enemies, that Thou

\* See "Rituaire Romanum."

mayst destroy the enemy and the avenger.

For I will behold Thy heavens, the works of Thy fingers: the moon and the stars which Thou hast founded.

What is man that Thou art mindful of him? or the son of man that Thou visitest him?

Thou hast made him a little less than the Angels, Thou hast crowned him with glory and honour:

And hast set him over the works of Thy hands.

Thou hast subjected all things under his feet, all sheep and oxen: moreover the beasts also of the fields.

The birds of the air, and the fishes of the sea, that pass through the paths of the sea.

O Lord our Lord, how admirable is Thy Name in all the earth!

## II.

Ps 28, 1-10

Bring to the Lord, O ye children of God: bring to the Lord the offspring of rams.

Bring to the Lord glory and honour: bring to the Lord glory to His Name: adore ye the Lord in His Holy Court.

The voice of the Lord is upon the waters: the God of Majesty hath thundered, the Lord upon many waters.

The voice of the Lord is in power; the voice of the Lord in magnificence.

The voice of the Lord breaketh the cedars: yea, the Lord shall break the cedars of Libanus.

And shall reduce them to pieces, as a calf of Libanus,

and as the beloved son of unicorns.

The voice of the Lord divideth the flame of fire:

The voice of the Lord shaketh the desert; and the Lord shall shake the desert of Cades.

The voice of the Lord prepareth the stags: and He will discover the thick woods: and in His Temple all shall speak His Glory.

The Lord maketh the flood to dwell: and the Lord shall sit King for ever. The Lord will give strength to His people: the Lord will bless His people with peace.

## III.

As the hart panteth after the fountains of water: so my soul panteth after Thee, O God. Ps 41, 1-12

My soul hath thirsted after the strong Living God; when shall I come and appear before the Face of God?

My tears have been my bread day and night, whilst it is said to me daily: Where is thy God?

These things I remembered and poured out my soul in me: for I shall go over into the place of the Wonderful Tabernacle, even to the House of God: with the voice of joy and praise; the noise of one feasting.

Why art thou sad, O my soul? and why dost thou trouble me? Hope in God, for I will still give praise to Him: the salvation of my countenance,

And my God. My soul is troubled within myself; therefore will I remem-

ber Thee from the land of Jordan and Hermoniim, from the little hill.

Deep calleth on deep, at the noise of Thy flood-gates. All Thy heights and Thy billows have passed over me.

In the day time the Lord hath commanded His mercy; and a canticle to Him in the night. With me is prayer to the God of my life,

I will say to God: Thou art My Support. Why hast Thou forgotten me?

and why go I mourning, whilst my enemy afflicteth me?

Whilst my bones are broken, my enemies who trouble me have reproached me. Whilst they say to me day by day: Where is thy God?

Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why dost thou disquiet me? Hope thou in God, for I will still give praise to Him; the salvation of my countenance, and my God.

# 10.—SACRAMENT OF CONFIRMATION. DISPOSITIONS FOR RECEIVING IT.

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| <p><i>Ac</i> 8, 14-17 When the Apostles, who were in Jerusalem, had heard that Samaria had received the Word of God; they sent unto them Peter and John.—Who when they were come, prayed for them that they might receive the Holy Ghost.—For He was not yet come upon any of them: but they were only baptised in the Name of the Lord Jesus.—Then they laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost.</p> <p><i>Ac</i> 19, 6 When Paul had imposed his hands on them, the Holy Ghost came upon them.</p> <p>14, 16 I will ask the Father, and He shall give you another Paraclete, that He may abide with you for ever.</p> <p>2 <i>C</i> 1, 21-22 He that confirmeth us with you in Christ, and that hath anointed us, is God,—Who also hath given the pledge of the Spirit in our hearts.</p> <p><i>Ep</i> 1, 13 Believing in Christ you were signed with the Holy</p> | <p>Spirit of promise.</p> <p>I will pour out of My Spirit upon all flesh.</p> <p>This He said of the Spirit which they should receive who believed in Him.</p> <p>Be you perfect as also your Heavenly Father is perfect.</p> <p>Who shall know Thy thought, except Thou give wisdom, and send Thy Holy Spirit from above?</p> <p>Your Father from Heaven will give the Good Spirit to them that ask Him.</p> <p>The Holy Spirit of wisdom will not enter into a malicious soul, nor dwell in a body subject to sins.</p> <p>Thou hast anointed my head with oil.</p> <p>God, thy God hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness.</p> <p>The Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him.</p> <p>1. The Spirit of Wisdom,</p> <p>2. And of Understanding,</p> | <p><i>Ac</i> 2, 17</p> <p><i>Jn</i> 7, 39</p> <p><i>Mt</i> 5, 48</p> <p><i>W</i> 9, 17</p> <p><i>Lu</i> 11, 13</p> <p><i>W</i> 1, 4</p> <p><i>P</i> 22, 5</p> <p><i>P</i> 24, 8</p> <p><i>Is</i> 11, 2</p> |
|---|---|--|

	3. The Spirit of Coun- sel,	3. Peace,
	4. And of Fortitude,	4. Patience,
	5. The Spirit of Know- ledge,	5. Benignity,
	6. And of Godliness.	6. Goodness,
Is 11, 3	7. And the Spirit of the Fear of the Lord.	7. Longanimity,
		8. Mildness,
		9. Faith,
		10. Modesty,
Gal 5, 22-	The Fruit of the Spirit	11. Continency,
23 is		12. Chastity.
	1. Charity,	Against such there is no law.
	2. Joy,	

## THE HOLY EUCHARIST.

OUR Blessed Lord said to His Disciples in His discourse after the Last Supper, "As the Father hath loved Me, so have I loved you."\* But the Father loves His Only Begotten Son with an *infinite* love; can Jesus *thus* love us? Yet we may not question; we may not ask for proof; He, the Eternal Truth, has said it. Nevertheless we *have* a proof, and a proof which will remain till the end of time, for, just before speaking these ever-memorable words, Jesus had instituted the adorable Sacrament of the Altar.

Love does much, gives much, suffers much. If, then, the love be infinite there will be infinite works, infinite gifts, and infinite sufferings. But in the ever Blessed Sacrament of the Altar the works of Jesus truly present there are infinite, His gifts are infinite, His sufferings are infinite.

(1) His *works* are infinite. He does there what God alone can do: He works miracles. The accidents of bread and wine remain without the subjects on which they naturally depend; a human body is there without dimension, weight, or mass; it is multiplied indefinitely without losing its unity. These and many other miracles are worked by the few words of Consecration.

But, after all, it is a small thing for the great God to suspend, and change, and overcome the laws of Nature. But what if He overcome Himself? This,



too, Jesus does in the Holy Sacrament. If, in the words of the Apostle, "He emptied Himself," when He came in "the form of a servant," how much more when He comes under the appearance of bread? During His life on earth Jesus was "the comeliest of the sons of men," but during the days of His bitter Passion He was "as a worm and no man;" and the Blessed Eucharist is a Memorial of all the ignominy of the Passion.

Dear Lord, Thou hast worked many miracles in this Adorable Sacrament. Work yet one more, the most difficult of all. Bend our stubborn wills, warm our cold hearts, take away from us our "hearts of stone" and give us "hearts of flesh," that we may never cease to love Thee, Who hast emptied Thyself of all Thy greatness and Thy glory for love of us.

(2) His *gifts* are infinite. The Incarnation and Redemption were indeed infinite gifts of God to man; but these were gifts of God the Father. "God so loved the world that He gave His Only-Begotten Son." God the Son also would give us an infinite gift, so He gave us the Blessed Eucharist; and, speaking in our poor human language, the gift of the Son was the greater gift. The Redemption was *necessary*; what salvation was there for man without it? But the Blessed Eucharist is the offering of the *superabundant* love of the Son. The Incarnation gave us the Humanity of our Lord *for a time*. But the Blessed Eucharist gives that Sacred Humanity to us *till the last day of the world*. Speaking of this Great Gift, St. Augustine says: "I dare to say that God, though He be omnipotent, could not give us more; though He be all wise, knows not how to give more; though He be all rich, has not more to give."

Such is the Gift of Jesus in the Blessed Sacrament. And what does He ask in return? Body for Body, soul for Soul, heart for Heart; that, as He gives Himself to us entirely and without reserve, we should so give ourselves to Him. He lets nothing stand between Him and us; neither the laws of Nature, nor His own dignity. Let us in our turn

X X

allow nothing to stand between us and Him. Jesus has been generous with us. Let us be generous with Him. Let us not be like Saul, who was willing to sacrifice to God the least valuable of his spoils, while he kept back the best for himself. But from first to last, in small things and in great, let us be all for Jesus. "To whom much is given, from him much shall be expected."

(3) His *sufferings* are infinite. Jesus is present under the appearance of bread. But bread, ordinary and common though it be, is, in its elements, a creature of God, and thus is, in a sense, a blessed thing, even in a wide sense, a sacrament, for all creatures are symbols or signs of the invisible power of God. But there is one thing in the world in which God can have no part or share ; one thing on which God, Who is Love, must look with infinite loathing and abhorrence, and that is sin. Jesus the Lamb of God, Jesus the unpolluted, Jesus of whom Isaias could speak only after an Angel had hallowed his lips with a burning coal, in His stupendous and ineffable love of us allows Himself in this Holy Sacrament to come into contact with sin and with sinners. He had said indeed that pearls were not to be cast before swine, but it would seem that His love for us was greater than His wisdom. Think of the countless sacrileges which have been committed from that first sacrilege of Judas till the present day. Such have been the infinite sufferings of Jesus in the Adorable Sacrament. And do we sympathise with Him, suffer with Him, make reparation for the outrages committed against Him, by our own increase of devotion? Alas! no. We show very little appreciation of the sufferings of Jesus. We seem scarcely conscious of His Presence. The Baptist might well say to us, as he said to the crowds by the Jordan, "There hath stood One in the midst of you Whom *you know not*." If we knew Jesus, surely we should love Him ; and if we loved Him, our love would show itself, for love is impatient of secrecy ; it yearns to manifest itself. We should be more frequent in our visits

to the Altar. We should be more reverent in our attitude of body and mind while in that Sacred Presence. We should not leave ourselves open to the charge of want of faith which unbelievers are so fond of bringing against us. Our coldness, our want of reverence, are not among the least of the sufferings to which our Master and Friend submits Himself in the Holy Sacrament of the Altar.\*

---

AN ACT OF EXPIATION FOR THE SIN OF DENYING OUR LORD  
IN THE BLESSED SACRAMENT.†

O LORD JESUS, Who of old time didst dwell upon the thousand Altars of this Isle of Saints praised, adored, and worshipped by the hearts of Thy faithful people, look mercifully on Thy servants prostrate before Thee, desiring to make an act of expiation for our own sins, and those of our fathers. Our fathers, alas! O Lord, broke open Thy Resting-Place, extinguished the lights of Thy Sanctuary, desecrated Thy Temple, spoiled Thee of Thy inheritance, and drove Thee forth from the House in which Thou didst love to dwell. Look down mercifully upon us, O Lord, and let our tears and supplications make good the loss of reverence, faith, and adoration, which are no more. For Jerusalem is in ruins. Thy Presence is no more in her; now gross darkness dwells where was the brightness of Thy glory. But come back, O Lord, once more into the midst of Thine own. Build up Jerusalem again in glory. Dwell in the midst of us in Thy great Sacrament of Love. O Lord Christ of our hearts, to Thee be honour and glory and giving of thanks for evermore. Amen.

---

\* Every Institution that undertakes as its chief work to make reparation to Jesus in the Blessed Sacrament for the outrages committed against Him, deserves the most earnest sympathy and fullest support of all Catholics. Such an Institution is the Brotherhood of the Divine Expiation which has been established at 28 Beaufort Street, London, S.W. The following is one of the rules of the Brotherhood: "Inasmuch as the Most Holy Sacrament of the Altar is the source and centre of our daily life, all our actions of obedience, penance, expiation, and reparation are offered to our Divine Lord present in the Sacrament of His Love. When the numbers in our House shall be sufficiently multiplied, there will be Perpetual Adoration of the Most Holy Sacrament, either exposed or in the Tabernacle. In the meanwhile the Adoration will be measured in frequency and duration by the number of our members or associates." (*Sect. 1, Rule 8, of the Constitutions of the Brotherhood of the Divine Expiation.*)

† A Prayer of the Brotherhood.

THE SACRAMENT  
OF  
THE HOLY EUCHARIST,  
INSTITUTED BY  
Our Blessed Lord before His Passion and Death,  
IN THE  
CŒNACULUM AT JERUSALEM,  
33 A.D.

---

I.

**St. Matthew's account of this Divine Institution.**

**Mt26,** Whilst they were at Supper, Jesus took  
26-28 bread, and blessed, and broke: and gave  
to His Disciples, and said: Take ye, and  
eat: **This is My Body.** — And taking  
the Chalice He gave thanks: and gave  
to them, saying: Drink ye all of this.—  
**For This is My Blood** of the New Testa-  
ment which shall be shed for many unto  
remission of sins.

II.

**St. Mark's account.**

**Mk14,** Whilst they were eating, Jesus took  
22-24 bread: and blessing broke, and gave to  
them, and said: Take ye, **This is My**  
**Body.**—And having taken the Chalice,

giving thanks He gave it to them. And they all drank of it.—And He said to them: **This is My Blood** of the New Testament, which shall be shed for many.

## III.

*Mt. Luke's account.*

Taking bread, He gave thanks, and *Lu 22*, brake, and gave to them, saying: **This** *19-20* **is My Body** which is given for you. Do this for a commemoration of Me.—In like manner the Chalice also, after He had supped, saying: **This is the Chalice, the New Testament in My Blood**, which shall be shed for you.

## IV.

*Mt. Paul's account.*

The Lord Jesus, the same night in *1Co 11*, which He was betrayed, took bread.— *23-26* And giving thanks, broke, and said: Take ye and eat: **This is My Body** which shall be delivered for you: this do for the commemoration of Me.—In like manner also the Chalice, after He had supped, saying: **This Chalice is the New Testament in My Blood**: this do ye, as often as you shall drink, for the commemoration of Me.—For as often as you shall eat this Bread, and drink the Chalice, you shall show the Death of the Lord until He come.

## 2.—THE BLESSED SACRAMENT FORESHADOWED AND DECLARED BY THE PROPHETS.

- Ge 2, 6** The Lord God brought forth of the ground the Tree of Life in the midst of Paradise.
- Ge 14, 18-19** Melchisedech the king of Salem, bringing forth bread and wine, for he was the Priest of the Most High God. — Blessed him and said : Blessed be Abram by the Most High God, Who created heaven and earth.
- He 9, 13-14** If the blood of goats and of oxen, and the ashes of an heifer being sprinkled, sanctify such as are defiled, to the cleansing of the flesh :—How much more shall the Blood of Christ, Who by the Holy Ghost offered Himself unspotted unto God, cleanse our conscience from dead works to serve the Living God ?
- Ex 16, 13-15** In the morning a dew lay round about the camp.—And when it had covered the face of the earth it appeared in the wilderness small, and as it were beaten with a pestle, like unto the hoar-frost on the ground.—And when the children of Israel saw it, they said one to another : Manhu ! which signifieth : What is this ! for they knew not what it was. And Moses said to them : This is the Bread which the Lord hath given you to eat.
- Je 15, 20** I am with thee to save thee, and to deliver thee, saith the Lord.
- Je 31, 25** I have inebriated the weary soul : and I have filled every hungry soul.
- Thou shalt make a table of setim wood,—And thou shalt overlay it with pure gold : and thou shalt make to it a golden ledge round about.—And thou shalt set upon the Table Loaves of Proposition in My sight always.
- And Elias went forward one day's journey into the desert. And when he was there and sat under a juniper-tree, he requested for his soul that he might die, and said : It is enough for me, Lord, take away my soul :—And he cast himself down and slept in the shadow of the juniper-tree : and behold an Angel of the Lord touched him, and said to him : Arise and eat.—He looked, and behold there was at his head a hearth-cake, and a vessel of water : and he ate and drank and he fell asleep again.—And the Angel of the Lord came again the second time and touched him, and said to him : Arise, eat, for thou hast yet a great way to go.—And he arose, and ate, and drank, and walked in the strength of that food forty days and forty nights, unto the Mount of God, Horeb.
- The Altar shall be sanctified by My Glory.—I will sanctify also the Tabernacle of the Testimony with the Altar, and Aaron with his sons, to do the office of Priesthood unto Me.—And I will dwell in the midst of the children of Israel and
- Ex 25, 23-24, 30*  
*3 K 19, 4-8*  
*Ex 29, 45*  
*46*

- will be their God : — And they shall know that I am the Lord their God, Who have brought them out of the land of Egypt, that I might abide among them, I the Lord their God.
- Is 57, 15* Thus saith the High and the Eminent that inhabiteth Eternity : and His Name is Holy, Who dwelleth in the High and Holy Place, and with a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite.
- Ag 2, 8-10* I will move all nations : and THE DESIRED OF ALL NATIONS SHALL COME : and I will fill this House with Glory : saith the Lord of Hosts.—The silver is Mine, and the gold is Mine, saith the Lord of Hosts.—Great shall be the glory of this last House more than of the first, saith the Lord of Hosts : and in this Place I will give peace, saith the Lord of Hosts.
- 2 P 7, 15-16* My eyes shall be open, and My ears attentive to the prayer of him that shall pray in this Place.—For I have chosen, and have sanctified this Place, that My Name may be there for ever, and My eyes and My heart may remain there perpetually.
- Is 10, 1* The Law having a shadow of the good things to come, not the very image of the things : can never make the comers thereunto perfect
- 1 C 10, 11* All these things happened to them in figure.
- 1 C 10, 3* They did all eat the same Spiritual Food.
- W 16, 20* Thou didst feed Thy people with the Food of Angels,
- and gavest them Bread from Heaven prepared without labour ; having in it all that is delicious, and the sweetness of every taste.
- Wisdom hath built herself a House, she hath hewn her out seven pillars.—She hath slain her victims, mingled her wine, and set forth her Table.
- Come, eat My Bread, and drink the Wine which I have mingled for you.
- Thou hast prepared a Table before me, against them that afflict me.
- I will take the Chalice of Salvation ; and I will call upon the Name of the Lord.
- Verily Thou art a Hidden God, the God of Israel, the Saviour.
- They shall worship Thee with their faces towards the earth.
- I Myself that spoke, behold I am here,
- Seek ye the Lord while He may be found : call upon Him while He is near.
- I will be found by you, saith the Lord.
- I will be their God, and they shall be My people.
- Arise and let us go up to Sion to the Lord our God.
- A Throne shall be prepared in Mercy. And One shall sit upon it in truth in the Tabernacle of David.
- The Bread of the corn of the land shall be most plentiful.
- Will you not fear Me, saith the Lord, and will you not repent at My Presence ?
- In those days, saith the Lord, they shall say no more : The Ark of the
- Pv 9, 1-2*
- Pv 9, 5*
- Ps 22, 5*
- Ps 115, 13*
- Is 45, 16*
- Is 49, 23*
- Is 52, 6*
- Is 55, 6*
- Je 29, 14*
- Je 31, 33*
- Je 31, 6*
- Is 16, 5*
- Is 30, 23*
- Je 5, 22*
- Je 3, 16-17*

	Covenant of the Lord. Neither shall it come upon the heart, neither shall they remember it, neither shall it be visited, neither shall that be done any more.—At that time Jerusalem shall be called the Throne of the Lord.	As the girdle sticketh close to the loins of a man, so have I brought close to Me all the House of Israel that they might be My people.	<i>Je 13, 11</i>
<i>Je 8, 19</i>	Is not the Lord in Sion, or is not her King in her ?	Though I should walk in the midst of the shadow of death, I will fear no evils for Thou art with me.	<i>Ps 22, 4</i>
<i>Je 14, 8</i>	O Expectation of Israel, the Saviour thereof in time of trouble : why wilt Thou be as a stranger in the land, and as a wayfaring man turning in to lodge ?	The Lord of Hosts shall make unto all people in this mountain, a feast of fat things full of marrow ; of Wine purified from the lees.	<i>Is 25, 6</i>
<i>Je 30, 11</i>	I am with thee, saith the Lord, to save thee.	Thou hast anointed my head with oil ; and my Chalice which inebriateth me, how goodly is it !	<i>Ps 22, 5</i>
<i>Je 11, 19</i>	Let us put wood on His Bread, and cut Him off from the land of the living, and let His Name be remembered no more. ( <i>See note p. 94.</i> )	What is the good thing of Him, and what is His Beautiful Thing, but the Corn of the Elect, and Wine springing forth virgins ?	<i>Za 9, 17</i>

### 3.—THE BLESSED SACRAMENT PROMISED BY OUR LORD ; HIS SACRED TEACHING CONCERNING IT.

*		
<i>Je 6, 26-32</i>	Amen, amen, I say to you, you seek Me not because you have seen miracles, but because you did eat of the loaves, and were filled.—Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for That which endureth unto Life Everlasting, which the Son of man will give you. For Him hath God, the Father, sealed.—They said therefore unto Him : What shall we do that we may work the works of God ?—Jesus answered, and said to them : This is the work of God, that you believe in Him Whom He hath sent.—They said therefore to Him : What sign therefore dost Thou show that we may see,	and may believe Thee ? what dost Thou work ? — Our fathers did eat manna in the desert as it is written : He gave them bread from Heaven to eat.—Then Jesus said to them : Amen, amen, I say to you : Moses gave you not bread from Heaven, but My Father giveth you the True Bread from Heaven.
		*
		For the Bread of God is that which cometh down from Heaven, and giveth life to the world.—They said therefore unto Him : Lord, give us always this Bread.—And Jesus said to them : I am the Bread of Life, he that cometh to Me shall not



hunger; and he that believeth in Me, shall never thirst. --But I said unto you, that you also have seen Me, and you believe not.—All that the Father giveth to Me shall come to Me; and him that cometh to Me, I will not cast out:—Because I came down from Heaven, not to do My Own will, but the will of Him that sent Me.—Now this is the will of the Father Who sent Me: that of all that He hath given Me, I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again in the last day.

\*

*Jn 6, 40-46* And this is the will of My Father that sent Me: that every one who seeth the Son, and believeth in Him, may have Life Everlasting, and I will raise him up in the last day.—The Jews therefore murmured at Him, because He had said, I am the Living Bread which came down from Heaven.—And they said: Is not this Jesus the son of Joseph, Whose Father and Mother we know? How then saith He, I came down from Heaven?—Jesus therefore answered and said to them: Murmur not among yourselves.—No man can come to Me, except the Father, Who hath sent Me, draw him, and I will raise him up in the last day.—It is written in the Prophets: And they shall all be taught of God. Every one that hath heard of the Father, and hath learned, cometh to Me.—Not that any man hath seen the Father, but He Who

is of God, He hath seen the Father.

\*

Amen, amen, I say *Jn 6, 47-53* unto you: He that believeth in Me, hath Everlasting Life.—I am the Bread of Life.—Your fathers did eat manna in the desert, and are dead.—This is the Bread which cometh down from Heaven; that if any man eat of It, he may not die.—I am the Living Bread, which came down from Heaven.—If any man eat of this Bread, he shall live for ever: and the Bread that I will give, is My Flesh for the life of the world.—The Jews therefore strove among themselves, saying: How can this man give us His Flesh to eat?

Then Jesus said to them: *Jn 6, 54-60*

Amen, amen, I say unto you: Except you eat the Flesh of the Son of man, and drink His Blood, you shall not have life in you.—He that eateth My Flesh, and drinketh My Blood, hath Everlasting Life: and I will raise him up in the last day.—For My Flesh is meat indeed: and My Blood is drink indeed:—He that eateth My Flesh, and drinketh My Blood, abideth in Me, and I in him.—As the Living Father hath sent Me, and I live by the Father: so he that eateth Me, the same also shall live by Me.—This is the Bread that came down from Heaven. Not as your fathers did eat manna, and are dead. He that eateth this Bread shall live

for ever.—These things He said teaching in the Synagogue, in Capharnaum.

\*

*Jn* 6, 61-70 Many therefore of His disciples hearing it, said: This saying is hard, and who can hear it?—But Jesus knowing in Himself, that His disciples murmured at this, said to them: Doth this scandalise you?—If then you shall see the Son of man ascend up where He was before?—It is the spirit that quickeneth; the flesh profiteth nothing. The words that I have spoken to you, are spirit and life.—But there are some of you that believe not. For Jesus knew from the beginning who they were that did not believe, and who he was that would betray Him.—And He said: Therefore did I say to you, that no

man can come to Me, unless it be given him by My Father.—After this many of His disciples went back; and walked no more with Him.—Then Jesus said to the twelve: Will you also go away?—And Simon Peter answered Him: Lord, to whom shall we go? Thou hast the words of Eternal Life.—And we have believed and have known that Thou art the Christ the Son of God.

Whosoever drinketh of this water shall thirst again: but he that shall drink of the water that I will give him, shall not thirst for ever. *Jn* 4, 13

I have told you before it come to pass: that when it shall come to pass you may believe. *Jn* 14, 29

I will not leave you orphans: I will come to you. *Jn* 14, 18

I will come again and take you to Myself, that where I am, you also may be. *Jn* 14, 3

#### 4.—THE HOLY EUCHARIST CELEBRATED BY THE APOSTLES.

*1 C* 11, 27 Whosoever shall eat this Bread or drink the Chalice of the Lord unworthily, shall be guilty of the Body and of the Blood of the Lord.

*1 C* 11, 28-31 Let a man prove himself: and so let him eat of that Bread and drink of the Chalice.—For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh judgment to himself, not discerning the Body of our Lord.—Therefore there are many infirm and weak among you, and many sleep.—But if we would judge ourselves we should not be judged by the Lord.

When he had said these things, taking bread he gave thanks to God in the sight of them all, and when he had broken it, he began to eat. *Ac* 27, 35

As often as you shall eat this Bread, and drink the Chalice, you shall show the death of the Lord, until He come. *1 C* 11, 28

We, being many, are one bread, one body, all that partake of One Bread. *1 C* 10, 17

The Chalice of Benediction which we bless, is it not the Communion of the Blood of Christ? *1 C* 10, 16

## 5.—UNLEAVENED BREAD USED FOR CONSECRATION.

- Ex* 12, 18 You shall eat unleavened Bread.
- Ex* 12, 39 They made hearth cakes unleavened.
- Le* 2, 4-6 When thou offerest a sacrifice baked in the oven of flour, to wit, unleavened wafers,—If thy oblation be without leaven,—Thou shalt divide it into little pieces.
- Le* 7, 12 They shall offer unleavened wafers.
- Le* 8, 26-28 Taking out of the basket of unleavened bread a loaf without leaven and a wafer, he [Moses] put them upon the right shoulder,—Delivering all to Aaron and to his sons: who having lifted them up before the Lord,—He took them again from their hands, and burnt them upon the Altar of Holocaust, because it was the Oblation of Consecration, for a sweet odour of sacrifice to the Lord.
- Le* 23, 6 It is the Solemnity of the Unleavened Bread of the Lord.
- Nu* 6, 19-20 He shall take one unleavened cake out of the basket and one unleavened wafer.—And he shall elevate them in the sight of the Lord.
- Nu* 28, 17 Seven days shall they eat Unleavened Bread.
- Is* 5, 11-12 They ate unleavened Bread of the corn of the Land.—And the manna
- ceased after they ate the corn of the Land.
- So Gedeon went in and *Jg* 6, 19-21 boiled a kid, and made unleavened loaves of a measure of flour: and putting the flesh in a basket, and the broth of the flesh into a pot, he carried all under the oak, and presented to him.—And the Angel of the Lord said to him: Take the flesh and the unleavened loaves, and lay them upon that rock, and pour out the broth thereon. And when he had none so,—The Angel of the Lord put forth the tip of the rod, which he held in his hand, and touched the flesh and the unleavened loaves: and there arose a fire from the rock, and consumed the flesh and the unleavened loaves: And the Angel of the Lord vanished out of his sight.
- The Priests have charge *1 P* 23, 29 of the unleavened cakes.
- Purge out the old leaven, *1 C* 5, 7-8 that you may be a new paste, as you are unleavened. For Christ our Pasch, is sacrificed.—Therefore let us feast, not with the old leaven, nor with the leaven of malice and wickedness, but with the Unleavened Bread of sincerity and truth.

## 6.—CHRIST WHOLE UNDER EITHER SPECIES.

- Ro* 6, 9-10 Knowing that Christ rising alive unto God in Christ Jesus our Lord.
- Every spirit that dissolveth Jesus, is not of God: and this is Antichrist.
- He that eateth My Flesh, *1 Jn* 4, 3
- Jn* 6, 57

- and drinketh My Blood, abideth in Me, and I in him.
- Jn* 6, 58, He that eateth Me, the same also shall live by Me.—  
51 I am the Living Bread, which came down from Heaven.
- Jn* 6, 52 The Bread that I will give, is My Flesh for the life of the world. If any man eat of this Bread he shall live for ever.
- 1 C* 11, 25 This do ye, as often as you shall drink, for the commemoration of Me.
1. SHOWN BY EXAMPLE OF CHRIST AND HIS APOSTLES.
- Lu* 24, 30- It came to pass, whilst He  
31 was at table with them, He took bread, and blessed, and brake, and gave to them.—And their eyes were opened, and they knew Him: And He vanished out of their sight.
- They were persevering in the doctrine of the Apostles, and in the communication of the Breaking of Bread.
- We, being many, are one  
bread, one body, all that partake of One Bread.
- On the first day of the week, when we were assembled to break Bread.
2. SHOWN BY THE AUTHORITY AND USE OF THE CHURCH.
- Let a man so account of us as of the Ministers of Christ, and the dispensers of the Mysteries of God.
- The rest will I set in order when I come.
- When He, the Spirit of Truth, is come, He will teach you all truth.
- The Church of the Living God [is] the Pillar and Ground of the Truth.
- Ac* 2, 42  
*1 C* 10, 17  
*Ac* 20, 7  
*1 C* 4, 1  
*1 C* 11, 34  
*Jn* 16, 13  
*1 Th* 3, 15

### 7.—BENEFITS OF THE BLESSED SACRAMENT.

- Ex* 16, 17- They gathered, one more,  
18 another less. — And they measured by the measure of a gomor: neither had he more that had gathered more: nor did he find less that had provided less: but every one had gathered, according to what they were able to eat.
- Jn* 6, 52 If any man eat of this Bread, he shall live for ever.
- Jn* 6, 59 Not as your fathers did eat manna and are dead. He that eateth this Bread shall live for ever.
- Mt* 5, 6 Blessed are they that hunger and thirst after Justice: for they shall have their fill.
- Jn* 6, 35 I am the Bread of Life, he that cometh to Me shall not hunger; and he that believeth in Me shall never thirst.
- He hath made a remembrance of His Wonderful Works, being a merciful and gracious Lord: He hath given Food to them that fear Him.
- We, being many, are one  
bread, one body, all that partake of One Bread.
- The Chalice of Benediction which we bless, is it not the Communion of the Blood of Christ?
- Thou hast prepared a Table before me against them that afflict me. Thou hast anointed my head with oil, and my Chalice, which inebriateth me, how goodly is it!
- Ps* 110, 4  
*1 C* 10, 17  
*1 C* 10, 16  
*Ps* 22, 5

<i>Ge</i> 27, 29	Let him that blesseth Thee be filled with blessings.	He that shall drink of the Water that I will give him, shall not thirst for ever.	<i>Jn</i> 4, 13
<i>Le</i> 26, 9	I will look on you and make you increase.	Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for That which endureth unto Life Everlasting.	<i>Jn</i> 6, 27
<i>1 K</i> 2, 30	Whosoever shall glorify Me, him will I glorify; but they that despise Me shall be despised.	I will raise him up in the last day.	<i>Jn</i> 6, 55
<i>1 K</i> 14, 29	My eyes are enlightened because I tasted a little of this honey.	There is no condemnation to them that are in Christ.	<i>Ro</i> 8, 1
<i>3 K</i> 19, 8	He walked in the strength of that Food unto the Mount of God.	Where there is much Corn, there the strength of the ox is manifest.	<i>Pv</i> 14, 4
<i>Ps</i> 4, 10	Thou hast singularly settled me in hope.	Come ye to Him, and be enlightened.	<i>Ps</i> 33, 6
<i>Ps</i> 30, 20	O how great is the multitude of Thy Sweetness, O Lord, which Thou hast hidden for them that fear Thee!	O taste and see that the Lord is sweet.	<i>Ps</i> 33, 9
<i>Ps</i> 80, 11	Open thy mouth wide and I will fill it.	They shall be inebriated with the plenty of Thy House: and Thou shalt make them drink of the torrent of Thy Pleasure.	<i>Ps</i> 35, 9
<i>Ps</i> 83, 12	The Lord will give grace and glory.	Thou hast prepared a Table before me against them that afflict me.	<i>Ps</i> 22, 5
<i>Cal</i> 1, 3	Draw me, and we will run after Thee.	Thou didst feed Thy people with the Food of Angels, and gavest them Bread from Heaven prepared without labour; having in it all that is delicious, and the sweetness of every taste.—For Thy Sustenance showed Thy Sweetness to Thy children, and serving every man's will, it was turned to what every man liked.	<i>W</i> 16, 20-21
<i>Is</i> 6, 7	He touched my mouth and said: Thy iniquities shall be taken away.		
<i>2 M</i> 15, 16	Take this Gift from God, wherewith thou shalt overthrow the adversaries.		
<i>Lu</i> 14, 15	Blessed is he that shall eat Bread in the Kingdom of God.		
<i>Lu</i> 24, 32	Was not our heart burning within us, whilst He spoke in the way?		

#### 8.—NAMES AND TITLES OF THE BLESSED SACRAMENT AS THE FOOD OF THE SOUL.

<i>Ge</i> 2, 9	1. The Tree of Life.	7. Coin and money.	<i>Ge</i> 44, 1
<i>Ge</i> 2, 10	2. The River of the terrestrial Paradise.	8. The Hidden Wheat.	<i>Ex</i> 9, 32
<i>Ge</i> 18, 5	3. The Strength-giving Bread.	9. Universal Food.	<i>Ex</i> 12, 8
<i>Ge</i> 27, 15	4. The Royal Banquet.	10. Manna in the Desert.	<i>Ex</i> 16, 13
<i>Ge</i> 43, 31	5. Joseph's Banquet.	11. Loaves of Proposition.	<i>Ex</i> 25, 30
<i>Ge</i> 47, 22	6. Public Stores.	12. Loaves without leaven.	<i>Le</i> 7, 12

- |                   |  |   |                   |
|-------------------|--|---|-------------------|
| <i>Le</i> 24, 6   | 13. Table Most Pure.                   | 47. Hidden Things.                                  | <i>Ab</i> 6       |
| <i>Le</i> 26, 28  | 14. The Staff of Bread.                | 48. The Divine Refreshment.                         | <i>Je</i> 6, 16   |
| <i>Nu</i> 13, 24  | 15. The Cluster of Grapes.             | 49. The Fountain of the House of the Lord.          | <i>Jl</i> 3, 18   |
| <i>Jg</i> 14, 8   | 16. The Honey-comb.                    | 50. The Feeding Place of the Soul.                  | <i>Na</i> 2, 11   |
| <i>Jg</i> 12, 6   | 17. Schibboleth (Ear of Corn).         | 51. Hidden Treasures.                               | <i>Is</i> 45, 3   |
| 1 <i>K</i> 22, 13 | 18. Bread and the Sword.               | 52. Concealed Riches of Secret Places.              | <i>Is</i> 45, 3   |
| 1 <i>K</i> 14, 29 | 19. Divine Honey.                      | 53. The Holy Flesh.                                 | <i>Je</i> 11, 19  |
| 2 <i>K</i> 9, 10  | 20. Royal Table.                       | 54. Super - substantial Bread.                      | <i>MR</i> 6, 11   |
| 3 <i>K</i> 19, 5  | 21. The Food of Elias.                 | 55. The Leaven hid in Meal.                         | <i>Mt</i> 14, 33  |
| 4 <i>K</i> 4, 41  | 22. The Meal of Eliseus.               | 56. The Holy Eucharist.                             | <i>Mt</i> 26, 27  |
| 2 <i>P</i> 11, 11 | 23. Storehouse of Provisions.          | 57. Bread made Flesh by the Word's Almighty Power.  | <i>Mt</i> 26, 26  |
| 2 <i>P</i> 11, 11 | 24. Storehouse of Wine.                | 58. Good things with which the hungry are filled.   | <i>Lu</i> 1, 53   |
| <i>Es</i> 1, 3    | 25. Assuerus's Great Banquet.          | 59. Medicine of the Soul.                           | <i>Lu</i> 7, 14   |
| <i>Ps</i> 64, 14  | 26. The Corn abounding in the Vales.   | 60. Bread that is multiplied.                       | <i>Lu</i> 9, 16   |
| <i>Ps</i> 80, 17  | 27. Honey out of the rock.             | 61. Our Daily Bread.                                | <i>Lu</i> 11, 3   |
| <i>Ps</i> 80, 17  | 28. The Delight of kings.              | 62. The Great Supper.                               | <i>Lu</i> 14, 12  |
| <i>Ecl</i> 6, 6   | 29. Medicine of Life and Immortality.  | 63. Most Sweet Feast, served by ministering Angels. | <i>Lu</i> 14, 16  |
| <i>Ecl</i> 7, 35  | 30. The First Fruits.                  | 64. Word made Flesh.                                | <i>Jn</i> 1, 14   |
| <i>Ps</i> 80, 17  | 31. All Sweetness.                     | 65. The Miracle of Cana.                            | <i>Jn</i> 2, 1    |
| <i>Ps</i> 104, 16 | 32. The Support of Bread.              | 66. The Living Water.                               | <i>Jn</i> 4, 10   |
| <i>Pv</i> 9, 5    | 33. The Feast of Wisdom.               | 67. The Waters of Eternal Life.                     | <i>Jn</i> 4, 14   |
| <i>Pv</i> 14, 4   | 34. The Crib.                          | 68. The Meat that endureth unto Life Everlasting.   | <i>Jn</i> 6, 27   |
| <i>Pv</i> 23, 1   | 35. The Table of the Prince.           | 69. Bread from Heaven.                              | <i>Jn</i> 6, 32   |
| <i>Ca</i> 1, 13   | 36. The Cluster of Cyprus.             | 70. The Bread of God.                               | <i>Jn</i> 6, 33   |
| <i>Ca</i> 4, 15   | 37. Fountain of Gardens.               | 71. Living Bread coming down from Heaven.           | <i>Jn</i> 6, 51   |
| <i>Ca</i> 4, 15   | 38. Well of Living Waters.             | 72. Food of Eternal Life.                           | <i>Jn</i> 6, 59   |
| <i>W</i> 16, 2    | 39. Delicious Food.                    | 73. The Grain of Wheat.                             | <i>Jn</i> 12, 24  |
| <i>W</i> 16, 20   | 40. Food of Angels.                    | 74. The Fish — <i>ἰχθὺς</i> [ichthus].              | <i>Jn</i> 21, 9   |
| <i>W</i> 16, 21   | 41. The Food satisfying all appetites. | 75. The Feast at Tiberias.                          | <i>Jn</i> 21, 13  |
| <i>Is</i> 55, 1   | 42. Refreshment of holy Souls.         | 76. The Breaking of Bread.                          | <i>Ac</i> 2, 42   |
| <i>Ez</i> 47, 12  | 43. Medicine of Immortality.           | 77. The Communion.                                  | 1 <i>C</i> 10, 16 |
| <i>Da</i> 14, 32  | 44. Bread of Habacuc.                  |   |                   |
| <i>Za</i> 9, 17   | 45. Wheat of the Elect.                |   |                   |
| <i>Za</i> 9, 17   | 46. Wine springing forth Virgins.      |   |                   |

1 C 11, 20	78. The Lord's Supper.	82. Hidden Manna.	Ap 2, 17
1 C 11, 27	79. Terrible and Life-giving Sacrament.	83. The River of the Waters of Life.	Ap 22, 1
C 13, 1	80. Our Spiritual Resurrection.	84. The Tree of Life.	Ap 22, 2
Ja 1, 21	81. The Word ingrafted in us.	85. The Marriage Supper of The Lamb.	Ap 19, 9

### 9.—SUPREME WORSHIP DUE TO OUR LORD GOD IN THE BLESSED SACRAMENT.

<i>Mt</i> 4, 10	The Lord thy God shalt thou adore, and Him only shalt thou serve.	Seeing Him they adored : <i>Mt</i> 28, 17 but some doubted.
<i>He</i> 1, 6	When He bringeth in the First Begotten into the world, He saith : And let all the Angels of God adore Him.	<i>Examples of Worship :</i>
<i>Mt</i> 2, 11	Falling down they adored Him.	1. Our Lord. <i>Jn</i> 17, 1
<i>Jn</i> 9, 38	Falling down he adored Him.	2. His Blessed Mother. <i>Ac</i> 1, 14
<i>Mt</i> 28, 9	Behold Jesus met them, saying : All hail. But they came up and took hold of His feet, and adored Him.	3. The Apostles. <i>Ac</i> 2, 1
<i>Ps</i> 28, 17	All the ends of the earth shall remember, and shall be converted to the Lord ;—And all the kindreds of the Gentiles shall adore in His sight.	4. SS. Peter and John. <i>Ac</i> 3, 1
<i>Ps</i> 98, 5	Exalt ye the Lord our God, and adore His Footstool for it is holy.	5. SS. Paul and Barnabas. <i>Ac</i> 11, 28
<i>Ap</i> 5, 12	The Lamb that was slain is worthy to receive	6. The Ethiopian. <i>Ac</i> 8, 27
	1. Power,	7. Christians in Jerusalem. <i>Ac</i> 4, 24
	2. And Divinity,	8. Greeks. <i>Jn</i> 12, 20
	3. And Wisdom,	9. Prophets and doctors in Antioch. <i>Ac</i> 13, 3
	4. And Strength,	10. Abraham. <i>Ge</i> 21, 33
	5. And Honour,	11. Jacob. <i>Ge</i> 35, 14
	6. And Glory,	12. Israelites. <i>Dt</i> 26, 10
	7. And Benediction.	13. Elcana. <i>1 K</i> 1, 3
		14. Samuel and the people. <i>1 K</i> 7, 9
		15. David, dancing before the Ark. <i>2 K</i> 6, 14
		16. Solomon (his 1000 victims). <i>2 P</i> 1, 6
		17. Josaphat. <i>2 P</i> 20, 3
		18. Ezechias. <i>2 P</i> 30, 12
		19. Nehemias. <i>2 E</i> 8, 9
		20. The Children of Israel. <i>1 E</i> 6, 22
		21. The Sons of God. <i>Jb</i> 1, 6
		22. Multitudes. <i>Lu</i> 1, 10

### 10.—DIVINE PRAISE DUE TO OUR LORD GOD IN THE MOST HOLY SACRAMENT.

<i>Ps</i> 105, 2	Who shall declare the powers of the Lord ! Who	shall set forth all His praises ! He is thy praise, and thy God. <i>Dt</i> 10, 21
------------------	--	---

- To 13, 6-7 See what He hath done  
 9 with us, and with fear and trembling give ye glory to Him : and extol the Eternal King of worlds in your works. —As for me I will praise Him in the land of my captivity : because He has shown His Majesty towards a sinful nation.—I and my soul will rejoice in Him.
- Ps 144, 21 My mouth shall speak the praise of the Lord : and let all flesh bless His Holy Name for ever, yea for ever and ever.
- Ps 55, 11 In God will I praise the Word, in the Lord will I praise His speech.
- Ps 88, 2 The mercies of the Lord I will sing for ever.
- Ps 103, 33 I will sing to the Lord as long as I live : I will sing praises to my God while I have my being.
- Ps 117, 14, 19 The Lord is my Strength and my Praise : and He is become my Salvation.—Open ye to me the gates of justice : I will go into them and give praise to the Lord.
- Ps 144, 3-4 Great is the Lord, and greatly to be praised.—Praising I will call upon the Lord : and I shall be saved from my enemies.
- Jb 37, 22-24 We cannot find Him worthily : He is great in strength, and in judgment, and in justice, and He is ineffable.—Therefore men shall fear Him, and all that seem to themselves to be wise shall not dare to behold Him.
- Ps 147, 12 Praise thy God, O Sion.
- II.
- Ps 17, 47 The Lord liveth, and blessed be my God, and let the God of my Salvation be exalted.
- With my will I will give praise to Him.
- Praise and beauty are before Him : Holiness and Majesty in His Sanctuary.
- Great is the Lord, and exceedingly to be praised in the City of our God, in His Holy Mountain.
- I will give glory to the Lord according to His justice : and will sing to the Name of the Lord the Most High.
- I will bless the Lord at all times, His praise shall be always in my mouth.—In the Lord shall my soul be praised ; let the meek hear and rejoice.
- Let the mercies of the Lord give glory to Him : and His wonderful works to the children of men.
- His work is praise and magnificence : and His justice continueth for ever and ever.
- Blessed be the Name of the Lord, from henceforth now and for ever.—From the rising of the sun unto the going down of the same, the Name of the Lord is worthy of praise.
- For This is God, our God unto Eternity, and for ever and ever : He shall rule us for evermore.
- Let these things be written unto another generation : and the people that shall be created shall praise the Lord.—That they may declare the Name of the Lord in Sion : and His praise in Jerusalem.
- III.
- Hope in God, for I will still give praise to Him : the

Ps 27, 7

Ps 95, 6

Ps 47, 2

Ps 7, 18

Ps 33, 2-3

Ps 106, 8

Ps 110, 3

Ps 112, 2-3

Ps 47, 15

Ps 101, 19, 22

Ps 41, 6



- Salvation of my countenance, and my God.
- Ps* 39, 4 He put a new canticle into my mouth, a song to our God.
- Is* 42, 8 I the Lord this is My Name: I will not give My glory to another, nor My praise to graven things.
- Ps* 49, 23 The Sacrifice of praise shall glorify Me.
- Ps* 105, 12 And they believed His words: and they sang His praises.
- Ex* 15, 2 The Lord is my strength and my praise, and He is become Salvation to me; He is my God and I will glorify Him: the God of my father, and I will exalt Him.
- Je* 33, 11 The voice of joy and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom and the voice of the bride, the voice of them that shall say: Give ye glory to the Lord of Hosts, for the Lord is good, for His mercy endureth for ever.
- Eci* 51, 8 My soul shall praise the Lord even to death.
- Ec* 43, 29-30 We shall say much, and yet shall want words: but the sum of our words is, He is ALL.—What shall we be able to do to glorify Him? for the Almighty Himself is above all His works.
- Da* 2, 20 Blessed be the Name of the Lord from Eternity and for evermore: for wisdom and fortitude are His.
- IV.
- Da* 4, 34 I. Nabuchodonosor do now praise, and magnify, and glorify the King of Heaven: because all His works are true, and His ways judgments, and them that walk in pride He is able to abase.
- We that live bless the Lord from this time now and for ever.
- I shall go over into the place of the Wonderful Tabernacle, even to the House of God: with the voice of joy and praise; the noise of one feasting.
- You shall eat in plenty, and shall be filled: and you shall praise the Name of the Lord your God.
- When He was now coming near the descent of Mount Olivet, the whole multitude of His disciples began with joy to praise God with a loud voice, for all the mighty works they had seen,—Saying: Blessed be the King Who cometh in the Name of the Lord: peace in Heaven, and glory on High.
- He hath done all things well.
- At midnight, Paul and Silas praying, praised God. And they that were in prison heard them.
- He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.
- V.
- Who is like to Thee, among the strong, O Lord? Who is like to Thee, glorious in holiness, terrible and praiseworthy, doing wonders?
- There is none holy as the Lord is: for there is no other beside Thee, and there is none strong like our God.
- Thine, O Lord, is magnificence, and power and glory and victory: and to Thee is praise: for all that is in Heaven and in earth, is
- Ps* 113, 18
- Ps* 41, 5
- Jl* 2, 28
- Lu* 19, 37-38
- Ac* 16, 25
- 2 C* 10, 17
- Ex* 11,
- 1 K* 2, 2
- 1 P* 29, 11-13

- Thine : Thine is the Kingdom, O Lord, and Thou art above all Princes.—Thine are riches, and Thine is glory, Thou hast dominion over all, in Thy Hand is power and might : in Thy Hand greatness and the empire of all things.—Now therefore our God we give thanks to Thee, and we praise Thy Glorious Name.
- 2 E 9, 5 Blessed be the High Name of Thy glory with all blessings and praise.
- Ps 50, 17 O Lord, Thou wilt open my lips ; and my mouth shall declare Thy praise.
- Ps 70, 8, 23 Let thy mouth be filled with praise, that I may sing Thy glory ; Thy greatness all the day long.—My lips shall greatly rejoice, when I shall sing to Thee : and my soul which Thou hast redeemed.
- VI.
- Ps 85, 12 I will praise Thee, O Lord My God, with my whole heart, and I will glorify Thy Name for ever.
- Ps 29, 12-13 Thou hast turned for me my mourning into joy ; Thou hast cut my sackcloth, and hast compassed me with gladness :—To the end that my glory may sing to Thee, and I may not regret ; O Lord, my God, I will give praise to Thee for ever.
- Ps 60, 9 So will I sing a psalm to Thy Name for ever and ever ; that I may pay my vows from day to day.
- Ps 55, 12 In me, O God, are vows to Thee, which I will pay, praises to Thee.
- Ps 141, 8 Bring my soul out of prison, that I may praise Thy Name.
- Ps 118, 175 My soul shall live, and shall praise thee.
- I will give praise to Thee, O Lord, with my whole heart : I will relate all Thy wonders.
- I will extol Thee, O Lord, for Thou hast upheld me : and hast not made my enemies to rejoice over me.
- I will freely sacrifice to Thee, and will give praise, O God, to Thy Name : because it is good.
- I will also confess to Thee : Thy truth with the instruments of psaltery : O God, I will sing to Thee with the harp, Thou Holy One of Israel.
- Thou that liftest me up from the gates of death, that I may declare all Thy praises in the gates of the daughters of Sion.
- VII.
- Every day will I bless Thee : and I will praise Thy Name for ever, yea, for ever and ever.
- I will sing Thy strength, and will extol Thy mercy in the morning.
- Unto Thee, O my Helper, will I sing, for Thou art my God, my defence : my God, my mercy.
- Thus will I bless Thee all my life long : and in Thy Name will I lift up my hands.—Let my soul be filled as with marrow and fatness : and my mouth shall praise Thee with joyful lips.
- My heart is ready, O God, my heart is ready : I will sing, and will give praise, with my glory.—Arise, my glory : arise, psaltery and harp : I will arise in the morning early.—
- Ps 9, 2
- Ps 29, 2
- Ps 53, 8
- Ps 70, 22
- Ps 9, 15
- Ps 145, 2
- Ps 58, 17
- Ps 58, 18
- Ps 62, 5-6
- Ps 107, 2-6

I will praise Thee, O Lord, among the people: and I will sing to Thee among the nations.—For Thy mercy is great above the heavens: and Thy truth even unto the clouds.—Be Thou exalted, O God, above the heavens, and Thy glory over all the earth.

*Ps* 110, 1 I will praise Thee, O Lord, with my whole heart; in the counsel of the just, and in the congregation.

*Ps* 34, 28 My tongue shall meditate Thy justice, Thy praise all the day long.

*Ps* 115, 17 I will sacrifice to Thee the Sacrifice of praise, and I will call upon the Name of the Lord.

*Ps* 70, 14 I will always hope; and will add to all Thy praise.

## VIII.

*Ps* 29, 13 O Lord my God, I will give praise to Thee for ever.

*Ps* 117, 28 Thou art my God and I will praise Thee; Thou art my God and I will exalt Thee. I will praise Thee because Thou hast heard me, and art become my Salvation.

*Ps* 118, 7 I will praise Thee with uprightness of heart, when I shall have learnt the judgments of Thy justice.

*Ps* 137, 1-2 I will praise Thee, O Lord, with my whole heart: for Thou hast heard the words of my mouth. I will sing praise to Thee in the sight of His Angels.—I will worship towards Thy Holy Temple, and I will give glory to Thy Name. For Thy mercy and for Thy truth; for Thou hast magnified Thy Holy Name above all.

I will praise Thee, for *Ps* 138, 14 Thou art fearfully magnified; wonderful are Thy works, and my soul knoweth right well.

I will extol Thee, O God, *Ps* 144, 1-2 my King: and I will bless Thy Name for ever, yea, for ever and ever.—Every day will I bless Thee; and I will praise Thy Name for ever, yea, for ever and ever.

I rose at midnight to give *Ps* 118, 62, praise to Thee; for the judgments of Thy justification. 164

—Seven times a day have I given praise to Thee, for the judgments of Thy justice.

My lips shall utter a *Ps* 118, hymn, when Thou shalt 171, 175 teach me Thy justifications.—My soul shall live, and shall praise Thee: and Thy judgments shall help me.

## IX.

A hymn, O God, becometh *Ps* 64, 1 Thee in Sion.

Thou dwellest in the Holy *Ps* 21, 4 Place, the praise of Israel.

The poor and needy shall *Ps* 73, 21 praise Thy Name.

They shall speak of the *Ps* 144, 5-7 magnificence of the glory of

Thy Holiness, and shall tell Thy wondrous works.—And they shall speak of the might of Thy terrible acts; and shall declare Thy greatness.—They shall publish the memory of the abundance of Thy sweetness, and shall rejoice in Thy justice.

Therefore shall people *Ps* 44, 18 praise Thee for ever, yea, for ever and ever.

Blessed are they that *Ps* 83, 5 dwell in Thy House, O Lord: they shall praise Thee for ever and ever.

Be Thou exalted, O Lord, *Ps* 20, 14

- in Thy own strength: we will sing and praise Thy Power.
- Ps* 8, 10 O Lord our Lord, how admirable is Thy Name in all the earth!
- Ps* 47, 11 According to Thy Name, O God, so also is Thy praise unto the ends of the earth: Thy right hand is full of justice.
- Ps* 69, 5 Let such as love Thy Salvation say always: The Lord be magnified.
- Ps* 75, 11 For the thought of man shall give praise to Thee.
- x.
- Ps* 88, 6 The heavens shall confess Thy wonders, O Lord: and Thy truth in the Church of the Saints.
- Ps* 98, 2 Let them give praise to Thy Great Name: for it is terrible and holy.
- Ps* 113, 1 Not to us, O Lord, not to us: but to Thy Name give glory.
- Ps* 137, 4-5 May all the kings of the earth give glory to Thee: for they have heard all the words of Thy mouth.—And let them sing in the ways of the Lord: for great is the glory of the Lord.
- Ps* 144, 4 Generation and generation shall praise Thy works: and they shall declare Thy power.
- Ps* 105, 43 Blessed be the Lord the God of Israel, from Everlasting to Everlasting: and let all the people say: So be it, so be it.
- Ps* 74, 2 We will praise Thee, O God: we will praise, and we will call upon Thy Name. We will relate Thy wondrous works.
- Is* 25, 1 O Lord, Thou art my God, I will exalt Thee, and give glory to Thy Name.
- The living, the living, he shall give praise to Thee, as I do this day.
- Thou art my praise.
- To Thee, O God of our fathers, I give thanks, and I praise Thee: because Thou hast given me wisdom and strength.
- xi.
- Blessed art Thou, O Lord the God of our fathers: and worthy to be praised, and glorified, and exalted above all for ever: and blessed is the Holy Name of Thy Glory: and worthy to be praised, and exalted above all in all ages.—Blessed art Thou in the Holy Temple of Thy Glory: and exceedingly to be praised, and exceeding glorious for ever.—Blessed art Thou on the Throne of Thy Kingdom and exceedingly to be praised, and exalted above all for ever.—Blessed art Thou, that beholdest the depths, and sittest upon the Cherubims: and worthy to be praised and exalted above all for ever.—Blessed art Thou in the firmament of heaven: and worthy of praise, and glorious for ever.
- Glory to God in the Highest.
- Hosanna to the Son of David.
- Hosanna, blessed is He that cometh in the Name of the Lord, the King of Israel.
- Out of the mouths of infants and sucklings Thou hast perfected praise.
- I will declare Thy Name to My brethren: in the midst of the Church will I praise Thee.
- Is* 38, 19
- Je* 17, 4
- Da* 2, 23
- Da* 3, 52-56
- Lu* 2, 14
- Mt* 6, 11
- Jn* 12, 13
- Mt* 21, 16
- He* 2, 12

## XII.

- Ro* 11, 36 Of Him, and by Him, and in Him, are all things: to Him be glory for ever. Amen.
- Ep* 1, 3, 6 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in Heavenly places, in Christ.—To the praise of the glory of His grace, by which He made us acceptable through His Beloved Son.
- 2 Ti* 4, 18 To Whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.
- Ju* 24-25 To Him, Who is able to preserve you without sin, and to present you spotless before the Presence of His glory with exceeding joy in the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ,—To the only God our Saviour, through Jesus Christ our Lord, be glory and magnificence, empire and power, before all ages, both now, and for all ages of ages. Amen.
- To the King of ages, immortal, invisible, the only God, be honour and glory for ever and ever. Amen.
- To him be glory in the Church, and in Christ Jesus, throughout all generations, world without end. Amen.
- They rested not day and night, saying: Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty, Who was, and Who is, and Who is to come.—Thou art worthy, O Lord our God, to receive glory, and honour, and power: because Thou hast created all things, and for Thy will they were, and have been created.
- 1 Ti* 1, 17  
*Ep* 3, 21  
*Ap* 4, 8, 11

11.—INVITATION TO BRING HONOUR AND GLORY TO OUR LORD GOD IN THE MOST HOLY SACRAMENT.

## I.

- Je* 33, 11 Give ye glory to the Lord of Hosts, for the Lord is good, for His mercy endureth for ever.
- Ps* 94, 1 Come let us praise the Lord with joy: let us joyfully sing to God our Saviour.
- Ps* 98, 12 Rejoice ye just in the Lord: and give praise to the remembrance of His Holiness.
- Is* 12, 4-6 Praise ye the Lord and call upon His Name: make His works known among the people: remember that His Name is High.—Sing ye to the Lord, for He hath done great things: show this forth in all the earth.—Rejoice, and praise, O thou habitation of Zion: for great is He that is in the midst of thee, the Holy One of Israel.
- Sing ye to the Lord a new song, His praise is from the ends of the earth; you that go down to the sea, and all that are therein: ye islands, and ye inhabitants of them.
- Sing ye to the Lord: praise the Lord: because He hath delivered the soul of the poor out of the hand of the wicked.
- Is* 42, 10  
*Je* 20, 13

## II.

Bring ye to the Lord, O ye families of the nations: bring ye to the Lord glory and empire.—Give to the Lord glory to His Name, bring up Sacrifice and come ye in His sight: and adore the Lord in holy becoming—

*P* 16, 23-29, 31  
*Je* 20, 13

ness.—Let the heavens rejoice, and let the earth be glad: and let them say among the nations: The Lord hath reigned.

To 13, 3-4 Give glory to the Lord, ye children of Israel, and praise Him in the sight of the Gentiles.—Because He hath therefore scattered you among the Gentiles, who know not Him, that you may declare His wonderful works, and make them know that there is no other Almighty God besides Him.

Ps 96, 7 Adore Him all you His Angels.

Ps 148, 1 Praise ye the Lord from the heavens: praise ye Him in the High Places.

Ps 150, 5 Let every spirit praise the Lord: alleluia.

Ps 134, 2-3, 20 You that stand in the House of the Lord, in the Courts of the House of our God.—Praise ye the Lord, for the Lord is good: sing ye to His Name, for it is sweet.—You that fear the Lord, bless the Lord.

### III.

Ps 29, 5 Sing to the Lord, O ye His saints: and give praise to the memory of His Holiness.

Ps 32, 1 Rejoice in the Lord, O ye just: praise becometh the upright.

Ps 112, 1-3 Praise the Lord, ye children, praise ye the Name of the Lord.—Blessed be the Name of the Lord, from henceforth now and for ever.—From the rising of the sun unto the going down of the same, the Name of the Lord is worthy of praise.

Ps 28, 1-2 Bring to the Lord, O ye children of God.—Bring to

the Lord glory and honour; bring to the Lord glory to His Name; adore ye the Lord in His Holy Court.

Sing ye to the Lord a new Ps 149, canticle: let His praise be in the Church of the saints.

Shout with joy to God, all Ps 65, 1-2 the earth.—Sing ye a psalm to His Name; give glory to His praise.

Exalt ye the Lord our God, Ps 92, 5 and adore His Footstool, for it is holy.

Sing joyfully to God, all Ps 99, 1 the earth; serve ye the Lord with gladness.

O praise the Lord, all ye Ps 116, 1-nations: praise Him, all ye 2 people.—For His mercy is confirmed upon us: and the Truth of the Lord remaineth for ever.

### IV.

O you of Israel, that have Jg 5, 2-3 willingly offered your lives to danger, bless the Lord.—Hear, O ye kings, give ear, ye princes: it is I, it is I, that will sing to the Lord, I will sing to the Lord the God of Israel.

Ye that fear the Lord, Ps 21, 24 praise Him; all ye the seed of Jacob, glorify Him.

O bless our God, ye Gentiles: and make the voice of His praise to be heard. Ps 65, 8

Praise the Lord, O Jerusalem: praise Thy God, O Sion. Ps 147, 12

Praise ye the Lord, because Ps 146, 1 cause psalm is good: to 7 our God be joyful and comely praise.—Sing ye to the Lord with praise: sing to our God upon the harp.

Sing ye to the Lord, Who Ps 9, 12 dwelleth in Sion: declare His ways among the Gentiles.

*Ps* 67, 33 Sing to God, ye kingdoms of the earth: sing ye to the Lord.

*Ps* 102, 1, 22 Bless the Lord, O my soul: and let all that is within me bless His Holy Name.—Bless the Lord, all His works: in every place of His dominion, O my soul, bless thou the Lord.

v.

*Ps* 33, 4 O magnify the Lord with me: and let us extol His Name together.

*Ps* 46, 7-8 Sing praises to our God, sing ye: sing praises to our King, sing ye.—For God is the King of all the earth; sing ye wisely.

*Ps* 49, 14 Offer to God the Sacrifice of praise: and pay Thy vows to the Most High.

*Ps* 65, 2 Sing ye a psalm to His Name: give glory to His praise.

*Ps* 98, 9 Exalt ye the Lord our God, and adore at His Holy Mountain.

*Ps* 99, 2, 4-5 Sing joyfully to God, all the earth: serve ye the Lord with gladness.—Go ye into His Gates with praise, into His Courts with hymns: and give glory to Him. Praise ye His Name:—For the Lord is sweet: His mercy endureth for ever, and His Truth to generation and generation.

*Ps* 104, 3 Glory ye in His Holy Name: let the heart of them rejoice that seek the Lord.

*Ps* 106, 1, 21 Give glory to the Lord, for He is good: for His mercy endureth for ever.—Let the mercies of the Lord give glory to Him: His wonderful works to the children of men.

VI.

Praise ye the Lord from *Ps* 148, 1-2, 11-13 the heavens: praise ye Him in the high places.—Praise ye Him, all His Angels: praise ye Him, all His Hosts.—Kings of the earth and all people: Princes and all judges of the earth.—Young men and maidens: let the old with the younger, praise the Name of the Lord:—For His Name alone is exalted.

The praise of Him is *Ps* 148, 14 above heaven and earth: and He hath exalted the horn of His people. A hymn to all His saints: to the children of Israel, a people approaching to Him. Alleluia.

Arise, bless the Lord your God from Eternity to Eternity.

Now therefore with the *Eci* 39, 41 whole heart and mouth praise ye Him, and bless the Name of the Lord.

Glorify the Lord as much *Eci* 43, 32-34 as ever you can, for He will yet far exceed, and His magnificence is wonderful.—Blessing the Lord, exalt Him as much as you can: for He is above all praise.—When you exalt Him put forth all your strength, and be not weary: for you can never go far enough.

VII.

A Voice came out from the *Ap* 19, 5-7 Throne, saying: Give praise to our God, all ye His servants: and you that fear Him, little and great.—And I heard, as it were, the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of great thunders, saying: “Alleluia;

for the Lord our God the Almighty hath reigned."—

Let us be glad and rejoice, and give glory to Him.

*Ps* 23, 9-10 Lift up your gates, O ye Princes : and be ye lifted up, O eternal Gates : and the King of Glory shall enter in.—Who is this King of Glory ? The Lord of Hosts : He is the King of Glory.

*Ps* 68, 35 Let the heavens and the earth praise Him ; the sea,

and everything that creepeth therein.

Sing to Him, yea, sing *1 Ps* 9, 23 praises to Him : and relate all His wondrous works.

Sing ye to the Lord, all *1 Ps* 16, 23-25 the earth : show forth from day to day His Salvation.—Declare His glory among the Gentiles : His wonders among all people.—For the Lord is great and exceedingly to be praised.

To Him be glory for ever. *Ap* 1, 6

## 12.—VOCAL AND INSTRUMENTAL MUSIC IN PUBLIC WORSHIP.

*Ps* 80, 2-6 Rejoice to God our Helper : sing aloud to the God of Jacob.—Take a psalm, and bring hither the timbrel : the pleasant psaltery with the harp.—Blow up the trumpet on the new moon, on the noted day of your Solemnity.—For it is a commandment in Israel, and a judgment to the God of Jacob.—He ordained it for a testimony in Joseph, when he came out of the land of Egypt : he heard a tongue which he knew not.

*Ps* 94, 1-5 Come let us praise the Lord with joy : let us joyfully sing to God our Saviour.—Let us come before His Presence with thanksgiving : and make a joyful noise to Him with psalms.—For the Lord is a Great God, and a Great King above all gods.—For in His hands are all the ends of the earth : and the heights of the mountains are His.—For the sea is His, and He made it : and His hands formed the dry land.

Praise ye the Name of the Lord : O you, His servants, praise the Lord :—You that stand in the House of the Lord, in the Courts of the House of our God.—Praise ye the Lord, for the Lord is good : sing ye to His Name, for it is sweet.—For the Lord hath chosen Jacob unto Himself : Israel for His own possession.

To Thee, O God, I will sing a new canticle : on the psaltery and an instrument of ten strings I will sing praises to Thee. *Ps* 143, 9

Sing ye to the Lord a new canticle : let His praise be in the Church of the saints.—Let Israel rejoice in Him that made him : and let the children of Sion be joyful in their King.—Let them praise His Name in choir : let them sing to Him with the timbrel and the psaltery.—For the Lord is well pleased with His people : and He will exalt the meek unto Salvation.

Give glory to the Lord, *Ps* 104, 1-4



and call upon His Name : declare His deeds among the Gentiles.—Sing to Him, ye sing praises to Him : relate all His wondrous works.—Glory ye in His Holy Name : let the heart of them rejoice that seek the Lord.—Seek ye the Lord, and be strengthened : seek His face evermore.

Alleluia.

You shall have a song as in the night of the sanctified Solemnity, and joy of heart, as when one goeth in with a pipe, to come into the Mountain of the Lord, to the Mighty One of Israel.

*Is* 30, 29

Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns, and spiritual canticles, singing and making melody in your hearts to the Lord.

*Ep* 5, 19

Let the Word of Christ dwell in you abundantly, in all wisdom ; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms, hymns, and spiritual canticles, singing in grace in your hearts to God.

*Cl* 3, 16

*Ps* 32, 1-4 Rejoice in the Lord, O ye just : praise becometh the upright.—Give praise to the Lord on the harp : sing to Him with the psaltery, the instrument of ten strings.—Sing to Him a new canticle, sing well unto Him with a loud noise.—For the Word of the Lord is right, and all His works are done with faithfulness.

It was told king David, *2 K* 6, 12-15 that the Lord had blessed

Obededom, and all that he had, because of the Ark of God. So David went and brought away the Ark of God out of the house of Obededom into the City of David with joy. And there were with David seven choirs, and calves for victims.—And when they that carried the Ark of the Lord had gone six paces, he sacrificed an ox and a ram :—And David danced with all his might before the Lord : and David was girded with a linen ephod.—And David and all the house of Israel brought the Ark of the Covenant of the Lord with joyful shouting, and with sound of trumpet.

Behold there was a Throne set in Heaven, and upon the Throne One sitting.—And the four living creatures had each of them six wings : and round about and within

*Ps* 67, 25-27 They have seen Thy goings, O God, the goings of my God : of my King Who is in His Sanctuary.—Princes went before joined with singers, in the midst of young damsels playing on timbrels.—In the Churches bless ye God the Lord from the fountains of Israel.

*Ps* 97, 4-6 Sing joyfully to God, all the earth make melody, rejoice and sing.—Sing praise to the Lord on the harp, on the harp, and with the voice of a psalm : with long trumpets, and sound of cornet.—Make a joyful noise before the Lord our King.

150, 3-5 Praise Him with sound of trumpet : praise Him with psaltery and harp.—Praise Him with timbrel and choir : praise Him with strings and organs.—Praise Him on high sounding cymbals : praise Him on cymbals of joy ; let every spirit praise the Lord.

*Ap* 4, 2, 8-11

they are full of eyes. And they rested not day and night, saying: Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, Who was, and Who is, and Who is to come.—And when those living creatures gave glory and honour and benediction to Him, that sitteth on the Throne, Who liveth for ever and ever:—The four-and-twenty ancients fell down before Him that sitteth on the Throne, and adored Him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the Throne, saying: Thou art worthy, O Lord our God, to receive glory, and honour, and power: because Thou hast created all things and for Thy will they were, and have been created.

*Ap 5, 8-12* When he had opened the Book, the four living creatures, and the four-and-twenty ancients fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints:—And they sung a new canticle, saying: Thou art worthy, O Lord, to take the Book, and to open the seals thereof: because thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God, in Thy Blood, out of every tribe, and tongue, and people, and nation.—And hast made us to our God a kingdom and priests and we shall reign on the earth.—And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many Angels round about the Throne, and the living creatures, and the ancients: and the number of them was

thousands of thousands,—Saying, with a loud voice: The Lamb that was slain, is worthy to receive power, and divinity, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and benediction.

After this, I saw a great *Ap 7, 9-12* multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and tribes, and peoples, and tongues: standing before the Throne, and in sight of the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands:—And they cried with a loud voice, saying: Salvation to our God, Who sitteth upon the Throne, and to the Lamb.—And all the Angels stood round about the Throne, and the ancients and the four living creatures: and they fell down before the Throne upon their faces, and adored God,—Saying: Amen. Benediction, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, honour, and power, and strength to our God for ever and ever. Amen.

And I beheld: and lo a *Ap 14, 1-3* Lamb stood upon Mount Sion, and with Him an hundred forty-four thousand having His Name, and the Name of His Father written on their foreheads.—And I heard a Voice from Heaven, as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of great thunder; and the Voice, which I heard, was as the voice of harpers, harping on their harps.—And they sung as it were a new canticle, before the Throne, and before the four living creatures, and the ancients: and no man could say the canticle,

but those hundred forty-four thousand, who were purchased from the earth.

*Ap 15, 2-4* I saw as it were a sea of glass mingled with fire, and them that had overcome the beast and his image and the number of his name, standing on the sea of glass, having the harps of God :—And singing the canticle of Moses the servant of God, and the canticle of the Lamb, saying : Great and wonderful are Thy works, O Lord God Almighty : just and true are Thy ways, O King of ages. —Who shall not fear Thee, O Lord, and magnify Thy Name? For Thou only art holy : for all nations shall come, and shall adore in Thy sight, because Thy judgments are manifest.

ALLELUIA.

*Ap 19, 1-7* After these things I heard as it were the voice of many multitudes in Heaven, saying : Alleluia, Salvation, and glory, and power is to our God.—For true and just

are His judgments, Who hath judged the great harlot which corrupted the earth with her fornication, and hath revenged the blood of His servants at her hands.—And again they said : Alleluia. And her smoke ascendeth for ever and ever. —And the four-and-twenty ancients, and the four living creatures fell down and adored God that sitteth upon the Throne, saying : Amen. Alleluia.—And a Voice came out from the Throne, saying : Give praise to our God, all ye His servants : and you that fear Him, little and great.—And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of great thunders, saying, Alleluia : for the Lord our God the Almighty hath reigned.—Let us be glad and rejoice, and give glory to Him : for the Marriage of the Lamb is come, and His Wife hath prepared herself.

### 13.—THE SACRIFICE OF CHRIST UPON THE CROSS.

*Ep 5, 2* Christ also hath loved us, and hath delivered Himself for us, an Oblation and a Sacrifice to God for an odour of sweetness.

*He 5, 10* Called by God a High Priest according to the order of Melchisedech.

*Jn 17, 19* For them do I sanctify Myself : that they also may be sanctified in truth.

*Jn 10, 17-18* Therefore doth the Father love Me : because I lay down My life, that I may take it again.—No man taketh it away from Me ; but I lay

it down of Myself.

Looking on Jesus, the Author and Finisher of faith, Who having joy set before Him, endured the Cross, despising the shame.

[Christ] in the days of His flesh with a strong cry and tears, offering up prayers and supplications to Him that was able to save Him from death, was heard for His reverence.

He became to all who obey Him, the cause of Eternal Salvation.

*He 12, 2*

*He 5, 7*

*He 5, 9*

## TWO REMARKABLE FIGURES OF THE SACRIFICE OF OUR LORD.

## 1.

1. ABRAHAM IS TEMPTED  
TO OFFER ISAAC.

*Ge 22, 1-2* God tempted Abraham, and said to him : Abraham, Abraham. And he answered: Here am I.—He said to him: Take thy only begotten son Isaac, whom thou lovest, and go into the Land of Vision : and there thou shalt offer him for an holocaust upon one of the mountains which I will show thee.

2. HE PROVES HIS FAITH  
AND OBEDIENCE.

*Ge 22, 3* So Abraham rising up in the night, saddled his ass : and took with him two young men, and Isaac his son : and when he had cut wood for the holocaust he went his way to the place which God had commanded him.

*Ge 22, 4-5* And on the third day, lifting up his eyes, he saw the place afar off.—And he said to his young men : Stay you here with the ass : I and the boy will go with speed as far as yonder, and after we have worshipped, will return to you.

*Ge 22, 6* And he took the wood for the holocaust, and laid it upon Isaac his son : and he himself carried in his hands fire and a sword.

*Ge 22, 7-8* And as they two went on together, Isaac said to his father : My father. And he answered : What wilt thou, son ? Behold, saith he, fire and wood : where is the victim for the holocaust ?—And Abraham said : God will provide Himself a Victim for a Holocaust, my son. So they

went on together.

And they came to the place *Ge 22, 9-10* which God had shown him, where he built an Altar, and laid the wood in order upon it : and when he had bound Isaac his son, he laid him on the Altar upon the pile of wood.—And he put forth his hand and took the sword, to sacrifice his son.

3. THE ANGEL PREVENTS  
HIM.

And behold an Angel of *Ge 22, 11-12* the Lord from Heaven called to him, saying : Abraham, Abraham. And he answered : Here I am.—And he said to him : Lay not thy hand upon the boy, neither do thou anything to him : now I know that thou fearest God, and hast not spared thy only begotten son for My Sake.

4. ISAAC IS EXCHANGED  
FOR A RAM.

Abraham lifted up his eyes, *Ge 22, 13* and saw behind his back a ram amongst the briers sticking fast by the horns, which he took and offered for a holocaust instead of his son.

## II.

1. THE INSTITUTION OF  
THE PASSOVER.

Let every man take a lamb *Ex 12, 3,* by their families and houses, 6-8 —A lamb without blemish.—And the whole multitude of the children of Israel shall sacrifice it in the evening.—And they shall take of the blood thereof, and put it upon both the side posts, and on the upper door-posts of the houses, wherein they

shall eat it.—And they shall eat the flesh that night roasted at the fire, and unleavened bread with wild lettuce.

## 2. THE RITE OF THE PASS-OVER.

*Ex* 12, 11-13 Thus you shall eat it : you shall gird your reins, and you shall have shoes on your feet, holding staves in your hands, and you shall eat in haste : for it is the Phase (that is the Passage) of the

Lord.—And I will pass through the land of Egypt that night, and will kill every first-born in the land of Egypt both man and beast : and against all the gods of Egypt I will execute judgments : I am the Lord.—And the blood shall be unto you for a sign in the houses where you shall be : and I shall see the blood, and shall pass over you : and the plague shall not be upon you to destroy you, when I shall strike the land of Egypt.

## 14.—THE PERPETUITY OF THE SACRIFICE OF THE CROSS IN THE SACRIFICE OF THE MASS DECLARED IN PROPHECY.

*Ma* 1, 10-11 I have no pleasure in you, saith the Lord of Hosts : and I will not receive a gift of your hand.—For from the rising of the sun even to the going down, My Name is great among the Gentiles, and in every place there is Sacrifice, and there is offered to My Name a clean Oblation : for My Name is great among the Gentiles, saith the Lord of Hosts.

They shall defile the Sanctuary of strength, and shall take away the Continual Sacrifice, and they shall place there the abomination unto desolation. *Da* 11, 31

In those days and at that time, I will make the Bud of Justice to spring forth unto David, and He shall do judgment and justice in the earth.—In those days shall *Je* 33, 15-18

*Je* 19, 19, 21 In that day there shall be an Altar of the Lord in the midst of the land of Egypt.—And the Egyptians shall know the Lord in that day.

Juda be saved, and Jerusalem shall dwell securely : and this is the Name that they shall call Him, The Lord our Just One.—For thus saith the Lord : There shall not be cut off from David a man to sit upon the Throne of the House of Israel.—Neither shall there be cut off from the Priests and Levites a man before My face to offer holocausts, and to burn sacrifice, and to kill victims continually.

*Je* 61, 6 You shall be called the Priests of the Lord : to you it shall be said : Ye Ministers of our God.

*Je* 66, 21-22 I will take of them to be Priests, and Levites, saith the Lord.—For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will make to stand before Me, saith the Lord ; so shall your seed stand, and your name.

Thus saith the Lord : If My Covenant with the day can be made void, and My *Je* 33, 20-22

Covenant with the night, that there should not be day and night in their season:—

Also My Covenant with David My servant may be made void, that he should not have a son to reign upon his Throne, and with the Levites and Priests My Ministers.—As the stars of heaven cannot be numbered, nor the sand of the sea be measured: so will I multiply the seed of David My servant, and the Levites My Ministers.

*Ps* 109, 4 The Lord hath sworn, and He will not repent: Thou art a Priest for ever according to the Order of Melchisedech.

*He* 7, 15 It is yet far more evident: if according to the similitude of Melchisedech there ariseth

another Priest.

Melchisedech the king of *Ge* 14, 18—Salem, bringing forth bread and wine, for he was the Priest of the Most High God, —Blessed him, and said: Blessed be Abram by the Most High God, Who created heaven and earth. —And blessed be the Most High God, by Whose protection the enemies are in thy hands.

He shall offer a male *Le* 1, 3-4 without blemish, at the door of the testimony, to make the Lord favourable to him: —And he shall put his hand upon the head of the victim, and it shall be acceptable, and help to its expiation.

Aaron shall offer a calf for *Le* 16, 3 sin, and a ram for a holocaust.

### 15.—THE SACRIFICE OF THE HOLY MASS—

(1) PROMISED AND INSTITUTED BY CHRIST;

(2) AND VINDICATED BY THE APOSTLES;

(3) THE RITUAL OF THE MASS.

#### I.

*Jn* 4 21, 23 The hour cometh, when you shall neither on this mountain, nor in Jerusalem adore the Father.—But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true adorers shall adore the Father in Spirit and in Truth.

*Lu* 22, 19-20 Taking bread, He gave thanks, and brake: and gave to them, saying: This is My Body which is given for you. Do this for a commemoration of Me.\*—In like manner the Chalice also, after He had supped, saying: This is

the Chalice, the New Testament in My Blood, which shall be shed for you.

This is My Body which *1 C* 11, 24 shall be delivered for you.

#### II.

You cannot drink the *1 C* 10, 21 Chalice of the Lord, and the chalice of devils: you cannot be partakers of the Table of the Lord, and of the table of devils.

Behold Israel according to *1 C* 10, 18 the flesh: are not they that eat of the sacrifices, partakers of the Altar?

\* The word *do* often used for *sacrifice*: see, *Ex.* 12, 87; *Lev.* 23, 19.

- 1 C 10, 20** The things which the heathen sacrifice, they sacrifice to devils, and not to God. And I would not that you should be made partakers with devils.
- He 13, 10** We have an Altar, whereof they have no power to eat who serve the Tabernacle.
- Ac 13, 2** As they were ministering to the Lord, and fasting, the Holy Ghost said to them: Separate Me Saul and Barnabas, for the work whereunto I have taken them.
- Ap 5, 6** I saw: and behold in the midst of the Throne and of the four living creatures, and in the midst of the ancients, a Lamb standing as it were slain, having seven horns and seven eyes: which are the seven Spirits of God, sent forth into all the earth.
- III.
- Let all things be done to 1 C 14, 26 edification.
- Let all things be done 1 C 11, 40 decently, and according to order.
- The things which you have both learned, and received, and heard, and seen in me, these do ye.
- For the rest, brethren, whatsoever are true, whatsoever modest, whatsoever just, whatsoever holy, whatsoever lovely, whatsoever of good fame, if there be any virtue, if any praise of discipline, think on these things.
- Though I be absent in body, yet in spirit I am with you; rejoicing, and beholding your order, and the steadfastness of your faith which is in Christ.
- Ph 4, 9
- Ph 4, 8
- Cl 2, 5

### 16.—NAMES AND TITLES OF OUR LORD AS THE DIVINE VICTIM OF EXPIATION.

- |                  |                                       |                                      |                 |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>Ex 29, 36</b> | 1. The Victim of Expiation.           | 14. The Sacrifice of the Lord.       | <b>Le 2, 11</b> |
| <b>Ge 4, 4</b>   | 2. The Oblations of Abel.             | 15. The Sacrifice of Peace-Offering. | <b>Le 3, 3</b>  |
| <b>Ge 4, 10</b>  | 3. The Voice of our Brother's Blood.  | 16. Memorial of most sweet Odour.    | <b>Le 6, 15</b> |
| <b>Ge 14, 18</b> | 4. The Sacrifice of Melchisedech.     | 17. The burnt Sacrifice of the Lord. | <b>Le 6, 17</b> |
| <b>Ex 12, 8</b>  | 5. The Paschal Lamb.                  | 18. The Victim for Sin.              | <b>Le 6, 25</b> |
| <b>Ex 29, 33</b> | 6. The Atoning Sacrifice.             | 19. Holy of Holies.                  | <b>Le 6, 29</b> |
| <b>Ex 12, 27</b> | 7. The Holy Victim.                   | 20. The Victim slain for Sin.        | <b>Le 6, 30</b> |
| <b>Ex 34, 25</b> | 8. The Victim of Solemnity.           | 21. The Atonement in the Sanctuary.  | <b>Le 6, 30</b> |
| <b>Ex 29, 41</b> | 9. The Morning Oblation.              | 22. The Sacrifice for Sin.           | <b>Le 7, 7</b>  |
| <b>Le 1, 3</b>   | 10. A Holocaust.                      | 23. The Victim for Holocaust.        | <b>Le 7, 8</b>  |
| <b>Le 1, 4</b>   | 11. The Victim.                       | 24. The Sacrifice of Thanksgiving.   | <b>Le 7, 13</b> |
| <b>Le 1, 17</b>  | 12. An Oblation of most sweet Savour. | 25. The Unleavened Bread.            | <b>Le 8, 26</b> |
| <b>Le 2, 1</b>   | 13. An Oblation of Sacrifice.         | 26. The Oblation of                  | <b>Le 8, 28</b> |

	Consecration.	44. Perpetual Sacrifice.	<i>Ma</i> 1, 11
<i>Le</i> 8, 31	27. The Loaves of Consecration.	45. Clean Oblation.	<i>Ma</i> 1, 11
<i>Le</i> 8, 33	28. The Consecration.	46. The Precious Blood	<i>Za</i> 9, 11
<i>Le</i> 9, 7	29. The People's Victim.	delivering prisoners	
<i>Le</i> 9, 12	30. The Victim of Holocaust.	out of the pit.	
<i>Le</i> 9, 17	31. The Morning Holocaust.	47. Memorial of the Pas-	<i>Mt</i> 26, 28
<i>Le</i> 9, 18	32. The Peace-Offerings of the People.	sion of Christ.	
<i>Le</i> 10, 12	33. The Oblation of the Lord.	48. The Most Sacred	<i>Lu</i> 22, 19
<i>Le</i> 14, 14	34. The Victim immolated for Sin.	Memorial of our	
<i>Le</i> 14, 24	35. The Lamb immolated for Sin.	Lord's Passion.	
<i>Le</i> 16, 10	36. The Emissary Goat.	49. The Precious Blood	<i>Jn</i> 19, 34
<i>Le</i> 16, 12	37. The Burning Coals of the Altar.	of the side of	
<i>Le</i> 16, 14	38. The Propitiatory.	Christ.	
<i>Le</i> 16, 30	39. The Expiation.	50. Chalice of Benedic-	<i>1 C</i> 10, 10
<i>Eci</i> 7, 35	40. The Sacrifice of Sanctification.	diction.	
<i>Ps</i> 115, 13	41. The Chalice of Salvation.	51. Most Holy Sacrifice	<i>1 C</i> 11, 26
<i>Je</i> 11, 19	42. Meek Lamb.	of all.	
<i>Da</i> 8, 10	43. The Continual Sacrifice.	52. The Sacrifice of Ex-	<i>He</i> 9, 13
		piation.	
		53. Lamb without spot.	<i>1 Pt</i> 1, 19
		54. The Precious Blood	<i>1 Jn</i> 1, 7
		washing away sin.	
		55. True Propitiation for	<i>1 Jn</i> 2, 2
		the Living and the	
		Dead.	
		56. The Everlasting Ho-	<i>Ez</i> 46, 15
		locast.	
		57. The Lamb standing	<i>Ap</i> 5, 6
		as it were slain.	

## 17.—PRAYERS BEFORE MASS.\*

*Ps* 83. 1-13 How lovely are Thy  
Tabernacles, O Lord of  
Hosts!

My soul longeth and  
fainteth for the Courts of  
the Lord.

My heart and my flesh  
have rejoiced in the Living  
God.

For the sparrow hath  
found herself a house, and  
the turtle a nest for herself  
where she may lay her  
young ones:

Thy Altars, O Lord of

Hosts, my King and my God.

Blessed are they that  
dwell in Thy House, O  
Lord: they shall praise  
Thee for ever and ever.

Blessed is the man whose  
help is from Thee: in his  
heart he hath disposed to  
ascend by steps in the vale  
of tears, in the place which  
he hath set.

For the lawgiver shall  
give a blessing, they shall go  
from virtue to virtue: the  
God of gods shall be seen in  
Sion.

\* From Rom. Rit.



O Lord God of Hosts,  
hear my prayer: give ear,  
O God of Jacob.

Behold, O God our Pro-  
tector: and look on the  
face of Thy Christ.

For better is one day in  
Thy Courts above thou-  
sands.

I have chosen to be an  
abject in the House of my  
God, rather than to dwell in  
the tabernacles of sinners.

For God loveth mercy  
and truth: the Lord will  
give grace and glory.

He will not deprive of  
Good Things them that  
walk in innocence: O Lord  
of Hosts, blessed is the man  
that trusteth in Thee.

## II.

*Ps* 84, 1-14 Lord, Thou hast blessed  
Thy land: Thou hast turned  
away the captivity of Jacob.

Thou hast forgiven the  
iniquity of Thy people:  
Thou hast covered all their  
sins.

Thou hast mitigated all  
Thy anger: Thou hast turned  
away from the wrath of Thy  
indignation.

Convert us, O God our  
Saviour: and turn off Thy  
anger from us.

Wilt Thou be angry with  
us for ever: or wilt Thou  
extend Thy wrath from  
generation to generation?

Thou wilt turn, O God,  
and bring us to life: and  
Thy people shall rejoice in  
Thee.

Show us, O Lord, Thy  
mercy: and grant us Thy  
salvation.

I will hear what the Lord  
God will speak in me: for  
He will speak peace unto

His people:

And unto His saints: and  
unto them that are converted  
to the heart.

Surely His salvation is  
near to them that fear Him:  
that glory may dwell in our  
land.

Mercy and truth have met  
each other: justice and  
peace have kissed.

Truth is sprung out of  
the earth: and justice hath  
looked down from Heaven.

For the Lord will give  
goodness: and our earth  
shall yield her fruit.

Justice shall walk before  
Him: and shall set his steps  
in the way.

## III.

Incline Thy ear, O Lord, *Ps* 85, 1-17  
and hear me: for I am needy  
and poor.

Preserve my soul, for I  
am holy: save Thy servant,  
O my God, that trusteth in  
Thee.

Have mercy on me, O  
Lord, for I have cried to  
Thee all the day.

Give joy to the soul of Thy  
servant, for to Thee, O Lord,  
I have lifted up my soul.

For Thou, O Lord, art  
sweet and mild: and plente-  
ous in mercy to all that  
call upon Thee.

Give ear, O Lord, to my  
prayer: and attend to the  
voice of my petition.

I have called upon Thee  
in the day of my trouble:  
because Thou hast heard  
me.

There is none among the  
gods like unto Thee, O  
Lord: and there is none  
according to Thy works.

All the nations Thou hast

z z

made shall come and adore before Thee, O Lord; and they shall glorify Thy Name.

For Thou art great and doest wonderful things: Thou art God alone.

Conduct me, O Lord, in Thy way, and I will walk in Thy truth: let my heart rejoice that it may fear Thy Name.

I will praise Thee, O Lord my God, with my whole heart, and I will glorify Thy Name for ever.

For Thy mercy is great towards me: and Thou hast delivered my soul out of the lower hell.

O God, the wicked are risen up against me, and the assembly of the mighty have sought my soul: and they have not set Thee before their eyes.

And Thou, O Lord, art a God of compassion, and merciful, patient, and of much mercy, and true.

O look upon me, and have mercy on me: give Thy command to Thy servant, and save the son of Thy handmaid.

Show me a token for good: that they who hate me may see, and be confounded, because Thou, O Lord, hast helped me and hast comforted me.

IV.

Ps 115, 10-19 I have believed, therefore have I spoken: but I have been humbled exceedingly.

I said in my excess: Every man is a liar.

What shall I render to the Lord, for all the things that He hath rendered to me?

I will take the Chalice of Salvation: and I will call upon the Name of the Lord.

I will pay my vows to the Lord before all His people:

Precious in the sight of the Lord is the death of His Saints.

O Lord, for I am Thy servant: I am Thy servant, and the son of Thy handmaid. Thou hast broken my bonds:

I will sacrifice to Thee the Sacrifice of praise, and I will call upon the Name of the Lord.

I will pay my vows to the Lord in the sight of all His people:

In the Courts of the House of the Lord, in the midst of thee, O Jerusalem.

V.

Out of the depths I have cried to Thee, O Lord: Ps 129, 1-8

Lord, hear my voice. Let Thy ears be attentive to the voice of my supplication.

If Thou, O Lord, wilt mark iniquities: Lord, who shall stand it?

For with Thee there is merciful forgiveness: and by reason of Thy law I have waited for Thee, O Lord. My soul hath relied on His word:

My soul hath hoped in the Lord.

From the morning watch even until night, let Israel hope in the Lord.

Because with the Lord there is mercy: and with Him plentiful redemption.

And He shall redeem Israel from all his iniquities.

Pater Noster.

Mt 6, 9-13

## 18.—SCRIPTURE OF HOLY MASS.\*

## 1. The beginning of Mass to the Offertory.

*Mt* 23, 19   † In the Name of the Name of the Lord.  
               † Father, and of the Son,   *R.* Who made Heaven *Ps* 123, 8  
               and of the Holy Ghost.   and earth.  
*Ap* 5, 14   Amen.                   *The Priest kisses the Altar. Mt* 26, 49

## ANTIPHON.

*Ps* 42, 4   *P.* I will go in to the Altar  
               of God.

*Ps* 42, 4   *R.* To God Who giveth  
               joy to my youth.

## PSALM.

*Ps* 42, 1-6   *P.* Judge me, O God, and  
               distinguish my cause from  
               the nation that is not holy,  
               deliver me from the unjust  
               and deceitful man.

*R.* For Thou art God my  
               strength: why hast Thou cast  
               me off? and why do I go  
               sorrowful whilst the enemy  
               afflicteth me?

*P.* Send forth Thy light  
               and Thy truth: they have  
               conducted me, and brought  
               me unto Thy Holy Hill, and  
               into Thy Tabernacles.

*R.* And I will go in to the  
               Altar of God: to God Who  
               giveth joy to my youth.

*P.* To Thee, O God my  
               God, I will give praise upon  
               the harp: why art thou sad,  
               O my soul? and why dost  
               thou disquiet me?

*R.* Hope in God, for I  
               will still give praise to Him:  
               the salvation of my counten-  
               ance, and my God.

## ANTIPHON.

*Ps* 42, 4   *P.* I will go in to the Altar  
               of God.

*Ps* 42, 4   *R.* To God Who giveth  
               joy to my youth.

*Ps* 123, 8   *P.* Our help is in the

## CONFITEOR.

*General Confession made to*

1. Almighty God.                   *Ap* 4, 8

2. Blessed Mary ever a Virgin.   *Lu* 1, 27

3. Blessed Michael the Archangel.   *Da* 10, 13

4. Blessed John Baptist.           *Jn* 1, 6

5. St. Peter.                       *Jn* 21, 15

6. St. Paul.                       *Ac* 9, 1

7. All the Saints.               *Ap* 7, 9

8. To one another.               *Ja* 5, 16

*P.* Thou wilt turn, O God, and bring us to life.   *Ps* 84, 7

*R.* And Thy people shall rejoice in Thee.   *Ps* 84, 7

*P.* Show us, O Lord, Thy mercy.   *Ps* 84, 8

*R.* And grant us Thy salvation.   *Ps* 84, 8

*P.* Hear, O Lord, my prayer.   *Ps* 101, 1

*R.* And let my cry come to Thee.   *Ps* 101, 1

*P.* The Lord be with you.   *2 Ti* 3, 16

*R.* And with thy spirit.   *2 Ti* 4, 22

## OREMUS.

*Texts probably alluded to.*

I pray thee, O Lord, to take away the iniquity of Thy servant.   *2 K* 24, 10

Every one that shall touch the Altar shall be holy,   *Ex* 29, 37

*The Saints whose relics are under the Altar are invoked.*   *Ap* 6, 9

## INTROIT.

✠ Give glory to Him because He hath shown His mercy to you.   *To* 12, 6

\* The PROPER being taken from the Mass of the Blessed Trinity.

<p><b>Ps 8, 10</b> O Lord, our Lord, how admirable is Thy Name in all the earth!</p> <p><b>Mt 20, 31</b> <b>THE KYRIE ELEISON.</b> <b>P.</b> O Lord, have mercy on us.</p>	<p><b>R.</b> O Lord, have mercy on us. (<i>Nine times.</i>)</p> <p><b>THE ANGELICAL SONG.</b> Glory to God in the High- est: and on earth peace to men of good will.</p>	<p><b>Mt 20, 31</b></p> <p><b>Lu 2, 14</b></p>
--	--	--

## EPISTLE.

O THE depth of the riches of the wisdom and of the knowledge of God! How incomprehensible are His judgments, and how unsearchable His ways!—For who hath known the mind of the Lord? Or who hath been His counsellor?—Or who hath first given to Him, and recompense shall be made him?—For of Him, and by Him, and in Him, are all things: to Him be glory for ever, Amen.

**2 C 9, 15** **R.** Thanks be to God.

## GRADUAL.

**Da 3, 56-58** Blessed art Thou, O Lord,  
that beholdest the depths,  
and sittest upon the Cheru-  
bim.—Blessed art Thou, O  
Lord, in the firmament of  
Heaven; and worthy of  
praise for ever.

**Ap 19, 1** Alleluia, Alleluia.

**Da 3, 52** Blessed art Thou, O Lord,  
the God of our fathers,  
worthy to be praised for  
ever.

PRAYER BEFORE THE  
GOSPEL.

*An allusion to this passage in  
Isaiah.*

One of the Seraphim flew to me, and in his hand was a live coal, which he had taken with the tongs off the Altar.—And he touched my mouth and said: Behold, this hath touched thy lips, and thy iniquities shall be taken away, and thy sin shall be cleansed.

**P.** The Lord be with you. **2 T<sup>i</sup> 3, 16**

**R.** And with thy spirit. **2 T<sup>i</sup> 4, 22**

## THE HOLY GOSPEL.

✠ JESUS spoke to them, saying: All power is given to Me in Heaven and in earth.—Going therefore teach ye all nations: baptising them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost,—Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and behold I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world.

## THE NICENE CREED.

**He 11, 6** 1. I believe in One God,  
**1 C 8, 6** The Father  
**Ap 1, 8** Almighty,  
**Ex 20, 11** Maker of Heaven and

earth,  
And of all things visible and invisible.  
**2.** And in One Lord Jesus  
**Je 32, 17**  
**Ac 10, 36**  
**Mt 1, 21**

- Jn* 4, 25 Christ,  
*Jn* 1, 14 The Only-Begotten  
 Son of God,  
 1 *Jn* 4, 9 Born of the Father,  
 before all ages ;  
*Jn* 1, 4 God of God, Light of  
 Light,  
*Jn* 5, 18 True God of true God,  
*Jn* 8, 58 Begotten, not made,  
*Jn* 10, 30 Consubstantial with  
 the Father,  
*Jn* 1, 3 By Whom all things  
 were made.
3. Who for us men and  
 for our salvation  
*Jn* 3, 31 Came down from  
 Heaven,  
*Lu* 1, 35 And was incarnate by  
 the Holy Ghost  
*Lu* 2, 6-7 Of the Virgin Mary,  
*Jn* 1, 14 And was made man.  
*Mk* 15, 25 4. He was crucified also  
 for us ;  
*Mt* 27, 26 Suffered under Pon-  
 tius Pilate,  
*Mt* 27, 60 And was buried.  
*Mt* 28, 6 5. The third day He  
 rose again  
 1 *C* 15, 4 According to the  
 Scriptures.  
*Lu* 24, 51 6. And ascended into  
 Heaven,  
*Mk* 16, 19 Sitteth at the right  
 hand of the Father.
7. And He shall come *Mt* 25, 31  
 again with glory  
 To judge both the 2 *Ti* 4, 1  
 living and the dead ;  
 Of whose Kingdom *Lu* 1, 33  
 there shall be no  
 end.
8. And I believe in the *Jn* 14, 26  
 Holy Ghost,  
 The Lord (*Compare Is* 6, 8  
*with Ac* 28, 25),  
 Giver of Life, *Ro* 8, 2  
 Who proceedeth from *Jn* 15, 26  
 the Father  
 And the Son. *Ro* 8, 9  
 Who, together with  
 the Father and the  
 Son, is adored and  
 glorified.  
 Who spake by the 2 *Pt* 1, 21  
 Prophets.
9. And in One *Jn* 10, 18  
 Holy *Ep* 5, 26  
 Catholic *Ro* 10, 18  
 Apostolic Church. *Ep* 2, 20
10. I confess one Bap- *Ep* 4, 6  
 tism  
 For the remission of *Ac* 2, 38  
 sins.
11. And I look for the *Ro* 6, 5  
 Resurrection of the  
 dead.
12. And the Life of the *Mt* 25, 34  
 world to come.

## 2. The Offertory to the Canon.

## OFFERTORY.

(By allusion.)

2 *Pt* 1, 3 He hath given us most  
 great and precious promises :  
 that by these you may be  
 made partakers of the Divine  
 Nature.

*Ph* 4, 18 An odour of sweetness, an  
 acceptable Sacrifice, pleasing  
 God.

## PRAYER

*While incensing the Altar.*

*Ps* 140, 2-4 Let my prayer be directed  
 as incense in Thy sight : the

lifting up of my hands, as  
 Evening Sacrifice.—Set a  
 watch, O Lord, before my  
 mouth : and a door round  
 about my lips.—Incline not  
 my heart to evil words ; to  
 make excuses in sins.

## THE LAVABO.

I will wash my hands *Ps* 25, 6-  
 among the innocent : and will  
 10 compass Thy Altar, O Lord.

That I may hear the voice  
 of Thy praise : and tell of  
 all Thy wondrous works.

I have loved, O Lord, the beauty of Thy House : and the Place where Thy Glory dwelleth.

Take not away my soul, O God, with the wicked: nor my life with bloody men :

In whose hands are iniquities : their right hand is filled with gifts.

But as for me, I have walked in my innocence : redeem me, and have mercy on me.

My foot hath stood in the direct way : in the Churches

I will bless Thee, O Lord.

#### THE SUSCIPE.

##### Reference made to

1. The Passion of our Lord. *Mt 27, 1*
2. His Resurrection. *Mt 28, 1*
3. His Ascension. *Lu 24, 51*

#### PREFACE.

Holy, Holy, Holy, the Lord God of Hosts, all the earth is full of His Glory, Hosanna in the Highest. *Is 6, 3*  
 Blessed is He that cometh in the Name of the Lord : Hosanna in the Highest. *Mt 21, 9*  
*Mt 21, 9*

### 3. The Canon to the Communion.

#### CANON.

(Saints invoked.)

- |                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Lu 1, 27</i>   | 1. The Blessed Virgin. |
| <i>Mt 4, 18</i>   | 2. St. Peter.          |
| <i>Ro 1, 1</i>    | 3. St. Paul.           |
| <i>Mt 10, 2</i>   | 4. St. Andrew.         |
| <i>Mt 10, 3</i>   | 5. St. James.          |
| <i>Mt 10, 3</i>   | 6. St. John.           |
| <i>Mt 10, 3</i>   | 7. St. Thomas.         |
| <i>Mt 10, 3</i>   | 8. St. James.          |
| <i>Mt 10, 3</i>   | 9. St. Philip.         |
| <i>Mt 10, 3</i>   | 10. St. Bartholomew.   |
| <i>Mt 10, 3</i>   | 11. St. Matthew.       |
| <i>Mt 10, 4</i>   | 12. St. Simon.         |
| <i>Mt 10, 3</i>   | 13. St. Thaddeus.      |
| <i>2 Ti 4, 21</i> | 14. St. Linus.         |
| <i>Ph 4, 3</i>    | 15. St. Clement.       |

#### CONSECRATION.

*Mt 26, 26* He took bread, and blessed and broke : and gave to His disciples, and said : Take ye, and eat : This is My Body.

*Lu 22, 20* In like manner also after He had supped,

*Mt 26, 27-28* Taking the Chalice He gave thanks : and gave to them, saying : Drink ye all of this.—For This is My Blood of the New Testament

[The Mystery of Faith.—1 *Ti 3, 9.*], which shall be shed for many unto remission of sins.

#### AFTER THE CONSECRATION.

Reference made to the Sacri-  
fices of

1. Abel. *Ge 4, 4*
2. Abraham. *Ge 22, 1*
3. Melchisedech. *Ge 14, 18*

#### NOBIS QUOQUE PECCATORIBUS.

In which is mentioned

1. St. John. *Ap 1, 1*
2. St. Stephen. *Ac 6, 8*
3. St. Matthias. *Ac 1, 26*
4. St. Barnabas. *Ac 13, 2*

By reference.

Of Him, and by Him, and in Him are all things : to Him be glory for ever. Amen. *Ro 11, 36*

#### THE PATER NOSTER.

Our Father Who art in Heaven. *Mt 6, 9*

*Latreutic.*

1. Hallowed be Thy Name. *Mt 6, 9*
2. Thy Kingdom come. *Mt 6, 10*
3. Thy will be done on *Eucharistic.* *Mt 6, 10*

earth as it is in  
Heaven.

*Impetratory.*

*Lu* 11, 3 4. Give us this day our  
daily bread.

*Propitiatory.*

*Mt* 6, 12 5. And forgive us our  
trespasses, as we for-  
give others that tres-  
pass against us.

*Mt* 6, 13 6. And lead us not into  
temptation.

*Mt* 6, 13 7. But deliver us from  
evil. Amen.

*Ro* 15, 33 *P.* The peace of God be  
with you.

*2 Ti* 4, 22 *R.* And with thy spirit.

#### PRAYER

*While putting the Partiele  
into the Cha'ice.*

*By allusion.*

He that eateth My Flesh *Jn* 5, 55  
and drinketh My Blood hath  
Everlasting Life; and I will  
raise him up in the last day.

AGNUS DEI.

*Repeated thrice.*

Lamb of God Who taketh *Jn* 1, 29  
away the sins of the world,

Have mercy on us. *Is* 33, 2

Strike your breast three *Lu* 18, 13  
times.

Peace I leave with you, *Jn* 15, 27  
My peace I give unto you.

#### 4. The Communion to the end.

##### HOLY COMMUNION.

*Mt* 8, 8 Lord, I am not worthy  
that Thou shouldst enter  
under my roof: but only say  
the word, and my [soul]  
shall be healed.

*(Repeated thrice.)*

*Ps* 115, 12- What shall I render to the  
13 Lord for all the things that  
He hath rendered to me?—

I will take the Chalice of  
Salvation, and I will call

upon the Name of the Lord.

Praising I will call upon *Ps* 17, 4  
the Lord: and I shall be  
saved from my enemies.

##### POST-COMMUNION.

Bless the God of Heaven. *To* 12, 6

Give glory to Him in the  
sight of all that live, because  
He hath shown His mercy to  
you.

*P.* The Lord be with you, *2 Ti* 3, 16

*R.* And with thy spirit. *2 Ti* 4, 22

#### THE LAST GOSPEL.

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was *Jn* 1,  
with God, and the Word was God.—The same was in 1-5  
the beginning with God.—All things were made by  
Him: and without Him was made nothing that was  
made.—In Him was Life, and the Life was the Light of  
men:—And the Light shineth in darkness, and the  
darkness did not comprehend it.

There was a man sent from God, whose name was *Jn* 1,  
John.—This man came for a witness, to give testimony 6-8  
of the Light, that all men might believe through him.  
—He was not the Light, but was to give testimony of  
the Light.

That was the true Light, which enlighteneth every *Jn* 1,  
man that cometh into this world.—He was in the world, 9-13

and the world was made by Him, and the world knew Him not.—He came unto His own, and His own received Him not.—But as many as received Him, He gave them power to be made the sons of God, to them that believe in His Name.—Who are born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.

And THE WORD WAS MADE FLESH, AND DWELT *Jn 1*, AMONG US (and we saw His glory, the glory as it were 14 of the Only-begotten of the Father) full of grace and truth.

2 C 9, 15 R. Thanks be to God.

### 19.—PRAYERS AFTER MASS. \*

<p><i>Da 3, 57-74</i> All ye works of the Lord, bless the Lord: praise and exalt him above all for ever.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">I.</p> <p>O ye Angels of the Lord, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye heavens, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O all ye waters that are above the heavens, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O all ye powers of the Lord, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye sun and moon, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye stars of heaven, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O every shower and dew, bless ye the Lord.</p> <p>O all ye Spirits of God, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye fire and heat, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye cold and heat, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye dews and hoar-frosts, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye frost and cold, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye ice and snow, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye nights and days, bless the Lord.</p>	<p>O ye light and darkness, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye lightnings and clouds, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O let the earth bless the Lord: let it praise and exalt Him above all for ever.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">II.</p> <p>O ye mountains and hills, <i>Da 7, 75-83</i> bless the Lord.</p> <p>O all ye things that spring up in earth, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye fountains, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye seas and rivers, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye whales, and all that move in the waters, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O all ye fowls of the air, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O all ye beasts and cattle, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye sons of men, bless the Lord.</p> <p>O let Israel bless the Lord: let them praise and exalt Him above all for ever.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">III.</p> <p>O ye Priests of the Lord, <i>Da 3, 84-88</i> bless the Lord.</p> <p>O ye servants of the Lord, bless the Lord.</p>
--	---

\* Ex Missale Romano.



O ye spirits and souls of power.  
the just, bless the Lord.

O ye holy and humble of heart, bless the Lord.

O Ananias, Azarias, and Misael, bless ye the Lord : praise and exalt Him above all for ever.

*Da 3, 56* Blessed art Thou, O Lord, in the firmament of Heaven. and worthy of praise and glorious for ever.

IV.

*Ps 150, 1-5* Praise ye the Lord in His Holy Places : praise ye Him in the firmament of His

Praise ye Him for His mighty acts : praise ye Him according to the multitude of His greatness.

Praise Him with sound of trumpet : praise Him with psalttery and harp.

Praise Him with timbrel and choir : praise Him with strings and organs.

Praise Him on high sounding cymbals : praise Him on cymbals of joy : let every spirit praise the Lord. Alleluia.

PATER NOSTER.

FAITH.	Our Father Who art in Heaven, hallowed be Thy Name.	<i>Mt 6, 9</i>
HOPE.	Thy Kingdom come.	<i>Mt 6, 10</i>
CHARITY.	Thy will be done on earth, as it is in Heaven.	<i>Mt 6, 10</i>
TEMPERANCE.	Give us this day our daily bread.	<i>Lu 11, 3</i>
JUSTICE.	And forgive us our trespasses, as we forgive them that trespass against us.	<i>Mt 6, 12</i>
PRUDENCE.	And lead us not into temptation.	<i>Mt 6, 13</i>
FORTITUDE.	But deliver us from evil. Amen.	<i>Mt 6, 13</i>

20.—THE TEMPLE AND THE HOLY THINGS.

3 <i>K 6, 1</i>	1. The Temple.	12. The Crucifix.	<i>Jn 19, 18</i>
<i>Le 4, 6</i>	2. The Sanctuary.	13. The Baptismal Font, or Brazen Laver.	<i>Ex 30, 18</i>
<i>Le 6, 13</i>	3. The Lamp of the Sanctuary.	14. Sacred Images.	3 <i>K 6, 23</i>
<i>He 13, 10</i>	4. The Altar of Sacrifice.	15. Divers Figures and Carvings.	3 <i>K 6, 29</i>
<i>He 9, 2</i>	5. The Tabernacle.	16. The Book.	<i>Ap 5, 1</i>
<i>Ex 26, 1</i>	6. The Curtain of the Tabernacle.	17. Holy Water.	<i>Ps 25, 6</i>
<i>Ex 39, 23</i>	7. The Sanctuary Bells.	18. Altar Flowers.	<i>Eci 24, 23</i>
<i>He 9, 2</i>	8. The Candlesticks.	19. Vestments.	<i>Le 8, 7</i>
<i>Ex 25, 29</i>	9. The Chalice.	20. Mitre.	<i>Le 8, 9</i>
<i>Mt 16, 37</i>	10. The Ciborium.	21. The Oil of Unction.	<i>Le 8, 10</i>
<i>Ex 2, 3</i>	11. The Monstrance.	22. The Twelve Pillars of the Temple.	<i>Ex 24, 4</i>
<i>Ex 15, 9</i>		23. Alms Box.	4 <i>K 12, 9</i>

21.—THE RESERVATION OF THE BLESSED SACRAMENT.

<i>Le 6, 13</i>	This is the Perpetual Fire which shall never go out on the Altar.	Moses said to Aaron : Take a vessel and put Manna into it, as much as a gomor can	<i>Ex 16, 33-34</i>
-----------------	---	---	---------------------

- hold: and lay it up before the Lord to keep unto your generations,—As the Lord commanded Moses. And Aaron put it in the Tabernacle to be kept.
- Ex 25, 30* Thou shalt set upon the Table Loaves of Proposition in My sight always.
- Nu 4, 7* The Loaves shall be always on the Table of Proposition.
- 2 P 2, 4* As thou didst with David so do with me, that I may build a House to the Name of the Lord, and for the continual setting forth of Bread.
- P 72, 23* I am always with thee.
- 2 P 7, 18* I have chosen and have sanctified this Place that My Name may be there for ever, and My Eyes and My Heart may remain there perpetually.
- 2 P 21, 7* He had promised to give a Lamp to him and to his sons for ever.
- P 23, 10* The Lord shall sit King for ever.
- P 60, 5* In Thy Tabernacle I shall dwell for ever.
- P 67, 17* There the Lord shall dwell unto the end.
- Here will I dwell, for I *P 131, 14* have chosen it.
- We have heard out of the *Jn 12, 34* Law that Christ abideth for ever.
- I set the Lord always in *P 15, 8* my sight: for He is at my right hand, that I be not moved.
- I foresaw the Lord before *Ac 2, 25* my face always.
- Behold I am with you all *Mt 28, 20* days, even to the consummation of the world.
- SILENCE IN THE CHURCHES.**
- The Lord is in His Holy *Ha 2, 20* Temple: let all the earth keep silence before Him.
- Let all flesh be silent at *Za 2, 13* the Presence of the Lord.
- Assemble yourselves, and *Je 8, 14* let us enter into the fenced cities, and let us be silent there.
- He shall sit solitary and *La 3, 28* hold His peace, because He hath taken it upon Himself.
- Hold your peace a little *Jb 13, 13* while that I may speak whatsoever My Mind shall suggest to Me.
- He will be silent in His *So 3, 17* love.

## 22.—THE TABERNACLE, THE DWELLING-PLACE OF CHRIST.

- Ex 25, 8* They shall make Me a Sanctuary, and I will dwell in the midst of them.
- Ex 29, 43* The Altar shall be sanctified by My Glory.
- Ex 29, 44-46* I will sanctify also the Tabernacle of the Testimony with the Altar.—And I will dwell in the midst of the children of Israel, and will be their God:—And they shall know that I am the Lord their God, Who have brought them out of the land of Egypt, that I might abide among them, I the Lord their God.
- I will set My Tabernacle *Le 26, 11-* in the midst of you, and My *12* soul shall not cast you off.—I will walk among you, and will be your God, and you shall be My people.
- The word of the Lord *3 K 6, 11-* came to Solomon, saying:— *13* This House, which thou build-

est, if thou wilt walk in My statutes, and execute My judgments, and keep all My commandments, walking in them, I will fulfil My word to thee which I spoke to David thy father.—And I will dwell in the midst of the children of Israel, and will not forsake My people Israel.

3 K 8 13 Building, I have built a House for Thy Dwelling, to be Thy most firm Throne for ever.

2 P 6, 2 I have built a House to His Name, that He might dwell there for ever.

Is 16, 5 A Throne shall be prepared in mercy, and One shall sit upon it in truth in the Tabernacle of David.

Ap 21, 2-3 I John saw the Holy City the new Jerusalem coming down out of Heaven from God, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.—And I heard a great Voice from the Throne, saying: Behold the Tabernacle of God with men, and He will dwell with them. And they shall be his people: and God Himself with them shall be their God.

Ex 33, 14 My Face shall go before thee, and I will give thee rest.

Ex 40, 14-19 Moses did all that the Lord had commanded.—So in the first month of the second year, the first day of the month, the Tabernacle was set up,—And Moses reared it up, and placed the boards, and the sockets and the bars, and set up the pillars,—And spread the roof over the Tabernacle, putting over it a cover, as the Lord had commanded.—And he put the testimony in

the Ark, thrusting bars underneath, and the Oracle above.—And when he had brought the Ark into the Tabernacle, he drew the veil before it to fulfil the commandment of the Lord.

And he set the Table in the Tabernacle of the Testimony Ex 40, 20-30

at the north side without the veil,—Setting there in order the Loaves of Proposition, as the Lord had commanded Moses.—He set the candlestick also in the Tabernacle of the Testimony, over-against the Table on the south side,—Placing the Lamps in order, according to the precept of the Lord.—He set also the Altar of gold under the roof of the Testimony over-against the veil,—And burnt upon it the incense of spices, as the Lord had commanded Moses.—And he put also the hanging in the entry of the Tabernacle of the Testimony,—And the Altar of Holocaust of the entry of the Testimony, offering the Holocaust, and the Sacrifices upon it, as the Lord had commanded.—And he set the Laver between the Tabernacle of the Testimony and the Altar, filling it with water.—And Moses and Aaron, and his sons washed their hands and feet,—When they went into the Tabernacle of the Covenant, and went to the Altar, as the Lord had commanded Moses.

He set up also the Court Ex 40, 31-36 round about the Tabernacle and the Altar, drawing the hanging in the entry thereof. After all things were perfected,—The cloud covered

the Tabernacle of the Testimony, and the glory of the Lord filled it.—Neither could Moses go into the Tabernacle of the Covenant, the cloud covering all things and the Majesty of the Lord shining, for the cloud had covered all.—If at any time the cloud removed from the Tabernacle, the children of Israel went forward by their troops:—If it hung over, they remained in the same place.—For the cloud of the Lord hung over the Tabernacle by day, and a fire by night, in the sight of all the children of Israel throughout all their mansions.

### 23.—THE LAMP OF THE SANCTUARY.

- Ex 27, 20-21* Command the children of Israel that they bring thee the purest oil of the olives, and beaten with a pestle: that a lamp may burn always.—In the Tabernacle of the Testimony, without the veil that hangs before the Testimony. And Aaron and his sons shall order it, that it may give light before the Lord until the morning. It shall be a perpetual observance throughout their successions among the children of Israel.
- Ex 25, 6* These are the things you must take, oil to make lights, &c.
- Le 24, 1-4* The Lord spoke to Moses, saying:—Command the children of Israel, that they bring unto thee the finest and clearest oil of olives, to furnish the lamps continually,—Without the veil of the Testimony in the Tabernacle of the Covenant. And Aaron shall set them from evening until morning before the Lord, by a perpetual service and rite in your generations.—They shall be set upon the most pure candlestick before the Lord continually.
- Nu 8, 1-4* The Lord spoke to Moses, saying:—Speak to Aaron, and thou shalt say to him: When thou shalt place the seven lamps, let the candlestick be set up on the south side. Give orders therefore that the lamps look over-against the north, towards the Table of the Loaves of Proposition, over-against that part shall they give light, towards which the candlestick looketh.—And Aaron did so, and he put the lamps upon the candlestick, as the Lord had commanded Moses.—Now this was the work of the candlestick, it was of beaten gold, both the shaft in the middle, and all that came out of both sides of the branches: according to the pattern which the Lord had shown to Moses, so he made the candlestick.
- Thou art my Lamp, O 2 K 22, 29  
 Lord: and Thou, O Lord, wilt enlighten my darkness.
- I have prepared a Lamp Ps 131, 17  
 for My Anointed.
- Thou lightest my Lamp, O Ps 17, 29  
 Lord
- The Lamb is the Lamp Ap 21, 23-24  
 thereof.—And the nations shall walk in the light of it.
- Behold a candlestick all of gold, and its Lamp upon the top of it. Za 4, 2

## 24.—THE VESTMENTS OF THE PRIEST SHOW FORTH THE PASSION AND DEATH OF OUR LORD.

<i>Jn</i> 19, 2	1. THE TONSURE	Crowned with thorns.
<i>Lu</i> 22, 64	2. THE AMICE	Blindfolded.
<i>Lu</i> 23, 11	3. THE ALB	Clothed with a white garment.
<i>Lu</i> 22, 54	4. THE GIRDLE	Bound in the Garden.
<i>Jn</i> 18, 24	5. THE MANIPLE	Fettered like a Malefactor.
<i>Jn</i> 19, 17	6. THE STOLE	Led by a cord to Calvary.
<i>Jn</i> 19, 5	7. THE CHASUBLE	Clothed with a purple garment.
<i>Mk</i> 15, 24	8. THE CROSS ON THE CHASUBLE	Crucified.
<i>Jn</i> 19, 40	9. THE ALTAR CLOTHS	Wrapped in fine linen for burial.

Represents Jesus as

## 25.—ACCESSORY RITES AND CEREMONIES.

1. INCENSE.	
<i>Ex</i> 30, 34-38	<p>The Lord said to Moses : Take unto thee spices, stacte, and onycha, galbanum of sweet savour, and the clearest frankincense, all shall be of equal weight.—And thou shalt make incense compounded by the work of the perfumer, well tempered together, and pure, and most worthy of sanctification.—And when thou hast beaten all into very small powder, thou shalt set of it before the Tabernacle of the Testimony, in the place where I will appear to thee. Most holy shall this incense be unto you.—You shall not make such a composition for your own uses, because it is holy to the Lord.—What man soever shall make the like, to enjoy the smell thereof, he shall perish out of his people.</p> <p><i>Ex</i> 30, 7-8 Aaron shall burn sweet-</p>
	<p>smelling incense upon it in the morning. When he shall dress the lamps, he shall burn it :—And when he shall place them in the evening, he shall burn an Everlasting Incense before the Lord throughout your generations.</p> <p>They offer Holocausts to the Lord, every day, morning and evening, and incense made according to the ordinance of the law.</p> <p>It came to pass when he executed the priestly function in the order of his course before God,—According to the custom of the priestly office, it was his lot to offer incense, going into the Temple of the Lord.—And all the multitude of the people was praying without, at the hour of incense.</p>
	<p>2. SPRINKLING OF PERSONS AND BLESSING OF THINGS.</p> <p>He took the Blood and sprinkled it upon the people,</p>

*Ex* 24, 8

and said : This is the Blood of the Covenant which the Lord hath made with you concerning all these words.

*Ex 29, 19-21* Thou shalt take also the other ram, upon whose head Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands.—And when thou hast sacrificed him, thou shalt take of his Blood, and put upon the tip of the right ear of Aaron and of his sons, and upon the thumbs and great toes of their right hand and foot, and thou shalt pour the Blood upon the Altar round about.—And when thou hast taken of the Blood, that is upon the Altar, and of the oil of unction, thou shalt sprinkle Aaron and his vesture, his sons and their vestments.

*Le 8, 23-24* When Moses had immolated it, he took of the Blood thereof, and touched the tip of Aaron's right ear, and the thumb of his right hand, and in like manner also the great toe of his right foot.—He offered also the sons of Aaron : and when with the Blood of the ram that was immolated, he had touched the tip of the right ear of every one of them, and the thumbs of their right hands, and the great toes of their right feet, the rest he poured on the Altar round about :—And taking the ointment, and the Blood that was upon the Altar, he sprinkled Aaron and his vestments, and his sons, and their vestments with it.

*Ex 40, 28-30* He set the laver between the Tabernacle of the Testimony and the Altar, filling it with water.—And Moses

and Aaron, and his sons washed their hands and feet, —When they went into the Tabernacle of the Covenant, and went to the Altar, as the Lord had commanded Moses.

### 3. READING HOLY SCRIPTURE IN CHURCH.

Taking the Book of the Covenant, he read it in the hearing of the people : and they said : All things that the Lord hath spoken we will do, we will be obedient. *Ex 24, 7*

### 4. HOLY WATER.

Peter saith to Him : Thou shalt never wash my feet. *Jn 13, 8-10*  
Jesus answered him : If I wash thee not, thou shalt have no part with Me.—Simon Peter saith to Him : Lord, not only my feet, but also my hands and my head.—Jesus saith to him : He that is washed, needeth not but to wash his feet, but is clean wholly. And you are clean, but not all.

### 5. THE SANCTUARY BELL.

Beneath at the feet of the same tunick round about, thou shalt make as it were pomegranates, of violet, and purple, and scarlet twice dyed, with little bells set between :—So that there shall be a golden bell and a pomegranate, and again another golden bell and a pomegranate.—And Aaron shall be vested with it in the office of his Ministry, that the sound may be heard, when he goeth in and cometh out of the Sanctuary, in the sight of the Lord, and that he may not die. *Ex 28, 33-35*

He exalted Aaron his brother, and like to himself of *Ecc 45, 7-11*

the Tribe of Levi :—He made an Everlasting Covenant with him, and gave him the Priesthood of the nation, and made him blessed in glory,—And he girded him about with a glorious girdle, and clothed him with a robe of glory, and crowned him with majestic attire.—He put upon him a garment to the feet, and an ephod, and he compassed him with many little bells of gold all round about,—That as he went there might be a sound, and a noise made that might be heard in the Temple, for a memorial to the children of his people.

## 26.—BENEDICTION OF THE BLESSED SACRAMENT.

- |                  |  |   |                                    |
|------------------|--|---|------------------------------------|
| <i>Lu</i> 26, 50 | Jesus led them as far as Bethania : and lifting up His hands He blessed them.        | I will bless thee.<br>The Lord bless thee and keep thee.  | <i>Ge</i> 12, 2<br><i>Nu</i> 6, 24 |
| <i>2 P</i> 6, 3  | The King turned His face, and blessed all the multitude of Israel.                   | The Lord show His Face to thee, and have mercy on thee.   | <i>Nu</i> 6, 25                    |
| <i>At</i> 33, 1  | Moses blessed the children of Israel.  | The Lord turn His Countenance to thee, and give thee peace.   | <i>Nu</i> 6, 28                    |
| <i>Pz</i> 133, 3 | May the Lord out of Sion bless thee, He that made heaven and earth.                  | They shall invoke My Name, and I will bless them.   | <i>Nu</i> 6, 27                    |
| <i>Pv</i> 10, 22 | The blessing of the Lord maketh men rich.  | Now, O Lord God, bless the house of Thy servant,  | <i>2 K</i> 7, 29                   |
| <i>Ez</i> 34, 26 | I will make them a blessing round about My Hill. There shall be showers of blessing. | that it may endure for ever before Thee : because Thou, O Lord God, hast spoken it, and with Thy blessing let the house of Thy servant be blessed for ever. |                                    |
| <i>Ge</i> 49, 25 | The Almighty shall bless thee with the blessings of Heaven above.                    |   |                                    |

## 27.—PERPETUAL ADORATION OF THE BLESSED SACRAMENT.\*

- |                 |  |  |                   |
|-----------------|--|--|-------------------|
| <i>2 P</i> 9, 7 | Happy are Thy men, and happy are Thy servants who stand always before Thee and hear Thy wisdom.                                      | I will take delight in the Lord.   | <i>Pz</i> 103, 34 |
| <i>Nu</i> 1, 53 | The Levites shall pitch their tents round about the Tabernacle, and they shall keep watch and guard the Tabernacle of the Testimony. | Blessed is he whom Thou hast chosen, and taken to Thee : he shall dwell in Thy Courts. We shall be filled with the good things of Thy House. | <i>Pz</i> 64, 5   |
| <i>Nu</i> 9, 23 | They keep the watches of the Lord.   | They abode in their watches round about the Temple of the Lord.  | <i>1 P</i> 9, 27  |
|                 |  | They dwelt in the cham-  | <i>1 P</i> 9, 33  |

\* The chief feature in the work of the Brotherhood of the Divine Expiation.

- bers by the Temple, that they might serve continually day and night in their Ministry.
- Os* 14, 8 They shall be converted that sit under His shadow: they shall live upon Wheat, and they shall blossom as a vine.
- 3 K* 10, 8 Blessed are Thy men, and blessed are Thy servants who stand before Thee always.
- Eci* 33, 12 Some of them He hath sanctified, and set near Himself.
- 2 P* 29, 11 My sons, be not negligent: the Lord hath chosen you to stand before Him, and to minister to Him, and to worship Him, and to burn incense to Him.
- 1 K* 2, 30 Thus saith the Lord: Whosoever shall glorify Me, him will I glorify: but they that despise Me shall be despised.
- Da* 6, 16 Thy God, Whom thou always servest, He will deliver thee.
- Ps* 83, 2-5 How lovely are Thy Tabernacles, O Lord of Hosts!—My soul longeth and fainteth for the Courts of the Lord. My heart and my flesh have rejoiced in the Living God.—For the sparrow hath found herself a House, and the turtle a Nest for herself where she may lay her young ones: Thy Altars, O Lord of Hosts,
- my King and my God.—Blessed are they that dwell in Thy House, O Lord: they shall praise Thee for ever and ever.
- Be continually with a Holy Man. *Eci* 37, 15
- Behold, O God our Protector: and look on the face of Thy Christ.—For better is one day in Thy Courts above thousands. I have chosen to be an abject in the House of my God, rather than to dwell in the tabernacles of sinners. *Ps* 83, 10-11
- Before the Tabernacle of the Covenant shall Moses and Aaron camp, with their sons, having the custody of the Sanctuary, in the midst of the children of Israel. What stranger soever cometh unto it, shall be put to death. *Nu* 3, 38
- All that were in distress and under affliction of mind gathered themselves together unto Him: and He became their Prince. *1 K* 22, 2
- She departed not from the Temple, by fastings and prayers serving night and day. *Lu* 2, 37
- They were always in the Temple, praising and blessing God. *Lu* 24, 53
- Day and night shall you remain in the Tabernacle, observing the watches of the Lord. *Le* 8, 35

## 28.—NOCTURNAL ADORATION.\*

- Ps* 133, 3-4 In the nights lift up your hands to the Holy Places, and bless ye the Lord.—May the Lord out of Sion bless thee, He that made heaven and earth.†
- One of the ancients said to me: These that are clothed in white robes, who are they? *Ap* 7, 13-15

\* A Union of Adorers was founded in Rome in 1810 for the purpose of keeping up a night-watch in the Churches where the Blessed Sacrament was exposed.

† This *Ps.* 133 was used on relieving guard in the Temple at night, the first two verses being said by one Priest, and the other two replied by those who were going away.



and whence came they?—

And I said to him: My lord, thou knowest. And he said to me: These are they who are come out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and have made them white in the Blood of the Lamb.—Therefore they are before the Throne of God, and they serve Him day and night in His Temple.

*Lu* 6, 12 Jesus went up into a mountain to pray, and He passed the whole night in the prayer of God.

*Ps* 118, 62 I rose at midnight to give praise to Thee.

*Ca* 3, 1 By night I sought Him Whom my soul loveth.

*Jn* 3, 2 Nicodemus came to Jesus by night.

*Ps* 118, 55 In the night I have remembered Thy Name, O Lord.

*Ps* 76, 3 In the day of my trouble I sought God, with my hand lifted up to Him in the night, and I was not de-

ceived.

Weeping she hath wept in the night, and her tears are on her cheeks. *La* 1, 2

Arise, give praise in the night, in the beginning of the watches: pour out thy heart like water before the face of the Lord. *La* 2, 19

My soul hath desired Thee in the night: yea, and with my spirit within me in the morning early I will watch to Thee. *Is* 26, 9

Samuel cried unto the Lord all night. *1 K* 15, 11

As a lion he cried out, I am upon the Watch-Tower of the Lord, standing continually by day: and I am upon my ward, standing whole nights. *Is* 21, 8

In the daytime, He was teaching in the Temple: but at night, going out, He abode in the Mount that is called Olivet. *Lu* 21, 37

There shall be no night there. *Ap* 21, 25

I was in many watchings. *2 C* 11, 27

## 29.—“THE FORTY HOURS’” PRAYER AND ADORATION.\* TEXTS FOR MEDITATION FOR EACH HOUR.

### I.

*Is* 8, 10 God is with us.

*Is* 44, 5 He that made thee shall rule over thee: the Lord of Hosts is His Name: and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel shall be called the God of all the earth.

*2 P* 20, 4 Judea gathered themselves together to pray to the Lord, and all came out of their cities to make supplication to Him.

As we know not what to do, we can only turn our eyes to Thee. *2 P* 20, 12

He is alive. *Lu* 24, 23

### II.

Rejoice, and praise, O thou inhabitant of Sion: for great is He that is in the midst of Thee, the Holy One of Israel. *Is* 12, 6

A Son is GIVEN to us. *Is* 9, 6

What is the matter, Esther? I am thy Brother, *Es* 15, 12-14

\* This devotion was instituted by Clement VIII. for appeasing the Anger of God vehemently provoked in his days by the wickedness of men.

fear not.—Thou shalt not die : for this law is not made for thee, but for all others.—Come near then, and touch the Sceptre.

*Ex* 8, 4 He held out the Golden Sceptre with his hand, which was the sign of clemency.

## III.

*Ap* 1, 18 Behold I am alive for evermore.

*Is* 40, 9 Say to the Cities of Juda : Behold thy God.

*Nu* 10, 35 When the Ark was lifted up, Moses said : Arise, O Lord and let Thy enemies be scattered, and let them that hate Thee flee from before Thy Face.

*Is* 30, 23 The Bread of the Corn of the Land shall be most plentiful.

*Nu* 14, 9 The Lord is with us, fear ye not.

*Mt* 28, 20 Behold I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world.

## IV.

*Ps* 77, 24-25 He had opened the doors of Heaven, and had rained down Manna upon them to eat, and had given them the Bread of Heaven.—Man ate the Bread of Angels ; He sent them Provisions in abundance.

*Is* 30, 20 Thy eyes shall see thy Teacher.

*Ps* 80, 17 He fed them with the Fat of Wheat.

*Lm* 2, 34 Behold He is set for a Sign which shall be contradicted.

## V.

*Nu* 4, 15 When Aaron and his sons have wrapped up the Sanctuary and the Vessels thereof at the removing of the camp, then shall the sons of Caath enter in to carry the things

wrapped up : and they shall not touch the Vessels of the Sanctuary, lest they die.

When Moses entered into the Tabernacle of the Covenant, to consult the Oracle, he heard the Voice of One speaking to him from the Propitiatory.

What hast thou that thou hast not received ?

## VI.

Let us fetch unto us the Ark of the Covenant of the Lord from Silo, and let it come in the midst of us, that it may save us from the hand of our enemies.

My eyes are enlightened because I tasted a little of this Honey.

Thou shalt eat Bread at My Table always.

In the Ark was the golden pot that had Manna.

The vales shall abound with Corn.

The Beautiful Places of the wilderness.

## VII.

Let all the earth adore Thee.

Let the just feast, and rejoice before God.

Rejoice ye before Him, but the wicked shall be troubled at His Presence.

Wheresoever the Body shall be, there shall the eagles also be gathered together.

With the Holy, thou wilt be holy, and with the Innocent Man thou wilt be innocent.

No one shall appear with his hands empty before the Lord.

## VIII.

He hath set His Tabernacle in the sun. And He

as a Bridegroom coming out of His bride chamber.

*Ps* 21, 28 All the kindreds of the Gentiles shall adore in His sight.

*Mt* 25, 10 They that were ready went in.

*Ps* 42, 3-4 Send forth Thy light and Thy truth : they have conducted me, and brought me unto Thy Holy Hill and into Thy Tabernacles, — And I will go in to the Altar of God : to God Who giveth joy to my youth.

## IX.

*Ps* 42, 5-6 To Thee, O God my God, I will give praise upon the harp : why art thou sad, O my soul ? and why dost thou disquiet me ? — Hope in God, for I will still give praise to Him : the Salvation of my countenance and my God.

*Lu* 11, 3 Give us this day our daily Bread.

*Ps* 45, 5-6 The Most High hath sanctified His Own Tabernacle. — God is in the midst thereof.

*Ps* 49, 7 I am God thy God.

*Ps* 58, 17 Thou art my Refuge in the day of my trouble.

## X.

*Dt* 18, 13 Thou shalt be perfect and without spot before the Lord thy God.

*Ps* 60, 5 In Thy Tabernacle I shall dwell for ever. I shall be protected under the covert of Thy wings.

*Mt* 14, 24 The Boat in the midst of the sea was tossed by the waves.

*Ps* 71, 6 He shall come down like rain upon the fleece : and as showers falling gently upon the earth.

*Ps* 71, 9 Before Him the Ethiopians shall fall down : and His enemies shall lick the

ground.

## XI.

All nations shall serve *Ps* 71, 11 Him.

I am always with thee. *Ps* 72, 23

I am come to cast fire on *Lu* 12, 49 the earth.

I will compass Thy Altar, *Ps* 25, 6-7 O Lord, — That I may hear the voice of Thy praise.

I have loved, O Lord, the beauty of Thy House, and the Place where Thy Glory dwelleth. *Ps* 25, 8

His abode is in Sion. *Ps* 75, 3

I will build up Thy Throne unto generation and generation. *Ps* 88, 5

With desire I have desired *Lu* 22, 15 to eat this Pasch with you.

## XII.

In the Churches I will bless Thee, O Lord. *Ps* 25, 12

For Thy Name's sake Thou wilt nourish me. *Ps* 30, 4

The Lord thy God is a consuming fire, a jealous God. *Dt* 4, 24

O how great is the multitude of Thy sweetness, O Lord, which Thou hast hidden for them that fear Thee ! *Ps* 30, 20

Thou hast multiplied Thy wonderful works, O Lord my God : in Thy thoughts there is no one like to Thee. *Ps* 39, 6

O foolish and slow of heart to believe ! *Lu* 24, 25

## XIII.

As the hart panteth after the fountains of water : so my soul panteth after Thee, O God. *Ps* 41, 2

My soul hath thirsted after the strong Living God : when shall I come and appear before the Face of God ? *Ps* 41, 3

My tears have been my *Ps* 41, 4-5

bread day and night, whilst it is said to me daily: Where is Thy God?—These things I remembered, and poured out my soul in me: for I shall go over into the Place of the Wonderful Tabernacle, even to the House of God,

## XIV.

*Jn* 1, 16 Of His fulness we have all received.

*P* 2, 8 I am appointed King by Him over Sion His Holy Mountain.

*P* 5, 5 In the morning I will stand before Thee.

*P* 5, 8 I will come unto Thy House, I will worship towards Thy Holy Temple, in Thy fear.

*P* 10, 5 The Lord is in His Holy Temple.

*P* 15, 5 The Lord is the portion of my inheritance.

*P* 15, 8 I set the Lord always in my sight.

## XV.

*Jn* 5, 43 I am come in the Name of My Father.

*P* 67, 27 In the Churches bless ye God the Lord.

*P* 61, 9 Trust in Him, all ye congregation of people; pour out your hearts before Him: God is our Helper for ever.

*P* 62, 3 In the Sanctuary have I come before Thee to see Thy power and Thy Glory.

*P* 62, 2 O God my God, to Thee do I watch at break of day.

*Jn* 4, 25-26 The woman saith to Him: I know that the Messias cometh.—Jesus saith to her: I am He Who am speaking with thee.

## XVI.

*Eci* 13, 13 Keep not far from Him, lest thou be forgotten.

*Eci* 24, 26 Come over to Me all ye

that desire Me, and be filled with My fruits.

Thou shalt not appear empty in the sight of the Lord. *Eci* 35, 6

Thou hast given an Inheritance to them that fear Thy Name. *P* 60, 6

God so loved the world as to give His Only-Begotten Son. *Jn* 3, 16

I rose up and am still with thee. *P* 138, 18

## XVII.

They that approach to His Feet shall receive of His doctrine. *Dt* 33, 3

Go to Him early in the morning, and let thy foot wear the steps of his doors. *Eci* 6, 36

A faithful Friend is a strong defence, and he that hath found Him hath found a Treasure. *Eci* 6, 11

If any man thirst, let him come to Me and drink. *Jn* 7, 37

All the nations Thou hast made shall come and adore before Thee, O Lord: and they shall glorify Thy Name. *P* 85, 9

## XVIII.

His Throne shall endure as the sun before Me. *P* 88, 38

Blessed be the Lord out of Sion, Who dwelleth in Jerusalem. *P* 134, 21

Is not this Jesus the Son of Joseph? *Jn* 6, 42

Is not this David the King of the land? *1 K* 21, 11

As in a Bride-chamber shall He abide all the day long. *Dt* 33, 12

Loose thy shoes from off thy feet: for the Place whereon thou standest is holy. *Js* 5, 15

## XIX.

All the children of Israel came to the House of God, and sat and wept before the

Lord: and they fasted that day till the evening, and offered to Him holocausts, and victims of peace-offerings.

*Jn* 10, 10 I am come that you may have Life.

*Pv* 3, 26 The Lord will be at thy side, and will keep thy foot that thou be not taken.

*Pv* 8, 17 I love them that love Me.

*Pv* 9, 5 Come eat My Bread, and drink the Wine which I have mingled for you.

## XX.

*Os* 11, 9 I am God, the Holy One in the midst of thee.

*Os* 12, 5-6 Even the Lord the God of Hosts, the Lord is his Memorial:—Therefore turn thou to thy God, and hope in thy God always.

*Jn* 13, 1 He loved them unto the end.

*Pv* 14, 28 In the multitude of people is the dignity of the King.

*Nu* 18, 20 I am Thy Portion and Inheritance in the midst of the children of Israel.

## XXI.

*Nu* 16, 42-43 When there arose a sedition, and the tumult increased,—Moses and Aaron fled to the Tabernacle of the Covenant. And when they were gone into it, the cloud covered it, and the Glory of the Lord appeared.

*Jn* 12, 32 I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all things to Myself.

*Je* 1, 8 Be not afraid: for I am with thee to deliver thee, saith the Lord.

*Ex* 29, 45 I will dwell in the midst of the children of Israel and will be their God.

## XXII.

*Je* 3, 17 At that time Jerusalem shall be called the Throne

of the Lord.

I am with thee, saith the *Je* 30, 11 Lord, to save thee.

Their Leader shall be of themselves. *Je* 30, 21

You call me Master, and *Jn* 13, 13 Lord: and you say well, for so I am.

They shall know that I the Lord their God am with them, and that they are My people, the House of Israel: saith the Lord.

O Lord, Thou art our God, *2 P* 14, 11 let not man prevail against Thee.

## XXIII.

I will call for Corn and will multiply It, and will lay no famine upon you. *Ez* 36, 29

I will give you greater gifts than you had from the beginning. *Ez* 36, 11

I am the Vine. *Jn* 15, 5

Reverence My Sanctuary. *Le* 26, 2

I am the Lord.

The Altar shall be sanctified by My Glory. *Ex* 29, 43

I will set My Tabernacle in the midst of you. *Le* 26, 9

I will set My Sanctuary in the midst of them for ever.—*Ez* 37, 26-27

And My Tabernacle shall be with them: and I will be their God, and they shall be My people.

## XXIV.

As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself unless it abide in the vine, so neither can you unless you abide in Me: *Jn* 15, 4

Seek ye the Lord while He may be found: call upon Him while He is near. *Is* 55, 6

All you that thirst, come to the waters: and you that have no money, make haste, buy and eat: come ye, buy wine and milk without money, and without any price. *Is* 55, 1

## XXV.

*Is* 55, 2 Why do you spend money for that which is not Bread, and your labour for that which doth not satisfy you? Harken diligently to Me, and eat that which is good, and your soul shall be delighted in fatness.

*Is* 55, 3 Incline your ear and come to Me: hear and your soul shall live, and I will make an Everlasting Covenant with you, the faithful mercies of David.

*Jn* 19, 28 Jesus said, I thirst.

*Is* 41, 16 In the Holy One of Israel thou shalt be joyful.

## XXVI.

*Is* 43, 5 Fear not, for I am with thee.

*Is* 51, 5 My Just One is near at hand.

*Jr* 14, 8-9 O Expectation of Israel, the Saviour thereof in time of trouble: why wilt Thou be as a Stranger in the land, and as a wayfaring man turning in to lodge?—Why wilt Thou be as a Wandering Man, as a Mighty Man that cannot save? but Thou, O Lord, art among us, and Thy Name is called upon us, forsake us not.

*Ro* 10, 4 The end of the Law is Christ.

## XXVII.

*Is* 13, 11 For as the girdle sticketh close to the loins of a man, so have I brought close to Me all the House of Israel, and all the House of Juda, saith the Lord: that they might be My people.

*Is* 15, 20 I am with thee, to save thee, and to deliver thee, saith the Lord.

*Is* 17, 16 I am not troubled following thee for my Pastor.

O Israel, how great is the House of God: and how vast is the place of His possession! He humbled Himself. *Ba* 3, 24 *Ph* 2, 7

## XXVIII.

He shall feed His flock like a shepherd. *Is* 40, 11

Fear not, I am with thee. *Is* 41, 10

I am the Lord thy God, *Is* 41, 13-14

Who take thee by the hand, and say to thee: Fear not, I have helped thee.—Fear not, thou worm of Jacob, you that are dead of Israel: I have helped thee, saith the Lord: and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel.

The weapons of our warfare are mighty to God, bringing into captivity every understanding into the obedience of Christ. *2 C* 10, 5

## XXIX.

I am the Lord thy God, the Holy One of Israel, thy Saviour. *Is* 43, 3

I am the Lord, your Holy One, the Creator of Israel, your King. *Is* 43, 15

The Majesty of the Lord went into the Temple. *Ez* 43, 4

Verily Thou art a Hidden God, the God of Israel, the Saviour. *Is* 45, 15

Every knee shall be bowed to Me. *Is* 45, 24

Come ye near unto Me. Christ liveth in me. *Is* 48, 16 *Ga* 2, 20

## XXX.

I will give to them in My House, and within My walls, a place, and a Name better than sons and daughters: I will give them an Everlasting Name, which shall never perish. *Is* 56, 5

And the children of the stranger that adhere to the Lord, to worship Him, and to love His Name, to be His *Is* 56, 6-7

servants: every one that keepeth the Sabbath from profaning it, and that holdeth fast My Covenant:—I will bring them into My Holy Mount, and will make them joyful in My House of prayer: their Holocausts, and their Victims shall please Me upon My Altar: for My House shall be called the House of Prayer for all nations.

## XXXI.

*Jn* 6, 35 He that cometh to Me shall not hunger.

*Is* 62, 4 Thy Land shall be called Thy Land Inhabited.

*Le* 6, 12-13 The Fire on the Altar shall always burn.—This is the Perpetual Fire which shall never go out on the Altar.

*Is* 62, 10 Lift up the Standard to the people.

*Is* 66, 13 As one whom the mother caresseth, so will I comfort you, and you shall be comforted in Jerusalem.

*Is* 66, 23 All flesh shall come and adore before My Face.

## XXXII.

*Jn* 1, 29 Behold the Lamb of God. Behold Him Who taketh away the sin of the world.

*Ex* 48, 35 The Name of the City from that day was: THE LORD IS THERE.

*Da* 14, 4 Why dost thou not adore Bel? And he answered, and said to him: Because I do not worship idols made with hands, but the Living God that created Heaven and earth, and hath power over all flesh.

*C12*, 9 In Him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead corporally.

## XXXIII.

My eyes shall be open, and My ears attentive to the prayer of him that shall pray in this Place.—For I have chosen and have sanctified this Place, that My Name may be there for ever, and My Eyes and My Heart may remain there perpetually.

The Lord appeared to him by night, and said: I have heard thy prayer, and I have chosen this Place to Myself for a House of Sacrifice.

## XXXIV.

Hold the Mystery of Faith in a pure conscience.

I will be to it, saith the Lord, a wall of fire round about: and I will be in glory in the midst thereof.

I will dwell in the midst of thee.

He shall sit and rule upon His Throne, and He shall be a Priest upon His Throne.

Faith is the Substance of things to be hoped for.

## XXXV.

I will dwell in the midst of Jerusalem: and Jerusalem shall be called the City of Truth.

What is the Good Thing of Him, and what is His Beautiful Thing, but the Corn of the elect, and Wine springing forth virgins?

I am the Lord thy Helper.

He that hath His dwelling in the Heavens is the Visitor.

## XXXVI.

Receive the Ingrafted Word which is able to save your souls.

Moreover when all went to

the golden calves which Jeroboam king of Israel had made, he alone fled the company of all,—And went to Jerusalem to the Temple of the Lord, and there adored the Lord God of Israel, offering faithfully all his first-fruits, and his tithes.

*Tb* 10, 5 We [have] all things together in Thee alone.

## XXXVII.

*Ge* 46, 30 Now shall I die with joy, because I have seen Thy Face, and leave Thee alive.

*1 Pt* 2, 2 As new-born babes desire the Rational Milk without guile, that thereby you may grow unto Salvation.

*Jl* 3, 17 I am the Lord your God dwelling in Sion, My Holy Mountain.

*Dt* 7, 21 Thou shalt not fear them because the Lord thy God is in the midst of thee, a God Mighty.

## XXXVIII.

*Jl* 3, 21 The Lord will dwell in Sion.

*Pz* 72, 27 They that go far from Thee shall perish.

*Mi* 4, 7 The Lord will reign over them in Mount Sion from this time now and for ever.

*Ap* 21, 6 To him that thirsteth I will give of the Fountain of the Water of Life, gratis.

*Mi* 4, 9 Why art thou drawn

together with grief? Hast thou no King in thee?

## XXXIX.

The King of Israel the Lord is in the midst of thee, thou shalt fear evil no more. *So* 3, 15-17

—In that day it shall be said to Jerusalem: Fear not: to Sion: Let not thy hands be weakened. — The Lord thy God in the midst of thee is mighty, He will save: He will rejoice over thee with gladness, He will be silent in His love, He will be joyful over thee in praise.

The Throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it, and His servants shall serve Him. *Ap* 22, 3

## XL.

I will set up My Standard to the people. *Is* 49, 22

In that day man shall bow down himself to his Maker, and his eyes shall look to the Holy One of Israel. *Is* 17, 7

He is near that justifieth me. *Is* 50, 8

I, I Myself will comfort you. *Is* 51, 12

My people shall know My Name in that day: for I Myself that spoke, behold I am here. *Is* 52, 6

He that thirsteth, let him come: and he that will, let him take the Water of Life, gratis. *Ap* 22, 17

## 30.—THE EUCHARISTIC SUFFERINGS OF OUR LORD.

## 1. HIS OUTRAGED LOVE.

*Is* 65, 1-3 I said: Behold Me, behold Me, to a nation that did not call upon My Name.—I have spread forth My hands all the day to an unbelieving people, who walk in a way that is not good after their own thoughts.—A people

that continually provoke Me to anger before My Face.

I am become a laughing-stock all the day, all scoff at Me. *Is* 20, 7

My people have forgotten Me days without number. *Is* 2, 32

You have come, and stood before Me in this House, in



which My Name is called upon, and have said: We are delivered, because we have done all these abominations.—Is this House then, in which My Name hath been called upon, in your eyes become a den of robbers? I, I am He: I have seen it, saith the Lord.

*Je 11, 15* What is the meaning that My beloved hath wrought much wickedness in My House? shall the Holy Flesh take away from thee thy crimes, in which thou hast boasted?

*I's 30, 13* I am forgotten as One dead from the heart.

*I's 77, 10-11* In His Law they would not walk.—And they forgot His benefits, and His wonders that He had shown them.

*His Complaint to His Eternal Father.*

*La 3, 59-63* Thou hast seen, O Lord, their iniquity against Me: judge Thou My judgment.—Thou hast seen all their fury, and all their thoughts against Me.—Thou hast heard their reproach, O Lord, all their imaginations against Me.—The lips of them that rise up against Me, and their devices against Me all the day.—Behold their sitting down, and their rising up, I am their song.

*P's 68, 5* They are multiplied above the hairs of My head, who hate Me without cause. My enemies are grown strong who have wrongfully persecuted Me.

2. HIS UNVISITED SOLITUDE.

*P's 68, 21* I looked for one that would grieve together with Me, but there was none: and for one that would comfort

Me, and I found none,

This people have I formed for Myself: they shall show forth My praise.—But thou hast not called upon Me, O Jacob, neither hast thou laboured about Me, O Israel.—Thou hast bought Me no sweet cane with money, neither hast thou filled Me with the fat of thy victims. But thou hast made Me to serve with thy sins, thou hast wearied Me with thy iniquities.

I am become a stranger to My brethren, and an alien to the sons of My Mother.

I am counted among them that go down to the pit.—I am become like the slain sleeping in the sepulchres, whom thou rememberest no more.

He hath put My brethren far from Me, and My acquaintance like strangers have departed from Me.—My kinsmen have forsaken Me, and they that knew Me have forgotten Me.—They that dwell in My House, and My maid-servants have counted Me as a stranger, and I have been like an alien in their eyes.—I called My servant, and he gave Me no answer, I entreated him with My Own mouth.

3. HIS INSULTED ABJECTION.

His look was as it were hidden and despised, whereupon we esteemed Him not.

I am silent and as one that seeth not, and thou hast forgotten Me.

Because I called and you refused: I stretched out My hand, and there was none that regarded. I also will laugh at your destruction.

**Ps 54, 13-** If My enemy had reviled  
**15** Me, I would verily have borne with it. And if he that hated Me had spoken great things against Me: I would perhaps have hidden Myself from him.—But thou a man of one mind, My familiar,—Who didst take sweet meats together with Me: in the House of God we walked with consent.

**Jb 12, 18-** Even fools despised Me,  
**19, 21** and when I was gone from them, they spoke against Me.—They that were some time My counsellors have abhorred Me: and he whom I loved most is turned against Me.—Have pity on Me, have pity on Me, at least you My friends.

#### 4. HIS HELPLESSNESS.

**Jb 26, 9** He withholdeth the face of His Throne, and spreadeth His cloud over it.

**1 K 19, 2** Thou shalt abide in a Secret Place, and shalt be hid.

**Lu 2, 12** You shall find the Infant wrapped in swaddling clothes [*the accidents of bread*], and laid in a manger.

**Ex 16, 13-** So it came to pass that in  
**15** the morning a dew lay round about the camp.—And when it had covered the face of the earth, it appeared in the wilderness small, and as it were beaten with a pestle, like unto the hoar-frost on the ground.—And when the children of Israel saw it, they said one to another: **MANHU!** which signifieth: What is this! for they knew not what it was. And Moses said to them: This is the bread which the Lord hath

given you to eat.

The works of the Highest **Eci 11, 4** only are wonderful, and His works are glorious, and secret, and hidden.

My friends and My neigh- **Ps 37, 13-**  
**16** bours have drawn near, and stood against Me. And they that were near Me stood afar off.—And they that sought My Soul used violence. And they that sought evils to Me spoke vain things, and studied deceits all the day long.—But I, as a deaf man, heard not: and as a dumb man not opening his mouth.—And I became as a man that heareth not: and that hath no reproofs in his mouth.

They have opened their **Ps 21, 14** mouths against Me, as a lion ravening and roaring.

Many dogs have encom- **Ps 21, 17**  
 passed Me: the council of the malignant hath besieged Me.

They have looked and **Ps 21, 18** stared upon Me.

My enemies have trodden **Ps 55, 3** on Me all the day long: for they are many that make war against Me.

#### 5. HIS CONTINUAL OBEDIENCE.

He was subject to them. **Lu 2, 51**

He humbled Himself, becoming obedient unto death, [*for in the Holy Mass He is "as it were slain"*—**Ap. 5, 6**].

By the obedience of One **Ro 5, 19** Man many shall be made just.

Josue said before them: **Jz 10, 12-**  
**13** Move not, O sun, towards Gabaon,—And the sun stood still. There was not before nor after so long a day, the Lord obeying the voice of a man.

- Is* 55, 4 Behold, I have GIVEN Him for a Leader and a Master to the Gentiles. He shall continue with the sun throughout all generations. *Ps* 71, 5

## 31.—PROSTRATE PRAYER AND ADORATION.

- Mk* 14, 35 When He was gone forward a little He fell flat on the ground : and He prayed that if it might be, the hour might pass from Him. head : and falling down prostrate before the Lord, she cried to the Lord. All the people fell upon their faces, and adored, and blessed up to Heaven Him that had prospered them. *1 M* 3, 55
- Nu* 20, 6 Moses and Aaron leaving the multitude, went into the Tabernacle of the Covenant, and fell flat upon the ground, and cried to the Lord, and said : O Lord God, hear the cry of this people, and open to them Thy Treasure, a fountain of living water, that being satisfied they may cease to murmur. And the glory of the Lord appeared over them. When Esdras was praying and beseeching and weeping, and lying before the Temple of God, there was gathered to him of Israel an exceedingly great assembly of men and women and children, and the people wept with much lamentation. *1 E* 10, 1
- 2 P* 20, 18 All the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell flat on the ground before the Lord and adored Him. There came wise men from the East.—And entering into the House, they found the Child, with Mary His Mother, and falling down they adored Him. *Mt* 2, 1, 11
- Jd* 9, 1 And when they were gone, Judith went into her Oratory : and putting on hair-cloth, laid ashes on her head. Esdras blessed the Lord : and all the people bowed down and adored God with their faces to the ground. *2 E* 8, 6

## 32.—PROCESSIONS OF THE BLESSED SACRAMENT.

- Js* 6, 6 Josue the son of Nun called the Priests, and said to them : Take the Ark of the Covenant : and let seven other Priests take the seven trumpets of the jubilee, and march before the Ark of the Lord. the Lord on all manner of instruments made of wood, on harps, and lutes, and timbrels, and cornets, and cymbals. (*See also Ps.* 67.) And all the ancients of Israel came, and the Priests took up the Ark,—And the Tabernacle of the Covenant, and all the vessels of the Sanctuary, and the Priests and the Levites carried them.—And King Solomon, and all the multitude of Israel, that were assembled unto Him went with him *3 K* 8, 3 8
- 2 K* 6, 1 David again gathered together all the chosen men of Israel, thirty thousand, to fetch the Ark of God, and all the vessels of the Sanctuary, and the Priests and the Levites carried them.—And King Solomon, and all the multitude of Israel, that were assembled unto Him went with him
- 2 K* 6, 4-5 And took it out of the house of Abinadab. Ahio went before the Ark.—David and all Israel played before

before the Ark, and they sacrificed sheep and oxen that could not be counted or numbered.

3 K 8, 6-7 And the Priests brought in the Ark of the Covenant of the Lord into its place, into the Oracle of the Temple, into the Holy of Holies under the wings of Cherubims — For the Cherubims spread forth their wings over the place of the Ark, and covered the Ark, and the staves thereof above.

2 K 8, 11-12 The Ark of the Lord abode in the house of Obbedom the Gethite three months: and the Lord blessed Obbedom, and all his household.—It was told King David, that the Lord had blessed Obbedom, and all that he had, because of the Ark of God. So David went, and brought away the Ark of God out of

the house of Obbedom into the City of David with great joy.

Jesus of Nazareth went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed by the devil, for God was with Him. *Ac 10, 33*

Tell ye the daughter of Sion: Behold thy King cometh to thee, meek. *Mt 21, 5*

And a very great multitude spread their garments in the way: and others cut boughs from the trees, and strewed them in the way.—And the multitudes that went before and that followed, cried, saying: Hosannah to the Son of David: Blessed is He that cometh in the Name of the Lord. *Mt 21, 8-9*

Going out He went according to His custom to the Mount of Olives. And His Disciples also followed Him. *Lu 22, 39*

### 33.—OTHER TYPES AND NAMES OF OUR LORD IN THE BLESSED SACRAMENT.

*Ge 9, 13* 1. The Rainbow — the sign of Peace.  
*Ge 22, 9* 2. A Bond binding the soul to God.  
*Ge 49, 26* 3. The Desire of the Everlasting Hills.  
*Ex 3, 2* 4. The Burning Bush.  
*Ex 12, 7* 5. The Shield against fiery darts.  
*Ex 12, 11* 6. The Pilgrim-staff.  
*Ex 13, 21* 7. The Pillar of Fire.  
*Ex 29, 43* 8. The Altar sanctified by My Glory.  
*Ex 16, 7* 9. The Giver of Glory.  
*Le 26, 11* 10. My Tabernacle in the midst of you.  
*Le 20, 7* 11. The Lord your God.  
*Le 6, 13* 12. The Perpetual Fire.  
*Nu 4, 15* 13. The Tabernacle of the Covenant.

14. The Fountain of the Sun. *Je 18, 17*  
 15. The Sword of Ged-eon. *Jg 7, 20*  
 16. The Hidden David. *1 K 20, 24*  
 17. Restorative of former strength. *1 K 30, 12*  
 18. The Cave of Odollam. *1 K 22, 1*  
 19. The Great Ivory Throne of God. *3 K 10, 18*  
 20. The Comfort of our Life. *To 10, 4*  
 21. The Light of our eyes. *To 10, 4*  
 22. A Refuge for the poor. *Ps 9, 10*  
 23. Lover of Souls. *Ps 8, 31*  
 24. A Defence against our Enemies. *Ps 22, 6*  
 25. Hidden in the Tabernacle. *Ps 26, 5*

- Ps* 28, 5      26. A Place of Protection.  
*Ps* 36, 39      27. Our Protector in the time of trouble.  
*Ps* 58, 17      28. Our Refuge in the day of trouble.  
*Ps* 67, 17      29. The Mountain in which God dwells.  
*Ps* 70, 3      30. The Place of strength.  
*Ps* 98, 5      31. The Footstool of God.  
*Ps* 110, 4      32. Memorials of the Wonders of God.  
*Pv* 2, 4      33. The Hidden Treasure.  
*Pv* 8, 18      34. All riches.  
*Pv* 9, 3      35. Our Place of safety.  
*Pv* 27, 10      36. A near Neighbour.  
*Ca* 5, 1      37. Our Sweetness.  
*Ca* 2, 14      38. The Dove in the cliffs of the rock.  
*Ca* 8, 2      39. Our Teacher.  
*W* 7, 15      40. The Director of the wise.  
*W* 7, 11      41. All good things.  
*W* 7, 15      42. The Guide of Wisdom.  
*W* 7, 14      43. An Infinite Treasure.  
*Is* 4, 2      44. The Bud of the Lord.  
*Is* 8, 8      45. O Emmanuel.  
*Is* 45, 15      46. Hidden God and Saviour.  
*Is* 49, 2      47. The Quiver.  
*Is* 60, 7      48. The House of My Majesty.  
*Is* 60, 13      49. The Place of My Sanctuary.  
*Je* 1, 13      50. The Boiling Caldron.  
*Je* 8, 22      51. The Physician.  
*Je* 5, 22      52. A Reason for Repentance.  
*Je* 8, 22      53. Balm of Galaad.  
*Je* 2, 37      54. Thy Trust.  
*Je* 3, 17      55. The Throne of God.  
*La* 1, 16      56. The Divine Comforter.  
*La* 1, 16      57. The Relief of the soul.  
*Je* 14, 8      58. A Stranger in the Land.  
59. Death to the sinner. *Da* 3, 48  
60. The Sanctuary of strength. *Da* 11, 31  
61. His Beautiful Thing. *Za* 9, 17  
62. The Hidden Sun. *2 M* 1, 22  
63. The Hidden Fire. *2 M* 1, 19  
64. The Great Lord of the world. *2 M* 12, 15  
65. The Divine Visitor. *2 M* 3, 39  
66. The Golden Sword. *2 M* 15, 16  
67. This is My Beloved Son. *Mt* 17, 5  
68. The Hidden Treasure. *Mt* 14, 44  
69. The Pearl of great price. *Mt* 14, 46  
70. Most stupendous of all Miracles. *Mt* 26, 26  
71. The Manger likened to the accidents containing Christ. *Lu* 2, 7  
72. God Himself. *Ap* 21, 3  
73. The Joy of Holy Simeon. *Lu* 2, 28  
74. Jesus found in the Temple. *Lu* 2, 46  
75. The Hem of His Garment. *Lu* 8, 44  
76. The Welcome Guest. *Lu* 19, 6  
77. The Kingdom of God. *Lu* 17, 20  
78. The Guest at Emmaus. *Lu* 24, 29  
79. Enlightener of the mind. *Lu* 24, 30  
80. The Supper Chamber. *Mk* 14, 13  
81. The Lamb of God. *Jn* 1, 29  
82. The Saviour of the world. *Jn* 4, 42  
83. Gift transcending all fulness. *Jn* 4, 10  
84. Pledge of Future Glory. *Jn* 6, 52  
85. Elevator of the soul. *Jn* 6, 58  
86. The Non plus ultra. *Jn* 6, 57  
87. The Hidden Jesus. *Jn* 8, 59  
88. The Good Shepherd. *Jn* 10, 11  
89. The Resurrection and the Life. *Jn* 11, 25

<i>Jn</i> 13, 1	90. Chief Memorial of Divine Love.	104. The Throne of Grace. <i>He</i> 4, 16
<i>Jn</i> 20, 15	91. The Gardener of the soul.	105. Anchor of Our Hope. <i>He</i> 6, 19
<i>Jn</i> 20, 28	92. My Lord and My God.	106. A New and Living Way. <i>He</i> 10, 20
<i>Ro</i> 11, 33	93. The Depths of Riches.	107. The Refuge for sinners. <i>He</i> 12, 22-24
1 <i>C</i> 2, 7	94. Hidden Wisdom.	108. The Book written without [accidents] and within [the Body of Christ]. <i>Ap</i> 5, 1
1 <i>C</i> 1, 9	95. The Fellowship of His Son.	109. Our Rest. <i>Ap</i> 6, 3
1 <i>C</i> 15, 28	96. All in all.	110. King of kings. <i>Ap</i> 19, 16
<i>Ga</i> 4, 1	97. Lord of all.	111. Lord of lords. <i>Ap</i> 19, 16
<i>Eph</i> 3, 8	98. Unsearchable Riches.	112. The End. <i>Ap</i> 21, 6
<i>Eph</i> 3, 4	99. The Mystery of Christ.	<i>i.e.</i> { The Mark to aim at. The Intention for labouring. The Crown to fight for.
<i>Eph</i> 3, 9	100. The Mystery hidden from Eternity.	
<i>Ph</i> 4, 13	101. Our Strength.	
<i>Cl</i> 3, 14	102. Bond of Charity.	
1 <i>Th</i> 3, 9	103. Mystery of Faith.	

## 34.—SACRAMENTALS.

1. HOLY WATER.		generations.
<i>Nu</i> 19, 17-18	They shall pour living waters . . . into a vessel.—And a man that is clean shall dip hyssop in them, and shall sprinkle therewith all the Tent and all the furniture, and the men that are defiled by touching the corpse of a man, or his bone, or his grave.	Let my prayer be directed as incense in Thy sight. <i>Ps</i> 140, 2
<i>Nu</i> 8, 7	Let them be sprinkled with the Water of Purification.	Taking the censer, which he hath filled with the burning coals of the Altar, and taking up with his hand the compounded perfume for incense, he shall go in within the veil into the Holy Place:—That when the perfumes are put upon the fire, the cloud and vapour thereof may cover the Oracle, which is over the Testimony, and he may not die. <i>Le</i> 16, 12-13
<i>Ps</i> 50, 4	Wash me yet more from my iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin.	These are the things you must take . . . spices for sweet smelling incense. <i>Ex</i> 25, 6
<i>Ps</i> 50, 7	Thou shalt sprinkle me with hyssop, and I shall be cleansed.	The oil of unction and the incense of spices in the Sanctuary, all things which I have commanded thee shall they make. <i>Ex</i> 31, 11
<i>Ex</i> 30, 1	Thou shalt make an Altar to burn incense.	All the multitude of the people was praying without, at the hour of incense. <i>Lk</i> 1, 10
<i>Ex</i> 30, 8	When he shall place them in the evening, he shall burn an everlasting incense before the Lord throughout your	

- Ap* 5, 8 When he had opened the Book, the four living creatures, and the four-and-twenty ancients fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints.
- Ap* 8, 3-4 Another Angel came, and stood before the Altar, having a golden censer: and there was given to him much incense, that he should offer of the prayers of all saints upon the Golden Altar, which is before the Throne of God. —And the smoke of the incense of the prayers of the saints ascended up before God, from the hand of the Angel.
3. THE ANGELUS.
- Lu* 1, 28 The Angel of the Lord declared unto Mary [*by inference*].
- Lu* 1, 31 And she conceived of the Holy Ghost [*by inference*].
- Lu* 1, 28 Hail, Mary.
- Lu* 1, 38 Behold the Handmaid of the Lord.
- Lu* 1, 38 Be it done to me according to Thy Word.
- Lu* 1, 28 Hail, Mary.
- Jn* 1, 14 The Word was made flesh.
- Jn* 1, 14 And dwelt amongst us.
- Lu* 1, 28 Hail, Mary.
4. SCAPULARS.
- Is* 61, 10 I will greatly rejoice in the Lord, and my soul shall be joyful in my God: for He hath clothed me with the garments of Salvation: and with the robe of justice He hath covered me, as a bridegroom decked with a crown, and as a bride adorned with her jewels.
- Is* 22, 21 I will clothe him with thy robe, and will strengthen him with thy girdle, and will give thy power into his hand.
- They put a scarlet robe *Mt* 27, 28 about Him.
- They put on Him a purple robe. *Jn* 19, 2
- Jesus came forth wearing the crown of thorns and the purple robe. *Jn* 19, 5
- White robes were given to every one of them one. *Ap* 6, 11
- One of the ancients answered, and said to me: These that are clothed in white robes, who are they? and whence came they? —And I said to him: My lord, thou knowest. And he said to me: These are they who are come out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and have made them white in the Blood of the Lamb. *Ap* 7, 13-14
5. ASHES.
- In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread till thou return to the earth, out of which thou wast taken: for dust thou art, and unto dust thou shalt return. *Ge* 3, 19
- Abraham answered, and said: Seeing I have once begun, I will speak to my Lord, whereas I am dust and ashes. *Ge* 18, 27
- Mardochai put on sack-cloth, strewing ashes on his head. *Es* 4, 1
- I reprehend myself, and do penance in dust and ashes. *Jb* 42, 6
- He hath fed me with ashes. *La* 3, 16
- Wo to thee, Corozain, woe to thee, Bethsaida: for if in Tyre and Sidon had been wrought the miracles that had been wrought in you, *Mt* 11, 21

they had long ago done penance in sack-cloth and ashes.

#### 6. PALM-BRANCHES.

*Jn* 12, 12-13 On the next day a great multitude, that was come to the festival day, when they had heard that Jesus was coming to Jerusalem,—Took branches of palm-trees, and went forth to meet Him, and cried: Hosanna, blessed is He that cometh in the Name of the Lord, the King of Israel.

*Ps* 91, 13 The just shall flourish like the palm-tree.

*3 K* 6, 29 All the walls of the Temple round about he carved with divers figures and carvings: and he made in them cherubim and palm-trees, and divers representations as it were standing out, and coming forth from the wall.

*Ap*, 7, 9 After this, I saw a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and tribes, and peoples, and tongues: standing before the Throne, and in sight of the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands.

#### 7. PAIN BENI.

*Le* 8, 31 Eat ye the loaves that are laid in the basket.

*1 K* 21, 6 The Priest gave him hallowed bread.

*Ge* 18, 5 I will set a morsel of bread, and strengthen ye your heart, afterwards you shall pass on.

#### 8. THE AVE MARIA.

*Lu* 1, 28 Hail [Mary], full of grace, the Lord is with thee: Blessed art thou amongst women.

*Lu* 1, 42 And blessed is the Fruit of thy womb [Jesus].

#### 9. GRACE AT TABLE (1 C 10, 31).

##### (1) *Before meals.*

*V.* The eyes of all

*R.* Hope in Thee, O Lord: *Ps* 144, 15-16 and Thou givest them meat in due season.—Thou openest Thy hand, and fillest with blessing every living creature.

O Lord, have mercy on us. *Mt* 20, 31  
[*Repeated thrice.*]

Our Father [*in secret*]. *Mt* 6, 9  
*P.* And lead us not into temptation.

*R.* But deliver us from evil. Amen. *Mt* 6, 13

##### (2) *After Meals.*

*P.* O Lord, have mercy on us. *Mt* 20, 31

*R.* Thanks be to God. *2 C* 9, 15

*P.* Let all Thy works, O Lord, praise Thee. *Ps* 144, 10

*R.* And let Thy saints bless Thee. *Ps* 144, 10

Miserere Psalm [*said Ps* 50, 2-*alternatim*]. *21*

O Lord, have mercy on us. *Mt* 20, 31  
[*Repeated thrice.*]

Our Father [*in secret*]. *Mt* 6, 9  
*P.* And lead us not into temptation.

*R.* But deliver us from evil. Amen. *Mt* 6, 13

*P.* He hath distributed, *Ps* 111, 9  
He hath given to the poor.

*R.* His justice remaineth for ever and ever. *Ps* 111, 9

*P.* I will bless the Lord at all times. *Ps* 33, 2

*R.* His praise shall always be in my mouth. *Ps* 33, 2

*P.* In the Lord shall my soul be praised. *Ps* 33, 3

*R.* Let the meek hear and rejoice. *Ps* 33, 3

*P.* O magnify the Lord with me. *Ps* 33, 4

*R.* And let us extol His Name together. *Ps* 33, 4

Our Father [*in secret*]. *Mt* 6, 9







**ST. JEREMIAS, THE PROPHET.**

**PATRON OF THE BROTHERHOOD OF THE DIVINE EXPIATION.**

My eye hath run down with streams of water, for the destruction  
of the daughter of my people. Lam. 3. 48.

THE DENIAL AND ITS CONSEQUENCES;  
THE RECONCILIATION;  
THE REBUILDING OF JERUSALEM, THE CITY  
OF PEACE.

1.—THE DENIAL OF OUR LORD IN THE BLESSED  
SACRAMENT.

THEY HAVE DENIED THE LORD,

AND SAID :

IT IS NOT HE.

*Je 5, 12.*

*Therefore*

GIRD THEE WITH SACKCLOTH, O DAUGHTER OF MY PEOPLE,  
AND SPRINKLE THEE WITH ASHES :

MAKE THEE MOURNING

AS

FOR AN ONLY SON,

A BITTER LAMENTATION.

*Je 6, 26.*

Many therefore of His disciples hearing it, said : This saying is hard, and who can hear it ?—After this many of His disciples went back ; and walked no more with Him.—*Jn 6, 61, 67*

My enemies have surrounded My soul. Their mouth hath spoken proudly. They have cast Me forth.—*Ps 17, 11*

They spoke ill of God : they said : Can God furnish a Table in the wilderness ?—Can He also give Bread, or provide a Table for His people ?—Therefore the Lord heard and was angry because they believed not in God.—*Ps 77, 19-22*

Ephraim hath compassed Me about with denials, and the

House of Israel with deceit.—*Os 11, 12*

They have cast away the Word of the Lord, and there, is no wisdom in them.—*Je 8, 9*

Whom hast thou blasphemed, and against Whom thou hast exalted thy voice, and lifted up thy eyes on high ? Against the Holy One of Israel.—*Is 37, 23*

My inheritance is become to Me as a lion in the wood : it hath cried out against Me.—*Je 12, 8*

The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master's crib, but Israel hath not known Me, and My people hath not understood.—*Is 1, 3*

Israel hath cast forth the Thing

that is Good.—*Os* 8, 3

Their Glory hath flown away like a bird.—*Os* 9, 11

The wrong done to Me and My Flesh be upon Babylon.—*Je* 51, 36

You rose up against Me with your mouth, and have derogated from Me by your words : I have heard them.—Thus saith the Lord God : When the whole earth shall rejoice, I will make thee a wilderness.—*Ex* 35, 13-14

Son of man, behold I take from thee the Desire of thy eyes with a stroke.—*Ez* 24, 16

They told him, saying : Joseph thy son is living : and he is Ruler in all the land of Egypt. Which when Jacob heard, he awaked as it were out of a deep sleep, yet did not believe them.—*Ge* 44, 26

Thou hast been mad against Me, and Thy pride hath come up to My ears : therefore I will put a ring through thy nose, and a bit between thy lips, and I will turn thee back by the way, by which thou camest.—*4 K* 19, 28

My Tabernacle is laid waste, all My cords are broken : My children are gone out from Me, and they are not : there is none to stretch forth My Tent any more, and to set up My curtains.—Because the pastors have done foolishly, and have not sought the Lord : therefore have they not understood, and all their flock is scattered.—*Je* 10, 20-21

He shall speak great things against the God of gods, and

shall prosper, till the wrath be accomplished.—*Da* 11, 36

He came unto His own, and His own received Him not.—*Ja* 1, 11

I am come in the Name of My Father, and you received Me not.—*Ja* 5, 43

My people have forsaken Me, the Fountain of Living Water.—*Je* 2, 13

My brethren have passed by Me, as the torrent that passeth swiftly in the valleys.—*Jb* 8, 15

It shall come to pass in that day, saith the Lord God, that the Sun shall go down at mid-day, and I will make the earth dark in the day of light.—*Am* 8, 9

Thou hast forsaken Me, thou art gone backward.—*Je* 15, 6

He said to His people : This is My Rest, refresh the weary, and this is My Refreshing : and they would not hear.\*—*Je* 28, 12

I sat alone because thou hast filled Me with threats.—*Je* 15, 17

He called the name of that place Temptation, because of the chiding of the children of Israel, and for that they tempted the Lord, saying : Is the Lord amongst us or not?—*Ez* 17, 7

I said : Behold Me, behold Me, to a nation that did not call upon My Name.—I have spread forth My hands all the day to an unbelieving people, who walk in a way that is not good after their own thoughts.—*Je* 65, 12

The Priests did not say :

\* Another rendering of this verse :—Still to this people will He speak.—Even He Who said to them : This is the Rest wherewith ye may the weary cause to rest ; and This is the Repose ; but they refused to hear.

"Where is the Lord?" and they that held the Law knew Me not.—*Je* 2, 8

They have turned their backs to Me, and not their faces.—*Je* 2, 27

Thou hast burst My bands, and thou saidst: I will not serve.—*Je* 2, 20.

You have all forsaken Me, saith the Lord.—*Je* 2, 29

Behold all that fight against Thee shall be confounded and ashamed, they shall be as nothing, and the men shall perish that strive against Thee.—Thou shalt seek them, and shalt not find, the men that resist Thee: they shall be as nothing: and as a thing consumed the men that war against Thee.—*Je* 41, 11-12

See ye the Word of the Lord: Am I become a wilderness to Israel, or a lateward springing land? Why then have My people said: We are revolted, we will come to Thee no more?—*Je* 2, 31

As a woman that despiseth her lover, so hath the House of Israel despised Me, saith the Lord.—*Je* 3, 20

My foolish people have not known Me.—*Je* 4, 22

All that the people speaketh is a conspiracy.—*Je* 8, 12

They violated Me among My people for a piece of bread, tell-

ing lies to My people that believe lies.—*Ez* 13, 19

The wrong done to Me and My Flesh be upon Babylon, saith the Habitation of Sion: and My Blood upon the inhabitants of Chaldea, saith Jerusalem.—*Je* 51, 35

The children of Israel shall sit many days without King, and without Sacrifice, and without Altar.—*Os* 3, 4

I will destroy out of this place them that turn away from following the Lord.—*So* 1, 6

Their land hath been filled with sin against the Holy One of Israel.—*Je* 51, 5

See that it is an evil and a bitter thing for thee to have left the Lord thy God.—*Je* 2, 19

Wo to them, for they have departed from Me: they shall be wasted because they have transgressed against Me: and I re-deemed them: and they have spoken lies against Me.—And they have not cried to Me with their heart, but they howled in their beds: they have thought upon wheat and wine, they are departed from Me.—*Os* 7, 13-14

They spoke indeed peaceably to Me: and speaking in the anger of the earth they devised guile. And they opened their mouth wide against Me.—*Ps* 34, 20

## 2.—THE SINS THAT LED TO HIS DENIAL.

He in the contempt of his pride despised the God of Israel.—*Jd* 13, 28

Through deceit they have refused to know Me, saith the

Lord.—*Je* 9, 6

Babylon hath lifted up herself against the Lord, against the Holy One of Israel. Behold I come against thee, O proud one,

saith the Lord.—*Je* 50, 29

It is a people that provoketh to wrath, and lying children, children that will not hear the Law of God.—Who say to the seers: See not; and to them that behold: Behold not for us those things that are right: speak unto us pleasant things, see errors for us.—Take away from me the Way, turn away the Path from me, let the Holy One of Israel cease from before us.—*Is* 30, 9-11

The pride of thy heart hath deceived thee.—*Ab* 3

I know thy dwelling, and thy going out, and thy coming in, and thy rage against Me.—When thou wast mad against Me, thy pride came up to My ears: therefore I will put a ring in thy nose, and a bit between thy lips, and I will turn thee back by the way by which thou camest.—*Is* 37, 28-29

The heart of this people is become hard of belief and provoking, they are revolted and gone away.—*Je* 5, 23

The beloved grew fat, and kicked: he grew fat, and thick and gross, he forsook God Who made him, and departed from God his Saviour.—*Dt* 32, 15

My people hath been a lost

flock, their shepherds have caused them to go astray, and have made them wander in the mountains: they have gone from mountain to hill, they have forgotten their Resting Place.—All that found them, have devoured them: and their enemies said: We have not sinned in so doing: because they have sinned against the Lord the Beauty of Justice, and against the Lord the Hope of their fathers.—*Je* 50, 6-7

Thy people are as they that contradict the Priest.—*Os* 4, 4

They forsook Me, and kept not My Law.—*Je* 16, 11

Every man's word shall be his burden: for you have perverted the words of the Living God.—*Je* 23, 36

The Prophecy of Isaias is fulfilled in them, who saith: By hearing you shall hear, and shall not understand: and seeing you shall see, and shall not perceive.—For the heart of this people is grown gross, and with their ears they have been dull of hearing, and their eyes they have shut, lest at any time they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.—*Mt* 13, 14-15

### 3.—THE CONSEQUENT PROFANATION AND DESTRUCTION OF HIS SANCTUARIES.

He commanded the Holy Places to be profaned.—*1 M* 1, 49

The keepers of the Walls took away My veil from Me.—*Ca* 5, 7

He went up to Jerusalem with a great multitude.—And he

proudly entered into the Sanctuary, and took away the Golden Altar, and the Candlestick of light, and all the Vesselsthereof, and the Table of Proposition, and the golden ornament that

was before the Temple: and he broke them all in pieces.—And he took the silver and gold, and the Precious Vessels: and he took the hidden treasures which he found: and when he had taken all away he departed into his own country.—1 M 1, 23-24

They have changed My delightful portion into a desolate wilderness.—They have laid it waste and it hath mourned for Me.—Je 12, 10-11

Our fathers have sinned and done evil in the sight of the Lord God, forsaking Him: they have turned away their faces from the Tabernacle of the Lord, and turned their backs.—They have shut up the doors that were in the Porch, and put out the Lamps, and have not burnt incense, nor offered Holocausts in the Sanctuary of the God of Israel.—Therefore the wrath of the Lord hath been stirred up against Juda and Jerusalem, and He hath delivered them to trouble, and to destruction, and to be hissed at, as you see with your eyes.—2 P 29, 6-8

They shall violate My Secret Place. (*My inward Sanctuary.*)—Ez 7, 22

See what things the enemy hath done wickedly in the Sanctuary.—And they that hate Thee have made their boasts, in the midst of Thy Solemnity. They have set up their ensigns for signs:—And they knew not both in the going out, and on the highest top. As with axes in a wood of trees,—They have cut down at once the gates thereof, with axe

and hatchet they have brought it down.—Ps 73, 3-6

They have set fire to Thy Sanctuary: they have defiled the Dwelling Place of Thy Name on the earth.—They said in their heart, the whole kindred of them together: Let us abolish all the Festival Days of God from the land.—Ps 73, 7-8

Our signs we have not seen, there is now no Prophet: and he will know us no more—How long, O God, shall the enemy reproach: is the adversary to provoke Thy Name for ever?—Ps 73, 9-10

O God, they have defiled Thy Holy Temple: they have made Jerusalem as a place to keep fruit.—Ps 78, 1

My pastors have destroyed My Vineyard, they have trodden My portion under foot: they have changed My delightful portion into a desolate wilderness.—They have laid it waste and it hath mourned for Me.—Je 12, 10-11

The Holy Places are come into the hands of strangers: her Temple is become as a man without honour.—The Vessels of her glory are carried away captive: her young men are fallen by the sword of the enemies.—What nation hath not inherited her kingdom, and gotten of her spoils?—All her ornaments are taken away. She that was free is made a slave.—Behold our Sanctuary and our Glory is laid waste.—1 M 2, 8-12

Our enemies have trodden down Thy Sanctuary.—Is 63, 18

The City of Thy Sanctuary is become a desert, Sion is made a

desert, Jerusalem is desolate.—  
*Is* 64, 10

The House of our Holiness, and of our Glory, where our fathers praised Thee, is burnt with fire, and all our lovely things are turned into ruins.—  
*Is* 64, 11

The strong city shall be desolate, the Beautiful City shall be forsaken, and shall be left as a wilderness: there the calf shall feed, and there shall he lie down, and shall consume its branches.—Its harvests shall be destroyed with drought, women shall come and teach it: for it is not a wise people, therefore He that made it, shall not have mercy on it: and He that formed it, shall not spare it.—*Is* 27, 10-11

Thorns and nettles shall grow up in its Houses, and the thistle in the fortresses thereof: and it shall be the habitation of dragons, and the pasture of ostriches.—And demons and monsters shall meet, and the hairy ones shall cry out one to another, there hath the lamia lain down, and found rest for herself.—There hath the ericius had its hole, and brought up its young ones, and hath dug round about, and cherished them in the shadow thereof: thither are the kites gathered together one to another.—*Is* 34, 13-15

He will make the Beautiful City a wilderness, and as a place not passable, and as a desert.—And flocks shall lie down in the midst thereof, all the beasts of the nations: and the bittern and the urchin shall lodge in the threshold thereof: the voice of

the singing bird in the window, the raven on the upper post, for I will consume her strength.—  
*So* 2, 13-14

Arms shall stand on his part, and they shall defile the Sanctuary of strength, and shall take away the Continual Sacrifice: and they shall place there the abomination unto desolation.—  
*Da* 11, 31

Thou hast profaned His Sanctuary on the earth.—Thou hast broken down all His hedges.—All that passed by the way have robbed Him. He has become a reproach to His neighbours.—Thou hast made all His enemies to rejoice, and thou hast cast His Throne down to the ground.—Thou hast shortened the days of His time: thou hast covered Him with confusion.—*Ps* 88, 40-43, 45-46

*The carrying away of the Sacred Vessels, see Je* 52, 17-23

#### THE DESTRUCTION OF CONVENTS.

You have cast out the women of My people from their Houses, in which they took delight: you have taken My praise for ever from their children.—*Mi* 2, 9

#### *Names given to desecrated Sanctuaries:—*

1. Sanctuaries laid waste.—  
*Am* 7, 9
2. Pavilions destroyed.—*Je* 4, 20
3. A Deserted House.—*Ag* 1, 9
4. Barns destroyed.—*Jl* 1, 17
5. Storehouses broken down.—  
*Jl* 1, 17
6. A Ruinous heap of stones.—  
*Is* 17, 1
7. A Desert.—*Is* 64, 10
8. Desolate Cities.—*Is* 61, 4



#### 4.—THE SIMULATION OF THE TRUE PRIESTHOOD. THE MAGNITUDE AND CONSEQUENCE OF THIS SIN.

- 3 K 12, 28-30 Finding out a device He made two golden calves, and said to them: Go ye up no more to Jerusalem: Behold thy gods, O Israel, who brought thee out of the land of Egypt.—And he set the one in Bethel, and the other in Dan.—And this thing became an occasion of sin: for the people went to adore the calf as far as Dan.
- 2 P 13, 9-10 You have cast out the Priests of the Lord, the sons of Aaron, and the Levites: and you have made you priests, like all the nations of the earth: whosoever cometh and consecrateth his hand with a bullock of the herd, and with seven rams, is made a priest of those who are no gods.—But the Lord is our God, Whom we forsake not, and the Priests who minister to the Lord are the sons of Aaron, and the Levites are in their order.
- 2 P 26, 18 He withstood the king, and said: It doth not belong to thee, Ozias, to burn incense to the Lord, but to the Priests, that is, to the sons of Aaron, who are consecrated for this ministry: go out of the Sanctuary, do not despise: for this thing shall not be accounted to thy glory by the Lord God.
- Nu 16, 10 Did He make thee [Core] and all thy brethren the sons of Levi to approach unto Him that you should challenge to yourselves the Priesthood also?
- 1 M 1, 31 He spoke to them peaceable words in deceit, and they believed him.
- He commanded Altars to be built, and temples, and idols, to the end that they should forget the Law, and should change all the justifications of God.
- Thou hast no healing medicines.
- As the dream of them that awake, O Lord: so in Thy City. Thou shalt bring their image to nothing.
- Cursed be he that maketh the blind to wander out of the way: and all the people shall say: Amen.
- The evil of their hands they call Good.
- The Lord shall send upon thee famine and hunger for thy most wicked inventions, by which thou hast forsaken Me.
- Thus saith the Lord God: Wo to the foolish prophets that follow their own spirit, and see nothing.—Thy prophets, O Israel, were like foxes in the deserts.—You have not gone up to face the enemy, nor have you set up a wall for the House of Israel, to stand in battle in the day of the Lord.
- They see vain things, and they foretel lies, saying: The Lord saith: whereas the Lord hath not sent them; and they have persisted to confirm what they have said.
- Have you not seen a vain vision, and spoken a lying divination? and you say: The Lord saith: whereas I have not spoken.—Therefore thus saith the Lord God:
- 1 M 1, 50 He commanded Altars to be built, and temples, and idols, to the end that they should forget the Law, and should change all the justifications of God.
- Je 30, 13 Thou hast no healing medicines.
- Ps 72, 20 As the dream of them that awake, O Lord: so in Thy City. Thou shalt bring their image to nothing.
- Dt 27, 18 Cursed be he that maketh the blind to wander out of the way: and all the people shall say: Amen.
- Mt 7, 3 The evil of their hands they call Good.
- Dt 28, 20 The Lord shall send upon thee famine and hunger for thy most wicked inventions, by which thou hast forsaken Me.
- Ex 13, 3-5 Thus saith the Lord God: Wo to the foolish prophets that follow their own spirit, and see nothing.—Thy prophets, O Israel, were like foxes in the deserts.—You have not gone up to face the enemy, nor have you set up a wall for the House of Israel, to stand in battle in the day of the Lord.
- Ex 13, 6 They see vain things, and they foretel lies, saying: The Lord saith: whereas the Lord hath not sent them; and they have persisted to confirm what they have said.
- Ex 13, 7-8 Have you not seen a vain vision, and spoken a lying divination? and you say: The Lord saith: whereas I have not spoken.—Therefore thus saith the Lord God:

Because you have spoken vain things, and have seen lies, therefore behold I come against you, saith the Lord God.

*Ex* 13, 9 And My hand shall be upon the prophets that see vain things, and that divine lies: they shall not be in the counsel of My people, nor shall they be written in the writing of the House of Israel: neither shall they enter into the land of Israel, and you shall know that I am the Lord God.

*Is* 59, 3 Your hands are defiled with blood, and your fingers with iniquity; your lips have spoken lies, and your tongue uttereth iniquity.

*Is* 59, 12-15 Our wicked doings are with us, and we have known our iniquities,—In sinning and lying against the Lord: and we have turned away so that we went not after our God, but spoke calumny and transgression: we have conceived and uttered from the heart, words of falsehood.—And judgment is turned away backward, and justice hath stood far off: because Truth hath fallen down in the street, and equity could not come in.—And Truth hath been forgotten.

*So* 1, 9- I will visit in that day upon every one that entereth arrogantly over the threshold: them that fill the House of the Lord their God with iniquity and deceit.

*Ps* 77, 58 They provoked Him to anger on their hills: and moved Him to jealousy with their graven things.

*1 K* 2, 17 The sin of the young men

was exceeding great before the Lord: because they withdrew men from the Sacrifice of the Lord.

Behold I will contend with thee in judgment, because thou hast said: I have not sinned. *Je* 2, 35

Thou shalt eat, but shall not be filled: and thy humiliation shall be in the midst of thee. *Mi* 6, 14

Amasias said to Amos:—Prophecy not again any more in Bethel: because it is the king's sanctuary, and it is the house of the kingdom.—And Amos answered and said to Amasias:

—Now hear thou the word of the Lord: Thou sayest: Thou shalt not prophesy against Israel, and thou shalt not drop thy word upon the house of the idol.—Therefore thus saith the Lord: Thou shalt die in a polluted land.

They provoked Him with their inventions. *Ps* 105, 29

They went disloyally after their own inventions. *Ps* 105, 39

What man soever shall make The Like, he shall perish out of His people. *Ex* 30, 38

Their idols have caused them to err. *Am* 2, 4

You that rejoice in a thing of naught: you that say: Have we not taken unto us horns by our own strength? Behold I will raise up a nation against you, saith the Lord. *Am* 6, 14

Their Altars are as heaps in the furrows of the field. *Os* 12, 11

The iniquity of Ephraim is bound up, his sin is hidden. *Os* 13, 12

They have put no difference between Holy and profane: nor distinguished *Ex* 22, 26

- between the polluted and the Clean. I was profaned in the midst of them.
- Am 3, 11-12** The prophets leaned upon the Lord, saying: Is not the Lord in the midst of us? no evil shall come upon us. —Therefore because of you the mountain of the Temple shall be as the high places in the forest.
- Za 10, 2** The idols have spoken what was unprofitable, and the diviners have seen a lie, and the dreamers have spoke vanity: they comforted in vain: therefore they were led away as a flock: they shall be afflicted, because they have no Shepherd.
- Je 46, 11** In vain dost thou multiply medicines, there shall be no cure for thee.
- Os 10, 1** According to the plenty of his land he hath abounded with idols.
- Os 10, 13** You have eaten the fruit of lying.
- Ps 43, 21-22** If we have spread forth our hands to a strange God: —Shall not God search out these things?
- Is 28, 16** When the overflowing scourge shall pass through, it shall not come upon us: for we have placed our hope in lies, and by falsehood we are protected.
- Ps 54, 16** There is wickedness in their dwellings: in the midst of them.
- Ps 56, 7** They have dug a pit before My Face, and they are fallen into it.
- Ps 57, 9** They have not seen the Sun.
- Ma 3, 5** And I will come to you in judgment, and will be a speedy witness against false swearers.
- Send to all them of the captivity, saying: Thus saith the Lord to Semeias the Nehelamite: Because Semeias hath prophesied to you, and I sent him not: and hath caused you to trust in a lie: —Therefore thus saith the Lord: Behold I will visit upon Semeias the Nehelamite, and upon his seed: he shall not have a man to sit in the midst of this people, and he shall not see the good that I will do to My people, saith the Lord: because he hath spoken treason against the Lord.
- The spiritual man was mad.
- The prophet is become a snare of ruin.
- They design to extinguish the glory of Thy Temple and Altar.
- They gather the vintage of his vineyard whom by violence they have oppressed.
- Their Land hath been filled with sin against the Holy One of Israel.
- Who hath formed a god and made a graven thing that is profitable for nothing? — Behold all the partakers thereof shall be confounded.
- He will not save his soul, nor say: Perhaps there is a lie in my right hand.
- The floor and the winepress shall not feed them, and the wine shall deceive them.
- There were false prophets among the people, even as there shall be among you lying teachers who shall bring in sects of perdition.
- Je 29, 31-32**
- Os 9, 7**
- Os 9, 8**
- Es 14, 9**
- Jb 24, 6**
- Je 51, 5**
- Is 44, 10-11**
- Is 44, 20**
- Os 9, 2**
- 2 Pt 2, 1**

### 5.—SIMULATION OF THE PRIESTHOOD FORETOLD BY OUR LORD. HIS DIVINE WARNINGS.

- Mt* 24, 23-24 Then if any *man* shall say to you : Lo, here is Christ, or there, do not believe him. —For there shall arise false christs, and false prophets and shall show great signs and wonders, insomuch as to deceive (if possible) even the elect.
- Mt* 21, 25-26 Behold I have told it to you beforehand.—If therefore *they* shall say to you : Behold He is in the desert : go ye not out. Behold He is in the closets, believe it not.
- Lu* 17, 23 *They* shall say to you : Lo here, and lo there. Go ye not after, nor follow them. Then if any *man* shall say to you, Lo, here is Christ ; lo, He is here, do not believe. —For there will rise up false christs and false prophets, and they shall show signs and wonders, to seduce (if it were possible) even the elect.—Take you heed therefore : behold I have foretold you all things.
- [Christ] said : Take heed you be not seduced ; for many will come in My Name, saying, I am He : and the time is at hand : go ye not therefore after them.
- Mk* 13, 21-23  
*Lu* 21, 8

### 6.—DIVINE WARNINGS AGAINST THREE CLASSES OF FALSE PROPHETS.

1. DISTORTERS OF SCRIPTURE.
- Je* 23, 30 Behold I am against the prophets, saith the Lord : who steal My words every one from his neighbour.
2. BABBLERS.
- Je* 23, 31 Behold I am against the prophets, saith the Lord : who use their tongues, and say : The Lord saith it.
- Pv* 11, 9 The dissembler with his mouth deceiveth his friend.
3. PRETENDERS OF SUPERNATURAL LIGHTS AND VISIONS.
- Je* 23, 32 Behold I am against the prophets that have lying dreams, saith the Lord : and tell them and cause My people to err by their lying, and by their wonders : when I sent them not, nor commanded them, who have not profited this people at all, saith the Lord.
- I have heard what the prophets said, that prophesy lies in My Name, and say : I have dreamed, I have dreamed.—How long shall this be in the heart of the prophets that prophesy lies, and that prophesy the delusions of their own heart ? —Who seek to make My people forget My Name through their dreams, which they tell every man to his neighbour : as their fathers forgot My Name for Baal.—The prophet that hath a dream, let him tell a dream : and he that hath My Word let him speak My Word with truth : what hath the chaff to do with the Wheat, saith the Lord ?
- You speak words of an unprofitable vision.
- Je* 23, 25-28  
*Os* 10, 4

## 7.—THE LYING SPIRIT IN THE FALSE PRIESTHOOD.

3 K 22, 22 The spirit said : I will go forth and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And the Lord said : Thou shalt deceive him, and shalt prevail : go forth and do so.\*

3 K 22, 23 Now therefore behold the Lord hath given a lying spirit in the mouth of all thy prophets that are here.

2 P 18, 20-22 There came forth a spirit, and stood before the Lord, and said : I will deceive him. And the Lord said to him : By what means wilt thou deceive him ? — And he answered : I will go out, and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And the Lord said : Thou shalt

deceive, and shalt prevail : go out, and do so. — Now therefore behold the Lord hath put a spirit of lying in the mouth of all thy prophets, and the Lord hath spoken evil against thee.

THE PRIESTS WHO COULD NOT FIND THEIR PEDIGREE.

And of the Priests, the 2 E 7, 63-64

children of Habia, the children of Accos, the children of Berzellai, who took a wife of the daughters of Berzellai the Galaadite, and he was called by their name. — These sought their writing in the record, and found it not : and they were cast out of the Priesthood.

## 8.—THE HISTORY OF MICHAS.

1. MICHAS STEALS HIS MOTHER'S MONEY. AN IDOL IS MADE WITH IT.

Jg 17, 1-4 There was at that time a man of mount Ephraim whose name was Michas, — Who said to his mother :

The eleven hundred pieces of silver, which thou hadst put aside for thyself, and concerning which thou didst swear in my hearing, behold I have, and they are with me. And she said to him : Blessed be my son by the Lord. — So he restored them to his mother, who said to him : I have consecrated and vowed this silver to the Lord, that my son may receive it at my hand, and make a graven and a molten god, so

now I deliver it to thee. — And he restored them to his

mother : and she took two hundred pieces of silver and gave them to the silversmith, to make of them a graven and a molten god, which was in the house of Michas.

2. MICHAS BUILDS A TEMPLE FOR THE IDOL ; CONSECRATES ONE OF HIS SONS TO BE HIS PRIEST. AND MAKES VESTMENTS FOR HIM.

And he separated also Jg 17, 5-6 therein a little temple for the god, and made an ephod, and theraphim, that is to say, a priestly garment, and idols : and he filled the hand of one of his sons, and he became his priest. — In those days there was no King in Israel, but every one did that which seemed right to himself.

\* This was not a command ; but a permission ; for God never ordains lies, though He often permits the lying spirit to deceive those who love not the truth. See 2 Th 2, 10.

9.—FALSE CHRISTS. THEIR COMING FORETOLD  
BY OUR LORD. HIS WARNINGS AGAINST THEM.

<i>Mt</i> 24, 24	There shall arise false christs.	A drought upon her waters, and they shall be dried up : because it is a land of idols, and they glory in monstrous things.	<i>Je</i> 50, 38
<i>Mk</i> 13, 22	There will rise up false christs.		
<i>Mt</i> 24, 24	There shall arise false christs and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders, insomuch as to deceive, if possible, even the elect.	The Spirit brought me near the inner gate, where was set the idol of jealousy to provoke to jealousy.	<i>Ez</i> 8, 3
<i>Ba</i> 6, 50	They are false things.	I will show it to be iniquity, iniquity, iniquity.	<i>Ez</i> 21, 27
<i>Dt</i> 32, 21	They have provoked Me with that which was no god, and have angered me with their vanities : and I will provoke them with that which is no people, and will vex them with a foolish nation.	Thou hast set up altars of confusion.	<i>Je</i> 11, 13
<i>Os</i> 8, 6	Itself is the invention of Israel.	Thou hast forgotten Me, and hast trusted in falsehood.	<i>Je</i> 13, 25
<i>Os</i> 8, 7	The bud shall yield no meal ; and if it should yield, strangers shall eat it.	The creatures of God are turned to an abomination, and a temptation to the souls of men, and a snare to the feet of the unwise.	<i>W</i> 14, 11
<i>Ba</i> 6, 41	Their gods themselves have no sense.	They have wandered from Me after their idols.	<i>Ez</i> 44, 10
<i>Ex</i> 20, 3	Thou shalt not have strange gods before Me.	Daniel said : I adore the Lord my God : for He is the Living God : but that is no living god.	<i>Da</i> 14, 24
<i>Dt</i> 5, 8-9	Thou shalt not make to thyself a graven thing, nor the likeness of any things that are in heaven above, or that are in the earth beneath, or that abide in the waters under the earth.—Thou shalt not adore them, and thou shalt not serve them.	Ephraim feedeth on the wind.	<i>Os</i> 12, 1
<i>Le</i> 26, 1	You shall not make to yourselves any idol to adore it.	The anathema is in the midst of thee, O Israel.	<i>Je</i> 7, 13
<i>Po</i> 96, 7	Let them be all confounded that adore graven things and that glory in their idols.	Their idols are wind and vanity.	<i>Je</i> 41, 29
<i>Dt</i> 27, 15	Cursed be the man that maketh a graven thing, and shall put it in a secret place : and all the people shall answer : Amen.	Behold you are of nothing, and your work of that which hath no being.	<i>Je</i> 41, 24
		Altars are become unto him to sin.	<i>Os</i> 8, 11
		The nations have drunk of her wine, and therefore they have staggered.	<i>Je</i> 51, 7
		The idol that is made by hands, is cursed, as well it, as he that made it : he	<i>W</i> 14, 6

- because he made it; and it because, being frail, it is called a god.
- Je* 2, 10-13 Pass over to the Isles of Cethim, and see: and send into Cedar, and consider diligently: and see if there hath been done anything like this.—If a nation hath changed their gods, and indeed they are not gods: but My people have changed their glory into an idol.—Be astonished, O ye Heavens, at this, and, ye gates thereof, be very desolate, saith the Lord.—For My people have done two evils. They have forsaken Me, the Fountain of Living Water, and have digged to themselves cisterns, broken cisterns, that can hold no water.
- Je* 5, 7 How can I be merciful to thee? Thy children have forsaken Me, and swear by them that are not gods.
- Os* 5, 1-2 Hear ye thee this, O priests, and hearken, O ye House of Israel, and give ear, O House of the King: for there is a judgment against you, because you have been a snare to them whom you should have watched over, and a net spread upon Thabor.—And you have turned aside victims into the depth: and I am the Teacher of them all.

10.—THE FALSE CHRISTS IN THE TEMPLES OF CHRIST. DIVINE HONOURS AND RITES PAID TO THEM.

- Je* 32, 34 They have set their idols in the House, in which My Name is called upon, to defile it.
- Ez* 7, 13 They burnt sweet smelling frankincense to all their idols.
- Ba* 6, 18 They light candle to them, and in great number, of which they cannot see one.
- Je* 7, 30 They have set their abominations in the House in which My Name is called upon, to pollute it.
- Da* 9, 27 The Victim and the Sacrifice shall fail: and there shall be in the Temple the abomination of desolation.
- Ba* 6, 26 Their gifts shall be set before them as to the dead.
- Ma* 1, 7 You offered polluted bread upon My Altars, and you say: Wherein have we polluted Thee?
- He set up the abominable idol of desolation upon the Altar of God, and they built altars throughout all the cities of Juda round about.—And they burnt incense.
- The Lord is a jealous God and a Revenger.
- They shall offer victims, and the Lord will not receive them.
- The floor and the winepress shall not feed them, and the wine shall deceive them.
- They ate the sacrifices of the dead [*the dead, viz. idols without life*].
- Say: Thus saith the Lord God: Wo to them that sew cushions under every elbow: and make pillows for the heads of persons of every age to catch souls: and when
- 1 M* 1, 57-58
- Na* 1, 2
- Os* 8, 13
- Os* 9, 2
- P* 105, 28
- Ez* 13, 18

- they caught the souls of My people, they gave life to their souls [*flattering them with promises of the Bread of Life*].
- Je 6, 14* They healed the breach of the daughter of My people disgracefully, saying: Peace, Peace: and there was no Peace.
- Ex 13, 15* They have departed from Me through all their idols.
- Ex 23, 16* Babylon doted upon them.
- Ex 16, 18* Thou didst set My oil and My sweet incense before them.
- Os 12, 8* I have become rich, I have found me an idol.
- Ps 4, 3* O ye sons of men, how long will you be dull of heart? Why do you love vanity and seek after lying?
- Os 4, 10* They shall eat, and shall not be filled.
- Os 3, 1* They look to strange gods, and love the husks of the grapes.
- Os 4, 18* Their banquet is separated.
- Os 4, 7* I will change their Glory into shame.
- They shall eat the sins of My people, and shall lift up their souls to their iniquity.
- He shall make no account of the God of his fathers.— But he shall worship the god Maozim [the god of strongholds] in His place: and a god whom his fathers knew not, he shall worship with gold and silver, and precious stones, and things of great price.
- The mockeries of the un- just are not acceptable.
- Do not offer wicked gifts, for such He will not receive.
- They bear him on their shoulders and carry him, and set him in his place, and he shall stand, and shall not stir out of his place. Yea, when they shall cry also unto him, he shall not hear: he shall not save them from tribulation.
- I will sit in the Mountain of the Covenant.—I will be like the Most High.
- Os 4, 8*
- De 11, 37-38*
- Eci 34, 21*
- Eci 35, 14*
- Is 46, 7*
- Is 14, 13-14*

**11.—THOSE WHO DISOBEY THE DIVINE VOICE OF THE CHURCH ARE EASILY SEDUCED BY THE FALSE CHRISTS.**

- Je 44, 16-17* As for the word which thou hast spoken to us in the Name of the Lord, we will not hearken to thee:—But we will certainly do every word that shall proceed out of our own mouth: and we were filled with bread, and it was well with us, and we saw no evil.
- Je 49, 7* Counsel has perished from her children: their wisdom is become unprofitable.
- Je 51, 17* Every man has become foolish by his knowledge, for what he hath cast is a lie.
- If one cast a stone on high, it will fall upon his own head: and the deceitful stroke will wound the deceitful.
- He that diggeth a pit, shall fall into it: and he that setteth a stone for his neighbour, shall stumble upon it: and he that layeth a snare for another, shall perish in it.
- A mischievous counsel shall be rolled back upon
- Eci 27, 28*
- Eci 27, 29*
- Eci 27, 30*



- the author, and he shall not know from whence it cometh to him.
- Pz 9, 16-17* Their foot hath been taken in the very snare which they hid.—The sinner hath been caught in the works of his own hands.
- Pz 9, 23* They are caught in the counsels which they devise.
- Pz 24, 4* Let them be confounded that act unjust things.
- Pz 80, 12-13* My people heard not My Voice: and Israel hearkened not to Me.—So I let them go according to the desires of their heart: they shall walk in their own inventions.
- Os 10, 13* You have eaten the fruit of lying because thou hast trusted in thy ways, in the multitude of thy strong ones.
- For the sin of their mouth let them be taken in their pride.
- Let their table become as a snare before them, and a recompense and a stumbling-block.
- O wicked presumption, whence camest thou to cover the earth with thy malice and deceitfulness?
- Cursed be the man that trusteth in man, and maketh flesh his arm.
- Saul answered: Because I saw that the people slipt from me.—Forced by necessity I offered sacrifice.—And Samuel said to Saul: Thou hast done foolishly.
- We will magnify our tongue: our lips are our own.
- Pz 58, 13*
- Pz 68, 23*
- Eci 37, 3*
- Jc 17, 5*
- I K 13, 11-13*
- Pz 11, 5*

## 12.—THE ORIGIN OF THE FALSE CHRISTS DRAWN BY INFERENCE FROM THE BOOK OF WISDOM.

- W 14, 15* A father being afflicted with bitter grief made to himself the image of his son who was quickly taken away: and him who then had died as a man, he began now to worship as a god, and appointed him rites and sacrifices among his servants.
- they brought their resemblance from afar, and made an express image of the king whom they had a mind to honour: that by this their diligence, they might honour as present, him that was absent.
- W 14, 16* Then in process of time, wicked custom prevailing, this error was kept as a law, and statues were worshipped by the commandment of tyrants.
- And to the worshipping of these, the singular diligence also of the artificer helped to set forward the ignorant.
- W 14, 17* And those whom men could not honour in presence, because they dwelt far off,
- For he being willing to please him that employed him, laboured with all his art to make the resemblance in the best manner.
- And the multitude of the
- W 14, 18*
- W 14, 19*
- W 14, 20*

men, carried away by the beauty of the work, took him now for a god that a little before was but honoured as a man. He that shall get up out of the pit, shall be taken in the snare. Je 48, 44

### 13.—THE FALSE CHRISTS CONTRASTED WITH THE TRUE CHRIST.

- Je 10, 6-7* There is none like to Thee, O Lord : Thou art great, and great is Thy Name in might. —Who shall not fear Thee, O King of nations ? for thine is the glory : among all the wise men of the nations, and in all their kingdoms there is none like unto Thee. Je 10, 12-13
- Je 10, 8* *They shall be all proved together to be senseless and foolish : the stock is a doctrine of vanity.* He that maketh the earth by His power, that prepareth the world by His wisdom, and stretcheth out the heavens by His knowledge. —At His Voice He giveth a multitude of waters in the heaven, and lifteth up the clouds from the ends of the earth : He maketh lightnings for rain, and bringeth forth the winds out of His treasures.
- Je 10, 10* But the Lord is the True God : He is the Living God, and the Everlasting King : at His wrath the earth shall tremble, and the nations shall not be able to abide His threatening. *Every man is become a fool for knowledge, every artist is confounded in his graven idol : for what he hath cast is false, and there is no spirit in them. —They are vain things, and a ridiculous work : in the time of their visitation they shall perish.* Je 10, 14-15
- Je 10, 11* *Thus then shall you say to them : The gods that have not made heaven and earth, let them perish from the earth, and from among those places that are under heaven.* The portion of Jacob is not like these : for it is He Who formed all things : and Israel is the rod of His inheritance : the Lord of Hosts is His Name. Je 10, 16

### 14.—FRIENDLY ADMONITIONS TO THE WORSHIPPERS OF THE FALSE CHRISTS.

- Je 22, 19* Depart not from the Lord, and from our Society, by building an altar beside the Altar of the Lord our God. *Little children, keep yourselves from idols.* 1 J 5, 21
- Je 22, 16-17* Why have you forsaken the Lord the God of Israel, building a sacrilegious altar, and revolting from the worship of Him ?—Is it a small thing to you ? *If thy brother, the son of thy mother, or thy son, or daughter, or thy wife that is in thy bosom, or thy friend, whom thou lovest as thy own soul, would persuade thee secretly saying : Let us go, and serve strange gods, which* Dt 13, 6-8

thou knowest not, nor thy fathers,—Of all the nations round about, that are near or afar off, from one end of the earth to the other,—Consent not to him, hear him not, neither let thy eye spare him to pity and conceal him.

*La* 2, 14

Thy prophets have seen false and foolish things for thee: and they have not laid open thy iniquity, to excite thee to penance: but they have seen for thee false revelations and banishments.

*2P* 13, 12

Fight not against the Lord the God of your fathers, for it is not good for you.

*2P* 30, 8

Harden not your necks, as your fathers did: yield yourselves to the Lord, and come to His Sanctuary, which He hath sanctified for ever: serve the Lord the God of your fathers, and the wrath of His indignation shall be turned away from you.

*1E* 7, 23

All that belongeth to the rites of the God of Heaven, let it be given diligently in the House of the God of Heaven: lest His wrath should be enkindled against the realm of the king, and of his sons.

*Ab* 1, 7

All the men of thy confederacy have deceived thee: the men of thy peace have prevailed against thee: they that eat with thee shall lay snares under thee: there is no wisdom in him.

*Am* 5, 4-6

Thus saith the Lord to the House of Israel: Seek ye Me, and you shall live.—But seek not Bethel, and go not into Galgal, neither shall you pass over into Bersabee: for Galgal shall go into captivity, and Bethel shall be unprofit-

able.—Seek ye the Lord, and live: lest the House of Joseph be burnt with fire, and it shall devour, and there shall be none to quench Bethel.

You that turn judgment *Am* 5, 7-9

into wormwood, and forsake justice in the land,—Seek Him that maketh Arcturus, and Orion, and that turneth darkness in morning, and that changeth day into night: that calleth the waters of the sea, and poureth them out upon the face of the earth: The Lord is His Name.—He that with a smile bringeth destruction upon the strong, and waste upon the mighty.

Dost thou trust a staff of *4K* 18, 21  
a broken reed, upon which if a man lean, it will break and go into his hand, and pierce it?

Put not your trust in *Ps* 145, 2-4  
princes:—In the children of men, in whom there is no salvation.—His spirit shall go forth, and he shall return into his earth: in that day all their thoughts shall perish.

Be not desirous of his *Pv* 23, 3  
meats, in which is the bread of deceit.

Hast thou seen a man wise *Pv* 26, 12  
in his own conceit? There shall be more hope of a fool than of him.

Wo to you that are wise *Is* 5, 21  
in your own eyes, and prudent in your own conceits.

Wo to you, apostate children, saith the Lord, that you would take counsel, and not of Me: and would begin a web, and not by My Spirit, that you might add sin upon sin. *Is* 30, 1

<i>Ro</i> 12, 16	Be not wise in thy own conceit.	So the posts went speedily 2 <i>P</i> 30, 10-11
2 <i>C</i> 1, 9	We should not trust in ourselves.	they laughed at them, and mocked them, — Nevertheless some men of Aser, yielding to the counsel, came to Jerusalem.
<i>Ap</i> 3, 17	Thou sayest: I am rich and made wealthy, and have need of nothing: and knowest not that thou art wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked.	Thou shalt not receive the voice of a lie. <i>Ex</i> 23, 1
<i>Jb</i> 32, 9	They that are aged are not the wise men, neither do the ancients understand judgment.	What he hath cast is false, and there is no spirit in them. <i>Je</i> 10, 14
<i>Pv</i> 13, 10	Among the proud there are always contentions.	What he hath cast is a lie, and there is no breath in them. <i>Je</i> 51, 17
1 <i>C</i> 5, 6	Your glorifying is not good.	Respect not their sacrifices. <i>Nu</i> 16, 15
<i>Ja</i> 4, 6	God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble.	The prophets prophesy falsely in My Name. They prophesy unto you a lying vision. <i>Je</i> 14, 14
<i>Is</i> 4, 12	O my people, they that call thee blessed, the same deceive thee, and destroy the way of thy steps.	As clouds and wind when no rain followeth, so is the man that boasteth, and doth not fulfil his promises. <i>Pv</i> 25, 14
1 <i>K</i> 15, 22	Obedience is better than sacrifice.	Remember the Lord afar off, and let Jerusalem come into your mind. <i>Je</i> 51, 50
<i>Ex</i> 23, 2	Thou shalt not follow the multitude to do evil.	Seek ye the Lord, while He may be found: Call upon Him while He is near. <i>Is</i> 55, 6
<i>Nu</i> 14, 42	The Lord is not with you.	A PRAYER FOR THEM TO SAY : God keep us from any such wickedness that we should revolt from the Lord, and leave off following His steps, by building an altar to offer holocausts, and sacrifices, and victims, beside the Altar of the Lord our God, which is erected before His Tabernacle. <i>Je</i> 22, 29
<i>Nu</i> 16, 7	You take too much upon you, ye sons of Levi.	
<i>Ez</i> 8, 17	Is this a light thing that they should commit these abominations?	
<i>Pz</i> 43, 21-22	You have forgotten the Name of our God, and if we have spread forth our hands to a strange god,—Shall not God search out these things?	

## 15.—NAMES AND TYPES OF THE FALSE CHRISTS.

<i>Je</i> 7, 18	1. Bread idols.	6. Profitless wheat.	<i>Je</i> 12, 13
<i>Pv</i> 23, 3	2. The bread of deceit.	7. Stubble.	<i>Je</i> 13, 25
<i>Pv</i> 20, 17	3. The bread of lying.	8. Dough.	<i>Je</i> 7, 18
<i>Pz</i> 4, 17	4. Bread of wickedness.	9. The bud yielding no meal.	<i>Os</i> 8, 7
<i>Je</i> 12, 13	5. Wheat bringing forth thorns.	10. Chaff.	<i>Mt</i> 3, 12

- |                   |   |   |                   |
|-------------------|---|---|-------------------|
| <i>Je</i> 52, 6   | 11. No food.  | 44. A fruitless labour.   | <i>W</i> 15, 4    |
| <i>Je</i> 46, 11  | 12. Medicine that cannot cure.                              | 45. Fruit of the proud heart.                                     | <i>Je</i> 10, 12  |
| <i>Os</i> 3, 1    | 13. Husks of grapes.  | 46. An unprofitable branch.                                       | <i>Je</i> 14, 19  |
| <i>Je</i> 8, 13   | 14. Vine without grapes.                                    | 47. A dried up sea.   | <i>Je</i> 51, 10  |
| <i>Po</i> 4, 17   | 15. Wine of iniquity.                                       | 48. The cup of dead sleep.  | <i>Je</i> 51, 17  |
| <i>Po</i> 23, 31  | 16. Bitter wine.  | 49. The scandals of the eye.                                      | <i>Ex</i> 20, 7   |
| <i>Os</i> 9, 2    | 17. The wine-press giving no wine.                          | 50. Webs of spiders.  | <i>Je</i> 59, 5   |
| <i>Je</i> 25, 16  | 18. The cup of wine that troubleth the mind and maketh mad. | 51. Unprofitable works.   | <i>Je</i> 59, 6   |
| <i>Am</i> 2, 8    | 19. The wine of the condemned.                              | 52. A conspiracy.   | <i>Je</i> 8, 12   |
| <i>Je</i> 4, 2    | 20. Wild grapes.  | 53. Vain sacrifices.  | <i>Je</i> 1, 13   |
| <i>Je</i> 31, 30  | 21. Sour grapes.  | 54. A snare.  | <i>Os</i> 5, 1    |
| <i>Os</i> 10, 10  | 22. The two iniquities [bread and wine].                    | 55. A net spread on Thabor.                                       | <i>Os</i> 5, 1    |
| <i>Da</i> 11, 38  | 23. Maozim whom our fathers knew not.                       | 56. A snare, a trap.  | <i>Am</i> 3, 5    |
| <i>Je</i> 5, 19   | 24. A strange god.  | 57. Snares and traps to catch men.                                | <i>Je</i> 5, 28   |
| <i>Je</i> 10, 11  | 25. Gods that made not heaven and earth.                    | 58. A snare of ruin.  | <i>Os</i> 9, 8    |
| <i>Ps</i> 105, 28 | 26. Idols without life.                                     | 59. A hidden sin.   | <i>Os</i> 13, 12  |
| <i>Da</i> 14, 24  | 27. A lifeless god.   | 60. Stumbling blocks.   | <i>Je</i> 4, 1    |
| <i>Ps</i> 80, 9   | 28. A new god.  | 61. The invention of Israel.                                      | <i>Os</i> 8, 6    |
| <i>Ps</i> 71, 58  | 29. An idol moving the God of the Eucharist to jealousy.    | 62. The humiliation.  | <i>Mi</i> 6, 14   |
| <i>Ex</i> 8, 3    | 30. An idol provoking God to jealousy.                      | 63. The shame.  | <i>Os</i> 4, 7    |
| <i>Os</i> 8, 11   | 31. Altars unto sin.  | 64. A reproach in the country.                                    | <i>Ba</i> 6, 71   |
| <i>Je</i> 17, 1   | 32. A sin graven on the horns of the Altar.                 | 65. The iniquity of Libanus.                                      | <i>Ha</i> 2, 17   |
| <i>Ps</i> 73, 3   | 33. The sin of the Sanctuary.                               | 66. The throne of iniquity.                                       | <i>Am</i> 6, 3    |
| <i>Je</i> 14, 12  | 34. Unacceptable holocaust.                                 | 67. The treasures of iniquity.                                    | <i>Mi</i> 6, 10   |
| <i>Je</i> 51, 34  | 35. An empty vessel.  | 68. The sin of the desolation.                                    | <i>Da</i> 8, 13   |
| <i>Je</i> 14, 3   | 36. Wells without water.                                    | 69. Ichabod [ <i>i.e.</i> , <i>There is no glory</i> ].           | <i>1 K</i> 4, 12  |
| <i>Je</i> 2, 13   | 37. Broken cisterns.  | 70. Dust for rain.  | <i>Dt</i> 28, 24  |
| <i>Eci</i> 34, 21 | 38. Mockeries.  | 71. The supplanting of Christ.                                    | <i>Ps</i> 139, 5  |
| <i>Eci</i> 35, 14 | 39. Wicked gifts.   | 72. Deceitful practices.  | <i>Po</i> 10, 3   |
| <i>Eci</i> 37, 3  | 40. A wicked presumption.                                   | 73. Sacrifices of the dead [ <i>i.e.</i> , <i>without life</i> ]. | <i>Ps</i> 105, 28 |
| <i>Eci</i> 42, 18 | 41. Crafty devices.   | 74. Victims of the wicked.  | <i>Po</i> 15, 8   |
| <i>W</i> 15, 4    | 42. The invention of mischievous men.                       | 75. Broken vessel.  | <i>Ba</i> 6, 15   |
| <i>W</i> 15, 4    | 43. The shadow of a picture.                                | 76. The vessel of wicked-   | <i>Za</i> 5, 7    |

	ness.	94. Fig-tree without figs.	<i>Je</i> 8, 13
<i>Os</i> 13, 15	77. Dried up springs.	95. The lamp without oil.	<i>Mt</i> 15, 3
<i>Os</i> 13, 15	78. Desolate fountains.	96. Evil for Good.	<i>Is</i> 5, 20
<i>Je</i> 50, 38	79. A drought upon the waters.	97. Darkness for Light.	<i>Is</i> 5, 20
<i>Os</i> 9, 14	80. Dry breasts.	98. Bitter for Sweet.	<i>Is</i> 5, 20
<i>Je</i> 51, 17	81. A lie that is cast.	99. The vain comfort.	<i>Za</i> 10, 2
<i>Je</i> 5, 31	82. Falsehood personified.	100. A sunless sun.	<i>Ba</i> 6, 66
<i>Za</i> 10, 2	83. The visible lie.	101. An evil treasure.	<i>Mt</i> 12, 36
<i>Os</i> 10, 13	84. The fruit of lying.	102. An exceeding grievous evil.	<i>Je</i> 14, 17
<i>Je</i> 14, 14	85. A lying vision.	103. A horrible thing.	<i>Os</i> 6, 10
<i>Je</i> 23, 32	86. Lying dreams.	104. An abominable thing.	<i>Je</i> 44, 4
<i>Os</i> 12, 1	87. The multiplication of lies.	105. The abomination of desolation.	<i>Da</i> 11, 31
<i>Ba</i> 6, 47-48	88. Hidden deceptions.	106. An execration.	<i>Je</i> 44, 12
<i>Je</i> 9, 6	89. Deceit.	107. Provocation of God's anger.	<i>Je</i> 7, 18
<i>Ba</i> 6, 7	90. False things.	108. A measure full of wrath.	<i>Mt</i> 6, 10
<i>Je</i> 10, 8	91. The doctrine of vanity.	109. Vain things.	<i>Je</i> 10, 15
<i>Je</i> 16, 19	92. A vanity.	110. A ridiculous work.	<i>Je</i> 10, 15
<i>Os</i> 12, 1	93. The feeding on the wind.	111. A thing of nought.	<i>Am</i> 6, 14
		112. The glory of sinners.	<i>Pr</i> 93, 3
		113. Wicked devices.	<i>Je</i> 25, 6

16.—GOD WILL NOT TREAT AS INNOCENT THOSE  
WHO ARE GUILTY.

	*	Basan languisheth and Carmel: and the flower of Libanus fadeth away.	
<i>Na</i> 1, 2	The Lord is a Jealous God, and a Revenger: the Lord is a Revenger, and hath wrath: the Lord taketh vengeance on His adversaries, and He is angry with His enemies.		
	*	The mountains tremble at Him, and the hills are made desolate: and the earth hath quaked at His Presence, and the world, and all that dwell therein.	<i>Na</i> 1, 5
<i>Na</i> 1, 3	The Lord is patient, and great in power, and will not cleanse and acquit the guilty. The Lord's ways are in a tempest, and a whirlwind, and clouds are the dust of His feet.	Who can stand before the face of His indignation? and who shall resist in the fierceness of His anger? His indignation is poured out like fire: and the rocks are melted by Him.	<i>Na</i> 1, 6
	*	The Lord is good and giveth strength in the day of	<i>Na</i> 1, 7
<i>Na</i> 1, 4	He rebuketh the sea, and dieth it up: and bringeth all the rivers to be a desert.		

trouble: and knoweth them that hope in Him.

*Na* 1, 8 But with a flood that passeth by, He will make an utter end of the place thereof: and darkness shall pursue His enemies.

### 17.—VISITATION BY FIRE.

Behold I will kindle a fire in thee,  
And will burn in thee

Every green tree, and every dry tree:  
The flame of the fire shall not be quenched:  
And every face shall be burned in it,  
From the south even to the north.

And all flesh shall see,  
That I the Lord have kindled it, and it shall not be quenched.

And I said:

Ah! ah! ah! O Lord God:

They say of me:

Doth not this man speak by Parables?

*Ez* 20, 47-49.

*Dt* 32, 21- They have provoked Me with that which was no god, and have angered Me with their vanities: and I will provoke them with that which is no people, and will vex them with a foolish nation.—A fire is kindled in My wrath, and shall burn even to the lowest hell: and shall devour the earth with her increase, and shall burn the foundations of the mountains.

it shall not leave them root nor branch.

With the fire of My jealousy shall all the earth be devoured.

I will pour out upon thee My indignation: in the fire of My rage will I blow upon thee, and will give thee into the hands of men that are brutish and contrive thy destruction.—Thou shalt be fuel for the fire, thy blood shall be in the midst of the land, thou shalt be forgotten: for I the Lord have spoken it.

*Dt* 31, 35 Revenge is Mine, and I will repay them in due time, that their foot may slide: the day of destruction is at hand: and the time makes haste to come.

The word of the Lord came to me a second time, saying; What seest thou?

*Ma* 4, 1 Behold the day shall come kindled as a furnace: and all the proud, and all that do wickedly shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall set them on fire, saith the Lord of Hosts, the inhabitants of the land.

And I said: I see a boiling caldron, and the face thereof from the face of the north.—And the Lord said to me: From the north shall an evil break forth upon all the inhabitants of the land.

- Je* 37, 7-9 The Chaldeans shall come again, and fight against this City, and take it, and burn it with fire.—Thus saith the Lord: Deceive not your souls, saying: The Chaldeans shall surely depart and go away from us: for they shall not go away.—But if you should even beat all the army of the Chaldeans that fight against you, and there should be left of them some wounded men: they shall rise up, every man from his tent, and burn this City with fire.
- Je* 19, 3-4 Behold I will bring an affliction upon this Place, so that whosoever shall hear it, his ears shall tingle.—Because they have forsaken Me, and have profaned this Place.
- Je* 4, 4 Be circumcised to the Lord, and take away the foreskins of your hearts, ye men of Juda, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem: lest My indignation come forth like fire, and burn, and there be none that can quench it: because of the wickedness of your thoughts.
- Je* 32, 29 The Chaldeans that fight against this City, shall come and set it on fire, and burn it, with the houses upon whose roofs they offered sacrifice to Baal, and poured out drink-offerings to strange gods, to provoke Me to wrath.
- Is* 33, 10-14 Now will I rise up, saith the Lord: now will I be exalted, now will I lift up Myself.—You shall conceive heat, you shall bring forth stubble: your breath as fire shall devour you.—And the people shall be as ashes after a fire, as a bundle of thorns they shall be burnt with fire.—Hear, you that are far off, what I have done, and you that are near, know My strength.—The sinners in Sion are afraid, trembling hath seized upon the hypocrites. Which of you can dwell with devouring fire? which of you shall dwell with everlasting burnings?
- It shall be at an instant suddenly. A visitation shall come from the Lord of Hosts in thunder, and with earthquake, and with a great noise of whirlwind and tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.
- Behold all you that kindle a fire, encompassed with flames, walk in the light of your fire, and in the flames which you have kindled: this is done to you by My hand, you shall sleep in sorrows.
- Who hath given Jacob for a spoil, and Israel to robbers? hath not the Lord Himself, against Whom we have sinned? And they would not walk in His ways, and they have not hearkened to His law.—And He hath poured out upon him the indignation of His fury, and a strong battle, and hath burnt him round about, and he knew not: and set him on fire, and he understood not.
- He shall destroy the wicked, and the sinners together: and they that have forsaken the Lord, shall be consumed.—For they
- Is* 29, 6
- Je* 50, 11
- Is* 42, 24-25
- Is* 1, 28-31



shall be confounded for the idols, to which they have sacrificed: and you shall be ashamed of the gardens which you had chosen.—When you shall be as an oak with the leaves falling off, and as a garden without water.—And your strength shall be as the ashes of tow, and your work as a spark: and both shall burn together, and there shall be none to quench it.

Is 4, 4

If the Lord shall wash away the filth of the daughters of Sion, and shall wash away the blood of Jerusalem out of the midst thereof, by the Spirit of judgment, and by the Spirit of burning.

Is 10, 16-20

The Sovereign Lord the Lord of Hosts shall send leanness among His fat ones: and under His glory shall be kindled a burning as it were the burning of a fire.—And the light of Israel shall be as a fire, and the Holy One thereof as a flame: and His thorns and His briers shall be set on fire, and shall be devoured in one day.—And the glory of His forest, and of His beautiful hill shall be consumed from the soul even to the flesh, and he shall run away through fear.—And they that remain of the trees of His forest shall be so few, that they shall easily be numbered, and a child shall write them down.—And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and they that shall escape of the House of Jacob, shall lean no more on him that striketh them: but they shall lean upon the Lord,

the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

He hath broken in His fierce anger all the horn of Israel: He hath drawn back His right hand from before the enemy: and He hath kindled in Jacob as it were a flaming fire devouring round about.

La 2, 3

For it is the day of the vengeance of the Lord, the year of recompenses of the judgment of Sion.—And the streams thereof shall be turned into pitch, and the ground thereof into brimstone: and the land thereof shall become burning pitch.—Night and day it shall not be quenched, the smoke thereof shall go up for ever: from generation to generation it shall lie waste, none shall pass through it for ever and ever.

Thou hast trusted in thy wickedness, and hast said: There is none that seeth me. Thy wisdom, and thy knowledge, this hath deceived thee. And thou hast said in thy heart: I am, and beside me there is no other.—Evil shall come upon thee, and thou shalt not know the rising thereof: and calamity shall fall violently upon thee, which thou canst not keep off: misery shall come upon thee suddenly, which thou shalt not know.

Thou hast failed in the multitude of thy counsels: let now the astrologers stand and save thee, they that gazed at the stars, and counted the months, that from them they might tell the things that shall come to

thee.—Behold they are as stubble, fire hath burnt them, they shall not deliver themselves from the power of the flames.

I have seen the fire.

*Is 44, 16*

18.—UNDER THE PARABLE OF A BOILING POT IS FORETOLD THE VISITATION BY FIRE.

*Ex 24, 2-3* Son of man, write thee the name of this day, on which the king of Babylon hath set himself against Jerusalem to-day.—And thou shalt speak by a figure a parable to the provoking house, and say to them: Thus saith the Lord God: Set on a pot, set it on, I say, and put water into it.

*Ex 24, 4-5* Heap together into it the pieces thereof, every good piece, the thigh and the shoulder, choice pieces and full of bones.—Take the fattest of the flock, and lay together piles of bones under it: the seething thereof is boiling hot, and the bones thereof are thoroughly sodden in the midst of it.

*Ex 24, 6-7* Therefore thus saith the Lord God: Wo to the bloody city, to the pot whose rust is in it, and its rust is not gone out of it: cast it out piece by piece, there hath no lot fallen upon it.—For her blood is in the midst of her, she hath shed it upon the smooth rock: she hath not shed it upon the ground, that it might be covered with dust.

*Ex 24, 8-9* And that I might bring My indignation upon her, and

take My vengeance: I have shed her blood upon the smooth rock, that it should not be covered.—Therefore thus saith the Lord God: Wo to the bloody city, of which I will make a great bonfire.

Heap together the bones, which I will burn with fire: the flesh shall be consumed, and the whole composition shall be sodden, and the bones shall be consumed.—Then set it empty upon burning coals, that it may be hot, and the brass thereof may be melted: and let the filth of it be melted in the midst thereof, and let the rust of it be consumed.

Great pains have been taken, and the great rust thereof is not gone out, not even by fire.—Thy uncleanness is execrable: because I desired to cleanse thee, and thou art not cleansed from thy filthiness: neither shalt thou be cleansed, before I cause My indignation to rest in thee.

I the Lord have spoken: it shall come to pass, and I will do it: I will not pass by, nor spare, nor be pacified, I will judge thee according to thy ways, and according to thy doings, saith the Lord.

*Ex 24, 14*

19.—THE DEVASTATION BY FIRE PORTRAYED BY  
FIGURE.

\*  
J12, 1-3 Blow ye the trumpet in Sion, sound an alarm in My Holy Mountain, let all the inhabitants of the land tremble: because the day of the Lord cometh, because it is nigh at hand.—A day of darkness, and of gloominess, a day of clouds and whirlwinds: a numerous and strong people as the morning spread upon the mountains: the like to it hath not been from the beginning, nor shall be after it even to the years of generation and generation.—Before the face thereof a devouring fire, and behind it a burning flame, the land is like a garden of pleasure before it, and behind it a desolate wilderness, neither is there any one that can escape it.

people shall be in grievous pains: all faces shall be made like a kettle.—They shall run like valiant men: like men of war they shall scale the wall: the men shall march every one on his way, and they shall not turn aside from their ranks.—No one shall press upon his brother: they shall walk every one in his path: yea, and they shall fall through the windows, and shall take no harm.

\*  
J12, 4-8 The appearance of them is as the appearance of horses, and they shall run like horsemen.—They shall leap like the noise of chariots upon the tops of mountains, like the noise of a flame of fire devouring the stubble, as a strong people prepared to battle.—At their presence the

They shall enter into the city: they shall run upon the wall, they shall climb up the houses, they shall come in at the windows as a thief.—At their presence the earth hath trembled, the heavens are moved: the sun and moon are darkened, and the stars have withdrawn their shining.—And the Lord hath uttered His voice before the face of His army: for His armies are exceeding great, for they are strong and execute His word: for the day of the Lord is great and very terrible: and who can stand it?

## 20.—VISITATION BY FIRE FORETOLD IN THE APOCALYPSE.

## I.

Ap8, 7 The first Angel sounded the trumpet, and there followed hail and fire, mingled with blood, and it was cast on the earth, and the third part of the earth was burnt up, and the third part of the trees was burnt up, and all

green grass was burnt up.

## II.

And the second Angel sounded the trumpet: and as it were a great mountain, burning with fire, was cast into the sea, and the third part of the sea became blood:—And the third part

of those creatures died, which had life in the sea, and the third part of the ships was destroyed.

## III.

*Ap 8, 10* And the third Angel sounded the trumpet, and a great star fell from heaven, burning as it were a torch, and it fell on the third part of the rivers, and upon the fountains of waters.

## IV.

*Ap 16, 8-9* The fourth Angel poured out his vial upon the sun, and it was given unto him to afflict men with heat and fire:—And men were scorched with great heat, and they blasphemed the Name of God Who hath power over these plagues, neither did they penance to give Him glory.

## V.

*Ap 16, 10-11* And the fifth Angel poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast: and his kingdom became dark, and they gnawed their tongues for pain:—And they blasphemed the God of Heaven, because of their pains and wounds, and did not penance for their works.

## BABYLON — TYPE OF THE ANTICHRISTIAN WORLD.

*Ap 17, 3* On her forehead was written: Babylon the Great, the mother of the abominations of the earth.

*Ap 18, 1-2, 7-10* After these things I saw another Angel come down from Heaven, having great power: and the earth was enlightened with his glory.—

And he cried out with a strong voice, saying: Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen: and is become the habitation of devils, and the hold of every unclean spirit, and hateful bird.—As much as she hath glorified herself, and hath been in delicacies, so much torment and sorrow give ye to her: because she saith in her heart: I sit a queen, and am not a widow: and sorrow I shall not see.—Therefore shall her plagues come in one day, death, and mourning, and famine, and she shall be burnt with the fire: because God is strong, Who shall judge her.—And the kings of the earth, who have committed fornication, and lived in delicacies with her, shall weep, and bewail themselves over her, when they shall see the smoke of her burning.—Standing afar off for fear of her torments, saying: Alas! alas! that great city Babylon, that mighty city: for in one hour is thy judgment come.

## BEWARE OF THE IMPENDING JUDGMENT!

Hear ye, and give ear: Be not proud, for the Lord hath spoken.—Give ye glory to the Lord your God, before it be dark, and before your feet stumble upon the dark mountains: you shall look for light; and He will turn it into the shadow of death, and into darkness.\*—But if you will not hear this, my

*Je 13, 15-17*

\*This metaphor is taken from the custom of travellers who crossing over mountain regions in a dark and stormy night, are liable to stumble and to fall into the precipice below.

soul shall weep in secret for down with tears, because the  
your pride: weeping it shall Flock of the Lord is carried  
weep, and my eyes shall run away captive.

## 21.—DESOLATION OF SPIRIT.

- Os* 9, 12    Wo to them when I shall they shall know that I am  
depart from them.    the Lord.
- Jl* 1, 12    Joy is withdrawn from the    Her gates are sunk into    *La* 2, 9  
children of men.    the ground; he hath de-  
destroyed, and broken her bars:  
2 *P* 24, 20    Why have you forsaken the    her king and her princes are  
among the Gentiles: the law  
you?    is no more, and her Prophets  
have found no vision from  
*Is* 17, 9-10    In that day thou shalt    the Lord.  
be desolate.—Because thou  
hast forgotten God, thy  
Saviour.
- 1 *M* 1, 41-    Her Sanctuary was deso-    He called a famine upon *P* 104, 16  
42    late like a wilderness.—Her  
dishonour was increased  
according to her glory, and  
her Excellency was turned  
into mourning.
- Is* 51, 19    There are two things that    I will make thy tongue    *Ez* 3, 26  
have happened to thee: who    stick fast to the roof of thy  
mouth, and thou shalt be  
dumb, and not as a man  
that reproveth: because  
they are a provoking house.
- Ez* 6, 11-    Thus saith the Lord God:    May a people which thou    *Dt* 28, 33-  
12    Strike with thy hand, and    knowest not, eat the fruits    34, 38-40  
stamp with thy foot, and  
say: Alas, for all the abom-  
inations of the evils of the  
House of Israel: for they  
shall fall by the sword, by  
the famine, and by the pes-  
tilence.—He that is far off  
shall die of the pestilence:  
and he that is near, shall fall  
by the sword: and he that  
remaineth, and is besieged,  
shall die by the famine: and  
I will accomplish My indig-  
nation upon them.
- Ez* 6, 14    And I will stretch forth    thy eyes shall see.—Thou  
shalt cast much seed into  
the ground, and gather  
little: because the locusts  
shall consume all.—Thou  
shalt plant a vineyard, and  
dig it, and shalt not drink  
the wine, nor gather any  
thing thereof: because it  
shall be wasted with worms.  
—Thou shalt have olive  
trees in all thy borders, and  
shalt not be anointed with  
the oil, for the olives shall  
fall off and perish.
- Behold at My rebuke I    *Is* 50, 2  
will make a sea a desert, I

will turn the rivers into dry land, the fishes shall rot for want of water, and shall die for thirst.

*La* 2, 11-12 My eyes have failed with weeping, my bowels are troubled : my liver is poured out upon the earth, for the destruction of the daughter of my people, when the children, and the sucklings, fainted away in the streets of the City.—They said to their mothers : Where is Corn and Wine when they fainted away as the wounded in the streets of the City : when they breathed out their souls in the bosoms of their mothers.

*Ac* 7, 11 There came a famine upon all Egypt and Chanaan, and great tribulation : and our fathers found no Food.

*Ag* 1, 9 Because My House is desolate, therefore the earth was hindered from yielding her fruits.

*2 P* 12, 5 Thus saith the Lord : You have left Me, and I have left you in the hand of Sesac.

*Er* 14, 12-13 The Word of the Lord came to me, saying :—Son of man, when a land shall sin against Me, so as to transgress grievously, I will stretch forth My hand upon it, and will break the staff of the Bread thereof : and I will send famine upon it, and will destroy man and beast out of it.

*Da* 9, 26-27 A people with their leader that shall come, shall destroy the City and the Sanctuary : and the end thereof shall be waste, and after the end of the war the appointed desolation.—And He shall

confirm the Covenant with many, in one week : and in the half of the week the Victim and the Sacrifice shall fail : and there shall be in the Temple the abomination of desolation : and the desolation shall continue even to the consummation, and to the end.

The word of the Lord that *Je* 14, 1-2 came to Jeremias concerning the words of the drought.—Judea hath mourned, and the gates thereof are fallen, and are become obscure on the ground, and the cry of Jerusalem is gone up.

The great ones sent their *Je* 14, 3-6 inferiors to the water : they came to draw, they found no water, they carried back their vessels empty : they were confounded and afflicted, and covered their heads.—For the destruction of the land, because there came no rain upon the earth, the husbandmen were confounded, they covered their heads.—Yea, the hind also brought forth in the field, and left it, because there was no grass.—And the wild asses stood upon the rocks, they snuffed up the wind like dragons, their eyes failed because there was no grass.

If I go forth into the fields, *Je* 14, 18 behold the slain with the sword : and if I enter into the City, behold them that are consumed with famine. The Prophet also and the Priest are gone into a land which they knew not.

Sacrifice and libation is *Jl* 1, 9-11 cut off from the House of the Lord : the Priests, the Lord's Ministers, have

mourned:—The country is destroyed, the ground hath mourned: for the Corn is wasted, the Wine is confounded, the oil hath languished.—The husbandmen are ashamed, the vine-dressers have howled for the Wheat, and for the barley, because the harvest of the field is perished.

*Is* 51, 19

There are two things that have happened to thee: who shall be sorry for thee? desolation, and destruction, and the famine, and the sword, who shall comfort thee?

*Am* 8, 11

Behold the days come, saith the Lord, and I will send forth a famine into the land: not a famine of bread, nor a thirst of water, but of hearing the Word of the Lord.

*Am* 8, 12-

14

And they shall move from sea to sea, and from the north to the east: they shall go about seeking the Word of the Lord, and shall not find it.—In that day the fair virgins, and the young men shall faint for thirst.—They that swear by the sin of Samaria, and say: Thy God, O Dan, liveth: and the way of Bersabee liveth: and they shall fall, and shall rise no more.

*Ez* 12, 17-

20

The Word of the Lord came to me, saying:—Son of man, eat thy bread in trouble: and drink thy water in hurry and sorrow.—And say to the people of the land: Thus saith the Lord God to them that dwell in Jerusalem in the land of Israel: They shall eat their bread in care, and drink

their water in desolation: that the land may become desolate from the multitude that is therein, for the iniquity of all that dwell therein.—And the cities that are now inhabited shall be laid waste, and the land shall be desolate: and you shall know that I am the Lord.

Wo is me, for my soul hath fainted because of them that are slain. *Je* 4, 31

Thou, son of man, mourn with the breaking of thy loins, and with bitterness sigh before them.—And when they shall say to thee: Why mournest thou? thou shalt say: For that which I hear: because it cometh, and every heart shall melt, and all hands shall be made feeble, and every spirit shall faint, and water shall run down every knee: behold it cometh, and it shall be done, saith the Lord God. *Ez* 21, 6-7

Therefore as I live, saith the Lord God. Because thou hast violated My Sanctuary with all thy offences, and with all thy abominations: I will also break thee in pieces, and My eye shall not spare, and I will not have any pity. *Ez* 5, 11

We fetched our Bread at the peril of our lives, because of the sword in the desert.—Our skin was burnt as an oven, by reason of the violence of the famine. *La* 5, 9

He hath destroyed His Tent as a garden, He hath thrown down His Tabernacle: the Lord hath caused Feasts and Sabbaths to be forgotten in Sion: and hath delivered up King and *La* 2, 6-7

Priest to reproach, and to the indignation of His wrath.—The Lord hath cast off His Altar, He hath cursed His Sanctuary: He hath delivered the walls of the towers thereof into the hand of the enemy: they have made a noise in the House of the Lord, as in the day of a solemn feast.

*La 4, 4, 8-9* The tongue of the suckling child hath stuck to the roof of his mouth for thirst: the little ones have asked for Bread, and there was none to break it unto them.—Their face is now made blacker than coals, and they are not known in the streets: their skin hath stuck to their bones, it is withered, and is become like wood.—It was better with them that were slain by the sword, than with them that died with hunger: for these pined away, being

consumed for want of the fruits of the earth.

All her people sigh, they seek Bread: they have given all their precious things for Food to relieve the soul: see, O Lord, and consider, for I am become vile.—I called for my friends, but they deceived me: my Priests and my ancients pined away in the City: while they sought their Food, to relieve their souls.

Many pastors have destroyed My Vineyard, they have trodden My portion under foot: they have changed My delightful portion into a desolate wilderness.—They have laid it waste, and it hath mourned for Me. With desolation is all the land made desolate: because there is none that considereth in the heart.

My eye is afflicted.

*La 3, 49*

## 22.—A VIVID PICTURE OF THE SPIRITUAL CALAMITIES OF OUR TIMES.

\*

*Is 24, 1-3* Behold the Lord shall lay waste the earth, and shall strip it, and shall afflict the face thereof, and scatter abroad the inhabitants thereof.—And it shall be as with the people, so with the Priest: and as with the servant, so with his master: as with the handmaid, so with her mistress: as with the buyer, so with the seller: as with the lender, so with the borrower: as with him that calleth for his money, so with him that oweth.—With desolation shall the earth be

laid waste, and it shall be utterly spoiled: for the Lord hath spoken this word.

\*

The earth mourned, and faded away, and is weakened: the world faded away, the height of the people of the earth is weakened.—And the earth is infected by the inhabitants thereof: because they have transgressed the Laws, they have changed the Ordinance, they have broken the Everlasting Covenant.—Therefore shall a curse devour the earth, and the inhabitants thereof shall



sin : and therefore they that dwell therein shall be mad, and few men shall be left.

The city of vanity is broken down, every house is shut up, no man cometh in. Is 24, 10-13

Is 24, 7-9

The Vintage hath mourned, the Vine hath languished away, all the merry hearted have sighed.—The mirth of timbrels hath ceased, the noise of them that rejoice is ended, the melody of the harp is silent.—They shall not drink Wine with a song : the drink shall be bitter to them that drink it.

—There shall be a crying for Wine in the streets : all mirth is forsaken : the Joy of the earth is gone away.—Desolation is left in the city, and calamity shall oppress the gates.—For it shall be thus in the midst of the earth, in the midst of the people, as if a few olives, that remain, should be shaken out of the olive-tree : or grapes, when the vintage is ended.

### 23.—A PRAYER IN DESOLATION.

2 E 1, 3-5

They said to me : They that have remained, and are left of the captivity there in the Province, are in great affliction, and reproach : and the wall of Jerusalem is broken down, and the gates thereof are burnt with fire.—And when I had heard these words, I sat down, and wept, and mourned for many days : and I fasted, and prayed before the face of the God of Heaven.—And I said :

2 E 1, 5-

11

I beseech Thee, O Lord God of Heaven, strong, great, and terrible, Who keepest covenant and mercy with those that love Thee, and keep Thy commandments :

vanity, and have not kept Thy commandments, and ceremonies, and judgments, which Thou hast commanded Thy servant Moses.

Remember the word that Thou commandest to Moses Thy servant, saying : If you shall transgress, I will scatter you abroad among the nations :

Let my ears be attentive, and Thy eyes open, to hear the prayer of Thy servant, which I pray before Thee now, night and day, for the children of Israel Thy servants : and I confess the sins of the children of Israel, by which they have sinned against Thee : I and my father's house have sinned.

But if you return to Me, and keep My commandments and do them, though you should be led away to the uttermost parts of the world, I will gather you from thence, and bring you back to the Place which I have chosen for My Name

We have been seduced by

to dwell there.

And these are Thy servants, and Thy people : whom Thou hast redeemed by Thy great strength, and by Thy Mighty Hand.

I beseech Thee, O Lord, let Thy ear be attentive to the prayer of Thy servant, and to the prayer of Thy servants who desire to fear Thy Name.

## 24.—A LAMENTATION BECAUSE THE LAMP OF THE SANCTUARY HAS GONE OUT.

It shall come to pass in that day,  
That the inhabitants of Jerusalem  
Shall mourn for Him

as  
One mourneth for an Only Son,  
And they shall grieve  
OVER HIM

As the manner is to grieve  
For the death  
of

The First-Born.

*Za* 12, 9-10.

- Je* 25, 10-11 I will take away from them the Light of the Lamp.—And all this land shall be a desolation.
- Os* 4, 1, 3 There is no knowledge of God in the land.—Therefore shall the land mourn.
- Jl* 1, 10 The ground hath mourned, for the Corn is wasted.
- Je* 22, 12 The Lord the God of Hosts in that day shall call to weeping, and to mourning, and to girding with sackcloth.
- Isa* 3, 45 Joy was taken away from Jacob, and the pipe and harp ceased there.
- Is* 38, 17 In peace is my bitterness most bitter.
- Je* 48, 32-33 O vineyard of Sabama, I will weep for thee, with the mourning of Jazer : thy branches are gone over the

sea, they are come even to the sea of Jazer : the robber hath rushed in upon thy harvest, and thy vintage.—Joy and gladness is taken away from Carmel, and from the land of Moab, and I have taken away the wine out of the presses : the treader of the grapes shall not sing the accustomed cheerful tune.

A voice has heard in the highways, weeping and howling of the children of Israel : because they have made their way wicked, they have forgotten the Lord their God.

*Je* 3, 21

Faith is lost : cut off thy hair, and cast it away, and take up a lamentation on high, for the Lord hath rejected and forsaken the

generation of His wrath.

*Is* 16, 6-7 We have heard of the pride of Moab, he is exceeding proud : his pride and his arrogancy, and his indignation is more than his strength. — Therefore shall Moab howl to Moab, every one shall howl ; to them that rejoice upon the brick walls, tell ye their stripes.

*Is* 16, 8-9 For the suburbs of Hesebon are desolate, and the Lords of the nations have destroyed the vineyards of Sabama : the branches thereof have reached even to Jazer : they have wandered in the wilderness, the branches thereof are left, they are gone over the sea. — Therefore I will lament with the weeping of Jazer the vineyard of Sabama : I will water thee with my tears, O Hesebon, and Eleale : for the voice of the treaders hath rushed in upon thy vintage, and upon thy harvest.

*Is* 16, 10-11 And gladness and joy shall be taken away from Carmel, and there shall be no rejoicing nor shouting in the vineyards. He shall not tread out wine in the press that was wont to tread it out : the voice of the treaders I have taken away. — Wherefore my bowels

shall stand like a harp for Moab, and my inward parts for the brick wall.

Set thee up a watch-tower : make to thee bitterness. *Je* 31, 21

For the Mountains I will take up weeping and lamentation, and for the Beautiful Places of the desert, mourning : because they are burnt up, for that there is not a man that passeth through them : and they have not heard the Voice of the Owner. *Je* 9, 10

We are confounded because we have heard the reproach. Shame hath covered our faces because strangers are come upon the Sanctuaries of the House of the Lord. *Je* 51, 51

Wo to me for my destruction, my wound is very grievous. But I said : Truly this is my own evil, and I will bear it. — My Tabernacle is laid waste : all My cords are broken : My children are gone out from Me, and they are not : there is none to stretch forth My Tent any more, and to set up My Curtains. — Because the Pastors have done foolishly, and have not sought the Lord : therefore have they not understood, and all their flock is scattered. *Je* 10, 19-21

## 25.—THOSE WHO MOURN OVER THE DESOLATION OF THE SANCTUARY.

### 1. THE ANGELS.

*Is* 33, 7-9 Behold they that see shall cry without, the Angels of peace shall weep bitterly. — The ways are made desolate, no one passeth by the road, the Covenant is made void.

He hath rejected the cities, He hath not regarded the men. — The land hath mourned and languished : Libanus is confounded, and become foul : and Saron is become as a desert : and

- Basan and Carmel are shaken.
- 2. THE PRIESTS.**
- Jl* 1, 13 Gird yourselves, and lament, O ye Priests, howl, ye Ministers of the Altars: go in, lie in sackcloth, ye Ministers of my God: because Sacrifice and Libation is cut off from the House of your God.
- Jl* 2, 17 Between the Porch and the Altar the Priests, the Lord's Ministers shall weep, and shall say: Spare, O Lord, spare Thy people; and give not Thy inheritance to reproach.
- La* 3, 48 My eye hath run down with streams of water, for the destruction of the daughter of my people.
- 1 M* 3, 47-48 They fasted that day, and put on haircloth, and put ashes upon their heads: and they rent their garments:—And they laid open the Books\* of the Law, in which the Gentiles searched for the likeness of their idols.
- Is* 19, 4-6 I will deliver Egypt into the hand of cruel masters, and a strong king shall rule over them, saith the Lord the God of Hosts.—And the water of the sea shall be dried up, and the river shall be wasted and dry.—And the rivers shall fail: the streams of the banks shall be diminished and be dried up. The reed and the bulrush shall wither away.
- Is* 19, 7-10 The channel of the river shall be laid bare from its fountain, and every thing sown by the water shall be dried up, it shall wither away, and shall be no more.—The Fishers also shall mourn, and all that cast a hook into the river shall lament, and they that spread nets upon the waters shall languish away.—They shall be confounded that wrought in flax, combing and weaving fine linen.—And its watery places shall be dry, all they shall mourn that made pools to take fishes.
- Who will give water to my head, and a fountain of tears to my eyes? and I will weep day and night for the slain of the daughter of my people.
- Who will give me in the wilderness a Lodging-Place of wayfaring men, and I will leave my people and depart from them? because they are all adulterers, an assembly of transgressors.
- And they have bent their tongue, as a bow, for lies, and not for Truth: they have strengthened themselves upon the earth, for they have proceeded from evil to evil, and Me they have not known, saith the Lord.
- 3. THE PRINCES AND ANCIENTS OF THE PEOPLE.**
- Behold our Sanctuary and our Beauty, and our Glory is laid waste, and the Gentiles have defiled them.—To what end then shall we live any longer?—And Mathathias
- Je* 9, 1
- Je* 9, 2
- Je* 9, 3
- 1 M* 2, 12-14

\* In the Chapel of the Divine Expiation in London, the Holy Books, always kept beside the Altar, are venerated on certain days by the faithful in the spirit of Expiation for their sacrilegious misusage.

and his sons rent their garments, and they covered themselves with haircloth, and made great lamentation.

*M* 1, 23, 28-29 He proudly entered into the Sanctuary and took away the Golden Altar.—And there was great mourning in Israel, and in every place where they were.—And the Princes and the ancients mourned, and the virgins and the young men were made feeble, and the beauty of the women was changed.—Every bridegroom took up lamentation: and the bride that sat in the marriage bed mourned:—And the land was moved for the inhabitants thereof, and all the House of Jacob was covered with confusion.

*Je* 13, 18 Humble yourselves: sit down: for the Crown of your Glory is come down from your head.

*1 M* 4, 38-40 They saw the Sanctuary desolate, and the Altar profaned, and the gates burnt, and shrubs growing up in the Courts as in a forest, or on the mountains, and the chambers joining to the Temple thrown down.—And they rent their garments, and made great lamentations, and put ashes on their heads.—And they fell down to the ground on their faces, and they sounded with the trumpets of alarm, and they cried towards Heaven.

*Ba* 4, 20 I have put off the robe of peace, and have put upon me the sackcloth of supplication, and I will cry to the Most High in my days.

#### 4. MOURNING MEN.

Therefore thus saith the Lord the God of Hosts the Sovereign Lord: in every street there shall be wailing: and in all places that are without, they shall say, Alas, alas! and they shall call the husbandman to mourning, and such as are skilful in lamentation to lament.—And in all vineyards there shall be wailing: because I will pass through in the midst of thee, saith the Lord.

#### 5. MOURNING WOMEN.

Thus saith the Lord of Hosts the God of Israel. Consider ye, and call for the mourning women, and let them come: and send to them that are wise women, and let them make haste:—Let them hasten and take up a lamentation for us: let our eyes shed tears, and our eyelids run down with waters.—For a voice of wailing is heard out of Sion: How are we wasted and greatly confounded? because we have left the Land, because our Dwellings are cast down.

#### 6. MOURNING FAMILIES.

It shall come to pass in that day, that I will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem.—And I will pour out upon the House of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the Spirit of grace, and of prayers: and they shall look upon Me, Whom they have pierced: and they shall mourn for Him as one mourneth for an only son, and they shall grieve over Him, as the manner is to

grieve for the death of the first-born.

**Za 12, 11-14**

In that day there shall be a great lamentation in Jerusalem like the lamentation of Adadremmon in the plain of Mageddon.—And the land shall mourn: families and families apart: the families of the House of David apart, and their women apart:—The families of the house of Nathan apart, and their women apart: the families of Levi apart, and their women apart: the families of Semei apart, and their women apart.—All the rest of the families, families and families apart, and their women apart.

#### 7. THE PEOPLE MOURN.

**Jl 2, 12-15**

Now therefore saith the Lord: Be converted to Me with all your heart, in fasting and in weeping, and in mourning.—And rend your hearts and not your garments, and turn to the Lord your God: for He is gracious and merciful, patient and rich in mercy, and ready to repent of the evil.—Who knoweth but He will return, and forgive, and leave a blessing behind Him, Sacrifice and Libation to the Lord your God?—Blow the Trumpet in Sion, sanctify a fast, call a solemn assembly.—Gather together the people, sanctify the Church, assemble the An-

cients, gather together the little ones, and them that suck at the breasts: let the bridegroom go forth from his bed, and the bride out of her bride-chamber.

I will turn your Feasts into mourning, and all your songs into lamentation: and I will bring up sackcloth upon every back of yours, and baldness upon every head: and I will make it as the mourning of an only son, and the latter end thereof as a bitter day.

Upon every back there shall be haircloth,—And in the streets of Moab general mourning, because I have broken Moab as an useless vessel, saith the Lord.

Cry, ye daughters of Rabbath, gird yourselves with haircloth, mourn and go about by the hedges, for Melchom shall be carried into captivity, his priests, and his princes together.

#### 8. THE SCATTERED STONES OF THE SANCTUARY.

Her gates shall lament and mourn, and she shall sit desolate on the ground.

The bulwark hath mourned. They have laid it waste, and it hath mourned for Me.

The ground hath mourned, because the Corn is wasted.

The ways of Sion mourn, because there are none that come to the Solemn Feast.

#### 26.—EXAMPLES OF MOURNERS.

*Jn 11, 35*  
*Lu 2, 35*  
*Is 33, 7*  
*La 3, 48*  
*Mt 26, 75*

1. The Man of Sorrows.
2. The Blessed Virgin.
3. The Holy Angels.
4. St. Jeremias.
5. St. Peter.

6. St. Paul. *Ph 3, 18*
7. St. John the Evangelist. *Ap 5, 5*
8. St. Timothy. *2 Ti 1, 4*
9. St. Mary Magdalen. *Lu 7, 38*

<i>Ge</i> 23, 2	10. St. Abraham.	28. Jerusalem.	<i>La</i> 1, 2
<i>Ps</i> 101, 10	11. St. David.	29. The Pilgrims to Sion.	<i>Je</i> 50, 4
<i>Is</i> 22, 4	12. St. Isaias.	30. Machabeus and his people.	<i>2 M</i> 11, 6
4 <i>K</i> 8, 11	13. St. Eliseus.	31. The Jewish People.	<i>2 M</i> 13, 12
<i>Jb</i> 30, 31	14. St. Job.	32. The Widow of Naim.	<i>Lu</i> 7, 13
1 <i>K</i> 1, 10	15. St. Anna.	33. Jairus.	<i>Lu</i> 8, 52
<i>Da</i> 13, 35	16. St. Susanna.	34. The Father of the possessed boy.	<i>Mk</i> 9, 23
1 <i>E</i> 10, 1	17. St. Esdras.	35. The Apostles.	<i>Jn</i> 16, 20
<i>Je</i> 31, 15	18. Rachel.	36. Friends of St. Paul.	<i>Ac</i> 21, 13
<i>Ge</i> 43, 30	19. Joseph.	37. Merchants of the earth.	<i>Ap</i> 18, 11
<i>Es</i> 4, 1	20. Mardochai.	38. Ship-masters.	<i>Ap</i> 18, 17
<i>Je</i> 41, 6	21. Ismahel.	39. Mariners.	<i>Ap</i> 18, 17
2 <i>K</i> 3, 15	22. Pheltiel.	40. Widows.	<i>Ac</i> 9, 39
1 <i>K</i> 11, 4	23. The Israelites.	41. The Daughters of Jerusalem.	<i>Lu</i> 23, 28
2 <i>K</i> 1, 24	24. The Daughters of Israel.	42. Respha.	2 <i>K</i> 21, 10
<i>Ps</i> 136, 1	25. The Captives in Babylon.		
<i>Es</i> 4, 3	26. The Jews.		
<i>Is</i> 15, 3	27. The Moabites.		

## 27.—THE SEEKING FOR HIM WHOM THEY HAD LOST.

## THE INVITATION HOME. THE RECONCILIATION.

In those days, saith the Lord,  
The children of Israel shall come:  
Going and weeping  
They shall make haste,  
and  
Shall seek the Lord their God.  
They shall ask the way  
To Sion,\*  
Their faces are hitherward.  
They shall come,  
And shall be joined TO THE LORD  
by  
An Everlasting Covenant,  
Which shall never be forgotten.

*Je* 50, 4-5.

*Is* 2, 2-3 In the last days many and He will teach us His people shall go and say: ways, and we will walk in Come and let us go up to the His paths:—For the law House of the God of Jacob, shall come forth from Sion,

\* *Ascendamus in Sion, hoc est in Ecclesiam.*—*St. Jerome.*

- and the Word of the Lord from Jerusalem.
- Za 8, 23** We will go with you: for we have heard that God is with you.
- 2 P 15, 2-4** He went out to meet Asa, and said to him: Hear ye me, Asa, and all Juda and Benjamin: The Lord is with you, because you have been with Him. If you seek Him, you shall find: but if you forsake Him, He will forsake you.—And many days shall pass in Israel without the true God, and without a Priest a teacher, and without the law.—And when in their distress they shall return to the Lord the God of Israel, and shall seek Him, they shall find Him.
- Za 8, 21** The inhabitants go one to another, saying: Let us go and entreat the Face of the Lord, and let us seek the Lord of Hosts. I also will go.
- Za 8, 22** Many peoples, and strong nations shall come to seek the Lord of Hosts in Jerusalem.
- Ca 3, 2-4** I will rise, and will go about the City, in the streets and the broad ways I will seek Him Whom my soul loveth: I sought Him and I found Him not.—The watchman who kept the City found me: Have you seen Him Whom my soul loveth?—When I had a little passed by them, I found Him Whom my soul loveth: I held Him: and I will not let Him go, till I bring Him into my mother's house, and into the chamber of her that bore me.
- Is 45, 19** I have not said to the seed of Jacob: Seek Me in vain.
- All her people sigh, they seek Bread.
- Seek the Lord, all ye meek of the earth; you that have wrought His judgment: seek the Just, seek the Meek: if by any means you may be hid in the day of the Lord's indignation.
- They said to Him: All seek for Thee.
- You seek Me.
- This is the generation of them that seek Him, of them that seek the Face of the God of Jacob.
- The Lord is good to the soul that seeketh Him.
- They came to Capernaum seeking Jesus.
- When thou shalt seek there the Lord thy God thou shalt find Him: yet so if thou seek Him with all thy heart, and all the affliction of thy soul.
- They said to their mothers: Where is Corn and Wine? when they fainted away as the wounded in the streets of the City.
- The little ones have asked for Bread, and there was none to break it unto them.
- After this the children of Israel shall return, and shall seek the Lord their God, and David their King.
- In their affliction they will rise early to Me: Come, and let us return to the Lord:—For He hath taken us, and He will heal us: He will strike, and He will cure us.—He will revive us after two days: on the third day He will raise us up, and we shall live in His sight. We shall know, and we shall follow on.
- La 1, 11**
- So 2, 3**
- Mk 1, 37**
- Jn 6, 26**
- Ps 23, 6**
- La 3, 25**
- Jn 6, 24**
- Dt 4, 29**
- La 2, 12**
- La 4, 4**
- Os 3, 5**
- Os 6, 1-3**



- that we may know the Lord. His going forth is prepared as the morning light, and He will come to us as the early and the latter rain to the earth.
- 2 K 19, 33 Come with Me that thou mayest rest secure with Me in Jerusalem.
- Is 26, 9 My soul hath desired Thee in the night.
- Is 28, 19 Vexation alone shall make you understand what you hear.
- Je 3, 1 Return to Me, saith the Lord, and I will receive thee.
- The young lions roar after *Ps* 103, 21 their Bread, seeking their meat from God.
- My people shall long for *Os* 11, 7 My return.
- O that some man would 2 K 23, 15 give me a drink of the Water out of the Cistern that is in Bethlehem by the gate.
- Who will grant me that I *Jb* 23, 3 might know and find Him, and come even to His Throne?
- Thy Face, O Lord, will I *Ps* 26, 8 seek.

## 28.—THE PENITENTIAL CONFESSIONS AND SUPPLICATIONS.

- Je 3, 21-25 A voice was heard in the highways, weeping and howling of the children of Israel: because they have made their way wicked, they have forgotten the Lord their God.—Return, you rebellious children, and I will heal your rebellions. Behold we come to Thee: for Thou art the Lord our God.—In very deed the hills were liars, and the multitude of the mountains: truly in the Lord our God is the Salvation of Israel.—Confusion hath devoured the labour of our fathers from our youth, their flocks and their herds, their sons and their daughters.—We shall sleep in our confusion, and our shame shall cover us, because we have sinned against the Lord our God, we and our fathers from our youth even to this day, and we have not hearkened to the Voice of the Lord our God.
- If thou wilt return, O *Je* 4, 1-2 Israel, saith the Lord, return to Me: if thou wilt take away thy stumbling-blocks out of My sight, thou shalt not be moved.—And thou shalt swear: As the Lord liveth, in truth, and in judgment, and in justice: and the Gentiles shall bless Him, and shall praise Him.

## 29.—THE REBUILDING OF JERUSALEM, THE CITY OF PEACE.

- Je 3, 14 Return, O ye revolting children, saith the Lord: and I will take you, one of a city, and two of a kindred, and will bring you into Sion.
- The Places that have been *Is* 58, 12 desolate for ages shall be built in Thee: Thou shalt raise up the foundations of generation and generation: and Thou shalt be called the

Repairer of the fences, turning the paths into rest.

*Is* 61, 4

They shall build the Places that have been waste from of old, and shall raise up ancient ruins, and shall repair the desolate Cities, that were destroyed for generation and generation.

*Ex* 36, 33

Thus saith the Lord God : In the day that I shall cleanse you from all your iniquities, and shall cause the Cities to be inhabited, and shall repair the ruinous Places,

*Ex* 36, 34-

35

And the desolate Land shall be tilled, which before was waste in the sight of all that passed by,—They shall say : This Land that was untilled is become as a garden of pleasure : and the Cities that were abandoned, and desolate, and destroyed, are peopled and fenced.

*Ex* 36, 36

And the nations, that shall be left round about you, shall know that I the Lord have built up what was destroyed, and planted what was desolate, that I the Lord have spoken and done it.

*Ex* 36, 37-

38

Thus saith the Lord God : Moreover in this shall the House of Israel find Me, that I will do it for them : I will multiply them as a flock of men,—As a holy flock, as the flock of Jerusalem in her solemn feasts : so shall the waste Cities be full of flocks of men : and they shall know that I am the Lord.

*Am* 9, 11-

12

In that day I will raise up the Tabernacle of David, that is fallen : and I will close up the breaches of the

walls thereof, and repair what was fallen : and I will rebuild it as in the days of old,—That they may possess the remnant of Edom, and all nations, because My Name is invoked upon them : saith the Lord that doth these things.

Behold the days come, *Am* 8, 13-

15

saith the Lord, when the ploughman shall overtake the reaper, and the treader of grapes him that soweth seed : and the mountains shall drop sweetness, and every hill shall be tilled.— And I will bring back the captivity of My people Israel : and they shall build the abandoned Cities, and inhabit them : and they shall plant vineyards, and drink the wine of them : and shall make gardens, and eat the fruits of them.— And I will plant them upon their own Land : and I will no more pluck them out of their Land which I have given them, saith the Lord thy God.

Lift up thy eyes round *Is* 60, 4-5

about, and see : all these are gathered together, they are come to thee : thy sons shall come from afar, and thy daughters shall rise up at thy side.—Then shalt thou see, and abound, and thy heart shall wonder and be enlarged, when the multitude of the sea shall be converted to thee, the strength of the Gentiles shall come to thee.

The multitude of camels *Is* 60, 6-7

shall cover thee, the dromedaries of Madian and Ephraim : all they from Saba shall come, bringing gold and

frankincense: and showing forth praise to the Lord.—

All the flocks of Cedar shall be gathered together unto thee: the rams of Nabaioth shall minister to thee; they shall be offered upon My acceptable Altar, and I will glorify the House of My Majesty.

*Is* 60, 8-9 Who are these, that fly as clouds, and as doves to their windows?—For the islands wait for Me, and the ships of the sea in the beginning: that I may bring thy sons from afar: their silver, and their gold with them, to the Name of the Lord thy God, and to the Holy One of Israel, because He hath glorified thee.

*Is* 60, 10-11 And the children of strangers shall build up thy walls, and their kings shall minister to thee: for in My wrath have I struck thee and in My reconciliation have I had mercy upon thee.—And thy gates shall be open continually: they shall not be shut day nor night, that the strength of the Gentiles may be brought to thee, and their kings may be brought.

*Is* 19, 22 The Lord shall strike Egypt with a scourge, and shall heal it, and they shall return to the Lord, and He shall be pacified towards them and heal them.

*Is* 28, 19 Awake, and give praise, ye that dwell in the dust, for thy dew is the dew of the Light

*Is* 35, 4 Say to the faint-hearted: Take courage, and fear not: behold your God will bring the revenge of recompense: God Himself will come and

will save you.

Then shall the eyes of the *Is* 35, 5-7 blind be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.—Then shall the lame man leap as a hart, and the tongue of the dumb shall be free: for waters are broken out in the desert, and streams in the wilderness.—And that which was dry land shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water. In the dens where dragons dwelt before, shall rise up the verdure of the reed and the bulrush.

And a path and a way *Is* 35, 8-10 shall be there, and it shall be called the Holy Way: the unclean shall not pass over it, and this shall be unto you a straight way, so that fools shall not err therein.—No lion shall be there, nor shall any mischievous beast go up by it, nor be found there: but they shall walk there that shall be delivered.—And the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and shall come into Sion with praise, and Everlasting Joy shall be upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

The Lord will comfort *Is* 51, 3 Sion, and will comfort all the ruins thereof: and He will make her desert as a place of pleasure, and her wilderness as the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving, and the voice of praise.

Thou shalt cry, and He *Is* 58, 9 shall say: Here I am.

He shall destroy in this *Is* 25, 7-9

mountain the face of the bond with which all people were tied, and the web that He began over all nations.—He shall cast death down headlong for ever: and the Lord God shall wipe away tears from every face, and the reproach of His people He shall take away, from off the whole earth: for the Lord hath spoken it.—And they shall say in that day: Lo, this is our God, we have waited for Him, and He will save us: this is the Lord, we have patiently waited for Him, we shall rejoice, and be joyful in His Salvation.

*Is* 27, 12-13

It shall come to pass that in that day the Lord will strike from the channel of the river even to the torrent of Egypt, and you shall be gathered together one by one, O ye children of Israel.—And it shall come to pass that in that day a noise shall be made with a great trumpet, and they that were lost shall come from the land of the Assyrians, and they that were outcasts in the land of Egypt, and they shall adore the Lord in the Holy Mount in Jerusalem.

*Is* 49, 8-9

Thus saith the Lord: In an acceptable time I have heard thee, and in the day of Salvation I have helped thee: and I have preserved thee, and given thee to be a covenant of the people, that thou mightest raise up the earth, and possess the inheritances that were destroyed.—That thou mightest say to them that are bound: Come forth: and to them that are

in darkness: Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in every plain.

They shall not hunger, nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor the sun strike them: for

*Is* 49, 10-13

He that is merciful to them shall be their Shepherd, and at the Fountains of Waters He shall give them drink.

—And I will make all My mountains a way, and My paths shall be exalted.—

Behold these shall come from afar, and behold these from the north and from the sea, and these from the south country.—

Give praise, O ye heavens, and rejoice, O earth, ye mountains, give praise with jubilation: because the Lord hath comforted His people, and will have mercy on His poor ones.

Behold an Inhabitant shall come, Who was not with me, He that was a Stranger to thee before shall be joined to thee.

*Is* 54, 15

I will bring them back again, because I will have

*Za* 10, 6-8

mercy on them: and they shall be as they were when I had not cast them off, for I am the Lord their God, and will hear them.—And they shall be as the valiant men of Ephraim, and their heart shall rejoice as through wine: and their children shall see, and shall rejoice, and their heart shall be joyful in the Lord.—I will whistle for them, and I will gather them together, because I have redeemed them: I will multiply them as they were multiplied before.

- 1 M 3, 47-48 Then they took whole stones according to the law, and built a New Altar according to the former:—And they built up the Holy Places, and the things that were within the Temple: and they sanctified the Temple, and the Courts.
- 1 M 3, 49-50 And they made New Holy Vessels, and brought in the Candlestick, and the Altar of incense, and the Table into the Temple.—And they put incense upon the Altar, and lighted up the Lamps that were upon the Candlestick, and they gave light in the Temple.
- 1 M 3, 51 And they set the Loaves upon the Table, and hung up the vails, and finished all the works that they had begun to make.
- And they arose before the morning on the five and twentieth day of the ninth month (which is the month of Casleu) in the hundred and forty-eighth year.—And they offered Sacrifice according to the law upon the New Altar of Holocausts which they had made.—According to the time, and according to the day wherein the heathens had defiled it, in the same was it dedicated anew with Canticles, and Harps, and Lutes, and Cymbals.—And all the people fell upon their faces, and adored, and blessed up to Heaven, Him that had prospered them.

### 30.—GLORIOUS PROMISES MADE TO THE RETURNERS HOME.

#### 1. THE CALL.

- Je 31, 6 For there shall be a day, in which the watchmen on Mount Ephraim, shall cry: Arise, and let us go up to Sion to the Lord our God.

\*

#### 2. THE PROMISES.

- Je 31, 7-8 For thus saith the Lord:—Behold I will bring them from the north country, and will gather them from the ends of the earth: and among them shall be the blind and the lame, the woman with child, and she that is bringing forth together, a great company of them returning hither.

\*

- Je 31, 9 They shall come with weeping: and I will bring them back in mercy: and I will bring them through the torrents of waters in a right

way, and they shall not stumble in it: for I am a Father to Israel, and Ephraim is My first-born.

\*

Hear the Word of the Lord, O ye nations, and declare it in the islands that are afar off, and say: He that scattered Israel will gather him: and He will keep him as the shepherd doth his flock.

\*

For the Lord hath redeemed Jacob, and delivered him out of the hand of one that was mightier than he.

\*

And they shall come, and shall give praise in Mount Sion: and they shall flow together to the Good Things of the Lord, for the Corn, and Wine, and Oil, and their soul shall be as a watered

garden, and they shall be hungry no more.

\*

*Je 3, 13* Then shall the virgin rejoice in the dance, the young men and the old men together : and I will turn their mourning into joy, and will comfort them, and make them joyful after their sorrow.

\*

*Je 3, 14* And I will fill the soul of the Priests with fatness : and My people shall be filled with My Good Things, saith the Lord.

\*

THEY CELEBRATE THEIR RETURN FROM CAPTIVITY.

*Ps 125, 1-2* When the Lord brought

back the captivity of Sion, we became like men comforted.—Then was our mouth filled with gladness : and our tongue with joy.

Then shall they say among *Ps 125, 3* the Gentiles : The Lord hath done great things for them. The Lord hath done great things for us : we are become joyful.

Turn again our captivity, *Ps 125, 4-5* O Lord, as a stream in the south.—They that sow in tears shall reap in joy.

Going they went and wept, *Ps 125, 6-7* casting their seeds.—But coming they shall come with joyfulness, carrying their sheaves.

### 31.—THE EMBLEM OF THE REUNION OF THE SCATTERED CHILDREN OF GOD INTO THE CITY OF PEACE.\*

*La 4, 1* The stones of the Sanctuary are scattered in the top of every street.

*Ecl 3, 5* All things have their season : a time to scatter stones and a time to gather.

*2 P 32, 27* He gathered himself great treasures of precious stones.

*Ge 31, 45-46* Jacob took a stone, and set it up for a title.—And he

said to his brethren : Bring hither stones, and they, gathering stones together, made a heap, and they ate upon it.

What are these silly Jews *2 E 4, 2* doing? Will the Gentiles let them alone? Will they sacrifice and make an end in a day? Are they able to

\* Here reference is made to a heap of hallowed stones gathered together from the desecrated Sanctuaries throughout Christendom, and reverently kept in an Oratory in the Garden of the House of the Brotherhood of the Divine Expiation, with a view of building with them later on a Monumental Church of Expiation to our Lord in the Most Holy Sacrament. Alluding to this project, a friend writes : "O, what a blessed work is that of gathering together the stones of the ruined Sanctuaries, and of making each one, from its place in the resuscitated Temple, herald forth the praises of Him Who is '*the Resurrection and the Life*'! May the speedy fulfilment of your holy project be the emblem of the reunion of all the scattered but chosen material of our own dear native land into the Mystic Living Temple, Whose Corner-Stone is Christ!" This heap of sacred stones from ruined Temples of God serves also to keep before our minds the spiritual desolation of the Christian world, and the need there is of expiating the unexpiated sins of the Sanctuary. It will also, we hope, serve as a waymark for wanderers. For as travellers in caravans heap up stones in the desert to serve as a waymark to guide them on their return, so may these sacred stones set up in the desert of this world serve as a landmark for the guidance of those who are seeking their way back to the City of Peace.

- raise stones out of the heaps of rubbish? shall have pity on the earth thereof.
- Js* 4, 5-6 Carry from thence every man a stone on your shoulders that it may be a sign among you.—And when your children shall ask you to-morrow, saying: What mean these stones? you shall answer them. O poor little one, tossed with tempest, without all comfort, behold I will lay thy stones in order. He built with the stones 3 *K* 18, 32 an Altar to the Name of the Lord.
- Mk* 13, 1 Master, behold what manner of stones are here. I have prepared for the 1 *P* 29, 2 House of my God all manner of precious stones.
- P's* 101, 14-15 Thou shalt arise and have mercy on Sion: for it is time to have mercy on it, for the time has come.—For the stones thereof have pleased Thy servants: and they God is able of these stones to raise up children to Abraham. *Mt* 3, 9
- I say to you that if these stones shall hold their peace, the stones will cry out. *Lk* 19, 40

---

### ON PENANCE.

**PENANCE** is used in two senses—in so far as it is a virtue, and in so far as it is a Sacrament. We will speak of it here merely as far as it is a virtue.

Our Blessed Lord was the only true Penitent, Who took upon Himself our sins, and made satisfaction for them. His Precious Blood, applied to our souls through Baptism, not only effaces sins, but remits also all the punishment due to them; so that if all Christians had preserved their Baptismal innocence, there would be no need of Penance.

But, alas! who has not broken the Everlasting Covenant of his Baptism? No one can say, "My heart is clean, and I am pure from sin" (*Pv.* 20, 9). And as the sins a man commits after his Baptism are more grievous than those which he committed before Baptism, they are not so easily pardoned; for Divine Justice demands certain conditions from him before the Precious Blood can be applied to his soul. For as the

Council of Trent says : " The nature of Divine Justice seems to demand that they who through ignorance have sinned before Baptism be received into grace in one way ; and *in another* those who, after having been freed from the servitude of sin and of the devil, and after having received the gift of the Holy Ghost, have not feared knowingly to violate the Temple of God, and to grieve the Holy Ghost." The way alluded to here for obtaining the remission of sins done after Baptism is *the way of Penance*, as our Lord would have us understand when He says : " Unless you do penance you shall all likewise perish " (Luke 13, 3).

The Penance spoken of by our Lord is a virtue which consists in (1) sorrow for sin, (2) and in a consequent desire to expiate the same.

1. Sorrow for sin is the action of the will whereby the soul turns to God, and vehemently abhors its sins because they offend God, and purposes to sin no more. This sorrow is often accompanied with anguish of mind, as we find in the lives of the great penitent Saints, such as St. David, who watered his couch with his tears, and St. Peter, whose cheeks were furrowed with the tears that he shed.

2. Expiation, the second part of Penance, consists in penitential acts offered up in atonement for sin. By such acts we understand any bodily or mental suffering, (1) inflicted on us by our Lord, Who " chastises those whom He loves ;" (2) enjoined by the Church ; (3) or voluntarily undertaken by us, such as fasting, prayer, and almsdeeds. True sorrow leads to self-chastisement. Hence we see that the Saints were as ingenious in finding out ways and means of avenging the sins they sorrowed over as many of us are in finding out means for self-indulgence.

But our Lord in the richness of His love has provided



a way whereby He may exercise His mercies even to those who do no Penance—namely, by the way of *vicarious suffering*, whereby one can do Penance for his neighbour, and so soften his hard, impenitent heart as to dispose it to receive God's converting grace.

This doctrine of vicarious suffering is based upon that of the Communion of Saints. It was taught clearly by St. Paul (Col. 1, 24), and preached and practised in all ages. But this privilege of thus sharing in the work of Eternal Redemption, though open to all, belongs especially to Priests, whose office it is morning by morning to offer up themselves to the Eternal Father with the Sacred Oblation of Jesus for their own sins, and for the sins of their people. But to His favourite ones does our Lord grant to share more largely than others in His redeeming work, as we may judge from His own beloved Apostles, whom He called to lay down their lives as He did for the Salvation of souls. Tradition also tells us that the little children whom He blessed were all favoured by Him with the privilege of mingling their life's blood with the Blood that He shed for our Redemption.

In all times has our Lord invited generous souls to co-operate with Him by suffering in saving souls. But in these calamitous times, when faith is lost and the justice of God is being vehemently outraged by the increased wickedness of men, He seems to be urging the faithful in greater numbers to take up the hammer of Penance, and with it to unite with Him in breaking the chains that hold so many souls captives to the devil. Above all is He calling loudly upon Priests to stand between the Porch and the Altar, and to weep over the sins of the world, and to cry out with Him to the Father, "Spare, O Lord, spare Thy people." For this purpose many religious houses have been set up in

the Church in these latter days. Among others there is the House of the Brotherhood of the Divine Expiation, where men will be received who are called to be in a special way co-victims and co-pleaders with our Lord on the Altar for the appeasing of His Father's Anger, and for obtaining mercy for the world.\* The Holy Father urges all who may be moved to join this Brotherhood to do so without delay, since, as he says: "The work is pressing. For it will appease the just Anger of the Eternal Father, provoked by the apostasy of peoples and of nations, and, by thus removing the obstacles to grace, will prepare the way for Divine Justice to work the conversion of the world." May generous souls be found to devote themselves to this heroic life of Expiation, that so our Lord may not have to complain as He did of old when He said: "I sought among them for a man that might set up a hedge, and stand in the gap before Me in favour of the land, that I might not destroy it, and I found none" (Ez. 22, 30).

1.—THE VIRTUE OF PENANCE; ITS NECESSITY;  
PREACHED BY THE PROPHETS; BY OUR  
LORD AND HIS APOSTLES.

Le 5, 5	Let him do penance for his sins.	just, who need not penance.	
Lu 13, 3	Unless you do penance, you shall all likewise perish. [Repeated in verse 5.]	I came not to call the just, but sinners to penance.	Lu 5, 32
Lu 15, 7	I say to you that there shall be joy in Heaven upon one sinner that doth penance, more than upon ninety-nine	Peter said to them: Do penance, and be baptised every one of you in the Name of Jesus Christ, for the remission of your sins: and you shall receive the gift of	Ac 2, 38

\* "The Priests of the House of Expiation are called in a special manner to conform themselves to our Lord's Life of Expiation by sorrow for sin, by mortification of self, by intercessory prayer, and by infusing the same spirit of Expiation into others."

Again, "The motive by which they are impelled to lead this life is to offer continually an Expiation for sin, and above all for the sins of the Christian world, and of Catholics who at this time are provoking the just anger of God, and thereby bringing judgment on the world."—(*Preambula IV. and V. of the Rules of the Brotherhood.*)

the Holy Ghost.

*Ac* 26, 20 Paul preached first to them that are at Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the country of Judea, and to the Gentiles, that they should do penance, and turn to God, doing works worthy of penance.

*2 C* 7, 9 Now I am glad; not because you were made sorrowful; but because you were made sorrowful unto penance. For you were made sorrowful according to God, that in nothing you should suffer damage by us.

*2 P* 7, 14 If you turn to the Lord with all your heart, and prepare your hearts unto the Lord, and serve Him only, He will deliver you out of the hands of the Philistines.

*Le* 5, 5 Let him do penance for his sin.

*Eci* 2, 22 If we do not penance, we shall fall into the hands of the Lord, and not into the hands of men.

*Jb* 42, 6 I reprehend myself, and do penance in dust and ashes.

*Je* 31, 19 After Thou didst convert me, I did penance.

*Ba* 4, 20 I have put off the robe of peace, and have put upon me the sackcloth of supplication, and I will cry to the Most High in my days.

*Es* 18, 30 Be converted, and do penance for all your iniquities: and iniquity shall not be your ruin.

*Mt* 4, 17 Do penance, for the Kingdom of Heaven is at hand.

*Lx* 3, 8 Bring forth therefore fruits worthy of penance,

and do not begin to say, We have Abraham for our father. For I say unto you, that God is able of these stones to raise up children to Abraham.

If they sin against Thee (for there is no man who sinneth not), and Thou being angry deliver them up to their enemies,—Then if they do penance in their heart, and being converted make supplication to Thee in their captivity, saying: We have sinned, we have done unjustly, we have committed wickedness:—And return to Thee with all their heart, and all their soul:—Then hear Thou in Heaven, in the firmament of Thy Throne, their prayers, and their supplications, and do judgment for them:—And forgive Thy people that have sinned against Thee, and all their iniquities, by which they have transgressed against Thee.

Then began He to upbraid the cities wherein were done the most of His miracles, for that they had not done penance.

The benignity of God leadeth thee to penance.

Be converted, and depart from your idols, and turn away your faces from all your abominations.

If that nation against which I have spoken, shall repent of their evil, I also will repent of the evil that I have thought to do to them.

Do penance from this thy wickedness.

Wo to thee, Corozain, wo

- to thee, Bethesda : for if in Tyre and Sidon had been wrought the mighty works that have been wrought in you, they would have done penance long ago, sitting in sackcloth and ashes.
- Mk 1, 4* John was in the desert preaching the baptism of penance.
- Ac 3, 19* Be penitent, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out.
- Ac 5, 31* Him [Jesus] hath God exalted with His right hand, to be Prince and Saviour, and to give repentance to Israel, and remission of sins.
- Lk 2, 3* He came into all the country about the Jordan, preaching the baptism of penance.
- 2 Ty 2, 24-26* Be mild towards all men, apt to teach, patient,—With modesty admonishing them that resist the truth : if peradventure God may give them repentance to know the truth,—And they may recover themselves from the snares of the devil, by whom they are held captive at his will.
- 2 Pt 3, 9* The Lord delayeth not His promise, as some imagine, but dealeth patiently for your sake, not willing that any should perish, but that all should return to penance.
- God indeed having winked at the times of this ignorance, now declareth unto men that all should everywhere do penance.
- Be mindful therefore from whence thou art fallen : and do penance, and do the first works. Or else I come to thee, and will move thy candlestick out of its place, except thou do penance.
- In like manner do penance : or else I will come to thee quickly, and will fight against them with the sword of My mouth.
- I gave her a time that she might do penance, and she will not repent of her fornication.
- They shall be in very great tribulation, except they do penance from their deeds.
- Have in mind therefore in what manner thou hast received and heard : and observe, and do penance. If then thou shalt not watch ; I will come to thee as a thief, and thou shalt not know at what hour I will come to thee.
- Such as I love, I rebuke and chastise. Be zealous therefore, and do penance.
- Ac 17, 30*
- Ap 2, 5*
- Ap 2, 16*
- Ap 2, 21*
- Ap 2, 22*
- Ap 3, 3*
- Ap 3, 10*

## 2.—ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF SIN ; NECESSARY FOR ITS FORGIVENESS.

- Is 38, 15* I will recount to Thee all my years in the bitterness of my soul.
- Ps 31, 5* I said I will confess against myself my injustice to the Lord ; and Thou hast forgiven the wickedness of my sin.
- O Lord, to us belongeth confusion of face, to our Princes, and to our fathers that have sinned :—But to Thee, the Lord our God, mercy and forgiveness, for we have departed from Thee :—And we have not
- Da 9, 8-10*

hearkened to the voice of the Lord our God, to walk in His Law, which He set before us by His servants the Prophets.

*Lu* 15, 21 Father, I have sinned against Heaven, and before Thee, I am not now worthy to be called Thy son.

*Lu* 18, 13 The publican standing afar off would not so much as lift up his eyes towards Heaven; but struck his breast, saying: O God, be merciful to me a sinner.

*1 Ti* 1, 15 A faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptation, that Christ Jesus came into this world to save sinners, of whom I am the

chief.

If we would judge ourselves, *1 C* 11, 31 we should not be judged.

They shall be afflicted for *Le* 23, 39-40 the sins of their fathers, and their own:—Until they confess their iniquities and the iniquities of their ancestors, whereby they have transgressed against Me, and walked contrary unto Me.

I confess the sins of the *2 E* 1, 6-7 children of Israel by which they have sinned against Thee: I and my father's house have sinned.—We have been seduced by vanity, and have not kept Thy commandments, and ceremonies, and judgments. (*See page 251.*)

### 3.—THE LOVE OF GOD TO PENITENTS.

*Ps* 50, 19 A Sacrifice to God is an afflicted spirit: a contrite and humbled heart, O God, Thou wilt not despise.

*Je* 33, 6-8 Behold I will close their wounds and give them health, and I will cure them; and I will reveal to them the prayer of peace and truth.—And I will bring back the captivity of Juda, and the captivity of Jerusalem: and I will build them as from the beginning.—And I will cleanse them from all their iniquity, whereby they have sinned against Me: and I will forgive all their iniquities, whereby they have sinned against Me, and despised Me.

*Eci* 21, 1 My son, hast thou sinned? do so no more: but for thy former sins also pray that they may be forgiven thee.

*Ps* 31, 1-2 Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and

whose sins are covered.—Blessed is the man to whom the Lord hath not imputed sin.

I am, I am He that blot out thy iniquities for My Own Sake, and I will not remember thy sins. *Is* 43, 25

If your sins be as scarlet, they shall be made as white as snow: and if they be red as crimson, they shall be white as wool. *Is* 1, 18

Be comforted, be comforted, My people, saith your God. *Is* 40, 1

I have blotted out thy iniquities as a cloud, and thy sins as a mist: return to Me, for I have redeemed thee. *Is* 44, 2

I saw his ways, and I healed him, and brought him back, and restored comforts to him, and to them that mourn for him. *Is* 57, 18

I will forgive their iniquity, and will remember *Je* 31, 34

- their sin no more.
- Pr 24, 11* For Thy Name's sake, O Lord, Thou wilt pardon my sin, for it is great.
- Ex 18, 22* I will not remember all his iniquities that he hath done : in his justice which he hath wrought, he shall live.
- Te 3, 13* Blessed is Thy Name, O God of our fathers : Who when Thou hast been angry, wilt show mercy, and in the time of tribulation forgivest the sins of them that call upon Thee.
- Jo 4, 2* I know that Thou art a gracious and merciful God, patient, and of much compassion, and easy to forgive evil.
- Is 40, 2* Speak ye to the heart of Jerusalem, and call to her : for her evil is come to an end, her iniquity is forgiven : she hath received of the hand of the Lord double for all her sins.
- Za 13, 1* In that day there shall be a Fountain open to the House of David, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem : for the washing of the sinner, and of the unclean woman.
- Lu 7, 47* Many sins are forgiven her, because she hath loved much. But to whom less is forgiven, he loveth less.
- Lu 11, 4* Forgive us our sins, for we also forgive every one that is indebted to us.
- And when Jesus had seen their faith, He saith to the sick of the palsy : Son, thy sins are forgiven thee.
- Thy sins are forgiven thee. —Who is this that forgiveth sins also ?
- Be it known to you, men brethren, that through Him forgiveness of sins is preached to you.
- God indeed was in Christ reconciling the world to Himself, not imputing to them their sins.—Him that knew no sin, for us He hath made sin, that we might be made the justice of God in Him.
- The Blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanseth us from all sin.
- He is the Propitiation for our sins : and not for ours only, but also for those of the whole world.
- Blotting out the handwriting of the decree that was against us, which was contrary to us, He hath taken the same out of the way, fastening it to the Cross.
- I write unto you, little children, because your sins are forgiven you for His Name's Sake.
- In whom we have redemption through His Blood, the remission of sins.
- Go now, and sin no more. I will love them freely.
- Mt 2, 6*  
*Lu 7, 48-49*  
*Ac 13, 38*  
*2 Co 5, 19, 21*  
*1 J 1, 7*  
*1 J 2, 2*  
*Ct 2, 14*  
*1 J 2, 12*  
*Ct 1, 14*  
*Jn 8, 11*  
*Os 14, 5*

#### 4.—PUBLIC PENANCE PRACTISED IN CALAMITOUS TIMES TO APPEASE GOD'S ANGER.

- Jo 4, 7-8* The lion has come out of his den, and the robber of his place, to make thy land desolate.—For this gird yourselves with haircloth, lament, he is come forth out of his place, to make thy land desolate.—For this gird yourselves with haircloth, lament, and howl : for the fierce

anger of the Lord is not turned away from us.

2 M 10, 24-26 Timotheus came as though he would take Judea by force of arms.—But Machabeus and they that were with him, when he drew near, prayed to the Lord, sprinkling earth upon their heads, and girding their loins with haircloth,—And lying prostrate at the foot of the Altar, besought Him to be merciful to them.

Jd 4, 7-9 All the people cried to the Lord with great earnestness, and they humbled their souls in fastings, and prayers, both they and their wives.—And the Priests put on haircloths, and they caused the little children to lie prostrate before the Temple of the Lord, and the Altar of the Lord they covered with haircloth.—And they cried to the Lord the God of Israel with one accord, that their children might not be made a prey, and their wives carried off, and their cities destroyed, and their Holy Things profaned, and that they might not be made a reproach to the Gentiles.

Then Eliachim the High-Priest of the Lord went about all Israel, and spoke to them,—Saying: Know ye that the Lord will hear your prayers, if you continue with perseverance in fastings and prayers in the sight of the Lord.

Remember Moses the servant of the Lord, who overcame Amalec that trusted in his own strength, and in his power, and in his army, and in his shields, and in his chariots, and in his horsemen, not by fighting with the sword, but by holy prayers:—So shall all the enemies of Israel be; if you persevere in this work which you have begun.

So they being moved by this exhortation of his, prayed to the Lord, and continued in the sight of the Lord.—So that even they who offered the Holocausts to the Lord, offered the Sacrifices to the Lord, girded with haircloths, and with ashes upon their head.—And they all begged of God with all their heart, that He would visit His people Israel.

### 5.—THE REPENTANCE OF NINIVE.\*

#### 1. THE INVITATION TO PENANCE.

Jb 3, 1-4 And the word of the Lord came to Jonas the second time, saying:—Arise, and go to Ninive, the Great City: and preach in it the preaching that I bid thee.—And Jonas arose, and went

to Ninive, according to the word of the Lord: now Ninive was a Great City of three days' journey.—And Jonas began to enter into the City one day's journey: and he cried, and said: Yet forty days, and Ninive shall be destroyed.

\* Ninive, the capital of Assyria, was 20 miles long, 12 broad, and 60 in compass, and surrounded with walls 100 ft. high, and so broad that three chariots could drive abreast on them.

## 2. PUBLIC PENANCE PROCLAIMED.

*Jo 3, 5-6* And the men of Ninive believed in God: and they proclaimed a fast, and put on sackcloth from the greatest to the least.—And the word came to the King of Ninive: and he rose up out of his throne, and cast away his robe from him, and was clothed with sackcloth, and sat in ashes.

*Jo 3, 7* And he caused it to be proclaimed and published in Ninive from the mouth of the King and of his Princes, saying: Let neither men nor beasts, oxen nor sheep, taste anything: let them not feed, nor drink water.

*Jo 3, 8-9* And let men and beasts be covered with sackcloth, and cry to the Lord with all their strength, and let them turn every one from his evil way, and from the iniquity that is in their hands.—Who can tell if God will turn and forgive: and will turn away from His fierce anger, and we shall not perish?

## 3. DIVINE ANGER APPEASED.

And God saw their works, *Jo 3, 10* that they were turned from their evil way: and God had mercy with regard to the evil which He had said that He would do to them, and He did it not.

## 4. OUR LORD'S ALLUSION TO NINIVE.

The men of Ninive shall *Mt 12, 41* rise in judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: because they did penance at the preaching of Jonas. And behold a greater than Jonas here.

### Examples of Penitents:

1. Adam and Eve. *Ge 3, 16-17*
2. The children of Israel. *2 P 15, 4*
3. The children of Sion. *La 4, 17*
4. The men of Juda and of Benjamin. *1 E 10, 9*
5. The men of Aser, of Manasses, and of Zabulon. *2 P 30, 11*
6. The Jews that escaped destruction. *Ex 7, 16*
7. Nabuchodonosor. *Da 4, 30*
8. Heliodorus. (*For the 2 M 3, 35 rest, see p. 399.*)

## 6.—THE SACRAMENT OF PENANCE INSTITUTED BY OUR BLESSED LORD.

### I.

### *Mt.* Matthew's account of this Divine Institution.

I will give to thee the Keys of the Kingdom of *Mt 16* Heaven. And whatsoever thou shalt bind upon earth, 19 shall be bound also in Heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth, shall be loosed also in Heaven.

Amen I say to you, whatsoever you shall bind upon *Mt 18* earth, shall be bound also in Heaven: and whatsoever 18 you shall loose upon earth, shall be loosed also in Heaven.



## II.

**St. John's account.**

As the Father hath sent Me, I also send you.—*Jn* 20  
When He had said this, He breathed on them, and *He* 21-23  
said to them: Receive ye the Holy Ghost:—Whose  
sins you shall forgive they are forgiven them, and  
whose sins you shall retain they are retained.

## III.

**St. Paul refers to it.**

All things are of God, Who hath reconciled us to *2 Co* 5,  
Himself by Christ: and hath given to us the Ministry 18  
of Reconciliation.

## 7.—SORROW FOR SIN.

*2 Co* 7, 9-10 Now I am glad: not be-  
cause you were made sorrow-  
ful; but because you were  
made sorrowful unto pen-  
ance.—For you were sorrow-  
ful unto God. For the  
sorrow that is according to  
God worketh penance stead-  
fast unto salvation: but the  
sorrow of the world worketh  
death.

*Ro* 2, 4-5 Knowest thou not that the  
benignity of God leadeth thee  
to penance?—But according to  
thy hardness and impenitent  
heart, thou treasurest up to  
thyself wrath against the  
day of wrath.

*Lk* 18, 13-14 O God, be merciful to me a  
sinner.—I say to you, this  
man went down into his house  
justified: because every one  
that exalteth himself, shall  
be humbled: and he that  
humbleth himself, shall be  
exalted.

*Ba* 2, 18 The soul that is sorrowful  
for the greatness of evil she  
hath done, and goeth bowed  
down, and feeble, and the  
eyes that fail, and the hungry  
soul giveth glory and justice

to Thee the Lord.

Thus you have spoken, say—*Ez* 33, 10-  
ing: Our iniquities, and our 11  
sins are upon us, and we pine  
away in them: how then  
can we live?—As I live,  
saith the Lord God, I desire  
not the death of the wicked,  
but that the wicked turn  
from his way, and live.  
Turn ye, turn ye from your  
evil ways: and why will you  
die, O House of Israel?

I will pour out upon the *Za* 12, 10  
House of David, and upon  
the inhabitants of Jerusa-  
lem, the Spirit of grace, and  
of prayers: and they shall  
look upon Me, Whom they  
have pierced: and they shall  
mourn for Him as one mourn-  
eth for an only son, and they  
shall grieve over Him, as the  
manner is to grieve for the  
death of the first-born.

Jesus came into Galilee, *Mk* 1, 14-  
preaching the Gospel of the 15  
Kingdom of God,—And say-  
ing: The time is accomplish-  
ed, and the Kingdom of  
God is at hand: repent,  
and believe the Gospel.

- Ac* 2, 32, This Jesus hath God Lord God.  
 37 hath raised again, whereof The Lord your God is 2 *P* 30, 9  
 all we are witnesses.—Now merciful, and will not turn  
 when they had heard these away His face from you, if  
 things, they had compunction you return to Him.  
 in their heart, and said to The Lord is nigh unto *P* 33, 19  
 Peter and to the rest of the them that are of a contrite  
 Apostles : What shall we do, heart : and He will save the  
 men and brethren ? humble of spirit.
- Dt* 4, 29 When thou shalt seek Thou hast mercy upon all, *W* 11, 24  
 there the Lord thy God, thou because Thou canst do all  
 shalt find Him : yet so, if things, and overlookest the  
 if thou seek Him with all thy sins of men for the sake of  
 heart, and all the affliction repentance.  
 of thy soul. To the penitent He hath *Eci* 17, 20  
 given the way of justice.
- P* 4, 5 The things you say in your How good is it, when thou *Eci* 20, 4  
 hearts, be sorry for them art reproved, to show repent-  
 upon your beds. ance ! for so thou shalt  
 escape wilful sin.
- Ex* 16, 62- I will establish My Cove- Wash thy heart from *Je* 4, 14  
 63 nant with thee, and thou wickedness, O Jerusalem,  
 shalt know that I am the that thou mayest be saved :  
 Lord.—That thou mayest re- how long shall hurtful  
 member, and be confounded, thoughts abide in thee ?  
 and mayest no more open Convert us, O Lord, to *La* 5, 21  
 thy mouth because of thy Thee, and we shall be con-  
 confusion, when I shall be verted.
- that thou hast done, saith the

## 8.—HUMBLE CONFESSION OF SIN.

- 1 J* 1, 8-9 If we say that we have no With the mouth confession *Ro* 10, 10  
 sin, we deceive ourselves, is made unto Salvation.  
 and the truth is not in us.— They went out to him, *Mt* 3, 5-6  
 If we confess our sins : He Jerusalem and all Judea,  
 is faithful and just, to for- and all the country about  
 give us our sins, and to the Jordan :—And were bap-  
 cleanse us from all iniquity. tised by him in the Jordan,  
 confessing their sins.
- Ja* 5, 16 Confess your sins one to They were baptised by *Mk* 1, 6  
 another. him in the river Jordan,  
 confessing their sins.
- Lu* 17, 14 Go, show yourselves to the I will arise, and I will go *Lu* 15, 18-  
 Priests. to my Father, and say to 19  
 Him : Father, I have sinned  
 against Heaven and before  
 Thee.—I am not worthy to  
 be called Thy son : make me  
 as one of Thy hired servants.
- Ac* 19, 18 Many of them that be-  
 lieved, came confessing and  
 declaring their deeds.

## 9.—CONFESSION OF SIN UNDER THE OLD LAW.

- Nu* 5, 6-7 Say to the children of Israel: When a man or woman shall have committed any of all the sins that men are wont to commit, and by negligence shall have transgressed the commandment of the Lord, and offended, —They shall confess their sin, and restore the principal itself, and the fifth part over and above, to him against whom they have sinned.
- 2 E* 9, 2 They stood, and confessed their sins.
- Eci* 4, 31, 25 Be not ashamed to confess thy sins, but submit not thyself to every man for sin.—For there is a shame that bringeth sin, and there is a shame that bringeth glory and grace.
- Le* 26, 39-40 They shall pine away in their iniquities,—Until they confess their iniquities,
- whereby they have transgressed against Me, and walked contrary unto Me.
- David said to Nathan: *I* 2 *K* 12, 13 have sinned against the Lord. And Nathan said to David: The Lord also hath taken away thy sin: thou shalt not die.
- He that hideth his sins *Pv* 28, 13 shall not prosper, but he that shall confess and forsake them shall obtain mercy.
- I said I will confess against myself my injustice to the Lord, and Thou hast forgiven the wickedness of my sin.
- Incline not my heart to *Pv* 140, 4 evil words, to make excuses in sin.
- My son, give glory to the Lord God of Israel, and confess and tell me what thou hast done: hide it not. *Js* 7, 19

## 10.—SATISFACTION FOR SIN AFTER ITS GUILT HAS BEEN PARDONED.

- Ge* 3, 17, 19 Because thou hast hearkened to the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree, whereof I commanded thee that thou shouldst not eat, cursed is the earth in thy work: with labour and toil shalt thou eat thereof all the days of thy life.—In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread till thou return to the earth, out of which thou wast taken.
- Dt* 32, 51-52 Because you trespassed against Me, and did not sanctify Me among the children of Israel:—Thou shalt see the land before thee which I will give to the children of Israel, but thou shalt not enter into it.
- The Lord also hath taken away thy sin: thou shalt not die.—Nevertheless, because thou hast given occasion to the enemies of the Lord to blaspheme, for this thing the child that is born to thee shall surely die.
- You shall not enter into *Nu* 14, 30 the land over which I lifted up My hand to make you dwell therein.
- All the children of Israel *Nu* 14, 2, murmured against Moses 11-12 and Aaron.—And the Lord

said to Moses : How long will this people detract Me ? —I will strike them therefore with pestilence, and will consume them.

2 K 24, 10-13

David's heart struck him after the people were numbered : and David said to the Lord : I have sinned very much in what I have done : but I pray thee, O Lord, to take away the iniquity of Thy servant, because I have done exceeding foolishly.—And David arose in the morning, and the Word of the Lord came to Gad the Prophet and the seer of David, saying :—Go and say to David : Thus saith the Lord : I give thee thy choice of three things : choose one of them which thou wilt, that I may do it to thee.—And when Gad was come to David, he told him saying : Either seven years of famine shall come to thee in thy land, or thou shalt

flee three months before thy adversaries, and they shall pursue thee, or for three days there shall be a pestilence in thy land.

I indeed absent in body, 1 C 5, 3, 5 but present in spirit, have already judged, as though I were present, him that hath so done.—To deliver such a one to satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ.

Redeem thou thy sins Da 4, 24 with alms, and thy iniquities with works of mercy to the poor.

By mercy and truth iniquity is redeemed. Ps 16, 6

Behold this self-same 2 C 7, 11 thing, that you were made sorrowful according to God how great carefulness it worketh in you : yea defence, yea indignation, yea fear, yea desire, yea zeal, yea revenge.

### 11.—VICARIOUS SUFFERING.

C 1, 24 [I] now rejoice in my sufferings for you, and fill up those things that are wanting of the sufferings of Christ, in my flesh for His Body, which is the Church.

1 J 3, 16 In this we have known the Charity of God, because He hath laid down His Life for us : and we ought to lay down our lives for the brethren.

Eci 29, 26 Recover thy neighbour according to thy power.

Jesus turning to them Lu 23, 28 said : Daughters of Jerusalem, weep not over Me, but weep for yourselves and for your children.

Bear ye one another's burdens : and so you shall fulfil the law of Christ. Ga 6, 2

You helping withal in 2 C 1, 11 prayer for us : that for this gift obtained for us, by the means of many persons, thanks may be given by many in our behalf.

### 12.—THE SACRAMENT OF EXTREME UNCTION.

1. A DIVINE INSTITUTION. J 5, 14-15 Is any man sick among you ? Let him bring in the Priests of the Church, and

let them pray over him, anointing him with Oil in the Name of the Lord.—And the prayer of faith shall save the sick man : and the Lord shall raise him up : and if he be in sins, they shall be forgiven him.

## 2. THE APOSTLES ANOINTED THE SICK.

Going forth they preached *Mk 6, 12-* that men should do penance : 13  
—And they cast out many devils, and anointed with Oil many that were sick, and healed them.

## 13.—SICKNESS, ITS CAUSES AND BENEFITS.

*Ex 23, 25* You shall serve the Lord your God, that I may bless your bread and your waters, and may take away sickness from the midst of thee.

*Dt 32, 39* See ye that I alone am, and there is no other God besides Me : I will kill, and I will make to live : I will strike, and I will heal, and there is none that can deliver out of My Hand.

*2 P 16, 12-* Asa fell sick in the nine-  
13 and-thirtieth year of his reign, of a most violent pain in his feet, and yet in his illness he did not seek the Lord, but rather trusted in the skill of the Physicians. —And he slept with his fathers : and he died.

*Jb 33, 14,* God speaketh once, and  
17-20 repeateth not the self-same thing the second time.—That He may withdraw a man from the things he is doing, and may deliver him from pride,—Rescuing his soul from corruption : and his life from passing to the sword.—He rebuketh also by sorrow in the bed, and he maketh all his bones to wither. — Bread becometh abominable to him in his life, and to his soul the meat which before he desired.

*P 106, 18-* Their soul abhorred all  
20 manner of meat : and they drew nigh even to the gates

of death.—And they cried to the Lord in their affliction : and He delivered them out of their distresses. — He sent His Word, and healed them.

O Lord my God, I have *P 29, 3* cried to Thee, and Thou hast healed me.

A grievous sickness maketh the soul sober. *Eci 31, 2*

He that sinneth in the *Eci 38, 15* sight of his Maker, shall fall into the hands of the Physician.

His bones shall be filled *Jb 20, 11* with the vices of his youth, and they shall sleep with him in the dust.

My son, in thy sickness *Eci 38, 9,* neglect not thyself, but pray 13

to the Lord, and He shall heal thee.—Turn away from sin, and order thy hands aright, and cleanse thy heart from all offence.

Jesus went about all the *Mt 9, 35* cities and towns, healing every disease and every infirmity.

Behold thou art made *Jn 5, 14* whole ; sin no more, lest some worse thing happen to thee.

Lord, behold, he whom *Jn 11, 3* Thou lovest is sick.

Only say the word, and *Mt 8, 8* my servant shall be healed.

All that were sick He *Mt 8, 16* healed.

- 4 K 20, 5 I have heard thy prayer, God, that the Son of God  
I have seen thy tears : and may be glorified by it.  
behold I have healed thee. Many are sick among you. 1 C 11, 30
- 2 K 12, 13 The Lord hath taken SACRED EJACULATIONS FOR  
away thy sin. Thou shalt THE DYING.\*
- Ac 10, 38 He went about doing Jesus ! Pa 2, 10  
good, and healing all that Jesus ! 1 J 4, 15  
were oppressed by the devil, Jesus ! Ro 8, 11  
for God was with him. Father, into Thy Hands I Lu 23, 46  
commend my spirit.
- Jn 11, 4 This sickness is not unto Lord Jesus, receive my Ac 7, 58  
death, but for the glory of soul.

#### 14.—HONOUR DUE TO THE PHYSICIAN ; AND WHY. THE APOTHECARY.

- Eci 38, 1-4 Honour the Physician for and shall allay their pains,  
the need thou hast of him : and of these the Apothe-  
for the Most High hath cary shall make sweet con-  
created him.—For all heal- fections, and shall make up  
ing is from God.—The skill ointments of health, and of  
of the Physician shall lift his works there shall be no  
up his head, and in the sight end.  
of great men he shall be My son, in thy sickness, Eci 38, 9,  
praised.—The Most High hath —Give a sweet savour, and a 11-13  
created medicines out of the memorial of fine flour, and  
earth, and a wise man will make a fat offering, and then  
not abhor them. give place to the Physician.
- Eci 38, 6-7 The virtue of these things —For the Lord created him :  
is come to the knowledge of and let him not depart from  
men, and the Most High thee, for his works are ne-  
hath given knowledge to cessary.—For there is a time  
men, that He may be hon- when thou must fall into  
oured in His wonders.— their hands.  
By these He shall cure Physicians embalm Jacob. Ge 50, 2

#### 15.—THE SICKNESS OF EZECHIAS.

1. HE FALLS SICK. 3. HE PRAYS FOR LIFE.
- Js 38, 1 In those days Ezechias And Ezechias turned his Js 38, 2-3  
was sick, even to death. face toward the wall, and  
prayed to the Lord.—And
2. HE PREPARES FOR DEATH. said : I beseech Thee, O  
Js 38, 1 And Isaias the son of Lord, remember how I have  
Amos the prophet came walked before Thee in truth,  
unto him, and said to him : and with a perfect heart,  
Thus saith the Lord : Take and have done that which is  
order with thy house, for good in Thy sight. And  
thou shalt die and not live.

\* From Rom. Edit.

Ezechias wept with great weeping.

4. HIS PRAYER GRANTED.

*Is* 38, 4-6 And the Word of the Lord came to Isaias, saying:—Go and say to Ezechias: Thus saith the Lord the God of David thy father: I have heard thy prayer, and I have seen thy tears: behold I will add to thy days fifteen years.—And I will deliver thee and this City out of the hand of the King of the Assyrians, and I will protect it.

5. THE SIGN VOUCHSAFED.

*Is* 38, 7-8 And this shall be a sign to thee from the Lord, that the Lord will do this word which He hath spoken:—Behold I will bring again the shadow of the lines, by which it is now gone down in the sun-dial of Achaz with the sun, ten lines backward. And the sun returned ten lines by the degrees by which it was gone down.

6. THE REMEDY.

*Is* 38, 21 Now Isaias had ordered that they should take a lump of figs, and lay it as a plaster upon the wound, and that he should be healed.

7. HIS PRAYER ON RECOVERY.

*Is* 38, 9 The writing of Ezechias, King of Juda, when he had been sick, and was recovered of his sickness.

\*

*Is* 38, 10-20 I said: In the midst of my days I shall go to the gates of Hell: I sought for the residue of my years.—I said: I shall not see the Lord God in the land of the living. I shall behold man no more, nor the inhabitant of rest.

My generation is at an end, and it is rolled away from me, as a shepherd's tent. My life is cut off, as by a weaver; whilst I was yet but beginning, He cut me off: from morning even to night Thou wilt make an end of me.

\*

I hoped till morning, as a lion so hath He broken all my bones: from morning even to night Thou wilt make an end of me.—I will cry like a young swallow, I will meditate like a dove: my eyes are weakened looking upward: Lord, I suffer violence, answer Thou for me.

\*

What shall I say, or what shall He answer for me, whereas He Himself hath done it? I will recount to Thee all my years in the bitterness of my soul.—O Lord, if man's life be such, and the life of my spirit be in such things as these, Thou shalt correct me, and make me to live.

\*

Behold in peace is my bitterness most bitter: but Thou hast delivered my soul that it should not perish, Thou hast cast all my sins behind Thy back.—For Hell shall not confess to Thee, neither shall death praise Thee: nor shall they that go down into the pit, look for Thy truth.

\*

The living, the living, he shall give praise to Thee, as

I do this day: the father shall make Thy truth known to the children.—O Lord, save me, and we will sing our Psalms all the days of our life in the House of the Lord. (*This story of Ezechias related also in 4 K 20, 2 P 32, 24.*)

## 16.—EXAMPLES OF THOSE WHO WERE SICK.

Ge 43, 1	1. Jacob.	11. Peter's Mother - in - law.	Mt 8, 14
1 K 30, 13	2. The young Egyptian.	12. The Centurion's Servant.	Lk 7, 2
3 K 14, 1	3. Abia.	13. The Nobleman's Son.	Jn 4, 46
3 K 17, 17	4. The son of the widow of Sarepha.	14. Lazarus.	Jn 11, 7
4 K 1, 2	5. Ochozias.	15. Dorcas.	Ac 9, 31
4 K 8, 7	6. Benadad.	16. The Father of Publius.	Ac 23, 8
4 K 8, 29	7. Joram.	17. Epaphroditus.	Ph 2, 25
4 K 13, 14	8. Eliseus.	18. Trophimus.	2 Tm 4, 20
4 K 20, 1	9. Ezechias.		
Da 8, 27	10. Daniel.		

## 17.—THE SEVEN PENITENTIAL PSALMS.\*

[Said on bended knees while the sick person is anointed.]

**I.**  
Ps 5, 1-10 O Lord, rebuke me not in Thy indignation, nor chastise me in Thy wrath. Have mercy on me, O Lord, for I am weak; heal me, O Lord, for my bones are troubled.

And my soul is troubled exceedingly; but Thou, O Lord, how long?

Turn to me, O Lord, and deliver my soul; O save me for Thy mercy's sake.

For there is no one in death that is mindful of Thee; and who shall confess to Thee in hell?

I have laboured in my groanings; every night I will wash my bed, I will water my couch with my tears.

Mine eye is troubled through indignation; I have grown old amongst all mine

enemies.

Depart from me, all ye workers of iniquity; for the Lord hath heard the voice of my weeping.

The Lord hath heard my supplication; the Lord hath received my prayer.

Let all mine enemies be ashamed, and be very much troubled; let them be turned back and be ashamed very speedily.

**II.**

Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered.

Blessed is the man to whom the Lord hath not imputed sin, and in whose spirit there is no guile.

Because I was silent, my bones grew old; whilst I cried out all the day long.

For day and night Thy

\* St. Pius V. granted 50 days' Indulgence for saying these Psalms on days prescribed in the Roman Breviary, and 40 days' Indulgence for saying them at any other time.



hand was heavy upon me ; I am turned in mine anguish, whilst the thorn is fastened.

I have acknowledged my sin to Thee ; and mine injustice I have not concealed.

I said, I will confess against myself mine injustice to the Lord ; and Thou hast forgiven the wickedness of my sin.

For this shall every one that is holy pray to Thee in a seasonable time.

And yet in a flood of many waters, they shall not come nigh unto him.

Thou art my Refuge from the trouble which hath encompassed me ; my Joy, deliver me from them that surround me.

I will give thee understanding, and I will instruct thee in this way in which thou shalt go : I will fix Mine eyes upon thee.

Do not become like the horse and the mule, which have no understanding.

With bit and bridle bind fast their jaws who come not near unto Thee.

Many are the scourges of the sinner, but mercy shall encompass him that hopeth in the Lord.

Be glad in the Lord, and rejoice, ye just ; and glory, all ye right of heart.

### III.

**Ps 37, 1-23** Rebuke me not, O Lord, in Thine indignation, nor chastise me in Thy wrath.

For Thine arrows are fastened in me, and Thy hand hath been strong upon me.

There is no health in my flesh because of Thy wrath : there is no peace for my

bones because of my sins.

For mine iniquities are gone over my head, and as a heavy burden are become heavy upon me.

My sores are putrefied and corrupted, because of my foolishness.

I am become miserable, and am bowed down, even to the end : I walked sorrowful all the day long.

For my loins are filled with illusions, and there is no health in my flesh.

I am afflicted and humbled exceedingly ; I roared with the groaning of my heart.

Lord, all my desire is before Thee, and my groaning is not hidden from Thee.

My heart is troubled, my strength hath left me, and the light of mine eyes itself is not with me.

My friends and my neighbours have drawn near, and have stood against me.

And they that were near me stood afar off, and they that sought my soul used violence.

And they that sought evil to me, spoke vain things, and studied deceits all the day long.

But I, as a deaf man, heard not, and was as a dumb man, not opening his mouth.

And I became as a man that heareth not, and that hath no reproofs in his mouth.

For in Thee, O Lord, have I hoped : Thou wilt hear me, O Lord my God.

For I said : Lest at any time mine enemies rejoice over me ; and whilst my feet are moved, they speak great

things against me.

For I am ready for scourges, and my sorrow is continually before me.

For I will declare my iniquity, and I will think for my sin.

But mine enemies live, and are stronger than I, and they that hate me wrongfully are multiplied.

They that render evil for good have detracted me, because I followed goodness.

Forsake me not, O Lord my God: do not Thou depart from me.

Attend unto my help, O Lord the God of my salvation.

IV.

Ps 50, 1-20 Have mercy on me, O God, according to Thy great mercy.

And according to the multitude of Thy tender mercies, blot out mine iniquity.

Wash me yet more from mine iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin.

For I know mine iniquity, and my sin is always before me.

To Thee only have I sinned, and done evil before Thee: that Thou mayst be justified in Thy words, and mayst overcome when Thou art judged.

For behold, I was conceived in iniquities, and in sins did my mother conceive me.

For behold, Thou hast loved truth: the uncertain and hidden things of Thy Wisdom Thou hast made manifest to me.

Thou shalt sprinkle me with hyssop, and I shall be

cleansed: Thou shalt wash me, and I shall be made whiter than snow.

To my hearing Thou shalt give joy and gladness, and the bones that have been humbled shall rejoice.

Turn away Thy face from my sins, and blot out all mine iniquities.

Create a clean heart in me, O God, and renew a Right Spirit within my bowels.

Cast me not away from Thy face, and take not Thy Holy Spirit from me.

Restore unto me the joy of Thy saving mercy, and strengthen me with a perfect spirit.

I will teach the unjust Thy ways, and the wicked shall be converted to Thee.

Deliver me from the guilt of blood, O God, Thou God of my salvation, and my tongue shall extol Thy justice.

O Lord, Thou wilt open my lips, and my mouth shall declare Thy praise.

For if Thou hadst desired sacrifice, I would indeed have given it: with burnt-offerings Thou wilt not be delighted.

A sacrifice to God is an afflicted spirit: a contrite and humble heart, O God, Thou wilt not despise.

Deal favourably, O Lord, in Thy good will with Sion, that the walls of Jerusalem may be built up.

Then shalt Thou accept the sacrifice of justice, oblations, and burnt-offerings; then shall they lay calves upon Thine Altar.

## v.

Ps 101, 1-29 Hear, O Lord, my prayer,  
and let my cry come unto  
Thee.

Turn not away Thy face  
from me : in the day when I  
am in trouble, incline Thine  
ear to me.

In what day soever I shall  
call upon Thee, hear me  
speedily.

For my days are vanished  
like smoke, and my bones  
are grown dry like fuel for  
the fire.

I am smitten as grass, and  
my heart is withered, because  
I forgot to eat my Bread.

Through the voice of my  
groaning, my bone hath  
cleaved to my flesh.

I am become like a pelican  
in the wilderness : I am like  
a night raven in the house.

I have watched, and am  
become as a sparrow all  
alone on the house-top.

All the day long mine  
enemies reproach me, and  
they that praised me did  
swear against me.

For I did eat ashes like  
bread, and mingled my drink  
with weeping.

Because of Thine anger  
and indignation : for having  
lifted me up Thou hast  
thrown me down.

My days have declined  
like a shadow, and I am  
withered like grass.

But Thou, O Lord, en-  
durest for ever, and Thy  
memorial to all generations.

Thou shalt arise and have  
mercy on Sion : for it is  
time to have mercy on it,  
for the time is come.

For the stones thereof  
have pleased Thy servants,

and they shall have pity on  
the earth thereof.

And the Gentiles shall fear  
Thy Name, O Lord, and all  
the kings of the earth Thy  
glory.

For the Lord hath built up  
Sion, and He shall be seen  
in His glory.

He hath had regard to the  
prayer of the humble, and  
He hath not despised their  
petition.

Let these things be written  
unto another generation,  
and the people that shall be  
created shall praise the  
Lord.

Because He hath looked  
forth from His High Sanctu-  
ary : from Heaven the Lord  
hath looked upon the earth.

That He might hear the  
groans of them that are in  
fetters : that He might re-  
lease the children of the slain.

That they may declare the  
Name of the Lord in Sion,  
and His praise in Jerusalem.

When the people assem-  
bled together, and kings,  
to serve the Lord.

He answered them in the  
way of his strength : Declare  
unto me the fewness of my  
days.

Call me not away in the  
midst of my days : Thy  
years are unto generation  
and generation.

In the beginning, O Lord,  
Thou foundedst the earth,  
and the heavens are the  
works of Thy hands.

They shall perish, but Thou  
remainest, and all of them  
shall grow old like a gar-  
ment.

And as a vesture Thou  
shalt change them, and they

shall be changed : but Thou art always the self-same, and Thy years shall not fail.

The children of Thy servants shall continue, and their seed shall be directed for ever.

## VI.

*Ps* 129, 1-8 Out of the depths I have cried to Thee, O Lord : Lord, hear my voice.

Let Thine ears be attentive to the voice of my supplication.

If thou, O Lord, shalt observe iniquities, Lord, who shall endure it ?

For with Thee there is merciful forgiveness, and by reason of Thy law I have waited for Thee, O Lord.

My soul hath relied on His Word : my soul hath hoped in the Lord.

From the morning watch even until night, let Israel hope in the Lord.

Because with the Lord there is mercy, and with Him plentiful redemption.

And He shall redeem Israel from all his iniquities.

## VII.

*Ps* 142, 1-14 Hear, O Lord, my prayer : give ear to my supplication in Thy Truth : hear me in Thy Justice.

And enter not into judgment with Thy servant : for in Thy sight no man living shall be justified.

For the enemy hath persecuted my soul : he hath brought down my life to the

earth.

He hath made me to dwell in darkness, as those that have been dead of old : and my spirit is in anguish within me, my heart within me is troubled.

I remembered the days of old, I meditated on all Thy works : I mused upon the works of Thy hands.

I stretched forth my hands to Thee : my soul is as earth without water unto Thee.

Hear me speedily, O Lord : my spirit hath fainted away.

Turn not away Thy face from me, lest I be like unto them that go down into the pit.

Cause me to hear Thy mercy in the morning, for in Thee have I hoped.

Make the way known to me wherein I should walk : for I have lifted up my soul to Thee.

Deliver me from mine enemies, O Lord, to Thee have I fled : teach Me to do Thy will, for Thou art my God.

Thy Good Spirit shall lead me into the right Land : for Thy Name's sake, O Lord, Thou wilt quicken me in Thy justice.

Thou wilt bring my soul out of trouble : and in Thy mercy Thou wilt destroy mine enemies.

And Thou wilt cut off all them that afflict my soul : for I am Thy servant.

PRAYER FOR THE GRACE TO DIE WELL.—*Ps* 30, 1-4, 15-16

In Thee, O Lord, have I hoped, let me never be confounded : deliver me in Thy justice.—Bow down Thy ear to me : make haste to deliver me. Be Thou unto me a God, a Protector, and a House of Refuge, to save me.—For Thou art my Strength and my Refuge. But I have put my trust in Thee, O Lord : I said : Thou art my God.—My lots are in Thy hands.

## 18.—DEVOTIONS FOR THE VISITATION OF THE SICK.\*

## I.

*The Gospel of St. Matthew.*

When He had entered into Capharnaum, there came *Mt 8*, to Him a centurion, beseeching Him,—And saying, 5-13 Lord, my servant lieth at home sick of the palsy, and is grievously tormented.—And Jesus saith to him: I will come and heal him.—And the centurion making answer said: Lord, I am not worthy that Thou shouldst enter under my roof: but only say the word, and my servant shall be healed.—For I also am a man subject to authority, having under me soldiers, and I say to this, Go, and he goeth, and to another, Come, and he cometh, and to my servant, Do this, and he doeth it.—And Jesus hearing this, marvelled; and said to them that followed Him: Amen I say to you, I have not found so great faith in Israel.—And I say to you that many shall come from the east and the west, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob in the Kingdom of Heaven:—But the children of the Kingdom shall be cast out into the exterior darkness: there shall be weeping, and gnashing of teeth.—And Jesus said to the centurion: Go, and as thou hast believed, so be it done to thee. And the servant was healed at the same hour.

## PSALM XV.

<p><i>Ps 15, 2-11</i> Preserve me, O Lord, for I have put my trust in Thee: I have said to the Lord: Thou art my God, for Thou hast no need of my goods.</p> <p>To the saints, who are in His Land, He hath made wonderful all my desires in them.</p> <p>Their infirmities were multiplied: afterwards they made haste.</p> <p>I will not gather together their meetings for blood-offerings: nor will I be mindful of their names by</p>	<p>my lips.</p> <p>The Lord is the portion of my inheritance and of my cup: it is Thou that wilt restore my inheritance to me.</p> <p>The lines are fallen unto me in goodly places: for my inheritance is goodly to me.</p> <p>I will bless the Lord, who hath given me understanding: moreover my reins also have corrected me even till night.</p> <p>I set the Lord always in my sight: for He is at my</p>
--	---

\* \* From Rom. Edit.

right hand, that I be not moved. wilt Thou give Thy Holy One to see corruption)

Therefore my heart hath been glad, and my tongue hath rejoiced : moreover my flesh also shall rest in hope Thou hast made known to me the ways of Life, Thou shalt fill me with joy with Thy countenance : at Thy

Because Thou wilt not leave my soul in hell ; nor right hand are delights even to the end.

## II.

### The Gospel of St. Mark.

At length He appeared to the eleven as they were at *Mk*16 table : and He upbraided them with their incredulity14-18 and hardness of heart, because they did not believe them who had seen Him after He was risen again.— And He said to them : Go ye into the whole world and preach the Gospel to every creature.—He that believeth and is baptised, shall be saved : but he that believeth not, shall be condemned.—And these signs shall follow them that believe : In My Name they shall cast out devils : they shall speak with new tongues.—They shall take up serpents : and if they shall drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them : they shall lay their hands upon the sick, and they shall recover.

#### PSALM XIX.

*Ps* 19, 2-9 May the Lord hear thee in the day of tribulation : may the Name of the God of Jacob protect thee.

May He send thee help from the Sanctuary : and defend thee out of Sion.

May He be mindful of all thy sacrifices : and may thy whole burnt-offering be made fat.

May He give thee accord to thy own heart ; and confirm all thy counsels.

We will rejoice in Thy salvation : and in the Name of our God we shall be exalted.

The Lord fulfil all thy petitions : now have I known that the Lord hath saved His anointed. He will hear him from His Holy Heaven : the Salvation of His right hand is in powers.

Some trust in chariots, and some in horses : but we will call upon the Name of the Lord our God.

They are bound, and have fallen : but we are risen, and are set upright. O Lord, save the king : and hear us in the day that we shall call upon Thee.

(*V.* 7, "*in powers*," i.e. "*in strength*.")

## III.

*The Gospel of St. Luke.*

Jesus rising up out of the Synagogue, went into *Lu* 4, Simon's house.—And Simon's wife's mother was taken 38-40 with a great fever, and they besought Him for her.—And standing over her, He commanded the fever, and it left her. And immediately rising, she ministered to them.—And when the sun was down, all they that had any sick with divers diseases, brought them to Him. But He laying His hands on every one of them, healed them.

## PSALM LXXXV.

Ps 85, 1- Incline Thy ear, O Lord,  
17 and hear me, for I am needy  
and poor.

Preserve my soul, for I  
am holy: save Thy servant  
O my God, that trusteth in  
Thee.

Have mercy on me, O  
Lord, for I have cried to  
Thee all the day.

Give joy to the soul of  
Thy servant, for to Thee, O  
Lord, I have lifted up my  
soul.

For Thou, O Lord, art  
sweet and mild: and plen-  
teous in mercy to all that  
call upon Thee.

Give ear, O Lord, to my  
prayer: and attend to the  
voice of my petition.

I have called upon Thee  
in the day of my trouble:  
because Thou hast heard  
me.

There is none among the  
gods like unto Thee, O  
Lord: and there is none  
according to Thy works.

All the nations Thou hast  
made shall come and adore  
before Thee, O Lord: and  
they shall glorify Thy  
Name.

For Thou art great and

dost wonderful things: Thou  
art God alone.

Conduct me, O Lord, in  
Thy way, and I will walk  
in Thy truth: let my heart  
rejoice that it may fear Thy  
Name.

I will praise Thee, O  
Lord my God, with my  
whole heart, and I will  
glorify Thy Name for ever.

For Thy mercy is great  
towards me: and Thou hast  
delivered my soul out of  
the lower hell.

O God, the wicked are  
risen up against me, and the  
assembly of the mighty have  
sought my soul: and they  
have not set Thee before  
their eyes.

And Thou, O Lord, art a  
God of compassion, and  
merciful, patient, and of  
much mercy, and true.

O look upon me, and have  
mercy on me: give Thy  
command to Thy servant,  
and save the son of Thy  
handmaid.

Show me a token for  
good: that they who hate me  
may see, and be confounded,  
because Thou, O Lord, hast  
helped me and hast com-  
forted me.

## IV.

*The Gospel of St. John.*

After these things was a Festival Day of the Jews, *Jn5*, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem.—Now there is at 1-14 Jerusalem a pond, called Probatika, which in Hebrew is named Bethesda, having five Porches.—In these lay a great multitude of sick, of blind, of lame, of withered, waiting for the moving of the water.—And an Angel of the Lord descended at certain times into the pond: and the water was moved. And he that went down first into the pond after the motion of the water, was made whole of whatsoever infirmity he lay under.—And there was a certain man there, that had been eight-and-thirty years under his infirmity.—Him when Jesus had seen lying, and knew that he had been now a long time, He saith to him: Wilt thou be made whole?—The infirm man answered Him: Sir, I have no man, when the water is troubled, to put me into the pond. For whilst I am coming, another goeth down before me.—Jesus saith to him: Arise, take up thy bed, and walk.—And immediately the man was made whole: and he took up his bed, and walked. And it was the Sabbath that day.—The Jews therefore said to him that had been healed: It is the Sabbath, it is not lawful for thee to take up thy bed.—He answered them: He that made me whole, He said to me: Take up thy bed, and walk.—They asked him therefore: Who is that Man that said to thee: Take up thy bed, and walk?—But he who was healed, knew not Who it was. For Jesus went aside from the multitude standing in the place.—Afterwards Jesus findeth him in the Temple, and saith to him: Behold thou art made whole: sin no more, lest some worse thing happen to thee.

## PSALM XC.

<p><i>Ps 90, 1-16</i> He that dwelleth in the aid of the Most High, shall abide under the protection of the God of Jacob.</p> <p>He shall say to the Lord: Thou art my Protector, and my Refuge: my God, in Him will I trust.</p> <p>For He hath delivered me</p>	<p>from the snare of the hunters: and from the sharp word.</p> <p>He will overshadow thee with His shoulders: and under His wings Thou shalt trust.</p> <p>His truth shall compass thee with a shield: thou shalt not be afraid of the</p>
---	--



terror of the night.

Of the arrow that flieth in the day, of the business that walketh about in the dark : of invasion, or of the noon-day devil.

A thousand shall fall at thy side, and ten thousand at thy right hand : but it shall not come nigh thee.

But thou shalt consider with thy eyes : and shalt see the reward of the wicked.

Because Thou, O Lord, art my Hope : Thou hast made the Most High Thy Refuge.

There shall no evil come to thee : nor shall the scourge come near thy dwelling.

For He hath given His Angels charge over thee : to keep thee in all thy ways.

In their hands they shall bear thee up : lest thou dash thy foot against a stone.

Thou shalt walk upon the asp and the basilisk : and thou shalt trample under foot the lion and the dragon.

Because he hoped in Me I will deliver him : I will protect him because he hath known My Name.

He shall cry to Me, and I will hear him : I am with him in tribulation. I will deliver him, and I will glorify him.

I will fill him with length of days ; and I will show him My Salvation.

ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL.

In the beginning was the *Jn* 1, 1-14 Word, &c. (*See page 711.*)

### 19.—DEVOTIONS FOR THE RECOMMENDATION OF A DEPARTING SOUL.\*

Prayer to the Eternal Father. (*See page 167.*)

*Jn* 17, 1-28

### The Sacred Passion of Our Lord.

*According to St. John.*

I.

*Jn* 18, 1-12 When Jesus had said these things. He went forth with His Disciples over the brook Cedron, where there was a garden, into which He entered with His Disciples.—And Judas also, who betrayed Him, knew the place because Jesus had often resorted thither together with His Disciples.—Judas therefore having received a band of soldiers, and servants from the Chief Priests and the Pharisees, cometh thither with lanterns and torches and weapons.—Jesus therefore knowing all things that should come upon Him, went forth, and said to them : Whom seek ye ?—They answered Him : Jesus of Nazareth. Jesus saith to them : I am He. And Judas also, who betrayed Him, stood with them.—As soon therefore as He

\* From Rom. Rit.

had said to them : I am He : they went backward, and fell to the ground.—Again therefore He asked them : Whom seek ye ? And they said : Jesus of Nazareth.—Jesus answered : I have told you, that I am He. If therefore you seek Me, let these go their way :—That the word might be fulfilled which He said : Of them whom Thou hast given Me, I have not lost any one.—Then Simon Peter having a sword, drew it ; and struck the servant of the High Priest, and cut off his right ear. And the name of the servant was Malchus.—Jesus therefore said to Peter : Put up thy sword into the scabbard. The Chalice which My Father hath given Me, shall I not drink it ?—Then the band and the tribune, and the servants of the Jews took Jesus, and bound Him :

## II.

And they led Him away to Annas first, for he was father-in-law to Caiphas, who was the High Priest of that year.—Now Caiphas was he, who had given the counsel to the Jews : That it was expedient that one man should die for the people.—And Simon Peter followed Jesus, and so did another Disciple. And that Disciple was known to the High Priest, and went in with Jesus into the court of the High Priest.—But Peter stood at the door without. The other Disciple therefore who was known to the High Priest, went out, and spoke to the portress, and brought in Peter.—The maid therefore that was portress, saith to Peter : Art not thou also one of This Man's Disciples ? He saith : I am not.—Now the servants and ministers stood at a fire of coals, because it was cold, and warmed themselves. And with them was Peter also standing, and warming himself.—The High Priest therefore asked Jesus of His Disciples, and of His Doctrine.—Jesus answered him : I have spoken openly to the world : I have always taught in the Synagogue, and in the Temple, whither all the Jews resort ; and in secret I have spoken nothing.—Why askest thou Me ? ask them who have heard what I have spoken unto them : behold they know what things I have said.—And when He had said these things, one of the servants standing by, gave Jesus a blow, saying : Answerest Thou the High Priest so ?—Jesus answered him : If I have spoken evil, give testimony of the evil : but if well, why strikest thou Me ?

## III.

And Annas sent Him bound to Caiphas the High Priest.—And Simon Peter was standing, and warming himself. They said therefore to him : Art not thou also one of His Disciples ? He denied it and said : I am not.—One of the servants of the High Priest (a kinsman to him whose ear Peter cut off) saith to him : Did not I see thee in the garden with Him ?—Again therefore Peter denied : and

immediately the cock crew.—Then they led Jesus from Caiphas to the Governor's Hall. And it was morning : and they went not into the Hall, that they might not be defiled, but that they might eat the Pasch.—Pilate therefore went out to them, and said : What accusation bring you against This Man ?—They answered and said to him ; If He were not a malefactor, we would not have delivered Him up to thee.—Pilate therefore said to them : Take Him you, and judge Him according to your law. The Jews therefore said to him : It is not lawful for us to put any man to death.—That the word of Jesus might be fulfilled which He said, signifying what death He should die.—Pilate therefore went into the Hall again, and called Jesus, and said to Him : Art Thou the King of the Jews ?—Jesus answered : Sayest thou this thing of thyself, or have others told it thee of Me ?—Pilate answered : Am I a Jew ? Thy own nation, and the Chief Priests have delivered Thee up to me : what hast Thou done ?

## IV.

*Jn* 18, 36-40 Jesus answered : **My Kingdom is not of this world. If My Kingdom were of this world, My servants would certainly strive that I should not be delivered to the Jews ; but now My Kingdom is not from hence.**—Pilate therefore said to Him : Art Thou a King then ? Jesus answered : Thou sayest, that I am a King. For this was I born, and for this came I into the world ; that I should give testimony to the Truth. Every one that is of the Truth, heareth My Voice.—Pilate saith to Him : What is Truth ? And when he said this he went out again to the Jews, and saith to them : I find no cause in Him.—But you have a custom that I should release one unto you at the Pasch : will you therefore that I release unto you the King of the Jews ?—Then cried they all again, saying : Not This Man, but Barabbas. Now Barabbas was a robber.

*Jn* 19, 1-7 Then therefore Pilate took Jesus, and scourged Him. — And the soldiers plaiting a crown of thorns, put it upon His Head : and they put on Him a purple garment.—And they came to Him, and said : Hail, King of the Jews : and they gave Him blows.—Pilate therefore went forth again, and saith to them : Behold I bring Him forth unto you, that you may know that I find no cause in Him.—(Jesus therefore came forth bearing the crown of thorns, and the purple garment.) And he saith to them : Behold the Man. —When the Chief Priests therefore and the servants had seen Him, they cried out, saying : Crucify Him, crucify Him. Pilate saith to them : Take Him you, and crucify Him : for I find no cause in Him.—The Jews answered him : We have a law ; and according to the law He ought to die, because He made Himself the Son of God.

## V.

**Jn 19, 8-19** When Pilate therefore had heard this saying, he feared the more.—And he entered into the Hall again, and he said to Jesus : Whence art Thou ? But Jesus gave him no answer.—Pilate therefore saith to Him : Speakest Thou not to me ? knowest Thou not that I have power to crucify Thee, and I have power to release Thee ?—Jesus answered : Thou shouldst not have any power against Me, unless it were given thee from Above. Therefore he that hath delivered Me to thee, hath the greater sin.—And from thenceforth Pilate sought to release Him. But the Jews cried out, saying : If thou release This Man, thou art not Cesar's friend. For whosoever maketh himself a king, speaketh against Cesar.—Now when Pilate had heard these words, he brought Jesus forth ; and sat down in the Judgment Seat, in the place that is called Lithostrotos, and in Hebrew Gabbatha.—And it was the Parasceve of the Pasch, about the sixth hour, and He saith to the Jews : Behold your King.—But they cried out : Away with Him, away with Him, crucify Him. Pilate saith to them : Shall I crucify your King ? The Chief Priests answered : We have no king but Cesar.—Then therefore he delivered Him to them to be crucified. And they took Jesus and led Him forth.—And bearing His own Cross He went forth to that place which is called Calvary, but in Hebrew Golgotha.—Where they crucified Him, and with Him two others, one on each side, and Jesus in the midst.—And Pilate wrote a title also : and he put it upon the Cross. And the writing was, Jesus of Nazareth the King of the Jews.

## VI.

**Jn 19, 20-31** This title therefore many of the Jews did read : because the place where Jesus was crucified was nigh to the City : and it was written in Hebrew, in Greek, and in Latin.—Then the Chief Priests of the Jews said to Pilate : Write not, The King of the Jews : but that He said : I am the King of the Jews.—Pilate answered : What I have written, I have written.—The soldiers therefore when they had crucified Him, took His garments (and they made four parts, to every soldier a part) and also His coat. Now the coat was without seam, woven from the top throughout.—They said then one to another : Let us not cut it, but let us cast lots for it, whose it shall be ; that the Scripture might be fulfilled, saying : They have parted My garments among them : and upon My vesture they have cast lot. And the soldiers indeed did these things.—Now there stood by the Cross of Jesus, His Mother, and His Mother's sister, Mary of Cleophas, and Mary Magdalene.—When Jesus therefore had seen His Mother and the disciple standing, whom He loved, He saith to His Mother : Woman, behold thy son.—After that, He saith to His disciple : Behold thy Mother.

And from that hour the disciple took her to his own. Afterwards Jesus knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the Scripture might be fulfilled, said: I thirst.—Now there was a vessel set there full of vinegar. And they putting a spongeful of vinegar about hyssop, put it to His mouth.—When Jesus therefore had taken of the vinegar, He said: It is consummated. And bowing His head, He gave up the Ghost.—Then the Jews (because it was the Parascève) that the bodies might not remain upon the Cross on the Sabbath day (for that was a great Sabbath day) besought Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away.

## VII.

*Ps* 19, 32-42 The soldiers therefore came: and they broke the legs of the first, and of the other that was crucified with him.—But after they were come to Jesus, when they saw that He was already dead, they did not break His legs.—But one of the soldiers with a spear opened His Side, and immediately there came out Blood and Water.—And he that saw it hath given testimony: and his testimony is true. And he knoweth that he saith true; that you also may believe.—For these things were done, that the Scripture might be fulfilled: You shall not break a bone of Him.—And again another Scripture saith: They shall look on Him Whom they pierced.—And after these things Joseph of Arimathea (because he was a disciple of Jesus, but secretly, for fear of the Jews) besought Pilate that he might take away the Body of Jesus. And Pilate gave leave. He came therefore and took away the Body of Jesus. And Nicodemus also came, he who at the first came to Jesus by night, bringing a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about an hundred pound weight.—They took therefore the Body of Jesus, and bound It in linen cloths with the spices, as the manner of the Jews is to bury.—Now there was in the place, where He was crucified, a garden; and in the garden a new Sepulchre, wherein no man yet had been laid.—There therefore, because of the Parascève of the Jews, they laid Jesus, because the Sepulchre was nigh at hand.

## PRAYERS FOR THE SICK.

## I.

*Ps* 117, 1-11 Give praise to the Lord, for He is good: for His mercy endureth for ever.  
Let Israel now say, that He is good: that His mercy endureth for ever.  
Let the House of Aaron now say, that His mercy endureth for ever.

Let them that fear the Lord now say, that His mercy endureth for ever.

In my trouble I called upon the Lord: and the Lord heard me, and enlarged me.

The Lord is my Helper: I will not fear what man can do unto me.

The Lord is my Helper:

and I will look over my enemies.

It is good to confide in the Lord, rather than to have confidence in man.

It is good to trust in the Lord, rather than to trust in Princes.

All nations compassed me about; and in the Name of the Lord I have been revenged on them.

Surrounding me they compassed me about: and in the Name of the Lord I have been revenged on them.

## II.

P:117, 12- They surrounded me like  
20 bees, and they burned like fire among thorns: and in the Name of the Lord I was revenged on them.

Being pushed I was overturned that I might fall: but the Lord supported me.

The Lord is my Strength and my Praise: and He is become my Salvation.

The voice of rejoicing and of Salvation is in the Tabernacles of the just.

The right hand of the Lord hath wrought strength: the right hand of the Lord hath exalted me: the right hand of the Lord hath wrought strength.

I shall not die, but live: and shall declare the works of the Lord.

The Lord chastising hath chastiseth me: but He hath not delivered me over to death.

Open ye to me the gates of justice: I will go into them, and give praise to the Lord.

This is the gate of the Lord, the just shall enter into it.

## III.

I will give glory to Thee P:117, 21- because Thou hast heard 29 me: and art become my Salvation.

The Stone which the builders rejected; the same is become the Head of the Corner.

This is the Lord's doing: and it is wonderful in our eyes.

This is the day which the Lord hath made: let us be glad and rejoice therein.

O Lord, save me: O Lord, give good success.

Blessed be He that cometh in the Name of the Lord.

We have blessed you out of the House of the Lord.

The Lord is God, and He hath shone upon us.

Appoint a solemn day, with shady boughs, even to the horn of the Altar.

Thou art my God, and I will praise Thee: Thou art my God, and I will exalt Thee.

I will praise Thee, because Thou hast heard me, and art become my Salvation.

O praise ye the Lord, for He is good: for His mercy endureth for ever.

## IV.

Blessed are the undefiled P:118 1-8 in the way, who walk in the Law of the Lord.

Blessed are they that search His testimonies: that seek Him with their whole heart.

For they that work iniquity, have not walked in His ways.

Thou hast commanded Thy commandments to be kept most diligently.

O that my ways may be directed to keep Thy justifications!

Then shall I not be confounded, when I shall look into all Thy commandments.

I will praise Thee with uprightness of heart when I shall have learned the judgments of Thy justice.

I will keep Thy justifications: O do not Thou utterly forsake me!

v.

*Ps* 118, 9-16 By what doth a young man correct his way? by observing Thy words.

With my whole heart have I sought after Thee: let me not stray from Thy commandments.

Thy words have I hidden in my heart, that I may not sin against Thee.

Blessed art Thou, O Lord: teach me Thy justifications.

With my lips I have pronounced all the judgments of Thy mouth.

I have been delighted in the way of Thy testimonies, as in all riches.

I will meditate on Thy commandments: and I will consider Thy ways.

I will think of Thy justifications: I will not forget Thy words.

vi.

*Ps* 118, 17-24 Give bountifully to Thy servant, enliven me: and I shall keep Thy words.

Open Thou my eyes: and I will consider the wondrous things of Thy law.

I am a sojourner on the earth: hide not Thy com-

mandments from me.

My soul hath coveted to long for Thy justifications, at all times.

Thou hast rebuked the proud: they are cursed who decline from Thy commandments.

Remove from me reproach and contempt: because I have sought after Thy testimonies.

For Princes sat, and spoke against me: but Thy servant was employed in Thy justifications.

For Thy testimonies are my meditation: and Thy justifications my counsel.

vii.

My soul hath cleaved to the pavement: quicken Thou me according to Thy Word.

I have declared my ways, and Thou hast heard me: teach me Thy justifications.

Make me to understand the way of Thy justifications; and I shall be exercised in Thy wondrous works.

My soul hath slumbered through heaviness: strengthen Thou me in Thy words.

Remove from me the way of iniquity: and out of Thy law have mercy on me.

I have chosen the way of truth: Thy judgments I have not forgotten.

I have stuck to Thy testimonies, O Lord: put me not to shame.

I have run the way of Thy commandments, when Thou didst enlarge my heart.

*Ps* 118,  
25-32

For the Epistle in *MASS FOR THE SICK*, see *Ja* 5, 13-16. For the Gospel, see *Mt* 8, 5-13.

## 20.—SACRAMENT OF HOLY ORDER. ITS DIVINE INSTITUTION.

Do This for a commemoration of Me.\* *Lu* 22, 19

- 1 *C* 11, 24 This do for the commemoration of Me. my hands.  
 When they had ordained *Ac* 14, 22  
*Jn* 20, 22- Receive ye the Holy Ghost. to them Priests in every  
 23 —Whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them. Church, and had prayed  
 with fasting, they com-  
*Ac* 13, 2-3 The Holy Ghost said to mended them to the Lord.  
 them: Separate me Saul and Barnabas for the work  
 whereunto I have taken  
 upon any man, neither be  
 partaker of other men's sins.  
 them.—Then they, fasting  
 How shall they hear with-  
 and praying, and imposing out a preacher? And how  
 their hands upon them, sent shall they preach unless they  
 be sent? I left thee in  
 them away. Crete that thou shouldst  
 ordain Priests in every city  
 as I also appointed thee.  
*Ac* 20, 28 Take heed to yourselves, and to the whole Flock, wherein the Holy Ghost hath placed you Bishops, to rule the Church of God, which He hath purchased with His Own Blood. You shall receive the  
 power of the Holy Ghost  
 coming upon you, and you  
 shall be witnesses unto me  
 in Jerusalem, and in all  
 Judea and Samaria, and  
 even to the uttermost parts  
 of the earth. *Ac* 1, 8  
 1 *Ti* 4, 14 Neglect not the grace that is in thee, which was given thee by Prophecy, with imposition of the hands of the Priesthood.  
 He that receiveth you, *Mt* 10, 4  
 receiveth Me: and he that  
 receiveth Me, receiveth Him  
 that sent Me. (*See* p. 564.)  
 2 *Ti* 1, 6 For this cause I admonish thee, that thou stir up the grace of God which is in thee by the imposition of Thou art a Priest for ever. *He* 5, 6

## 21.—CELIBACY OF THE PRIESTS.

- Le* 21, 6 They shall be holy to their God, and shall not profane His Name. The Priests that come to *Ex* 19, 22  
 the Lord, let them be sanc-  
 tified.  
*Is* 52, 11 For they offer the burnt-offering of the Lord, and the Bread of their God, and therefore they shall be holy. Be ye clean, you that carry the Vessels of the Lord. I have no common bread  
 at hand, but only Holy  
 Bread, if the young men be  
 clean, especially from wo-  
 men.  
 Labour as a good soldier  
 of Christ Jesus. No man, *2 Ti* 2, 3

\* If any one saith that by those words, "Do This for the commemoration of Me," Christ did not institute the Apostles Priests; or did not ordain that they and other Priests should offer His Own Body and Blood, let him be anathema.—*C. of T., Sess. 22, Canon 11.*



being a soldier to God, entangleth himself with secular businesses, that he may please Him to Whom he hath engaged himself.

- 1 C 7, 32-33 He that is without a wife is solicitous for the things that belong to the Lord, how he may please God.—But he that is with a wife is solicitous for the things of the world, how he may please his wife, and he is divided.

- 1 C 7, 34-35 The unmarried woman and the virgin thinketh on the things of the Lord: that she may be holy both in body and in spirit. But she that

is married thinketh on the things of the world, how she may please her husband.—This I speak for your profit: not to cast a snare upon you; but for that which is decent, and which may give you power to attend upon the Lord without impediment.

I would that all men were 1 C 7, 7-8 even as myself: but every one hath his proper gift from God: one after this manner and another after that.—But I say to the unmarried, and to the widows: it is good for them if they so continue, even as I.

## 22.—EXHORTATION TO PRIESTS.

- 1 P 23, 30 The Levites are to stand in the morning to give thanks, and to sing praises to the Lord, and in like manner in the evening.

- P 133, 1-2 Behold now, bless ye the Lord, all ye servants of the Lord: who stand in the House of the Lord, in the Courts of the House of our God.—In the nights lift up your hands to the Holy Places, and bless ye the Lord.

- Is 58, 1 Cry, cease not, lift up thy voice like a trumpet, and show My people their wicked doings, and the House of Jacob their sins.

- 1 T 4, 12-16 Let no man despise thy youth: but be thou an example to the faithful,

1. In word,
2. In conversation,
3. In charity,
4. In faith,
5. In chastity.

—Attend

1. To reading.

2. To exhortation.

3. And to doctrine.—

Neglect not the grace which is in thee, which was given thee by Prophecy, with the imposition of the hands of the Priesthood.—Meditate on these things: be wholly in these things; that thy proficiency may be manifest to all.—Attend

1. To thyself

2. And to doctrine:

be earnest in them: for in doing this thou shalt both save thyself and them that hear thee.

Keep the good deposited 2 T 1, 41 in trust to thee by the Holy Ghost, Who dwelleth in us.

Labour as a good soldier 2 T 2, 3 of Jesus Christ.

Feed the Flock of God 1 Pt 5, 2, which is among you, taking 4 care of it not by constraint, but willingly according to God: not for filthy lucre's sake, but voluntarily:—And

when the Prince of pastors shall appear, you shall receive a Never-Fading Crown of glory.

2 T<sup>i</sup>2, 4 No man, being a soldier to God, entangleth himself with worldly businesses; that he may please Him to Whom he hath engaged himself.

2 T<sup>i</sup>2, 15- Carefully study to present thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly handling the Word of Truth. —But shun profane and vain speeches: for they grow much towards impiety.

2 T<sup>i</sup>2, 22- Flee thou youthful desires; and pursue justice, faith, charity, and peace, with those who call on the Lord from a pure heart.—And avoid foolish and unlearned questions: knowing that they beget strifes.—But the servant of the Lord must not wrangle, but be gentle towards all men, fit to teach, patient.—With modesty admonishing those who resist the truth; if at any time God give them repentance to know the truth.—And they recover themselves from the snares of the devil, by whom they are held captives at his will.

T<sup>i</sup>3, 8 It is a faithful saying: and of these things I will have thee to affirm earnestly: that they who believe in God may be careful to excel in good works. These things are good and profitable to men.

1 T<sup>i</sup>6, 11- Thou, O man of God, pursue

1. Justice,
2. Piety,

3. Faith,
4. Charity,
5. Patience,
6. Meekness.
7. Fighting the Good Fight.
8. Lay hold on Eternal Life whereunto thou art called.
9. Keep the commandment without spot, blameless, unto the Coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

I charge thee before God 2 T<sup>i</sup>4, 1-2 and Jesus Christ Who shall judge the living and the dead by His Coming, and His Kingdom:

1. Preach the Word.
2. Be instant in season and out of season.
3. Reprove.
4. Entreat.
5. Rebuke with all patience and doctrine.
6. Be thou vigilant. 2 T<sup>i</sup>4, 6
7. Labour in all things.
8. Do the work of an Evangelist.
9. Fulfil thy Ministry.
10. Be sober.
11. In all things show T<sup>i</sup>2, 7-8 thyself an example of good works.
  - A. In doctrine.
  - B. In integrity.
  - C. In gravity.
12. Sound speech.
13. Unblamable, that he who is on the contrary part may be afraid, having no evil to say of us.

Give no offence to any one, 2 C<sup>6</sup>, 3-10 that our Ministry be not blamed:—But in all things let us exhibit ourselves as the Ministers of God,

1. In much patience,

2. In tribulation,
3. In necessities,
4. In distresses,
5. In stripes,
6. In prisons,
7. In seditions,
8. In labours,
9. In watchings,
10. In fastings,
11. In chastity,
12. In knowledge,
13. In longsuffering,
14. In sweetness,
15. In the Holy Ghost,
16. In charity unfeigned,
17. In the Word of Truth,
18. In the power of God ;
19. By the armour of justice on the right hand and on the

- left,
20. By honour and dishonour,
21. By evil report and good report :
22. As deceivers, and yet true :
23. As unknown, and yet known :
24. As dying, and behold we live :
25. As chastised, and not killed :
26. As sorrowful, yet always rejoicing :
27. As needy, yet enriching many :
28. As having nothing, and possessing all things.

Our heart is enlarged.

2 C 6, 11

### 23.—PRIESTS MUST BE READY TO SUFFER.

#### 1. FROM WITHIN.

- 2 C 11, 28-31 Besides those things which are without : my daily instance, the solicitude for all the Churches -- Who is weak, and I am not weak? Who is scandalised, and I am not on fire?—If I must needs glory : I will glory of the things that concern my infirmity. — The God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who is blessed for ever, knoweth that I lie not.
- 2 C 12, 1-5 If I must glory (it is not expedient indeed :) but I will come to the visions\* and revelations of the Lord.—I know a man in Christ above fourteen years ago (whether in the body, I know not, or out of the body, I know not, God knoweth) such an one rapt even to the third

Heaven.—And I know such a man, whether in the body, or out of the body, I know not : God knoweth :—That he was caught up into Paradise ; and heard secret words, which it is not granted to man to utter.—For such an one I will glory : but for myself I will glory nothing, but in my infirmities.

For even if I should have a mind to glory, I shall not be foolish : for I will say the truth. But I forbear, lest any man should think of me above that which he seeth in me, or any thing he heareth from me.

And lest the greatness of the revelations should lift me up, there was given me a sting of my flesh, an angel of

\* Ac 9, 3.

satan to buffet me.—For which thing thrice I besought the Lord, that it might depart from me:—And He said to me: MY GRACE IS SUFFICIENT FOR THEE: FOR POWER IS MADE PERFECT IN INFIRMITY. Gladly therefore will I glory in my infirmities, that the power of Christ may dwell in me.—For which cause I please myself in my infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in persecutions, in distresses, for Christ. For when I am weak, then am I powerful.

## 2. FROM WITHOUT.

2 C 11, 22- They are Hebrews: so am I.

27 I. They are Israelites: so am I. They are the seed of Abraham: so am I.—They are the ministers of Christ: (I speak as one less wise) I am more: in many more labours, in prisons more frequently, in stripes above measure, in deaths often.

1 M 25, 3

1. Of the Jews five times did I receive

forty stripes, save one.

2. Thrice was I beaten *Ac* 16, 22 with rods.

3. Once I was stoned. *Ac* 14, 18

4. Thrice I suffered shipwreck. *Ac* 27, 41

5. A night and a day I was in the depth of the sea:

6. In journeying often,

7. In perils of waters,

8. In perils of robbers,

9. In perils from my own nation,

10. In perils from the Gentiles,

11. In perils in the city,

12. In perils in the wilderness,

13. In perils in the sea,

14. In perils from false brethren,

15. In labour and painfulness,

16. In many watchings,

17. In hunger and thirst,

18. In many fastings,

19. In cold and nakedness. (*See p. 566.*)

## 24.—THE SACRAMENT OF MATRIMONY: A CONTRACT THAT CANNOT BE BROKEN: DIVORCE FORBIDDEN. EXHORTATION TO THE MARRIED.

*Ep* 5, 32 This is a great Sacrament, but I speak in Christ and in the Church.

*Ge* 2, 24 A man shall leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they shall be two in one flesh.

*Ma* 2, 15 Keep then your spirit, and despise not the wife of thy youth.

*Pv* 19, 14 House and riches are given by parents: but a prudent wife is properly from the Lord.

*Eci* 26, 3-4 A good wife is a good por-

tion, she shall be given in the portion of them that fear God, to a man for his good deeds.—Rich or poor if his heart is good, his countenance shall be cheerful at all times.

He that hath found a good wife, hath found a good thing, and shall receive a pleasure from the Lord.

She is a help like to himself, and a pillar of rest. *Eci* 36, 26

From the beginning of the creation, God made them male and female.—For this

- cause a man shall leave his father and mother; and shall cleave to his wife.—And they two shall be in one flesh. Therefore now they are not two, but one flesh.—What therefore God hath joined together, let not man put asunder.
- 1 C 7, 7 Every one hath his proper gift from God, one after this manner, and another after that.
- Ro 7, 3 Whilst her husband liveth she shall be called an adulteress if she be with another man.
- Mk 10, 11 Whosoever shall put away his wife and marry another, committeth adultery against her.
- Mt 19, 6 What God hath joined together let no man put asunder.
- 1 C 7, 15 If the unbeliever depart let him depart. For a brother or sister is not under servitude in such cases. But God hath called us in peace.
- To 4, 13 Take heed to keep thyself, my son, from fornication, and beside thy wife never endure to know a crime.
- Lu 16, 18 Every one that putteth away his wife, and marrieth another, committeth adultery: and he that marrieth her that is put away from her husband committeth adultery.
- C 7, 10-11 To them that are married, not I, but the Lord commandeth, that the wife depart not from her husband:—And if she depart, that she remain unmarried, or be reconciled to her husband. And let not the husband put away his wife.
- 1 C 7, 39-40 A woman is bound by the law
- as long as her husband liveth; but if her husband die, she is at liberty: let her marry to whom she will: only in the Lord.—But more blessed shall she be, if she so remain, according to my counsel: and I think that I also have the Spirit of God.
- Let women be subject to their husbands, as to the Lord:—Because the husband is the head of the wife; as Christ is the Head of the Church.—Therefore as the Church is subject to Christ, so also let the wives be to their husbands in all things.
- Husbands, love your wives, as Christ also loved the Church, and delivered Himself for it:—That He might sanctify it.
- So also ought men to love their wives as their own bodies. He that loveth his wife, loveth himself.—For no man ever hated his own flesh: but nourisheth and cherisheth it, as also Christ doth the Church.
- Adam was first formed: then Eve.—And Adam was not seduced: but the woman being seduced, was in the transgression.—Yet she shall be saved through child-bearing: if she continue in faith and love and sanctification with sobriety.
- Let every one of you in particular love his wife as himself: and let the wife reverence her husband.
- Wives, be subject to your husbands, as it becometh in the Lord.—Husbands, love your wives, and be not bitter towards them.
- In like manner also let
- Ep 5, 22-24
- Ep 5, 25-26
- Ep 5, 28-29
- 1 Ti 2, 13-15
- Ep 5, 33
- C 7, 13-19
- 1 Pt 3, 1-6

wives be subject to their husbands: that if any believe not the Word, they may be won without the Word, by the conversation of the wives,—Considering your chaste conversation with fear.—Whose adorning let it not be the outward plaiting of the hair, or the wearing of gold, or the putting on of apparel:—But the hidden man of the heart in the incorruptibility of a quiet and a meek spirit, which is rich in the sight of God.—For after this manner heretofore the holy women also, who trusted in God, adorned themselves, being in subjection to their own husbands. — As Sara obeyed Abraham, calling him Lord: whose daughters you are. Ye husbands, likewise 1 Pt 3, 7-9 dwelling with them according to knowledge, giving honour to the female as to the weaker vessel, and as to the coheirs of the grace of Life, that your prayers be not hindered.—And in fine be ye all of one mind, having compassion one of another, being lovers of the brotherhood, merciful, modest, humble:—Not rendering evil for evil, nor railing for railing, but contrariwise, blessing; for unto this are you called, that you may inherit a blessing.

*For MASS FOR BRIDEGROOM AND BRIDE, see Epistle, Ep 5, 22-33; Gospel, Mt 19, 3-6*

## 25.—THE MARRIAGE OF ADAM AND EVE.

*Ge 2, 21-24* The Lord God cast a deep sleep upon Adam: and when he was fast asleep, He took one of his ribs, and filled up flesh for it.—And the Lord God built the rib which He took from Adam into a woman: and brought her to Adam.—And Adam said: This now is bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh; she shall be called woman, because she was taken out of man.—Wherefore a man shall leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they shall be two in one flesh.

*Jn 2, 3-4* And the wine failing, the Mother of Jesus saith to Him: They have no wine.—And Jesus saith to her: Woman, what is to Me, and to thee? My hour is not yet come.

### THE DIVINE BLESSING ON MARRIAGE.

*Jn 2, 1-2* There was a marriage in Cana of Galilee: and the Mother of Jesus was there.—And Jesus also was invited, and His Disciples, to the marriage.

*Jn 2, 5-8* His Mother saith to the waiters: Whatsoever He shall say to you, do ye.—Now there were set there six water-pots of stone, according to the manner of the purifying of the Jews, containing two or three measures a piece.—Jesus saith to them: Fill the water-pots with water. And they filled them up to the brim.—And Jesus saith to them: Draw out now, and carry to the Chief Steward of the Feast. And they carried it, &c.

*Jn 2, 11* This beginning of miracles did Jesus in Cana of Galilee.

*St. Raphael on Marriage, p. 619.*

## BOOK V.

---

### ON SIN, JUSTIFICATION, MERIT, DEATH, JUDGMENT, HELL, HEAVEN.

---

#### PART I.

##### ON SIN.

SIN is a voluntary violation of the Divine Law. Sin is either *original* or *personal*. Original sin is the sin which we inherit from Adam. God conferred on human nature, in the *person* of Adam, original justice, or the supernatural friendship and society of God. With the fall of our first parent human nature was deprived of this Divine friendship and communion, and thus we are born in a state of aversion from God. "We were by nature children of wrath."\* We are freed from original sin by Baptism, whether it be Baptism of *water*, of *blood* (martyrdom), or of *desire*. The Baptism of desire does not necessarily involve an *explicit* wish for Baptism, or even a knowledge of Baptism. It is sufficiently contained in acts of contrition and of perfect charity. Those who die with no other sin than original upon their souls will not be punished with the "pain of sense;" for, as S. Thomas points out,† the "pain of sense" corresponds to the *conversion* to the "*bonum commutabile*," which conversion, though involved in *actual* has no place in *original* sin. They will indeed undergo the *loss of the Beatific Vision*, since this loss corresponds to the

---

\* Ephes. 2, 3.

† q. q. disp. De Malo. a. 2 et 3.

*aversion* from the “*bonum incommutabile*,” which aversion is involved in original as well as in actual sin.\* But though they will undergo the loss of the Beatific Vision, they will not suffer what is commonly understood by the “pain of loss,” for they will realise that the Beatific Vision is a prize which was never in their power to gain. The lost souls in hell, on the other hand, know that the Beatific Vision would have been theirs had they not forfeited it by their own folly, and hence the never-ending mental anguish of hell.† *Personal sin* is the sin which we personally commit. It is either *actual*—i.e., the sinful action itself, or *habitual*—i.e., the deformity of soul resulting from the commission of actual sin. Actual sin is, with respect to its gravity, either *mortal* or *venial*. Mortal sin is an offence which is incompatible with the love of God above all things. Venial sin is an offence against God, yet not such as is incompatible with the love of God above all things. Hatred of God is clearly incompatible with this love of God, and thus is clearly a mortal sin. But, in many cases, the light of reason does not suffice to inform us whether a given offence be incompatible or not with supreme love of God. In such cases we must go for instruction to the teaching of the Church.

#### .1.—ORIGINAL SIN.

- |          |  |  |            |
|----------|--|--|------------|
| Ro 5, 12 | By one man sin entered   | fair to the eyes and deathless to behold: and she took the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave to her husband, who did eat. |            |
| Ge 2, 17 | Of the tree of knowledge of good and evil thou shalt not eat. For in what day soever thou shalt eat of it, thou shalt die the death. | From the woman came the beginning of sin, and through her we all die.  | Eci 25, 33 |
| Ge 3, 6  | The woman saw that the tree was good to eat, and   | Who can make him clean that is conceived of unclean seed? Is it not Thou Who only art?                                       | Jb 14, 4   |

\* q. q. disp. De Malo. a. 2 et 3. † S. Thomas, In II. Sent., d. 33. a. 1.



- Jb* 15, 14 What is man that he should be without spot, and he that is born of a woman, that he should appear just? look unto the rock whence you are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from which you are dug out.
- Jb* 15, 15-16 Behold among His saints none is unchangeable, and the heavens are not pure in His sight.—How much more is man abominable and unprofitable who drinketh iniquity like water? Can man be justified compared with God, or he that is born of a woman appear clean?—Behold even the moon doth not shine, and the stars are not pure in His sight.—How much less man that is rottenness, and the son of man who is a worm?
- Ps* 50, 7 Behold I was conceived in iniquity, and in sins did my mother conceive me. Not as the offence, so also *Ro* 5, 15-16
- Ro* 3, 23 All have sinned and do need the Grace of God. the gift. For if by the offence of one many died: much more the grace of God and the gift, in the grace of One Man Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto many.—And not as it was by one sin, so also is the gift. For judgment indeed was by one unto condemnation: but grace is of many offences, unto justification.
- Ep* 2, 1-5 You, when you are dead in your offences and sins,—Wherein in time past you walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of this air, of the spirit that now worketh on the children of unbelief,—In which also we all conversed in time past, in the desires of our flesh, fulfilling the will of the flesh, and of our thoughts, and were by nature children of wrath, even as the rest:—But God, Who is rich in mercy, for I. is exceeding charity where-with He loved us,—Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together in Christ (by Whose grace you are saved). For if by one man's offence *Ro* 5, 17-19
- Is* 51, 1 Give ear to me, you that follow that which is just, and you that seek the Lord: death reigned through one: much more they who receive abundance of grace, and of the gift, and of justice, shall reign in life through One, Jesus Christ.—Therefore as by the offence of one, unto all men to condemnation: so also by the justice of One, unto all men to justification of life.—For as by the disobedience of one man, many were made sinners: so also by the obedience of One, many shall be made just.

## 2.—MORTAL SIN.

- Ec* 18, 4 The soul that sinneth, the same shall die. cerers, and idolaters, and all liars, they shall have their portion in the pool burning with fire and brimstone, which is the second death.
- Ap* 21, 8 The fearful and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sor-

- Ro* 8, 13 If you live according to the flesh, you shall die.
- Ja* 1, 15 Sin, when it is completed, begetteth death.
- Ep* 5, 5 No fornicator, nor unclean, nor covetous person hath inheritance in the Kingdom of Christ and of God.
- 1 K* 2, 17 The sin of the young men was exceeding great before the Lord, because they withdrew men from the Sacrifice of the Lord.
- Ps* 10, 6 He that loveth iniquity hateth his own soul.
- If they right eye scandalise thee, pluck it out and cast it from thee. For it is expedient for thee that one of thy members should perish, rather than thy whole body be cast into hell.
- This people hath sinned a heinous sin, and they have made to themselves gods of gold.
- All iniquity is sin: and there is a sin unto death.
- Mt* 5, 29  
*Ex* 32, 31  
*1 J* 5, 17  
(See page 231.)

## 3.—VENIAL SIN.

- Ja* 3, 2 In many things we all offend.
- 1 J* 1, 8 If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves.
- Pv* 24, 16 A just man shall fall seven times, and shall rise again.
- Eci* 39, 7 The wise man will make supplication for his sins.
- Mt* 5, 22 Whosoever is angry with his brother, shall be in danger of the judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the Council. And whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell-fire.
- 1 C* 3, 12, 15 If any man build upon this foundation, gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble:—He shall be saved, yet so as by fire.
- Why seest thou the mote in thy brother's eye: but the beam that is in thy own eye thou considerest not?
- He that contemneth small things, shall fall by little and little.
- There is no man that sinneth not.
- Who can understand sin? From my secret ones cleanse me, O Lord.
- Your sins have withholden good things from you.
- Though he fall, he shall not be utterly cast down; for the Lord upholdeth him with His hand.
- Lu* 6, 41  
*Eci* 19, 1  
*3 K* 8, 46  
*Ps* 18, 13  
*Je* 5, 25  
*Ps* 36, 24

## 4.—GOD NOT THE AUTHOR OF SIN.

- Ps* 5, 5 In the morning I will stand before Thee, and will see: that Thou art not a God that willest iniquity.
- Ps* 5, 7 Thou hatest all the workers of iniquity.
- W* 14, 9 To God the wicked and his wickedness are hateful alike.
- Ha* 1, 13 Thy eyes are too pure to behold evil, and Thou canst not look on iniquity.
- They have built the high places of Baalim which I did not command, nor speak of, neither did it once come into My mind.
- This is the will of God: your sanctification.
- Whosoever commiteth sin,
- Je* 19, 5  
*1 T* 4, 3  
*1 J* 3, 4-9

commiteth also iniquity : and sin is iniquity.—And you know that He appeared to take away our sins, and in Him there is no sin.—Whosoever abideth in Him, sinneth not : and whosoever sinneth, hath not seen Him, nor known Him.—Little children, let no man deceive you. He that doth justice, is just : even as he is just.—He that commiteth sin is of the devil : for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose, the Son of God appeared, that He might destroy the works of the devil.—Whosoever is born of God, commiteth not sin :

for His seed abideth in him, and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.

Let no man, when he is tempted, say that he is tempted by God. For God is not a tempter of evils, and He tempteth no man. *Ja 1, 13*

By envy of the devil death came into the world :—And they that follow him are of his side. *W 2, 24-25*

He [the devil] is king over all the children of pride. *Jb 41, 25*

They are held captive at his will. *2 T 11, 26*

The Lord is holy in all His works. *P 144, 13*

God is not the God of dissension, but of peace. *1 C 14, 33*

# 5.—SINS ARISE FROM IGNORANCE, PASSION, AND MALICE.

*1 C 2, 8* If they had known it they would never have crucified the Lord of Glory.

*Lu 23, 34* Jesus said : Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do.

*Ac 3, 17* Brethren, I know that you did it through ignorance as did also your rulers.

*Jn 9, 41* Jesus said to them : If you were blind, you should not have sin ; but now you say : We see. Your sin remaineth.

*P 2, 13-15* They leave the right way and walk by dark ways.—Who are glad when they have done evil, and rejoice in most wicked things,—Whose ways are perverse and their steps infamous.

*N 15, 30* The soul that commiteth anything through pride, whether he be born in the land or a stranger (because he hath been rebellious against the Lord), shall be cut off

from among his people.

The beginning of the pride of man is to fall off from God :—Because his heart is departed from Him that made him : for pride is the beginning of all sin. *Eci 10, 14-15*

Say you, His Disciples came by night, and stole Him away when we were asleep. *Mt 28, 13*

They have a zeal of God, but not according to knowledge. *Ro 10, 3*

Yea the hour cometh that whosoever killeth you will think that he doth a service to God. *Jn 16, 2*

I before was a blasphemer, and a persecutor, and contumelious. But I obtained the Mercy of God, because I did it ignorantly in unbelief. *1 T 1, 13*

Every man is tempted by his own concupiscence, being drawn away and allured. *Ja 1, 14*

They as it were on purpose *Jb 34, 27*

- have revolted from Him, and would not understand all His ways. *Ps 7, 15*
- Je 9, 5* They have laboured to commit iniquity. Behold he hath been in labour with injustice: he hath conceived sorrow, and brought forth iniquity. Error and darkness are created with sinners: and they that glory in evil things grow old in evil. *Eci 11, 16*
- Jb 15, 35* He hath conceived sorrow, and hath brought forth iniquity, and his womb prepareth deceits. In malice be children. *1 C 14, 20*

## 6.—HABITUAL SIN.

- Je 22, 17* The stain of that crime remaineth in you to this day. you: that whosoever committeth sin, is the servant of sin.—Now the servant abideth not in the house for ever: but the Son abideth for ever.—If therefore the Son shall make you free, you shall be free indeed.
- Mt 9, 10* Many publicans and sinners sat down with Jesus. Let not sin reign in your mortal body, so as to obey the lust thereof.—Neither yield ye your members as instruments of iniquity unto sin.—For sin shall not have dominion over you.—What fruit therefore had you then in those things of which you are now ashamed? For the end of them is death.
- Mt 9, 13* I am not come to call the just, but sinners.
- Luk 7, 37* A woman that was in the city, a sinner.
- Eci 31, 8* Blessed is the rich man that is found without blemish.
- Je 2, 22* Thou art stained in thy iniquity before Me, saith the Lord.
- Ap 22, 11* He that is filthy, let him be filthy still.
- Mt 15, 11* What cometh out of the mouth, this defileth a man.
- Ja 8, 34-36* Amen, amen I say unto

## 7.—CATALOGUE OF SINS.

- 1 Pt 4, 3* The time past is sufficient to have fulfilled the will of the Gentiles for them who have walked
1. In riotousness,
  2. Lusts,
  3. Excess of wine,
  4. Revellings,
  5. Banquetings,
  6. And unlawful worshipping of idols.
- Ti 3, 3* We ourselves also were sometime
1. Unwise,
  2. Incredulous,
  3. Erring,
  4. Slaves to divers de-
- sires and pleasures,
5. Living in malice and envy,
  6. Hateful,
  7. Hating one another.
- All that is in the world *1 J 2, 16*
- is
1. The concupiscence of the flesh,
  2. The concupiscence of the eyes,
  3. And the pride of life, which is not of the Father, but is of the world.
- Let all
1. Bitterness,
  2. And anger,
- Ep 4, 31*

3. And indignation,  
4. And clamour,  
5. And blasphemy  
be put away from you with  
all malice.

*Ga* 5, 19-21 The works of the flesh are  
manifest, which are

1. Fornication,
2. Uncleaness,
3. Immodesty,
4. Luxury,
5. Idolatry,
6. Witchcrafts,
7. Enmities,
8. Contentions,
9. Emulations,
10. Wraths,
11. Quarrels,
12. Dissensions,
13. Sects,
14. Envies,
15. Murders,
16. Drunkenness,
17. Revellings.

*W* 14, 25- They neither keep life,  
26 nor marriage undefiled: all  
things are mingled together,

1. Blood,
2. Murder,
3. Theft,
4. And dissimulation,
5. Corruption,
6. And unfaithfulness.

7. Tumults,
8. And perjury,
9. Disquieting of the  
good,
10. Forgetfulness of God.
11. Defiling of souls,
12. Changing of nature,
13. Disorder in marriage,
14. And the irregularity  
of adultery and un-  
cleanness.

I fear lest perhaps when I *2 C* 12, 20  
come I shall not find you such  
as I would. Lest perhaps

1. Contentions,
2. Envyings,
3. Animosities,
4. Dissensions,
5. Detractions,
6. Whisperings,
7. Swellings,
8. Seditions

be among you.

From the heart come forth *Mt* 15, 19-

1. Evil thoughts, 20
2. Murders,
3. Adulteries,
4. Fornications,
5. Thefts,
6. False testimonies,
7. Blasphemies.

These are the things that  
defile a man.

#### 8.—EXAMPLES OF VARIOUS KINDS OF SINS.

- |                  |              |                      |
|------------------|--------------|----------------------|
| <i>Is</i> 14, 11 | 1. Lucifer.  | <i>Pride.</i>        |
| <i>Js</i> 7, 1   | 2. Achan.    | <i>Covetousness.</i> |
| <i>3 K</i> 11, 1 | 3. Solomon.  | <i>Lust.</i>         |
| <i>Nu</i> 24, 10 | 4. Balac.    | <i>Anger.</i>        |
| <i>Ge</i> 25, 33 | 5. Esau.     | <i>Gluttony.</i>     |
| <i>Es</i> 5, 13  | 6. Aman.     | <i>Envy.</i>         |
| <i>Ac</i> 17, 21 | 7. The Athe- | <i>Sloth.</i>        |
|                  | nians.       |                      |

- |                   |              |                                 |
|-------------------|--------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>1 P</i> 13, 9  | 8. Oza.      | <i>Presumption.</i>             |
| <i>Mt</i> 27, 5   | 9. Judas.    | <i>Despair.</i>                 |
| <i>2 P</i> 25, 16 | 10. Amasias. | <i>Resisting the<br/>truth.</i> |
| <i>Ge</i> 4, 5    | 11. Cain.    | <i>Envy of an-</i>              |

- |                |  |                                       |
|----------------|--|---------------------------------------|
|                |  | <i>other's spi-<br/>rituality.</i>    |
| 12. Amon.      |  | <i>Obstinacy in</i> <i>2 P</i> 33, 23 |
|                |  | <i>sin.</i>                           |
| 13. Antiochus. |  | <i>Final impeni- 1 M</i> 6, 13        |
|                |  | <i>tence.</i>                         |
| 14. Core.      |  | <i>Schism.</i> <i>Nu</i> 16, 1        |
| 15. Absalom.   |  | <i>Rebellion.</i> <i>2 K</i> 14, 13   |
| 16. Jeroboam.  |  | <i>Sacrilege.</i> <i>3 K</i> 13, 34   |
| 17. Saul.      |  | <i>Spiritualism.</i> <i>1 K</i> 28, 7 |
| 18. Ozias.     |  | <i>Usurping the 2 P</i> 28, 18        |
|                |  | <i>Priesthood.</i>                    |
| 19. Amasias.   |  | <i>Idolatry.</i> <i>2 P</i> 25, 14    |

2 K 17, 23	20. Achitophel.	<i>Suicide.</i>	25. Heli.	<i>Over-leni- ency.</i>	1 K 3, 13
2 K 20, 1	21. Seba.	<i>Revolution.</i>	26. Giezi.	<i>Lying.</i>	4 K 5, 22
4 K 7, 19	22. The Noble- man of Samaria.	<i>Incredulity.</i>	27. The boys.	<i>Scoffing.</i>	4 K 5, 27
2 P 33, 6	23. Manasses.	<i>Divination.</i>	28. Joel.	<i>Bribery.</i>	1 K 8, 3
Ac 8, 20	24. Simon M.	<i>Simony.</i>	29. Israel.	<i>Apostacy.</i>	Je 2, 19
			30. Nabal.	<i>Drunkenness.</i>	1 K 25, 36

## 9.—OBJECTS OF THE SIN OF IDOLATRY.

Adored by the			Adored by the		
Ex 8, 14	1. Adonis.	<i>Apostate Jews.</i>	16. Mammon.	<i>Nineteenth Century.</i>	Mt 6, 24
4 K 17, 31	2. Adrame- lech.	<i>Assyrians.</i>	17. Mercury.	<i>Lycaonians.</i>	Ac 14, 11
4 K 17, 31	3. Anamelech.	<i>Men of Se- pharvaim.</i>	18. Melchom.	<i>Apostate Jews.</i>	So 1, 5
3 K 11, 33	4. Astarthe.	<i>Sidonians.</i>	19. Merodach.	<i>Babylonians.</i>	Je 50, 2
4 K 17, 30	5. Asima.	<i>Men of Emath.</i>	20. Moloch.	<i>Ammonites.</i>	3 K 11, 33
Je 48, 13	6. Baal.	<i>Moabites.</i>	21. Moon.	<i>Apostate Jews.</i>	Je 7, 18
Jg 9, 4	7. Baalberith.	<i>Schemites.</i>	22. Nabo.	<i>Babylonians.</i>	Is 46, 1
Je 50, 2	8. Bel.	<i>Babylonians.</i>	23. Nebahez.	<i>Hevites.</i>	4 K 17, 31
Jg 16, 23	9. Dagon.	<i>Philistines.</i>	24. Nergel.	<i>Cuthites.</i>	4 K 17, 30
Ha 1, 16	10. Drag and Net.	<i>Apostate Jews.</i>	25. Neseroch.	<i>Sennacherib.</i>	4 K 19, 37
Ac 19, 34	11. Diana.	<i>Ephesians.</i>	26. Nohestan.	<i>Apostate Jews.</i>	4 K 18, 4
Mt 24, 24	12. False christ.	<i>Nineteenth Century.</i>	27. Remmon.	<i>Syrians.</i>	4 K 5, 18
Ex 32, 4	13. Golden Calf.	<i>Israelites.</i>	28. Rempham.	<i>Phenecians.</i>	Ac 7, 43
3 K 12, 28	14. Golden Calves.	<i>Jereboamites.</i>	29. Tharthac.	<i>Hevites.</i>	4 K 17, 31
Ac 14, 11	15. Jupiter.	<i>Lycaonians.</i>	30. Sochothbe- noth.	<i>Babylonians.</i>	4 K 17, 30
			31. Sun.	<i>Apostate Jews.</i>	Ez 8, 16
			32. Unknown God.	<i>Athenians.</i>	Ac 17, 28

## 10.—NAMES AND EMBLEMS OF SIN.

Ge 6, 5	1. Wickedness.	11. Ropes.	Po 5, 22
Ge 49, 17	2. A snake in the way.	12. Tyrant.	Po 5, 9
Ge 49, 17	3. A serpent in the path.	13. Smoke to the eyes.	Po 10, 26
Dt 29, 18	4. The root bringing forth gall and bitter- ness.	14. Vinegar to the teeth.	Po 10, 26
Jb 20, 5	5. A momentary joy.	15. Privation of life.	Po 10, 27
Jb 20, 5	6. A short praise.	16. Cause of miseries.	Po 14, 34
Po 33, 32	7. The poison of a basilisk.	17. An abomination.	Po 15, 26
Po 33, 32	8. The bite of a snake.	18. Ignominy.	Po 18, 3
Po 57, 5	9. The deaf asp.	19. Rust.	Po 25, 4
Po 5, 4	10. Wormwood.	20. Poison of destruction.	W 1, 14
		21. The kingdom of hell upon the earth.	W 1, 14
		22. The bewitching of vanity.	W 4, 12

- |                   |   |   |                   |
|-------------------|---|---|-------------------|
| <i>W</i> 4, 12    | 23. The wandering of concupiscence.     | 66. Treason against the Lord.                     | <i>Je</i> 29, 32  |
| <i>W</i> 5, 7     | 24. The way of destruction.             | 67. Bondage.                                      | <i>La</i> 1, 3    |
| <i>W</i> 5, 7     | 25. The way of iniquity.                | 68. Chains and cords with which slaves are bound. | <i>La</i> 1, 14   |
| <i>W</i> 11, 17   | 26. Torturer of the conscience.         | 69. A vine despoiled of its grapes.               | <i>La</i> 1, 12   |
| <i>W</i> 12, 24   | 27. The ways of error.                  | 70. A destroying sword.                           | <i>La</i> 1, 20   |
| <i>W</i> 17, 2    | 28. Bonds of darkness.                  | 71. Heavy fetters.                                | <i>La</i> 3, 7    |
| <i>W</i> 17, 2    | 29. A long night.                       | 72. Square stones blocking the way to Heaven.     | <i>La</i> 3, 9    |
| <i>W</i> 17, 17   | 30. A chain of darkness.                | 73. A pit engulfing souls.                        | <i>La</i> 3, 55   |
| <i>Ecl</i> 10, 1  | 31. A short-lived folly.                | 74. The destroyer of acquired merits.             | <i>Ez</i> 18, 24  |
| <i>Eci</i> 1, 15  | 32. The highest folly.                  | 75. Transgressions.                               | <i>Ez</i> 18, 31  |
| <i>Eci</i> 13, 1  | 33. Pitch.                              | 76. Crimes.                                       | <i>Am</i> 5, 12   |
| <i>Eci</i> 17, 30 | 34. The eclipse of the soul.            | 77. Grievous sins.                                | <i>Am</i> 5, 12   |
| <i>Eci</i> 18, 23 | 35. Injustice.                          | 78. The sword with which God is stabbed.          | <i>Ma</i> 3, 8    |
| <i>Eci</i> 18, 23 | 36. Abomination.                        | 79. The broad way.                                | <i>Mt</i> 7, 13   |
| <i>Eci</i> 20, 26 | 37. A foul blot.                        | 80. The wide gate.                                | <i>Mt</i> 7, 13   |
| <i>Eci</i> 21, 3  | 38. The teeth of a lion.                | 81. Thorns and thistles.                          | <i>Mt</i> 7, 16   |
| <i>Eci</i> 21, 2  | 39. A serpent.                          | 82. Evil fruit.                                   | <i>Mt</i> 7, 18   |
| <i>Ep</i> 6, 24   | 40. Corruption.                         | 83. Leprosy.                                      | <i>Mt</i> 8, 2    |
| <i>Eci</i> 27, 33 | 41. Fury.                               | 84. An infinite debt.                             | <i>Mt</i> 18, 24  |
| <i>Eci</i> 28, 24 | 42. A yoke of iron.                     | 85. Filthiness.                                   | <i>Mt</i> 23, 27  |
| <i>Eci</i> 28, 24 | 43. Bands of brass.                     | 86. Shadow of death.                              | <i>Lu</i> 1, 79   |
| <i>Eci</i> 40, 1  | 44. A heavy yoke.                       | 87. Darkness.                                     | <i>Jn</i> 3, 19   |
| <i>Is</i> 5, 6    | 45. Briers and thorns.                  | 88. The gall of bitterness.                       | <i>Ac</i> 8, 23   |
| <i>Is</i> 5, 4    | 46. Wild grapes.                        | 89. Cause of death.                               | <i>Ro</i> 5, 12   |
| <i>Is</i> 5, 18   | 47. Cords of vanity.                    | 90. Absence of all good.                          | 1 <i>C</i> 13, 2  |
| <i>Is</i> 24, 16  | 48. The prevarication of transgressors. | 91. Death of the soul.                            | <i>Ep</i> 5, 14   |
| <i>Is</i> 29, 10  | 49. A deep sleep.                       | 92. An affront to the Spirit of Grace.            | <i>He</i> 10, 29  |
| <i>Is</i> 53, 4   | 50. Heavy burdens.                      | 93. The Crucifixion of Christ renewed.            | <i>He</i> 6, 6    |
| <i>Is</i> 58, 6   | 51. Bands of wickedness.                | 94. The treading under foot the Son of God.       | <i>He</i> 10, 29  |
| <i>Is</i> 58, 9   | 52. Chain.                              | 95. Iniquity.                                     | 1 <i>J</i> 3, 4   |
| <i>Is</i> 58, 6   | 53. The bundles that oppress.           | 96. Slavery of the devil.                         | 1 <i>J</i> 3, 8   |
| <i>Is</i> 59, 2   | 54. Dethronement of God from the heart. | 97. Sour grapes.                                  | <i>Ez</i> 18, 2   |
| <i>Is</i> 65, 25  | 55. The serpent's food.                 | 98. Cords of hell.                                | 1 <i>K</i> 22, 6  |
| <i>Je</i> 2, 19   | 56. A bitter thing.                     | 99. Snares of death.                              | 1 <i>K</i> 22, 6  |
| <i>Je</i> 2, 20   | 57. Open rebellion.                     | 100. Spider's web.                                | <i>Os</i> 8, 6    |
| <i>Je</i> 2, 19   | 58. Apostacy.                           | 101. Dung and worms.                              | 1 <i>M</i> 2, 62  |
| <i>Je</i> 3, 11   | 59. Treachery.                          | 102. The sting of death.                          | 1 <i>C</i> 15, 56 |
| <i>Je</i> 5, 6    | 60. Rebellion.                          | 103. Everlasting death.                           | <i>Ja</i> 1, 15   |
| <i>Je</i> 7, 30   | 61. Evil.                               |   |                   |
| <i>Je</i> 8, 5    | 62. Stubborn revolting.                 |   |                   |
| <i>Je</i> 8, 14   | 63. Water of gall.                      |   |                   |
| <i>Je</i> 9, 8    | 64. A piercing arrow.                   |   |                   |
| <i>Je</i> 23, 12  | 65. A slippery way in the dark.         |   |                   |

## 11.—HATRED OF SIN.

- Je* 44, 4 Do not commit this abominable thing which I hate.
- Pr* 96, 10 You that love the Lord, hate evil: the Lord preserveth the souls of His Saints: He will deliver them out of the hand of the sinner.
- Pr* 118, 53, 128, 163 A fainting hath taken hold of me, because of the wicked that forsake Thy Law.—I have hated all wicked ways.—I have hated and abhorred iniquity; but I have loved Thy Law.
- Pr* 138, 21 Have I not hated them, O Lord, that hated Thee: and pined away because of Thy enemies?
- Eci* 25, 3-4 Three sorts my soul hateth, and I am greatly grieved at their life:—A poor man that is proud: a rich man that is a liar: an old man that is a fool, and doting.
- Pv* 8, 7, 13 My mouth shall meditate truth, and my lips shall hate wickedness.—The fear of the Lord hateth evil.
- Ro* 12, 9 Hating that which is evil, cleaving to that which is good.
- The deeds of the Nicolaites I hate. *Ap* 2, 6
- Let none of you imagine evil in your hearts against his friend: and love not a false oath: for all these are the things that I hate, saith the Lord. *Za* 8, 1
- Thou hast hated iniquity: therefore God, thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows. (*See p.* 245.) *Pr* 44, 8
- Six things there are which the Lord hateth, and the seventh His soul detesteth: *Pv* 6, 16-19
1. Haughty eyes,
  2. A lying tongue,
  3. Hands that shed innocent blood,
  4. A heart that deviseth wicked plots,
  5. Feet that are swift to run into mischief,
  6. A deceitful witness that uttereth lies,
  7. And him that soweth discord among brethren.

## 12.—PROSPERITY OF THE WICKED.

- Jb* 9, 24 The earth is given into the hand of the wicked.
- Jb* 21, 7-15 Why then do the wicked live, are they advanced and strengthened with riches?—Their seed continueth before them, a multitude of kinsmen, and of children's children in their sight.—Their houses are secure and peaceable, and the rod of God is not upon them.—Their little ones go out like a flock, and their children dance and play.—They take the timbrel and the harp, and rejoice at the sound of the organ.—They spend their days in wealth, and in a moment they go down to hell.—Who have said to God: Depart from us: we desire not the knowledge of Thy ways.—Who is the Almighty that we should serve Him? and what doth it profit us if we pray to Him?
- Whilst the wicked man is proud, the poor is set on fire.—For the sinner is *Pr* 9, 2-3, 5-6



praised in the desires of his soul : and the unjust man is blessed.—Thy judgments are removed from his sight : he shall rule over all his enemies.—For he hath said in his heart : I shall not be moved from generation to generation, and shall be without evil.

*Ps* 48, 17-18, 20-21 Be not thou afraid when a man shall be made rich, and when the glory of his house shall be increased.—For when he shall die he shall take nothing away : nor shall his glory descend with him.—He shall go into the generations of his fathers : and he shall never see Light.—Man when he was in honour did not understand : he hath been compared to senseless beasts, and made like to them.

*Ps* 72, 2-6, 11-12, 19-20 But my feet were almost moved ; my steps had well-nigh slipt.—Because I had a zeal on occasion of the wicked, seeing the prosperity of sinners.—For there is no regard to their death, nor is there strength in their stripes.—They are not in the labour of men : neither shall they be scourged like other men.—Therefore pride hath held them fast : they are covered with their iniquity and their wickedness.—And they said : How doth God know ? and is there knowledge in the Most High ?—Behold these are sinners ; and yet abounding in the world they have obtained riches.—How are they brought to desolation ? they have suddenly ceased to be : they have perished by reason of their

iniquity.—As the dream of them that awake, O Lord ; so in Thy City Thou shalt bring their image to nothing.

Deliver me, and rescue me *Ps* 143, 11-15 out of the hand of strange children : whose mouth hath spoken vanity : and their right hand is the right hand of iniquity.—Whose sons

are as new plants in their youth : their daughters decked out, adorned round about after the similitude of a temple :—Their storehouses full, flowing out of this into that. Their sheep fruitful in young, abounding in their goings forth.—Their oxen fat. There is no breach of wall, nor passage, nor crying out in their streets.—They have called the people happy, that hath these things : but happy is that people whose God is the Lord.

Moab hath been fruitful *Js* 48, 11 from his youth, and hath rested upon his lees : and hath not been poured out from vessel to vessel, nor hath gone into captivity : therefore his taste hath remained in him, and his scent is not changed.

There is success in evil *Eci* 20, 9 things to a man without discipline, and there is a finding that turneth to loss.

Thou indeed, O Lord, art *Js* 12, 1-3 just, if I plead with Thee, but yet I will speak what is just to Thee : Why doth the way of the wicked prosper ; why is it well with all them that transgress, and do wickedly ? — Thou hast planted them, and they have taken root : they prosper and bring forth fruit.—

Gather them together as sheep for a sacrifice, and prepare them for the day of slaughter.

- Ha 1, 13* Why lookest Thou upon them that do unjust things, and holdest Thy peace when the wicked devoureth the man that is more just than himself?
- Am 6, 1-7* Wo to you that are wealthy in Sion, and to you that have confidence in the mountain of Samaria: ye great men, heads of the people, that go in with state into the House of Israel.—You that are separated unto the evil day: and that approach to the throne of iniquity.—You that sleep upon beds of ivory, and are wanton on your couches: that eat the lambs out of the flock, and the calves out of the midst of the herd.—You that sing to the sound of the psaltery: they have thought themselves to have instruments of music like David.—That drink wine in bowls, and anoint themselves with the best ointments: and they are not concerned for the affliction of Joseph.—The faction of the luxurious ones shall be taken away.
- The wicked man is reserved to the day of destruction, and he shall be brought to the day of wrath.
- Therefore hath hell enlarged her soul, and opened her mouth without any bounds, and their strong ones, and their people, and their high and glorious ones shall go down into it.
- Wo to you that are rich: for you have your consolation.—Wo to you that are filled: for you shall hunger.
- Wo to you that laugh now: for you shall mourn and weep.—Wo to you when men shall bless you: For according to these things did their fathers to the false prophets.
- Son, remember that thou didst receive good things in thy life time, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented.
- Jb 21, 3*
- Is 5, 14*
- Lx 6, 24-26*
- Lu 16, 25*

### 13.—DIVINE THREATENINGS.

- Pv 11, 3* The deceitfulness of the wicked shall destroy them.
- Pv 17, 13* He that rendereth evil for good, evil shall not depart from his house.
- W 3, 10* The wicked shall be punished according to their own devices: who have neglected the just, and have revolted from the Lord.
- Eci 7, 19* Humble thy spirit very much: for the vengeance on the flesh of the ungodly is fire and worms.
- Eci 12, 3* There is no good for him that is always occupied in evil, and that giveth no alms.
- He that loveth danger shall perish in it.
- The inheritance of the children of sinners shall perish, and with their posterity shall be a perpetual reproach.
- Wo to them that are of a double heart, and to wicked lips, and to the hands that do evil, and to the sinner that goeth on the earth two ways.—Wo to them that are faint-hearted, and who be-
- Eci 3, 27*
- Eci 41, 9*
- Eci 2, 14-17*

lieve not God: and therefore shall not be protected by Him.—Wo to them that have lost patience, and that have forsaken the right ways, have gone aside into crooked ways.—And what will they do when the Lord shall begin to examine?

house, and shall consume it, with the timber thereof, and the stones thereof.

Wo to them that make wicked laws: and when they write, write injustice.—To oppress the poor in judgment, and do violence to the cause of the humble of My people: that widows might be their prey, and that they might rob the fatherless.—What will you do in the day of visitation, and of the calamity which cometh from afar? To whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?

Behold, the day of the Lord shall come, a cruel day, and full of indignation, and of wrath, and fury, to lay the land desolate, and to destroy the sinners thereof out of it.—And I will visit the evils of the world, and against the wicked for their iniquity, and I will make the pride of infidels to cease, and will bring down the arrogancy of the mighty.

Wo to you that are deep of heart, to hide your counsel from the Lord: and their works are in the dark, and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us?

Wo to thee that spoilest, shalt not thou thyself also be spoiled? and thou that despisest, shalt not thyself also be despised? When thou shalt have made an end of spoiling, thou shalt be spoiled: when being wearied thou shalt cease to despise, thou shalt be despised.

Wo to him that buildeth up his house by injustice,

*Is* 2, 11-12 The lofty eyes of man are humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be made to stoop: and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.—Because the day of the Lord of Hosts shall be upon every one that is proud and high-minded, and upon every one that is arrogant, and he shall be humbled.

*Is* 3, 11 Wo to the wicked unto evil: for the reward of his hands shall be given him.

*Is* 5, 20, 22-23 Wo to you that call evil good, and good evil: that put darkness for light, and light for darkness: that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter.—Wo to you that are mighty to drink wine, and stout men at drunkenness.—That justify the wicked for gifts, and take away the justice of the just from him.

*Za* 5, 1, 3-4 I turned, and lifted up my eyes: and I saw, and behold a volume flying:—This is the curse, that goeth forth over the face of the earth: for every thief shall be judged as is there written: and every one that sweareth in like manner shall be judged by it.—And it shall come to the house of the thief, and to the house of him that sweareth falsely by My Name: and it shall remain in the midst of his

- and his chambers not in judgment: that will oppress his friend without cause, and will not pay him his wages.
- Je 23, 1* Wo to the pastors, that destroy and tear the sheep of My pasture, saith the Lord.
- Ma 2, 2* If you will not hear, and if you will not lay it to heart, to give glory to My Name, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will send poverty upon you, and I will curse your blessings, yea, I will curse them: because you have not laid it to heart.
- Je 31, 30* Every one shall die for his own iniquity.
- Ma 3, 5* I will come to you in judgment, and will be a speedy witness against sorcerers, and adulterers, and false swearers, and them that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widows, and the fatherless: and oppress the stranger, and have not feared Me, saith the Lord of Hosts.
- Am 8, 4* Hear this, you that crush the poor, and make the needy of the land to fail.
- Jl 2, 11* The day of the Lord is great and very terrible: and who can stand it?
- Ma 4, 1* For behold the day shall come kindled as a furnace: and all the proud, and all that do wickedly shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall set them on fire, saith the Lord of Hosts, it shall not leave them root, nor branch.
- Mt 3, 10* Every tree, therefore, that yieldeth not good fruit, shall be cut down, and cast into the fire.
- If any one abide not in Me: he shall be cast forth as a branch, and shall wither, and they shall gather him up, and cast him into the fire, and he burneth.
- So shall it be at the end of the world. The Angels shall go out, and shall separate the wicked from among the just.
- And the unprofitable servant cast ye out into the exterior darkness. There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.
- If that evil servant should say in his heart: My Lord is long a-coming:—And shall begin to strike his fellow-servants, and shall eat and drink with drunkards:—The Lord of that servant shall come in a day that he hopeth not, and at an hour that he knoweth not:—And shall separate him, and appoint his portion with the hypocrites. There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.
- It is fearful thing to fall into the hands of the Living God.
- Who will render to every man according to his works.
- To them that are contentious, and who obey not the truth, but give credit to iniquity, wrath, and indignation.—Tribulation and anguish upon every soul of man that doeth evil.
- He that doeth an injury shall receive for that which he hath done unjustly; for there is no respect of persons with God.
- The countenance of the Lord is against them that do evil things.
- Jn 15, 6*
- Mt 13, 49*
- Mt 25, 30*
- Mt 24, 48-51*
- He 10, 31*
- Ro 2, 6, 8-9*
- Ct 3, 25*
- 1 Pt 3, 12*

- 1 Pt 4, 18 And if the just man shall scarcely be saved, where shall the wicked and the sinner appear?
- He 12, 25 See that you refuse not Him Who speaketh. For if they escaped not who refused him that spoke upon earth, much more shall not we, who turn away from Him that speaketh to us from Heaven.
- But the heavens and the earth, which are now, by the same Word are kept in store, reserved unto fire against the day of judgment and perdition of wicked men. 2 Pt 3, 7

## 14.—NAMES AND TYPES OF THE WICKED.

- |                   |   |  |                  |
|-------------------|---|--|------------------|
| <i>Dt</i> 32, 20  | 1. Unfaithful children.                 | 30. The raging sea.                                | <i>Is</i> 57, 20 |
| <i>Dt</i> 32, 20  | 2. A perverse generation.               | 31. The wicked.                                    | <i>Is</i> 57, 21 |
| <i>Pz</i> 48, 13  | 3. Senseless beasts.                    | 32. A prey.  | <i>Je</i> 2, 14  |
| <i>Pz</i> 52, 1   | 4. Fools.                               | 33. Robbers in the wilderness.                     | <i>Je</i> 3, 2   |
| <i>Pz</i> 77, 8   | 5. An exasperating generation.          | 34. Despisers of God.                              | <i>Je</i> 3, 20  |
| <i>Pv</i> 1, 31   | 6. Authors of their own miseries.       | 35. Fallow ground.                                 | <i>Je</i> 4, 3   |
| <i>Pv</i> 10, 25  | 7. A tempest that passeth away.         | 36. Foolish and senseless children.                | <i>Je</i> 4, 22  |
| <i>Pv</i> 6, 5    | 8. Birds caught by the fowler.          | 37. The slain.                                     | <i>Je</i> 4, 31  |
| <i>Pv</i> 13, 2   | 9. Transgressors.                       | 38. Faces harder than the rock.                    | <i>Je</i> 5, 3   |
| <i>Pv</i> 28, 15  | 10. Roaring lions.                      | 39. Forsaken of God.                               | <i>Je</i> 5, 7   |
| <i>Pv</i> 28, 15  | 11. Hungry bears.                       | 40. Stubble.                                       | <i>Je</i> 5, 12  |
| <i>W</i> 4, 16    | 12. The unjust.                         | 41. Wood for burning.                              | <i>Je</i> 5, 14  |
| <i>W</i> 12, 24   | 13. Children without understanding.     | 42. Foolish people.                                | <i>Je</i> 5, 21  |
| <i>W</i> 15, 6    | 14. Lovers of evil things.              | 43. Fowlers.                                       | <i>Je</i> 5, 26  |
| <i>W</i> 17, 2    | 15. Exiles from the Eternal Providence. | 44. Reprobate silver.                              | <i>Je</i> 6, 30  |
| <i>Eci</i> 1, 32  | 16. Sinners.                            | 45. Bad figs.                                      | <i>Je</i> 29, 17 |
| <i>Eci</i> 6, 3   | 17. Dry trees in the wilderness.        | 46. Trusters in a lie.                             | <i>Je</i> 29, 31 |
| <i>Eci</i> 12, 13 | 18. Wild beasts.                        | 47. Deceived souls.                                | <i>Je</i> 37, 8  |
| <i>Eci</i> 13, 3  | 19. Earthen pots.                       | 48. Wounded men.                                   | <i>Je</i> 37, 9  |
| <i>Eci</i> 13, 21 | 20. Wolves.                             | 49. Souls <i>solitary, widowed, and tributary.</i> | <i>La</i> 1, 1   |
| <i>Eci</i> 13, 22 | 21. Dogs.                               | 50. Tellers of fables.                             | <i>Ba</i> 3, 23  |
| <i>Eci</i> 21, 4  | 22. Deicides.                           | 51. Workers of idols.                              | <i>Os</i> 6, 8   |
| <i>Is</i> 9, 19   | 23. Fuel for the fire.                  | 52. Decoyed doves.                                 | <i>Os</i> 7, 11  |
| <i>Is</i> 24, 16  | 24. Prevaricators.                      | 53. Spiritual madmen.                              | <i>Os</i> 9, 7   |
| <i>Is</i> 33, 19  | 25. Shameless people.                   | 54. Revolters.                                     | <i>Os</i> 9, 15  |
| <i>Is</i> 33, 12  | 26. A bundle of thorns.                 | 55. Wanderers.                                     | <i>Os</i> 9, 17  |
| <i>Is</i> 51, 20  | 27. Wild oxen that are snared.          | 56. Firebrands.                                    | <i>Am</i> 4, 11  |
| <i>Is</i> 53, 6   | 28. Wandering sheep.                    | 57. Hay and stubble.                               | <i>Am</i> 2, 13  |
| <i>Is</i> 56, 10  | 29. Seers of vain things.               | 58. Drinkers of the wine of God's vengeance.       | <i>Am</i> 9, 2   |
|                   |   | 59. Senseless men without faith.                   | <i>So</i> 3, 4   |
|                   |   | 60. Evening wolves.                                | <i>So</i> 3, 3   |

<i>So</i> 3, 4	61. Polluters of the Sanctuary.	76. Bad leaven.	<i>Mt</i> 16, 6
<i>Ma</i> 3, 8	62. Crucifiers of God.	77. The withered fig-tree.	<i>Mt</i> 21, 19
<i>Mt</i> 3, 7	63. Brood of vipers.	78. Blind guides.	<i>Mt</i> 23, 16
<i>Mt</i> 4, 24	64. Lunatics.	79. Children of hell.	<i>Mt</i> 23, 15
<i>Mt</i> 7, 6	65. Swine.	80. Whited sepulchres.	<i>Mt</i> 23, 27
<i>Mt</i> 7, 17	66. Evil trees.	81. Abominations of desolation.	<i>Mt</i> 24, 15
<i>Mt</i> 10, 1	67. Unclean spirits.	82. Lamps without oil.	<i>Mt</i> 25, 3
<i>Mt</i> 10, 8	68. The sick.	83. Wicked servants.	<i>Mt</i> 25, 26
<i>Mt</i> 11, 5	69. The lame.	84. Servants of sin.	<i>Jn</i> 8, 34
<i>Mt</i> 11, 5	70. The dead.	85. Enemies of God.	<i>Ro</i> 5, 10
<i>Mt</i> 12, 34	71. Generation of vipers.	86. Christicides.	<i>Gal</i> 1, 4
<i>Mt</i> 13, 26	72. Cockle.	87. Children of wrath.	<i>Ep</i> 2, 2
<i>Mt</i> 15, 30	73. The blind.	88. Deniers of the Lord.	<i>2 Pt</i> 2, 1
<i>Mt</i> 15, 30	74. The dumb.	89. Captives of the devil.	<i>2 Tm</i> 2, 26
<i>Mt</i> 15, 30	75. The maimed.	90. Haters of the Light.	<i>Jn</i> 3, 20

## 15.—A PRAYER FOR GRACE TO FLEE SIN.

*Ecc* 23, 1-6 O Lord, Father, and Sovereign Ruler of my life, leave me not to their counsel: nor suffer me to fall by them.

Who will set scourges over my thoughts, and the discipline of wisdom over my heart, that they spare me not in their ignorances, and that their sins may not appear:

Lest my ignorances increase and my offences be multiplied, and my sins

abound, and I fall before my adversaries, and my enemy rejoice over me?

O Lord, Father, and God of my life, leave me not to their devices.

Give me not haughtiness of my eyes, and turn away from me all coveting.

Take from me the greediness of the belly, and let not the lusts of the flesh take hold of me, and give me not over to a shameless and foolish mind.

## PART II.

## ON JUSTIFICATION.

JUSTIFICATION is the act by which one is made just. The word Justice has many meanings, but it always signifies a certain "rectitude of order." The Justice which is the term of Justification means that rectitude of order by which man's lower nature is subjected to his higher nature, and his higher nature is subjected to God. Justice, taken in this sense, may be conferred

on man in one or other of two ways: either after the manner of *simple generation*, by which man proceeds from mere privation of Justice to the possession of the form of Justice, and such was the original Justification of Adam; or, as a movement from a *contrary is a contrary*, and such is the Justification of the sinner.\* The Justification of the sinner may be defined as "The Divine action by which God remits a man's sins, and infuses into him sanctifying grace, and thus constitutes him His adopted son and heir of His Heavenly Kingdom."

Justification remits sins, not by simply covering them, but by utterly removing and abolishing them.† It abolishes them by introducing sanctifying grace, ‡ the *formal* cause of Justification, § into the soul. For the Justification of the *adult* certain dispositions are required on the part of the sinner. These dispositions are acts of Faith, Fear, Hope, Love of God, Contrition, and Firm Resolution to keep God's Law. || Justice or sanctifying grace once gained may be increased, ¶ or may be lost.\*\* Without a special revelation we cannot be certain, with the certainty of faith, that we are justified †† The Justification of the sinner is, as S. Thomas shows, ‡‡ a greater work than creation, since its term is the eternal good of communion with God, whereas the term of creation is the good of Nature, which passes away; and a greater gift than the Gift of Glory, inasmuch as the sinner has no right to grace, whereas the just man has a true claim to glory. The Justification of the sinner is, in truth, the greatest work of God. Hence the Church (Collect, 10th Sunday after Pentecost) sings, "Deus qui omnipotentiam tuam *parcendo* maxime et *miserando* manifestas."

\* Sum. Theol., p.s. q. 113, a. 1.

† Conc. Trid., Sess 5, Can. 5.

‡ Ibid. Sess. 6, Can. 11.

§ Ibid. cap. 7.

| Ibid. cap. 5 et 6.

¶ Ibid. Can. 24.

\*\* Ibid. Can. 23.

†† Ibid. cap. 9.

‡‡ Sum. Theol., p.s. q. 113, a. 9.

## 1.—THE FORGIVENESS AND BLOTING OUT OF SIN.

- Rz* 36, 25 I will pour upon you clean water, and you shall be cleansed from all your filthiness. He will cast all our sins into the bottom of the sea. *Mt* 7, 19
- Pz* 50, 8 Thou shalt sprinkle me with hyssop, and I shall be cleansed: Thou shalt wash me, and I shall be made whiter than snow. Behold the Lamb of God, behold Him Who taketh away the sins of the world. *Jn* 1, 29
- Ro* 7, 24 Unhappy man that I am, who shall deliver me from the body of this death? The Grace of God by Jesus Christ. Be converted, that your sins may be blotted out. *Ac* 3, 19
- 1 C* 6, 11 Such some of you were; but you are washed, but you are sanctified, but you are justified, in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the Spirit of our God. Wash away thy sins. *Ac* 22, 16
- Pz* 102, 12 As far as the east is from the west, so far hath He removed our iniquities from us. In these days God hath spoken to us by His Son by Whom he made the world,— Making purgation of sins. *He* 1, 2-3
- Christ was offered once to exhaust the sins of many. *He* 9, 28
- For this purpose the Son of God appeared, that He might destroy the works of the devil. *1 J* 3, 8
- His Own Self bore our sins in His Body upon the Tree, that we being dead to sins should live to justice: by Whose Stripes you were healed. *1 Pt* 2, 24

## 2.—TRUE JUSTIFICATION.

- Ge* 15, 6 Abram believed God, and it was reputed to him unto justice. just shall live in his faith. To Him all the Prophets give testimony that through His Name all receive remission of sins who believe in Him. *Ac* 10, 43
- Is* 45, 26 In the Lord shall all the seed of Israel be justified and praised. In Him every one that believeth is justified. *Ac* 13, 39
- Is* 53, 8 He was taken away from distress and from judgment: who shall declare His generation? because He is cut off out of the land of the living: for the wickedness of My people have I struck Him. Christ died once for our sins, the Just for the unjust: that He might offer us to God, being put to death indeed in the flesh, but enlivened in the spirit. *1 Pt* 3, 18
- Je* 23, 6 In those days shall Juda be saved and Israel shall dwell confidently: and this is the Name that they shall call Him: the Lord our Just One. Being justified freely by His grace, through the Redemption that is in Christ Jesus. *Ro* 3, 24
- He* 2, 4 Behold he who is unbelieving, his soul shall not be right in himself, but the Not as the offence, so also the Gift. For where sin abounded Grace has more abounded. *Ro* 15, 20



- Ro* 4, 25 He was delivered up for our sins, and rose again for our justification.
- Cl* 2, 13 You when you were dead in your sins, He hath quickened together with Him, forgiving you all offences.
- As new-born babes, desire the rational milk without guile. *1 Pt* 2, 2

## 3.—INTERIOR SANCTIFICATION.

- Ro* 5, 5-6 Hope confoundeth not; because the Charity of God is poured forth in our hearts, by the Holy Ghost, Who is given to us.—For why did Christ, when as yet we were weak, die for the ungodly? Christ our Saviour;—That being justified by His grace, we may be heirs, according to hope of Life Everlasting.
- Is* 30, 26 The light of the moon shall be as the light of the sun in the day when the Lord shall bind up the wound of His people, and shall heal the stroke of their wound. Whosoever is born of God, committeth not sins, for His seed abideth in him. *1 J* 3, 9
- Cl* 2, 13 You He hath quickened together with Him, forgiving you all your offences. Because you are sons, God hath sent the Spirit of His Son into your hearts. *Ga* 4, 6
- Ro* 5, 19 As by the disobedience of one man, many were made sinners: so also by the obedience of One, many shall be made just. Be renewed in the spirit of your mind.—And put on the new man, who according to God is created in justice and holiness of truth. *Ep* 4, 23-24
- 2Cl* 1, 21-22 He that confirmeth us with you in Christ, and that hath anointed us, is God:—Who also hath sealed us, and given the pledge of the Spirit in our hearts. If by one man's offence death reigned through one: much more they who receive abundance of grace, and of the Gift, and of justice, shall reign in life through One, Jesus Christ. *Ro* 5, 17
- Tt* 3, 5-7 According to His Mercy He saved us, by the laver of regeneration, and renovation of the Holy Ghost;—Whom He hath poured upon us abundantly, through Jesus Whom He foreknew, He also predestinated to be made conformable to the Image of His Son; that He might be the First-born amongst many brethren. *Ro* 8, 29
- As we have borne the image of the earthly, let us bear also the image of the Heavenly. *1 C* 15, 49
- (See p. 217.)

## 4.—SANCTIFICATION BY FAITH, HOPE, AND CHARITY.

- Ro* 5, 2 By Him we have access through faith into this grace wherein we stand. hope in him, sanctifieth himself.
- Pv* 28, 25 He that trusteth in the Lord shall be healed. If I should have all faith, so that I could remove mountains, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing. *1 C* 13, 2
- Ro* 8, 24 Hope confoundeth not. There remain faith, hope, *1 C* 13, 13
- 1 J* 3, 3 Every one that hath this

charity; these three; but the greater of these is charity.

*Cl* 1, 4

We give thanks to God. Hearing your faith in Christ Jesus, and the love which you have towards all the Saints. For this hope that is laid up for you in Heaven.

Charity covereth a multitude of sins. *1 Pt* 4, 8

Many sins are forgiven her because she hath loved much. *Lk* 7, 47

He that loveth not abideth in death. *1 J* 3, 14

(*See p.* 280.)

### 5.—SANCTIFICATION BY PENANCE AND OTHER GOOD WORKS.

*Mt* 3, 2

Do penance; for the Kingdom of Heaven is at hand.

tised every one of you, for the remission of your sins.

*W* 11, 24

Thou hast mercy upon all because Thou canst do all things, and overlookest the sins of men for the sake of repentance.

The fear of the Lord driveth out sin;—For he that is without fear can not be justified. *Eci* 1, 27-

*Ex* 18, 21-

If the wicked do penance for all his sins which he hath committed, and keep all My commandments, and do judgment, and justice, living he shall live, and shall not die. —I will not remember all his iniquities that he hath done: in his justice which he hath wrought, he shall live.

With fear and trembling, work out your salvation. *Ph* 2, 12

22

Let nothing hinder thee from praying always, and be not afraid to be justified, even to death: for the reward of God continueth for ever.

The sorrow which is according to God worketh penance steadfast unto Salvation. *2 C* 7, 10

*Eci* 18, 22

Let nothing hinder thee from praying always, and be not afraid to be justified, even to death: for the reward of God continueth for ever.

Put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh in its concupiscences. *Ro* 13, 14

*Ap* 22, 11

He that hurteth, let him hurt still: and he that is filthy, let him be filthy still: and he that is just, let him be justified still: and he that is holy, let him be sanctified still.

Do you see that by works a man is justified, and not by faith only? *Ja* 2, 24

He said to all: If any man will come after Me, let him deny himself and take up his cross daily, and follow Me.\* *Lk* 9, 23

*Za* 1, 3-4

Turn to Me, and I will turn to you, saith the Lord. —Turn ye from your evil ways, and from your wicked thoughts.

He that hateth his life in this world, keepeth it unto Life Eternal. *Jn* 12, 25

They that are Christ's, have crucified their flesh with the vices and concupiscences. *Ga* 5, 24

*Ac* 2, 38

Do penance, and be bap-

We are debtors, not to the flesh, to live according to the flesh.—For if you live according to the flesh, you shall die. But if by the Spirit you mor-

\* Motto of the Confraternity of the Divine Expiation.

- tify the deeds of the flesh, you shall live.
- 1 C 9, 28** And every one that striveth for the mastery, refraineth himself from all things : and they indeed that they may receive a corruptible crown : but we an incorruptible one.
- 1 C 9, 27** I therefore so run, not as at an uncertainty : I so fight, not as one beating the air :—But I chastise my body, and bring it into subjection : lest perhaps, when I have preached to others, I myself should become a castaway.
- Cl 3, 5-6** Mortify your members which are upon the earth, fornication, uncleanness, lust, evil concupiscence, and covetousness, which is the service of idols.—For which things the wrath of God cometh upon the children of unbelief.
- Ja 2, 14** If a man say he hath faith, but hath not works, shall faith be able to save him ?
- Ja 2, 17** Faith, if it have not works, is dead in itself.
- Ja 2, 26** Even as the body without the spirit is dead, so also faith without works is dead.
- Mi 7, 21** Not every one that saith to Me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven, but he that doth the Will of My Father Who is in Heaven, he shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Embrace discipline, lest at any time the Lord be angry and you perish from the just way.
- Go not after thy lusts, and turn away from thine own will.—If thou give to thy soul her desires, she will make thee a joy to thy enemies.
- Walk in the Spirit, and you shall not fulfil the lusts of the flesh.
- Salvation shall be to them that fear Thy Name.
- Because for this end Thou hast put Thy fear in our hearts, to the intent that we should call upon Thy Name.
- Fear ye Him, Who after He hath killed, hath power to cast into hell : Yea, I say to you, fear Him.
- His mercy is from generation unto generation, to them that fear Him.
- Men brethren, sons of the race of Abraham, and whosoever among you fear God, to you the Word of this Salvation is sent.
- In every nation, he that feareth Him and worketh justice, is acceptable to Him.
- Let us cleanse ourselves from all defilement of the flesh and of the spirit, perfecting sanctification in the fear of God.
- Ps 2, 12**
- Eci 18, 30-31**
- Ga 5, 16**
- Mi 6, 6**
- Ba 3, 7**
- Lu 12, 5**
- Lu 1, 50**
- Ac 13, 26**
- Ac 10, 35**
- 2 C 7, 1**

## 6.—ON WHOLESOME FEAR.

- Eci 10, 25** The fear of the Lord is the glory of the rich, and of the honourable, and of the poor.
- Eci 15, 1** He that feareth God, will do good.
- Eci 19, 18** The fear of God is all wisdom.
- The fear of God is the beginning of His love : and the beginning of faith is to be fast joined unto it.
- No evils shall happen to him that feareth the Lord,
- Eci 25, 16**
- Eci 33, 1**

- but in temptation God will keep him, and deliver him from evils.
- Eci* 34, 17 The soul of him that feareth the Lord is blessed.
- Eci* 34, 19-20 The eyes of the Lord are upon them that fear Him, He is their powerful protector, and strong stay, a defence from the heat, and a cover from the sun at noon.—A preservation from stumbling, and a help from falling: He raiseth up the soul, and enlighteneth the eyes, and giveth health, and life, and blessing.
- Eci* 40, 27 There is no want in the fear of the Lord, and it needeth not to seek for help.
- Is* 33, 6 The fear of the Lord is His treasure.
- Is* 8, 13-14 Sanctify the Lord of Hosts Himself: and let Him be your fear, and let Him be your dread.—And He shall be a sanctification to you.
- Eci* 12, 13 Fear God, and keep His commandments: for this is all man.
- Ecl* 9, 1-2 There are just men and wise men, and their works are in the Hand of God; and yet man knoweth not whether he be worthy of love or hatred:—But all things are kept uncertain for the time to come.
- 1 *C* 4, 4 I am not conscious to myself of anything, yet am I not hereby justified; but He that judgeth me is the Lord.
- 1 *C* 4, 5 Judge not before the time: until the Lord come, Who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts: and then shall every man have
- praise from God.
- To me it is a very small thing to be judged by you or by any man's day; but neither do I judge my own self.
- Fear the Lord and serve Him in Truth and with your whole heart, for you have seen the great works He hath done among you.
- Behold the fear of the Lord, that is wisdom: and to depart from evil is understanding.
- The fear of the Lord is holy, enduring for ever and ever.
- Fear the Lord, all ye Saints: for there is no want to them that fear Him.
- His soul shall dwell in good things: and his seed shall inherit the land.
- He hath blessed all that fear the Lord, both little and great.
- Blessed are all they that fear the Lord; that walk in His ways.
- [The Lord] will do the will of them that fear Him: and He will hear their prayer, and save them.
- The Lord taketh pleasure in them that fear Him: and in them that hope in His mercy.
- The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom. —
- By the fear of the Lord men depart from evil.
- The fear of the Lord is honour, and glory, and gladness, and a crown of joy.—
- The fear of the Lord shall delight the heart, and shall give joy, and gladness, and length of days.—The fear of the Lord is the beginning of
- 1 *C* 4, 3
- 1 *K* 12, 24
- Jb* 28, 28
- Ps* 18, 10
- Ps* 33, 10
- Ps* 24, 13
- Ps* 113, 13
- Ps* 127, 1
- Ps* 144, 19
- Ps* 146, 11
- Ps* 9, 10
- Ps* 16, 6
- Eci* 1, 11-22, 27

wisdom, and was created with the faithful in the womb, it walketh with chosen women, and is known with the just and faithful.—It shall go well with him that feareth the Lord, and in the days of his end he shall be blessed.—The fear of the Lord is a crown of wisdom, filling up peace and the fruit of salvation.—The fear of the Lord driveth out sin.

*Eci* 2, 7-10, 18, 20-21 Ye that fear the Lord, wait for His mercy: and go not aside from Him, lest ye fall.—Ye that fear the Lord, believe Him: and your reward shall not be made void.—Ye that fear the Lord, hope in Him; and mercy shall come to you for your delight.—Ye that fear the Lord, love Him, and your hearts shall be enlightened.—They that fear the Lord will not be incredulous to His Word: and they that love Him will keep His Way.—They that fear the Lord, will prepare their hearts, and in His sight will sanctify their souls.—They that fear the Lord keep His commandments, and will

have patience even unto His Visitation.

Because of unbelief they were broken off. But thou standest by faith; be not high-minded, but fear.—For if God hath not spared the natural branches, fear lest perhaps He also spare not thee.

He that thinketh himself to stand, let him take heed lest he fall.

I chastise my body, and bring it into subjection, lest perhaps when I have preached to others I myself should become a castaway.

Who shall not fear Thee, O Lord, and magnify Thy Name? For Thou only art Holy.

In the fear of the Lord is confidence of strength, and there shall be hope for His children.—The fear of the Lord is a fountain of life, to decline from the ruin of death.

Strive to enter by the narrow gate.

Wide is the gate that leadeth to destruction, and many there are who go in thereat.

I feared all my works, knowing that Thou didst not spare the offender.

### 7.—THE FIRM CONFIDENCE OF THE JUST.

*Ro* 8, 18 The Spirit Himself giveth testimony to our spirit that we are the sons of God.

*Ro* 8, 35-39 Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall

1. Tribulation?
2. Or distress?
3. Or famine?
4. Or nakedness?
5. Or danger?
6. Or persecution?
7. Or the sword?

—But in all these things we overcome because of Him that hath loved us.—For I am sure that neither death nor life nor any other creature shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus.

Do manfully, and be of good heart: fear not, nor be ye dismayed at their sight: for the Lord thy God He

- Himself is thy Leader, and will not leave thee nor forsake thee.
- Ps* 28, 3 If armies in camp should stand together against me, my heart shall not fear. If a battle shall rise up against me, in this will I be confident.
- Is* 50, 7-9 The Lord God is my Helper, therefore am I not confounded: therefore have I set my face as a most hard rock, and I know that I shall not be confounded.—He is near that justifieth me: who will contend with me?—Behold, the Lord God is my Helper: who is he that shall condemn me?
- Ps* 117, 8 It is good to confide in the Lord, rather than to have confidence in man.
- Pv* 3, 5 Have confidence in the Lord with all thy heart, and lean not upon thy own prudence.
- Je* 17, 7 Blessed be the man that trusteth in the Lord, and the Lord shall be his confidence.
- Mi* 7, 7 I will look towards the Lord, I will wait for God my Saviour: my God will hear me.
- The Lord will hear me *Ps* 4, 4 when I shall cry unto Him.
- Christ Jesus our Lord.—*Ep* 3, 11-12 In Whom we have boldness and access with confidence by the faith of Him.
- I know Whom I have believed: and I am certain that He is able to keep that which I have committed unto Him against that day.
- Much peace have they that love Thy law, and to them there is no stumbling-block.
- Our glory is this, the testimony of our conscience. *2 C* 1, 12
- I will greatly rejoice in the Lord, and my soul shall be joyful in my God; for He hath clothed me with the garments of Salvation; and with the robe of justice He has covered me.
- How great is the multitude of Thy sweetness, O Lord, which Thou hast hidden for them that fear Thee! *Ps* 30, 20
- Do not lose your confidence, which hath a great reward. *He* 10, 35

## 8.—THE VAIN PRESUMPTION OF THE WICKED.

- Eci* 5, 3-6 Say not: How mighty I am? who shall bring me under for my deeds? for God will surely take revenge.—Say not: I have sinned, and what harm hath befallen me? for the Most High is a patient Rewarder.—Be not without fear about sin forgiven, and add not sin upon sin.—Say not: The mercy of the Lord is great, He will have mercy on the multitude of my sins.
- Mi* 3, 11 They leaned upon the Lord, saying: Is not the Lord in the midst of us? No evil shall come upon us.
- I shall have peace, and will walk on in the naughtiness of my heart. *Dt* 29, 19
- Come, let us take wine, and be filled with drunkenness: and it shall be as to-day, so also to-morrow, and much more. *Is* 56, 12
- Say not: God will have respect to the multitude of my gifts, and when I offer to the Most High God, He will accept of my offerings. *Eci* 7, 11
- O God, I give Thee thanks that I am not as the rest of men, extortioners, unjust, *Lu* 18, 11

adulterers, as also is this publican.

1 C 10, 12 Let him that thinketh himself to stand take heed, lest he fall.

Jb 21, 12 They take the timbrel and the harp, and rejoice at the sound of the organ. They spend their days in wealth, and in a moment they go down to hell.

Jo 3, 9 Who can tell if God will turn, and forgive?

Ac 8, 22 Do penance, and pray to God, if perhaps this thought of thy heart may be forgiven,

thee.

The hope of the wicked is as dust, which is blown away with the wind; and as a thin froth, which is dispersed by the storm; and a smoke that is scattered abroad by the wind; and as the remembrance of a guest of one day that passeth by.

W 5, 15

Destruction and unhappiness are in their ways; and the way of peace they have not known. There is no fear of God before their eyes.

P 13, 3

## PART III.

### ON MERIT.

**MERIT** is the value of a supernatural work, or the claim which it has upon God for reward. If the claim be based on the equality between the work and the reward, and on the promise of God to attach the reward to the work, then the merit is said to be "de condigno." But if equality between work and reward, or the promise of God to reward, be wanting, then the merit is said to be "de congruo" only; in other words, there is no claim upon God's *Justice*, but there is something to move God to confer the reward out of His exceeding *liberality*.

That a work be meritorious "de condigno," certain conditions are required on the part of the agent, on the part of the work itself, and on the part of God the Rewarder. On the part of the *agent* it is required that he should be (1) in statu viæ, (2) in a state of grace. On the part of the work, it is required that the work should be (1) free, (2) good, (3) supernatural as to its principle and as to its motive. On the part of God, in order

that such works should be "in actu secundo" meritorious, God's promise to reward them is necessary. That a work be meritorious "de congruo" it is necessary that it should be (1) performed by one who is "in statu viæ," (2) free, (3) good and of the supernatural order; but it is not necessary that the agent should be in a state of grace.

We conclude with a few words on the *object* of merit; or the supernatural gifts which may be merited.

And first as to *actual* grace as an object of merit: (a) The *first* actual grace is altogether *gratuitous*, and can be merited neither "de condigno" nor "de congruo." (b) Other actual graces can be merited neither "de condigno" nor "de congruo *infallibili*," but they can be merited "de congruo *fallibili*," and they can also be *infallibly* obtained by those who constantly and duly *pray* for them.

As to *habitual* grace: (a) The sinner cannot merit sanctifying grace "de condigno," but (b) he can merit it "de congruo." (c) The just man can merit "de condigno" the *increase* of sanctifying grace, but (d) he can merit neither "de condigno" nor "de congruo *infallibili*" *final perseverance*, though he can merit the same "de congruo *fallibili*."

As to *glory*: The just man can "de condigno" merit glory and also the increase of glory both *accidental* and *essential*.

As to meriting for *others*: (a) No one can merit "de condigno" for others any supernatural gift whatever, but (b) the just man can merit "de congruo" for others, *whatever* he can merit for *himself*, and, *in addition*, he can merit for others *first* grace.

To merit for another it is necessary that the good work should be specially offered for that purpose.

It is well to remember that, when the just man merits "de congruo" for another, the reward due to



himself "de condigno," for the same good work is in no respect diminished.

# 1.—THE INTEGRITY AND PERFECTION OF GOOD WORKS.

## I.

- P* 17, 21- The Lord will reward me in Heaven.  
 22, 24 according to my justice; and Be you perfect, as also *Mt* 5, 48  
 will repay me according to your Heavenly Father is perfect.  
 the cleanness of my hands.— Labour not for the meat *Jn* 6, 27  
 Because I have kept the which perisheth, but for that  
 ways of the Lord; and have which endureth unto Life  
 not done wickedly against Everlasting, which the Son  
 my God.—And I shall be of Man will give you.  
 spotless with Him; and shall  
 keep myself from my iniquity. Having your conversation *1 Pt* 2, 12  
*P* 118, 44 I shall always keep Thy good among the Gentiles;  
 Law, for ever and ever. that whereas they speak  
*P* 118, 101 I have restrained my feet against you as evil-doers,  
 from every evil way; that I they may by the good works  
 may keep Thy words. which they shall behold in  
 you, glorify God in the day  
 of visitation.

## II.

- Mt* 5, 16 So let your light shine God is not a respecter of *Ac* 10, 34-  
 before men that they may persons.—But in every nation he that feareth Him, 35  
 see your good works, and and worketh justice is  
 glorify your Father, Who is acceptable to Him.

# 2.—ACTIONS TO BE DONE NOT MERELY FROM NATURAL BUT ALSO FROM SUPERNATURAL MOTIVES, AND WITHOUT ADMIXTURE OF SIN.

## I.

- Ac* 24, 16 Therein do I endeavour to prepared that we should  
 have always a conscience walk in them.  
 without offence towards God, Charge the rich of this *1 Ty* 6, 17-  
 and towards man. world not to be high-minded, 19  
 or to trust in the uncertainty  
 of riches, but in the Living  
 God (Who giveth us abundantly all things to enjoy),—  
 As I also in all things please To do good, to be rich in good  
 all men. works.—To lay up in store  
 for themselves a good  
 foundation against the time  
 to come, that they may lay  
 hold on the true Life.  
*2 C* 6, 1, 3 We exhort you that you  
 receive not the grace of God  
 in vain,—Giving no offence  
 to any man, that our  
 Ministry be not blamed.  
*Ep* 2, 10 We are His workmanship,  
 created in Christ Jesus, in  
 good works, which God hath  
 justice with injustice? or

## II.

What participation hath *2 C* 6, 14

what fellowship hath light with darkness?

- 1 J 3, 6 Whosoever abideth in God, sinneth not; and whosoever sinneth, hath not seen Him.
- Jb 1, 22 In all these things Job sinned not by his lips.
- Jb 2, 3 A man simple, and upright,

and avoiding evil, and still keeping his innocence.

- These things have I suffered without the iniquity of my hand, when I offered pure prayers to God.
- If a virgin marry she hath not sinned.
- Jb 16, 18
- 1 C 7, 28

### 3.—THE GLORY OF HEAVEN THE REWARD OF GOOD WORKS.

- 1 C 15, 58 Be ye steadfast and unmovable; always abounding in the work of the Lord, knowing that your labour is not in vain in the Lord.
- He 6, 10 God is not unjust that He should forget your work, and the love which you have shown in His Name, you who have ministered to the Saints.
- He 10, 35 Do not lose your confidence, which hath a Great Reward.
- 2 Ti 4, 7-8 I have fought a great fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the Faith.—As for the rest, there is laid up for me a crown of justice, which the Lord the Just Judge will render me in that Day.
- 1 C 9, 24 Know you not that they that run in the race, all run indeed, but one receiveth the crown? So run that you may obtain.

The Son of man shall come in the glory of His Father, and will render to every man according to his works.

Thou treasurest up to thyself wrath, against the day of wrath, and revelation of the just judgment of God,—Who will render to every man according to his works.

They shall walk with Me in white because they are worthy.

Ro 2, 5-6

Ap 3, 4

If I do this thing willingly, I have a reward: but if against my will, a dispensation is committed to me.

Abide in Me, and I in you. As the branch cannot abide in the vine, so neither can you unless you abide in Me.

Jn 15, 4

Behold now is the acceptable time, behold now is the Day of Salvation.

2 C 6, 2

### 4.—INCREASING GRACE AND PROSPERITY FOLLOW ON GOOD WORKS.

- 1 Co 4, 18 The path of the just, as a shining light, goeth forwards and increaseth even to perfect day.
- Ro 6, 19 As you have yielded your members to serve uncleanness, and iniquity unto iniquity: so now yield your

members to serve justice, unto sanctification.

Let nothing hinder thee from praying always, and be not afraid to be justified, even to death.

Eci 18, 22

Fear the Lord, all ye His Saints, for there is no want

Ps 33, 10

- to them that fear Him.
- 1 Ti 4, 8 Godliness is profitable to all things, having promise of the life that now is, and of that which is to come.
- Every one that hath left *Mt* 19, 28 house, or lands, for My Name's sake, shall receive a hundredfold, and shall possess Life Everlasting.

5.—TO LOVE GOD IS TO OBEY GOD AND TO KEEP HIS COMMANDMENTS.

- I.
- Jn* 11, 15 If you love Me, keep My commandments.
- Jn* 11, 21 He that hath My commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth Me.
- Jn* 14, 23 If any one love Me, he will keep My Word.
- Jn* 15, 10 If you keep My commandments, you shall abide in My love: as I also have kept My Father's commandments, and do abide in His love.
- Jn* 15, 14 You are My friends if you do the things that I command you.
- Jn* 15, 2-3 I am the true Vine, and My Father is the Husbandman.—Every branch in Me that beareth not fruit, He will take away, and every one that beareth fruit, He will purge it, that it may bring forth more fruit.
- II.
- Jn* 14, 15, 20 If you love Me, keep My commandments.—He that hath My commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth Me: and he that loveth Me shall be loved of My Father, and I will love him, and will manifest Myself to him.
- 1 J 5, 3 This is the Charity of God: that we keep His commandments.
- W* 6, 19 Love is the keeping of His Law.
- Fear God and keep His *Ecl* 12, 13 commandments; for this is the whole man.
- Not every one that saith *Mt* 7, 21 to Me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven, but he that doth the Will of My Father Who is in Heaven, he shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven.
- My meat is to do the Will *Jn* 4, 34 of Him Who sent Me.
- Unless your justice abound *Mt* 5, 20 more than that of the Scribes and Pharisees, you shall not enter into the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Christ being consummated, He became to all that obey Him, the Cause of Eternal Salvation.
- By this, we know that we have known Him, if we keep His commandments.
- He who saith that he knoweth Him, and keepeth not His commandments, is a liar.
- He that saith he abideth in Him, ought himself also to walk, even as He walked.
- Love is the fulfilling of *Ro* 13, 10 the Law.
- What doth the Lord thy *Dt* 10, 12 God require of thee, but that thou fear the Lord thy God, and walk in His ways, and love Him, and serve the Lord thy God, with all thy heart, and with all thy soul?

## 6.—THE TEN COMMANDMENTS.

THE LORD SPOKE ALL THESE WORDS.

Ex 20, 1.

AND HE WROTE THEM

ON

TWO TABLES OF STONE,

WHICH HE DELIVERED UNTO MO.

Dt 5, 22.

*First Table of the Law.*

## FROM EXODUS.

## I.

Ex 20, 1-5 I am the Lord thy God,  
Who brought thee out of the  
land of Egypt, out of the  
house of bondage.—Thou  
shalt not have strange gods  
before Me.—Thou shalt not  
make to thyself a graven  
thing, nor the likeness of  
any thing

1. That is in heaven

above,

2. Or in the earth  
beneath,3. Nor of those things  
that are in the  
waters under the  
earth.Thou shalt not adore them,  
nor serve them.

## II.

Ex 20, 7 Thou shalt not take the  
Name of the Lord thy God  
in vain: for the Lord will  
not hold him guiltless that  
shall take the Name of the  
Lord his God in vain.

## III.

Ex 20, 8-11 Remember that thou keep  
holy the Sabbath Day.—  
Six days shalt thou labour,  
and shalt do all thy works.  
—But on the Seventh Day  
is the Sabbath of the Lord  
thy God: thou shalt do no  
work on it,

## FROM DEUTERONOMY.

## I.

I am the Lord thy God, Dt 5, 8-9  
Who brought thee out of the  
land of Egypt, out of the  
house of bondage.—Thou  
shalt not have strange gods  
in My sight.—Thou shalt not  
make to thyself a graven  
thing, nor the likeness of  
any things,

1. That are in heaven

above,

2. Or that are in the  
earth beneath,3. Or that abide in the  
waters under the  
earth.Thou shalt not adore them,  
and thou shalt not serve  
them.

## II.

Thou shalt not take the Dt 5, 11  
Name of the Lord thy God  
in vain: for he shall not be  
unpunished that taketh His  
Name upon a vain thing.

## III.

Observe the Day of the Dt 5, 12-15  
Sabbath, to sanctify it, as  
the Lord thy God hath com-  
manded thee.—Six days  
shalt thou labour, and shalt  
do all thy works.—The  
Seventh is the Day of the  
Sabbath, that is, the Rest of

1. Thou
2. Nor thy son,
3. Nor thy daughter,
4. Nor thy man-servant,
5. Nor thy maid-servant,
6. Nor thy beast,
7. Nor the stranger that is within thy gates.

For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all things that are in them, and rested on the Seventh Day: therefore the Lord blessed the Seventh Day, and sanctified it.

the Lord thy God. Thou shalt not do any work therein,

1. Thou
2. Nor thy son,
3. Nor thy daughter,
4. Nor thy man-servant,
5. Nor thy maid-servant,
6. Nor thy ox,
7. Nor thy ass,
8. Nor any of thy beasts,
9. Nor the stranger that is within thy gates:

That thy man-servant and thy maid-servant may rest, even as thyself.—Remember that thou also didst serve in Egypt, and the Lord thy God

brought thee out from thence with a strong hand, and stretched-out arm. Therefore hath He commanded thee that thou shouldst observe the Sabbath Day.

### *Second Table of the Law.*

#### IV.

*Ex* 20, 12 Honour thy father and thy mother, that thou mayst be long-lived upon the Land which the Lord thy God will give thee.

#### IV.

Honour thy father and mother, as the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, that thou mayst live a long time, and it may be well with thee in the Land which the Lord thy God will give thee.

#### V.

*Ex* 20, 13 Thou shalt not kill.

#### V.

Thou shalt not kill. *Dt* 5, 17

#### VI.

*Ex* 20, 14 Thou shalt not commit adultery.

#### VI.

Neither shalt thou commit adultery. *Dt* 5, 18

#### VII.

*Ex* 20, 15 Thou shalt not steal.

#### VII.

And thou shalt not steal. *Dt* 5, 19

#### VIII.

*Ex* 20, 16 Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour.

#### VIII.

Neither shalt thou bear false witness against thy neighbour. *Dt* 5, 20

#### IX.

*Ex* 20, 17 Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house:

#### IX.

Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's wife: *Dt* 5, 21

#### X.

*Ex* 20, 18 Neither shalt thou desire his wife, nor his servant, nor

#### X.

Nor his house, nor his field, nor his man-servant, *Dt* 5, 21

his handmaid, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor any thing that is his.	nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor any thing that is his.
---	---

*Appendix to each of the Commandments.*

FROM EXODUS.

*Ex* 20, 5-6 I am the Lord thy God, Mighty, Jealous, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate Me:—And showing mercy unto thousands to them that love Me, and keep My Commandments.

FROM DEUTERONOMY.

I am the Lord thy God, *Dt* 5, 9-10 a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon their children unto the third and fourth generation to them that hate Me,—And showing mercy unto many thousands to them that love Me, and keep My Commandments.

7.—GOD STRICTLY REQUIRES THE KEEPING OF HIS  
COMMANDMENTS.

- |                      |  |   |
|----------------------|--|---|
| <i>Mt</i> 19, 17     | If thou wilt enter into Life, keep the commandments.   | ments, and thou shalt live.   |
| <i>1 K</i> 13, 13-14 | Thou hast done foolishly, and hast not kept the commandments of the Lord thy God.—Therefore thy kingdom shall not continue.  | This do, and thou shalt live.   |
| <i>1 C</i> 2, 9      | Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither hath it entered into the heart of man, what things God hath prepared for them that love Him.   | God will render to every man according to His works.—To them indeed, who according to patience in good work, seek glory, and honour, and incorruption, Eternal Life.  |
| <i>Mt</i> 11, 28-30  | Come to Me, all you that labour, and are burdened, and I will refresh you.—Take up My yoke upon you, and learn of Me, because I am meek and humble of heart, and you shall find rest for your souls.—For My yoke is sweet and My burden light. | —But to them that are contentious, and who obey not the truth, but give credit to iniquity, wrath, and indignation.   |
| <i>Ma</i> 1, 6       | The son honoureth the father, and the servant his master: if then I be a Father, where is My honour? and if I be a Master, where is My fear?   | I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and will give you a heart of flesh.—And I will put My Spirit in the midst of you, and I will cause you to walk in My commandments, and to keep My judgments, and do them. |
| <i>Pv</i> 7, 2       | Son, keep My command-  | In the head of the Book <i>Pv</i> 39, 8-9 it is written of Me—That I should do Thy Will. O my God, I have desired it, and Thy Law in the midst of my heart.   |
|                      |  | You have not chosen Me, <i>Jn</i> 15, 16  |

but I have chosen you ; that bring forth fruit ; and your  
you should go, and should fruit should remain.

8.—THE LIBERTY OF THE SONS OF GOD CLASHES  
NOT WITH FILIAL SUBJECTION ; NO SIN  
WITHOUT FREE ACT OF THE WILL.

## I.

*Ga* 5, 13 You, brethren, have been called unto liberty : only make not liberty an occasion to the flesh. *I* than honey in my mouth. I have been delighted in *P* 118, 14 the way of Thy Testimonies as in all riches.

*1 Pt* 2, 16 As free, and not as making liberty a cloak for malice, but as the servants of God.

*2 C* 3, 17 Where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty.

*Ro* 6, 20, 22 When you were the servants of sin, you were free men to justice.—But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, you have your fruit unto sanctification, and the end Life Everlasting.

*Ja* 6, 38 I came down from Heaven not to do My Own Will, but the Will of Him that sent Me.

*P* 61, 1-2 Shall not my soul be subject to God ? for from Him is my Salvation.—For He is my God and my Saviour ; He is My Protector, I shall be moved no more.

*P* 118, 103 How sweet are Thy Words to my palate ! more

## II.

My son, hast thou sinned ? *Eci* 21, 1 Do so no more.

Go not after thy lusts. *Eci* 18, 30 Behold, thou art made *Jn* 5, 14 whole : sin no more.

Awake, ye just, and sin *1 C* 15, 34 not.

Let not sin reign in your mortal body, so as to obey the lusts thereof. *Ro* 6, 12

Every man is tempted *Ja* 1, 14 by his own concupiscence, being drawn away and allured.

Then when concupiscence hath conceived, it bringeth forth sin. *Ja* 1, 15

If we sin wilfully after having received the knowledge of the Truth, there is now left no sacrifice for sin. *He* 10, 26-27 —But a certain dreadful expectation of judgment.

(See p. 183.)

9.—GOD'S COMMANDMENTS ARE POSSIBLE IN  
PRACTICE ; CHARITY, THE FULFILMENT OF  
THE LAW, IS NOT LOST BY SLIGHT FAILINGS.

## I.

*P* 3, 21-22 Keep the Law and counsel :—And there shall be life to thy soul, and grace to thy mouth.

*Eci* 44, 20, 22 There was not found the like to Abraham in glory,

who kept the Law of the Most High, and was in covenant with Him.—Therefore by an oath He gave him glory in his posterity.

I can do all things in Him *P* 4, 13 Who strengtheneth me.

- Ge* 6, 9    Noe was a just and perfect man in his generation, he walked with God.    All these have I kept from my youth. *Mt* 19, 20
- Ge* 17, 1    The Lord said unto him: Walk before Me, and be perfect.    Remember how I have walked before Thee in Truth, and with a perfect heart. *Is* 38, 3
- Dt* 30, 11    This commandment which I command thee is not above thee.    My yoke is sweet and My burden light. *Mt* 11, 30
- Jr* 11, 16    He [Josue] accomplished all: he left not one thing undone of all the commandments which the Lord had commanded Moses.    This is the Charity of God, that we keep His commandments: and His commandments are not heavy. *1 J* 5, 3
- 3 K* 14, 8    My servant David kept My commandments, and followed Me with all his heart.    I have run the way of Thy commandments. *Ps* 118, 32
- 4 K* 23, 3    The king [Josias] stood upon the step and made a covenant with the Lord to walk after the Lord and to keep His commandments, and His testimonies, and His ceremonies with all their heart and with all their soul.    Give me understanding, and I will search Thy Law, and I will keep it with my whole heart. *Ps* 118, 34
- Ps* 17, 22    I have kept the ways of the Lord and have not done wickedly against my God.    II.  
He that loveth His neighbour, hath fulfilled the Law. *Ro* 13, 8
- Es* 36, 27    I will put My Spirit in the midst of you, and I will cause you to walk in My commandments, and to keep my judgments, and do them.    We know that we have passed from death to life, because we love the brethren; He that loveth not, abideth in death. *1 J* 3, 14
- 3 K* 14, 8    Thou hast not been as My servant David, who kept My commandments, and followed Me, with all his heart, doing that which was well-pleasing in My sight.    He that keepeth His Word, in him in very deed the Charity of God is perfected. *1 J* 2, 5
- Lx* 1, 6    They were both just before God, walking in all the commandments and justifications of the Lord without blame.    Let us therefore, as many as are perfected, be thus minded. *Ph* 3, 15
- 3 K* 14, 8    Thou hast not been as My servant David, who kept My commandments, and followed Me, with all his heart, doing that which was well-pleasing in My sight.    I am sure that neither death nor life, nor angels, nor principalities,—Nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God. *Ro* 8, 38 39
- Lx* 1, 6    They were both just before God, walking in all the commandments and justifications of the Lord without blame.    A just man shall fall seven times, and shall rise again; but the wicked shall fall down into evil. (*See page 280.*) *Pv* 24, 16

## 10.—ON PRAYER.

- Ps* 36, 7    Be subject to the Lord and pray to Him.    dom, let him ask of God, Whogiveth to all abundantly, and upbraideth not: and it
- Ja* 1, 5-7    If any of you want wis-



shall be given him.—But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering : for he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea, that is moved and carried about by the wind.—Therefore, let not that man think that he shall receive anything of the Lord.

*Pr* 33, 16, 18 The eyes of the Lord are upon the just : and His ears unto their prayers.—The just cried, and the Lord heard them : and delivered them out of all their troubles.

*Mt* 28, 44 Christ leaving them, went again : and He prayed the third time, saying the self-same word.

*2 Tl* 1, 11 We pray always for you : that our God would make you worthy of His calling, and fulfil all the good pleasure of His goodness and the work of faith in power.

*Mt* 21, 22 All things whatsoever you shall ask in prayer, believing, you shall receive.

*1 Ti* 4, 4-5 Every creature of God is good, and nothing to be rejected that is received with thanksgiving:—For it is sanctified by the Word of God and prayer.

*Je* 3, 22 Behold we come to Thee, for Thou art the Lord our God.

*Da* 9, 3, 17 I set my face to the Lord my God, to pray and make supplication with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes.—O our God, hear the supplication of Thy servant, and his prayers : and show Thy face upon Thy Sanctuary which is desolate, for Thy own sake.

*Eccl* 37, 19 Pray to the Most High, that He may direct thy way

in truth.

For thy former sins also *Ecc* 20, 1 pray that they may be forgiven thee.

Again I say to you, that if *Mt* 18, 19-20 two of you shall agree upon earth, concerning any thing whatsoever they shall ask, it shall be done for them by My Father Who is in Heaven.—For where there are two or three gathered together in My Name, there am I in the midst of them.

He said to them : The *Lk* 10, 2 harvest indeed is great, but the labourers are few. Pray ye therefore the Lord of the harvest, that He send labourers into His harvest.

And now, O Lord Almighty, *Ba* 3, 1, 3 the God of Israel, the soul in anguish, and the troubled spirit crieth to Thee.—For Thou remainest for ever, and shall we perish everlastingly?

This is the confidence which *1 J* 5, 14-15 we have in Him : that whatsoever we shall ask, according to His will, He heareth us.—And we know that He heareth us, whatsoever we ask : we know that we have the petitions which we request of Him.

Thou shalt pray to Him, *Jb* 22, 27 and He will hear thee.

Do not multiply to speak *1 K* 2, 3 lofty things, boasting : let old matters depart from your mouth : for the Lord is a God of all knowledge, and to Him are thoughts prepared.

Far from me be this sin *1 K* 12, 23 against the Lord, that I should cease to pray for you.

For the Lord will be *Pr* 134, 14 entreated in favour of His servants.

You that are mindful of *Is* 62, 6-7

the Lord, hold not your

peace,—And give Him no  
silence till He establish, and  
till He make Jerusalem a  
praise in the earth.

*Is* 43, 7 Every one that calleth  
upon My Name, I have  
created him for My glory, I  
have formed him, and made  
him.

*Ps* 118, 147 I prevented the dawning  
of the day, and cried: be-  
cause in Thy words I very  
much hoped.

*Ps* 60, 10 In what day soever I shall  
call upon Thee, behold I  
know Thou art my God.

*Ps* 144, 18 The Lord is nigh unto all  
them that call upon Him: to  
all that call upon Him in  
truth.

*Eci* 2, 12 Who hath called upon  
Him, and He despised him?  
—For God is a Protector to  
all that seek Him in truth.

*Eci* 3, 4 He that loveth God, shall  
obtain pardon of his sins by  
prayer, and shall refrain  
himself from them, and shall  
be heard in the prayer of  
days.

*Eci* 7, 10 Neglect not to pray, and  
to give alms.

*Eci* 17, 22 Make thy prayer before  
the face of the Lord, and

offend less.

(See p. 370.)

#### IMPORTUNITY IN PRAYER.

He spoke also a parable to *Lu* 18, 1-2  
them, that we ought always  
to pray, and not to faint.—  
Saying:

\*

There was a judge in a cer- *Lu* 18, 2-3  
tain city, who feared not God,  
nor regarded man.—And  
there was a certain widow in  
that city, and she came to him,  
saying: Avenge me of my  
adversary.

\*

And he would not for a *Lu* 18, 4-5  
long time. But afterward  
he said within himself: Al-  
though I fear not God, nor  
regard man,—Yet because  
this widow is troublesome to  
me, I will avenge her, lest  
continually coming she weary  
me.

\*

And the Lord said: Hear *Lu* 18, 6-8  
what the unjust judge saith:  
—And will not God revenge  
His elect who cry to Him  
day and night: and will He  
have patience in their regard?  
—I say to you that He will  
quickly revenge them.

#### 11.—FASTING AND ABSTINENCE.

*Da* 10, 3 I eat no desirable bread,  
and neither flesh, nor wine  
entered into my mouth.

*Nu* 6, 2 When a man, or woman,  
shall make a vow to be sanc-  
tified, and will consecrate  
themselves to the Lord, they  
shall abstain from wine and  
from everything that can  
make a man drunk.

*Za* 8, 19 The fast of the fourth  
month, and the fast of the

fifth, and the fast of the  
seventh, and the fast of the  
tenth shall be to the House  
of Juda, joy and gladness,  
and great solemnities.

Can the children of the *Mt* 9, 15  
Bridegroom mourn, as long  
as the Bridegroom is with  
them? But the days will  
come when the Bridegroom  
shall be taken away from  
them: and then they shall

- fast.
- 1 C 8, 13** If meat scandalise my brother I will never eat flesh.
- Eci 34, 31** A man that fasteth for his sins, and doth the same again, what doth his humbling himself profit him? Who will hear his prayer?
- Za 7, 5** When you fasted and mourned did you keep a fast to Me?
- To 12, 8** Prayer is good with fasting and alms, more than to lay up treasures of gold.
- Ro 12, 1** I beseech you, by the mercy of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, pleasing unto God, your reasonable service.
- Jd 4, 11** Know ye that the Lord will hear your prayers, if you continue with perseverance in fastings and prayers in the sight of the Lord.
- Why have we fasted, and Thou hast not regarded? have we humbled our souls, and Thou hast not taken notice? Behold in the day of your fast your own will is found, and you exact of all your debtors.
- As they were ministering to the Lord, and fasting, the Holy Ghost said to them: Separate Me Saul and Barnabas for the work whereunto I have taken them.—Then they fasting and praying, and imposing their hands upon them, sent them away.
- When they had ordained to them — Priests in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord in Whom they believed. (*See pages 441 and 784.*)
- Is 58, 3*
- Ac 13, 2-3*
- Ac 14, 22*

## 12.—ON VOWS.

- Ps 75, 12** Vow ye and pay to the Lord your God.
- Jb 22, 27** Thou shalt pay thy vows.
- Le 27, 28** Anything that is devoted to the Lord, whether it be man, or beast, or field, shall not be sold, neither may it be redeemed. Whatsoever is once consecrated shall be holy of holies to the Lord.
- Ac 18, 18** Paul when he had stayed yet many days, taking his leave of the brethren, sailed thence into Syria, having shorn his head in Cenchrea. For he had a vow.
- Ps 21, 26** I will pay my vows in the sight of them that fear Him.
- Ps 15, 8** The victims of the wicked are abominable to the Lord: the vows of the just are acceptable. (*See page 385.*)
- If any man make a vow to the Lord, or bind himself by an oath: he shall not make his word void, but shall fulfil all that he promised.
- When thou hast made a vow to the Lord thy God, thou shalt not delay to pay it: because the Lord thy God will require it. And if thou delay, it shall be imputed to thee for a sin.—If thou wilt not promise, thou shalt be without sin.—But that which is once gone out of thy lips, thou shalt observe, and shalt do as thou hast promised to the Lord thy God, and hast spoken with thy own will and with thy own mouth.
- Nu 30, 3*
- Dt 23, 21-23*

### 13.—VOCATION TO THE PRIESTHOOD AND TO THE RELIGIOUS STATE.

- Pr 64, 5** Blessed is he whom Thou hast chosen, and taken to Thee : he shall dwell in Thy Courts.
- Mt 19, 21** If thou wilt be perfect, go sell what thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in Heaven ; and come, follow Me.
- Mt 19, 27** Behold we have left all things, and have followed Thee : what therefore shall we have ?
- 1 K 3, 9** Here am I : for Thou didst call me. Speak, Lord, for Thy servant heareth.
- Lu 8, 38-39** The man out of whom the devils were departed, besought Him that he might be with Him. But Jesus sent him away, saying :—Return to thy house, and tell how great things God hath done to thee. And he went through the whole city, publishing how great things Jesus had done to him.
- Lu 9, 59-62** He said to another : Follow Me, and he said : Lord, suffer me first to go, and bury my father.—And Jesus said to him : Let the dead bury their dead : but go thou, and preach the Kingdom of God.—And another said : I will follow Thee, Lord, but let me first take my leave of them that are at my house.—Jesus said to him : No man putting his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the Kingdom of God.
- Mt 10, 17, 19-22** When He was gone forth into the way, a certain man running up and kneeling before Him, asked Him, Good Master, what shall I do that I may receive Life Everlasting ?—Thou knowest the commandments,
1. Do not commit adultery,
  2. Do not kill,
  3. Do not steal,
  4. Bear not false witness,
  5. Do no fraud,
  6. Honour thy father and mother.
- But he answering, said to Him: Master, all these things I have observed from my youth.—And Jesus looking on him, loved him, and said to him : One thing is wanting unto thee : go, sell whatsoever thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in Heaven : and come, follow Me.—Who, being struck sad at that saying, went away sorrowful : for he had great possessions.
- It came to pass in those **Lu 6, 12-13** days, that He [Jesus] went out into a mountain to pray, and He passed the whole night in the prayer of God.—And when day was come, He called unto Him His disciples ; and He chose twelve of them (whom also He named Apostles).
- You have not chosen Me : **Jn 15, 16,** but I have chosen you : and have appointed you, that you should go, and should bring forth fruit : and your fruit should remain : that whatsoever you shall ask of the Father in My Name He may give it you.—Follow Me.

- Jn* 21, 21- Lord, and what shall this  
22 man do?—Jesus saith to him: So I will have him to remain till I come, what is it to thee? follow thou Me.
- Ac* 5, 29 We ought to obey God rather than men.
- 1 Tm* 1, 12 I give Him thanks, Who hath strengthened me, even to Christ Jesus our Lord, for that He hath counted me faithful, putting me in the Ministry.
- Ge* 12, 1 The Lord said to Abram: Go forth out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and out of thy father's house, and come into the Land which I shall show thee.
- Mt* 19, 29 Every one that hath left house, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for My Name's sake, shall receive an hundred fold, and shall possess Life Everlasting.
- Mt* 19, 11- There are eunuchs who  
12 have made themselves eunuchs for the Kingdom of Heaven.—He that can take, let him take it.
- Is* 43, 1 Fear not, for I have redeemed thee, and have called thee by thy name: thou art Mine.
- Mt* 8, 20 The foxes have holes, and the birds of the air, nests: but the Son of man hath not where to lay His Head.
- Lk* 5, 27- After these things He  
28 went forth, and saw a publican named Levi, sitting at the receipt of custom, and He said to him: Follow Me.—And leaving all things, he rose up and followed Him.
- Mk* 1, 16- Passing by the sea of Galilee, He saw Simon and Andrew his brother, casting nets into the sea (for they were fishermen).—And Jesus said to them: Come after Me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.—And immediately, leaving their nets, they followed Him.—And going on from thence a little farther, He saw James the son of Zebedee, and John his brother, who also were mending their nets in the ship.—And forthwith He called them. And leaving their father Zebedee in the ship with his hired men, they followed Him.
- I would that all men were even as myself; but every one hath his proper gift from God; one after this manner, and another after that.
- All they that believed were together, and had all things common.—Their possessions and goods they sold, and divided them to all, according as every one had need.
- If any man will come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow Me.
- It is good for me to die, rather than that any man should make my glory void.—For if I preach the Gospel, it is no glory to me, for a necessity lieth upon me.
- What then is my reward? That preaching the Gospel, I may deliver the Gospel without charge.
- Religion clean and undefiled before God and the Father is this: to visit the fatherless and widows in their tribulation; and to keep oneself unspotted from this world.
- He obeyed, and went out, not knowing whither.

1 C 7, 7

*Ac* 2, 44-45*Mt* 16, 24

1 C 9, 15-16

1 C 9, 18

*Ja* 1, 27*He* 11, 8

## 14.—ON ALMSGIVING.

- Po* 21, 13 He that stoppeth his ear against the cry of the poor shall also cry himself, and shall not be heard. whom thou dost it, and there shall be much thanks for thy good deeds.
- Eci* 4, 2 Despise not the hungry soul: and provoke not the poor in his want. Deal thy bread to the hungry, and bring the needy and the harbourless into thy house: and when thou shalt see one naked, cover him, and despise not thy own flesh.—Then shall thy light break forth as the morning, and thy health shall speedily arise, and thy justice shall go before thy face, and the glory of the Lord shall gather thee up.—Then shalt thou call, and the Lord shall hear: thou shalt cry, and He shall say: Here I am.
- Po* 19, 17 He that hath mercy on the poor lendeth to the Lord: and He will repay him. Give to the merciful and uphold not the sinner.— 23
- De* 15, 7-8, 10-11 If one of thy brethren that dwelleth within the gates of thy city come to poverty: thou shalt not harden thy heart, nor close thy hand,—But shalt open it to the poor man.—Thou shalt give to him: neither shalt thou do anything craftily in relieving his necessities: that the Lord thy God may bless thee at all times, and in all things to which thou shalt put thy hand.—There will not be wanting poor in the land of thy habitation: therefore I command thee to open thy hand to thy needy and poor brother, that liveth in the land. After thou hast given, upbraid not.
- Te* 4, 7 Give alms out of thy substance; and turn not away thy face from any poor person, for so it shall come to pass that the face of the Lord shall not be turned from thee. Do good to thy friend before thou die.
- Eci* 17, 18 The alms of a man is as a signet with him, and shall preserve the grace of a man as the apple of the eye. Give to every one that asketh thee.—Give, and it shall be given to you: good measure, and pressed down, and shaken together, and running over, shall they give into your bosom, for with the same measure that you shall mete withal, it shall be measured to you again.
- Eci* 7, 10, 36 Neglect not to pray, and to give alms.—Stretch out thy hand to the poor, that thy expiation and thy blessing may be perfected. Remember the word of the Lord Jesus, how He said: It is more blessed to give, than to receive.
- Eci* 12, 1 If thou do good, know to whom thou dost it, and there shall be much thanks for thy good deeds. If I should distribute all my goods to feed the poor, and if I should deliver my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing.
- Blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.
- If any of the faithful have 1 *Te* 5, 16

widows, let him relieve them. *Ja 2, 15-16* If a brother or sister be naked, and want daily food : —And one of you say to them : Go in peace, be you warmed and filled ; yet give them not those things that are necessary for the body, what shall it profit ? If thy enemy be hungry, *Ro 12, 20* give him to eat ; if he thirst, give him to drink. (See *page 300.*)

## THE FOUR LAST THINGS.

## PART IV.

## ON DEATH AND THE RESURRECTION.

ADAM came from the hands of God immortal, not only as to soul, but also as to *body*. "God created man incorruptible."\* Nevertheless, Adam's immortality of body was not a consequence of his *nature*. It was a *gratuitous* gift of God. "But, by the envy of the devil, death came into this world;" † for Adam, sinning, forfeited for himself and for the entire human race not only the supernatural but also the *preternatural* gifts which he enjoyed, and amongst his preternatural gifts was *bodily* immortality.

Death thus became the certain lot of the human race. But, though death be certain, the time of death is uncertain. "You know not the day nor the hour." ‡ The time of death is left uncertain, according to Pope S. Gregory, § "in order that we may be always apprehensive of death," and "may without intermission prepare for it." "To *fear* death *before* it comes," concludes S. Gregory, "is to *conquer* it *when* it comes."

## 1.—MEDITATIONS ON DEATH.

## SUNDAY.

<p><i>ALL MUST DIE. DEATH THE ORDERING OF GOD.</i></p> <p><i>Ge 2, 17</i> In what day soever thou shalt eat of it, thou shalt die</p>	<p>the death.</p> <p>In the sweat of thy face <i>Ge 3, 19</i> shalt thou eat bread till thou return to the earth out of which thou wast taken ; for</p>
---	---

\* Wisdom 2, 23.    † Ibid. 24.    ‡ Matthew 26, 13.    § Hom. 13, in Evang.

- dust thou art, and into dust thou shalt return.
- He 9, 27* It is appointed for men once to die, and after this the judgment.
- Ecl 38, 23* Yesterday for me, and to-day for thee.
- 1 C 15, 22* As in Adam all die, so also in Christ all shall be made alive.
- Jb 10, 9* Thou hast made me as the clay, and Thou wilt bring me into dust again.
- Jb 14, 20* Thou hast strengthened him for a little while, that he may pass away for ever. Thou shalt change his face, and shall send him away.
- Jb 30, 23* I know that Thou wilt deliver me to death, where a house is appointed for every one that liveth.
- Is 40, 6-7* The voice of one, saying : Cry; and I said : What shall I cry ? All flesh is grass, and all the glory thereof as the flower of the field.—The grass is withered and the flower is fallen, because the Spirit of the Lord hath blown upon it. Indeed the people is grass.
- Jb 21, 32-33* He shall be brought to the graves, and shall watch in the heap of the dead.—He hath been acceptable to the gravel of Cocytus, and he shall draw every man after him, and there are innumerable before him.
- Ps 88, 49* Who is the man that shall live and not see death ?
- Ecl 1, 4* One generation passeth away, and another generation cometh : but the earth standeth for ever.
- Ecl 6, 6* Although he lived two thousand years, and hath not enjoyed good things : do not all make haste to one place ?
- It is not in man's power to stop the spirit, neither hath he power to the day of death.
- Your fathers, where are they ? And the Prophets, shall they live always ?
- The others indeed were made many Priests, because by reason of death they were not suffered to continue.
- We all die, and like waters that return no more, we fall down into the earth.
- O forgive me, that I may be refreshed before I go hence and be no more.
- Thou shalt take away their breath, and they shall fail and shall return to their dust.
- [There is] a time to die — Therefore the death of man and of beasts is one, and the condition of them both is equal : as man dieth, so they also die, all things breathe alike, and man hath nothing more than beast : all things are subject to vanity.—And all things go to one place : of earth they were made, and into earth they return together.
- As he came forth naked from his mother's womb, so shall he return, and shall take nothing away with him of his labour.
- The living know that they shall die, but the dead know nothing more, neither have they a reward any more : for the memory of them is forgotten.
- As by one man sin entered into this world, and by sin death ; and so death passed upon all men in whom all have
- Ecl 8, 8*
- Za 1, 5*
- He 7, 23*
- 2 K 14, 14*
- Ps 38, 14*
- Ps 103, 9*
- Ecl 3, 2, 19-20*
- Jb 5, 14*
- Ecl 9, 5*
- Ro 5, 12-14*



sinned.—But death reigned from Adam unto Moses, even over them who have not sinned after the similitude of the transgression of Adam: who is a figure of Him Who was to come.

*Ro* 8, 10 The body is dead because of sin.

*1 C* 15, 21—By a man came death.  
22, 26 —In Adam all died.—The enemy death shall be destroyed last.

*1 C* 15, 56 The sting of death is sin.

*He* 9, 27 It is appointed unto men, once to die.

*Ja* 1, 10—As the flower of the grass shall he pass away.—For the sun rose with a burning heat, and parched the grass, and the flower thereof fell off, and the beauty of the shape thereof perished; so also shall the rich man fade away in his ways.

### MONDAY.

AN APPOINTED TIME TO DIE;  
PREPARATION FOR DEATH.

*Jb* 14, 5 The days of man are short, and the number of his months is with Thee: Thou hast appointed his bounds, which cannot be passed.

*Ps* 38, 5 O Lord, make me know my end, and what is the number of my days: that I may know what is wanting to me.

*4 K* 20, 1 Thus saith the Lord God: Give charge concerning thy house, for thou shalt die and not live.

*Je* 13, 16 Give ye glory to the Lord your God, before it be dark, and before your feet stumble upon the dark mountains: you shall look for light, and He will turn it into the shadow of death, and into darkness.

It is not in man's power to stop the spirit, neither hath he power in the day of death.

*Ecl* 8, 8

Our years shall be considered as a spider: the days of our years in them are three-score and ten years. But if in the strong they be four-score years: and what is more of them is labour and sorrow.

*Ps* 89, 9

Seek not death in the error of your life, neither procure ye destruction by the works of your hands.—For God made not death, neither hath He pleasure in the destruction of the living.

*Jb* 7, 1-2

The life of man upon earth is a warfare, and his days are like the days of a hireling.—As a servant longeth for the shade, and as the hireling looketh for the end of his work.

Shall man that is dead, thinkest thou, live again?

*Jb* 14, 16

all the days in which I am now in warfare, I expect until my change come.—Thou shalt call me, and I will answer Thee: to the work of Thy Hands Thou shalt reach out Thy right Hand.—Thou indeed hast numbered my steps, but spare my sins.

I will add to thy days fifteen years: and I will deliver thee and this City out of the hand of the king of the Assyrians, and I will protect this City for My own sake, and for David Thy servant's sake.

*Is* 38, 5

Go and say to Ezechias: Thus saith the Lord the God of David thy father: I have heard thy prayer, and I have

- seen thy tears: behold I will add to thy days fifteen years.
- Ge* 5, 27 All the days of Mathusala were nine hundred and sixty-nine years, and he died.
- 1 K* 20, 3 There is but one step between me (as I may say) and death.
- 2 K* 12, 23 Now that he is dead, why should I fast? Shall I be able to bring him back any more? I shall go to him rather: but he shall not return to me.
- Ecd* 11, 7-8 The light is sweet, and it is delightful for the eyes to see the sun.—If a man live many years, and have rejoiced in them all, he must remember the darksome time.
- Lu* 12, 37 Blessed are those servants, whom the Lord, when He cometh, shall find watching.
- Jn* 9, 4 I must work the works of Him that sent Me, whilst it is day: the night cometh when no man can work.
- 1 Pt* 1, 17 Converse in fear during the time of your sojourning here.
- TUESDAY.**
- BREVITY OF LIFE.**
- Jb* 16, 23 Behold, short years pass away, and I am walking in a path by which I shall not return.
- 1 P* 29, 15 We are sojourners before Thee, and strangers, as were all our fathers. Our days upon earth are as a shadow, and there is no stay.
- Jb* 7, 6 My days have passed more swiftly than the web is cut by the weaver, and are consumed without any hope.
- Jb* 7, 7 Remember that my life is but wind, and my eye shall not return to see good things.
- My days have been *Jb* 9, 25-26 swifter than a post: they have fled away and have not seen good.—They have passed by as ships carrying fruits, as an eagle flying to the prey.
- Shall not the fewness of my days be ended shortly? Suffer me, therefore, that I may lament my sorrow a little.
- Man, born of a woman, *Jb* 14, 1-3 living for a short time, is filled with many miseries.—He cometh forth like a flower and is destroyed, and fleeth as a shadow, and never continueth in the same state.—And dost thou think it meet to open thy eyes upon such a one, and to bring him into judgment with thee?
- As a dream that fleeth *Jb* 20, 8 away he shall not be found, he shall pass as a vision of the night.
- Behold Thou hast made *Pt* 38, 6 my days measurable: and my substance is as nothing before Thee.
- The time is short: it remaineth that they that weep *1 C* 7, 30-31 be as though they wept not, and they that rejoice as if they rejoiced not:—And they that use this world, as if they used it not: for the fashion of this world passeth away.
- We have not here a lasting City, but we seek one that is to come.
- Man is like to vanity: his days pass away like a shadow. *Pt* 143, 4
- WEDNESDAY.**
- FRAILTY AND UNCERTAINTY OF LIFE.**
- My strength is not the *Jb* 6, 12

- strength of stones, nor is my flesh of brass.
- Jb 4, 17-19* Shall man be justified in comparison of God, or shall a man be more pure than his Maker?—Behold they that serve Him are not steadfast, and in His Angels He found wickedness:—How much more shall they that dwell in houses of clay, who have an earthly foundation, be consumed as with the moth?
- Jb 13, 12* Your remembrance shall be compared to ashes, and your necks shall be brought to clay.
- Jb 13, 28* I am to be consumed as rottenness, and as a garment that is moth-eaten.
- Jb 17, 1* My spirit shall be wasted, my days shall be shortened, and only the grave remaineth for me.
- Ps 89, 14-16* He knoweth our frame. He remembereth that we are dust:—Man's days are as grass, as the flower of the field so shall he flourish.—For the spirit shall pass in him, and he shall not be: and he shall know his place no more.
- Ps 143, 3-4* Lord, what is man, that Thou art made known to him? or the son of man, that Thou makest account of him?—Man is like to vanity: his days pass away like a shadow.
- Ps 89, 4-6* A thousand years in Thy sight are as yesterday which is past, and as a watch in the night,—As things that are counted nothing shall their years be.—In the morning man shall grow up like grass, in the morning he shall flourish and pass away: in the evening he shall fall,
- grow dry, and wither.
- Remember thy Creator in *Ec 12, 1, 6-7* the days of thy youth, before the time of affliction come, and the years draw nigh of which thou shalt say: They please me not.
1. Before the silver cord be broken,
  2. And the golden fillet shrink back,
  3. And the pitcher be crushed at the fountain,
  4. And the wheel be broken upon the cistern,
  5. And the dust return into its earth, from whence it was,
  6. And the spirit return to God, Who gave it.
- All flesh is as grass: and *1 Pt 1, 24* all the glory thereof as the flower of grass. The grass is withered, and the flower thereof is fallen away.
- Thou seest that I am old, *Ge 27, 2* and know not the day of my death.
- Thy life shall be as it were *Dt 28, 68-69* hanging before thee. Thou shalt fear night and day, neither shalt thou trust thy life.—In the morning thou shalt say: Who will grant me evening? and at evening: Who will grant me morning?
- My soul is continually in *Ps 118, 109* my hands: and I have not forgotten Thy Law.
- Boast not for to-morrow, *Pv 27, 1* for thou knowest not what the day to come may bring forth.
- Behold now, you that say: *Ja 4, 13-14* To-day or to-morrow we will go into such a city, and there we will spend a year, and

will traffic, and make our gain.—Whereas you know not what shall be on the morrow.

*Is 4, 15-16* For what is your life? It is a vapour which appeareth for a little while, and afterwards shall vanish away. For that you should say: If the Lord will, and, If we shall live, we will do this or that.—But now you rejoice in your arrogancies. All such rejoicing is wicked.

### THURSDAY.

#### DEATH OF SINNERS.

*1 K 25, 28* The Lord struck Nabal, and he died.

*Jb 4, 21* They that shall be left shall be taken away from them: they shall die, and not in wisdom.

*Jb 18, 14, 18* Let his confidence be rooted out of his tabernacle, and let destruction tread upon him like a king.—He shall drive him out of the light into darkness, and shall remove him out of the world.

*Jb 20, 5-7* The praise of the wicked is short, and the joy of the hypocrite but for a moment.—If his pride mount up even to heaven, and his head touch the clouds:—In the end he shall be destroyed like a dunghill, and they that had seen him, shall say: Where is he?

*Jb 20, 8-9* As a dream that fleeth away he shall not be found, he shall pass as a vision of the night:—The eyes that had seen him, shall see him no more, neither shall his place any more behold him.

*Jb 21, 17-18* How often shall the lamp of the wicked be put out, and a deluge come upon them,

and He shall distribute the sorrows of His wrath?—They shall be as chaff before the face of the wind, and as ashes which the whirlwind scattereth.

They shall suddenly die, *Jb 34, 20* and the people shall be troubled at midnight, and they shall pass, and take away the violent without hand.

Let mercy forget him: *Jb 24, 20-* may worms be his sweetness: 22 let him be remembered no more, but be broken in pieces as an unfruitful tree.

1. For he hath fed the barren that beareth not,

2. And to the widow he hath done no good.

3. He hath pulled down the strong by his might:

And when he standeth up he shall not trust to his life.

God hath given him place *Jb 24, 23-* for penance, and he abuseth 24 it unto pride: but His eyes

are upon his ways.—They are lifted up for a little while, and shall not stand, and shall be brought down as all things, and shall be taken away, and as the tops of the ears of corn they shall be broken.

What is the hope of the hypocrite if through covetousness he take by violence, *Jb 27, 8,* 19

and God deliver not his soul?—The rich man when he shall sleep shall take away nothing with him: he shall open his eyes and find nothing.

Poverty like water shall *Jb 27, 20* take hold on him, a tempest 23 shall oppress him in the

- night:—A burning wind shall take him up, and carry him away, and as a whirlwind shall snatch him from his place.—And He shall cast upon him, and shall not spare: out of His hand he would willingly flee.—He shall clasp his hands upon Him, and shall hiss at Him, beholding his place.
- Jb* 36, 12, 14 If they hear not they shall pass by the sword, and shall be consumed in folly.—Their soul shall die in a storm, and their life among the effeminate.
- Ps* 36, 2, 10 They shall shortly wither away as grass, and as the green herbs shall quickly fall.—For yet a little while, and the wicked shall not be: and thou shalt seek his place, and shalt not find it.
- Ps* 36, 35-36 I have seen the wicked highly exalted, and lifted up like the cedars of Libanus.—And I passed by, and lo he was not: and I sought him, and his place was not found.
- Ps* 48, 8-9 He shall not give to God his ransom.—Nor the price of the redemption of his soul: and shall labour for ever, and shall still live unto the end.
- Ps* 43, 10-11 He shall not see destruction, when he shall see the wise dying: the senseless and the fools shall perish together. And they shall leave their riches to strangers.—They are laid in hell like sheep: death shall feed upon them. And the just shall have dominion over them in the morning: and their help shall decay in hell from their glory.
- For when he shall die he shall take nothing away: nor shall his glory descend with him.—For in his lifetime his soul will be blessed: and he will praise thee when thou shalt do well to him.—He shall go in to the generations of his fathers: and he shall never see light.—Man when he was in honour did not understand: he hath been compared to senseless beasts, and made like to them.
- As a tempest that passeth, so the wicked shall be no more:—And the years of the wicked shall be shortened.
- The lamp of the wicked shall be put out.
- When the wicked man is dead, there shall be no hope any more.
- The wicked man shall be driven out in his wickedness.
- Evil men have no hope of things to come, and the lamp of the wicked shall be put out.
- Thy pride is brought down to hell, thy carcass is fallen down: under thee shall the moth be strewed, and worms shall be thy covering.—Thou shalt be brought down to hell, unto the depth of the pit.
- In the time of the evening, behold there shall be trouble: the morning shall come, and he shall not be: this is the portion of them that have wasted us, and the lot of them that spoiled us.
- Her soul hath fainted away: her sun is gone down while it was yet day.
- They shall die by the
- Ps* 48, 18 21
- Pv* 10, 25, 27
- Pv* 13, 9
- Pv* 11, 7
- Pv* 14, 32
- Pv* 24, 20
- Is* 14, 11, 15
- Is* 17, 14
- Je* 15, 9
- Je* 16, 4

death of grievous illnesses : they shall not be lamented, and they shall not be buried.

*Ex* 28, 8, 10 They shall kill thee, and bring thee down : and thou shalt die the death of them that are slain in the heart of the sea.—Thou shalt die the death of the uncircumcised by the hand of strangers : for I have spoken it, saith the Lord God.

*Am* 9, 10 All the sinners of my people shall fall by the sword.

*1 T* 5, 3 When they shall say, peace and security : then shall sudden destruction come upon them, as the pains upon her that is with child, and they shall not escape.

### FRIDAY.

DEATH NOT TO BE FEARED.

DESIRED BY THE GOOD.

*Ps* 22, 4 Though I should walk in the midst of the shadow of death, I will fear no evils, for Thou art with me. Thy rod and Thy staff, they have comforted me.

*Is* 57, 1 The just perisheth, and no man layeth it to heart, and men of mercy are taken away because there is none that understandeth : for the just man is taken away from before the face of evil.

*Eci* 22, 11 Weep but a little for the dead, for he is at rest.

*Lu* 2, 29 Now Thou dost dismiss Thy servant, O Lord, according to Thy Word, in peace.

*Jn* 11, 25-26 He that believeth in Me, although he be dead, shall live.—And every one that liveth, and believeth in Me, shall not die for ever.

*Eci* 41, 5 Fear not the sentence of death. Remember what

things have been before thee, and what shall come after thee : this sentence is from the Lord upon all flesh.

[Better] is the day of death than the day of one's birth. *Eci* 7, 2

Fear not : I am the First and the Last. *Ap* 1, 17

There remaineth, therefore, a Rest for the people of God.—For he who is entered into his Rest, he also hath rested from his own works, as God from His.—Let us hasten therefore to enter into that Rest. *He* 4, 3-11

To me, to live is Christ. and to die is gain. *Ph* 1, 21

And if to live in the flesh, this is to me the fruit of labour : and what I shall choose, I know not.—But I am straitened between two : having a desire to be dissolved, and to be with Christ, being by much the better.—But to remain in the flesh is necessary for you. *Ph* 1, 22-24

Forasmuch as the children were partakers of flesh and blood, He also himself in like manner partook of the same : that, through death, He might destroy him who had the empire of death, that is to say, the devil ;—And might deliver them, who, through the fear of death, were all their lifetime subject to slavery. *He* 2, 14-15

There the wicked cease from tumult, and there the wearied in strength are at rest. *Jb* 3, 17

Who will give me wings like a dove, and I will fly and be at rest ? *Ps* 54, 7

I will look for Thy Salvation, O Lord. *Ge* 49, 18

- Jb* 17, 18 All that I have shall go down into the deepest pit : thinkest thou that there at least I shall have rest ?
- Js* 57, 2 Let peace come, let him rest in his bed that hath walked in his uprightness.
- Jn* 11, 11-13 These things He said ; and after that He said to them : Lazarus our friend sleepeth ; but I go that I may awake him out of sleep.—His disciples therefore said : Lord, if he sleep, he shall do well.—But Jesus spoke of his death ; and they thought that He spoke of the repose of sleep.
- 2 Tm* 1, 10 [The Grace of God] is now made manifest by the illumination of our Saviour Jesus Christ, Who hath destroyed death, and hath brought to light life and incorruption.
- 1 C* 15, 56-57 The sting of death is sin.—But thanks be to God, Who hath given us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.
- 2 C* 5, 4-9 We know that if our earthly house of this habitation be dissolved, that we have a building of God, a House not made with hands, eternal in Heaven.—For we also, who are in this Tabernacle, do groan being burdened : because we would not be unclothed, but clothed over : that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life.—Now He that maketh us for this very thing is God, Who hath given us the pledge of the Spirit.—Therefore, having always confidence, knowing that, while we are in the body, we are absent from the Lord :—We are confident, I say, and have a good will to be absent rather from the body, and to be present with the Lord.—And therefore we labour, whether absent or present, to please Him.
- SATURDAY.**  
**BLESSEDNESS OF THOSE WHO DIE IN THE LORD.**  
 Precious in the sight of *Ps* 115, 15 the Lord is the death of His saints.
- The souls of the just are in the Hands of God, and the torment of death shall not touch them.—In the sight of the unwise they seemed to die : and their departure was taken for misery.—And their going away from us, for utter destruction : but they are in peace.—And though in the sight of men they suffered torments, their hope is full of immortality.
- Lord Jesus, receive my *Ac* 7, 59 spirit.
- He said to Jesus : Lord, *Lu* 23, 42-43 remember me when Thou shalt come into Thy Kingdom.—And Jesus said to him : Amen I say to thee, this day thou shalt be with Me in Paradise.
- Who can count the dust of *Nm* 23, 10 Jacob, and know the number of the stock of Israel ? Let my soul die the death of the just, and my last end be like to them.
- The just perisheth, and no man layeth it to heart, and men of mercy are taken away, because there is none that understandeth : for the just man is taken away from before the face of evil.
- The just man if he be pre-*W* 4, 7, 10 vented with death, shall be

in Rest.—He pleased God and was beloved, and living among sinners he was translated.

**W4, 11-12** He was taken away lest wickedness should alter his understanding, or deceit beguile his soul.—For the bewitching of vanity obscureth good things, and the wandering of concupiscence overturneth the innocent mind.

**W4, 13-14** Being made perfect in a short space, he fulfilled a long time:—For his soul pleased God: therefore He hastened to bring him out of the midst of iniquities: but the people see this, and understand not, nor lay up such things in their hearts.

**W4, 16** The just that is dead,

condemneth the wicked that are living, and youth soon ended, the long life of the unjust.

With him that feareth the Lord, it shall go well in the latter end, and in the day of his death he shall be blessed. **Eci 1, 13**

Amen, amen I say to you, unless the grain of wheat falling into the ground, die, —Itself remaineth alone. But if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit. **Jn 12, 24-25**

I heard a voice from Heaven saying to me: Write, Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord. From henceforth now, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours; for their works follow them. **Ap 14, 13**

## 2.—EXAMPLES OF SAINTLY DEATHS.

**Lx 23, 46**  
**Lx 23, 43**  
**Ac 7, 59**  
**Ac 9, 39**  
**Ge 25, 8**  
**He 11, 21**  
**He 11, 22**

1. Our Blessed Lord.  
2. Demas.  
3. Stephen.  
4. Dorcas.  
5. Abraham.  
6. Jacob.  
7. Joseph.

8. Aaron.  
9. Moses.  
10. Heli.  
11. David.  
12. Joiada.  
13. Ezechias.  
14. Josias.

**Nu 20, 26**  
**De 34, 5**  
**1 K 4, 18**  
**3 K 2, 2**  
**2 P 24, 16**  
**2 P 32, 33**  
**2 P 35, 26**

## 3.—THE DOCTRINE OF THE GENERAL RESURRECTION OF THE DEAD.

**Jn 5, 28-29** The hour cometh wherein all that are in the graves shall hear the Voice of the Son of God.—And they that have done good things shall come forth unto the Resurrection of Life: and they that have done evil unto the resurrection of Judgment.

**Jn 6, 39** Now this is the will of the Father Who sent Me: that of all that He hath given Me, I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the Last Day.

It hath not yet appeared what we shall be. We know that when He shall appear, we shall be like to Him; because we shall see Him as He is. **1 J 3, 2**

We will not have you ignorant, brethren, concerning them that are asleep, that you be not sorrowful even as others who have no hope.—For if we believe that Jesus died, and rose again, even so them who have slept through Jesus, God will bring with **1 T 4, 12-13**



- Him.**  
*Jn* 11, 23-25 Jesus saith to her: Thy brother shall rise again.—Martha saith to Him: I know that he shall rise again in the Resurrection at the Last Day.—Jesus said to her: I am the Resurrection and the Life: he that believeth in Me, although he be dead, shall live.
- Ac* 24, 15 Having hope in God, which these also themselves look for, that there shall be a Resurrection of the just and unjust.
- Ac* 24, 21 Except it be for this one voice only that I cried standing among them, Concerning the Resurrection of the dead am I judged this day by you.
- Ac* 26, 6-8 And now for the hope of the promise that was made by God to our fathers do I stand subject to judgment:—Unto which our twelve Tribes, serving night and day, hope to come. For which hope, O king, I am accused by the Jews.—Why should it be thought a thing incredible with you, that God should raise the dead?
- Ac* 4, 33 With great power did the Apostles give testimony to the Resurrection of the Lord
- Jesus.**  
 If we have been planted together in the likeness of His Death, in like manner shall we be of His Resurrection.
- To this end Christ died, and rose again: that He might be Lord both of the dead and of the living.
- If the Spirit of Him that raised up Jesus from the dead, dwell in you: He that raised up Jesus Christ from the dead, shall quicken also your mortal bodies, because of His Spirit that dwelleth in you.
- They that shall be accounted worthy of that world and of the Resurrection from the dead, shall neither be married nor take wives.—Neither can they die any more: for they are equal to the Angels, and are the children of God, being the children of the Resurrection.
- He shall cast death down headlong for ever: and the Lord God shall wipe away tears from every face.
- When Christ shall appear, who is your Life: then also you shall appear with Him in Glory.
- Ro* 6, 5  
*Ro* 14, 9  
*Ro* 8, 11  
*Lu* 20, 35-36  
*Is* 25, 8  
*Cl* 3, 4

#### 4.—BELIEF IN THE RESURRECTION UNDER THE OLD LAW.

- He* 11, 17-19 By faith Abraham, when he was tried, offered Isaac: and he that had received the promises, offered up his only-begotten son:—To whom it was said: In Isaac shall thy seed be called.—Accounting that God is able to raise up even from the dead.
- Whence also he received him for a parable
- Now that the dead rise again, Moses also showed, at the bush, when he calleth the Lord: The God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.—For He is not the God of the
- Lu* 26, 37-38

dead, but of the living : for all live to Him.

*Jb 19, 25-27* For I know that my Redeemer liveth, and in the Last Day I shall rise out of the earth.—And I shall be clothed again with my skin, and in my flesh I shall see my God.—Whom I myself shall see, and my eyes shall behold, and not another : this my hope is laid up in my bosom.

*Jb 14, 12-15* Man when he is fallen asleep, shall not rise again till the heavens be broken, he shall not awake, nor rise up out of his sleep.—Who will grant me this, that Thou mayst protect me in hell, and hide me till Thy wrath pass, and appoint me a time when Thou wilt remember me?—Shall man that is dead, thinkest thou, live again ? all the days in which I am now in warfare I expect until my change come.—Thou shalt call me, and I will answer Thee : to the work of Thy hands Thou shalt reach out Thy right hand.

*Js 26, 19* Thy dead men shall live, my slain shall rise again : awake, and give praise, yet that dwell in the dust : for thy dew is the dew of the light : and the land of the giants thou shalt pull down into ruin.

*Ps 48, 16* God will redeem my soul from the hand of hell, when He shall receive me.

*Da 12, 2-3, 13* And many of those that sleep in the dust of the earth, shall awake : some unto Life Everlasting, and others unto reproach, to see it always.—But they that

are learned shall shine as the brightness of the firmament : and they that instruct many to justice, as stars for all Eternity.—But go thou thy ways until the time appointed : and thou shalt rest, and stand in thy lot unto the end of the days.

I will deliver them out of the hand of death. I will redeem them from death : O death, I will be thy death, O hell, I will be thy bite ; comfort is hidden from my eyes.

As concerning the dead, that they rise again, have you not read in the Book of Moses, how in the bush, God spoke to him, saying : I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob?—He is not the God of the dead, but of the living. You therefore do greatly err.

Shake thyself from the dust, arise, sit up, O Jerusalem : loose the bonds from off thy neck.

#### THE LONGING FOR THE RESURRECTION.

And not only it, but ourselves also, who have the first fruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption of the sons of God, the Redemption of our body.

If by any means I may attain to the Resurrection, which is from the dead.

But as for me, I will appear before Thy sight in justice : I shall be satisfied when Thy Glory shall appear.

*Os 13, 14*

*Ma 12, 26-27*

*Is 62, 2*

*Ro 8, 23*

*Pa 3, 11*

*Ps 16, 15*

## 5.—ST. PAUL'S DISCOURSE ON THE RESURRECTION.

- 1 C 15, 3-8 1. CHRIST'S RESURRECTION. For I delivered unto you first of all, that which I also received: How that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures:—And that He was buried, and that He arose again the third day according to the Scriptures:
- He hath not raised up, if the dead rise not again. For if the dead rise not again, neither is Christ risen again.—And if Christ be not risen again, your Faith is vain, for you are yet in your sins.
- 1 C 15, 16-17
2. And that He was seen by Cephas;
- Then they also that are fallen asleep in Christ, are perished.—If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men most miserable.—But now Christ is risen from the dead, the first-fruits of them that sleep.
- 1 C 15, 18-20
3. Then was He seen by more than five hundred brethren at once: of whom many remain until this present, and some are fallen asleep.
3. THE FRUIT OF THE RESURRECTION.
- For by a man came death, and by a Man the Resurrection of the dead.—And as in Adam all die, so also in Christ all shall be made alive.—But every one in his own order: the First-Fruits Christ, then they that are of Christ, who have believed in His Coming.
- 1 C 15, 21-23
4. After that, He was seen by James,
- Afterwards the end, when He shall have delivered up the Kingdom to God and the Father, when He shall have brought to nought all Principality, and Power, and Virtue.—For He must reign, until He hath put all enemies under His feet.
- 1 C 15, 24-25
5. Then by all the Apostles.
- And the enemy death shall be destroyed last, for He hath put all things under His feet. And whereas He saith:—All things are put under Him; undoubtedly, He is excepted. Who put all things under Him.
- 1 C 15, 26-27
6. And last of all, He was seen also by me, as by one born out of due time.
- (See page 109.)
- And when all things shall be subdued unto Him, then
- 1 C 15, 28-29
2. HIS RESURRECTION.
- AN ARGUMENT FOR OURS.
- 1 C 15, 10 Now if Christ be preached that He rose again from the dead, how do some among you say, that there is no Resurrection of the dead?
- 1 C 15, 13-15 But if there be no Resurrection of the dead, then Christ is not risen again.—And if Christ be not risen again, then is our preaching vain, and your Faith is also vain.—Yea, and we are found false witnesses of God: because we have given testimony against God, that He hath raised up Christ; Whom

the Son also Himself shall be subject unto Him that put all things under Him, that God may be all in all.—Otherwise what shall they do that are baptised for the dead,\* if the dead rise not again at all? why are they then baptised for them?

1 C 15, 30-32 Why also are we in danger every hour?—I die daily, I protest by your glory, brethren, which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord.—If (according to man) I fought with beasts at Ephesus, what doth it profit me, if the dead rise not again? Let us eat and drink, for to-morrow we shall die.

4. THE MANNER THEREOF.

1 C 15, 35-38 But some man will say: How do the dead rise again? or with what manner of body shall they come?—Senseless man, that which thou sowest is not quickened except it die first.—And that which thou sowest, thou sowest not the body that shall be; but bare grain, as of wheat, or of some of the rest.—But God giveth it a body as He will: and to every seed its proper body.

1 C 15, 39-40 All flesh is not the same flesh: but one is the flesh of men, another of beasts, another of birds, another of fishes.—And there are bodies celestial, and bodies terrestrial: but one is the glory of the celestial, and another of the terrestrial.

1 C 15, 41-45 1. One is the glory of the sun,

2. Another the glory of the moon,

3. And another the glory of the stars.

For star differeth from star in glory:—So also is the Resurrection of the dead.

1. It is sown in corruption, it shall rise in incorruption.

2. It is sown in dishonour, it shall rise in glory.

3. It is sown in weakness, it shall rise in power.

4. It is sown a natural body, it shall rise a spiritual body.

If there be a natural body, there is also a spiritual body, as it is written:—The first man Adam was made into a living soul; the last Adam into a quickening Spirit.

Yet that was not first 1 C 15, 46-50 which is spiritual, but that which is natural: afterwards that which is spiritual.—The first man was of the earth, earthly: the second man, from Heaven, heavenly.—Such as is the earthly, such also are the earthly: and such as is the heavenly, such also are they that are heavenly.—Therefore as we have borne the image of the earthly, let us bear also the Image of the Heavenly.—Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot possess the Kingdom of God: neither shall corruption possess incorruption.

\* The Apostle alludes to the baptism of sufferings and expiations undergone for sinners spiritually dead.

5. OF THEM THAT SHALL  
BE FOUND ALIVE AT THE  
LAST DAY.

1 C 15, 51- Behold I tell you a Mystery.

52 We shall all indeed rise again : but we shall not all be changed.—In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last Trumpet ; for the Trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall rise again incorruptible : and we shall

be changed.

For this corruptible must 1 C 15, 53-  
put on incorruption ; and 55  
this mortal must put on immortality.—And when this mortal hath put on immortality, then shall come to pass the saying that is written : Death is swallowed up in Victory. O death, where is thy Victory ? O death, where is thy sting ?

# 6.—AN ALLUSION TO THE GENERAL RESURRECTION.\*

\*  
Ez 37, 1 The hand of the Lord was upon me, and brought me forth in the spirit of the Lord : and set me down in the midst of a plain that was full of bones.

\*  
Ez 37, 7 And I prophesied as He had commanded me : and as I prophesied there was a noise, and behold a commotion : and the bones came together, each one to its joint.

\*  
Ez 37, 8 And I saw, and behold the sinews, and the flesh came up upon them : and the skin was stretched out over them, but there was no spirit in them.

\*  
Ez 37, 9 And He said to me : Prophecy to the Spirit, prophecy, O son of man, and say to the Spirit : Thus saith the Lord God : Come, Spirit from the

four winds and blow upon these slain, and let them live again.

\*  
And I prophesied as He Ez 37, 10  
had commanded me : and the Spirit came into them, and they lived : and they stood up upon their feet, an exceeding great army.

\*  
And He said to me : Son Ez 37, 11  
of man : All these bones are the House of Israel : they say : Our bones are dried up, and our hope is lost, and we are cut off.

\*  
Therefore prophecy, and Ez 37, 12  
say to them : Thus saith the Lord God : Behold I will open your graves, and will bring you out of your sepulchres, O My people : and will bring you into the land of Israel.

\*  
And you shall know that Ez 37, 13

\* "A simile of the Resurrection would never have been used to signify the restoration of the people of Israel unless such a future resurrection had been believed and known ; because no one attempts to confirm uncertain things by things which have no existence."—*St. Jerome.*

I am the Lord, when I shall have opened your sepulchres, and shall have brought you out of your graves, O My people :

Spirit in you, and you shall live, and I shall make you rest upon your own land : and you shall know that I the Lord have spoken, and done it, saith the Lord God.

Ex 37, 14     And shall have put My

## PART V.

### ON JUDGMENT.

“AFTER death the Judgment.”\* The body dies, but the soul lives on, and the moment after the death of the body the soul is judged. There are three stages in ordinary legal processes—discussion of the case, decision upon it, execution of the sentence. The *first* stage has no place in the Judgment after death. God already knows the merits or demerits of the soul brought to Judgment. But He pronounces *sentence*; and the soul divinely enlightened as to its condition acquiesces in the justice of the decision. The sentence is then *executed* upon the soul by the soul itself. Its merit or demerit or need of purgation carries it, according to S. Thomas,† “to its own place,” as a stone is carried to its centre.

But the soul will be judged once again in that General Judgment when all nations and tribes shall simultaneously appear before the Throne of God. “Thither shall be brought,” says S. Jerome,‡ “Plato with his foolish disciples. There the arguments of Aristotle shall be of no avail.” Then shall the Justice of God be made manifest by an equitable and final assignation of rewards and punishments, so that no one may thereafter complain, saying, “Behold, these are sinners, and yet, abounding in the world, they have obtained

\* Heb. 9, 27. † Sum. Theol., supp. q. 69, a. 2. ‡ Epist. 1 ad Hellodorus, c. 9.

riches. And I said, then have I in vain justified my heart, and washed my hands among the innocent, and I have been scourged all the day, and my chastisement hath been in the morning.\* Then also shall the glory and triumph of Christ be made manifest. "Then," says S. Augustine, † "He shall manifestly come among the Just to judge justly, Who had secretly come to be judged by the unjust unjustly."

### 1.—THE DOCTRINE OF THE LAST JUDGMENT.

- |               |  |   |              |
|---------------|--|---|--------------|
| He 9, 27      | It is appointed unto men once to die, and after this the Judgment.   | nor hidden, that shall not be known.  |              |
| Ecl 11, 9     | Walk in the ways of thy heart, and in the sight of thy eyes : and know that for all these God will bring thee to judgment.   | As he treated of justice and chastity and of the Judgment to come, Felix [was] terrified.   | Ac 24, 25    |
| Jn 5, 29      | And they that have done good things, shall come forth unto the Resurrection of Life ; but they that have done evil, unto the Resurrection of Judgment.   | According to thy hardness and impenitent heart, thou treasurest up to thyself wrath, against the Day of Wrath, and revelation of the just judgment of God,—Who will render to every man according to his works :—                 | Ro 2, 5-8    |
| Mt 16, 27     | The Son of man shall come in the glory of His Father with His Angels : and then will He render to every man according to his works.  | To them indeed, who, according to patience in good work, seek glory and honour and incorruption, Eternal Life :—But to them that are contentious, and who obey not the truth, but give credit to iniquity, wrath and indignation. |              |
| Is 34, 4      | All the hosts of the heavens shall pine away, and the heavens shall be folded together as a book : and all their host shall fall down as the leaf falleth from the vine and from the fig-tree. | It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the Living God.   | He 10, 31    |
| 1 Ti 5, 24-25 | Some men's sins are manifest, going before to judgment : and some men they follow after.—In like manner also good deeds are manifest : and they that are otherwise, cannot be hid.             | If God spared not the angels that sinned : but delivered them, drawn down by infernal ropes to the lower hell, unto torments, to be reserved unto Judgment :—   | 2 Pt 2, 4, 9 |
| Lx 12, 2      | There is nothing covered that shall not be revealed :  | The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly from temptation, but to reserve the   |              |

\* Ps. 72, 12-14

† De Civit Dei, l. 20, c. 27.

- unjust unto the Day of Judgment to be tormented.
- Jb* 21, 30 The wicked man is reserved to the Day of Destruction, and He shall be brought to the Day of Wrath.
- Ecl* 3, 17 God shall judge both the just and the wicked, and then shall be the time of everything.
- Ap* 1, 7 Behold He cometh with the clouds, and every eye shall see Him, and they also that pierced Him.
- 1 C* 3, 13 Every man's work shall be manifest, for the Day of the Lord shall declare it.
- Mt* 12, 36-37 Every idle word that a man shall speak, they shall render an account for it in the Day of Judgment.—For by thy words thou shalt be justified, and by thy words thou shalt be condemned.
- The nations were angry: *Ap* 11, 18 and Thy wrath is come, and the time of the dead, that they should be judged, and that Thou shouldst render reward to Thy servants the Prophets and to the Saints, and to them that fear Thy Name, little and great, and shouldst destroy them who have corrupted the earth.
- The doctrine of Eternal Judgment. *He* 6, 2
- If we sin wilfully after having received the knowledge of the truth, there is now left no Sacrifice for sins. —But a certain dreadful expectation of judgment, and the rage of a fire which shall consume the adversaries. *He* 10, 26-27

## 2.—THE LAST JUDGMENT AS DESCRIBED BY OUR LORD, THE JUDGE. HIS SENTENCES.

- \*
- Mt* 25, 31-33 When the Son of man shall come in His Majesty, and all the Angels with Him, then shall He sit upon the Seat of His Majesty:—And all nations shall be gathered together before Him, and He shall separate them one from another, as the shepherd separateth the sheep from the goats:—And He shall set the sheep on His right hand, but the goats on His left.
- \*
- Mt* 25, 34-40 Then shall the King say to them that shall be on His right hand: Come, ye blessed of My Father, possess you the Kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.—For
1. I was hungry, and you gave Me to eat:
  2. I was thirsty, and you gave Me to drink:
  3. I was a stranger, and you took Me in:
  4. Naked, and you covered Me:
  5. Sick, and you visited Me:
  6. I was in prison, and you came to Me.
- Then shall the just answer Him, saying: Lord, when did we see Thee hungry, and fed Thee; thirsty, and gave Thee drink?—And when did we see Thee a stranger, and took Thee in? or naked, and covered Thee?—Or when did we see Thee sick or



in prison, and come to Thee?—And the King, answering, shall say to them: Amen I say to you, as long as you did it to one of these My least brethren, you did it to Me.

\*

*Mt* 25, 41- Then He shall say to them  
45 also that shall be on His left hand: Depart from Me, you cursed, into everlasting fire, which was prepared for the devil and his angels.—  
For

1. I was hungry, and you gave me not to eat:
2. I was thirsty, and you gave Me not to drink:
3. I was a stranger, and you took Me not in:
4. Naked, and you covered Me not:
5. Sick and in prison, and you did not visit Me.

Then they also shall answer Him, saying: Lord, when did we see Thee hungry or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister to Thee?—Then He shall answer them, saying: Amen I say to you, as long as you did it not to one of these least, neither did you do it to Me.—And these shall go into everlasting punishment: but the just into Life Everlasting.

*Again.*

*Mt* 24, 29- Immediately after the  
31, 35 tribulation of those days

1. The sun shall be darkened,
2. And the moon shall

- not give her light,
3. And the stars shall fall from heaven,
4. And the powers of the heavens shall be moved.
5. And then shall appear the Sign of the Son of man in Heaven:
6. And then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn:
7. And they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of Heaven with much power and majesty.

And He shall send His Angels with a Trumpet, and a Great Voice; and they shall gather together His elect from the four winds, from the farthest parts of the heavens to the utmost bounds of them.—Heaven and earth shall pass away, but My words shall not pass away.

*Again.*

In the time of the harvest *Mt* 13, 30,  
I will say to the reapers: 40-43  
Gather up first the cockle, and bind it into bundles to burn, but the wheat gather ye into My Barn.—Even as cockle therefore is gathered up and burnt with fire: so shall it be at the end of the world.—The Son of man shall send His Angels, and they shall gather out of His Kingdom all scandals, and them that work iniquity.—And shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.—Then shall the just shall shine as the sun in the Kingdom of their Father. He that hath ears to hear,

let him hear.

ST. PETER'S ACCOUNT.

- 2 Pt 3, 7 The heavens and the earth, which are now, by the same Word are kept in store, reserved unto fire against the Day of Judgment and perdition of the ungodly men.
- 2 Pt 3, 10 But the Day of the Lord shall come as a thief, in which the heavens shall pass away with great violence, and the elements shall be melted with heat, and the earth
- and the works which are in it shall be burnt up.
- Seeing then that all these things are to be dissolved, what manner of people ought you to be in holy conversations and godliness :—Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the Day of the Lord, by which the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with the heat of fire ?
- 2 Pt 3, 11-12

### 3.—THE JUDGMENT SEAT ; THE GREAT WHITE THRONE.

- Mt 25, 31-32 When the Son of man shall come in His Majesty, and all the Angels with Him, then shall He sit on the seat of His Majesty ;—And all nations shall be gathered together before Him, and He shall separate them one from another, as the shepherd separates the sheep from the goats.
- Da 7, 9-10 I beheld till Thrones were placed, and the Ancient of Days sat : His garment was white as snow, and the hair of His head like clean wool : His Throne like flames of fire : the wheels of it like a burning fire.—A swift stream of fire issued forth from before Him : thousands of thousands ministered to Him, and ten thousand times a hundred thousand stood before Him : the Judgment sat and the Books were opened.
- Ap 20, 11-13 I saw a great White Throne, and One sitting upon it, from Whose Face the earth and heaven fled away, and there was no place found for them.—And I saw the dead,
- great and small, standing in the Presence of the Throne, and the Books were opened : and another Book was opened, which is the Book of Life : and the dead were judged by those things which were written in the Books, according to their works.—And the sea gave up the dead, that were in it, and Death and Hell gave up their dead, that were in them : and they were judged every one according to their works.
- We must all appear before the Judgment Seat of Christ, that every one may receive the proper things of the body according as he hath done, whether it be good or evil.
- The kings of the earth, and the Princes, and the Tribunes, and the rich, and the strong, and every bondman, and every freeman hid themselves in the dens, and in the rocks of the mountains :—And they say to the mountains and the rocks : Fall upon us, and hide us from the Face of Him that sitteth upon the Throne, and
- 2 C 5, 10
- Ap 6, 15-17

from the wrath of the Lamb:—For the Great Day of their wrath is come: and who shall be able to stand?

*Lu* 21, 36 Watch ye, therefore, pray-

ing at all times, that you may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that are to come, and to stand before the Son of man.

#### 4.—CHRIST OUR JUDGE; ALL POWER GIVEN HIM TO DO JUDGMENT.

- Jn* 5, 22-23, 27 The Father hath given all Judgment to the Son,—That all men may honour the Son as they honour the Father.—He hath given Him power to do judgment because He is the Son of man.
- Jn* 12, 48 He that despiseth Me, and receiveth not My words, hath One that judgeth him; the Word that I have spoken, the Same shall judge him in the Last Day.
- Ac* 10, 42 It is He Who was appointed by God, to be Judge of the living and of the dead.
- 1 C* 4, 5 Judge not before the time; until the Lord come, Who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts; and then shall every man have praise from God.
- Ju* 14-15 Behold, the Lord cometh with thousands of His saints,—To execute Judgment upon all.
- Mt* 16, 27 The Son of man shall come in the Glory of His Father with His Angels, and then will He render to every man according to his works.
- 1 K* 2, 3, 10 The Lord is a God of all knowledge, and to Him are thoughts prepared.—The Lord shall judge the ends of the earth.
- Ps* 9, 8-9 He hath prepared His Throne in judgment:—And He shall judge the world in equity, He shall judge the people in justice.
- He cometh to judge the earth. He shall judge the world with justice and the people with His truth.
- Thou, why judgest thou thy brother: or thou, why dost thou despise thy brother? For we shall all stand before the Judgment Seat of Christ.—For it is written: As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to Me, and every tongue shall confess to God.—Therefore every one of us shall render account to God for himself.
- I charge thee before God and Jesus Christ, Who shall judge the living and the dead by His Coming and His Kingdom:—Preach the Word.
- There is laid up for me a crown of justice, which the Lord the Just Judge will render to me in that day:—And not only to me, but to them also that love His Coming.
- [You] shall render account to Him Who is ready to judge the living and the dead.
- He shall not judge according to the sight of the eyes, nor reprove according to the hearing to the ears.—But He shall judge the poor with

justice, and shall reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and He shall strike the earth with the rod of His mouth, and with the breath of His lips He shall slay the wicked.

*Ac 17, 31* He hath appointed a Day wherein He will judge the

world in equity, by the Man Whom He hath appointed, giving faith to all, by raising Him up from the dead.

Behold, I come quickly, *Ap 22, 12* and My reward is with Me, to render to every man according to his works.

### 5.—THE JUDGMENT DAY; IT WILL COME SUDDENLY.

*Ac 17, 30-31* God now declareth unto men that all should everywhere do penance.—Because He hath appointed a Day when He will judge the world in equity.

*Mt 24, 27-28* As the lightning cometh out of the east, and appeareth even into the west: so shall also the Coming of the Son of man be.—But of that day and hour no one knoweth, no, not the Angels of Heaven, but the Father alone.

*1 T 5, 2* Yourselves know perfectly, that the Day of the Lord shall so come as a thief in the night.

*2 Pt 3, 10* The Day of the Lord shall come as a thief, in which the heavens shall pass away with great violence, and the elements shall be melted with heat, and the earth and the works which are in it shall be burnt up.

*Ma 4, 5* Behold I will send you Elias the Prophet, before the coming of the Great and Dreadful Day of the Lord.

*Jl 3, 2* THE PLACE OF JUDGMENT. I will gather together all nations, and will bring them down into the Valley of Josaphat: and I will plead with them there for My people, and for My inheritance Israel, whom they have

scattered among the nations, and have parted My Land.

His Feet shall stand in that Day upon the Mount of Olives, which is over-against Jerusalem, toward the east: and the Mount of Olives shall be divided in the midst thereof to the east, and to the west with a very great opening, and half of the Mountain shall be separated to the north, and half thereof to the south. *Za 14, 4*

And you shall flee to the Valley of those Mountains, for the Valley of the Mountains shall be joined even to the next, and you shall flee as you fled from the face of the earthquake in the days of Ozias, king of Juda: and the Lord my God shall come, and all the saints with Him. *Za 14, 5*  
(See *2 P 20, 27*; *Ex 39, 11*.)

Break forth, and come, all ye nations, from round about, and gather yourselves together: there will the Lord cause all thy strong ones to fall down.—Let them arise, and let the nations come up into the Valley of Josaphat: for there I will sit to judge all nations round about. *Jl 3, 11-12*

Put ye in the sickles, for the harvest is ripe: come and go down, for the press is

full, the fates run over : for their wickedness is multiplied.—Nations, nations in the Valley of Destruction: for the day of the Lord is near in the Valley of Destruction.

*Jl 3, 15-16* The sun and the moon are darkened, and the stars have withdrawn their shining.—And the Lord shall roar out of Sion, and utter His Voice from Jerusalem: and the heavens and the earth shall be moved, and the Lord shall be the hope of His people, and the strength of the children of Israel.

*Jl 3, 17* And you shall know that I am the Lord your God, dwelling in Sion My Holy Mountain: and Jerusalem shall be holy, and strangers shall pass through it no more.

*Is 24, 19-20* **ALLUSIONS TO THE JUDGMENT.** With breaking shall the earth be broken, with crushing shall the earth be crushed, with trembling shall the earth be moved.—With shaking shall the earth be shaken as a drunken man, and shall be removed as the tent of one night: and the iniquity

thereof shall be heavy upon it, and it shall fall, and not rise again.

All the host of the heavens shall pine away, and the heavens shall be folded together as a book: and all their host shall fall down as the leaf falleth from the vine, and from the fig-tree. *Is 34, 4*

I will show wonders in heaven: and in earth, blood, and fire, and vapour of smoke.—The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood: before the Great and Dreadful Day of the Lord doth come. *Jl 2, 30-31*

I saw, when he had opened the sixth seal, and behold there was a great earthquake, and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair: and the whole moon became as blood: —And the stars from heaven fell upon the earth, as the fig-tree casteth its green figs when it is shaken by a great wind: and the heaven departed as a book folded up: and every mountain, and the islands were moved out of their places. *Ap 6, 12-14*

## PART VI.

### ON HELL.

To those that are found wanting in that tremendous Judgment the Almighty will say: "Depart from Me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire."\* In the words of this sentence are indicated the two pains of Hell—the pain of loss and the pain of sense. The pain of the *loss of God*, of eternal exclusion from the society of God,

\* Matthew 25, 41.

is by far the *most terrible* pain of Hell. In the present life we may learn by experience that no created thing can satisfy our hearts, that if we look to creatures for our peace we shall be "seeking rest and finding none." Nevertheless, we cannot realise the pressing, absolute need we have of God. But, when the distractions of earth have died away, and the soul is alone with itself, it finds in itself a void which God alone can fill. It craves for God; it would fly to God. But if the guilt of grievous sin be upon it, it is dashed to the earth. Again and again, with infinite yearnings, it rises towards God; but only to be as incessantly beaten back to the ground. And this through all eternity. "Depart from Me, ye cursed."

The *secondary* pain of Hell is the pain of *sense*. The cause producing this pain is fire. "Depart into everlasting fire." The Church has never pronounced definition or decree concerning the nature of this fire; nevertheless, "it is," says Suarez,\* "the certain and catholic opinion that the fire, which was prepared for the devil and his angels, is a true and proper corporeal fire." Material fire, *as such*, can have no influence upon separated spirits. But the fire of Hell is an *instrument* in the hands of God.

Whether the fire of Hell tortures the demons and separated souls by burning them—that is, by inflicting pain of the kind experienced by the soul, in the present life, when the body which it informs is burned—is uncertain. S. Thomas, apparently, thinks that it does not. He never speaks of *burning* in this connection, and he distinctly states that the separated soul experiences no *sensible* pain. When explaining the action of the fire he describes it as *confining* and *imprisoning* the demons and lost souls.† Thus, then, the pain of *sense*

\* De Angelis, lib. 8, c. 12.

† Sum. Theol., supp. q. 70, a. 3.

is so called, "not because the soul is afflicted by the fire in such a manner as to experience *sensible pain* therefrom,"\* but because the *instrument* producing the suffering is a sensible thing.

# 1.—HELL, THE ABODE OF THE WICKED.

- Ps* 9, 18 The wicked shall be turned into Hell, all the nations that forget God. *Ps* 54, 16 and let them go down alive into Hell. For there is wickedness in their dwellings : in the midst of them.
- Mk* 9, 42-43 If thy hand scandalise thee, cut it off : it is better for thee to enter into Life maimed than having two hands to go into Hell, into Unquenchable Fire :—Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not extinguished. *Mt* 10, 28 Fear ye not them that kill the body, and are not able to kill the soul : but rather fear Him that can destroy both soul and body into Hell.
- Mk* 9, 44-45 And if thy foot scandalise thee, cut it off. It is better for thee to enter lame into Life Everlasting, than having two feet, to be cast into the Hell of Unquenchable Fire :—Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not extinguished. *Lu* 10, 15 And thou, Capharnaum, which art exalted unto Heaven, thou shalt be thrust down to Hell.
- Mk* 9, 46-47 And if thy eye scandalise thee, pluck it out. It is better for thee with one eye to enter into the Kingdom of God, than having two eyes, to be cast into the Hell of fire :—Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not extinguished. *Ez* 31, 16 I shook the nation with the sound of his fall, when I brought him down to Hell with them that descend into the Pit.
- Ap* 20, 15 Whosoever was not found written in the Book of Life, was cast into the Pool of Fire. *Mt* 7, 13 Wide is the gate, and broad is the way that leadeth to destruction, and many there are who go in thereat.
- Is* 5, 14 Therefore hath Hell enlarged her soul, and opened her mouth without any bounds, and their strong ones, and their people, and their high and glorious ones shall go down into it. *Ez* 31, 17 For they also shall go down with him to Hell to them that are slain by the sword : and the arm of every one shall sit down under his shadow in the midst of the nations.
- To whom art thou like, O thou that art famous and lofty among the trees of pleasure? Behold, thou art brought down with the trees of pleasure to the lowest parts of the earth : thou shalt sleep in the midst of the uncircumcised, with them that are slain by the

\* S. Thomas, q. De Anima, a. 21.

- sword: this is Pharaoh, and all his multitude, saith the Lord God.
- 2 Pt 2, 9** The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly from temptation, but to reserve the unjust unto the Day of Judgment to be tormented.
- Pt 20, 10** Thou shalt make them as an Oven of Fire, in the time of Thy anger: the Lord shall trouble them in His wrath, and fire shall devour them.
- Ex 32, 21, 27** The most mighty among the strong ones shall speak to him from the midst of Hell, they that went down with his helpers, and slept uncircumcised, slain by the sword.—And they shall not sleep with the brave, and with them that fell uncircumcised, that went down to Hell with their weapons, and laid their swords under their heads, and their iniquities were in their bones, because they were the terror of the mighty in the Land of the living.
- Jb 25, 5-6** Behold the giants groan under the waters, and they that dwell with them.—Hell is naked before him, and there is no covering for destruction.
- Jb 21, 33** The wicked man hath been acceptable to the gravel of Cocytus, and he shall draw every man after him, and there are innumerable before him.
- Pt 57, 10** Before your thorns could know the brier, He swallowed them up, as alive, in His wrath.
- Pt 85, 13** Thy mercy is great towards me: and Thou hast delivered my soul out of the lower Hell.
- Her house is the way to Hell, reaching even to the inner chambers of death.
- He did not know that giants are there, and that her guests are in the depths of Hell.
- The path of life is Above for the wise, that he may decline from the lowest Hell.
- If thy hand or thy foot scandalise thee, cut it off, and cast it from thee. It is better for thee to go into Life maimed or lame, than having two hands or two feet, to be cast into Everlasting Fire.
- If God spared not the angels that sinned: but delivered them, drawn down by infernal ropes to the lower Hell unto torments to be reserved unto judgment.
- FIGURES OF HELL PUNISHMENT.**
- I.**
- For the hand of the Lord shall rest in this Mountain: and Moab [*i. e. the reprobate*] shall be trodden down under Him, as straw is broken in pieces with the wain.
- II.**
- And He shall stretch forth His hands under him, as he that swimmeth stretcheth forth his hands to swim: and He shall bring down his glory with the dashing of his hands.
- III.**
- And the bulwarks of thy high walls shall fall, and be brought low, and shall be pulled down to the ground, even to the dust.
- THE KEYS OF HELL.**
- When I had seen Him, I fell at His feet as dead.
- Pt 7, 27**
- Pt 9, 18**
- Pt 15, 24**
- Mt 18, 8**
- 2 Pt 2, 4**
- Is 25, 10**
- Is 25, 11**
- Is 25, 12**
- Ap 1, 17.**
- 18**



And He laid His right hand upon me, saying : Fear not, I am the First and the Last.—And alive, and was dead, and behold I am living for ever and ever, and have the Keys of Death and of Hell.

## 2.—UNHAPPINESS IN HELL.

### 1. PAIN OF LOSS.

*Mt* 25, 41-42 Then He shall say to them also that shall be on His left hand : Depart from Me, you cursed, into Everlasting Fire which was prepared for the devil and his angels.—For I was hungry, and you gave Me not to eat : I was thirsty, and you gave Me not to drink.

*Ps* 12, 1-2 How long, O Lord, wilt Thou forget me unto the end ? how long dost Thou turn away Thy Face from me ?—How long shall I take counsels in my soul, sorrow in my heart all the day ?

*Je* 7, 15 I will cast you away from before My Face, as I have cast away all your brethren.

*Dt* 32, 20 I will hide My Face from them.

*Ez* 39, 23-24 Because they forsook Me, and I hid My Face from them : and I delivered them into the hands of their enemies, and they fell all by the sword.—I have dealt with them according to their uncleanness, and wickedness, and hid My Face from them.

*Mi* 3, 4 Then shall they cry to the Lord, and He will not hear them : and He will hide His Face from them at that time, as they have behaved wickedly in their devices.

*Lu* 13, 27 He shall say to you : I know you not whence you are : depart from Me, all ye workers of iniquity.

*2 T* 1, 9 They who obey not the

Gospel shall suffer Eternal Punishment in destruction,

1. From the Face of the Lord,

2. And from the Glory of His Power.

He shall not see the Glory of God. *Is* 29, 16

### 2. PAIN OF SENSE.

Wo be to the nation that riseth up against My people: *Jd* 16, 20-21

for the Lord Almighty will take revenge on them, in the Day of Judgment He will visit them.—For He will give fire, and worms into their flesh, that they may burn, and may feel for ever.

They gnawed their tongues for pain. *Ap* 16, 11

A fire is kindled in my wrath and shall burn even to the lowest Hell.—They shall be consumed with famine, and birds shall devour them with a most bitter bite : I will send the teeth of beasts upon them, with the fury of creatures that trail upon the ground, and of serpents. *Dt* 32, 22-24

Behold they are as stubble, fire hath burnt them, they shall not deliver themselves from the power of the flames: there are no coals wherewith they may be warmed, nor fire that they may sit thereat. *Is* 47, 1

Behold they are as stubble, fire hath burnt them, they shall not deliver themselves from the power of the flames: there are no coals wherewith they may be warmed, nor fire that they may sit thereat.

3. IMPRISONMENT AND CHAINS.

It shall come to pass, that in that Day the Lord shall visit upon the host of heaven on high, and upon the kings

*Is* 24, 21-22

of the earth, on the earth.—  
And they shall be gathered  
together as in the gathering  
of one bundle into the pit,  
and they shall be shut up  
there in Prison.

*Jx 6* The angels, who kept not  
their principality, but for-  
sook their own Habitation,  
He hath reserved under dark-  
ness in Everlasting Chains,  
unto the Judgment of the  
Great Day.

*La 3, 7* He hath built against me  
round about, that I may not  
get out: He hath made my  
fettlers heavy.

*La 3, 9* He hath shut up my way  
with square stones: He hath  
turned my paths upside  
down.

#### 4. ARROWS AND SWORD.

*Dt 32, 41* If I shall whet My sword  
as the lightning, and My  
hand take hold on judgment:  
I will render vengeance to  
My enemies, and repay them  
that hate Me.

*Dt 32, 42* I will make My arrows  
drunk with blood, and My  
sword shall devour flesh, of  
the blood of the slain, and of  
the captivity, of the bare  
head of the enemies.

*Dt 32, 23* I will heap evils upon  
them, and will spend My  
arrows among them.

#### 5. DARKNESS.

*La 3, 6* He hath set me in dark  
places as those who are dead  
for ever.

*Eci 21, 10-12* The congregation of sin-  
ners is like tow heaped to-  
gether, and the end of them  
is a flame of fire.—The way  
of sinners is made plain with  
stones, and in their end is  
Hell, and darkness, and  
pains.—He that keepeth  
justice shall get the under-

standing thereof.

I am counted among them *Pz 87, 5, 7*  
that go down to the Pit: I  
am become as a man without  
help, free among the dead.  
Like the slain sleeping in  
the sepulchres, whom Thou  
rememberest no more: and  
they are cast off from Thy  
hand.—They have laid me in  
the lower Pit: in the dark  
places, and in the shadow of  
death.

Shall any one in the sep- *Pz 87, 12-13*  
ulchre declare Thy Mercy:  
and Thy Truth in destruc-  
tion?—Shall Thy wonders be  
known in the dark: and Thy  
justice in the land of forget-  
fulness?

He hath hedged in my path *Jb 19, 8*  
round about, and I cannot  
pass, and in my way He hath  
set darkness.

Fire hath fallen on them, *Pz 57, 9*  
and they have not seen the  
Sun.

#### 6. SMOKE.

And again they said: *Ap 19, 3*  
Alleluia, and her smoke  
ascendeth for ever and ever.

The smoke of their tor- *Ap 14, 11*  
ments shall ascend up for  
ever and ever: neither have  
they rest day nor night:  
who have adored the beast.

#### 7. STENCH.

They shall go out, and *Is 66, 24*  
see the carcasses of the  
men that have transgressed  
against Me: their worm  
shall not die, and their fire  
shall not be quenched: and  
they shall be a loathsome  
sight to all flesh.

For the indignation of the *Is 34, 2-3*  
Lord is upon all nations, and  
His fury upon all their  
armies: He hath killed  
them, and delivered them to

slaughter.—Their slain shall be cast forth, and out of their carcasses shall rise a stink: the mountains shall be melted with their blood.

*Is* 34, 7-9 Their land shall be soaked with blood, and their ground with the fat of fat ones.—For it is the Day of the Vengeance of the Lord, the year of recompenses of the Judgment of Sion.—And the streams thereof shall be turned into pitch, and the ground thereof into brimstone: and the land thereof shall become burning pitch.

#### 8. HUNGER AND THIRST.

*P* 58, 7 They shall suffer hunger like dogs.

*Lu* 16, 23-24 Lifting up his eyes when he was in torments, He saw Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom:—And he cried, and said: Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, to cool my tongue, for I am tormented in this flame.

*Is* 51, 19 There are two things that have happened to thee: destruction and the famine: who shall comfort thee?

*Ap* 18, 8 Therefore shall her plagues come in one day:

1. Death,
2. And mourning,
3. And famine,
4. And she shall be burnt

with fire:

because God is strong Who will judge her.

#### 9. FOOD AND DRINK.

*Dt* 32, 32-35 Their grapes are grapes of gall, and their clusters most bitter.—Their wine is the gall of dragons, and the venom of asps, which is

incurable.—Are not these things stored up with Me, and sealed up in My Treasures?—Revenge is Mine, and I will repay them in due time.

He shall rain snares upon sinners: fire and brimstone and storms of winds shall be the portion of their cup.

In great battles He shall overthrow them,—For

1. Topheth
2. Is prepared from yesterday,
3. Prepared by the king,
4. Deep
5. And wide,
6. The nourishments thereof are fire and much wood,
7. The breath of the Lord as a torrent of brimstone kindling it.

In the hand of the Lord there is a cup of strong wine full of mixture.—And He hath poured it out from this to that: but the dregs thereof are not emptied: all the sinners of the earth shall drink.

Thus saith the Lord of Hosts, the God of Israel: Take the cup of wine of this fury at My hand: and thou shalt make all the nations to drink thereof unto which I shall send thee.—And they shall drink and be troubled, and be mad, to make them

1. A desolation,
2. And an astonishment,
3. And a hissing,
4. And a curse.

#### 10. OCCUPATION.

They that work iniquity shall be cast into the Fur-

nace of Fire: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

**Mt 25, 30** The unprofitable servant cast ye out into the Exterior Darkness. There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

**Lm 13, 28** There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth: when you shall see Abraham and Isaac and Jacob, and all the Prophets in the Kingdom of God, and you yourselves thrust out.

**Mt 8, 12** The children of the Kingdom shall be cast out into the Exterior Darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

**Ps 1, 26** 11. DERISION AND DISGRACE. I also will laugh in your destruction, and will mock when that shall come to you which you feared.

**W 12, 23, 25** Wherefore Thou hast also greatly tormented them who in their life have lived foolishly and unjustly, by the same things which they worshipped. — Therefore Thou hast sent a judgment upon them as senseless children to mock them.

**Ns 3, 5-6** Behold I come against thee, saith the Lord of Hosts: and I will discover thy shame to thy face, and will show thy nakedness to the nations, and thy shame to kingdoms. — And I will cast abominations upon thee, and will disgrace thee, and will make an example of thee.

**W 4, 18** They shall see him, and shall despise him: but the Lord shall laugh them to scorn.

**W 4, 19** And they shall fall after

this without honour, and be a reproach among the dead for ever: for he shall burst them puffed up and speechless, and shall shake them from the foundations, and they shall be utterly laid waste: they shall be in sorrow, and their memory shall perish.

They shall come with fear at the thought of their sins, and their iniquities shall stand against them to convict them. **W 4, 20**

Wicked men said to God: **Jb 22, 17-20**

Depart from us: and looked upon the Almighty as if He could do nothing: — Whereas He had filled their houses with good things: whose way of thinking be far from me. — The just shall see, and shall rejoice, and the innocent shall laugh them to scorn. — Is not their exaltation cut down, and hath not fire devoured the remnants of them?

Thy nakedness shall be discovered, and thy shame shall be seen: I will take vengeance, and no man shall resist Me. **Is 46, 3**

12. SELF-REPROACH.

Many of those that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake: some unto Life Everlasting, and others unto reproach to see it always. **Ds 12, 2**

If thy eye scandalise thee, pluck it out. It is better for thee with one eye to enter into the Kingdom of God, than having two eyes to be cast into the Hell of fire: — Where their worm dieth not. **Mk 9, 46-47**

13. GRIEF AND SADNESS.

As much as she has glori- **Ap 18, 7**

fied herself and lived in delicacies, so much torment and sorrow give to her.

*Ex* 23, 32-34 Thus saith the Lord God : Thou shalt drink thy sister's cup, deep and wide : thou shalt be had in derision and scorn, which containeth very much.—Thou shalt be filled with drunkenness and sorrow : with a cup of grief and sadness.—And thou shalt drink it up even to the dregs ; and thou shalt devour the fragments thereof.

*La* 3, 11 He hath broken me in pieces, He hath made me desolate.

*P* 17, 6 The sorrows of Hell encompassed me.

#### 14. FRUITLESS REMORSE.

*W* 5, 1-3 Then shall the just stand with great constancy against those that have afflicted them.—These seeing it, shall be troubled with terrible fear.—Saying within themselves, repenting, and groaning for anguish of spirit : These are they, whom we had some time in derision, and for a parable of reproach.

*W* 5, 4-5 We fools esteemed their life madness, and their end without honour.—Behold how they are numbered among the children of God, and their lot is among the Saints.

*W* 5, 7-9 Therefore

1. We have erred from the Way of Truth,
2. And the Light of Justice hath not shined unto us,
3. And the Sun of Understanding hath not risen upon us.
4. We wearied ourselves

in the way of

(a) Iniquity

(b) And destruction,

5. And have walked through hard ways :

6. But the way of the Lord we have not known.

7. What hath pride profited us ?

8. Or what advantage hath the boasting of riches brought us ?

All those things are passed away like a shadow.

#### 15. DESPAIR.

When sudden calamity shall fall on you, and destruction, as a tempest, shall be at hand : when tribulation and distress shall come upon you :—Then shall they call upon Me, and I will not hear :

they shall rise in the morning, and shall not find Me :—Because they have hated instruction, and received not the fear of the Lord.—Nor consented to My counsel, but despised all My reproof.

When I cry and entreat, He hath shut out my prayer. O my God, I shall cry by day, and Thou wilt not hear.

Behold, I shall cry, suffering violence, and no one will hear :

1. He hath stript me of my glory,

2. And hath taken the crown from my head,

3. He hath destroyed me on every side,

4. And I am lost.

5. And He hath taken away my hope, as from a tree that is

*P* 1, 27-30

*P* 21, 3

*Jb* 19, 7-11

plucked up.

6. His wrath is kindled against me,

7. And He hath counted me as His enemy.

*Is* 1, 15 When you stretch forth your hands, I will turn away My eyes from you: and when you multiply prayer, I will not hear.

*Je* 7, 16 Do not thou pray for this people, nor take to thee supplication for them: and do not withstand Me: for I will not hear thee.

*Pt* 18, 42 They cried, but there was none to save them, to the Lord: but He heard them not.

*Pt* 111, 10 The wicked shall see, and shall be angry, he shall gnash with his teeth, and pine away: the desire of the wicked shall perish.

#### 16. SECOND DEATH.

*Ap* 31, 8 They shall have their portion in the pool burning with fire and brimstone, which is the second death.

#### 17. THE ETERNITY OF HELL'S TORMENTS.

The sinners in Sion are afraid, trembling hath seized upon the hypocrites. Which of you can dwell with devouring fire? which of you shall dwell with everlasting burnings? *Is* 33, 14

There came down fire from God out of Heaven, and devoured them: and the devil, who seduced them, was cast into a pool of fire and brimstone, where both the beast—And the false prophet shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever. *Ap* 20, 9-10

They shall go into everlasting punishment. *Mt* 25, 46

The chaff He will burn with unquenchable fire. *Mt* 3, 12

If thy foot scandalise thee, cut it off. It is better for thee to enter lame into Life Everlasting, than having two feet, to be cast into the Hell of Unquenchable Fire. *Mt* 9, 44

There is none that can deliver out of My hand. *Dt* 32, 39

#### 3.—THOSE WHO ARE RESERVED UNTO HELL'S TORMENTS.

*2Pt* 2, 9-10 The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly from temptation, but to reserve the unjust unto the Day of Judgment to be tormented: and especially:—

1. Them who walk after the flesh in the lust of uncleanness,

2. And despise government,

3. Audacious,

4. Pleasing themselves,

5. They fear not to bring in sects,

6. Blaspheming.

*2Pt* 2, 13-14 7. Rioting in their feasts with you,

8. Having eyes full of adultery and of sin that ceaseth not,

9. Alluring unstable souls,

10. Having their hearts exercised with covetousness.

Know ye this and understand that *Ep* 5, 5

1. No fornicator,

2. Nor unclean,

3. Nor covetous person (which is the serving of idols),

hath inheritance in the Kingdom of Christ and of God.

Ro1, 28-32 As they liked not to have God in their knowledge: God delivered them up to a reprobate sense, to do those things which are not convenient,—Being filled with all iniquity,

1. Malice,
2. Fornication,
3. Avarice,
4. Wickedness,
5. Full of envy,
6. Murder,
7. Contention,
8. Deceit,
9. Malignity,
10. Whisperers,
11. Detractors,
12. Hateful to God,
13. Contumelious,
14. Proud,
15. Haughty,
16. Inventors of evil things,
17. Disobedient to parents,
18. Foolish,
19. Dissolute,
20. Without affection,
21. Without fidelity,
22. Without mercy.

Who, having known the justice of God, did not understand that they, who do such things, are worthy of death: and not only they that do them, but they also that consent to them that do them.

Without are

Ap 22, 15

1. Dogs,
2. And sorcerers,
3. And unchaste,
4. And murderers,
5. And servers of idols,
6. And every one that loveth and maketh a lie.

But

Ap 21, 8

1. The fearful,
2. And unbelieving,
3. And the abominable.
4. And murderers,
5. And whoremongers,
6. And sorcerers,
7. And idolators,
8. And all liars,

they shall have their portion in the pool burning with fire and brimstone, which is the second death.

#### 4.—THE INHABITANTS OF HELL; THEIR COMING VISIT TO EARTH.\*

Ap 9, 1-2 And the fifth Angel sounded the Trumpet, and I saw a star fall from Heaven upon the earth, and there was given to him the key of the Bottomless Pit.—And he opened the Bottomless Pit: and the smoke of the Pit arose as the smoke of a

great furnace: and the sun and the air were darkened with the smoke of the Pit.

\*

And from the smoke of the Pit there came out locusts upon the earth. And power was given to them, as the scorpions of the earth hath power.—And it was

Ap 9, 3-4

\* IN 1823 CATH. EMMERICH WROTE, SAYING: "I hear that Lucifer shall be set free for some time, fifty or sixty years before the year two thousand after Christ. Some others shall be let loose sooner for temptations and punishments. In our times we find some already loose, and a little after our time will come others."

commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, nor any green thing, nor any tree: but only the men who have not the sign of God on their foreheads.

*Ap 9, 5* And it was given unto them that they should not kill them; but that they should torment them five months: and their torment was as the torment of a scorpion when he striketh a man.

*Ap 9, 6-7* And in those days men shall seek death, and shall not find it: and they shall desire to die, and death shall fly from them.—And the shapes of the locusts were like unto horses prepared unto battle: and on their heads were as it were crowns like gold: and their faces were as the faces of men.

\*  
And they had hair as the hair of women: and their teeth were as the teeth of lions:—And they had breast-plates as breast-plates of iron, and the noise of their wings was as the sound of chariots of many horses running to battle.

\*  
And they had tails like to scorpions, and there were stings in their tails: and their power was to hurt men five months.

\*  
And they had over them a king, the angel of the Bottomless Pit: whose name,

1. In Hebrew is Abaddon,
2. And in Greek Apollyon;
3. In Latin Exterminans (*that is, Destroyer*).

#### 5.—A WARNING VOICE FROM THE DEPTHS OF HELL.

\*  
*Lu 16, 19* There was a certain rich man, who was clothed in purple and fine linen: and feasted sumptuously every day.

\*  
*Lu 16, 20-21* And there was a certain beggar named Lazarus, who lay at his gate, full of sores,—Desiring to be filled with the crumbs that fell from the rich man's table, and no one did give him: moreover the dogs came and licked his sores.

\*  
*Lu 16, 22-23* And it came to pass that the beggar died, and was

carried by the Angels into Abraham's bosom. And the rich man also died: and he was buried in Hell:—And lifting up his eyes when he was in torments, he saw Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom:

\*  
And he cried, and said: *Lu 16, 24* Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, to cool my tongue, for I am tormented in this flame.

\*  
And Abraham said to *Lu 16, 25-26* him: Son, remember that



thou didst receive good things in thy life-time, and likewise Lazarus evil things : but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented.—And besides all this, between us and you there is fixed a great chaos : so that they who would pass from hence to you, cannot, nor from thence come hither.

\*

Lu 16,27- And he said : Then, fa-  
29 ther, I beseech thee that thou wouldst send him to my father's house :—For I have five brethren, that he

may testify unto them lest they also come into this Place of Torments.—And Abraham said to him : They have Moses and the Prophets ; let them hear them.

\*

But he said : No, Father Lu 16,30-  
Abraham, but if one went 31  
to them from the dead, they will do penance.—And he said to him : If they hear not Moses and the Prophets, neither will they believe if one rise again from the dead.

## PART VII.

### On Heaven.

We conclude our Scripture Text Book with these few words on Heaven, “both because after the Resurrection of the Flesh the only remaining object of hope to the Faithful is the Reward of Everlasting Life ; and in order that that perfect happiness, embracing the fulness of all good may be ever present before our eyes, and that we may be taught to fix thereon all our thoughts and affections.”—*Cat. of C. of T.*

THE *essential* beatitude of Heaven consists in the Intuitive Vision of God. The Saints and Angels participate in this Vision, which *naturally* belongs to God alone, by means of the “light of glory,” which is, according to Lessius, “a supreme irradiation and participation of that light by which God sees Himself, and by which the intellect is elevated to a Divine state and becomes ‘*DEIFORMIS*.’”

The *primary* object of the Beatific Vision is God Himself, and whatever is contained “*formaliter*” in God—that is to say, the Divine Essence, and Attributes, and the Three Divine Persons. But though the

Blessed see God *intuitively*, still, they do not *comprehend* God—that is to say, they do not see God as perfectly as He sees Himself; for the “light of glory” is *finite*, and thus is inadequate for *infinite* knowledge. Nor do all the Blessed see God with a vision which is *equal* in *intensity*; for the intensity of the vision depends upon the “light of glory” which each possesses, and this in turn corresponds to the degree of charity, and charity is possessed in unequal degrees by the Blessed.

The *secondary* object of the Beatific Vision is what is contained in God “*eminenter*”—that is to say, creatures, actual and possible, which are contained in God as in their “*exemplar cause*.” In their vision of God, the Blessed, according to the degree in which they severally possess the “light of glory,” see creatures as thus contained in God.

The *accidental* beatitude of Heaven is summed up in the words of the Apostle, “Glory, honour, and peace to every one that worketh good.”\* After the Resurrection this accidental beatitude will be increased both “*extensive*” and “*intensive*”; “*extensive*,” inasmuch as it will be shared by body as well as by soul, and “*intensive*,” inasmuch as the soul will more rejoice when it sees its body glorified. Whether *essential* beatitude will increase after the Resurrection is a matter of dispute amongst theologians. S. Augustine thinks that it will increase. Speaking of the state before the Resurrection of the beatified soul, S. Augustine says that from its desire for its body “the soul is prevented from directing itself with all its intensity to the Supreme Good.”† S. Augustine’s view is adopted by S. Bernard, Peter Lombard, S. Bonaventure, and

---

\* Ro. 2, 10. † De Gen. ad. litt., lib. 12, c. 35.

Richard of St. Victor. But S. Thomas, though in his "Commentary on the Sentences" he had admitted that the Master's opinion was probable,\* teaches in the "Summa Theologica," which represents his matured wisdom, that "when the body is resumed, [essential] beatitude increases not 'intensive' but 'extensive' only."

**1.—HEAVEN, THE ABODE OF THE GOOD, DESCRIBED  
AS SEEN IN NINE VISIONS.**

**You are come to Mount Zion**

AND TO

**The City of the Living God, the Heavenly Jerusalem,**

AND TO

**The Company of many thousands of Angels,**

AND TO

**The Church of the Firstborn who are written in the Heavens,**

AND TO

**God, the Judge of all,**

AND TO

**The Spirits of the Just made perfect,**

AND TO

**Jesus, the Mediator of the New Testament.**

*He 12, 22-24.*

**IT IS WRITTEN THAT**

**EYE HATH NOT SEEN, NOR EAR HEARD, NEITHER HATH  
IT ENTERED INTO THE HEART OF MAN, WHAT THINGS  
GOD HATH PREPARED FOR THEM THAT LOVE HIM.**

**1 C 2, 9.**

**First Vision.**

**ST. JOHN'S.**

**1. HEAVEN'S DOOR OPENED;  
THE THRONE.**

**I looked, and behold a  
Door was opened in Heaven,**

**and the first Voice which I  
heard, as it were, of a Trum-  
pet speaking with me, said:  
Come up hither, and I will  
show thee the things which**

\* In IV. Sent., dist. 49, q. 1, a. 4. † p.s. q. iv., a. 5, ad 5<sup>m</sup>

must be done hereafter.—  
And immediately I was in  
the Spirit : and behold there  
was a Throne set in Heaven,  
and upon the Throne One  
sitting.

*Ap 4, 3* 2. **HE WHO SITS THEREON.**  
And He that sat, was to  
the sight like the jasper and  
the sardine-stone; and there  
was a rainbow round about  
the Throne, in sight like  
unto an emerald.

*Ap 4, 4* 3. **THE ANCIENTS.**  
And round about the  
Throne were four-and-twenty  
seats : and upon the seats,  
four - and - twenty Ancients  
sitting, clothed in white  
garments, and on their heads  
were crowns of gold.

*Ap 4, 5* 4. **THE SEVEN LAMPS.**  
And from the Throne pro-  
ceeded lightnings, and voices,  
and thunders : and there  
were Seven Lamps, burning  
before the Throne, which  
are the Seven Spirits of  
God.

*Ap 4, 6* 5. **THE SEA OF GLASS.**  
And in sight of the Throne  
was, as it were, a sea of  
glass like to crystal :

*Ap 4, 6-7* 6. **THE LIVING CREATURES.**  
And in the midst of the  
Throne, and round about the  
Throne, were Four Living  
Creatures, full of eyes before  
and behind.

1. And the first living  
creature was like a

lion :

2. And the second living  
creature like a calf :

3. And the third living  
creature, having the  
face, as it were, of a  
man :

4. And the fourth living  
creature was like an  
eagle flying.

7. **HYMNS OF PRAISE ;  
ADORATION.**

And the Four Living *Ap 4, 8-11*  
Creatures had each of them  
six wings ; and round about  
and within they are full of  
eyes. And they rested not  
day and night, saying : Holy,  
Holy, Holy, Lord God Al-  
mighty, Who was, and Who  
is, and Who is to come.—  
And when those Living  
Creatures gave

1. Glory,

2. And honour,

3. And benediction  
to Him that sitteth on the  
Throne, Who liveth for ever  
and ever ;—The four-and-  
twenty Ancients fell down  
before Him that sitteth on  
the Throne, and adored Him  
that liveth for ever and ever,  
and cast their crowns before  
the Throne, saying :—Thou  
art worthy, O Lord our God,  
to receive glory, and honour,  
and power : because Thou  
hast created all things ;  
and for Thy will they were,  
and have been created.

## Second Vision.

ST. JOHN'S.

*Ap 7, 9* 1. **THE GREAT MULTITUDE.**  
I saw a great multitude,  
which no man could number,  
of all nations, and tribes,  
and peoples, and tongues,

1. Standing before the  
Throne,

2. And in sight of the  
Lamb,

3. Clothed with white  
robes,

4. And palms in their hands.

2. THEIR HYMNS OF PRAISE.

*Ap* 7, 10 And they cried with a loud voice: saying: Salvation to our God, Who sitteth upon the Throne, and to the Lamb.

3. THE ANGELIC HOST.

*Ap* 7, 11 And all the Angels stood round about the Throne, and the Ancients and the Four Living Creatures.

4. ADORATION.

*Ap* 7, 11-12 And they fell down before the Throne upon their faces, and adored God, saying: Amen.

1. Benediction,

2. And glory,

3. And wisdom,

4. And thanksgiving,

5. Honour,

6. And power,

7. And strength to our God for ever and ever. Amen.

5. THE WHITE-ROBED ARMY.

*Ap* 7, 13-14 And one of the Ancients answered, and said to me:

These that are clothed in white robes, who are they?

—And I said to him: My lord, thou knowest. And he said to me: These are they who are come out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and have made them white in the Blood of the Lamb.

6. PERPETUAL WORSHIP.

Therefore they are before the Throne of God, and they serve Him day and night in His Temple: and He, that sitteth on the Throne, shall dwell over them.

7. ETERNAL LIFE; ETERNAL PEACE.

They shall no more hunger nor thirst, neither shall the sun fall on them, nor any heat.—For the Lamb, which is in the midst of the Throne, shall rule them, and shall lead them to the Fountains of the Waters of Life, and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

*Ap* 7, 15

*Ap* 7, 16-17

### Third Vision.

ST. JOHN'S.

1. THE HOLY CITY OF JERUSALEM.

*Ap* 21, 9-11 There came one of the Seven Angels, and spoke with me, saying: Come, and I will show thee the Bride, the wife of the Lamb.—And he took me up in spirit to a great and high mountain: and he showed me the Holy City Jerusalem coming down out of Heaven from God,—Having the Glory of God, and the Light thereof was like to a precious stone, as to the jasper stone, even as crystal.

2. ITS WALL AND GATES.

And it had a Wall, great and high, having twelve Gates, and in the Gates twelve Angels, and names written thereon, which are the names of the twelve Tribes of the Children of Israel.

1. On the east, three Gates:

2. And on the north, three Gates:

3. And on the south, three Gates;

4. And on the west, three Gates:

And the Wall of the City

*Ap* 21, 12-14

had twelve foundations, and in them the twelve names of the twelve Apostles of the Lamb.

### 3. ITS DIMENSIONS.

*Ap* 21, 16-17 And he that spoke with me had a measure of a reed of gold, to measure the City and the Gates thereof, and the wall.—And the City lieth in a four-square, and the length thereof is as great as the breadth: and he measured the City with the Golden Reed for twelve thousand furlongs, and the length and the height and the breadth thereof are equal.—And he measured the Wall thereof an hundred forty-four cubits, the measure of a man, which is of an Angel.

### 4. ITS CONSTRUCTION OF GOLD AND PRECIOUS STONES.

*Ap* 21, 18-21 And the building of the Wall thereof was of jasper-stone: but the City itself pure gold, like to clear glass.—And the foundations of the Wall of the City were adorned with all manner of precious stones. The first foundation was

1. Jasper:
2. The second, Sapphire:
3. The third, a Chalcedony:
4. The fourth, an Emerald:
5. The fifth, Sardonix:
6. The sixth, Sardius:
7. The seventh, Chry-

solite:

8. The eighth, Beryl:
9. The ninth, a Topaz:
10. The tenth, a Chrysolite:
11. The eleventh, a Jacobin:
12. The twelfth, an Amethyst.—

And the twelve Gates are twelve pearls, one to each: and every several Gate was of one several pearl. And the street of the City was pure gold, as it were transparent glass.

### 5. THE DIVINITY-TEMPLE.

And I saw no Temple *Ap* 21, 22 therein. For the Lord God Almighty is the Temple thereof, and the Lamb.

### 6. THE LIGHT OF GLORY.

And the City hath no need *Ap* 21, 23 of the sun, nor of the moon, to shine in it. For the Glory of God hath enlightened it, and the Lamb is the Lamp thereof.

### 7. THE INHABITANTS THEREOF.

And the nations shall *Ap* 21, 24-27 walk in the Light of it: and the kings of the earth shall bring their glory and honour into it.—And the Gates thereof shall not be shut by day: for there shall be no night there.—And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it.—There shall not enter into it anything defiled, but they that are written in the Book of Life of the Lamb.

## Fourth Vision.

### ST. JOHN'S.

*Ap* 21, 1 I saw a New Heaven and a New Earth. For the first

heaven and the first earth was gone, and the sea is now no more.

- Ap* 21, 2 And I John saw the Holy City the New Jerusalem coming down out of Heaven from God, prepared as a Bride adorned for her Husband.
- Ap* 21, 3 And I heard a Great Voice from the Throne, saying: Behold the Tabernacle of God with men, and He will dwell with them. And they shall be His people: and God Himself with them shall be their God.
- Ap* 21, 4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes: and death shall be no more, nor mourning, nor crying, nor sorrow shall be any more,
- for the former things are passed away.
- And He that sat on the Throne, said: Behold I make all things new. And He said to me: Write, for these words are most faithful and true.
- And He said to me: It is done: I am Alpha and Omega: the Beginning and the End. To him that thirsteth I will give of the Fountain of the Water of Life, gratis.
- He that shall overcome shall possess these things, and I will be his God: and he shall be My son.

### Fifth Vision.

- Ac* 7, 55 **ST. STEPHEN'S.** He being full of the Holy Ghost, looking up steadfastly to Heaven, saw the Glory of God, and Jesus standing on the right hand of God. And he said: Behold I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God.

### Sixth Vision.

- 2 C* 12, 1-2 **ST. PAUL'S.** If I must glory (it is not expedient indeed): but I will come to the Visions and Revelations of the Lord.—I know a man in Christ above fourteen years ago (whether in the body I know not, or out of the body, I know not, God knoweth): such an one rapt even to the Third Heaven.
- And I know such a man, whether in the body or out of the body, I know not: God knoweth:—That he was caught up into Paradise: and heard secret words, which it is not granted to man to utter.

### Seventh Vision.

- ST. JACOB'S.**
1. **JACOB'S JOURNEY. HE FALLS ASLEEP.**
- Ge* 28, 10-11 Jacob being departed from Bersabee, went on to Haran.—And when he was come to a certain place, and would rest in it after sunset, he took of the stones that lay there, and putting under his head, slept in the same place.

## 2. HIS VISION OF THE LORD AND HIS ANGELS.

*Ge* 28, 14-13 And he saw in his sleep a Ladder standing upon the earth, and the top thereof touching Heaven: the Angels also of God ascending and descending by it,—And the Lord, leaning upon the Ladder, saying to him :

## 3. THE LORD REVEALS HIMSELF.

*Ge* 28, 13-14 I am the Lord God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac : The land, wherein thou sleepest, I will give to thee and to thy seed. —And thy seed shall be as the dust of the earth : thou shalt spread abroad to the west, and to the east, and to the north, and to the south : and in thee and thy seed all the tribes of the earth shall be blessed.

## 4. DIVINE PROMISES TO JACOB.

*Ge* 28, 15 And I will be thy Keeper whithersoever thou goest, and

will bring thee back into this land : neither will I leave thee till I shall have accomplished all that I have said.

## 5. JACOB'S PRAYER ON AWAKING.

And when Jacob awaked *Ge* 28, 16-17 out of sleep, he said: Indeed the Lord is in this Place, and I knew it not.—And trembling, he said: How terrible is this Place ! this is no other but the House of God and the Gate of Heaven.

## 6. HE SETS UP A MEMORIAL STONE.

And Jacob, arising in the morning, took the stone, which he had laid under his head, and set it up for a title, pouring oil upon the top of it. *Ge* 28, 18

## 7. HE CALLS THE PLACE BETHEL.

And he called the name of *Ge* 28, 19 the city Bethel, which before was called Luza.

# Eighth Vision.

## ST. ISAIAS'S.

### 1. THE THRONE OF GOD.

*Is* 6, 1 I saw the Lord sitting upon a throne high and elevated.

### 2. HIS ROYAL TRAIN.

*Is* 6, 1-2 And His train filled the Temple.—Upon it stood the Seraphim : the one had six wings, and the other had six wings: with two they covered

His Face, and with two they covered His Feet, and with two they flew.

### 3. THEIR HYMNS OF PRAISE.

And they cried one to another, and said : Holy, Holy, Holy, the Lord God of Hosts, all the earth is full of His Glory.—And the lintels of the Doors were moved at the Voice of Him that cried. *Is* 6, 3-4

# Ninth Vision.

## ST. DANIEL'S.

### 1. THE ETERNAL FATHER.

*Da* 7, 9 I beheld till Thrones were placed, and the Ancient of

Days sat : His garment was white as snow, and the hair of His head like clean wool: His Throne like flames of



fire: the wheels of it like a burning fire.

## 2. HIS HEAVENLY COURT.

*Da 7, 10* A swift stream of fire issued forth from before Him: thousands of thousands ministered to Him, and ten thousand times a hundred thousand stood before Him: the Judgment sat, and the Books were opened.

## 3. THE VOICE OF THE HORN.

*Da 7, 11-12* I beheld because of the Voice of the great words which that Horn spoke: and I saw that the beast was slain, and the body thereof was destroyed, and given to the fire to be burnt:—And that the power of the other beasts was taken away: and that times of life were appointed them for a time, and a time.

## 4. THE SON OF MAN.

*Da 7, 13* I beheld therefore in the Vision of the night, and lo! One like the Son of man came with the clouds of Heaven, and He came even to the Ancient of Days: and they presented Him before Him.

## 5. A KINGDOM GIVEN TO HIM.

And He gave Him

*Da 7, 14*

1. Power,

2. And glory,

3. And a Kingdom:

and all peoples, tribes, and tongues shall serve Him: His power is an Everlasting Power that shall not be taken away: and His Kingdom, that shall not be destroyed.

## 6. AN INTERPRETATION ASKED.

My spirit trembled, I *Da 7, 15-16* Daniel was affrighted at these things, and the visions of my head troubled me.—I went near to one of them that stood by, and asked the truth of him concerning all these things, and he told me the interpretation of the words, and instructed me.

## 7. AN ANGEL GIVES IT.

These four great beasts *Da 7, 17-18* are four kingdoms, which shall arise out of the earth.—But the saints of the Most High God shall take the Kingdom: and they shall possess the Kingdom for ever and ever.

## 2.—THREE GLIMPSES OF HEAVEN.

### 1. THE TRANSFIGURATION OF CHRIST.

*Mt 17, 1-9* After six days Jesus taketh unto Him

1. Peter,

2. And James,

3. And John

his brother, and bringeth them up into a high mountain apart.

And He was transfigured before them. And His Face

did shine as the sun: and His garments became white as snow.

And behold there appeared to them

1. Moses and

2. Elias

talking with Him.

And Peter answering, said to Jesus: Lord, it is good for us to be here: if Thou wilt, let us make here

three tabernacles :

1. One for Thee,
2. And one for Moses,
3. And one for Elias.

\*

And as he was yet speaking, behold a bright cloud overshadowed them. And lo, a Voice out of the cloud, saying : This is My Beloved Son, in Whom I am well pleased : hear ye Him.

\*

And the disciples hearing, fell upon their face, and were very much afraid.—And Jesus came and touched them : and said to them : Arise, and fear not.

\*

And they lifting up their eyes, saw no one, but only Jesus.—And as they came down from the mountain, Jesus charged them, saying : Tell the Vision to no man, till the Son of man be risen from the dead.

#### 2. THE GLORY OF GOD SHOWN TO ST. EZECHIEL.

\*

*Ez* 43, 1 He brought me to the Gate that looked towards the east.

\*

*Ez* 43, 2 And behold the Glory of the God of Israel came in by the way of the east : and His Voice was like the noise of many waters, and the earth shone with His Majesty.

\*

*Ez* 43, 3 And I saw the Vision according to the appearance which I had seen when He came to destroy the City ; and the appearance was according to the Vision which

I had seen by the river Chobar : and I fell upon my face.

\*

And the Majesty of the Lord went into the Temple by the way of the Gate that looked to the east. *Ez* 43, 4

\*

And the Spirit lifted me up and brought me into the Inner Court : and behold the House was filled with the Glory of the Lord. *Ez* 43, 5

\*

And I heard One speaking to me out of the House, and the man that stood by me, *Ez* 43, 6

\*

Said to me : Son of man, the Place of My Throne, and the Place of the soles of My feet, where I dwell in the midst of the children of Israel for ever : and the House of Israel shall no more profane My Holy Name. *Ez* 43, 7

#### 3. THE GLORY OF GOD SHOWN TO SOLOMON.

\*

It came to pass, when the Priests were come out of the Sanctuary, that a cloud filled the House of the Lord. *3 K* 8, 10

\*

And the Priests could not stand to minister because of the cloud : for the Glory of the Lord had filled the House of the Lord. *3 K* 8, 11

\*

Then Solomon said : The Lord said that He would dwell in a cloud. *3 K* 8, 12

\*

Building I have built a House for Thy Dwelling, to *3 K* 8, 13

be Thy Most Firm Throne  
for ever.

And the king turned his face, and blessed all the assembly of Israel. 3 K8, 14

\*

### 3.—THE GARDEN OF EDEN A TYPE OF THE HEAVENLY PARADISE.

#### 1. THE EARTHLY PARADISE.

*Ge* 2, 8 The Lord God had planted a Paradise of Pleasure from the beginning: wherein He placed man whom He had formed.

#### 2. FOOD OF IMMORTALITY.

*Ge* 2, 9 And the Lord God brought forth of the ground all manner of trees, fair to behold, and pleasant to eat of: the Tree of Life also in the midst of Paradise: and the tree of knowledge of good and evil.

#### 3. THE RIVER OF LIFE.

*Ge* 2, 10-14 And a river went out of the Place of Pleasure to water Paradise, which from thence is divided into four heads.

1. The name of the one is Phison: that is it which compasseth all the land of Hevilath, where gold groweth.—And the

gold of that land is very good: there is found bdellium, and the onyx stone.

2. And the name of the second river is Gehon: the same is it that compasseth all the land of Ethiopia.

3. And the name of the third river is Tigris: the same passeth along by the Assyrians.

4. And the fourth river is Euphrates.

#### 4. MAN PLACED IN THE GARDEN.

And the Lord God took man, and put him into the Paradise of Pleasure, to dress it, and to keep it. *Ge* 2, 15

#### 5. GOD WALKS WITH HIM.

And they heard the Voice of the Lord God walking in Paradise at the afternoon air. *Ge* 3, 8

### 4.—SUPREME HAPPINESS IN HEAVEN.\*

#### I.—Exemption from all Evils.

##### 1. PERENNIAL LIFE.

*Ap* 21, 4 Death shall be no more.  
*Is* 25, 8 He shall cast Death down headlong for ever.

*Jn* 10, 28 They shall not perish for ever.

*Ps* 20, 5 He asked life of Thee: and Thou hast given him length of days for ever and ever.

If any man keep My word he shall not taste death for ever. *Jn* 8, 52

Death is swallowed up in Victory. *1 C* 15, 54

##### 2. PERENNIAL HEALTH.

You shall see and your heart shall rejoice, and your bones shall flourish like an herb, and the hand of the *Is* 66, 13-14

\* More fully treated in Book II. Part I. See p. 170.

- Lord shall be known to His servants.
- Ap* 6, 16 They shall no more hunger nor thirst, neither shall the sun fall on them, nor any heat.
- Je* 31, 12 They shall come and shall give praise in Mount Sion: and they shall flow to the good things of the Lord, and their soul shall be as a watered garden, and they shall be hungry no more.
- Is* 58, 8 Then shall thy light break forth as the morning, and thy health shall speedily arise.
3. NO MORE SORROW.
- Ap* 21, 4 God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes, and death shall be no more, nor mourning, nor crying, nor sorrow shall be any more, for the former things are passed away.
- Ap* 6, 17 God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.
- Is* 35, 10 The redeemed of the Lord shall return, and shall come into Sion with praise, and Everlasting Joy shall be upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and mourning shall flee away.
- Is* 25, 8 The Lord God shall wipe away tears from every face.
- Ps* 29, 12 Thou hast turned for me my mourning into joy: Thou hast cut my sackcloth, and hast compassed me with gladness.
- Is* 45, 17 You shall not be confounded, and you shall not be ashamed for ever and ever.
4. NO MORE NIGHT.
- Ap* 22, 5 Night shall be no more: and they shall not need the light of a lamp, for the Lord
- God shall enlighten them, and they shall reign for ever and ever.
- The Gates thereof shall not be shut by day: for there shall be no night there.
- All you are the children of Light, and children of the day: we are not of the night, nor of darkness.
- The Day is at hand.
- When shall I arise and the night be gone?
- In the night weeping shall have place, and in the morning gladness.
5. DIVINE COMFORT.
- I, I Myself will comfort you.
- As one whom the mother caresseth, so will I comfort you, and you shall be comforted in Jerusalem.
- I will turn their mourning into joy, and will comfort them and make them joyful after their sorrow.
- Blessed are they that mourn: for they shall be comforted.
- Now he is comforted.
6. SAFETY FOR EVER.
- Lay not up to yourselves treasures on earth: where the rust and moth consume, and where thieves break through and steal.—But lay up to yourselves treasures in Heaven: where neither rust nor moth doth consume, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.
- The work of justice shall be peace, and the service of justice quietness, and security for ever.
- No man shall pluck them out of My hand.
- They shall be no more for a spoil to the nations, neither
- Ap* 21, 25  
*1 T* 5, 5  
*Ro* 13, 12  
*Jb* 7, 4  
*Ps* 29, 6  
*Is* 51, 12  
*Is* 66, 13  
*Je* 31, 13  
*Mt* 5, 5  
*Lu* 16, 25  
*Mt* 6, 19  
*Is* 22, 17  
*Jn* 10, 28  
*Ex* 34, 28

shall the beasts of the earth devour them; but they shall dwell securely without any terror.

*Le* 26, 5 You shall dwell in your Land without fear.

*Za* 2, 4 Jerusalem shall be inhabited without walls.

### 7. STABILITY FOR EVER.

*Ap* 3, 12 He that shall overcome I will make him a pillar in the Temple of my God: and he shall go out no more.

*Is* 33, 20 Look upon Sion, the City

of our Solemnity: thy eyes shall see Jerusalem, a Rich Habitation, a Tabernacle that cannot be removed: neither shall the nails thereof be taken away for ever, neither shall any of the cords thereof be broken.

His Kingdom itself shall stand for ever. *Da* 2, 44

My mercy shall not depart from thee, and the Covenant of My Peace shall not be moved: saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee. *Is* 54, 10

## II.—Fruition of all Goods.

### 1.—ESSENTIAL GOODS.

#### 1. THE BEATIFIC VISION.

*Ps* 35, 10 With Thee is the Fountain of Life; and in Thy Light we shall see Light.

*1 J* 3, 2 We know that, when He shall appear, we shall be like to Him: because we shall see Him as He is.

*Ps* 15, 11 Thou shalt fill me with joy with Thy Countenance.

*Ap* 21, 22-24 I saw no temple therein. For the Lord God Almighty is the Temple thereof, and the Lamb.—And the City hath no need of the sun, nor of the moon to shine in it. For the Glory of God hath enlightened it, and the Lamb is the Lamp thereof.—And the nations shall walk in the light of It.

*Ap* 22, 3-4 The Throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it, and His servants shall serve Him.—And they shall see His Face: and His Name shall be on their foreheads.

#### 2. FELLOWSHIP WITH CHRIST.

*7*, 21 To him that shall overcome, I will give to sit with Me in My Throne: as I also have overcome, and am set down

with My Father, in His Throne.

In My Father's House there are many Mansions. If not, I would have told you, that I go to prepare a Place for you.—And if I shall go, and prepare a Place for you: I will come again, and will take you to Myself, that where I am, you also may be. *Jn* 14, 2-3

Father, I will that where I am, they also whom Thou hast given Me may be with Me, that they may see My Glory which Thou hast given Me, because Thou hast loved Me before the foundation of the world. *Jn* 17, 2

The Lamb, Which is in the midst of the Throne, shall rule them. *Ap* 6, 17

I beheld, and lo a Lamb stood upon Mount Sion, and with Him an hundred forty-four thousand having His Name, and the Name of His Father written on their foreheads. *Ap* 14, 1

#### 3. PERFECT SANCTITY.

In their mouth there was *Ap* 14, 5

- found no lie: for they are without spot before the Throne of God.
- Ps 36, 18* The Lord knoweth the days of the undefiled: and their inheritance shall be for ever
- Ap 21, 27* There shall not enter into it any thing defiled.
- He 10, 14* By One Oblation, He hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.
- Is 60, 18* Iniquity shall no more be heard in thy Land, wasting nor destruction in thy Borders, and Salvation shall possess thy Walls, and praise thy Gates.
- Is 60, 21* Thy people shall be all just, they shall inherit the Land for ever, the Branch of My planting, the work of My hand to glorify Me.
- Ap 6, 10* White robes were given to every one of them.
4. ETERNAL LIFE.
- Mt 25, 46* The Just shall go into Life Everlasting.
- Is 45, 17* Israel is saved in the Lord with an Eternal Salvation.
- Mk 10, 30* He shall receive in the world to come Life Everlasting.
- Jn 10, 28* I give them Life Everlasting.
- Ro 6, 23* The grace of God is Life Everlasting.
- 1 J 2, 26* This is the promise which He hath promised us, Life Everlasting.
- 1 J 5, 11* God hath given to us Eternal Life, and this life is in His Son.
- Ga 6, 8* He that soweth in the Spirit, of the Spirit shall reap Life Everlasting.
5. ETERNAL PEACE.
- Is 54, 13* Great shall be the Peace of thy children.
- Is 22, 18* My people shall sit in the Beauty of Peace, and in the
- Tabernacles of confidence, and in wealthy Rest.
- The mountains shall be moved, and the hills shall tremble; but My mercy shall not depart from thee, and the Covenant of My Peace shall not be moved: said the Lord that hath mercy on thee.
- The meek shall inherit the Land, and shall delight in abundance of Peace.
- Thus saith the Lord: Behold I will bring upon her as it were a River of Peace.
- The Kingdom of God is Peace and Joy in the Holy Ghost.
- I will give Peace in your coasts: you shall sleep, and there shall be none to make you afraid.
6. ETERNAL JOY.
- The redeemed of the Lord shall return, and shall come into Sion with praise, and Everlasting Joy shall be upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and mourning shall flee away.
- Everlasting Joy shall be unto them.
- They that are redeemed by the Lord, shall return, and shall come into Sion singing praises, and Joy Everlasting shall be upon their heads, they shall obtain joy and gladness, sorrow and mourning shall flee away.
- They shall rejoice before Thee, as they that rejoice in the harvest, as conquerors rejoice after taking a prey, when they divide the spoils.
- I will see you again, and your heart shall rejoice, and your joy no man shall take
- Is 54, 10*
- Ps 36, 11*
- Is 66, 12*
- Ro 14, 17*
- Le 26, 6*
- Is 35, 10*
- Is 61, 7*
- Is 51, 11*
- Is 9, 3*
- Jn 16, 22*

from you.

### 7. ETERNAL REST.

- Is* 58, 11 The Lord will give thee Rest continually. You shall find Rest to your *Mt* 11, 29 souls.
- Ps* 131, 14 This is my Rest for ever and ever : Here will I dwell, Rest for the people of God. —For he that is entered into his Rest, the same also hath rested from his works, as God did from His.—Let us hasten therefore to enter into that Rest.
- Jb* 3, 17 There the wearied in strength are at Rest.
- Jb* 11, 19 Thou shalt rest, and there shall be none to make thee afraid.
- Ps* 54, 7 Who will give me wings I will give thee Rest. *Ex* 33, 14

## 2.—ACCESSORY GOODS.

### 1. COMPANY OF THE BLESSED.

- He* 12, 22-23 You are come to Mount Zion, to the Company of many thousands of Angels, —And to the Spirits of the just made perfect.
- Ps* 86, 7 The dwelling in thee is as it were of all rejoicing.
- Ps* 132, 1, 3 Behold how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity,—As the dew of Hermon, which descendeth upon Mount Zion. For there the Lord hath commanded blessing, and life for evermore.
- Jn* 11, 51-52 He prophesied that Jesus should die for the nation.—And not only for the nation, but to gather together in One the children of God, that were dispersed.
- Ap* 7, 9 I saw a great multitude which no man could number, of
1. All nations,  
2. And tribes,  
3. And peoples,  
4. And tongues.
2. PERFECT KNOWLEDGE.
- 1 C* 13, 12 We see now through a glass in a dark manner : but then face to Face. Now I know in part : but then I shall know even as I am known.
- In Thy Light we shall see Light.
- He gave some Apostles . . . For the work of the Ministry . . . Until we all meet into the Unity of Faith and of the knowledge of the Son of God unto a perfect man.
- This is Eternal Life, that they may know Thee.
- He will raise us up, and we shall live in His sight. We shall know.
- Thou shalt no more have the sun for thy light by day, neither shall the brightness of the moon enlighten thee : but the Lord shall be unto thee for an Everlasting Light, and thy God for thy Glory.—Thy sun shall go down no more, and thy moon shall not decrease : for the Lord shall be unto thee for an Everlasting Light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended.
3. DIVINE FOOD.
- When one of them that sat at Table with Him, had heard these things, He said to him : Blessed is he that shall eat Bread in the King-
- Ps* 35, 10  
*Ep* 4, 11-13  
*Jn* 17, 3  
*Os* 6, 3  
*Is* 60, 19-20  
*Lu* 14, 15

- dom of God.
- Lu* 22, 29-30 I dispose to you, as My Father hath disposed to Me, a Kingdom :—That you may eat and drink at My Table in My Kingdom : and may sit upon thrones judging the Twelve Tribes of Israel.
- Ps* 35, 9 They shall be inebriated with the plenty of Thy House ; and Thou shalt make them drink of the Torrent of Thy Pleasure.
- Ap* 2, 7 He, that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith to the Churches : To him, that overcometh, I will give to eat of the Tree of Life, which is in the Paradise of My God.
- Ap* 2, 17 To him that overcometh, I will give the Hidden Manna, and will give him a White Counter, and in the Counter a new name written, which no man knoweth but he that receiveth it.
- Ap* 21, 6 To him that thirsteth I will give of the Fountain of the Water of Life gratis.
- Ap* 7, 17 The Lamb shall lead them to the Fountains of the Waters of Life.
4. BRIGHTNESS.
- Da* 13, 3 They that are learned\* shall shine as the brightness of the firmament : and they that instruct many to justice, as stars for all Eternity.
- Mt* 13, 43 Then shall the just shine as the sun in the Kingdom of their Father.
- W* 3, 7 The just shall shine, and shall run to and fro like sparks among the reeds.
- Jb* 11, 17 The Brightness like that of the noon-day shall arise to thee at evening : and when thou shalt think thyself consumed thou shalt rise as the day-star.
5. GLORY AND HONOUR.
- If any man minister to Me, *Jn* 12, 26 him will My Father honour.
- The wise shall possess *Po* 3, 35 glory.
- Glory and honour to every one that worketh good. *Ro* 2, 1)
- The glory which Thou hast given Me, I have given to them. *Jn* 17, 22
- Walk worthy of God Who hath called you unto His Kingdom and Glory. *1 T* 2, 12
- It is sown in dishonour, it shall rise in glory. *1 C* 15, 43
- If any man love Me, My Father will love him. *Jn* 14, 23
- There appeared also another man,† admirable for age, and glory, and environed with great beauty and majesty. *2 M* 15, 13
- When the Prince of Pastors shall appear, you shall receive a never-fading crown of glory. *1 Pt* 5, 1
6. THE VOICE OF HARPERS.
- I saw them that had overcome the beast standing on the sea of glass, having the Harps of God.—And singing the Canticle of Moses the servant of God, and the Canticle of the Lamb. *Ap* 15, 2-3
- I heard a Voice from Heaven, as the Voice of many waters, and as the Voice of great thunder : and the Voice, which I heard, was as the Voice of Harpers, harp-

\* *Learned*—viz. in the law of God and true wisdom, which consists in knowing and loving God.

† I. E. St. Jeremias the Prophet.



- ing on their harps.  
*Ap* 14, 3 And they sung as it were a new Canticle before the Throne, and before the Four Living Creatures, and the Ancients : and no man could say the Canticle but those hundred forty-four thousand, who were purchased from the earth.
- Is* 32, 2 Give praise to the Lord on the Harp.
- Ap* 5, 8 When he had opened the Book, the four Living Creatures, and the four-and-twenty Ancients, fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them Harps, and Golden Vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints.
- Ps* 150, 1, 3 Praise the Lord in His Holy Places.—Praise Him with Psaltery and Harp.
- Ps* 70, 22 O God, I will sing to Thee with the Harp, Thou Holy One of Israel.
7. **FULNESS OF DELIGHT.**
- Ps* 15, 11 At Thy Right Hand are delights even to the end.
- I shall be satisfied when Thy Glory shall appear.
- Blessed is he whom Thou hast chosen, and taken to Thee : he shall dwell in Thy Courts. We shall be filled with the Good Things of Thy House.
- Rejoice with Jerusalem, *Is* 66, 10-11 and be glad with her, all you that love her : rejoice for joy with her, all you that mourn for her.—That you may suck, and be filled with the breasts of her consolations : that you may milk out, and flow with delights from the abundance of her glory.
- Blessed are they that hunger and thirst after justice, for they shall have their fill.
- I will fill the soul of the Priests with fatness, and My people shall be filled with My Good Things, saith the Lord.
- The Lord ruleth me, and I shall want nothing. *Ps* 22, 1

### 5.—HOW HEAVEN IS TO BE WON.

- Mt* 7, 21 Not every one that saith to Me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven : but he that doth the will of My Father, Who is in Heaven, he shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Mt* 11, 12 Jesus said to them ; Suffer the little children, and forbid them not to come to Me : for the Kingdom of Heaven is for such. The Kingdom of Heaven suffereth violence, and the violent bear it away.
- Ps* 14, 1-5 Lord, who shall dwell in Thy Tabernacle, or who shall rest in Thy Holy Hill ?—
1. He that walketh without blemish,
  2. And worketh justice :
  3. He that speaketh truth in his heart,
  4. Who hath not used deceit in his tongue :
  5. Nor hath done evil to his neighbour :
  6. Nor taken up a reproach against his neighbours :
  7. He that sweareth to his neighbour, and deceiveth not,
  8. He that hath not put out his money to usury,
  9. Nor taken bribes against the innocent.

- He that doth these things shall not be moved for ever.
- Pz 64, 5* Blessed is he whom Thou hast chosen and taken to Thee : he shall dwell in Thy Courts.
- Pz 83, 6* Blessed is the man whose help is from Thee : in his heart he hath disposed to ascend by steps in the vale of tears.
- Ap 12, 27* There shall not enter into it anything defiled, but they that are written in the Book of Life of the Lamb.
- Mt 5, 3* Blessed is the poor in spirit, for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Mt 5, 4* Blessed are the meek, for they shall possess the Land.
- Mt 5, 10* Blessed are they that suffer persecution for justice' sake : for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.
- Mt 8, 11* I say to you that many shall come from the east and the west, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob in the Kingdom of Heaven.
- He that hateth his life in this world keepeth it unto Life Eternal.
- The just shall go into Life Everlasting.
- As Moses lifted up the serpent in the desert, so must the Son of man be lifted up : —That whosoever believeth in Him may not perish, but may have Life Everlasting.
- Who shall ascend into the Mountain of the Lord : or who shall stand in His Holy Place?—
1. The innocent in hands,
  2. And clean of heart,
  3. Who hath not taken his soul in vain,
  4. Nor sworn deceitfully to his neighbour.

## 6.—NAMES AND TYPES OF HELL AND HEAVEN.

I CALL HEAVEN AND EARTH TO WITNESS

THIS DAY

THAT I HAVE SET BEFORE YOU

LIFE AND DEATH,

BLESSING AND CURSING.

CHOOSE THEREFORE

**Life,**

THAT BOTH THOU AND THY SEED MAY LIVE.

*Dt 30, 19.*

*Death and cursing.*

- |                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Pz 9, 18</i>  | 1. Hell.                |
| <i>Wt 1, 14</i>  | 2. The Kingdom of Hell. |
| <i>Jb 10, 22</i> | 3. A land of misery.    |

*Life and Blessing.*

- |                           |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1. HEAVEN.                | <i>Jn 3, 31</i>  |
| 2. THE KINGDOM OF HEAVEN. | <i>Mt 8, 11</i>  |
| 3. PARADISE.              | <i>2 C 12, 4</i> |

- |                  |  |  |                   |
|------------------|--|--|-------------------|
| <i>Is</i> 30, 33 | 4. A torrent of brimstone.                 | 4. A TORRENT OF PLEASURE.              | <i>Ps</i> 35, 9   |
| <i>Pv</i> 9, 18  | 5. The depths of Hell.                     | 5. THE HIGH HABITATION OF HEAVEN.      | <i>Da</i> 26, 15  |
| <i>Pv</i> 7, 27  | 6. The chambers of death.                  | 6. A HOUSE OF MANY MANSIONS.           | <i>Jn</i> 14, 2   |
| <i>Is</i> 10, 22 | 7. A land where no order dwelleth.         | 7. A RICH HABITATION                   | <i>Is</i> 33, 20  |
| <i>Jl</i> 3, 14  | 8. The Valley of Destruction.              | 8. A BETTER COUNTRY.                   | <i>He</i> 11, 16  |
| <i>Jb</i> 10, 23 | 9. A land of darkness.                     | 9. THE LAND OF THE LIVING.             | <i>Ez</i> 32, 25  |
| <i>Ez</i> 32, 24 | 10. The land of the dead.                  | 10. THE GLORY TO BE REVEALED.          | <i>1 Pt</i> 5, 1  |
| <i>Mt</i> 25, 30 | 11. The exterior darkness.                 | 11. THE INHERITANCE OF GOD'S SERVANTS. | <i>Is</i> 54, 17  |
| <i>Ez</i> 39, 11 | 12. The valley of the multitude of Gog.    | 12. THE RIGHT LAND.                    | <i>Ps</i> 142, 12 |
| <i>Jb</i> 10, 21 | 13. A land covered with the mist of death. | 13. THE MOUNTAIN OF THE LORD.          | <i>Ps</i> 23, 2   |
| <i>Mt</i> 5, 22  | 14. Gehenna of fire, i.e., Hell-fire.      | 14. THE PARADISE OF MY GOD.            | <i>Ap</i> 2, 7    |
| <i>Mt</i> 13, 42 | 15. A furnace of fire.                     | 15. THE GESSEN OF THE ELECT.           | <i>Ge</i> 45, 10  |
| <i>Mk</i> 9, 40  | 16. The Hell of fire.                      | 16. THE CITY OF THE GREAT KING.        | <i>Ps</i> 47, 3   |
| <i>Ps</i> 20, 10 | 17. An oven of fire.                       | 17. THE CITY OF THE LORD OF HOSTS.     | <i>Ps</i> 47, 9   |
| <i>Ap</i> 20, 15 | 18. The pool of fire.                      | 18. THE CITY OF THE LORD.              | <i>Is</i> 60, 14  |
| <i>Ap</i> 20, 10 | 19. The pool of fire and brimstone.        | 19. THE CITY OF THE HOLY ONE.          | <i>Is</i> 52, 1   |
| <i>Is</i> 33, 14 | 20. Devouring fire.                        | 20. THE CITY OF THE LIVING GOD.        | <i>He</i> 12, 22  |
| <i>Ez</i> 24, 9  | 21. A great bonfire.                       | 21. THE SION OF THE HOLY ONE.          | <i>Is</i> 60, 14  |
| <i>Ap</i> 9, 2   | 22. A great furnace.                       | 22. THE HOLY TEMPLE OF THE LORD.       | <i>Ps</i> 10, 5   |
| <i>Jd</i> 16, 20 | 23. Fire and worms.                        | 23. THE TABERNACLE OF THE LORD.        | <i>Ps</i> 14, 1   |
| <i>Is</i> 34, 9  | 24. Burning pitch.                         | 24. THE HOUSE OF MY MAJESTY.           | <i>Is</i> 60, 7   |
| <i>Ez</i> 24, 3  | 25. A boiling pot.                         | 25. THE HOLY HABITATION OF THE LORD.   | <i>Is</i> 63, 15  |
| <i>Ez</i> 31, 16 | 26. The pit.                               | 26. THE SANCTUARY OF THE LORD.         | <i>Da</i> 26, 15  |
| <i>Ps</i> 54, 24 | 27. The pit of destruction.                | 27. THE PLACE OF MY SANCTUARY.         | <i>Is</i> 60, 13  |
| <i>Lu</i> 16, 28 | 28. The place of torments.                 | 28. THE PLACE OF GOD'S GLORY.          | <i>Is</i> 63, 15  |

- |                   |  |  |                   |
|-------------------|--|--|-------------------|
| <i>Is</i> 24, 22  | 29. The prison.  | 29. THE HOLY PLACE OF THE LORD.                  | <i>Ps</i> 33, 3   |
| <i>Pv</i> 15, 24  | 30. The lowest Hell.                                     | 30. THE LORD'S THRONE.                           | <i>Ps</i> 10, 5   |
| <i>Je</i> 1, 13   | 31. A boiling caldron.                                   | 31. THE TRUE TABERNACLE.                         | <i>He</i> 8, 2    |
| <i>W</i> 17, 13   | 32. The deepest Hell.                                    | 32. THE HIGH AND HOLY PLACE.                     | <i>Is</i> 57, 15  |
| <i>Ez</i> 31, 16  | 33. The lowest part of the earth.                        | 33. A PLACE OF RIVERS.                           | <i>Is</i> 33, 21  |
| <i>Ps</i> 85, 13  | 34. Lower Hell.  | 34. MY INHERITANCE.                              | <i>Ps</i> 15, 5   |
| <i>Ez</i> 39, 11  | 35. The valley of the passengers of the east of the sea. | 35. THE LAND AFAR OFF.                           | <i>Is</i> 33, 17  |
| <i>Pv</i> 15, 11  | 36. Destruction.   | 36. THE WHEAT-BARN.                              | <i>Mt</i> 13, 30  |
| <i>Jl</i> 3, 13   | 37. The wine-press.                                      | 37. THE LOT OF THE SAINTS IN LIGHT.              | <i>Cl</i> 1, 12   |
| <i>Pv</i> 2, 18   | 38. The house of libertines.                             | 38. THE GLORIOUS LIBERTY OF THE CHILDREN OF GOD. | <i>Ro</i> 8, 21   |
| <i>Ps</i> 87, 7   | 39. The dark places.                                     | 39. THE LORD IS THERE.                           | <i>Ez</i> 48, 35  |
| 2 <i>Pt</i> 2, 17 | 40. The mist of darkness.                                | 40. A HEAVENLY COUNTRY.                          | <i>He</i> 11, 16  |
| <i>Ap</i> 2, 11   | 41. The second death.                                    | 41. A TABERNACLE THAT CANNOT BE MOVED.           | <i>Is</i> 33, 20  |
| <i>Jb</i> 10, 21  | 42. A land dark.   | 42. A SECURE ABODE.                              | <i>Mt</i> 6, 20   |
| <i>Mt</i> 3, 12   | 43. Unquenchable fire.                                   | 43. REST FOR EVER AND EVER.                      | <i>Ps</i> 131, 14 |
| <i>Ap</i> 14, 11  | 44. The smoke ascending for ever and ever.               | 44. THE INHERITANCE THAT FADETH NOT AWAY.        | 1 <i>Pt</i> 1, 4  |
| <i>Jb</i> 10, 23  | 45. A land where everlasting horror dwelleth.            | 45. AN INCORRUPTIBLE CROWN.                      | 1 <i>C</i> 9, 25  |
| <i>Mt</i> 25, 41  | 46. Everlasting fire.                                    | 46. AN ETERNAL WEIGHT OF GLORY.                  | 2 <i>C</i> 4, 17  |
| <i>Ju</i> 6       | 47. Everlasting chains.                                  | 47. EVERLASTING REST.                            | <i>Pv</i> 30, 17  |
| <i>Mt</i> 25, 46  | 48. Everlasting punishment.                              | 48. EVERLASTING JOY.                             | <i>Is</i> 35, 10  |
| 2 <i>T</i> 1, 9   | 49. Eternal punishment.                                  | 49. THE EVERLASTING KINGDOM.                     | 2 <i>Pt</i> 2, 4  |
| <i>Is</i> 33, 14  | 50. Everlasting burnings.                                | 50. LIFE EVERLASTING.                            | <i>Jn</i> 10, 28  |
| <i>Za</i> 5, 11   | 51. The Land of Sennaar.                                 | 51. ETERNAL LIFE.                                | <i>Ro</i> 2, 7    |
| <i>So</i> 1, 11   | 52. The Morter.  | 52. THE HOLY CITY.                               | <i>Ap</i> 21, 2   |
| <i>Jb</i> 21, 33  | 53. Cocytus.   | 53. THE CITY OF OUR SOLEMNITY.                   | <i>Is</i> 33, 20  |
| <i>Is</i> 30, 33  | 54. Topheth.   | 54. MOUNT SION.                                  | <i>He</i> 12, 22  |
| <i>Ap</i> 9, 11   | 55. The bottomless pit.                                  | 55. THE PROMISED LAND.                           | <i>He</i> 11, 9   |

7.—The New Jerusalem. *Ap* 21, 2

# ALPHABETICAL INDEX.

- ABSTINENCE**, 856  
**ACKNOWLEDGMENT** of sin necessary for its forgiveness, 786  
**ACTIONS** to be done for God's Glory, 19J  
**ACTS**, judicial, 348  
**ADAM** and Eve, marriage of, 820  
**ADMONITIONS** to the worshippers of the false christ, 752; brotherly admonition illustrated, 309  
**ADORATION**, perpetual, 719; nocturnal, 720; prostrate, 731, 899  
**ADORERS**, union of, 720  
**ADULTERERS** punished, 354  
**ADULTERY**, gravity of, 352; punished in body and soul, 353; exhortation to shun, 352  
**ADULTS**, helps of grace given sufficiently to, 209; baptism of, 669  
**ADVERSITY**, ejaculations for times of, 377  
**ADVICE** to judges, 349  
**ÆNON**, 163  
**ALLUSIONS** to Christ, 85  
**ALMSGIVING**; to whom given; how given, 300; when given; how often to be given; fruits of, 301; blessings of; cancels sin; remits penalty of sin, 302; brings riches and honours; exhortation to, 303, 860; Examples of, 304  
**AMBITION**, 459  
**ANANIAS** and Saphira, 545  
**ANGELS**, creation, nature and office of good, 40; invocation of; honour paid to, 43  
**ANGELS**, bad, work miracles; instruments in God's hands; powerless to inflict evil unless by God's permission; appear as angels of light, 47; their sin and punishment, 44, 45; power of, 45  
**"ANGELUS,"** the, 735  
**ANGER**, grievousness of, 462; effects of; wrongful; examples of, 463; examples of right and wrong, 464; Divine, 464; prayers for averting, 464; penance appeases God's, 788  
**ANNUNCIATION**, 135  
**ANTICHRIST**, persecution of, 642  
**APOCALYPSE**, analysis of, 722; visitation by fire foretold in the, 761  
**APOSTASY**, 264; warnings against, 399  
**APOSTLES**, 518; foreshadowed, 520; Christ's commands to, 522  
**APOTHECARY**, 796  
**APPENDIX** to the ten commandments, 852  
**ARIAS MONTANUS**, 157  
**ARISTOTLE** (*footnote*), 470  
**ARROGANCE**, 459  
**ASCENSION**, our Lord's, 110  
**ASENETH**, 153  
**ASHES**, 735  
**ASPIRATIONS** of one desiring to keep the law; of one seeking light and grace to keep the law of God perfectly, 205, 206  
**AUGURIES**, 389  
**AUTHORITY**, faith rests on Divine, 255  
**AVARICE**, how great and common a sin, 410; the curse of nations; brings sorrow, trouble, eternal damnation, 412; darkens the mind; corrupts the heart, 413; punishment of, 415; examples of, 416  
**AVARICIOUS** man, ever longing but not satisfied, 413  
**"AVE MARIA,"** 736  
**BABBLERS**, 746  
**BAPTISED**, the, names and titles of, 669  
**BAPTISM**, 658; circumcision a type of, 659; St. John's, 165, 662; our Lord's, 165, 663; spiritual significance of, 663; names and types of, 666; ceremonies of, 667; of adults, 669; for the dead, 874  
**BABYLON**, type of anti-christian world, 762  
**BARUCH**, 189  
**BEATIFUL VISION**, 907  
**BEATITUDE** in the intellect, 171  
**BEAUTY** of Christ, 62; of charity, 220; of mercy, 298  
**BELL**, sanctuary, 718  
**BENEDICTION** of the Blessed Sacrament, 719  
**"BENEDICTUS,"** the, 159  
**BENJAMIN**, 155  
**BETHANIA**, 163  
**BETHLEHEM**, 137  
**BLASPHEMY**, evils of; examples of, 350

- BLESSED**, the, dignity of, 173; power, honour, and glory of, 173
- BLESSED SACRAMENT**, the, institution of, 676; foreshadowed by Prophets, 678; promised by our Lord; His teaching concerning It, 680; celebrated by the Apostles, 682; benefits of, 684; names and titles of, 685; supreme worship due to; Divine praises due to, 687; invitation to bring honour and glory to, 693; Reservation of the, 713; Benediction of; Perpetual Adoration of, 719; Processions of, 731; other types and names of, 731; denial of, 737; sins that led to the denial of, 739; foretold by St. Jeremias, 94
- BLESSED VIRGIN**, lineage; Immaculate Conception; Nativity; Virginity; Espousals, 134; Annunciation, 135; visit to St. Elizabeth; Magnificat, 136; journey to Bethlehem; birth of her Son, 137; Presentation; Her sorrow; journey to Nazareth, 138; flight from Herod; Her return from Egypt; journey to Jerusalem, 139; loss and finding of her Son, 140; Her power with her Son at Cana, 140; goes to Capharnaum, Her praises proclaimed, 141; stands by Cross; Her sorrows; Her prayer in Upper Chamber; Her Glory in Heaven, 141; characteristics and virtues of, 142; prophetic types and figures of, 143; sorrows of, 144; Rosary of, 145
- BLESSEDNESS** of those who die in the Lord, 869
- BLESSINGS**, misuse of, 215
- BLINDNESS**, sin causes, 236
- BLOOD**, PRECIOUS, 23
- BLOTTING OUT** of sin, 838
- BOASTING**, 460
- BODY** of man weak and mortal, 49; sin disastrous to, 232; miseries of, 55; blessings of wisdom in the, 327; qualities of a glorified, 172
- BOILING POT**, 760
- BOOKS** of Holy Scripture, 499; Apocryphal, 500; rejected, 515; of Life, 29
- BREATHING**, the, 666
- BREVITY** of life, 834
- BRIBERY**, examples of, 346
- BRIGHTNESS**, 910
- BROTHERHOOD** of the Divine Expiation, object of the; motive of the life of the, 784; chief work of the, 675, 719; what Leo XIII. says about the, 784; rules of the, 784
- CALAMITIES** of our times, 766
- CALENDAR** of Scripture Saints, 632
- CALUMNY** forbidden; mischief and punishment of, 362; examples of punishment of, 363; ejaculations of the soul against, 364
- CANA**, 140
- CATALOGUE** of sins, 826
- CAUSE** of war, 314
- CELIBACY** of Priests, 814
- CEREMONIES**, 717
- CERTITUDE** of faith, 256
- CHARITY** of Christ, 62; perfection and excellence of, 279; value, splendour and beauty of; proof of; fruits and rewards of, 280; precepts of 281; punishment of sinning against; towards our neighbour, 281; duty of practising, 282; examples of, 285, 286; prayers for, 288; acts and effects of, 289; predisposing cause of sanctifying grace, 215; sanctification by, 839
- CHASTITY**, praises of, 401; 444
- CHILDREN**, their duty to parents, 392; examples of pious and dutiful, 393
- CHRISM**, 667
- CHRIST**, Incarnation of, 59; First-Begotten, Head and Prince of all creatures, 60; King, 60; Saviour, 61; characteristics of, 86; His life as typified by St. Jeremias, 89; charity, grace, knowledge and beauty of, 62; poverty of, 63; as High Priest and Mediator, 63; Divine Expiation of, 65; His love for suffering; perfect obedience of, 64; merit of, 65; redemption of; appointed Judge, 66; allusions to, 85; preaching of, 91; teachings of, 100; resurrection of, 103, 103; ascension of, 110; visible coming of, 112; worship of, 113; our Judge, 881; tabernacle of, 714
- His names and titles  
as the SON OF GOD, 68  
as GOD, 69  
as the WORD, 71  
as the MAN, 73  
as JESUS, 75  
as the TREE OF LIFE, 77  
as the LIGHT, 78  
as the ROCK, 79  
as the TEMPLE, 80  
as the GIFT OF GOD, 81  
as CAPTAIN OF SALVATION, 83  
as the MESSIAS, 84
- CHURCH**, Christ the builder, Head and invisible Rock of the, 517; foundations of, 518; Peter visible rock of the, 525; the mystical body of

- Christ, 554; Holy Spirit in relation to the, 556; Pastors of the, 561; One; Holy, 567; Catholic, 563; Apostolic, 571; Infallible, 572; Impregnable; Names and characteristics of the, 573; Guardian General of, 614; final triumph of, 645; in Purgatory, 647; triumphant, 649; Prayer for the, 650; power of bad angels directed against the, 45; glories and privileges of the, 573
- CICERO (*footnote*), 470
- CIRCUMCISION of St. John Baptist, 159
- COMBAT, Heaven to be won by, 179
- COMMANDMENTS, keeping of the, 849; the ten, 830; appendix to the ten, 852; God requires obedience to the, 852; possible in practice, 853
- COMMUNION with saints, 627
- CONCORD, loveliness, utility, sweetness of, 297; examples of, 293
- CONDITION of labour, 50
- CONFESSION, penitential, 775; humble, 792
- CONFIDENCE of the just, 843; examples of, 276
- CONFIRMATION, Sacrament of, 671
- CONFORMITY of the Blessed Virgin to God's Will, 142
- CONFRATERNITY of the Divine Expiation, motto of the, 8.0
- CONSCIENCE, strength of, 204
- CONSECRATION, unleavened bread used for, 683
- CONSOLATION in God; flows from God, 291; promise of, 292; fruits of, 292; prayers for, 293
- CONSPIRACIES, instances of, 315
- CONSTANCY of the martyrs, 471
- CONTEMPLATION, 378; peace of mind, and purity of heart necessary for, 389; effects and fruits of, 380
- CONTINENCE, 444
- CONTRACT, marriage an indissoluble, 818
- CONTRASTS between the just and the unjust, 343; between wise and foolish talkers, 427
- CONVERSION, exhortation to, 249; hindered by bad angels, 47
- CONVERSIONS made by St. Peter, 541
- CONVICTION, orthodox faith rests not on human, 255
- CO-OPERATOR, God as, 40
- CORRECTION to be practised privately and publicly, 305; exhortations to, 306; faulty modes of, 307; fruits of, advantages of, 308; of the just, 432
- COUNSEL, causes and effects of, 336; to be asked; from whom; not to be sought from many, 337; of the wicked shall perish, 338
- COUNSELLORS, 339
- COUNSELS of Virginity, 402; of perfection, 225
- COUNTRY, prayers for conversion of our, 651
- COURAGE, want of, 57
- COVETOUS MAN, wrongs himself; ruins his own life, 414
- COVETOUSNESS, examples of, 413
- COWARDS forfeit Heaven, 180
- CREATION of angels, 40; of man, 48
- CREATOR, the, 37
- CREATURES, Christ the head of all, 60; sin the turning from God to, 231; not the object of Eternal bliss, 170
- CRIES of a soul yearning after the fear of God, 229; of a sinner grieving over sins, 251; for peace, 296; of a soul seeking wisdom, 332; of a soul craving for perseverance, 481
- CROSS, Christ's victory and triumph of, 65; stations of, 126; Mary at foot of the, 141
- DEATH, of Jesus, 105; the ordering of God for all, 861; a time appointed for; preparation for, 863; of sinners, 866; not to be feared, 868; desired by the good, 869; examples of saintly, 870; sin hastens, 241
- DECEIT, implety of, 357; examples of, 384
- DECEIVER injurious to himself; hated by God, 359
- DEEDS, fruits of good and evil, 189
- DEGENERACY of these latter days, 641
- DENIAL of the Blessed Sacrament, 737; sins that led to His, 739
- DESOLATION of spirit, 763; prayer in, 767; of the sanctuary, 769
- DESPAIR, the end of, 240; bitter fruits of, 277
- DESTRUCTION of the Sanctuaries, 740
- DESTRUCTION of vice, 229
- DETRACTION, effects, injury and harm of, 359; forbidden, 360
- DETRACTOR, what he may be compared to, 359; to be prayed for, 361; punished, 361
- DEVASTATION by fire, 761
- DEVIL, sin subjects the soul to the, 235
- DEVOTION to Sacred Humanity, 127; of Seven Dolours, 144
- DIGNITY of the soul, 49; of the Blessed, 173
- DINNERS-OUT, 439
- DISCIPLES, Christ's instructions to the

- seventy-two, 524
- DISCORD**, causes, consequences and examples of, 313
- DISOBEDIENCE**, gravity and punishment of, 406
- DISTORTERS** of Scripture, 746
- DIVINATION**, 489
- DIVORCE** forbidden, 818
- DOERS** of the law, rewards to, 200
- DREAMS** of Joseph, 152
- DRUNKENNESS**, warnings against, 438; examples of, 439
- DUTY**, neglect of, 188; of practising charity, 282
- DWELLING-PLACE** of Christ, 714
- DYING**, devotions for the, 807
- EGYPT**, 139, 150, 154
- EJACULATIONS** of praise and love, 132; of one desiring Heaven, 182; for one keeping the law in the face of death; of one offering good works to God, 207; of one yearning for grace, 222; to increase grace in the soul, 261; against heresy and heretics, 269; of a hopeful soul, 276; to excite charity, 288; of a soul imploring Divine judgment, 350; for pardon of sin, 376; for times of adversity; of supplicants imploring a hearing, 377
- ELECTION**, 26; to glory, 28
- ELIAS**, ST., 57, 160; coming of, 644
- ELIZABETH**, ST., 135, 158
- EMBLEMS** from the Old Testament, 117; from New Testament, 115; of Holy Scripture, 511; of sin, 828; of the wicked, 835; of the reunion of Christendom, 780
- EMMERICH**, SISTER, 103; prophecy of, 893
- END** of man, 170; of the world, 112
- ENDURANCE** under suffering, 491
- ENVY**, causes and effects of, 311, exhortations to shun; examples of, 312; of the bad angels, 45
- EQUALITY** of the Three Persons of the Blessed Trinity, 36
- ESPUSALS** of Blessed Virgin, 135
- ETERNAL FATHER**, Prayer of our Lord to the, 167
- EVANGELISTS**, the, 519
- EVIL**, sin hardens the soul in, 238
- EVIL-SPEAKING**, effects and injury of, 364; examples of, 364
- EXAMPLES** of heroic faith, 260; of unbelief, 263; of charity, 285, 286; of true friendship, 288; of concord, 298; of hospitality, 299; of almsgiving, 304; of selfishness, 304; of loving reproof, 307; of uncharitableness, 310; of spiritual sloth, 311; of envy, 312; of discord, 313; of scandal, 321; of wisdom, 324; of prudence, 336; of bribery, 346; of good and evil judges, 350; of murder; of homicide; of mutilation; of suicide, 352; of sacrilegious robbery; of robbery, 356; of calumny, 363; of evil-speaking, 364; of pray r., 375; of meditation, 382; of perjury, 384; of blasphemy, 390; of dutiful children, 393; of repentance, 399; of obedience, 408; of liberality and zeal, 410; of avarice, 415; of covetousness, 413; of gratitude, 418; of ingratitude, 421; of wise speech, 427; of intemperance, 440; of humility, 453; of pride, 459; of meekness, 461; of wrongful anger, 463; of zeal, 464; of lukewarmness, 469; of fortitude, 473; of patience, 774; of murmuring, 478; of inconstancy, 482; of persecutors, 483; of the persecuted, 491; of lovers of Holy Scripture, 509; of unbelievers in God's Word, 515; of penitents, 790; of various kinds of sin, 827; of saintly deaths, 870
- EXCELLENCE** of charity, 279
- EXHORTATIONS** to increase in grace, 221; to aim at virtue, 224; to root up vice; to conquer passions, 230; to conversion, 249; to live a life worthy of Faith, and to persevere therein, 258; to hope in God, 273; to seek peace, 295; to almsgiving, 303; to shun envy, 312; to wisdom, 331; to repentance, 399; to humility, 451; to patience, 475; to perseverance, 480; to Priests, 815; to the married, 818
- EXORCISM**, 667
- EXTREME UNCTION**, 794
- EZECHIAS**, the sickness of, 793
- EZECHIEL**, ST., the Glory of God shown to, 904
- FAITH**, orthodox; rests not on human conviction; but on Divine authority, 255; nature, stability, and certitude of, 256; unity, necessity and utility of; as living and dead, 257; live a life worthy of; persevere therein, 258; to be professed inwardly and outwardly, 259; examples of heroic, 260; obstacles and helps to, 263; apostasy from, 264; sanctification by, 339; predisposing cause of sanctifying grace, 215
- FAITHFUL**, the, power of the bad angels directed against, 45



- FALL**, the man before the, 50; after the, 50
- FALSE CHRISTS**, foretold by Christ; His warnings against them, 748; in the temples of Christ; Divine honours paid to them, 749; who are seduced by the, 750; origin of the, 751; contrasted with the true Christ, 752; admonitions to the worshippers of the, 785; names and types of the, 754
- FAME**, sin destroys, 242
- FASTING**, 856; advantages and examples of, 441
- FEAR**, of God, first step to virtue and wisdom, 226; effects of, 227; examples of God-fearing men, 228; cries of soul yearning after the, 229; saving effects of, 277; wholesome 841; sin begets, 239
- FEAST-DAYS**, 386; of the Jews, 387
- FELLOWSHIP** with Christ, 907
- FIDELITY**, 428
- FIG-TREE**, the withered, 533
- FINDING**, the, of Jesus, 140, 150
- FOLLY**, fruits of, 340
- FORGETFULNESS** of God's benefits, 419; affability, 422
- FORGIVENESS** of sin, 838
- FORTITUDE**, 470
- "FORTY HOURS,"** the; meditations for each hour, 721
- FRAILTY** of life, 864
- FREE-WILL**, no sin without the action of, 863; use of, 183
- FRUITS** of observance of the Law, 199; of good and evil deeds, 189
- GABRIEL**, ST., 135, 616
- GALILEE**, 140
- GAMALIEL**, 547
- GARMENT**, white, 668
- GENERAL COUNCIL** of Jerusalem, 553
- GESSEN**, land of, 155
- GIFT** of Wisdom, 323
- GLASS**, the sea of, 898
- GLIMPSES** of Heaven, 903
- GLORY**, of God, all right actions done for, 190; wisdom brings, 328; grace done the pledge of future, 220
- GLUTTONY**, 438
- GOD**, names of; essence and existence of; simplicity and incorporeality of, 2; unity and goodness of; Truth and Life, 3; perfections of; infinity of, 4; immensity of, 5; immutability of, 6; eternity and incomprehensibility of, 7; unutterableness of, known by things, 8; Beatific Vision of; knowledge of, 9; omniscience of, 11; irresistible will of, 13; will of, antecedent and consequent, conditional and absolute, 14; omnipotence of, 15; justice of, 16; mercy of, 19, 21; love of, 21; loves specially the just, 27; Providence of, 24; as Creator, 37; as Ruler and Preserver, 39; as Co-operator and Helper, 40; as Saviour and Redeemer, 40; the end of all things; the object of eternal bliss, 170; the Supreme Lawgiver, 197; the efficient, meritorious, and final cause of grace, 214; as the First Truth, 253; examples of charity towards, 285; hatred of, 310; the author of wisdom, 324; man's duties to, 363; obedience to, 403
- GOOD EXTERNAL**, God freely wills, 14
- GOOD WORKS**, incentives to the practice of, 184; precepts as to, 185; sanctification by, 840; integrity and perfection of, 847; reward of increasing grace and prosperity follow on, 848
- GOODNESS**, exterior, 187
- GRACE**, of Christ, 62; aspirations for, 205; preventing and helping, 208; sufficient and efficacious; helps of, 209; no sinner destitute of, 210; sufficient given to all, but not in equal measure, 210; necessity of, 211; co-operating, 212; actual necessity of, 213; God the efficient, meritorious, and final cause of, 214; sanctifying, pre-disposing cause of, 215; correspondence to actual and habitual grace, 215; habitual; actual; not equal in all, 215; man knows not with certainty if he be in a state of grace, 216; moral certainty of being in, 217; confers a quasi-divine existence, 217; blots out sin, 219; does not destroy, but heals and restores nature, 219; pledge of glory; principle and cause of merit; incitement to hold fast to, 220; exhortation to increase in, 221; promised to penitents, 248
- GRACE** at table, 736
- GRATITUDE**, 416, 417; examples of, 418
- GUARDS** of the Temple, 720
- GUILTY**, the, God will not treat them as innocent, 756
- HABIT**, force of, 203
- HAPPINESS** in Heaven, 905
- HARPERS**, voice of, 910
- HATRED** of God and our neighbour vices opposed to charity, 310; of sin, 830

- HEALTH** of soul, 219; lust robs man of, 447; perennial, 906
- HEART**, purity of, 190; commended, 194
- HEAVEN**, splendour and beauty of, 174; magnitude and multitude of celestial goods in, 174; variety of rewards in, 175; enjoyment without weariness in, 175; purity of joy in, 176; safety without anxiety in, 177; sure way to obtain, 177; the reward of labour; not bestowed without grace; to be won by combat, 178; to be won only when life's combat is over, 179; given to those who fight and win lawfully, 179; forfeited by the wicked, 180; yearnings after, 181; Church triumphant in, 649; Christ's glory in, 108; as seen in nine visions: 1st Vision, 897; 2nd Vision, 898; 3rd Vision, 899; 4th Vision, 900; 5th Vision, 901; 6th Vision, 901; 7th Vision, 901; 8th Vision, 902; 9th Vision, 902; three glimpses of, 903; supreme happiness in, 905; how to win, 911; names and types of, 912
- HELIOPOLIS**, Priest of, 153
- HELL**, the abode of the wicked, 885; figures of; the punishment of; keys of, 886; unhappiness in, 887; pain of loss in, 887; pain of sense in, 887; imprisonment and chains in, 887; arrows and sword in, 888; darkness in, 888; smoke in, 888; stench in, 888; hunger and thirst in, 889; food and drink in, 889; occupation in, 889; derision and disgrace in, 890; self-reproach in, 890; grief and sadness in, 890; fruitless remorse in, 891; despair in, 891; second death in, 892; the eternity of hell torments, 892; who are reserved for the torments of, 892; inhabitants of, 893; a warning voice from the depths of, 894
- HELPER**, God as our, 40
- HENOCH**, coming of, 644
- HERESY**, prayers against, 269
- HERETICS** typically described, 265; how generated, 266; ignorance, pride, and obstinacy of, 266; to be shunned and punished, 267; from apostolic times existence of; characteristics of, 268; prayers against, 269
- HEROD**, 139, 150; banquet of; imprisons John the Baptist, 13; beheads him, 166
- HERODIAS**, 166
- HIERARCHY**, Angelic, 42; Ecclesiastical, 563
- HIGH-PRIEST**, Christ the, 63
- HOLY GHOST**, true God; consubstantial with the Father and Son, 35; proceeds from them, 35
- HOLY IMAGES**, 631
- HOLY ORDER**, sacrament of; Divine institution of, 814
- HOLY SCRIPTURE**, books of, 499; Divinely inspired, 501; the interpreter of, 503; text-book of priests read to the people, 504; to be studied, how, 507; laws as to reading, 507, excellency, advantages, fruits of; examples of lovers of, 509; names and emblems of, 511; denial, alteration and misinterpretation of, 512; unbelievers of; prayers to understand; rejected portions of, 515; dis torters of, 746
- HOLY WATER**, 718, 734
- HOLY WEEK**, lessons read in, 129
- HOME**, the invitation, 773; promises made to returners, 779
- HOMICIDE**, 351; examples of, 352
- HONOUR** paid to angels, 43; to saints, 627; wisdom brings, 328; unjust injury of, 359; sin destroys, 242; lust destroys, 447
- HONOURS**, alms brings, 303
- HOPES**, fruits of; its kinds, 271; exhortation to, 272; of the just, 272; examples of, 276; sanctification by, 839; predisposing cause of sanctifying grace, 215
- HORN**, voice of the, 903
- HOSPITALITY**, examples of, 299
- HUMAN ACTIONS**, whether good or bad, do not intrinsically affect God, 196
- HUMAN CONSOLATION**, vain and unstable, 293
- HUMAN PRUDENCE**, uncertain, deceitful, 334; of the wicked condemned, 335
- HUMANITY**, devotion to the sacred, 127
- HUMILITY**, acts of, 449; effects of, 450; path to glory; science of the saints; exhortation to, 451; examples of, 452
- HYPOCRISY**, 192; effects of, 193; hated by God, 194; soon detected, 194; examples of, 194; forbidden, 194
- IDLENESS**, its consequences, 54
- IDOLATRY**, objects of, 823
- IGNORANCE**, sin causes, 236; of heretics, 266; man's, 55; sin arising from 825
- IMAGERIES** from the Old Testament,

- 117; from New Testament, 115  
**IMMACULATE CONCEPTION** of the Blessed Virgin, 134  
**IMMORTALITY** of the soul, 49  
**IMPATIENCE**, penalties of, 478  
**IMPRUDENCE**, fruits of, 640  
**IMPURITY**, gravity of, 352  
**INCARNATION** of Christ foretold and longed for, 59  
**INCENSE**, 717, 734  
**INCENTIVES** to the practice of good works, 184  
**INCONTINENT** to hold fast to grace, 220  
**INCONSTANCY** of sinners; of angels; examples of, 432  
**INCONTINENCE**, 444  
**INDECISION**, examples of, 467  
**INFALLIBILITY**, Papal; doctrine of; definition of, 5-2  
**INGRATITUDE**, effects of, 419; examples of, 421  
**INHABITANTS** of Hell, 893  
**INJURY** of reputation and honour, 359  
**INJUSTICE** forbidden; judged and punished, 344; of judges and magistrates visited by God, 345; accidental, 354  
**INTEGRITY** of good works, 847  
**INTELLECT**, formal beatitude in the, 171  
**INTEMPERANCE**, harmful to the soul, 436; injurious to the body, 437; fruits of, 439; examples of, 440  
**INTENTION**, purity of, 190; evil, 191  
**INTERCESSION** of Saints, 627  
**INTRODUCTION** on God, 1; on the Blessed Trinity, 31; on God as the efficient cause of all things, 37; on the Messiah, 58; on the Mother of God, 133; on St. Joseph, 148; on God our last end, 169; on Free-will, 183; on external and internal law, 196; on actual and habitual grace, 208; on virtue, vice, and sin in general, 223; on theological and cardinal virtues and their contrary vices, 253; on Divine Faith and contrary virtues, 254; on hope and the contrary vices, 270; on charity and its opposite vices, 278; on prudence and its contrary vices, 335; on justice and the contrary vices, 341; on religion and other virtues connected with justice which bind legally, 368; temperance and the virtues connected with it, and the contrary vices, 435; fortitude and the virtues connected with it, and the contrary vices, 469; on the Word of God, 495; on the Church, 516; on the Sacraments of the Church, 654; on the Blessed Sacrament, 672; on penance, 781; on sin, 820; on justification, 836; on merit, 845; on death, 861; on judgment, 876; on Hell, 883; on Heaven, 895  
**INVITATION** Home, 773  
**INVOCATION** of angels, 43; of saints, 627  
**ISAIAS, ST.**, vision of, 902  
**JEREMIAS, ST.**, a type of Christ; sanctified before birth, 89; made a Prophet unto the nations, 90; prayer and penance of, 98, 99; a man of sorrows, 105; a victim of expiation, 107; persecuted, 91; put into the stocks; beaten; cast into prison; poisoned, 107; foretells the Incarnation, 89; foretells the Blessed Sacrament, 94, 95; gladness of heart of, 94; vision of, 102; ecstasy of, 101; the ark hidden by, 95; his zeal for the Temple of God, 56; prophetic warnings of, 103; is carried off to Egypt, 91; the first to preach the true Sacrifice of expiation, 108; appears in glory and majesty, 109; gives a golden sword to Judas Machabeus, 93; a lover of his brethren, 96; lamentations of, 129  
**JEROME, ST.**, on the resurrection (*see footnote*), 875  
**JERUSALEM**, Pasch at, 139, 150; rebuilding of, 775, 899  
**JEWS**, Feasts of the, 387  
**JOHN, ST., BAPTIST**, foretold; parents of; birth of; name of, 157; sanctified before birth; use of reason yet unborn; his leap of joy, 158; circumcision of; austere life of; abstains from wine; called Elias, 160; preaching of, 162; popularity of; taken for Jesus, 162; teaches prayer, 163; baptism of, 164; baptises Christ, 165; rebukes Herod; cast into prison; beheading of; burial of, 166; glory of, 167  
**JOHN THE EVANGELIST**, vision of, 897 to 900  
**JORDAN**, 163  
**JOSEPH, ST.**, Pedigree of; Husband of Mary; Father of Jesus; trials of; journey to Bethlehem, 149; hidden life of, 149; warned by an Angel; flees into Egypt; return of; his loss and finding of Jesus, 150; characteristics and virtues of, 151; glory of, 151, 135  
**JOSEPH THE PATRIARCH**, type of

- St. Joseph; his greatness foretold in vision; carried into Egypt; royal honours given to, 152; marries; head of royal household, 153; his love for his brethren, 154; reveals himself to them, 155; blessings of, 156
- JOY, spiritual, 289; incitements to aspire after, 290; of the wicked vain, 290; consolation of, 291; given to those fearing God, 292; eternal, 908; of the Blessed in the will, 171; wisdom bestows, 328
- JUDGE, Christ appointed, 66, 881
- JUDGES, the twelve, 521; virtues necessary for, 347; punishment of unjust, 346; rewards and works of just; advice to, 349; examples of good and evil, 350
- JUDGMENT, all power given to Christ to do, 881; of Christ irrevocable, 67; Divine, 101; doctrine of the last, 877; described by our Lord, 878; His sentences at the last, 879; seat, 880; impending, 762
- JUDGMENT DAY; will come suddenly, 832; allusions to the, 883
- JUST, confidence of the, 843; contrasted with the unjust, 343; must take heed lest he fall, 228; God specially loves the, 27
- JUSTICE, avenging, 429; of God, 430; vindictive; utility and necessity of, 432
- JUSTIFICATION, 832
- KHYS of Hell, 886
- KINDNESS, 422
- KNOWLEDGE of Christ, 62; perfect, 909
- LABOUR, condition of, 50; variety of reward for variety of, 175
- LAMENTATION because the Lamp of the Sanctuary has gone out, 768
- LAMP of the Sanctuary, 716
- LATTER DAYS, degeneracy of, 398; moral state of these; signs of the, 641
- LAW, compendium and end of, 198; sweet and easy; perfecting the doer, 193; fruits of observing of, 199; exhortation to meditate on the, 199; rewards to doers of, 200; ruin and eternal punishment to neglecters of the, 201; interior, 204; grace given to keep the, 212
- LAWGIVER, God, 197
- LEO XIII., the Brotherhood of the Divine Expiation encouraged by, 784
- LESSONS read in Holy Week, 129
- LIBERALITY, fruits of, 408; instances of, 409; examples of, 410
- LIBERTY of speech, 426; of the sons of God, 853
- LIE, heinousness of a; evil consequences of a, 428; forbidden, 429
- LIFE, brevity of, 864; frailty and uncertainty of, 864; book of, 29; sin shortens, 241; lust robs man of, 447; eternal, 908; perennial, 905, 899
- LIGHT, aspirations for, 205
- LITANY of the Holy Angels, 624; of all the Saints, 636
- LITTLENES, man's, 57
- LOMBARDS, the, 278
- LOSS of Jesus, 139, 150
- LOST, the number of the, 30
- LOVE, of God is to obey God, 849; of God to Penitents, 787; of suffering, 64; ejaculations of, 132
- LOVELINESS of concord, 297
- LUKEWARMNESS, examples of, 467
- LUST, good tempted to; only unwary overcome by; hurtful to body and soul, 445; perverts understanding and will, 446; robs man of health, wealth, and life; destroys reputation and honour; punishment of, 447
- LUXURY, examples and punishment of, 416
- MACHABEAN BROTHERS, 472
- MAGISTRATES, 345
- "MAGNIFICAT," the, 136
- MALCHUS, 535
- MALICE, sin arising from, 825
- MALIGNANCY of vice, 229
- MAN, material nature of, 48; his condition before and after the fall, 50; ignorance of, 55; his want of courage to do good, 57; prone to evil; his littleness in God's sight, 57; wise and foolish contrasted, 330; God can make use of one instead of another, 196; praised only after death, 389; who is the "magnificent," 470
- MARRIAGE, sacrament of, 818; of Adam and Eve; blessing on, 820
- MARTYRS, constancy of, 471
- MASS, the perpetuation of the Sacrifice of the Cross, 701; Scripture of the, 707; prayers after, 712; prayers before, 704
- MEANS of Salvation given to all, 210
- MEDIATOR, Christ the, 63
- MEDITATION, 378; peace of mind and purity of heart necessary for, 380; place and circumstances suitable for, 381; examples of, 382

- MEDITATIONS** for the "Forty Hours," 721
- MEEKNESS**, fruits of; examples of, 461
- MERCY**, why God hath, 20; beauty, effects and rewards of, 298; works of, 299; punishment of those who show not, 300; promised to penitents, 248
- MERIT**, 27; Christ's, 65; grace, the principle and cause of, 220; sin deprives of, 233; destroyed by evil intention, 191
- MESSIAS** promised, 58
- MICHAEL**, ST., 614
- MICHAS**, history of, 747
- MILDNESS** in speech, 423
- MIRACLES** of our Lord, 118; not specified, 119; of the Old Testament, 120; wrought in mercy, 120; wrought in Divine Vengeance, 121; other miracles, 122; worked by bad angels, 47
- MISERIES** in body and soul, 55
- MISERY** of him despising wisdom, 329
- MISSION**, of the Three Persons of the Trinity, 36; false, 639
- MODERATION** in speech, 423
- MODESTY**, fruits of, 468
- MONUMENTAL CHURCH** of Expiation, 783
- MORTALITY** of the body, 49
- MOTIVE**, actions must be done out of natural and supernatural, 847
- MOTTO** of the confraternity of the Divine Expiation, 840
- MOURNERS** over the desolated Sanctuaries, 769; examples of, 772
- MURDER**, examples of, 351
- MURMURING**, examples of, 478
- MUSIC** in public worship, 686
- MUTILATION**, 351; examples of, 352
- NAMES** of Christ, 68; of Heaven; of Hell, 912; of baptism, 666; of the baptised, 669; of sin, 828; of the wicked, 835
- NATIONS**, avarice the curse of, 412
- NATIVITY** of the Blessed Virgin, 134
- NATURE**, grace does not destroy, but heals and restores, 219; of faith, 256; of angels, 40; content with a little, 436
- NAZARETH**, 139, 150
- NECESSITY** of faith, 257
- NEIGHBOUR**, charity towards our, 281; why to be loved, 285; examples of charity towards, 286; hatred of, 310
- NIGHT-WATCHERS**, 720
- NINIVE**, dimensions of, 789; repentance, of, 789
- OATHS**, when lawful, 382
- OBEDIENCE**, perfection, promptitude, and fruits of, 404; rewards of, 405; instances of, 406; examples of, 408; of Christ, 64; to God; to prelates; to superiors, 403
- OBSTACLES** to faith, 263
- OBSTINACY** of heretics, 266
- OFFICE** of angels, 40, 42
- OFFSPRING**, sin destroys, 245
- OPPORTUNITY** for doing good must be promptly seized, and occasions watched for, 189
- ORIGIN** of the false christs, 751
- "PAIN BENI,"** 736
- PALM-BRANCHES**, 736
- PARABLES** of our Lord, 114; of the Old Testament, 116
- PARDON** of sin, prayers for, 376
- PARENTS** to be obeyed, honoured, 391; punishments of impiety towards, 392; their duties to children, 393; love of God to be preferred to love of, 394
- PARTIALITY**, undue, 351
- PASSION** of Jesus, 105; history of the sacred, 807; the priest's vestments show forth the, 717
- PASSIONS**, sin arising from the, 825; exhortation to conquer the, 230; power of the, 204
- PASTORS** receive their mission from God, 564; duties of faithful to, 628
- PATH** to glory, humility, 451
- PATIENCE**, fruits and rewards of; exhortation to, 475; examples of; aspirations after, 477
- PATRIARCHS**, list of, 520
- PAUL**, ST., vision of, 901
- PAYMENT** of labour, 50
- PEACE**, blessings of, 320; wisdom bestows, 328; author of, 294; necessity of; fruits of; exhortations to seek, 295; cries of soul for, 296; commended by apostles, 297
- PEDIGREE**, priests who could not find their, 747
- PENANCE**, virtue of; necessity of, 784, 68; preached by our Lord and the Prophets, 785; sacrament of, 790; instituted by our Lord, 791; of St. John Baptist, 159; of St. Jeremias, 99; sanctification by, 840; public, 788; of Ninive, 789
- PENITENTS**, God promises mercy to, 248; love of God to, 787; examples of, 790
- PENTECOST**, 558
- PERFECTION** of good works, 847; of charity, 279; of obedience, 404; of virtue; counsels of, 225
- PERJURY**, 363, 383; examples of, 384;

- PERPETUAL ADORATION** the chief work of the Brotherhood of the Divine Eruption, 675
- PERPLEXITY**, sin begets, 239
- PERSECUTED**, examples of the, 491
- PERSCUSSIONS**, examples of, 483
- PERSISTENCE**, necessary, 479; exhortation to, 480; censures on those who persevere not; cries of one craving for, 481; until death possible, 213
- PETER**, ST., a fisherman; catches a miraculous draught of fishes; his call; leaves all for Christ, 525; Jesus cures his mother-in-law, 526; the rock of the Church, 527; walks on the water; prayer of, 529; witnesses transfiguration; finds tribute money, 530; the withered fig-tree shown to, 531; prepares chamber for the institution of the Blessed Sacrament, 533; his self-confidence, 534; in Garden of Olives, 535; cuts off the ear of Malchus, 536; his denial, 537; weeping of; enters the sepulchre, 538; casts himself into the sea after Jesus; his second miraculous draught of fishes; Jesus invites him to dine, 539; his three declarations of love of Jesus, 539; cast into prison by Herod; released by an angel, 552; his discourse at General Council of Jerusalem, 553; the first see of; his warnings against private interpretation of Scripture, 554; Christ commissions him to feed His sheep and lambs; his martyrdom foretold by Jesus, 510; his prayer "in upper room"; awaiting the Holy Spirit, 540; converts 3,000 souls, 541; cures the cripple; converts 5,000, 542; imprisoned, 542; his defence; his discharge, 543; reproves Ananias and Sapphira, 545; his shadow cures the sick, 546; thrown into prison; released by an angel; is scourged; released; confirms; denounces Simon Magus, 547; St. Paul's visit to; cures Eneas; raises Tabitha to life, 548; ecstasy of; vision of, 549; baptises Cornelius; discourse of, 550
- PHARAO**, 153, 155
- PHYSICIAN**, why honour due to, 796
- PICTURE** of the calamities of our times, 766
- PIETY** to be united to exterior goodness, 187
- POSTERITY**, sin destroys, 245
- POVERTY**, praises of; vow of, 400; of Christ, 63
- POWER**, legislative, 566
- PRACTICE**, the commandments possible in, 853
- PRAISE**, ejaculations of, 132
- PRAYER**, necessity of, 98; for victory, 319; God commands; preparation for, 369; necessary to be in God's grace for; confidence in, 370; humble, attentive, persevering; object of, 371; to be offered for all; time for, 372; inducements to; parts of, 373; impediments and helps to; fruits of, 374; examples of, 375; for pardon of sin, 376; of our Lord, 378; for zeal, 467; of our Lord as man, 492; to understand Scripture, 515; of Tobias, 523; for the Church, 550; for our country's conversion, 551; of expiation for the sins of the Sanctuary, 575; before mass, 704; after Mass, 712; prostrate, 731; in desolation, 767; for the sick, 803, 811; for grace to flee sin, 836; on, 854; importunity in, 856
- PREACHING** of Jesus, 91, 98; of St. Jeremias, 92; of St. John Baptist, 160; of St. Peter, 541; of St. Paul, 659, 785; of St. Jonas, 789; our Lord commissions the Apostles to go forth, 518, 555, 587, 658; St. Paul exhorts to, 816
- PRECEPTS** of charity, 281; as to good works, 186
- PREDESTINATION**, 26; certainty of, 28
- PRESENTATION**, 138, 149
- PRESERVER**, God as, 39
- PRESUMPTION**, sin of, 21, 460; of the wicked, 844
- PRETENDERS** of supernatural lights, 746
- PRIDE** of heretics, 266; injurious to; body and soul, 454; effects of, 456; punishment of; examples of, 458; prayers to be delivered from, 459
- PRIESTHOOD**, vocation to, 858; simulation of the, 743; lying spirit in the false, 747
- PRIESTS**, celibacy of, 814; exhortation to, 815; must be ready to suffer, 817; names and types of, 566
- PRINCE**, Christ the, 60
- PROCESSION** of the Holy Ghost, 35
- PROCESSIONS**, 731
- PROFANATION** of the Sanctuaries, 740
- PROFESSION** of Faith inwardly and outwardly, 259
- PROMISES** to the returners home, 779
- PROMPTITUDE** of obedience, 404
- PRONENESS** to evil, 57

- PROPHETS**, foretold the Incarnation, 59; of our Lord, 89; under the Law of Nature, 519; mosaic, 519; in the old law in order of time, 520; three classes of false, 746
- PROSPERITY**, sin ruins, 243; wisdom bestows 329; of the wicked, 830
- PROVIDENCE**, sin of denying, 25
- PRUDENCE** commendeth; fruits and effects of, 334; examples of, 336; prayers for, 336; office of, 336; in speech, 423
- PSALMS** said in baptism of adults, 669; Seven Penitential, 798
- PUNISHMENT** willed by God, 13; sin brings, 231; of scandal, 321; of sinning against charity, 281; of spiritual sloth, 311; of theft, 355; of detraction, 359; of talebearing, 367; of scornors, 365; of calumny, 362; resulting from strife, 313; of quarrels, 314; of those hoping rather in man than in God, 274; of selfishness, 304; of unjust judges, 346; of disobedience, 405; to be duly administered, 432
- PURGATORY**, 647; Jews believed in, 648
- PURIFICATION** of the Blessed Virgin, 138
- PURITY** of intention and of heart, 190, 194; of heart to be united to exterior goodness, 187
- QUARREL**, causes, effects and punishments of, 314
- RAILING**, 365
- RAPHAEL**, ST., 617
- REBUILDING** of Jerusalem, 775
- REDEEMER**, God as, 40
- REDEMPTION**, its effects, 66
- RELICS**, 631
- RELIGION**, duties of, 368; praises of, 395; boasting of, 188; evils and punishments of sins opposed to, 389
- RELIGIOUS STATE**, vocation to, 858; offices and duties of; fidelity to the, 397
- REPENTANCE**, exhortations to; examples of, 399; of St. Peter, 538
- REPROBATION**, positive, 29; negative, 30
- REPROOF**, to whom given; in what way, 306; to be given privately and publicly, 306; examples of loving, 307; to be borne with resignation, 300
- REPUTATION**, unjust injury of, 359; lust destroys, 447; sin destroys, 242
- RESERVATION** of the Blessed Sacrament, 713
- REST**, eternal, 909
- RESURRECTION**, doctrine of the general, 870; believed under the old law, 871; St. Paul's discourse on the; Christ's, 108, 873; pledge of our; fruits of the, 873; the manner thereof, 874; allusion to the general; St. Jerome on the, 875
- REUNION** of Christendom; emblem of the, 780
- REVELATION**, universal and particular, mediate and immediate, 255
- REVOLUTIONS**, instances of, 316
- REWARDS**, according to merit, 27; of mercy, 298
- RICHES**, alms brings, 303
- RIOTS**, instances of, 316
- RITES**, 717
- ROBBERY** forbidden, 354; sacrilegious, examples of, 356
- ROME**, the New Jerusalem, 559
- ROSARY** of the Blessed Virgin, 145
- RUBEN**, 153
- RULER**, God as, 39
- RULES** of the Brotherhood of the Divine Expiation, 675, 784
- SACERDOTAL PRAYER** of our Lord, 167
- SACRAMENT** of Baptism, 658; of Confirmation, 671; of the Holy Eucharist, 676; of Penance, 790; of Extreme Unction, 794; of Holy Order, 814; of Matrimony, 818
- SACRAMENTALS**, 734
- SACRAMENTS** in general, 655; types of the holy, 658
- SACRIFICE** of Christ on the Cross, 699; prefigured, 700; perpetuated in the Mass, 701; of Christ in the Mass, promised and instituted by our Lord, 702; vindicated by the Apostles; ritual of the, 703
- SADNESS**, the end of, 240
- SAFETY** for ever, 906
- SALT**, 667
- SALVATION** God wills for all, 23
- SANCTIFICATION**, interior; how, 839
- SANCTITY**, perfect, 907
- SANCTUARIES**, profanation of the, 740; desolation of, 769; names of desecrated, 742; mourners over the desolated, 769
- SANCTUARY**, lamp of, 716
- SAVED**, number of the, 30
- SAVIOUR**, Christ the, 61; God as, 40
- SCANDAL**, malice and punishment of; to be avoided giving; examples of, 321; warnings against; heed not pharisean, 323
- SOAPULARS**, 735

- SCIENCE** of the saints, humility, 451  
**SCORNERS**, punished by God, 366  
**SEAT**, the Judgment, 830  
**SEEKING**, the, for Him whom they had lost, 773  
**SELF-CONFIDENCE**, warnings against, 275; of wicked, 273  
**SELFISHNESS**, the sin and punishment of; examples of, 304  
**SEVEN BLOOD-SHEDDINGS** of our Lord, 126  
**SEVEN SORROWS** of the Blessed Virgin, 144  
**SHAME**, sin brings, 240; true and false, 448  
**SHAMELESSNESS**, sin brings, 240  
**SHEPHERDS**, the, 138  
**SICK**, devotions for the, 803; prayers for the, 811  
**SICKNESS**, cause and benefits of, 795; *Ezekiel's*, 796; examples of, 798; of soul restored by grace, 219  
**SILENCE**, 464  
**SIMON, ST.**, 138  
**SIMULATION** of the Priesthood; magnitude and consequence of the sin of the, 743; foretold by our Lord; warnings against, 746  
**SIN**, disastrous to body and soul, 232; deprives of merit our works, 233; brings with it temporal and eternal punishment, 234; robs the soul of supernatural gifts; subjects it to the devil, and to everlasting death, 235; causes blindness and ignorance, 236; turns away the will from God; hardens the soul, 233; begets fear and perplexity, 239; brings shame and shamelessness, 240; sadness and despair the end of, 240; robs body and soul of strength, 241; shortens life; hastens death, 241; destroys reputation, honour and fame, 242; ruins prosperity, 243; destroys offspring and posterity, 245; sinners exhorted to abandon, 247; cries of a sinner grieving over sin, 251; not willed by God, 13; why pardoned, 23; washed away by Precious Blood, 66; grace given us to shun, 212; grace blots out, 219; the turning from God to creatures; uncleanness of, 231; cause of war, 314; acknowledgment of, 783; sorrow for, 791; humble confession of, 792; satisfaction for, 793; original, 822; mortal, 823; venial, 824, 212; God not the author of, 824; arising from ignorance, passion, malice, 825; habitual, 826; emblems and names of, 828; hatred of, 830; forgiveness of, 838; blotting out of, 838  
**SINCERITY** of heart commended, 194  
**SINNER**s, love of God for, 21; why He loves them, 23; cannot escape avenging Justice, 429; punished through their sins, 431; God reproaches, 246; none destitute of necessary means of salvation, 210; exhorted to abandon sin, 247; vengeance on, 432; death of, 866  
**SINS**, catalogue of, 826; various kinds of, 827  
**SLIGHT FAILINGS**, charity is not lost by, 853  
**SLOTH**, spiritual; evils, punishments, and examples of, 311  
**SOLDIERS**, to, 317  
**SOLOMON**, the glory of God shown to, 904  
**SON, THE**, consubstantial with the Father, 33  
**SOOTHSAYING**, 389  
**SORROW** for sin, 791  
**SORROWS**, the Man of, 105; of the Blessed Virgin, 138, 141; *St. Jeremias*, type of the Man of, 105  
**SOUL** of man immortal, dignity of the, 49; miseries of the, 55; supernatural life of the, 217; effects of grace on the, 218; sin disastrous to the, 232; sin robs it of grace, 235; ejaculations to increase grace in the, 261; blessing of wisdom in the, 327  
**SPEAKERS**, advice to, 423  
**SPECIES**, Christ under either, 683  
**SPEECH**, prudence, mildness, and moderation in, 423; unbridled, 425; abuse of the liberty of, 426; examples of wise, 427; prayer for wisdom in, 428  
**SPIRIT**, desolation of, 763; the lying, 747  
**SPLENDOUR** of Charity, 280  
**STABILITY** for ever, 907; wisdom bestows, 328  
**STATIONS** of the Cross, 126  
**STRENGTH**, sin robs body and soul of, 241  
**STEPHEN, ST.**, vision of, 901  
**STONES** of desecrated churches, 780  
**STRIFE**, what leads to, 313; injuries and punishments resulting from, 313; forbidden, 314  
**SUBJECTION**, filial, 853  
**SUBMISSION**, 464  
**SUFFERING**, happiness of, 474; vicarious, 794; Christ's love for, 64; examples of endurance under, 491



- SUFFERINGS**, Eucharistic, 728  
**SUICIDES**, 351; examples of, 352  
**SUPERIORS**, obedience and deference to be shown to, 403  
**SUPPLICATIONS**, penitential, 775  
**SWEETNESS** of concord, 297  
**TABERNACLE** of Christ, 714  
**TALK-BEARING**; effects, injury and punishment of, 367  
**TEACHERS**, false, 101  
**TEMPERANCE**, rewards and fruits of, 438  
**TEMPLE** and Holy things, 713  
**TESTIMONY**, false, 362; effects and punishment of, 363  
**THANKSGIVING**, 416; acts of, 418  
**THAU**, the, 667  
**THEFT** forbidden, 354; punished, 355; examples of, 357  
**THREATENINGS**, divine, 832  
**THRONE**, the Great White, 880  
**TITHES**, 385  
**TOBIAS**, prayer of, 623  
**TONGUE**, right use of, 422; fruits of right use of, 424; indiscreet use of, 425  
**TORCH**, lighted, 668  
**TOTAL ABSTAINERS**, texts for, 442  
**TRAIN**, the Royal, 902  
**TRANSFIGURATION** of Christ, 530, 903  
**TRIBULATION**, 483; why sent, 484; fruits of, 485; a great blessing; coveted; light, 487; to be welcomed, 490; cries of one in, 492  
**TRINITY**, the Blessed, 31, 36  
**TRIUMPH** of the Cross, 66; of the Church, 645  
**TRUTH**, 428; to be spoken, 429  
**TYPES** of heaven and hell, 912; of the Blessed Virgin, 143; of St. Joseph, 156  
**UNBELIEF**, 261; examples of, 263  
**UNBELIEVERS**, their conversion hindered by bad angels, 47  
**UNCERTAINTY** of life, 864  
**UNCHARITABLENESS**, examples of, 310  
**UNCLEANNESS** of sin, 231  
**UNDERSTANDING**, blessing of wisdom in the, 327; perverted by lust, 446  
**UNHAPPINESS** in Hell, 887  
**UNITY** of Faith, 257  
**UNJUST**, the, contrasted with the just, 343  
**UNLEAVENED BREAD**, 683  
**UPROARS**, instances of, 315  
**UTILITY** of Faith, 257; of concord, 297  
**VENERATION** of the Holy Scriptures, 770  
**VENGEANCE** on sinners, 432  
**VENIAL SIN**, by natural law alone cannot avoid, 212  
**VESTMENTS**, 717  
**VICE**, free will in pursuit after, 183; malignancy of; means for the destruction of, 229; exhortation to root up, 230  
**VICES** opposed to charity, 310  
**VICTIM**, names and titles of our Lord as, 703  
**VICTORY**, prayers for, 319; of the Cross, 65  
**VIRGINITY**, praises, rewards and counsels of, 402  
**VIRTUE**, free will in pursuit after, 183; praise of; fruits of; exhortation to aim at, 224; perfection of, 225; first step to, 226  
**VISIONS** in the New Testament, 120; of the Old Testament, 116; of the Apocalypse, 122; of Heaven, 897  
**VISITATION** by fire, 757; foretold by parable, 760; foretold by figure, 761; foretold in the Apocalypse, 762  
**VOCATION**, blessings of a divine, 396; to the Priesthood, 858; to the religious state, 859  
**VOWS**, 857; of poverty, 400; necessity of keeping, 384, 385  
**WAGES** of labour, 50  
**WANDERERS**, landmarks for, 780  
**WAR**, sin cause of, 314; instances of, 315; a means of bringing men to their senses; soldiers to be encouraged to fight in a just, 317; prayers for victory in, 319; instances of, 316  
**WARNINGS** against the simulation of the Priesthood, 746; against false christ, 748; against false prophets, 748; against self-confidence, 275  
**WEAKNESS** of the body, 49  
**WEALTH**, lust robs man of, 447  
**WICKED**, God hates the, 245; Hell the abode of the, 885; their prudence condemned, 335; their counsel shall perish, 338; prosperity of the, 830; names and types of the, 835; vain presumption of the, 844  
**WICKEDNESS**, God hates, 245  
**WILL** of God, 14; joy of the blessed in the, 171; blessings of wisdom in the, 327; perverted by lust, 446  
**WISDOM**, fear of God first step to, 226; God works with perfect; gift of, 323; Author of; examples of, 324; qualities and conditions of; how to acquire, 325; blessings of, 327; bestows joy, peace, stability of mind; brings honour and glory, 328; gives

- prosperity ; misery of de-pising, 329 ;  
 bliss of seeking, 330 ; exhortation to  
 331 ; cries of one seeking, 332  
**WORD** of God ; unwritten, 436 ; written ;  
 origin of the written, 497 ; abides for  
 ever, 339  
**WORDS**, our Lord's seven last, 125  
**WORKS** of God perfect, 39 ; of mercy,  
 2:9
- WORLD**, Meesias promised to, 58 ; Christ  
 the Saviour of, 61  
**WORSHIP** of Christ, 113  
**WORSHIPPERS** of the false christs, 752  
**WRATH**, mild answer turns away, 464  
**ZACHARY**, ST., 157 ; cure of, 159  
**ZEAL**, examples of, 410, 464 ; indiscreet,  
 467 ; prayers for, 467 ; in punishing  
 sin, 468

# INDEX

TO

## THE SCRIPTURAL PRAYERS AND DEVOTIONS.

- ADVERSITY**, prayers in time of, 377  
**ANGELUS**, the, 735  
**BLESSED SACRAMENT**, Twelve Canticles in honour of the, 687 ; Seven Songs of Praise in honour of the, 693 ; Forty Meditations on the, 721  
**CALUMNY**, prayers against, 364  
**CHURCH**, prayers for the Holy, 650  
**COUNTRY**, prayers for the conversion of our, 651  
**CREED**, the Nicene, 708  
**DEATH**, Seven Meditations on, 861  
**DESOLATION**, prayers in, 767  
**DEVOTIONS** for the recommendation of a departing soul, 507  
**EJACULATIONS** of praise and love, 132 ; of a hoping soul, 276 ; of a soul imploring to be heard, 377 ; for the dying, 796  
**ETERNAL FATHER**, prayers of our Lord to the, 167, 492  
**EZECHIAS**, prayer of, 797  
**FALSE CHRIST WORSHIP**, a prayer against, 754  
**GRACE**, prayers for God's, 222 ; at table, 736  
**HAIL MARY**, the, 736  
**HERESY**, prayers against, 269  
**HOLY SCRIPTURE**, prayers to understand and obey the, 515  
**JEREMIAS**, prayer of St., 132  
**JUDGMENT**, prayers of a soul imploring Divine, 350  
**LAMENTATION** because the Lamp of the Sanctuary has gone out, 769  
**LESSONS** read in Holy Week, 129  
**LITANIES** of the Holy Angels, 624 ; of all the Saints, 636  
**LOVE**, prayers to excite in our hearts God's, 238  
**MAGNIFICAT**, the, 126  
**MASS**, prayers before, 704 ; prayers of the, 707 ; prayers after, 712  
**OUR FATHER**, the, 713  
**PASSION**, the Sacred, 807  
**PATIENCE**, prayers for, 477  
**PEACE**, cries of a soul after, 296  
**PERSEVERANCE**, prayers for, 481  
**PRIDE**, prayers against, 459  
**PENITENCE**, prayers for, 336  
**PSALMS**, prayers of our Lord in the, 378 ; Seven Penitential, 798 ; said in the Baptism of adults, 669  
**ROSARY**, the, 145  
**SACRED HUMANITY**, devotions to the, 127  
**SEVEN BLOOD-SHEDDINGS**, devotion to the, 123  
**SEVEN LAST WORDS**, devotion to the, 125  
**SEVEN SORROWS OF THE BLESSED VIRGIN**, devotion to the, 144  
**SICK**, prayers for the, 811  
**SIGN** of the Cross, 667  
**SIN**, prayers for pardon of, 376 ; prayers for grace to flee, 836  
**SINS**, cries of a sinner grieving over his, 251 ; prayer of a soul returning to God and acknowledging his, 251  
**STATIONS** of the Cross, 126  
**SUFFERINGS**, the Eucharistic, 728  
**THANKSGIVING**, prayer of, 418  
**TOBIAS**, prayer of St., 623  
**TRIBULATION**, prayer in time of, 492  
**WISDOM**, cries of a soul seeking, 332  
**WISDOM IN SPEECH**, prayers for, 428  
**ZACHARY**, the Canticle of St., 159  
**ZEAL**, prayers for, 467

promised in 3  
61  
st. 113  
the false as  
er turns up  
; cure of S.  
110, 464; not  
467; in po

OPTION

4; paper  
712

26  
37, 40

d in 29  
3; m. 11

1000

300

100

100

## NOTICE.

---

The compiler of this volume humbly requests its American readers to inform him of any errors in it which may come under their notice. He will also be very grateful for any suggestions that may tend to make the work more perfect or more complete. Address: 28 Beaufort Street, Chelsea, London, England.







UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARY  
PRINCETON N.J.



32101 065974949

BRUNNEN  
BRUNNEN  
BRUNNEN